


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00594611 6





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation























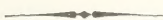
# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

FOR THE USE OF  
CONTINENTAL, ESPECIALLY DUTCH, STUDENTS,

BY

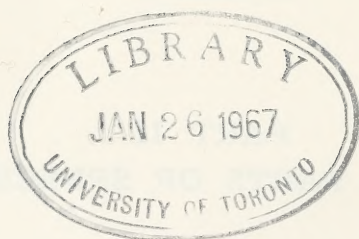
H. POUTSMA,

*English Master in the Municipal "Gymnasium", Amsterdam.*



## PART II THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

SECTION I, B  
PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS.



PE  
1105  
P<sub>6</sub>  
1928  
v.4



## PREFACE.

---

It is with mixed feelings of gratification and regret that I have put the last touches to this portion of my work. It is, of course, highly gratifying to have arrived at another stage of my destined course and to have brought some problems a little nearer to solution or, at least, to have pointed out the way in which solution may be found, but then, considering the many weary years of unremitting labour I have spent over my work, I cannot help a feeling of regret that my achievements have fallen so far short of my wishes. What Prof. HUXLEY wrote to his friend HOOKER in a letter dated August 2, 1860, 'It constantly becomes more and more difficult to me to *finish* things satisfactorily' would most probably be the confession of most writers in whatever field of science or literature. It certainly represents my own thoughts now that I am going 'to my account with all my imperfections on my head'. Imperfect as I know my book to be, I would, however, humbly request the courteous student constantly to bear in mind the advice given by BUNYAN in the Conclusion appended to the *Pilgrim's Progress*,

What of my Dross thou findest there, be bold  
To throw away, but yet preserve the Gold,  
What if my Gold be wrapped up in Ore?

As to my methods I have nothing to add to what I wrote in the Prefaces of the volumes preceding the present. I have only a few words to say about the Index, the omission of which in a voluminous text-book like this would almost be a penal offence. Like the one placed at the end of one of the preceding volumes, this index is more or less descriptive in character, i. e. the different words have mostly been furnished with short notes giving the occasion of their inclusion and enabling the student to find what he wants without needless loss of time. It stands to reason that I have often been obliged to sacrifice accuracy and fulness of detail to brevity.

Phrases mostly appear under all their principal component parts, so that a search will, I trust, seldom be in vain. These features have caused the columns devoted to it to swell to a large number, but it is my candid opinion that in a thing of this description it is far better to err in giving too much than in giving too little. The index does not, as a rule, repeat the headings of the different sections into which the chapters have been divided, and which have already been tabulated in the Table of Contents. The latter may, therefore, in a manner be considered as a kind of supplement to the former, but it is chiefly destined to serve the useful purpose of supplying the student with a plan according to which the study of a given chapter may be approached.

My obligations in the present volume, as in its predecessors, are very numerous and will be duly acknowledged when the whole work is completed. I cannot, however, forbear from making special mention, already in this place, of the second volume of Prof. JESPERSEN'S *Modern English Grammar*, which appeared a few months before these pages went to press, and which enabled me to remove some deficiencies and inaccuracies and improve my book generally. I have great pleasure in paying a grateful and respectful tribute to the admirable shrewdness and vast learning displayed in this the latest work of the great Danish scholar.

Save for the first dozen or so pages I have had no assistance in correcting the proof-sheets, so that I sorely need the lenience of the student as regards the annoying clerical and typographical errors which seem to be unavoidable in books printed in Holland so long as proof-readers have not become an 'institution' in that country. I have duly recorded all those which have come to my notice, and I would advise the student to make the necessary corrections before he starts reading the book. By so doing he will save himself much vexation. Part of the finished proofs have been read by some friends of mine, and at my request they have told me what they thought wrong or wanting fuller treatment. They will find that in the Corrections and Additions some of their hints have been turned to useful account.

In conclusion I have only to say that any criticisms offered in a kindly spirit are urgently solicited and will be gratefully accepted.

---

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	705
FORM §§ 1—13 . . . . .	705
Declension §§ 1—2 . . . . .	705
Shortenings § 3 . . . . .	706
Case-shiftings §§ 4—13. . . . .	709
USE §§ 14—46. . . . .	724
Personal Pronouns used as Nouns §§ 14—17. . . . .	724
Personal Pronouns used as Determinative Pronouns §§ 18—19	726
The Pronoun <i>it</i> §§ 20—25 . . . . .	730
<i>It</i> compared with sex-indicating pronouns §§ 20—21 . . . . .	730
<i>It</i> as the representative of subordinate questions or statements suppressed §§ 22—25 . . . . .	735
Pronominal Equivalents §§ 26—46 . . . . .	742
The pronominal <i>so</i> §§ 26—42 . . . . .	742
<i>So</i> representing a subordinate statement §§ 26—27 . . . . .	742
<i>So</i> representing a predicative noun or adjective §§ 28 . . . . .	749
<i>So</i> , together with <i>to do</i> , representing a preceding verb with its enlargements § 29 . . . . .	756
<i>To do so</i> (or <i>it</i> ) or <i>to be so</i> dispensed with after <i>can</i> , <i>may</i> , <i>must</i> , <i>need</i> , <i>ought</i> , <i>shall</i> or <i>will</i> § 30 . . . . .	760
The bare preposition <i>to</i> used instead of <i>to do so</i> or <i>to be so</i> § 31 . . . . .	763
<i>So</i> in corroborative sentences §§ 32—33 . . . . .	764
<i>So</i> in sentences expressing identity of circumstances §§ 34—35	768
<i>So</i> representing the main part of a preceding sentence or clause after adverbs, or after the conjunction <i>if</i> § 36 . . . . .	770
<i>So</i> either by itself or in conjunction with ( <i>to</i> ) <i>do</i> or ( <i>to</i> ) <i>be</i> dispensed with in certain short sentences whose chief or only function is that of affirmation or denial etc. §§ 37—42	771
Other pronominal equivalents §§ 43—46 . . . . .	778
The pronominal <i>as much</i> or <i>so much</i> § 43. . . . .	778
The pronominal <i>the thing</i> § 44 . . . . .	780
Abstract nouns preceded by possessive pronouns of the second or third persons used by way of personal pronouns § 45	780
Names of profession or relationship used instead of <i>you</i> § 46	781



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	782
FORM §§ 1—6 . . . . .	782
USE §§ 7—29 . . . . .	786
Conjoint Possessive Pronouns §§ 7—20 . . . . .	786
Expressing an objective relation § 7. . . . .	786
Compared with their analytical equivalents §§ 8—9 . . . . .	791
Varying with absolute forms when preceding a genitive or another conjoint form § 10 . . . . .	801
Their place in connection with other adnominal adjuncts §§ 11—12 . . . . .	803
Used as Determinative Pronouns § 13 . . . . .	807
In combinations in which the Dutch prefers a construction with the objective of a Personal Pronoun § 14. . . . .	807
Varying with the Definite Article § 15 . . . . .	808
Dispensed with §§ 16—17. . . . .	810
Followed by <i>own</i> or <i>proper</i> §§ 18—20 . . . . .	815
Absolute Possessive Pronouns §§ 21—29 . . . . .	819
Used with distinct reference to a preceding noun §§ 22—25 . . . . .	819
Used substantively §§ 26—27 . . . . .	824
Used predicatively § 28—29 . . . . .	826

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

PRONOMINAL COMPOUNDS OF <i>SELF</i> . . . . .	830
FORM §§ 1—2 . . . . .	830
USE §§ 3—31 . . . . .	836
General Observations § 3. . . . .	836
Compounds of <i>self</i> as Reflective Pronouns §§ 4—23 . . . . .	838
The Reflective Pronoun in the function of the direct object §§ 4—14 . . . . .	838
Verbs unmodified or modified in meaning when followed by the Reflective Pronoun §§ 4—5 . . . . .	838
Verbs which are never, or hardly ever, found without the Reflective Pronoun § 6 . . . . .	840
Reflective verbs compared with Passive verbs § 7 . . . . .	842
The Reflective Pronoun suppressed §§ 8—15. . . . .	843
The Reflective Pronoun in the function of the indirect object § 16 . . . . .	856
The Reflective Pronoun as part of a prepositional object § 17—19 . . . . .	857
The Reflective Pronoun as part of an adverbial adjunct § 20 . . . . .	859
The Reflective Pronoun used as a redundant object § 21 . . . . .	860
The plural Reflective Pronoun used in the meaning of a reciprocal pronoun § 22 . . . . .	860
The Reflective Pronoun replaced by the Personal Pronoun § 23 . . . . .	861
Compounds of <i>self</i> as Emphatic Pronouns §§ 24—28 . . . . .	865
The Emphatic Pronoun modifying either a noun or a pronoun § 24 . . . . .	865
The Emphatic Pronoun in different positions § 25 . . . . .	866
The Emphatic Pronoun with certain secondary meanings § 26 . . . . .	866
The Emphatic Pronoun used instead of the Personal Pronoun § 27 . . . . .	867
Suppression of the Personal Pronoun modified by the Emphatic Pronoun § 28 . . . . .	867

Compounds of <i>self</i> as Emphatic Reflective Pronouns § 29 . . .	870
The Emphatic Reflective Pronoun compared with the purely Reflective Pronoun § 29 . . . . .	870
The Emphatic Reflective Pronoun equivalent to the Emphatic Pronoun + the Reflective Pronoun § 30 . . . . .	871
The Emphatic Reflective Pronoun in certain locutions § 31 . . .	872

## CHAPTER XXXV.

OBSERVATIONS ON PERSON-EXHIBITING PRONOUNS IN GENERAL	875
PERSON-EXHIBITING PRONOUNS USED INDEFINITELY §§ 1—3. . . . .	875
The Plural Pronouns thus used §§ 1—2. . . . .	875
The Masculine Singular Pronouns thus used § 3 . . . . .	877
SPECIAL APPLICATIONS OF THE PLURAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON § 4. . . . .	878
The Plural of Majesty or Dignity § 4. . . . .	878
The Plural of Modesty §§ 5—6 . . . . .	878
Other applications of the plural instead of the singular § 7	881
<i>Ourself</i> instead of <i>Myself</i> § 8 . . . . .	881
Plural Pronouns of the First Person referring to the person(s) spoken to § 9 . . . . .	882
Peculiar applications of <i>our</i> § 10 . . . . .	883
USE OF THE PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, AS COMPARED WITH THE PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON PLURAL § 11.	884
AMBIGUITY OF THE PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON § 12. . . . .	888

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	891
FORMS § 1 . . . . .	891
PURE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS §§ 2—11. . . . .	881
Their meaning §§ 2—6. . . . .	891
How used §§ 7—8 . . . . .	902
Their place in the sentence § 9 . . . . .	907
Idiomatic Applications § 10 . . . . .	909
Demonstrative Equivalents § 11 . . . . .	916
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS USED IN OTHER FUNCTIONS §§ 12—16 .	917
Demonstratives used as Determinative Pronouns §§ 12—14.	917
Forms § 12 . . . . .	917
How used § 13. . . . .	917
Idiomatic Applications § 14 . . . . .	919
Demonstratives used as Indefinite Pronouns § 15 . . . . .	921
VULGARISMS § 16. . . . .	924

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	926
FORMS § 1 . . . . .	926

<i>SAME</i> §§ 2—6 . . . . .	926
Normally preceded by the definite article § 2 . . . . .	926
How used §§ 3—4 . . . . .	926
Adverbial Modifiers of <i>the Same</i> § 5 . . . . .	929
Equivalents of <i>Same</i> § 6 . . . . .	930
<i>SUCH</i> §§ 7—12 . . . . .	931
Its applications §§ 7—8 . . . . .	931
How used §§ 9—10 . . . . .	935
<i>Such</i> coupled with <i>like</i> § 11 . . . . .	938
Modifiers of <i>Such</i> + noun § 12 . . . . .	938
DETERMINATIVE EQUIVALENTS § 13 . . . . .	941
<i>SUCH</i> AS INDEFINITE PRONOUN § 14 . . . . .	942

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	944
FORM §§ 1—2 . . . . .	944
USE AND MEANING §§ 3—13 . . . . .	945
Grammatical Use § 3 . . . . .	945
Meaning §§ 4—13 . . . . .	947
Meaning of <i>who</i> § 4 . . . . .	947
Meaning of <i>what</i> § 5 . . . . .	947
Meaning of <i>which</i> § 6 . . . . .	948
Meaning of <i>whether</i> § 7 . . . . .	949
Idiomatic Applications of <i>what</i> § 8 . . . . .	950
Two interrogatives in one and the same sentence § 9 . . . . .	952
<i>What</i> in exclamations § 10 . . . . .	952
<i>What</i> as Adverb § 11 . . . . .	954
<i>What</i> as Interjection § 12 . . . . .	955
<i>What</i> as Indefinite Pronoun § 13 . . . . .	955

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	957
FORM §§ 1—3 . . . . .	957
USE AND MEANING §§ 4—39 . . . . .	959
Grammatical Use of Relatives §§ 4—5 . . . . .	959
Grammatical Character of the Antecedent of Relatives § 6 . . . . .	965
Character of the Clauses introduced by Relatives §§ 7—26 . . . . .	965
Relative Pronouns introducing Attributive Adnominal Clauses	
§§ 8—21 . . . . .	966
Use of the Relatives according to the nature of the Antecedent	
§§ 9—15 . . . . .	966
Use of <i>who</i> § 9 . . . . .	966
Use of <i>which</i> §§ 10—11 . . . . .	967
Use of <i>that</i> § 12 . . . . .	970
Use of <i>what</i> §§ 13—14 . . . . .	971
Varied Practice § 15 . . . . .	973



Use of the Relatives according to the nature of the Clause they introduce § 16—21 . . . . .	976
Use of <i>that</i> as compared with that of <i>who</i> or <i>which</i> §§ 16—19 . . . . .	976
Use of <i>as</i> § 20 . . . . .	984
Varied Practice § 21 . . . . .	985
Relative Pronouns introducing Substantive Clauses §§ 22—26 . . . . .	985
Use of <i>who</i> and <i>what</i> §§ 22—24 . . . . .	985
Use of <i>which</i> and <i>that</i> §§ 25—26 . . . . .	990
The Relative understood §§ 27—32 . . . . .	993
The Relative understood in Adnominal Clauses §§ 27—29 . . . . .	993
The Relative understood in Substantive Clauses § 30 . . . . .	1000
Archaic instances of the Relative being understood § 31 . . . . .	1001
The Relative understood together with another element of the clause § 32 . . . . .	1002
The objective of a Personal Pronoun omitted in Adverbial Clauses incorporated into, or added to Adnominal Clauses § 33 . . . . .	1003
POSITION OF THE RELATIVE §§ 34—39 . . . . .	1004
The Relative normally in front-position § 34 . . . . .	1004
Position of the Relative when modified by <i>all</i> or <i>both</i> § 35 . . . . .	1004
Position of <i>of</i> + Relative Pronoun or of <i>of</i> + <i>whose</i> + noun § 36 . . . . .	1005
Position of the Relative in Infinitive or Gerund Clauses incorporated into Relative Clauses § 37 . . . . .	1006
Position of the Relative in Continuative Participle Clauses § 38 . . . . .	1009
Abnormal Position of the Relative in Poetry § 39 . . . . .	1009

## CHAPTER XL.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS . . . . .	1011
ALL §§ 1—15 . . . . .	1011
Grammatical Functions § 1 . . . . .	1011
<i>All</i> as Indefinite Pronoun §§ 2—5 . . . . .	1011
Meaning § 2 . . . . .	1011
Observations on Meaning and Use § 3 . . . . .	1011
In Compounds § 4 . . . . .	1017
Converted into a pure Noun § 5 . . . . .	1017
<i>All</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 6—12 . . . . .	1018
Meaning § 6 . . . . .	1018
How used §§ 7—10 . . . . .	1019
Observations on Meaning, Use and Position § 11 . . . . .	1023
In Compounds § 12 . . . . .	1032
<i>All</i> as Adverb §§ 13—14 . . . . .	1032
Words or Word-groups modified § 13 . . . . .	1032
Obsolete or obsolescent applications § 14 . . . . .	1035
<i>All</i> in Compounds § 15 . . . . .	1036
ANY §§ 16—22 . . . . .	1036
Grammatical Functions § 16 . . . . .	1036
<i>Any</i> as Indefinite Pronoun or Numeral §§ 17—19 . . . . .	1036
Meaning § 17 . . . . .	1036

Observations on Meaning and Use § 18 . . . . .	1037
How used § 19 . . . . .	1050
<i>Any</i> as Adverb § 20 . . . . .	1054
<i>An</i> in Compounds § 21 . . . . .	1055
Dutch Equivalents of <i>Any</i> § 22 . . . . .	1057
AUGHT §§ 23—25. . . . .	1060
Grammatical Functions § 23. . . . .	1060
<i>Aught</i> as Indefinite Pronoun § 24 . . . . .	1060
<i>Aught</i> as Adverb § 25 . . . . .	1061
BOTH §§ 26—34 . . . . .	1061
Declined for the Genitive § 26. . . . .	1061
Meanings § 27 . . . . .	1061
Grammatical Functions § 28. . . . .	1062
How used §§ 29—32. . . . .	1062
Position in the Sentence § 33 . . . . .	1064
Used redundantly § 34 . . . . .	1066
EACH §§ 35—40 . . . . .	1066
Meaning § 35. . . . .	1066
How used § 36 . . . . .	1066
Connected with <i>Other</i> to form with it a Reciprocal Pronoun § 37	1067
Equivalents of <i>Each Other</i> § 38 . . . . .	1069
The reciprocal idea implied § 39. . . . .	1071
Compounds of <i>each</i> § 40 . . . . .	1071
EITHER §§ 41—45 . . . . .	1071
Grammatical Functions § 41. . . . .	1071
Declined for the Genitive § 42. . . . .	1072
Meanings §§ 43—44. . . . .	1072
How used § 45 . . . . .	1074
ENOUGH §§ 46—49 . . . . .	1074
Grammatical Functions § 46. . . . .	1074
<i>Enough</i> as Indefinite Numeral § 47 . . . . .	1074
<i>Enough</i> as Adverb §§ 48—49. . . . .	1076
ENOW § 50 . . . . .	1077
EVERY §§ 51—56 . . . . .	1078
Grammatical Function § 51 . . . . .	1078
Adnominal adjuncts by which <i>every</i> may be preceded or followed § 52. . . . .	1078
Meaning § 53. . . . .	1079
<i>Every</i> and <i>all</i> compared § 54 . . . . .	1081
<i>Every</i> and <i>each</i> compared § 55 . . . . .	1088
Compounds of <i>every</i> § 56. . . . .	1091
FEW §§ 57—62. . . . .	1092
Meaning § 57. . . . .	1092
How used § 58 . . . . .	1093

<i>Few</i> a kind of Collective Noun when preceded by the Indefinite Article §§ 58—62 . . . . .	1094
Modifiers of <i>a few</i> § 59 . . . . .	1094
How <i>a few</i> is used § 60 . . . . .	1095
<i>A few</i> compared with <i>few</i> § 61 . . . . .	1096
<i>A few</i> varying with <i>some few</i> § 62 . . . . .	1097
<i>IT</i> § 63 . . . . .	1097
<i>LITTLE</i> §§ 64—74 . . . . .	1098
Grammatical Functions § 64 . . . . .	1098
<i>Little</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 65—68 . . . . .	1098
Meaning § 65 . . . . .	1098
How used §§ 66—67 . . . . .	1098
Converted into a pure Noun § 68 . . . . .	1100
<i>Little</i> as Adverb § 69 . . . . .	1100
<i>Little</i> a kind of Collective Noun when preceded by the Indefinite Article §§ 70—74 . . . . .	1101
How <i>a little</i> is used §§ 71—72 . . . . .	1101
<i>A little</i> compared with <i>little</i> § 73 . . . . .	1102
<i>A little</i> varying with <i>some little</i> § 74 . . . . .	1103
<i>LESS</i> §§ 75—79 . . . . .	1104
Grammatical Functions § 75 . . . . .	1104
<i>Less</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 76—77 . . . . .	1104
Meaning § 76 . . . . .	1104
How used §§ 76—77 . . . . .	1104
<i>Less</i> as Adverb § 78 . . . . .	1105
<i>Less</i> modified by Adverbs of Degree § 79 . . . . .	1105
<i>LEAST</i> §§ 80—84 . . . . .	1105
Grammatical Functions § 80 . . . . .	1105
<i>Least</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 81—83 . . . . .	1105
Meaning § 81 . . . . .	1105
How used §§ 82—83 . . . . .	1105
<i>Least</i> as Adverb § 84 . . . . .	1106
<i>MANY</i> §§ 85—90 . . . . .	1106
How used § 85—87 . . . . .	1106
<i>Many</i> a Distributive Numeral when followed by the Indefinite Article § 88 . . . . .	1109
<i>Many</i> a kind of Collective Noun when preceded by the Indefinite Article § 89 . . . . .	1110
How <i>a many</i> is used § 90 . . . . .	1110
<i>MUCH</i> §§ 91—96 . . . . .	1110
Grammatical Functions § 91 . . . . .	1110
<i>Much</i> as Indefinite Numeral § 92—94 . . . . .	1111
Meaning and Use §§ 92—93 . . . . .	1111
<i>Much</i> converted into a pure noun § 94 . . . . .	1114
<i>Much</i> as Adverb §§ 95—96 . . . . .	1114

<i>MORE</i> §§ 97—103 . . . . .	1116
Grammatical Functions § 97 . . . . .	1116
<i>More</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 98—101 . . . . .	1117
Meaning and Use §§ 98—100 . . . . .	1117
<i>More</i> converted into a pure Noun § 101 . . . . .	1120
<i>More</i> as Adverb §§ 102—103 . . . . .	1120
<i>MOST</i> §§ 104—107 . . . . .	1123
Grammatical Functions § 104 . . . . .	1123
<i>Most</i> as Indefinite Numeral § 105 . . . . .	1123
<i>Most</i> as Adverb § 106 . . . . .	1124
<i>NAUGHT (NOUGHT)</i> § 108 . . . . .	1124
<i>NEITHER</i> §§ 109—113 . . . . .	1126
Grammatical Functions § 109 . . . . .	1126
Declined for the Genitive § 110 . . . . .	1126
<i>Neither</i> as Distributive Numeral §§ 111—113 . . . . .	1126
<i>NO</i> §§ 114—134 . . . . .	1127
Grammatical Functions § 114 . . . . .	1127
<i>No</i> as Adnominal Word §§ 115—121 . . . . .	1127
<i>No</i> as a mere negativer §§ 115—117 . . . . .	1127
<i>No</i> in pregnant meanings § 118 . . . . .	1131
<i>Not</i> as a pure negativer § 119 . . . . .	1133
<i>Not a(n)</i> or <i>Not</i> in pregnant meanings § 120 . . . . .	1134
<i>Not any</i> § 121 . . . . .	1136
<i>No</i> as Adverb §§ 122—132 . . . . .	1136
Words modified by adverbial <i>No</i> § 122 . . . . .	1136
<i>No</i> , <i>not a(n)</i> or <i>not</i> modifying the Positive of an Attributive Adjective §§ 123—124 . . . . .	1137
<i>No</i> modifying the Comparative of an Adjective §§ 125—128 . . . . .	1139
The Comparative modified by <i>No</i> is mostly terminational § 125 . . . . .	1139
<i>No</i> modifying an Attributive Comparative § 126 . . . . .	1140
<i>Not a(n)</i> , <i>not any</i> or <i>not</i> before an Attributive Comparative are Sentence-modifiers § 127 . . . . .	1141
<i>No</i> modifying a Predicative Comparative § 128 . . . . .	1141
<i>No</i> modifying the Comparative of an Adverb §§ 129—130 . . . . .	1142
The Comparative modified by Adverbial <i>No</i> either a Sentence- modifier or a Word-modifier § 129 . . . . .	1142
The Comparative a Sentence-modifier § 130 . . . . .	1142
The Comparative a Word-modifier § 131 . . . . .	1146
<i>No</i> modifying the Indefinite Numerals <i>fewer</i> , <i>less</i> or <i>more</i> § 132 . . . . .	1147
<i>No</i> in certain combinations, compounds and phrases §§ 133—134 . . . . .	1149
<i>NONE</i> §§ 135—144 . . . . .	1152
<i>None</i> compared with <i>No</i> § 135 . . . . .	1152
Grammatical Functions § 136 . . . . .	1153
<i>None</i> as Indefinite Pronoun §§ 137—142 . . . . .	1153
Meanings of Absolute <i>None</i> § 137 . . . . .	1153
<i>None</i> in the sense of <i>not any</i> § 138 . . . . .	1153
<i>None</i> in the sense of <i>not</i> + numeral <i>one</i> § 139 . . . . .	1154



<i>None</i> in the sense of <i>not</i> + pronoun <i>one</i> § 140 . . . . .	1154
The Substantival <i>None</i> § 141 . . . . .	1155
Observations § 142 . . . . .	1156
<i>None</i> as Adverb §§ 143—144 . . . . .	1158
ODD §§ 145—146 . . . . .	1160
ONE §§ 147—161 . . . . .	1161
How <i>One</i> is used § 147 . . . . .	1161
<i>One</i> as an independent word §§ 148—160 . . . . .	1161
Applications of the independent <i>One</i> § 148 . . . . .	1161
The independent <i>One</i> in the function of the Dutch <i>men</i> §§ 149—151 . . . . .	1161
<i>One</i> as a kind of Determinative § 152 . . . . .	1163
<i>One</i> in the sense of <i>somebody</i> § 153 . . . . .	1164
<i>One</i> as the correlative of <i>other</i> or another <i>one</i> §§ 154—158 . . . . .	1164
<i>One</i> in the meaning of <i>a certain</i> § 159 . . . . .	1171
Observations § 160 . . . . .	1173
<i>One</i> as substitute for a noun § 161 . . . . .	1174
OTHER §§ 162—169 . . . . .	1175
Grammatical Function and Use § 162 . . . . .	1175
Declension § 163 . . . . .	1175
Meaning and Application of pronominal <i>Other</i> §§ 164—166 . . . . .	1177
<i>Other</i> as Adverb § 167 . . . . .	1185
<i>Other</i> in Compounds § 169 . . . . .	1185
OUGHT § 170 . . . . .	1187
SEVERAL §§ 171—173 . . . . .	1188
Grammatical Function § 171. . . . .	1188
<i>Several</i> as Collective Numeral § 172 . . . . .	1188
<i>Several</i> as Distributive Adjective § 173 . . . . .	1188
SOME §§ 174—182 . . . . .	1189
Grammatical Function § 174. . . . .	1189
<i>Some</i> as Indefinite Pronoun §§ 175—176 . . . . .	1190
<i>Some</i> as Indefinite Numeral §§ 177—178 . . . . .	1193
How <i>Some</i> is used § 179 . . . . .	1195
<i>Some</i> as Adverb § 180 . . . . .	1197
<i>Some</i> in Compounds § 181 . . . . .	1199
<i>Some</i> compared with <i>any</i> § 182 . . . . .	1203
QUASI-INDEFINITE PRONOUNS OR NUMERALS §§ 183—197 . . . . .	1205
Adjectives used as Indefinite Pronouns or Numerals §§ 184—192 . . . . .	1205
Adjectives used as Indefinite Pronouns §§ 185—187 . . . . .	1206
Adjectives used as Indefinite Numerals §§ 188—192 . . . . .	1207
Nouns used as Indefinite Pronouns or Numerals §§ 193—195 . . . . .	1209
and § 197 . . . . .	1209
Nouns used as Indefinite Pronouns §§ 193—195. . . . .	1209
Plurals § 194 . . . . .	1209
Singulars § 195 . . . . .	
Nouns used as Indefinite Numerals § 197 . . . . .	1213
Various pronouns used indefinitely § 196 . . . . .	1213

## CHAPTER XLI.

PRONOMINAL AND ADVERBIAL COMPOUNDS OF <i>SO</i> , <i>SOEVER</i> AND <i>EVER</i> . . . . .	1214
Form §§ 1—2 . . . . .	1214
Use §§ 3—8 . . . . .	1217
Functions § 3 . . . . .	1217
Compounds of <i>so</i> § 4 . . . . .	1218
Compounds of <i>soever</i> §§ 5—6 . . . . .	1218
Compounds of <i>ever</i> §§ 7—8 . . . . .	1221

## CHAPTER XLII.

NUMERALS . . . . .	1225
CARDINAL NUMERALS §§ 1—10 . . . . .	1225
Form §§ 1—2 . . . . .	1225
Use and Meaning §§ 3—10 . . . . .	1230
How Cardinal Numerals are used § 3 . . . . .	
Idiomatic applications of Cardinal Numerals § 4 . . . . .	1231
Their head-word understood § 5 . . . . .	1235
Cardinal Numerals used as pure nouns § 6 . . . . .	1241
Cardinal Numerals used as pure adjectives § 7 . . . . .	1246
Cardinal Numerals in the function of Ordinal Numerals § 8 . . . . .	1246
Idiomatic applications of <i>One</i> §§ 9—10 . . . . .	1247
ORDINAL NUMERALS §§ 11—17 . . . . .	1255
Form § 11 . . . . .	1255
Use §§ 12—17 . . . . .	1256
How Ordinal Numerals are used § 12 . . . . .	1256
Their head-word understood § 13 . . . . .	1256
Ordinal Numerals used as pure nouns in Fractions § 14 . . . . .	1257
Fractions used adverbially § 15 . . . . .	1259
Idiomatic applications of Ordinal Numerals § 16 . . . . .	1260
Adverbs derived from Ordinal Numerals § 17 . . . . .	1261
NUMERALS OF REPETITION §§ 18—22 . . . . .	1261
Form §§ 18—19 . . . . .	1261
Use §§ 20—22 . . . . .	1263
Grammatical Function § 20 . . . . .	1263
Observations §§ 21—22 . . . . .	1264
NUMERALS OF MULTIPLICATION §§ 23—27 . . . . .	1267
Form § 23 . . . . .	1267
Use §§ 24—27 . . . . .	1267
Grammatical Function §§ 24—26 . . . . .	1267
Observations § 27 . . . . .	1271

## CHAPTER XLIII.

PROP-WORDS . . . . .	1272
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS §§ 1—2 . . . . .	1272
THE PROP-WORD <i>ONE</i> §§ 3—25 . . . . .	1273

Observations § 3 . . . . .	1273
One as a Prop-word of the First Kind §§ 4—11 . . . . .	1274
One as a Prop-word of the Second Kind §§ 12—25. . . . .	1281
NOUNS USED AS PROP-WORDS §§ 26—44 . . . . .	1301
Such as denote persons §§ 27—34 . . . . .	1301
Body as a Prop-word §§ 28—29. . . . .	1301
Man as a Prop-word §§ 30—33 . . . . .	1305
Other person-indicating nouns used as Prop-words § 34 . . . . .	1307
Such as denote things §§ 35—43 . . . . .	1307
Thing as a Prop-word §§ 36—42 . . . . .	1307
Affair and Matter used as Prop-words § 43 . . . . .	1319
Concluding Observations § 44 . . . . .	1320

## CHAPTER XLIV.

REPETITION OF ADNOMINAL MODIFIERS. . . . .	1321
GENERAL OBSERVATION § 1 . . . . .	1321
REPETITION OR NON-REPETITION OF ADNOMINAL MODIFIERS BEFORE	
A GROUP OF TWO OR MORE NOUNS §§ 2—3 . . . . .	1321
Non-repetition § 2. . . . .	1321
Repetition § 3 . . . . .	1324
REPETITION OR NON-REPETITION OF ADNOMINAL MODIFIERS BEFORE	
A GROUP OF ADJECTIVES MODIFYING ONE AND THE SAME NOUN §§ 4—6	1325
Non-repetition § 4. . . . .	1325
Repetition § 5 . . . . .	1325
Repetition affecting the number of the noun modified § 6 .	1326



## CHAPTER XXXII.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### FORM.

#### DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The personal pronouns are declined as follows:

	1st. Person.		2nd Person.		3rd Person.			
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.		Plur.	
					Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	I	we	thou	ye	he	she	it	they
Obj.	me	us	thee	you	him	her	it	them.

2. The genitives of the personal pronouns are now used only adnominally, i. e. as possessive pronouns.

Note. The antiquated or literary genitives of the Dutch personal pronouns are variously rendered:

- a) by a possessive pronoun, as in: uws gelijke = *your equal*; om uws zelfs wil = *for your own sake*.

Sir Peter vows he has not *his equal* in England. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (365).

- β) by a combination consisting of a preposition + personal pronoun:  
 Erbarm u mijner! = *Have mercy (up)on me!*  
 Ontferm u mijner! = *Have (Take) pity (up)on me!* — *Have compassion (up)on me!* (*To take compassion (up)on* is now obsolete. MURRAY.)

Gedenk mijner! = *Think of me!* or *Remember me!*

Hij is uwer (on)waardig = *He is (un)worthy of you.*

Een (twee, etc.) uwer (onzer, hunner) = *One (two, etc.) of you (us, them).* Wie onzer (uwer, hunner)? = *Who among(st) us (you, them)?*



## SHORTENINGS.

3. a) In stressless positions the aspirate of *he*, *his* and *her* disappears in natural educated speech, the *h* of *he* being, however, weakly aspirated at the beginning of a sentence. In the case of the neuter pronoun the weak form without the aspirate is used throughout and, the *h* has disappeared in writing.

Note. The loss of the *h* of the neuter pronoun is, no doubt, due to its infrequency in stressed positions. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 205; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 9.42.

Apart from those cases in which rhythmical considerations more or less counteract the weakening of *it* (e. g. in *I thought of it*), we find it assuming medium or even strong stress:

- a) when after a preposition it stands before the subject.

The Green lay at the extremity of the village, and *from it* the road branched off in two directions. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 11.

- β) when as nominal part of the predicate or as subject of a nominal predicate it has back-position.

If I have a leisure hour in the day, this is *it*. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XV, 184.

"Here's a place for writing", said Bathsheba. "What shall I put?" — "Something of this sort, I should think", returned Liddy promptly: — "The rose is red, | The violet blue, | Carnation's sweet, | And so are you." — "Yes, that shall be *it*." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 110.

When the copula is attended by the negative *not*, the latter takes strong stress, causing *it* to re-assume its ordinary weak stress.

CRAV. But, ladies, that's true — have you heard the news? — Mrs. CAND. What, sir, do you mean the report of? — CRAV. No, ma'am that's not *it*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (370).

"If it had not been for that woman, you would never have entertained this teaching scheme at all." Clym looked hard at his mother. "You know that is not *it*", he said. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, III, Ch. III, 236.

- γ) when it is placed in juxtaposition with, or in opposition to, another (pro)noun. Thus frequently after the conjunctions *and*, *but* and *or*.

\* The length of those five days I can convey no idea of to any one . . . The way in which I listened to . . . the setting in of rain one evening, with a fresh smell, and its coming down faster and faster, between me and the church, until *it* and gathering night seemed to quench me in gloom. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 30a.

The shop . . . was, with reference to the first floor, where shops usually are; and there all resemblance between *it* and any other shop stopped short and ceased. Id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. IV, 17a.

*It*, (sc. her work) and what she laughingly called her parish duties . . . absorbed her so much that [etc.]. Mrs. CRAIK, *King Arthur*, Ch. VII, 214. In front stretched a beautiful and stately gallery, terminating in a pillared window, through which streamed a light to which both *it* and the gallery had been strangers for nearly a score of years. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. VI, 134.

\*\* She has no more heart than the stone you are leaning on; and *it* or you or I might fall into the water, and never come up again, and she wouldn't care. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 144.

\*\*\* The eye which has long been used to the crinoline gets to think, not *it*, but the lack of it, a deformity. RICH. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. IX, 108.

\*\*\*\* Ah! who was I that I should quarrel with the town for being changed to me, when I myself had come back, so changed, to *it*.<sup>1)</sup>

- δ) when together with the negative *not*, it forms an elliptical sentence.  
 "But it'll perhaps rain cats and dogs to-morrow, as it did yesterday, and then you can't go", said Godfrey, hardly knowing whether he wished for that obstacle or not. — "Not *it*", said Dunstan. "I'm always lucky in my weather. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. III, 24.

- b) In Older English, and in dialects, we often find *it* further curtailed into '*t*. JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 9.94.

She harkened to '*t*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 1, (257).

If I have a mind to list, why so; if not, why '*tis* not so. *ib.*, I, 1, (252).

What's a-wanting to '*t*? G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 2.

I donna mind sayin' as I'll let '*t* alone at your askin', Seth. *ib.*, I, Ch. I, 3. (Thus, apparently, regularly in the dialect speech represented in this novel.)

She dropped off into a nap about an hour ago, and '*t* will do her good. HARDY, *Return of the Nat.*, I, Ch. II, 12.

'*T*would be very unlike me. *ib.*, I, Ch. III, 21.

'*Tis* no matter. *ib.*, I, Ch. II, 13. (Thus, apparently, throughout this novel, in the language of the uneducated.)

Note. α) In Late Modern English poetry this elision is still frequent before *is*, and instances may be common enough before *was* and *were*.

'*Twas* throwing words away. WORDSW., *We are seven*, 67.

And the bride-maidens whisper'd, "*'Twere* better by far | To have match'd our fair cousin with young Lochinvar." SCOTT, *Marm.*, V, XII, vi.

'*Tis* a picture for remembrance! Mrs. BROWN., *Lady Geraldine's Courtship*, XXXVI.

Also in literary prose late instances are occasionally found.

'*Twas* thus he tried to comfort himself. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. X, 117.

β) In conformity with *I'm* (for *I am*), *thou'rt* (for *thou art*), *he's* (for *he is*), *we're*, *you're*, *they're* (for *we are*, *you are*, *they are*), *it is* is now usually contracted into *it's*. MURRAY, s. v. *it*, A, γ.

*It's* a pretty spot, whoever may own it. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 11.

*It's* a grey cob, sir, an' he sets great store by't. *ib.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

*It's* rather a sad story. CHESTERTON, *Manalive*, I, Ch. I, 22.

γ) The contraction of *is it* into *is't* is archaic, poetic, colloquial or dialectal. MURRAY, s. v. *is't*.

- c) According to JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 13.62) *a* or *'a* is a common form for unstressed *he* in Elizabethan English and later (BEN JONSON, GOLDSMITH, etc.). The same form is frequently met with in the Wessex dialect, as given in the novels of TH. HARDY. Here, however, it stands not only as the representative

1) KRUSINGA, *Drie Talen*, XXVI, vii, 99.

of *he*, but also of *she* and *it*, and even of *I*, the latter pronouns often varying with it in one and the same sentence. Compare also MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, I, 314.

\* Who'er 'a was, 'a show'd a mounting mind. Love's Labour's Lost, IV, 1, 4

A troublesome old blade . . . but 'a keeps as good wines . . . as any in the whole country. GOLDSMITH.

He threw away his chance, and so 'a took a public-house to live. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. III, 26.

\*\* My wife . . . went with the rest of the maidens, for 'a was a good runner afore *she* got heavy. Ib., I, Ch. IV, 56.

\*\*\* "I suppose the moon was terrible full when you were born?" — "Well, 'a was not new", Mr. Fairway replied. Ib., I, Ch. III, 30.

That fire is not much less than a mile and a half off, for all that 'a seems so near. Ib., I, Ch. III, 33.

\*\*\*\* Wonderful clever, 'a believe — ah, I should like to have all that's under that young man's hair. Ib., I, Ch. III, 21.

"Miss Vye was there too?" — "Ay, 'a b'lieve she was." Ib., III, Ch. III, 234.

Compare: Ah don't like goin' to bed on a empty tongue. Westm. Gaz. No. 6660, 13a.

d) The suppression of the *u* of *us*, which, according to JESPERSEN (Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 9.94), was common enough in Elizabethan English, is now only met with in the admonitory *let's*, as in *let's go*!

e) The clipping of the pronouns for the second person into respectively *th* and *y* before a vowel or *h*, which used to be common in Early Modern English, seems to survive in some dialects. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1077; MURRAY, s. v. *th-th'*.

i. Dostn't wish *th'*wast three sixes again? HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. III, 20.

ii. Ye might get religion, and that 'ud be the best day's earnings y'ever made. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. I, 4.

Why, y'are gettin as big a saint as Seth. Ib.

I wot not whence you come, . . . but ye have been well brought up.

Y'have a good mother, I'll go bail. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XXIV, 94.

Note. a) The once common practice of throwing out the entire pronoun in question is now met with only archaically or dialectally. For illustration see also Ch. XXII, 4, *b*, and compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 6.36.

What *art* goin' to do, Adam? G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. IV, 32.

*Didst* ever know a man, neighbour, that 'no woman at all would marry? HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. III, 27.

β) The suppression of the pronoun before the verb seems to belong only to dialects.

*Couldst* sign the book, no doubt, . . . if *wast* young enough to join hands with a woman again. Ib., I, Ch. III, 26.

f) For the shortening of *ye* into *ee* etc. see below: 19, *e*.

## CASE-SHIFTINGS.

4. From divers causes, sometimes operating together, the personal pronoun is often placed in a case in which, according to its grammatical function, it ought not to be placed. Mostly it is the nominative which yields place to the objective. This substitution is especially frequent in colloquial and vulgar language, that in the opposite direction mostly springing from inconsiderate attempts on the part of would-be precise speakers to stem the prevailing colloquial tendencies.

The chief causes to which the case-changes are due are:

- a) the attraction of some word with which the personal pronoun is grammatically related (Compare also Ch. XXVI, 18, a);
- b) the blending of two ideas which causes a (pro)noun to be erroneously considered as the subject of a verb to which it is related in another way;
- c) the uncertain grammatical character of the word on which the pronoun depends for its case;
- d) the generally prevailing disinclination to use the nominative of a pronoun when not clearly and visibly connected with a finite verb.

The two first causes make themselves only occasionally felt. The third has been primarily responsible, perhaps, more than any other, for the confusion of the case-forms and the consequent carelessness with which they are used. But the fourth is now the most potent factor in effecting a collapse of the old case distinctions.

5. a) By attraction (Ch. XXVI, 18, a) the personal pronoun is sometimes placed in the objective instead of the grammatically correct nominative, owing to the fact that the relative pronoun, expressed or understood, of which it is the antecedent, is in the objective.

OLI. Know you where you are, sir? — ORL. O, sir, very well: here in your orchard. — OLI. Know you before whom, sir? — ORL. Ay, better than *him* I am before knows me. As you like it, I, I, 46.

Better leave undone than by our deeds acquire | Too high a fame when *him* we serve's away.<sup>1)</sup>

Our noble Arthur, *him* | Ye scarce can overpraise, will hear and know. TENNYSON.<sup>2)</sup>

The substitution is especially frequent after *it is* and its variations. In this case it is, however, the fourth cause that is the main factor to bring about the change.

It is *thee* I fear. Henry VI, B, IV, 1.

It is *her* you should consult on such a matter. TROL., Old Man, 121.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> I. SCHMIDT, Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 295, Anm. 4.

<sup>2)</sup> JESPERSEN, Progress, § 154.



PEER. I'm so glad you're going to fight, John. Land him one on the bread-basket! — JOHN. Don't you make any mistake — it's you I'm going for, not *him*! You want to shift the taxes from your land on to my bread-basket! Westm. Gaz., No. 5207, 2c.

- b) Attraction in the opposite direction is much rarer.

A fault to nature, | To reason most absurd; whose common theme | is death of fathers, and who still hath cried | From the first corpse till *he* that died to-day, | "This must be so." Haml., I, 2, 105.

The encouraging words of *he* that led in the front. BUNYAN.<sup>1)</sup>

6. When a personal pronoun is logically related to more verbs than one, it is not always placed in the case which would be required by its relation to the verb on which it grammatically depends.

Thus we sometimes find the nominative instead of the grammatically correct objective:

- a) in the accusative with infinitive, the pronoun being apprehended to stand in the subjective relation to the infinitive.

I would have both you and *she* know that it is not for her fortune he follows her. FIELDING, Tom Jones.<sup>2)</sup>

[They] make *we* fokes (i. e. folks) in the congregation feel all over like the children of Israel. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XXXIII, 261.

- b) after *let*. Also in this case the pronoun is understood to be in the subjective relation to the following infinitive. Thus also in Dutch *Laat ik dit doen* is a frequent variant of *Laat mij dit doen*. For such combinations as *let my brothers and I* etc. see also 11, c. Ample illustration may be found in JESPERSEN, Progress, § 156 and STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 678.

Let no man abide this deed | But *we* the doers. Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 95.

Let us make a covenant, *I* and *thou*. Bible, Gen., XXI, 44.

Let *He* who made thee answer that. BYRON.<sup>3)</sup>

Let there only be *we* three there. DICK., Edw. Drood.<sup>4)</sup>

7. a) When *but* introduces an incomplete adverbial clause of exception (Ch. XVII, 152 ff.), it partakes largely of the character of a preposition with the result that there is much vacillation between the nominative and the accusative of the personal pronoun standing after it.

Thus *Nobody went but me* seems to be equally good English as *Nobody went but I*. The former may be considered to stand for *Nobody went excepting me*, the latter for *Nobody went except that I went*, either analysis being apparently equally justifiable. As a general rule we may say that, wherever two interpretations are possible, the colloquial language prefers the objective, while the literary language, when not avoiding the point, favours the nominative.

According to ONIONS (Advanced English Synt., § 114, a) the choice of the case depends to a certain extent on the arrangement of

1) STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 679.

2) JESPERSEN, Progress, § 155.

3) *Ib.*, § 156.

4) STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 678.



the words of the sentence. Thus ordinary English would have *No one would have thought of it but him*, but *No one but he would have thought of it*. To this it may be added that the substitution of the objective for the nominative in the second of the above sentences would seem to be a downright vulgarism.

A similar hesitation to some extent prevails, for the same reason, with regard to the case of the personal pronouns standing after *save* and *except*. According to MURRAY (s. v. *save*, 1, *b*), the nominative is the normal construction after *save*.

- 1) The objective required, whether *but* be considered as a conjunction or a preposition.

Thou shalt have none other gods *but me*. Common Prayer (The Authorized Version: Deut., V, 7 has: . . . *before me*.)

I know you like to hear no one speak *but him*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XXVIII, 314. I feel that I never, never can think about any woman *but her*. Id., Pen d., I, Ch. VII, 92.

I can't bear to let anybody have him *but me*. HARDY, Tess., IV, Ch. XXVIII, 233.

- 2) The objective the right case only if *but*, *save* or *except* is considered as a preposition.

**but.** As for the other two, they could not swim, | So nobody arrived on shore *but him*. BYRON, Don Juan, II, cvi.

There's not a soul in my house *but me* to-night. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XXXIV, 271.

"No one can do it *but me*", said Coralie to herself, scornful of grammar. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. X, 222.

**save.** Who should be king *save him* who makes us free? TENNYSON.<sup>1)</sup>

All who stood at the bar *save him* alone. MAC., Es.<sup>2)</sup>

**except.** \* We are all fond of the life here (*except me*). DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. XI, 284a.

There never was one of the male Esmonds that had more brains than a goose, *except him*. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 20.

\*\* Every one, *except me*, seemed to dislike and distrust him. BEAT. HARRADEN, The Fowler, II, Ch. IV, 111.

- 3) The nominative the right case only if *but*, *save* or *except* is considered as a conjunction.

**but.** \* There is none *but he* | Whose being I do fear. Macb., III, 1, 54.

Methinks nobody should be sad *but I*. King John, IV, 1, 13.

Away went Gilpin — who *but he*? COWPER, John Gilpin.

None ever found the secret spring before. None ever would *but he*. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XII, 62.

Who can have done it *but I*? HARDY, The Return of the Native, V, Ch. I, 386.

\*\* The boy stood on the burning deck, | Whence all *but he* had fled. Mrs. HEMANS, Casabianca.

None *but I* can ride my Winnie mare. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XI, 61.

**save.** \* I do entreat you, not a man depart, | *Save I* alone, till Antony have spoke. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 66.

No man knoweth the Father *save* the Son *and he* to whomsoever the Son will reveal him. Bible, Matth., XI, 27.

1) JESPERSEN, Progress, § 159. 2) FLÜGEL.

That mortal dint, | *Save he* who reigns above, none can resist. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, II, 813. (In his *Essay on Frederic the Great* MACAULAY places the pronoun in the objective.)

Now no one *save she* who placed the ring there, will know its true history. *Daily Mail* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 4b).

Oh, there are calls that love can hear, | That strike not on the outward ear. | None heard *save I*: but with a dart | Of lightning-pain it pierced my heart. BRIDGES, *Demeter* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 4b).

\*\* All the conspirators, *save only he*, | Did that they did in envy of great Cæsar. *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 5, 69.

**except.** \* Everybody is to know him *except I*. MEREDITH, *Frag. Com.*, 28. 1)

\*\* Now he had lost her, he wanted her back; and perhaps every one present, *except he*, guessed why. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV.

The nominative wrongly used for the objective, the latter case being required also if *but* is considered as a conjunction. You know my father hath no child *but I*. As you like it, I, 2, 18.

You have not a man in all Athens able to discharge Pyramus *but he*. *Mids.*, IV, 2, 8.

- b) *As* and *than*, although commonly understood as conjunctions, are sometimes used in connections in which both the nominative and the objective seem to be justifiable.

Thus *I never saw a man so angry as he* (— *as he was*) or *as him* (= *as I saw him*); *I never saw a man more angry than he* (= *than he was*) or *than him* (= *than I saw him*). This uncertainty of grammatical function is responsible for a great deal of wavering between the nominative and the objective in the personal pronouns, although in sentences of the above type the objective is mostly regarded as the right case, and is also the one most used.

But also when grammatical analysis either way would indubitably show the pronoun to be the subject, the objective is often preferred, a) owing to the general predilection for objective forms in certain positions (7); ß) owing to the semi-prepositional character which attaches to *as*, and especially to *than*.

The view of considering *than*, when followed by a bare pronoun, as a preposition, receives some support from the all but invariable use of the objective of the relative *who* in the same position. Here the objective may have become fixed, because the clause admits of no expansion. Compare also Ch. XVI, 6, c; and see ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*, § 288—304; ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 59, 114, b.

Which, when Beelzebub perceived, *than whom*, | Satan except, none higher sat. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, II, 299.

Lord Milner *than whom* Mr. Chamberlain said he had never met a better man, had placed the Empire under such an immeasurable debt of gratitude. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. CXCVI, 330a.

I found in him a true friend, better *than whom* no man could desire. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 66, 223.

The objective seems to be regular also when the pronoun standing after *than* is followed by *all* or *both*.

1) JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 159.

A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than *them both*. Bible, Prov., XXVII, 3.

Foreign Ministers come and Foreign Ministers go: but Madame Novikoff, whether working with them or against them, has never lost the unofficial, but influential position from which she was able to render better service to her country than *them all*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 273a.

It may furthermore be observed that precise speakers in order to avoid the odious taint of alleged vulgarity which the use of exceptionable objectives entails, eschew these incomplete clauses, preferring their expanded equivalents, as referred to above. These expanded clauses are, however, common enough also in ordinary conversation. (42, b.)

He is not so stupid *as I am*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXIII, 34.

You want it more than *I do*. *Id.*, Ch. II, 21.

The fellow is no more connected with Roland's house *than I am*. *Id.*, Rolandseck. Another very common device to avoid the point is the use of the reflective pronoun, as in:

He knew the customs of the Valais Alps better than *myself*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5207, 9a.

1) The nominative normally used according to analysis.

**as.** I have as quick, | As exquisite a sense of pain *as he*. G. LILLO, Fatal Curiosity, I, 3.

Thou canst not love so dear *as I*. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 59.

**than.** He was older *than she* by more than twenty years. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.

One of the pair was Angel Clare, the other a tall budding creature — half girl, half woman — a spiritualized image of Tess, slighter than *she*, but with the same beautiful eyes. HARDY, Tess, VII, Ch. LIX, 518.

Foreigners are more accustomed to them (sc. scraps from dramatic works) *than we*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5207, 7b.

2) The objective used, although analysis would require the nominative.

**as.** \* Is she as tall *as me*? Ant. and Cleop., III, 3, 14.

I think your ladyship's as plain *as me* to the full. FARQUHAR, Recruit. Offic., I, 2, (264).

The nations, not so blest *as thee*, | Must in their turn to tyrants fall. THOMSON, Rule Britannia, II.

What, the one as big *is me*? DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, V, 105.

**than.** And pensive to her father's house she went | Enjoining silence strict to Zoë, who | Better *than her* knew what, in fact, she meant. BYRON, Don Juan, I, CXXXVI. Of all our band, . . . none | Can less have said or more have done | Than *thee*, Mazeppa! *Id.*, Mazeppa, IV.

I'll tell you what, brother Frank, you are a great deal wiser *than me*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVII.

And ef (vulgar for *if*) there's going to be any godfathers round, I'd like to see who's got any better rights *than me*. BRET HARTE, The Luck of Roaring Camp., 12.

3) The nominative used in harmony with analysis, although the element with which the pronoun is compared is in the objective.

**as.** \* I had as lief not be as live to be | In awe of such a thing *as I myself*. Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 95.

There is old Alderman Ox continues to hold his Saxon epithet, while he is under the charge of serfs and bondsmen such *as thou*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. I.  
 An evangelist has nothing to do with such *as they*. HARDY, *Tess*, VI, Ch. XLV, 401.  
 She's above mating with such *as I*. *Id.*, *Return of the Nat.*, I, Ch. V, 12.  
 \*\* Doubtless thou wouldst have such a strapping lad *as he* to carry thy wallet. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXIV, 264.

No more Spaniard-hunting for me now, my masters. God will send no such fools *as I* upon his errands. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXII, 245a.  
 You find such *as I* everywhere. HARDY, *Tess*, V, Ch. XXXV, 302.

A munificent landlord, and a sound level-headed politician — what other country or class, could produce such *as he*? EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. VII, 63.

**than.** \* The day shall come when you shall sail with Richard Grenville himself, or with better men *than he*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 7b.

O Time... have you left the tiny heart-strings to defy you? Ah, yes! they were spun by a Mightier *than thou*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

\*\* But I was coming away, when he suddenly said he had that day seen a woman more beautiful *than I*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXVII, 297.  
 You have no more devoted friend *than I*. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 105.

- 4) The objective used **contrary** to analysis, perhaps owing to the element with which the pronoun is compared standing in the objective.

**as.** \* She told him... that the mother of Colonel Henry Warrington... was not to be insulted by such a little smuggling slave-driver *as him*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 993.

\*\* They were only too glad to have a fine likely boy such *as him*... come to offer himself. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VI, 113.

I am not sure that you understand women; not, at any rate, such a woman *as her*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXII, 318.

Now, how could a Christian tackle such customers *as them*? CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIII, 168a.

**than.** \* He means to keep this wealth for worthier men *than us*. *Id.*, 168b.

I have fought with worse *than him*. *Id.*, *The Heroes*, I, iv, 76.

\*\* All my talk was how vile and bad it was in him to love any lady better *than me*. LAMB, *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 225.

- 5) The nominative used, although justified by no analysis and although the element with which the pronoun is compared stands in the objective.

My soul hates nothing more *than he*. *As you like it*, I, I, 172.

What is he indeed, | More suits you to conceive than *I* to speak of. *Id.*, I, 2, 278.

I danced with a young officer the other night, whom I love a thousand times more *than he*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. IX, 110.

Note. What has been said of *as* does not apply to *(un)like*, which, when followed by a bare (pro)noun, is to all intents and purposes a preposition. Ch. III, 14.

I won no end of money — no end for a poor beggar *like me*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 333.

You ought to beg, and not to live here with gentlemen's children *like us*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 5.

Oh, fie! it is wicked to talk so. Compare a poor, coarse-favoured girl *like me* with the Queen of Heaven? CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. II, 18.



The nominative is rare. JESPERSEN (Progress, § 160) quotes:

Yes, if it was a sweet girl . . . and not one *like I*. R. WINTLE, *A Regular Scandal*, 35.

8. The practice of substituting the objective for the nominative of a personal pronoun when not clearly connected with a finite verb of which it is the subject, is especially frequent with the pronoun of the first person singular.

The common use of *me* instead of *I* is, no doubt, in some measure due to the sameness of sound of *me* with *he*, *she* and *we*, which are distinctly felt as subject words; and to the influence of the French construction *c'est moi*, etc.

In American English the grammatical distinction is said to be rigidly kept up. Compare also: MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 477; ALFORD, *Queen's Eng.*, § 301; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1075; id., JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 184 ff; ELLINGER, *E. S.*, XX; id., *Verm. Beitr.*, 42; ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 25; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 673 ff; UHRSTRÖM, *Stud. on the Lang. of Samuel Richardson*, 29.

Here follow a couple of quotations with the grammatically correct *I*.

Open Martin, old boy, it's only *I*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 239.  
Ah, that it had been *I*! CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 144a.

We often find *me* instead of the grammatically correct *I*:

- a) when the pronoun is the nominal part of the predicate. This *me* is quite common even in the language of educated speakers.

My dear, don't be frightened, it's only *me*. DICK., *Pickw.*

Behold, it was only *me*, trembling like a leaf and crying like a ninny. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, III, Ch. III.

Before a substantive clause the nominative form seems to be usually retained, this construction being only used in literary English.

*It is I* that shall feel lonely. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXX, 248.

When the subject is not the anticipating *it*, as in the above quotations, the objective seems to be unavoidable.

While you are *me*, why shouldn't I be you? KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. VII, 76.

I will tell you the truth. The culprit is here, he is *me* — I mean I am him. PUNCH, 1913.

Compare: There is only one master in this country: I am *he*. II. *Lond. News*, No. 2341, 525a.

I should have thrown their eye into the sea, if I had been *he*. EL, GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. I, 9.

- b) when the pronoun forms a sentence by itself, or is not, at least, accompanied by any finite verb. For instances with *but*, *as*, *than* and (*un*)*like* see above.

Who is there? *Me*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 477.

I don't know, Frank . . . what the world is coming to, or *me* either. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 333.

What! *me* spend a month's meal and meat and fire on such vanity as that! READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 7.

"I know which of us three is the happiest at meeting again." — "*Me?*" inquired Margaret. *ib.*, Ch. II, 15.



We subjoin some quotations with the grammatically correct *I*.

*I* coax! *I* wheedle! *I*'m above it! FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 1.

*I* think the worse of him? DICK, *Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 144.

*I* to marry before my brother, and leave him with none to take care of him? BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXX, 178.

They will kill my Gerard, and *I* not near him. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XX, 83.

Note. There is nothing ungrammatical in the use of the objective in such elliptical exclamatory sentences as are instanced below, either vulgar language, or utterances of an afflicted mind, belonging to the higher literary style. In them the pronoun is understood to be rather in the objective than in the subjective relation to the verb implied in the preceding word. Thus *Dear me!* may be felt as on a par with (*God*) *bless me!* Compare also Ch. XXII, 4; Ch. XXXII, 14, *a*, 2 and see JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 169.

i. *Dear me!* you have no notion of the size of the house. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

"*My goodness me!*" said Mary, adjusting the tucker. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 478.

*Oh, gracious me!* Id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLI, 160*a*.

*Oh, goodness gracious me!* Ib., Ch. XLI, 162*a*.

ii. *Ay me*, how weak a thing | The heart of woman is! JUL. CÆS., II, 4, 40.

*O me*, what hast thou done? HAMLET, III, 4, 26.

*Ah me*, you must bear your own burthen, fashion your own faith, think your own thoughts and pray your own prayer! THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

c) when the pronoun is connected by *and* with a noun or another pronoun. As a rule common courtesy causes uneducated speakers to mention themselves last only when they couple themselves with the person(s) spoken to.

i. At home if *me or George* praised a woman, Mrs. Esmond, and Mountain, too, would be sure to find fault with her. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVII, 278.

*Me and John* came home yesterday. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1085.

People go gassin' about the country, because they haven't the knowledge of it that *me and you've* got. W. PETT RIDGE (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 11*b*).

*Me and my husband* thank you very much for the nice present you sent. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5190, 4*a*.

ii. Do you recollect what a jolly night we had here last summer? . . . *You and me* with our coats on. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 43.

Why, man, *you and me*, we're leaders. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. XXXV, 238.

Educated speakers mostly use *I* in these connections and generally make a point of mentioning themselves last.

\* *I and all your friends* must acknowledge the highest honour done to your family in the proposal. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. V, 104*a*.

\*\* Egad, *my brother and I* were neither of us very prudent youths. SHER., *School for Scand.*, II, 3, (385).

We were standing apart from the ladies . . . when *Barnes and I* had our little passage of arms. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXX, 347.

*Ridley and I* are off for Rome. Ib., 350.

*Amelia and I* are always happy to see a friend in our plain way. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 41.

9. In most of the dialects in which *you* has not become the only form of address, *thee* is mostly used instead of *thou*. This also used to be the most frequent form employed by Quakers in their familiar talk among themselves. Thus in Mrs. CRAIK'S John Halifax the Friends regularly use *thee* for *thou*. Compare also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 676; JESPERSEN, Progress, § 208; id., Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 2.83; FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

Don't think I am afraid of such a fellow as *thee* art. FIELDING, Tom Jones, XV, Ch. V, 104*b*.

*Thee* and I are to part...when two such as I and *thee* meet. Spect., No. 132.

*Thee* need not go into the wet, my lad. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 5.

Where dost *thee* come from? Ib., Ch. I, 7.

Hast *thee* any parents living? Ib., Ch. I, 7.

What! dost think *thee*'st finished the door. G. ELIOT. Adam Bede, I, Ch. I, 2.

10. a) In Standard English of the present day the objective has entirely superseded the nominative of the personal pronoun of the second person plural.

In the Authorized Version (1611) the distinction between the the nominative *ye* and the objective *you* is still rigidly kept up.

With what measure *ye* mete, it shall be measured to *you* again. Bible, Matth., VII, 2.

But already before this time this distinction had been given up. SHAKESPEARE and MARLOWE use *you* and *ye* without any distinction of case, occasionally showing some preference for *you* in stressed and for *ye* in unstressed positions. This indiscriminate use of *ye* and *you* has continued in archaic language down to the present time. See also ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 220; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 1001; JESPERSEN, Progress, § 206.

I do beseech *ye*, if *you* bear me hard, | Now, whilst your purpled hands do reek and smoke, | Fulfil your pleasure. Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 157.

I feel the Gales that from *ye* blow. GRAY, Ode, 15.

Nor *you*, *ye* Proud, impute to These the fault, | If Mem'ry o'er their Tomb no Trophies raise. Id., Elegy, 37.

And *you*, *ye* well-known trees! JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sens., Ch. V, 29.

I call upon *ye*, by the written charm | Which gives me power upon *you*. BYRON, Manfred, I, 1.

I wish your fate may yield *ye*, when she chooses, | The fame *you* envy, and the skill *you* need. Id., Don Juan, Dedic. VIII (The reference is to SOUTHEY, WORDSWORTH and other 'Lakers').

Some writers try to keep up the distinction. Thus, according to FICKER (Bemerk. zu Sprache und Wortschatz in Ten.'s Id. of the King, 23) TENNYSON uses *ye* only as a nominative. Compare page 719.

Further instances of the distinction being kept up are found in:

O *ye* hopes, that stir within me, | Health comes with *you* from above. COLERIDGE, On revisiting the Seashore, VI.

All the souls *ye* left behind *you* | Teach us, here the way to find *you*. KEATS, Ode on the Poets, 25. (The reference is to the Poets.)

The plural *ye* is not confined to the higher literary style, it is also frequent enough in colloquial and vulgar language, where it occurs in stressless positions.

Up, *ye* beggars! There's something happened to the Colonel's son. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

Sit wider! can't *ye*? READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 3.

- b) So early as the Elizabethan period *you* was in ordinary use also as a singular nominative and accusative.

For a discussion of the singular forms of the pronouns of the second person generally see Ch. XXXV.

Note. α) When intended as a plural, *you* is often followed by a suitable plural noun. See JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 206; id., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 287.

If any of *you gents* like a glass of punch this evening at eight o'clock, Bob Swinney's your man. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 15.

We can see now that there wouldn't have been room here for all *you girls*. ANSTEY, *Paleface and Redskin*, 173.

What time shall I wake *you fellows*? JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. IV, 47.

β) In the dialect of East Anglia *together*, and in the southern states of North America *all* is employed in the same function. MURRAY, s. v. *together*, 2, e; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 288. With this use of *together* compare the application of *samen* in the dialect of Gelderland in salutations: *Goeie navend samen* (= Standard Dutch *Goeden avond samen*).

Where are *you* going *together*? Notes and Quer., 1st. Ser. II, 217.2. 1)

If *you all* don't make less noise, I'll send you to bed. 2) (Different from: If *you all of you* etc.)

γ) In the literature of the eighteenth century *you* is often followed by *was* when a singular, and by *were* when a plural. Instances of this practice seem to have been less common in earlier English, and occur in later English only as vulgarisms. It must be observed, however, that in Present English *was* is used throughout for all persons in both numbers: *I was, you was, he was, we was, they was*. JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 289.

- c) Besides *you*, *thou* and *thee*, *ye* is frequent as a singular. It is met with, mostly irrespective of case, but always in stressless positions:

α) chiefly in the language of the illiterate and in dialects.

In the first chapter of *Adam Bede* by G. ELIOT the workmen in their talk among themselves use *thee*, *ye* and *you*.

Good morrow, my dear, how d'ye this morning? FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, V, 1, 5.

Sit *ye* down before the fire, my dear, and have a warm, Lord bless *ye* DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 57.

1) MURRAY. 2) JESPERSEN.

Get out of Mr. Fletcher's road, *ye* idle lounging, little . . . Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 1.

D'ye stand there, knave, and see your master robbed? READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XII, 62.

"Beg pardon, miss", said the gamekeeper, "but I just caught a glimpse o'ye, and I make so bold as to come along to speak t'ye. Mrs. ALEXANDER, For his Sake, I, Ch. III, 49.

Let me just say how d'ye do to her first. W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. IV, 40.

§) in poetry when the simple language of the illiterate is reproduced:

"Are *ye* out of your mind, my nurse, my nurse", | Said Lady Clare, "that *ye* speak so wild?" TEN., Lady Clare, VI.

"Nay, now, my child", said Alice the nurse, | "But keep the secret all *ye* can." Ib., IX.

Mother tho' *ye* count me still the child, | Sweet mother, do *ye* love the child? Id., Gareth and Lyn., 35.

O, Merlin do *ye* love me? Id., Merl. and Viv.

TENNYSON, from whom all the above quotations have been taken, seems to use the singular *ye* exclusively as a nominative. The alternative use of *you* and *ye* in the following quotation may prove this. Compare page 717.

And truly I, when first | I saw *you* moving by me on the bridge, | Felt *ye* were somewhat. Id., Mar. of Ger., 429—430.

When it is not the language of the illiterate which he is imitating, he uses *you* or *thou*.

May *you* rule us long! Id., To the Queen.

O God! my God! have mercy now. | I faint, I fall. Men say that *Thou* | Didst die for me. Id., Supposed Confessions, 2.

We subjoin some quotations illustrating the alternate use of the singular *ye* and *you*, irrespective of case, both in prose and verse.

i. He 's been calling for *ye*, and calling and calling. But he thinks ye're in heaven together seemingly, so *you* must not say anything to shock him. HALL CAINE, The Christian, IV, Ch. XV, 281.

ii. "'Tis green, 'tis green, Sir, I assure *ye*." | "Green!", cries the other in a fury: | "Why, Sir, d'ye think I've lost my eyes?" | "'T were no great loss". the friend replies; | For if they always serve *you* thus, | *You'll* find them but of little use." REV. JOHN MERRICK, The Cameleon (A. S. KOK, Rainbow, II, xxxviii).

Have *you* no traditions — none | Of the court of Solomon? | No memorial how *ye* went | With Prince Hiram's armament? Mrs. MARY HOWITT, The Monkey, III (A. S. KOK, The Rainbow, I, xiv).

d) Such forms as *I tell ye*, *I'll thank ye*, *Hark ye* were still frequent in the language of educated speakers a few generations ago, and in rapid speech *How d'ye do* or *Ho di (de) do* are still heard every day, not only from illiterate speakers. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1079.

i. And *I'll thank ye*, give me a glass of punch, too, John. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 320.

But *hark ye!* I don't think, my dear fellow, you are quite smart enough — quite well enough dressed. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 68.

*Hark ye*, John, I have friends still, and persons of rank and reputation, too. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XX, 209.



ii. *How de do*, ladies? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 427.

- e) A further weakening of *ye* is seen in such expressions as *hark'ee*, *look'ee*, *thank'ee*, etc., which are now used only by the vulgar. FRANZ, E. S., XII.

*Look'ee*, serjeant, no coaxing, no wheedling, d'ye see. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 1.

"Why, *look'ee*," sister", said Western, "I do believe you have as much (sc. knowledge of the world) as any woman." FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. II, 87b.

"Yes! and *look'ee* here, Mr. Snagsby", resumes Bucket [etc.]. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. XXII, 190.

"Why, *thank'ee*, I'd rather not" said Mr. Jackson. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 428. Lave a chap aloon, *will'ee*? G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 7.

I never knew a body stop insensible so long after it. *Don't 'ee* do it again! CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 26.

We *told 'ee* that we loved him. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXI, 260.

Be jowned if I care *for 'ee*. Id., *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 21. (Thus frequently in the Wessex dialect of this writer, varying with *ye*, as in: We are ashamed of *ye*. Ib., I, Ch. III, 38.)

- f) The shortening of *ye* into *y'* seems to occur only before vowels. And what else did *y'* expect to find him but pleasant? G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. VIII, 79.

- g) In some dialects *yo* seems to take the place of *you* in stressed positions.

Well! *yo* can read word of writing and I cannot, so it's queer I should have to tell you. But my master says it's a summons for *yo* to bear witness again Jem Wilson, at th' trial at Liverpool Assize. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 241.

11. The substitution of *him*, *her*, *us* and *them* for respectively *he*, *she*, *we* and *they* is confined to the language of the illiterate. For illustration see also FRANZ, E. S., XII, XVII; ELLINGER, E. S., XX; JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 186; ALFORD, *the Queen's English*, § 203 ff.; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 674 ff.

- a) The substitution is most usual in stressed positions.

**him.** And damn'd be *him* that first cries hold. Macb., V, 8, 34. (This *him* may also be explained as the result of *damn'd be* being considered as a kind of indivisible word-group. See Ch. XXII, 4, j, N.)

The girl argues thus: — "How unhappy, how vexed, poor \*\*\* must be; *him* to misbehave! Poor thing!" READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. IX, 49.

Though he couldn't hardly speak, the money and this here book was all waiting in his desk, and he would have me come with it. And *him* sixty-seven. ARN. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, I, Ch. II, 1, 17.

**her.** Your mother and *her* never could agree. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

**us.** For this from stiller seats we came, | Our parents and *ustwain*. Cymbeline, V, 4, 70.

Our blessed Saviour has showed us what God is in a way *us* poor ignorant people can understand. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 20.

But *us* that have got no learning had better keep our money, eh, neighbour Pullet? Id., *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 61.



**them.** An' you should (sc. flout), here be *them* can perceive it. BEN JONSON. Every man in his Humour, I, 2, 15.

Your safety, for the which myself and *them* | Bend their best studies. King John, IV, 2, 50.

When she has lived as long as I have, sir, and had thirteen children of her own, and all on 'em dead, except two, and *them* in the wurkus (= work-house) with me, she'll know better than to take on in that way. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. I, 20.

"You're quite certain it was *them*, governor?" inquired Mr. Weller junior. Id., Pickw., Ch. XX, 178.

- b) In unstressed positions only *us* is rather commonly substituted for *we*, but only when placed after the verb.

i. \* Shall's to the Capitol? Coriolanus, IV, 6, 148.

Where shall's lay him? Cymbeline, IV, 2, 233.

Lor, we can talk it over now, can't *us*. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. XV, 270.

We don't all of us do what we ought, do *us*? Ib., II, Ch. X, 185.

Fan and I remember how our honoured parents used to fight. Don't *us* Fan? THACK., Virg., Ch. XVII, 172.

Let's look into Warren's, shall *us* neighbours? HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LIII, 438.

However shall *us* get 'em home? BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XLII, 260.

\*\* *Us* be cum to pay'e a visit. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. III, 45.

*Us* can't afford to let father be turned away. M. E. FRANCIS, Honesty, Ch. I.

ii. *Her*'ll be sixteen come Martinmas. Ib., I, Ch. II, 30.

Note. According to WYLD (The Growth of English, Ch. V, 60), *us* is regularly used where Standard English has *we*, and vice versa, in certain dialects, such as those spoken in Oxfordshire and Berkshire. Compare 12, b.

"But what must *us* do, Mr. Halifax?" cried Jacob Baines. "*Us* be starved a'most. What's the good o' talking to *we*?" Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. VIII, 86.

## 12. The substitution of the nominative forms for the objective is almost exclusively found in emphatic positions.

- a) A rather common case, also in ordinary literary English, is when a personal pronoun is followed by an adnominal clause and is divided by a considerable portion of the sentence from the word(s) which determine(s) its syntactical character.

His imitators for the most part serve but to denote the painful difference there is between the founder of a style and *he* who attempts to copy it. G. B. SMITH, Poets and Novelists, 369.<sup>1)</sup>

It is in this particular that the great difference lies between the labourer who moves to Yorkshire and *he* who moves to Canada. Westm. Rev., 1879, July, 48.<sup>1)</sup>

Mr. Brownlow had presumed to scold her, to blame her for what she had been doing, *she* whom nobody ever blamed. Mrs. OLIPHANT, The Brownlows, II, Ch. XVIII, 43.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 159.

To send me away, and for a whole year too — *I*, who had never crept from under the parental wing — was a startling idea. C. J. MATHEWS, *Autobiog.*, I, Ch. IV, 77.<sup>1)</sup>

- b) For the rest the substitution is distinctly archaic, instances being, however, still common enough in dialects. Compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup> 977—9; BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 315, Note.

For my soul hates nothing more than *he*. As you like it, I, 1, 172.

Yes, you have seen Cassio and *she* together. *Othello*, IV, 2, 3.

She has two eyes as black as sloes and cheeks as broad and red as a pulpit cushion. She'd make two of *she*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (195).

"What the ladies may come hither for, Sir", said Mr. Lovel, "it would ill become us to determine; but as to *we* men, we can have no other view than to admire them." MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, XXIII, 112.

My sister and my sister's child, | Myself and children three, | Will fill the chaise, so you must ride | On horseback after *we*. COWPER, *John Gilpin*. Bless your heart, sir! nothing ever inconveniences *she*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 105.

The notes of a brass band were heard from the direction of the village. "What's that?" said Durbeyfield. "Not on account o' *I*?" HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. I, 8.

She's nothing beside *we*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 29.

A thousand pities that it should have happened to *she*, of all others. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XIV, 114.

"You can try your hand upon *she*", he pursued, nodding to the nearest cow. *Ib.*, III, Ch. XVII, 140.

I have a big bone to pick with *he*. *Ib.*, III, Ch. XXI, 171.

"Who's that?" she asked. The old man stood quite still, staring into the mist. "'E? I work for 'e", he wheezed. EVA ANSTRUTHER, *An Election* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 9a).

YOKEL. 'Ere, d'you know that there barrer (= barrow) cost *I* vivteen shillun? *Punch*, No. 3737, 142.

Note. Of especial frequency is the combination *between* (or some other preposition) *you* (or some other (pro)noun) and *I*, not only in Early Modern English, but also in vulgar language of the present day. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1084; FRANZ, *E. S.*, XVII; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 209—211; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 679.

All debts are cleared *between you and I*. *Merch.*, III, 2, 321.

I thought nobody had been like me, but I see there was some Semblance 'twixt this good man and *I*. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*, 236.<sup>2)</sup>

I'll tell you: it must all light upon *Heartfree and I*. VANBRUGH, *Prof. Wife*, V, 2, 357.

Her and me were the best of friends before him and her met. Of course, this is *between you and I*. *Punch*, No. 3736, 115.

#### ARCHAIC FORMS.

13. Some forms, frequently met with in dialects and vulgar language, are to be set down as remnants of forms that have disappeared from Standard English.

1) HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 159. 2) FRANZ, *E. S.*, XVII.

- a) A mutilated form of the old accusative *hine* has been preserved in some of the southwestern dialects, its printed transcription being 'un, 'en or 'n. JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 51; BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 47.

That put'n into a passion. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 3, (275).

He asked in a surly sort of manner, — and gad, I answered 'en as surlily. Ib. "Well", said the Squire, "I will propose it (sc. the match); but I shall certainly lend 'un a flick, if he should refuse me." FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. II, 88a. Mr. Blifil is a brisk young man, and will soon put an end to your squeamishness. Come, cheer up, cheer up, I expect 'un every minute. Ib., VI, Ch. VII, 94b.

Show Mr. Pendennis up to 'un. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 54.

We'll try the porker on Saturday. Kill un on Saturday morning, John Horrocks. Id., *Van. Fair*, Ch. VIII, 81.

His pore mother, not being a Scripture-read woman, made a mistake at his christening, thinking 't was Abel killed Cain, and called en Cain. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. X, 91.

I don't believe in en. But I shall have to go to 'n, if he's alive. O yes, I shall have to go to 'n, if this sort of thing continnys!" Id., *Tess*, III, Ch. XXI, 170. You did tell en yourself, sir, his duty stared en in the face. M. E. FRANCIS, *Honesty*, Ch. I.

Note. In certain dialects these forms seem to be also used as neuters. It (sc. the bonfire) was lighted before ours was, . . . and yet every one in the country round is out afore 'n. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. V, 58.

- b) Another archaism, preserved in vulgar and very colloquial speech is 'em or 'um, a shortened form for *hem*, which was ousted from Standard English by *them* by the beginning of the Early Modern English period. The older word in its shortened form did not, however, fall into the bad repute in which it is now held, until the middle of the eighteenth century. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1088; id., *Sounds of English*, § 208; FRANZ, *E. S.*, XIII; ib., XVII; LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus.*, Acc. V, 3; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 779.

i. Sirrah, go you and fetch 'hem hither. BENJONSON, *Every Man in his Humour*, V, 3, 101.

ii. We have 'um, we have 'um! the duck and the mallard both in the decoy. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, V, 1, (327).

I'll straight away, | To animate the soldiers' drooping courage | With love of freedom and contempt of life. | And try to rouse up all that's Roman in 'em. ADDISON, *Cato*, I, (468b).

By heaven, he found my fortunes so abandon'd | That nothing but a miracle could raise 'em. ROWE, *Fair Penitent*, I, 1, (498a).

You see how all around 'em wait | The Ministers of human fate. GRAY, *Ode Eton Col.*, 55. (Compare line 60 in the same stanza: Ah! tell *them*, they are men.)

She liked the English and the Hebrew tongue, | And said there was analogy between 'em; | She proved it somehow out of sacred song, | But I must leave the proofs to those who've seen 'em. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, xiv.

He had that fever which lays so many of 'em by the heels along that swampy Potomac. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 6.

In vulgar language 'em is further mutilated into 'n.

"Hand down these 'ere trunks then", said John. — "Hand 'n down yourself", said the porter. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 68.

## USE.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED AS NOUNS.

14. Some personal pronouns are sometimes used by way of proper names.

a) In the commonest case they are then preceded by an emotional adjective or adjectival equivalent, often *poor*. The emotional character of the adjective explains, at least in part, the absence of the definite article. Compare also Ch. XXXI, 28, *b*; and see JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 169; id., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.42; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 674. In this function we find:

1) especially the pronoun of the first person singular, either in the nominative or the objective, the latter being the usual form unless the pronoun is distinctly the subject.

i. Even it was hinted that *poor I* had sent a hundred thousand pounds to America. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 149.

"Wretched boy!" said the Lady Godiva, and hid her face in her hands; "and *more wretched I*, to have brought such a son into the world." CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 9b.

Imagine my feelings if you can! *Prosaic, middle-aged, hard-working, old I*, finding myself suddenly with you in Arcadia. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, V, Ch. II, 242.

ii. For *poor me*, I am turned out of doors. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. VII, 107b.

You should see the contempt with which they look down on *poor me!* THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XI, 105.

You cannot turn your back upon *poor wretched me*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXIII, 247b.

*Unhappy me!* that I cannot risk my own worthless life without risking your more precious lives. *ib.*, Ch. XIX, 143b.

There was *little me*, astride on his bare back. HALL CAINE, *Christian*, I, 334.

He does not like *poor little me*. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, III, 145.

2) more rarely other pronouns.

And to *poor we* | Thine enmity's most capital: thou barr'st us | Our prayers to the gods. CORIOLANUS, V, 3, 103.

But *silly we*, like foolish children, rest | Well pleased with colour's vellum, leaves of gold. W. DRUMMOND, *The Lessons of Nature* (PALGRAVE, *Gold. Treas.*, I, LVIII).

Ah, *happy she!* to 'scape from him whose kiss | Had been pollution unto thought so chaste. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, v.

She writes: "Hopes Ma won't be angry, but is happily married to Mr. John Rokesmith . . . and please tell *darling you*." DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, IV, Ch. V, 66.

*Happy, happy you!* who have but to drive to St. James's Street, and a dear mother who will give you any thing you ask. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 105.

Tess — Mrs. Clare — the dear wife of *dear he!* HARDY, *Tess*, V, Ch. XLII, 365.

Note. When the adjective is placed after the pronoun, as is sometimes done, especially in poetry, it makes the impression of

an adjective partially converted into a noun, standing by way of apposition to the unconverted pronoun.

I feel sometimes as if, for the prizes which have fallen to the lot of *me unworthy*, I did not dare to be grateful. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 991.

She caused men make a silver image fair Of *me unhappy*. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Part, Doom of King Aeric.*, 78a.

Thus also in exclamations after interjections. Compare 8, *b*, Note, and see ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 45.

Ay *me unhappy*! MILTON, *Comus*, 50.

Oh *me unhappy*! MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>1</sup>, § 478.

Oh, my goodness *me*, if I was master, wouldn't I be jealous of him! DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXVII, 108a.

- b*) Less frequent are those cases in which the quasi-proper name is preceded by the definite or indefinite article together with another modifier.

i. I seem to have touched Eve's husband — *the real you* — more closely this morning than I ever did before. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. IX, 102.

How reminiscent every single thing in it (sc. the room), of Him — the other *Him*! DESMOND COKE, *The Cure*, *Apologia*, 16.

ii. Oh! would you could have seen me! — per fede, I had caught your mantle! — I was *a second you*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. X, 59.

15. In Early Modern English *he* and *she* are sometimes used in the sense of respectively *man* or *woman*.

This use has survived in the practice of placing *he* and *she* before the names of certain animals, and occasionally persons, to denote sex. For details see Ch. XXVII, 13, *d*; 14 Obs. IV; and compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.41.

In vulgar language also the objectives *him* and *her* are sometimes met with as substitutes for respectively *man* (*male person*) or *woman* (*female person*). Ch. XXVII, 14, Obs. IV.

16. Like many other words and word-groups personal pronouns may be used as quotation substantives (JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.* II, 8.21—6), i. e. quoted without regard to their syntactical function.

Do you remember how we used to talk about your '*him*'? BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, V, Ch. II, 246.

"You would know all about it naturally, and whether he —" — "So there's a *he*?" said Lady Medwin sympathetically. DESMOND COKE, *The Cure*, Ch. V, 57.

17. In philosophical language *I* and *me*, and more rarely *thou* and *thee*, are used in a way corresponding to that of the German *Ich* and *Du* in such expressions as *das Ich*, *das Du*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 168; *id.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.42.

I. Was there any law — any knowledge — any *I*? Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, III, 86.<sup>1)</sup>

And the *I* is the giver of light, and without it the master must die. L. MORRIS, *Poet. Works*, 121.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 9.42.



**me.** Who am I; what is this *Me*? CARLYLE, *Sartor Resartus*, I, Ch. VIII, 35. So that this so solid-seeming World, after all, were but an air-image, our *Me* the only reality. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 37.

**thou.** Because the *Thou* (sweet gentleman) is not sufficiently honoured, nourished, soft-bedded, and lovingly cared-for? *Ib.*, II, Ch. IX, 132.

**thee.** Hast thou . . . never rejoiced in them (sc. thy clothes) as in a warm movable House, a Body wherein that strange *Thee* of thine sat snug, defying all variations of Climate? *Ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 39.

Note. Instead of *I* some philosophical writers prefer the Latin *ego*. Fichte said that the *Non-Ego* was created by the *Ego*. LEWES, *Biogr. Hist. of Phil.*, 605.

The modern psychologist . . . tells us that in disease the "*ego*" or personality is split up, and a new complex is formed, working independently of the mutilated *ego*, and mostly entirely subconsciously. *Athen.*, No. 4437. 557*b*.

A Christian, said Luther, "is the most proud lord of all and subject to no one; the most dutiful servant of all and subject to every one." In a word he is an *ego*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 54, 309.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED AS DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

18. The personal pronouns of the third person, excepting *it*, are often used as determinative pronouns, in which case they are mostly followed by an adnominal clause. In this function they are indefinite in meaning, while the reference may, or may not, be made definite by the adnominal clause. In the latter case the sentence usually expresses a universal truth, the tense being, accordingly, the present.

- i. *He who honoured me with this eulogy* was a scholar. DE QUINCEY, *Confessions*, Ch. II, 12.
- ii. *He who scrubs the head of an ass* wastes his soap. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. V, 23.

The adnominal clause is, of course, restrictive. When, as in the following quotation, it is continuative, the pronoun preceding is without any determinative force.

How should *he* know better, who had never yet seen any place but his own province? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 167.

Also in such sentences as *It is he (they) who is (are) to blame* there is no determinative. Compare Ch. XXVI, 27, and especially Ch. XXXIX, 25. The forms which are most frequently used as determinatives are *he*, *him* and *they*. The feminine pronouns are, for obvious reasons, rather infrequent, especially when the reference is indefinite.

**he**, indefinite: *He* that spends his time in sport and calls it recreation, is like him whose garment is all made of fringe, and his meat nothing but sauce. JEREMY TAYLOR.

Errors, like straw, upon the surface flow, | *He* that would search for pearls must dive below. DRYDEN.

*He* who seeks only for applause from without has all his happiness in another's keeping. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. man*, V.

There have been certain men so great, that *he* who describes them in words — much more pretends to analyse their inmost feelings — must be a very great man himself, or incur the accusation of presumption. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XXV, 104a.  
 definite: *He* that cometh after me is mightier than I. Bible, *Matth.*, III, 2.  
 This then was *he* whom Mary loved. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XV, 166.  
 Of all men upon earth, this was *he* whom she most dreaded. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 207.

That god (sc. *Jupiter Pluvius*) is *he*, indeed, whom the thrush has most cause to praise, for it is *he* who makes the ground soft. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6477, 14a

*him*, indefinite: Woe to *him* of whom all men speak well. *Punch*.

All things come to *him* who waits. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. II, 33.

A jest's prosperity lies in the ear of *him* that hears it, never in the tongue of *him* that makes it. *Punch*, No. 3749, 391.

definite: Let *him* | Who is most powerful of ye, take such aspect | As unto him may seem most fitting. BYRON, *Manfred*, I, 1.

Blessings on *him* that first invented sleep. LEIGH HUNT, *A Few Thoughts on Sleep*.

I mused on the disgusting and ugly appearance of *him* who would presently deal it (sc. the blow). CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 5.

O cousin, slay not *him* who gave you life. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 782.

It has been a long story, and if it has not been well told, the fault lies with *him* who has told it. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 283.

*she*, indefinite: It is but fair to assume that he or *she* who professes to teach, should have, at least, some command of the subject. *Languages*, 1895, Jan.

definite: HAST. *She's* but a woman, you know. — MARL. And of all women, *she* that I dread most to encounter. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops to Conquer*, II, (180).

*She* that has lost her sight must collect her information from other sources. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVIII, 182. (The speaker, a blind woman, refers to herself.)  
 Who was *she* that he danced with? HARDY, *Return of the Native*, II, Ch. V, 159.

I need scarcely inform my readers that the shy young Princess, here described, is *she* who to-day holds the dazzling position of Queen of England. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 495, 578b.

*her*, indefinite: Domestic felicity must be earned by patient endurance and loving consideration for the tastes, and even for the faults of him or *her* with whom life is to be lived. REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 12.

definite: Your arm encircles *her* on whom I have set my every hope and thought. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIV, 55b.

My girl I love you well, | But if you speak with him that was my son, | Or change a word with *her* he calls his wife, | My home is none of yours. TEN., *Dora*.

He had seen *her* who was to him simultaneously a delight and a torture. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXIV, 265.

*they*, indefinite: Blessed are *they* that mourn: for they shall be comforted. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 4.

But what are *they* to do who love play better than wine. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 2, (395).

definite: So she was left alone with her dead, and *they* went to work that had work, and he who had none, took upon him the arrangements for the funeral. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 67.

But little *they* recked of this who now gave up their dead. *Ib.*

**them**, indefinite: As we forgive *them* that trespass against us. The Lord's Prayer.

They will call *them* fools that give them too humbly. BEN JONSON, Poet., V, 1, 119.<sup>1)</sup>

19. Obs. I. The defining clause or adjunct is sometimes implied in the context.

Nothing in my voice, my face, or mean, | Remains to tell my Charlotte I am *he*. G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, II, 1.

TONY. Where is there such a friend, for who would take her? — HAST. I am *he*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (195).

- II. When the clause is separated from the pronoun, it assumes the character of a substantive clause, the pronoun filling the function of an anticipating subject. Compare Ch. II, 21 and Ch. XXXIX, 25.

*He* jests at scars *that never felt a wound*. Rom. and Jul., II, 2, 1.

*They* never sought in vain *that sought the Lord aright*. BURNS, *The Cotter's Sat. Night*, VI.

*He* makes no friend *who never made a foe*. TEN., *Lanc. and Elaine*, 1082.

*They* laugh best *who laugh last*. Rev. of Rev.

*He's* a lucky man *whoever gets it* (sc. the scholarship). Tit-bits, 1895, 27 April, 65a.

- III. In literary English, and more or less archaically, we sometimes find the personal pronouns of the third person used as determinatives in connection with a prepositional phrase as in *he of Modena*, *he of the sevenfold shield*, *he with the scar on his face* (MURRAY).

"Come along, then", said *he of the green coat*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II. They regarded *him of the flapped hat* no less attentively. Id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 3b.

He checked his steed, and called *him of the Maypole* by his name. Ib., Ch. XIV, 55b.

*He at the table* looked more surprised and discomposed than ever. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 175.

So was *he at the gate* in mourning. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 10.

*He with powder on the chestnut* was my lord. Ib., Ch. II, 14.

Colonel Esmond (*he in scarlet and the breastplate yonder*) married my grandmother. Ib., Ch. XX, 205.

"Where is Thomas?" said *she of the Argus eyes*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 63.

I have before said that *he of the Jupiter* and John Bold were intimate. Id., *The Warden*, Ch. XIV, 181.

On the following day there was but one cock-chaffinch, *he of the white tail-feather*, in undisputed possession of that path of bushes. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 13a.

There is not now, however, anything unusual about the use of such a prepositional phrase in connection with the determinative *those*.

Whether he was combined | With *those of Norway* . . . I know not. Macb., I, 3, 112.

Be kind to *those around you*. MACKAY, *There's work for all to do*, II.

The following, however, is an unusual construction:

I know, | . . . That neither court nor country, tho' they sought | Thro' all the provinces like *those of old* | That lighted on Queen Esther, has her match. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 730.

The above sentences bear some resemblance to the following, but in them the adnominal adjunct is distinctly continuative, and the pronoun is not, of course, determinative.

*We of the Virginian house* owe you nothing but our own. THACK., Virg., Ch. XV, 152.

*We of the Westminster Gazette* have lost a good friend. Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 1b.

Compare also: He was not allowed to see even *Arabella of the kind heart*. EL. GLYN, Halycone, Ch. XXIV, 310.

What might have been the fate of Brussels had there been no *Max of the unshaken nerve*, we may read in the story of Dinant. Westm. Gaz., No. 6654, 4a.

- IV. The use of *him* and *them* for respectively *he whom* and *they whom* is confined to poetry.

OL. Know you where you are, Sir? — ORL. O, Sir, very well: here in your orchard. — OL. Know you before whom, Sir? — ORL. Ay, better than *him* I am before knows me. As you like it, I, I, 46.

Better to leave undone, than by our deed | Acquire too high a fame when *him* we serve's away. Ant. & Cleop., III, 1, 14.

- V. The use of personal pronouns by way of determinatives is unusual in the ordinary spoken language. Owing to the indefiniteness which mostly attaches to them in this function, the feminines are uncommon also in the literary language. (18.) For the literary *He that fights and runs away may live to fight another day*, and *He who honoured me with this eulogy was a scholar*, the ordinary spoken language would have respectively *A man who (that) fights* [etc.] and *The man who honoured me* [etc.]. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2140.

Altogether, *the man* who goes sailing in the clouds is not likely to have too good a time. Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 2a.

This latter construction is not, of course, available in referring to the Supreme Being.

I will go where . . . all are alike in the eyes of *Him* who made them. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. XX, 88a.

- VI. Instead of *they (them) who (that)* the ordinary spoken and literary language now has *those who (that)*.

We never forgive *those whom* we have injured. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 45. The London and South-Western Railway Company ran 30 special trains to accommodate *those who* desired to attend the meeting at Kempton Park. Times, No. 1826, 1048b.

In vulgar language *them (as)* is common enough.

They'll not thank *them* as tries to put it (sc. the fire) out. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. V, 45.

Few folk like to say good-bye to *them* they love. Ib., Ch. XVII, 180.

But after *these* or *those* as the subject *those who (that)* etc. as the nominal part of the predicate is unharmonious and is, therefore, avoided.

*These are they who bow to no man.* CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. VI, 42b. It seems to me that *those* who dare to rebel in every age are *they who* make life possible for those whom temperament compels to submit. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 123

Sometimes *they* and *those* are used alternately, to all appearance, for the sake of variation.

It is not *they* who carry flags, but *those* who look upon it from a private chamber, who have the fun of the procession. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours* (Peacock, *Select. Es.*, 542).

According to HODGSON (*Errors*<sup>s</sup>, II, 91) *those who* has more emphasis than *they who* and should, therefore, be substituted for the latter in:

Their wages being inadequate, *they who* had laid up nothing, came immediately upon the parish; *they who* [etc.]. JOS. STEVENS, *The Poor Laws*, 75.

- VII. *These that* and *those which* are also used with reference to things or animals, but only conjointly or absolutely, not substantively. For illustration see Ch. XXXVI, 12.

*They which* for things seems to be possible only after a demonstrative as the subject.

We have now touched all the sounds represented by our alphabet, except the Mutes; and *these are they which* were spoken of at the outset in relation to the law of 'Lautverschiebung'. EARLE, *Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 136.

- VIII. In SHAKESPEARE we also find instances of *it* used as a kind of determinative. ABBOT, *Shak. Gr.*<sup>3</sup>, § 227.

There was *it*: | For which my sinews shall be stretch'd upon him. *Cor.*, V, 6, 44.

For that's *it* that always makes a good voyage of nothing. *Twelfth Night*, II, 4, 80.

When, however, the clause is separated from the pronoun, *it* may also be regarded as an anticipatory subject, the clause being of a substantival character.

*It* holds current *that I told you of*. *Henry IV*, A. II, 1, 59.

#### THE PRONOUN *it*.

20. The pronoun *it* is used to represent not only a noun, but also a clause or equivalent expression, and occasionally a sentence. In the latter case it is often anticipatory and sometimes recapitulatory of:

- a) the subject. Ch. I, 14; Ch. II, 10—27.
- b) the non-prepositional object. Ch. III, 22—26.
- c) the prepositional object. Ch. III, 39—44.

21. a) As the subject of a descriptive noun-predicate i. e. one denoting a quality or state, English mostly employs a pronoun which is determined by the number and gender of the (pro)-noun indicating the person(s) or thing(s) whose quality or state is described.



In Dutch the reference is often disregarded, the neuter pronoun being used throughout, irrespective of the number and gender of the preceding (pro)noun. Compare also KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 431 ff.

"Will you allow me to ask you ma'am . . . who that young man is, and where he resides?" — "*He* is a gentleman of fortune . . . to whom I very much want to introduce you." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 136.

"Let us see these chambers of yours, if you please, ma'am", said my aunt — "For this gentleman?" said Mrs. Crupp, feeling in her keys. — "Yes, for my nephew", said my aunt. — "And a sweet set *they* is for sich!" said Mrs. Crupp. *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXIII, 176a.

I adore Miss Shepherd. *She* is a little girl, in a spencer, with a round face and curly flaxen hair. *Id.*, Ch. XVIII, 132b.

I have never named Mr. Hayter, the rector, because I, as a well-to-do and happy young woman, never came in contact with him. *He* was an old bachelor [etc.]. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. IX, 176.

I certainly shan't look for the report of my encounter with the prize-fighter. I'm sure *he* was one. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 223.

There were all together half-a-dozen boys in the school. *They* were the sons of his most well-to-do parishioners. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

*She* (sc. Elizabeth) rated great nobles as if *they* were schoolboys. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 370.

"Who is Marie Petersen?" . . . — "*She* is a Russian", said Mrs. Severin; "a very clever woman. *She* speaks six languages, and has a contralto voice that harmonizes with Clotilda's soprano. But *she* is really Selma's friend." — "Who is Kremski?" — "*He* is — Kremski", said Mr. Severin, looking thoroughly uncomfortable. "*He* manufactured the bomb that Marie — dear little Marie — threw at the Russian general. Mrs. SIDGWICK, *The Severins*, Ch. VI, 58 f.

Note. *a*) The following quotations hardly afford exceptions, *it* being used here to express contempt, (mock-)endearment or, perhaps, some other emotion. This *it* is particularly frequent in exclamatory sentences. See also page 328, and especially page 702.

SHYL. Follow not; I'll have no speaking: I will have my bond. [Exit.] SALAR. *It* is the most impenetrable cur | That ever kept with men. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 3, 18. Let's after him (sc. Macbeth). | Whose care is gone before to bid us welcome: | *It* is a peerless kinsman. *Macb.*, I, 4, 58.

But yonder I see my Corydon, and a sweet swain *it* is, Heaven knows! Come, Dorinda, don't be angry; *he's* my husband, and your brother; and between both, is *he* not a sad brute? FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, II, 1, (373, 4). (Observe the alternate use of *it* and *he*.)

What a merry dog *it* (sc. Bob Sawyer) is? DICK., *Pickw.*, 351 (Househ. Ed.). Yonder queer person is my gracious kinswoman. . . . *She* was a beauty once! *She* is changed now, isn't *she*? What an old Gorgon *it* is! *She* is a great patroness of your bookmen, and when that old frump was young, they actually made verses about her. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVI, 273. (Note the alternate use of *she* and *it*.) He's not got blood enough to go in for felony with impunity. Give him a dash of brandy. So! Now he looks more human. What a shrimp *it* is, to be sure! CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

*β*) For the rest, when *it* is found as the subject of a noun-predicate denoting a quality or state, its reference is vague and it may often be understood as the representative of a substantive clause. (Ch. XV). Compare *b*).

Miss Gordon's bed was carefully examined, and she was obliged to suffer the rude scrutiny of one of the party by feeling her chin to ascertain that *it* was not a man in a lady's night-dress. ANDREW LANG, *The Adventures of Lord Pittsligo* (GÜNTHER, *Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, 96). (Underlying notion: it was not a man in a lady's night-dress that was in the bed.)

If there is a man in the world needs the love and sympathy of a wife, *it* is the literary man. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 478, 4a. (Underlying notion: it is the literary man who, of all others, needs the love and sympathy of a wife.)

He turned back to the old man without looking at the occupant of the carriage.

*It* was a lady. HALL CAINE, *Eternal City*, II.

As they left the room, another visitor arrived. *It* was a tall and handsome man. *Golden Butterfly*, 132a.

- b) If, however, the noun-predicate serves to identify the person or thing mentioned before, the reference is often but dimly present to the speaker's mind, with the result that *it* is employed instead of a concord-exhibiting pronoun.

This vague *it* may be understood as the representative of a substantive clause (Ch. XV), which, although not actually expressed, is more or less distinctly implied in the context. Thus in *Then we were brought into presence of the magistrate himself; and behold! it was the very gentleman we had seen in the woods* (SWEET, *Old Chapel*), the latter part of the sentence may be understood to stand for *whom we saw was the very gentleman* etc., or *it was the very gentleman we had seen in the woods whom* or *that we saw*. The sentences here referred to, accordingly, bear some resemblance to such forms as *It is I (thou, he, she, we, you, they) who or that am (art, is, are) to blame*, commented on in Ch. II, 21 and Ch. XXVI, 27; and more fully discussed in Ch. XXXIX, 22 ff.

- i. *It* (sc. the buck) may have had twenty (sc. tynes), Henry, for what I know; but if you go to that gentleman, he can tell you all about it — Go speak to him, Henry — *it* is the Master of Ravenswood. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVII, 178.

At the bedside sat a short old man in a cobbler's apron, who... was reading from the Bible aloud. *It* was the fortunate legatee. DICKENS, *Pickwick*, 312 (Household Ed.)

The description of the young man coincided so remarkably with the fellow-passenger of Mr. Spencer, that he did not doubt *it* was the same. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 57.

An elderly spinster, accompanied by a little boy was remarked coming thither. *It* was Miss Briggs and little Rawdon. THACKERAY, *Van. Fair*, Ch. IX, 91.

"This is the new kitchen-maid, mother" — "Ah, is *it* indeed?" said Mr. Latch. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 10.

Rose turned a smiling face towards the speaker. *It* was Mr. Flaxman. Lady Charlotte's companion. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, V, Ch. XXXI.

"I have seen her before", I muttered, "*it's* the same person, I could swear to her among a thousand. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, A, Ch. II, 24. A young lady was sitting at the further end (sc. of the drawing-room), who rose with a slight cry of astonishment. *It* was Lydia. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IX, 187.

There was something familiar in the girl's graceful back, and as she turned her fresh face to look at her companion, Halcyone saw that *it* was Cora Lutworth. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXV, 215.

- ii. "Miggs," said Lord George. "Is that a man?" — "The name is entered on the list as a woman", replied the secretary. "I think *she* is the tall spare female of whom you spoke just now." *Id.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXVI, 139*b*.  
 Meanwhile a middle-aged man was dreaming a dream of great beauty concerning the writer of the above letter. *He* was Richard Stillotson, who had recently removed from the mixed village-school at Lumsdon. *HARDY*, *Jude the Obscure*, I, 218.

A man with a stitched heart appeared at the Thames Police Court yesterday and was charged with murder. *He* was Henry Charles Butler, aged 49, described as a labourer, of Fanshaw-street, Hoxton. *Daily News & Lead.*, 1914, 12 Febr., 7. And nearer still is a quiet slight figure, quick-eyed and restless, with field-glasses swinging negligently from his shoulder. *He* is Sir Charles Mathews, the Director of Public Prosecutions. *Ib.*, 1914, 28 May, 1*d*.

The second article describes the work of a man who may be well-known to some of my readers, though his fame had not hitherto reached me. *He* is Dr. Hans Gross, Professor of Criminalistics in the University of Graz. *Ib.*, 1914, 12 June, 4*d*.

In the case of a possible reference to a plural pronoun, the pronoun seems to be regularly a plural as well.

I cannot conceive whose stockings *they* can have been that Peggotty was always darning. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 56*a*.

I meet a pair of bright eyes and a blushing face; *they* are Dora's eyes and face. *Ib.*<sup>1)</sup>  
 There are three fellows down-stairs who want to speak to you. Do you know if *they* are the navvies whom I told to come here before breakfast? *Stof.*, *Handl.*, II, 47.

Usage is similarly divided in questions, either direct or indirect, which are asked to establish identification, and also in the answers to such questions.

questions. i. There on the hearth-rug stood a romantic-looking young man, tall, with deep dark eyes and a stranger to me, but I knew in a moment who *it* was. *SARAH GRAND*, *Our man*, nat., 57.

The strength of the handshake was so much akin to that which I had noticed in the driver, . . . that for a moment I doubted if *it* were not the same person to whom I was speaking. *BRAM STOKER*, *Dracula*, Ch. II, 16.

- ii. \* No stranger ever passed Captain Cuttwater in the streets of Devonport without asking who *he* was. *TROL.*, *Three Clerks*, Ch. IV, 38.

\*\* Mrs. St. Erth had come in a little while ago, and had seen Camilla and Bob sitting by themselves rather forlornly. "Who are *they*?" she had asked Clara, and then she had gone up to them. *Mrs. SIDGWICK*, *The Severins*, Ch. VII, 70.

answers to questions: i. "Who's this other boy?" — "O sir, *it's* Ned Tun-stall." *SWEET*, *Old Chapel*.

- ii. \* Mr. JUSTICE DARLING: Who is this gentleman, Col. the Hon. Geoffrey Fiennes? Mr. HEALY: *He* is Lord Sage and Sele now, a member of the Government. *Daily News and Lead.*, 1914, 28 May, 1/7.

\*\* "Who are those ladies?" — "*They* are my cousins." <sup>2)</sup>

Note. a) When the person referred to is indicated by an indefinite pronoun, the concord-exhibiting pronouns are impossible.

He caught sight of somebody on the pavement whom he knew, and, stopping the car, entered into conversation. For the moment Mrs. Altham could not see who *it* was. *E. F. BENSON*, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. I, 9.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 624*i*.

2) I. SCHMIDT, *Gram. der Eng. Sprache*, § 270, 1.

β) It is hardly necessary to observe that identifying answers often open with a demonstrative, or consist only of a name.

- i. "And who's this shaver?" said one of the gentlemen, taking hold of me. — "*That's* Davy", returned Mr. Murdstone. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12a.  
Do you remember the small boy who used to walk along the desks on his hands? *That* was I. PUNCH, 1908.
- ii. "Who's that red-faced man, who said it was a fine morning, and nodded to our counsel?" whispered Mr. Pickwick. — "*Mr. Serjeant Buzfuz*", replied Perker. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 305.

γ) When a person is indicated by a substantive demonstrative, *he* and *she* are never used, *it* or *that* (or *this*) being the reference-words required.

"Who can this be?" . . . — "*It* is Colonel Brandon." JANE AUSTEN, *Sense and Sens.*, Ch. XXXI, 199.

"Do you know who that was, sir?" — "I rayther suspect *it* was my father, my lord", replied Sam. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 317.

"Who's that, Sam?" inquired Mr. Pickwick. — "Why, I wouldn't ha' believed it, sir", replied Mr. Weller with astonished eyes, "*It's* the old'un." *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 177.  
"My dear fellow, — who is that at the top of the stairs?" . . . — "*That* is Mademoiselle Le Breton", he said quietly. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.* I, Ch. I, 10a

"Who was that?" asked Halcyone. — "*That* is my servant — he will bring tea. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. I, 16.

δ) In sentences or clauses intended for mere affirmation or denial (37—42), the pronoun is always concord-exhibiting. Thus in:

"Is this boy your son?" — "*He* is." ("*He* is not.")

- c) Here follow some miscellaneous quotations in which *it* and one or other of the concord-exhibiting pronouns are used alternately, according to the principles laid down above.

"Mamma, there's a man at the gate wanting to come in", said Jane. "I think *he's* a clergyman." Mr. Crawley immediately raised his head, though he did not at once leave his chair. Mrs. Crawley went to the window, and recognized the reverend visitor. "My dear, *it* is that Mr. Thumble, who is so much with the bishop." TROL., *Last Chron. of Bars.*, Ch. XIII, 108.

That man with the white hat and the velvet coat and the scarlet tie . . . isn't a commercial traveller; *it's* our doctor; *he's* quite a gentleman, though you wouldn't think so to look at him. SWEET, *Spoken Eng.*

The next thing I heard was a low cry — half of joy, half of fear — from the princess: "*It* is he! Are you hurt? . . . *It* is the king!" . . . Then Sapt spoke in a low hoarse whisper: "*It* is not the king. Don't kiss him; *he's* not the king." . . . — "Do I not know my love? Rudolf, my love!" — "*It* is not the king", said old Sapt again. . . . — "*He* is the King!" she cried. "It is the King's face — the King's ring — my ring! It is my love!" ANT. HOPE, *Pris. of Zenda*, Ch. XX, 143—4.

There does not seem to be any reason for the change of pronoun in: Suddenly there came the man. Some say *he* was Mr. E. V. Lucas, an author whom we trust it is no discourtesy to call celebrated. Others say *it* was Mr. Grant Richards, the well-known publisher. *Athenæum*.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 359.



22. The pronoun *it* in the objective relation is often suppressed, especially when it would represent a clause. The suppression seems to be due to the vagueness that often attaches to the pronoun in this function, but does not distinctly make the verb intransitive. For the cases in which a transitive verb may become intransitive see a subsequent chapter.
23. The suppression of *it* is, apparently, regular, when the clause it would represent is a subordinate question. (Ch. XIV.)

Thus the reply to the question *Who lives here?* might be one or other of the following sentences: *I do not know; I forget; I do not remember; I cannot tell you; You had better ask the postman;* etc.; in all of which ordinary practice would not tolerate *it*, and all of which might be supplemented thus: *who lives here.*

As some of the following quotations will show, the question is not always actually expressed in a preceding part of the discourse, but is sometimes concealed in the context.

Strictly speaking it is not a subordinate question which would be represented by *it*, but the answer to the question contained in the preceding sentence. Thus *I do not know* in the case cited above really means *I do not know the answer to the question: Who lives here?*

**to ask.** "Lydia, what is the reason of this?" — "Ask the gentleman, ma'am." SHER., *Rivals*, IV, 3, (265).

**to find out.** Perker's people must guess what we've served these subpœnas for. If they can't, they must wait till the action comes on, and then they'll *find out*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXI.

"I kept that hidden as a surprise for you, that you might find out, when you most needed, how Torfrida loved you." — "As if I had not *found out* already." CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XXIII, 97.

**to hear.** "You have heard how the affair went?" . . . — "Yes, I *heard*." EM. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, III, Ch. II, 287.

**to know.** "In what way is he peculiar?" — "I don't *know*." CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 124.

"Why do none of them (sc. his sons) come to him?" — "I *know* not, I cannot tell." BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 225.

The weather will be settled for some time. Our shepherd says so and he *knows*. SWEET, *Old chapel*. (sc. when the weather will be settled.)

**to recollect.** "Come here, sirrah, who the devil are you?" — "Faith, sir, I am not quite clear myself; but I'll endeavour to *recollect*." SHER., *Rivals*, IV, 2, (261).

**to show.** WOR. What d'ye mean by withdraw? — BRAZ. I'll *show* you. FARQUHAR, *Recruit Offic.*, IV, 2, (311).

**to tell.** "And how do you come to know Mrs. Hoggarty's property so accurately?" said Mr. Brough; upon which I *told* him. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 59.

I must not tell you to-night exactly what you can do, because he wishes to *tell* you himself. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. IV, 19b.

A Housewife went into the Tariff Reform Provision Shop to buy some bacon. Seeing one piece ticketed "Foreign", she asked the price. The shopman *told* her. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 7. (sc. what the price was.)



**to try.** I think I could perhaps give Paul some help, Susan, if I had these books . . . and make the coming week a little easier to him. At least I want *to try*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

Maybe we'd never suited one another. Still I'd like to have *tried*. JEROME, *Sketches in Lav.*, Blue and Green.

**to understand.** Are you crying, Glory? Foolish girl to cry! But I know, I *understand*. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, IV, Ch. XV, 282.

24. Obs. I. After most of the above verbs *it* or a demonstrative, either weak-stressed or strong-stressed, is ordinarily used to replace a subordinate statement. After *to tell*, as a verb of declaring, the place of *it* is mostly taken by *so*. (26.) *It* or a demonstrative is, of course, also the ordinary word to refer to a noun, or a substantive clause; see the quotations under *to know* and *to understand*.

Sometimes any reference-word is absent, although it is not a subordinate question that is understood; see the quotations under *to forget*, *to know*, *to recollect*, *to remember*, *to try*, *to (mis)-understand*.

After the verb *to try* and, perhaps, some others *to be so* or *to do so* may be supplied, either of which phrases is sometimes shortened into the bare preposition *to*. (31.)

**to forget.** i. I have more than once had the pleasure of meeting Mr. Brithwood, but he has doubtless *forgotten it*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVIII, 168.

I was the first sweetheart that you ever had, and you were the first I ever had; and I shall not *forget it*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 468.

ii. Mon ami — you *forget*; I have introduced you to this gentleman. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVII, 168.

"And, Marie, remember I make this promise in your name as well as my own." — "Fear not, mamma, I will not *forget*." READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. III, 24.

**to know.** i. \* We are young now, and years will make us old before we *know it*. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 16. (sc.: that years will make us old.)

He is breaking up fast, anybody can see that, and he *knows it* himself. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 113.

The most inexperienced eye could have known that he was becoming rapidly worse. Marie, the chambermaid, *knew it* and spoke of it frequently to Bernardine. BEATR. HARRADEN, *Ships*, I, Ch. IX, 35. His only hope lies in England and France, and he *knows it*. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. II, 20.

\*\* "Have you a secret, Mr. Curphew?" — "I have, I always intended to tell him, but I wanted you to *know it* first." PUNCH, 1893, 136*b*. (sc.: the secret.)

\*\*\* You wouldn't let a dog suffer what I have suffered, could you but *know it*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIII, 442. (sc.: what I have suffered.)

It is not for me to tell all she said, even supposing . . . that any one cared to *know it*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXV, 210.

- ii. "I suppose you have done all in your power for him, honest Moses?" — "Yes, he *knows that*." SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1, (388).  
 "Know what, my dear?" — "Why, that you were a good wife," replied Bob. — "Everybody knows *that*," said Peter. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 100.  
 I never bargained for this. He knows *that* very well. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. L, 467.  
 I am told that I do not spell correctly. *This* of course, I don't *know*. THACK., *Fitz-Boodles Confessions*.  
 One half the coin in that plethoric purse belonged not to Ghysbrecht Van Swieten, but to that faded old man and that comely girl . . . They did not *know this*, but Ghysbrecht *knew it*. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 10.
- iii. I dare not speak much further; | But cruel are the times, when we are traitors  
 And do not *know* ourselves. Mac b., IV, 1, 19. (sc.: that we are traitors. Some editors place 't after *know*).  
 "Arnold killed?" shrieked Torfrida. — "Is it possible that you do not *know*?" — "How should I *know*?" CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XXXV, 149a.  
 "I wanted my hat this morning," she went on. "I had to ride to Tewnell Mill." — "Yes, you had." — "How do you *know*?" HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. III, 20.

Note. There is not any occasion for *it*, when a sentence with *to know* is added to a direct statement.

He has sold the house at an immense profit, I *know*.

Thus also when such a passage is made part of a narrative, and the tense is, consequently, changed from the present into the past.

He had been in the garden — she *knew*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. VII, 192.

The following idioms deserve attention:

\* The son was strikingly handsome, and *knew it*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 63, (= liked people to refer to it).

\*\* I'm not a young man, and I *know it*. SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, III, (208). (= and I admit it; Dutch: en dat wil ik wel weten.)

\*\*\* After that do you think I could marry you? *Not if I know it*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. IV, 36. (= I will take care not to do so.)  
 A merchant being tempted to exchange the bird which he was carrying for two wooden ones on a Christmas-tree, replied: "*Not if I know it!*" A real bird in the hand is worth two wooden ones in the bush." Westm. Gaz., No. 5207, 5.  
 CHARTERIS. Nobody will marry me — unless you, Sylvia, — eh? — SYLVIA. *Not if I know it*. SHAW, *The Philanderer*, IV, (153).

to recollect (to remember). i. SIR P. Yes, yes, madam, you were then in somewhat a humbler style — the daughter of a plain country squire . . . — LADY T. Oh, yes! I *remember it* very well. SHER., *School for Scand.*, II, 1, (376).

Did you ever hear how Miss Piper came to lose her lover and her character last summer at Tunbridge? Sir Benjamin, you *remember it*? Ib., I, 1, (371). (Here *it* may represent a subordinate statement, although, on the face of it, it seems to stand for a subordinate question. Observe also that *how* is sometimes almost equivalent to *that*. Ch. XIV, 7, c.)

"Just there it was," she said slowly, . . ., "that I came up the path, years ago, with poor Cally in my arms. I *remember it* very well." BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, Ch. VI, 315.

ii. "If I should sleep | Till I am ask'd for, as perhaps I may. | I beg that you would wake me." — "Doubt it not! | Distracted as I am with various woes, | I shall *remember that*." LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, II, 3, (317).

iii. "She said I had kept the parcel so long in the pockets of my corduroys, that the apple was unpleasantly warm." — "I *remember*," said Mr. Allen, gloomily. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVIII, 439.

"Grandfather sometimes does not *recollect* very well," said she, pointing to her head. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 10.

to try. i. "Do you slide?" — "I used to do so, on the gutters when, I was a boy," replied Mr. Pickwick. — "*Try it* now," said Wardle. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 270. He won't impose upon me, so it's no use his *trying it*. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

One does not realise, until he has *tried it*, and does not *try it*, unless he is kept by illness or imprisonment in a single room, what a variety of bird-life it is often possible to see. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, 1909, 12 Jan.) (Here it refers to an exclamatory question, which is equivalent to a subordinate statement.)

ii. I couldn't be angry with him if I *tried*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 78.

You and I must make his home happy in England. I am sure we can do that if we *try*. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. III, 18a.

The Normans could have pronounced this (sc. *Grantebrycg*, the old name of Cambridge) right if they had *tried*. H. BRADLEY, *Eng. Place-Names* (A. C. BRADLEY, *Es. and Stud.*, 30).

to (mis)understand. \* Every one, except Mr. Reffold, seemed to recognize that Mr. Reffold's days were numbered. Either she did not or would not *understand*. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. IX, 36. (sc. that Mr. Reffold's days were numbered.)

\*\* "Recollect, Mrs. R., . . . chaps don't dine at the West End for nothing. . . . If you play at bowls, you know —" — "You must look out for rubbers," said Roundhand, as quick as thought. — "Not in my house of a Sunday," said Mrs. R., looking very fierce and angry. . . . — "My dear, you don't *understand*." THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46. (sc. what I mean.)

"Highfield is a spot I don't happen to know," I aspired the word with all the strength in my power, so as to enforce my remark. "You can't expect every one," I added, "to have lived at Highfield" — "I beg your pardon," the young man said, . . . "but I think you *misunderstand*." GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

II. *That*, especially when strong-stressed, may represent a subordinate question.

Who will take the rest of them (sc. the villas)? She asked him *that*. E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 48.

III. In Early Modern English *so* was sometimes used after *to know* instead of *it*.

GLOUC. You may deny that you were not the means | Of my Lord Hastings' late imprisonment. — RIV. She may, my lord; for . . . — GLOUC. She may, Lord Rivers! — why, who *knows* not so? RICH. III, I, 3, 93.

If that his majesty would aught with us, | We shall express our duty in his eyes; | And let him *know so*. HAMLET, IV, 4, 7.

If my offence be of such mortal kind | That nor my service past, nor present sorrows, | Nor purposed merit in futurity, | Can ransom me into his love again, | But to *know so* must be my benefit. OTHELLO, III, 4, 119.

The following quotation can hardly be considered to afford a Late Modern English instance of this practice, the use of *so* after *to know* being occasioned by this verb being put together with the preceding *think*.

"You must not say things like that. They are horrible, and they don't mean anything." — "You think so?" He laughed again. — "I *know so*." OSCAR WILDE, *Dorian Gray*, Ch. XII, 198.

IV. In like manner as after verbs of judging and declaring (26), we sometimes find a curtailed clause, in place of *it*, after *to know*, *to remember* and, perhaps, others of the verbs mentioned above.

"I hope we shall find each other's society mutually agreeable." — "I hope we shall", said the fierce gentleman. "I *know we shall*." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 322.

"Was you ever called in, ven you was 'prentice to a sawbones, to wisit a postboy?" — "I don't *remember that I ever was*," replied Bob Sawyer. *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 468.

25. Besides the verbs mentioned in the preceding § there are many others which in certain applications have the thing-object unrepresented, although it is not clearly a subordinate question. Compare 27, Obs. IV.

Some of these appear modified in meaning, when thus stripped of the representative of the thing-object. Thus *to admit* and *to permit*, may assume the meaning of 'to be favourable' or 'to tolerate', *to mind* that of 'to have objections', *to forbid* that of 'to interfere', and so forth.

Some throw it off, especially when equivalent to *to be so* or *to do so*, in sentences in which the person-object is expressed, keeping it when the latter is suppressed. This applies to *to allow*, *to ask* (in the meaning of 'to request'), *to forbid*, *to forgive*, *to pardon*, *to permit*, etc.

Some are equivalents of *will*, and like this verb and other verbs that require an infinitive, mostly leave the thing-object (*to be so* or *to do so*) unrepresented. Such are *to like*, *to please*, *to wish*, etc. (30, b.)

Some may throw off the person-object together with the representative of the thing-object. This is often the case with *to explain*, *to forbid*, *to permit*, *to refuse*. After some the thing-object might be represented not only by *it*, but also by *so*. This applies to *to tell* and *to think*, and, some other verbs of judging and declaring. (27, Obs. IV.)

Some leave the thing-object unrepresented from its utter self-evidence or vagueness. This may be the case with *to follow*, *to hear*, *to mind*, *to see*. After some verbs different forms of thing-object could be supplied. Thus after *to explain*, *to follow*.

Occasionally it is the prepositional object which is left unrepresented. This may be the case after *to dissuade*, *to force*, *to prevent*.

After all these verbs the thing-object would be represented by the demonstrative *this* or *that*, if standing for a prominent idea in the speaker's mind. See the quotations under *to forgive*, *to mind*. For illustration see also ELLINGER, E. S., XXVI, 251; *id.*, *Verm. Beit.*, 45.

**to accept.** My cousin offered me the care of his Essey estates. I like the country — always have. So I thought I'd better *accept*. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 9a.

**to admit.** i. I did wrong — I *admit it*. HARDY, *Tess*, II, Ch. XII, 96.

ii. Regular subscribers may have six of these (sc. lists of Books Wanted) inserted monthly, provided space *admits*. BOOKMAN, 1897, 39a.

**to allow.** i. I should like to ask you one question, if you will *allow me*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 185.

He would have refurnished the whole deanery, had he been *allowed*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. LIII, 459.

Sylvia tried hard to speak again, but I wouldn't *allow her*. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.



ii. I mean that I don't like to talk about this matter now. Perhaps it is not proper, and I ought not to *allow it*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 416.

I should like to be friends with you and your wife, if you would *allow it*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. II, 40.

**to ask.** i. Your Pa . . . never would have learnt you nothing, never would have thought of it, unless you'd *asked him* — when he couldn't well refuse. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

"I do not think he will ever forgive him. If he does, it will be because you *ask him to*." — "Because I *ask him*, dear Julia? How can it concern me?" PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. XII, 31a.

ii. It was in this room, you told me I had done you a great wrong. But wrong-doers may be pardoned sometimes, if they *ask it*. Let me know by a sign, a look, if I may *ask it*. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, IV, Ch. VI, 557.

**deny.** "In two whole days she has not communicated to us a single fact concerning our neighbours in the other half of Rose Cottage." — "Did you want to know?" John laughingly *denied*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 100.

**to dissuade.** Next day the Professor himself insisted upon testing lethydyne (a kind of anæsthetic) in his own person. All Nat's (i. e. Nathaniel's Hospital) strove to *dissuade him* (sc. *from doing so*). GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 15.

**to explain.** "So our Lady looked, and none since her, until to-day." — "Oh, fie! it is wicked to talk so. Compare a poor coarse-favoured girl like me with the Queen of Heaven? . . ." — Gerard tried to *explain*. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. II, 18. (sc. *how it was that he compared her with the Queen of Heaven, or what made him compare etc., or that he was fully justified in comparing etc.*)

But before I could finish my sentence (sc. A man who doesn't know how to pronounce his own name without a hideous vulgarism of the most disgusting sort, is in my opinion unfit —) by adding "for the society of gentlemen," Sylvia had seized my arm nervously. "Papa dear," she whispered, . . . "do allow me *to explain*." GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. (sc. *matters, or how it is that Mr. Ampton does not pronounce the name of the village with the aspirate, or what Mr. Ampton means.*)

Hugh was quite in the right, only he was a great deal too much of a gentleman to make a scene in the 'salle à manger' by *explaining* to you when you were so violent. *Ib.*

I tried *to explain* but you would not let me. *Ib.*

**to follow.** The captain and officers of the University Boat Club scrutinize the performances of the boats, and invite a certain number of the best men to row in what are called the Trial Eights. Do you *follow*? Dialogue (STOF., *Leesb. v. Aanvangskl.*, II, 56). (sc. *my explanation, or me in my explanation, or what I have been trying to explain to you.*)

**to forbid.** i. Tom several times tried to get up to the sick-room, but the house-keeper was always in the way, and at last spoke to the doctor, who kindly, but peremptorily *forbade him*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VI, 291.

She could not commit suicide; the principles in which she had been brought up by her excellent mother *forbade her*. THACK., *Rolandseck*.

I shall follow you wherever you go; I defy you *to forbid me*. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. X, 52a.

ii. In one month from this day I will come to your house . . . Do you *forbid it*? *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 47a.

iii. Maud jumped up to refuse admission; but Mr. Halifax *forbade*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIX, 421.



"I come . . . to let you know he has fallen into bad hands." — "Now Heaven and the saints *forbid*." READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. VII, 36.

**to force.** I never wanted to play; nor would have played for money, had not my cousin William *forced me*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 202.

**to forgive.** i. Gerard was frightened at the alarm he caused. "*Forgive me*," said he imploringly. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. II, 19.  
Give me your hand, then, or you don't *forgive me*. *Ib.*, 19.

You've been so dreadfully cruel! so dreadfully rude! I don't know how Hugh will ever be able to *forgive you*! GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

ii. I'll never *forgive him this*! never! (sc. selling the pictures of his great-grandfathers and grandmothers). SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3, (402).

**to give up.** She was scared-like about it (sc. the subject). I felt I was scaring her of me, trying to persuade her, so I *gave up*. KATH. TYNAN, *The Honourable Molly*, Ch. XIII, 69.

**to hear.** "You must not stir from my side during the whole interview. Do you *hear*?" — "I *hear*," replied Martin. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVIII, 439.

**to like.** "And how many people may you have told about it?" — "Only me myself . . . I thought you wouldn't *like*." RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.  
"Do you recollect what a jolly night we had here last summer?" I heard Hoskins say, . . . "You and me with our coats off, plenty of cold rum-and-water, Mrs. Roundhand at Margate, and a whole box of Manillas?" — "Hush," said Roundhand, quite eagerly; "Milly will *hear*." But Milly didn't *hear*; for she was telling me an immense long story [etc.] THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 43.

**manage.** "Cultivate happiness!" I said briefly to the Doctor: "Do you cultivate happiness? How do you *manage*?" CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXII, 315.

**to mind.** i. You don't seem to *mind it* (sc. the rainy weather). DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 468.

"I have promised that we will go up and stay over till Monday." — "You don't mean it! Goodness gracious, how provoking!" — "Why? I thought you wouldn't *mind it*." TROL., *Frامل. Pars.*, Ch. I, 7.

I should not have *mindèd it*, if she had lost, as you call it, about Sarah Thompson. *Ib.*, 9.

ii. SIR BEN. I could tell you some story of him would make you laugh heartily, if he were not your husband. — LADY TEAZ. Oh pray, don't *mind that*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, II, 2, (383).

iii. We must decide now if you don't *mind*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. IX, 160.

**to notice.** The worst of painting on mirrors is that they reflect the back of the painting. Haven't you *noticed*? AMBER REEVES, *The Reward of Virtue*, Ch. I, 6.

**pardon.** Dorothea saw that she had been in the wrong, and Celia *pardoned* her. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

**to permit.** i. "I'm going to mind the horse myself," said Martin . . . — "I can't *permit it*, on any account," said the old lady. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVIII, 439.  
Why had this man dared to enter her room last night, she was asking herself. Why had the Doctor *permitted it*? PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. VII, 32b.  
"Oh, Edmund — we might hire something," said his wife imploringly. — "I do not *permit it*" he said resolutely. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. II, 40.

ii. Tom dismounted with as much agility as his half-frozen limbs would *permit*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 119.

I am here to make friends with you if you *permit*. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. III, 32.

Surely you can say to me as much as this, you will have me back again should circumstances *permit*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 416. The work is being pushed forward as quickly as circumstances *permit*. Times.

**prevent.** i. He went into the darkness, nobody thinking of *preventing him*.

HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIII, 447.

The only thing we will try to try, is to belong to one another. And if we do our best, Lorna, God alone can *prevent us*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 225.

ii If we could only get the notion that 1893 is not 1910 into the thick skulls of our party, . . . the way would be open to the square deal between us and the Irish. What *prevents*? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4a.

**to refuse.** i. BAL. She's so afflicted with the news of her brother's death, that to avoid company she begged leave to be gone into the country. — WOR. And is she gone? — BAL. I could not *refuse her*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, II, 2, (273).

It was Mr. Fitz-Boodle . . . who offered me the cigar, and I did not like to *refuse him*. THACK., *Fitz-Boodle's Conf.*, I, 207.

ii. I offered the surly bull-dog five guineas this morning, and he *refused it*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, IV, 3, (315).

He invited her co-operation. She *refused it* plump. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. IX, 58.

iii. He has gone to preach a charity sermon before the bishop, and, under those circumstances (perhaps) he could not *refuse*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 18. Lord Windermere insists on my dancing with him first, and, as it's his own house, I can't well *refuse*. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan.*, II, (59). She demanded that she . . . should go with him to the Continent. Melrose flatly and violently *refused*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. II, 45.

**see.** It isn't every dog that can kill a hedgehog. Mine can; let him alone a minute and you'll soon *see*. SWEET, *Old Chap*.

"I want to kiss you, dear," said Katharine. "Then I shall know. Do you think anybody will *see*?" MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 283.

**to show.** "All the shadows between the petals become blue, quite blue." — "Do they really? You must *show me* some time." E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 51.

## PRONOMINAL EQUIVALENTS.

### THE PRONOMINAL *so*.

26. After certain verbs of judging and declaring (Ch. VI, 14; Ch. XVIII, 8, *b*; Ch. XVIII, 31, *c*) the objective *it* or unstressed *this* or *that* are usually replaced by weak-stressed *so*, when they would represent a subordinate statement.

Thus the answer to the question *Does the mayor live here?* may be *I believe so; I think so; They have told me so* (= *I have been told so, I have heard so*); etc.; in all of which sentences *so* has the value of *that the mayor lives here*.

Weak-stressed *so*, when used to replace a clause or a noun, adjective or verb (see 28 and 29), although still partly felt as a quality-expressing

word, is practically a pronoun. See also MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 150; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 122; MURRAY, s. v. *so*, 2.

**to be afraid.** See under **to fear**.

**to believe.** The river is deep enough as you may see by the boats it carries. You would hardly *believe so*, to look at it here. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 18.

**to dream.** This is the way they will come back some day! *I dreamt so*. LYTTON, Night and Morning, 292.

**to fear.** "Do you think you will be absent very long?" — "Indeed," said Walter, I don't know. *I fear so*." DICK., Domb., Ch. XIX, 175.

Note. Thus also after *to be afraid* (= *to fear*.)

"I suppose you are going to stay at home?" — "*I am afraid so*." MRS. ALEXANDER, A Life Interest, I, Ch. I, 26.

"I'm making it rather gloomy," said Maurice. — "*I'm afraid so*," said Mr. Kenyan. H. WALES, The Yoke, 165.

**to hear.** See under **to tell**.

**to hope.** "I hope Mr. Hoskins will stay as long as he pleases," said my wife with spirit. — "Of course you *hope so*, Madam," answered Mrs. Hoggarty, very sarcastic. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 109.

"I wonder if Mrs. Rashleigh will let him and his friend photograph the ruins." — "*I hope so*." MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. III, 40.

**to imagine.** "She will sit up with him the best part of every night." — "*I imagined so*." MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. III, 30.

**to inform.** It is said that sleep is best before midnight: and Nature herself, with her darkness and chilling dews *informs us so*. LEIGH HUNT, A few Thoughts on Sleep.

**to pray.** "And you believe she will be happy?" — "I trust so. *I pray so*." JOHN OXENHAM, Great-Heart Gillian, Ch. XIII, 95.

**to say.** There is a great deal of nonsense in Shakespeare, only we must not *say so*. GEORGE III, to Miss Burney (Il. Lond. News, No. 3678, 538a).

Brough will leave her everything — or *says so*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 83. Note the idiom in: \* "A buff ball, sir, will take place in Birmingham to-morrow evening," — "God bless me!" exclaimed Mr. Pickwick. — "Yes, sir, and supper," added Pott. — "*You don't say so!*" ejaculated Mr. Pickwick. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LI, 472.

"If knighthood were hereditary, like a baronetcy . . . you would be Sir John now." — "*Ye don't say so!*" HARDY, Tess, Ch. I, 5.

\*\* "Can you read?" he asked at last suddenly. — "*I should rather say so*." MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 14.

**suspect.** Knowing it to be Carver's dwelling (or at least *suspecting so*, from some words of Lorna), I was led by curiosity . . . to have a closer look at it. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVI, 216.

**to tell.** I am not worthy to marry you. I *told* you so from the first. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 15.

If you do not feel equal to it, please *tell* me so. PEMBERTON, Doctor Xavier, Ch. V, 22a.

"Is it folly to love?" — "*I am told so* every day of my life." READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. IX, 46.

Note. Thus also after *to hear* (= *to be told*).

"I am afraid his circumstances are very bad indeed, ma'am." — "Ah! *I heard so*." SHER., School for Scand., I, 1, (369).

"Your father and mine were good friends weren't they, as boys?" — "I believe so. I *have* always *heard* so." Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 60.

**to think.** It is almost blasphemous to say a play of Shakespeare is bad, but I can't help it if I *think* so. THACK., *Letters* (II. Lond. News, No, 3678, 538a).

"Let me see this scratch first," said Gerard, choking with emotion. "There, I *thought* so. A scratch? I call it a cut — a deep, terrible, cruel cut." READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XXIII, 86.

**to trust.** "I trust I shall be able to show myself worthy of it." — "I *trust* so." OSCAR WILDE, *A Woman of No Importance*, I, 7. (See also under *to pray*.)

**to understand.** "Will you undertake to swear that Pickwick the defendant, did not say on the occasion in question, 'My dear Mrs. Bardell, you're a good creature, compose yourself to this situation, for to this situation you must come,' or words to that effect?" — "I didn't *understand* him *so*, certainly," said Mr. Winkle. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 314.

And he — he was so desperately lonely. It was a breath of heaven to have some one to talk to. She *understood* so. L. C. DAVIDSON, *A Dead Man's Shadow*, Ch. XX

**to write.** He had been away, I know, for two months before it happened; Pen *wrote* me so. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVII, 181.

27. Obs. I. The conjunctive force which more or less pervades *so* (Ch. VIII, 4 the end) often causes it to assume front-position. This is especially the case when the verb denotes a prominent idea in the speaker's or writer's mind and, consequently, obtains an increase of stress. The increased stress implies a somewhat reserved admission of the preceding statement and, accordingly, suggests an arrestive *but*. (Ch. XI, 1, *d.*) Thus in "*I am leaving Rose Cottage to-day, Mr. Halifax.*" — "*So I have heard.*" (Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 149) there is a hint at some such subaudition as *but I wanted you to confirm it*.

**to hear.** Was he not going to preach on behalf of the Papuan Mission next Sunday? Ah! *so* he, the bishop, *had heard*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 23.

**to state.** Mr. Roosevelt has begun his campaign in America, or so *it is* officially *stated*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5394, 2b.

**to suspect.** There was a twitch of Miss Betsy's head after each of these sentences, as if her old wrongs were working within her, and she repressed any plainer reference to them by strong constraint. *So* my mother *suspected* at least, as she observed her by the low glimmer of the fire. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 4b.

**to tell.** I am, myself, the sweetest-tempered man alive, and hate a teasing temper; and *so* I *tell* her a hundred times a day. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 2, (373).

But you are a man of business, also, Mr. Supplehouse; *so* they *tell* me. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 23.

"It's a shame to speak with such levity about the character of ladies or of gentlemen, either," continues Mr. Warrington, pacing up and down the room in a fume. — "*So* I *told* them," says the chaplain. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 317.



Note. *a*) *So* is regularly placed before the verb in the expression *so saying* (= Dutch *dit zeggende*).

"Good morning, Mr. Pickwick," said Fogg. *So saying* he put his umbrella under his arm [etc.]. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 402.

*So saying* she caught Fanny in her arms. LYTON, *Night and Morn.*, 293.

*So saying* he took the boy, that cried aloud. TEN., *Dora*.

*β*) *So saying* varies with *thus saying*: *Thus saying*, Mr. Bumble put on his cocked hat wrong side first, in a fever of parochial excitement; and flounced out of the shop. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 58.

Compare also: As Mr. Weller said this, he inflicted a little friction on his right eye-lid. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXI, 276.

As he said it, he rose. Id., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. II, 3a.

*γ*) Pre-positive *so* is sometimes placed after a relative.

There may have been a time when Unionist policy regarded the present system as ideal; there may be Unionists *who so regard* it to-day. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 1b.

- II. In literary English *so* sometimes has mid-position, especially before the infinitive or past participle of any of the above verbs. This arrangement is now archaic, but sometimes seems to be affected for the sake of rhythm. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *so*, 2.

**believe.** Those who believe that Richard Cockle Lucas... made the "Leonardi da Vinci wax bust" that is now in Berlin, and those who do *not so believe*, will be equally interested in a sale that [etc.]. II. Lond. News, No. 3687, 883.

**to hear.** "They tell me . . . that he desires this abbey." — "I *have so heard* my lord." CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XX, 88b.

**to inform.** "Of course you know Harold Smith is going to give us a lecture about these islanders." . . . Mark said that he *had been so informed*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 27.

**to tell.** Thackeray was quite aware of his early weaknesses, and in the maturity of life knew well that he had not been preciously wise. He delighted *so to tell* his friends. Id., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 10.

**to think.** In fact, all the friends of the family are of opinion, and my dear Lucy herself ought *so to think*, that, as this unworthy person has returned no answer to the letter, silence must on (sic!) this, as in other cases, be held to give consent. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXVIII, 276.

About the end of April news arrived almost simultaneously in all quarters of the habitable globe that was terrible in its import to one of the chief persons of our history . . . All high parliamentary people *will doubtless so think*, and the wives and daughters of such. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIII, 216.

- III. *So* to a certain extent varies with *it* or the unemphatic *this* or *that*. It is often difficult to see any difference, but in some cases *it*, *this* or *that* seem rather to point to the exact words of the preceding statement than to the substance, which is done by the vaguer *so*. Compare, however, the last quotation but one under *to say*, below. The strongest demonstratives do not bear being replaced by *so*.

**to believe.** i. "I don't doubt Mrs. Le Geyt really believes she is a model step-mother." — "Of course she *believes it*." GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. III, 89.

Note. *To believe* in the sense of 'to give credence to', (as opposed to 'to be of opinion') is never followed by pronominal *so*.



- i. "Do you know who I am, you insolent girl? I am his wife." — "His wife? I don't *believe it*." PUNCH, 1893, 197.  
 "Nurse Wade has remarkable insight." Travers whispered to me as we went. — "I can *believe it*," I answered. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. III, 77.
- ii. "It is a pleasure to John . . . to do a kind office for any one." — "I well *believe that*." Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XII, 122.

**to fear.** "I think there will be war" . . . — "I do *fear it*," Agneta. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. II, 171.

**to hear.** Oh Maria! child, — is the whole affair off between you and Charles? . . . I own I was hurt to *hear it*. SHER., School for Scand., I, 1, (368).

"Every body in the world speaks well of him." — "I am sorry to *hear it*." Ib., II, 3, (386).

"My good sir," said Mr. Pickwick, . . . "I have only taken places inside for two." — "I am glad to *hear it*," said the fierce man. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXV, 222.

Note. *To hear* in the sense of 'to perceive by the ear' is never followed by *so*.

Mr. George Edwardes . . . does in cold blood declare that the text of a paper must be altered to suit its advertisements. *To hear that* is like hearing the crack of Doom. CHESTERTON, Il. Lond. News, No. 3680, 600b.

**hope.** You, perhaps, may help him where I am useless. We are both *hoping that*. PEMBERTON, Doct. Xavier, Ch. IV, 19b.

**to say.** i. "I am sure ma'am," says I, "he had a splendid partner," and blushed up to my eyes when I *said it*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 44.

My conscience seemed to say: "When did Ned's parents ask you? If ever, certainly not just now. And yet this is what you want your parents to believe, though you don't exactly *say it*." SWEET, Old Chap.

ii. "Come, sir," said Mr. Skimpin, "yes or no, if you please." — "Yes I am (sc. a particular friend of the defendant's)," replied Mr. Winkle. — "Yes, you are. And why couldn't you *say that* at once, sir?" DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 313

"The fact was, I was so comfortable here that really I couldn't move." Such a grin Lady Drum gave when I *said that*! THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 35.

"And we that were fools enough to bring up another body's child, too; much good she has been either." — "Don't *say that* John," answered Mrs. Sutton. Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., B, 73.

Don't *say that*." — "I do *say it*. I feel it. I know it." OSCAR WILDE, Lady Windermere's Fan, I, 10.

Women are the queens of the earth; I've often *said that*. E. F. BENSON, Mrs. Ames, Ch. II, 48.

Note. a) With the above quotations compare: "Never mind my eyes; you had much better read your letter," said the pretty housemaid; and as she *said so*, she made the eyes twinkle with such slyness and beauty that they were perfectly irresistible. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LII, 478.

β) *So* cannot, apparently, be used when the reference is forward. It could not, therefore, take the place of *it* in:

Alas that we must *say it*, not unfrequently the teacher's kindly mothering is the only tenderness the children ever receive. Westm. Gaz., No. 5185, 14a.

**to tell.** i. Presently she resolved to go and tell Adriana that her husband was mad. And while she was *telling it* to Adriana, he came . . . for the purse of money. LAMB, Tales, Com. of Er., 222.

I know very well that you give me plenty of money. You *tell it* me often enough, sir. There's no fear of my forgetting it. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXII, 233.

ii. TONY. The first thing I have to inform you is that — you have lost your way. — MAR. We wanted no ghost to tell us *that*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, I, (175).

"No Burgundy, sir!" do you dare to tell me *that*? MARRYAT, *The Three Cutters*.

The Major had sunk every shilling he could scrape together on an annuity, and of course was going to leave Pen nothing; but he did not *tell* Foker *this*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 110

"You must tell me that you like my country. It is the one subject upon which I am a bigot." Esther was able to *tell* him *that*, and she did so very prettily. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. X, 50*b*.

**to think.** She's my brother's child: a orphan. Nine year old, though you'd hardly *think it*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 55.

"You are saying that it is an uncomfortable place?" — "I was *thinking it*." PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. V, 23*a*.

According to this theory the Prime Minister's statement in the previous week as to the future course of action was forced on him and on his reluctant party by his exacting masters. Since he *says it*, we must suppose that Mr. Balfour *thinks it*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5289, 1*c*.

IV. It may here also be observed that many verbs of judging and declaring are never followed by *so*. This, among, perhaps, some others, seems to be the case with:

**to acknowledge.** It was a deadly sin," said Lucy, turning pale, "to make a vow so fatal." — "I *acknowledge it*" said Ravenswood. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XIX, 191.

**confess.** Sure, Lucy can't have betrayed me! — No, the girl is such a simpleton, I should have made her *confess it*. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (222).

**to deny.** "Was he once a friend of yours?" — "I will not *deny it*." PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. IX, 47*b*.

**to doubt.** He would show them whether they were welcome to Rotterdam or not. "Who *doubts it*, cousin?" said the scholar. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 20.

**to expect.** Mary Ann was very far from strong, and, if he didn't take care, he might lose her when he least *expected it*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 425.

Note. When *to expect* has the sense of *to suppose*, *to suspect*, *to surmise*, it may be followed by *so*. About this application of *to expect* MURRAY (s. v. *expect*, 6) observes that it is "often cited as an Americanism, but it is very common in dialectal, vulgar or carelessly colloquial speech in England."

"I expect it is simply his nature to be so reserved." — "Simply his nature — I *expect so*, miss — nothing else in the world." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XII, 106.

"Have you ever had influenza?" — "I *expect so*." *Punch*. 1909, 28 April, 294. "The type is so peculiar, that any other like it would remind one, would it not?" — "I *expect so*," he said. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXV, 230.

**to mean.** "It is a long subject, Miss Dunstable." — "A very long one; and that means that I am not to say any more about it." — "I did not *mean that* exactly." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 26.

**to own.** The worst of it is, I doubt I love her, or I should never bear all this. However, I'll never be weak enough to *own it*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 2, (373).

"He's an interesting man — don't you think so?" she remarked. — "Oh yes, very. Everybody *owns it*," replied Liddy. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XII, 105.

**to swear.** Gentlemen, he offered to let me get away for two guineas, but I had not so much about me. This is the truth, and I'm ready to *swear it*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, V, 6, (342).

- V. Instead of *so* (or *it*, *that*, *this*) we often find an incomplete clause containing the verb *to be*, *to have* or *to do*, or the finite verb of the predicate of the preceding sentence (question), in case this predicate is complex. (32.) If this incomplete clause contains *not*, all the other elements are usually dropped. The construction here referred to is especially employed, when little more is intended than mere affirmation or denial. (37.)

**to believe.** "Is your concern a stable one?" — "Sir," said I, "frankly, then, and upon my honour, too, I *believe it is*." THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 80.

**to hope.** SIR OLIV. Oh! we shall never see such figures of men again. — CHAS. SURF. I *hope not*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 1, (40).

"I wonder if Mrs. Tod . . . knows that latter fact about me." — "I think not; I *hope not*." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 108.

**to say.** "Don't you remember dying of the measles and coming here to be buried?" I told him that I could not say *I did*. Miss BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas*.

**suppose.** "You're the new boy?" he said. "Yes, sir," I said. I *supposed I was* I didn't know. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

**think.** "Is yours a strong constitution?" inquired Tozer. Paul said he *thought not*. Tozer replied that he *thought not* also. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 105.

"Did your great-grandparents live at Boston?" — "I believe so." — "You are not sure then?" — "Yes," she replied, "Now I *think they did*." BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, 33.

She hoped that it was not by any right of birth that he had thus earned a claim upon her memory. She did not *think that it was*. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. VI, 30a.

**Note.** α) The elliptical *not* may also appear after other verbs.

Why sure, she won't pretend to remember what she's *ordered not*. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (220). Compare: We were to drink tea at five; *so* mamma had *ordered*. 1)

β) Sometimes *not* as a curtailed sentence or clause, is found together with *so*.

"You will always exceed your income." — "I *hope not so*." JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. LV, 341.

- VI. After some verbs of judging or declaring we sometimes find a subordinate statement left unrepresented by either *so* or a pure pronoun. The omission is quite common after *to tell* and, especially in questions, after *to think*. After other verbs of this kind the omission is unusual or rare. Compare 25.

**to doubt.** Would the theatres and halls find it pay, if they were open on Sundays? I *doubt*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 5b.

1) KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 450.

**to hope.** "Is there any that be good live there, By-ends?" — "Yes," said By-ends, "I *hope*." BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog., 91.1)

**to hear.** "Already they have had that calumny about me set a-going here, Sampson, — about me and the poor, little French dancing-girl." — "I *have heard*," says Mr. Sampson, shaking powder out of his wig. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 317.

**question.** Wilfred is a genius, I don't *question*. ZANGWILL, The Next Religion, III, 164.

**say.** "I lived in comfort upon it (sc. ten thousand pounds) for quite six months." — "You don't say!" EM. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine, II, Ch. XII, 235. Oh my! . . . Grandma ill? You don't *say*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. I, 108.

**to tell.** It was in vain I said that I could do nothing with Mr. Preston. "Bah! bah!" says Mr. Brough, "don't *tell* me." THACK., Sam. Titm.

You would like to wear them (sc. the jewels)? . . . Of course, then let us have them out. Why did not you *tell* me before? G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. I, 5.

"What! what!" he cried. "Did she say that to me? Did you hear her, Eliza and Georgiana? Won't I *tell* mama?" CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 6.

**to think.** i. It's very useful being cousins, don't you *think*? JEPSON, The Passion of Romance, 183.

But gad, man, the fellow looked murder, didn't you *think*, just now? AG. & EG. CASTLE, Wroth, 188.

Eighteen. Fearfully young, don't you *think*? BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, 139. It will be nicer out here, don't you *think*? SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, I, (161).

ii. "Perhaps my heart is made of more adaptable material," I interrupted sentimentally. — "I don't *think*," she murmured reflectively. — "Don't talk slang," I said. PUNCH, 1906, 6 June, 401.

"The Headmaster has not been caning you again?" — "I don't *think*." ZANGWILL, The Next Religion, II, 02.

28. *So* is also a frequent representative of an adjective or noun used in the grammatical function of either nominal part of the predicate or predicative adnominal adjunct. Compare Ch. XXIII, 16, *b*,

In the majority of cases this *so* corresponds to the weak demonstrative *dat* in Dutch and, accordingly, always has weak stress. In strong-stressed positions it is replaced by *this* or *that*, which mostly have back-position, but may also be placed in front. Here follow first some quotations with strong-stressed *this* or *that*.

"Your father walked up the hall, his left hand on his sword-hilt, looking an earl all over, as he is." — He is *that*," said Hereward in a low voice. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. I, 14*b*.

"I misdoubt very much that thou art some runaway monk." — "*That* am I not, by St. Peter's chain!" said Martin in an eager, terrified voice. *Ib.*, 15*b*.

New furniture can make a palace, but it takes old furniture to make a home. Not merely old in itself, lodging-house furniture generally is *that*, but it must be old to us in associations and recollections. JEROME, Idle Thoughts.

"You are not my servant; you are my wife." She raised her eyes, and brightened somewhat. "I may think myself *that* — indeed?" HARDY, Tess, V, Ch. XXXVI, 312.



Note. α) Sometimes *that* appears as a variant of *so* in one and the same sentence.

"Listen," he said, "friend — dear, dear friend... I may call you *so*, for you have been *that* to me." AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. IV, 156.

β) When the reference is to a noun preceded by the indefinite article, we find *so* varying with *one*. It is hardly necessary to observe that the use of *one* shows that the preceding noun is felt to be indicative of a person or thing, rather than a state. Ch. XXXI, 44, 47.

He was a notorious miser, and looked *one* generally. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 9.

Thirty odd years ago Sir Edmund Cox, not then a baronet, nor apparently expecting to be *one*, gave up the happy idleness of a Cambridge undergraduate's life to go out to India and plant tea. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5195, 12c.

He was a gentleman, though he was not born *one*. *Athen.*, No. 4434, 437c.

γ) The invariably weak-stressed nature of *so* is, no doubt, responsible for its frequent suppression. (For strong-stressed *so* see 34). It seems difficult to account satisfactorily for the varied and in some cases, apparently, irregular practice, which prevails in this respect in the printed language. A good deal seems to depend on the intonation, the dynamic and other nuances with which the writer mentally reads his utterances, all of which can find no expression in the written and printed language. We must confine ourselves to the following observations:

- a) *So* is regularly used after *to appear* and *to seem*, and after any copula or quasi-copula other than *to be*.

**to appear.** 'Tis poetry — at least at his (sc. Wordsworth's) assertion, | And may *appear so* when the dog-star rages. BYRON, *Don Juan*, Dedication, IV.

**to become.** "A worthy couple!" said Perker, as the door closed behind them. — "I hope they may *become so*," replied Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 489. Though very fond of Mr. Slope herself, she had never conceived the idea that either of her daughters would *become so*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. IV, 25.

**to prove.** You are a disgrace to your school, and to your family, and I have no doubt will *prove so* in after-life to your country. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 27.

**to remain.** Your father's mother was an honest woman, Maria... Why couldn't you *remain so*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 367.

The big room looking into the little garden to the south was always the nursery; and if you ask my advice, it will *remain so*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLVIII, 480. Henry Martin had been brought up by his parents as a strict teetotaler, and until his twenty-fifth year he *remained so*. *Punch*, No. 3674, 413a.

**to seem.** The request might be singular or *seem so*, but everything has happened in this world before, you know. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXV, 317.

The same thing is true about the favourite theory of Parallax, that the world is flat. It *seems so*; millions of ignorant people believe it is so. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCV, 135a.

**to turn.** "How did you manage to become white, Diggory?" Thomasin asked. — "I *turned so* by degrees, ma'am." HARDY, *Return of the Native*, IV, Ch. I, 478.



Note. In the following quotation the absence of *so* seems anomalous. The next presentation (sc. of the living of Framley) would be in Lady Lufton's hands, if it should fall vacant before the young Lord was twenty-five years of age, and in the young lord's hand, if it should *fall* afterwards. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 2.

- b) *So* is also regularly used after *to find*, *to make*, and practically regularly also after verbs of judging or declaring, to replace a predicative adnominal adjunct. Here we may assume the ellipsis of the infinitive *to be*. (28, c.) The ordinary Dutch equivalent of *so* as used in this connection, is unstressed *dat*.

**to find.** "It was a dreadful one (sc. storm)." — "Some *found it so*." LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, I, 1.

"It is hard to be an only child." — "I told her I had never *found it so*." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 127.

Superficial people are fond of saying that the right is always clear. Carlo did not *find it so*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. XXVII, 250.

**to flatter.** The present scribe is no snob. He is a respectfully brought-up old Briton of the higher middle-class — at least, he *flatters himself so*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 196.

**to make.** My friends will be silent on my disappointment, and I shall know how to *make my enemies so*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXIV, 244.

Is Beauty beautiful, or is it only our eyes that *make it so*? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 162.

Henry Esmond was noble and good, and perhaps might have *made me so*. *ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 368.

**to think.** No man is poor that does not *think himself so*. JEREMY TAYLOR.

"This visit's kind." — "Few else would *think it so*." LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, I, 2.

"Mr. Sidney Wilton is a kind master, sir." — "Well I was his fag at Harrow, and I *thought him so*." DISRAELI, *Endymion*, II, 5.

Note. a) In the following quotation *so* may have fallen out through inadvertency:

"But were you ever married, Peggotty?" says I. "You are a very handsome woman, an't you?" I *thought her* in a different style from my mother, certainly. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 9b. (Compare: We were welcomed... by a most beautiful little girl (or I *thought her so*). *ib.*, Ch. III, 16a.)

β) Sometimes the construction with *so* is extended to other verbs than those of judging or declaring. In that case the ordinary place of *so* seems to be before the verb.

He said he had wounds, which he could show in private; | And with his hat, thus waving it in scorn, | "I would be consul," says he: "aged custom, | But by your voices, will not *so permit me*" *Coriolanus*, II, 3, 177.

The effect of the claim thus advanced is to exempt the Government from all criticism, should it *so desire*. *Times*, No. 1977, 915b.

γ) Sometimes *so* has front-position. This is especially the case in sentences which imply a reserved admission of a preceding statement. Compare 27, Obs. I.

"This is a very pretty view." — "Ay, *so I had always thought it*; more so than ever now." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 17.

"Silence! This violence is all most repulsive;" and *so*, no doubt, she *felt* it. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 14.  
I had no doubt . . . that he was her brother; and *so* he *turned out*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16a.

δ) Mid-position, i. e. between two of the component parts of a complex predicate, seems to occur only occasionally.

This mode of 'futzurizing' (if we *may so call it*). HADLEY, *E. S.* X, 194.<sup>1)</sup>  
R . . . became a lunatic, and *was so found* by inquisition. *Law Times* s. 2)

- c) 1) *So* is rarely dispensed with after *much*, *more*, *most* and after *less*.

Instances of *so* being placed after *least* have not been forthcoming up to the time of writing, but may be common enough. Also *little so* cannot be illustrated for want of material. Notwithstanding the analogy of (*so*) *much so*, this combination is probably very rare, owing to the fact that *little* is not often employed as a modifier of an adjective. (Ch. XL, 69.)

**much.** To all which he adds . . . the quality of being remarkably handsome, almost too *much so* for a boy. BYRON (ETHEL C. MAYNE, *Byron*, Ch. III, 39). His looks and tones are extremely severe, *so much so* that one cannot but fancy that he regards the greater part of the world as being infinitely too bad for his care. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. IV, 27.

**more.** i. You are already popular — *more so*, perhaps, than you yourself will believe. SCOTT, *Introd. to the Lady of the Lake*.

"This is a very pretty view." "Ay, so I had always thought it; *more so* than ever now." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 17.

My life is, indeed, very uniform and retired — *more so* than is quite healthful either for mind or body. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 430. When he got within a league of Rotterdam, he was pretty tired, but he soon fell in with a pair that were *more so*. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 8.

This young lady has done a thing which is, in its way, little short of heroic; the *more so*, because it has its ludicrous side. RIDER HAGGARD, *Mr. Meeson's Will*<sup>2</sup>, Ch. XXI, 233.

- ii. He was more strict in religious observances; as regular at mass, sermons, and vespers as a monk; much *more*, it was thought by many good Catholics, than was becoming to his rank and age. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 76a.

We are glad to have a full insight into the family of the famous author, the *more* because it shows home life at its best and brightest, *Athen.*, No. 4433, 403b.

- iii. *divided practice*: It will be seen that our young vicar was very intimate at Chaldicotes; *so much so* that the groom knew him, and talked to him about the people in the house. Yes; he was intimate there: much *more* than he had given the Framley people to understand. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 21.

If, however, Sheridan was to be blamed, how much *more so* were his friends! how much *more* the public! G. G. S., *Life of Sheridan*, 4.

**most.** She is not the only beautiful girl in Surbiton Cottage, nor to my eyes is she the *most so*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 55.

1) MURRAY, *s. v. so*, 4, d.    2) *Id.*, *s. v. so*, 4, b.

**less.** The time had now come, however, when he could no longer be divided between these two sets of feelings. *The less so*, as there seemed to be no flaw in the title of Polly Doodle. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. II, 15.

Norham was altogether a desert to him then, and Bideford, as it turned out, hardly *less so*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVI, 199a.

**Note.** Thus, probably, also after comparatives and superlatives formed by *more (less)* or *most (least)*.

i. They were both pretty — but Gertrude, the elder, was by far *the more strikingly so*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. III, 24.

ii. It is truly delightful to a philanthropic mind, to see these gallant men staggering along under the influence of an overflow, both of animal and ardent spirits; more *especially* when we remember that [etc.]. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 10.

The Scandinavian invaders had become Christianised, and civilised also — . . . *more highly* than the Irish whom they had overcome. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. IV, 32a.

2) After other adverbs of degree there is a more or less marked tendency to omit *so*. Only the following illustrative quotations had come to hand up to the time of writing.

**entirely.** "Are you still willing to take the oath?" — "*Entirely so.*" MARIE CORELLI, *Temporal Power*, 116.

**irrepressibly.** She gradually became drowsy; *irrepressibly so*, indeed, for in spite of her jerking efforts to keep awake she sank away to the bottom of the boat. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXVIII, 281.

**rather.** i. A very dusty skeleton . . . fell forward in the arms of the porter who opened the door. Queer that. *Rather*, perhaps? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 183.

ii. "Father!" said Minnie playfully, "What a porpoise you do grow!" — "Well, I don't know how it is, my dear," he said, considering about that, "I am *rather so.*" Id., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 62b.

"All the wickedness of the world is Print to him." Mr. Bailey received this as a compliment and said . . . "*Reether so.*" Id., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVI, 226a. (The use of *so* after *rather* seems to be very rare.)

**sufficiently.** "Are you acquainted with the people of the mainland?" — "*Sufficiently*, to know that they are dissatisfied." MAR. CORELLI, *Temporal Power*, 197.

**very.** i. "It's (sc. the leg is) a very muscular one for a child's." — "Is it?" inquired Mr. Allen, carelessly. — "*Very*," said Bob Sawyer, with his mouth full. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 268.

"He's an interesting man — don't you think so?" she remarked. — "Oh yes, *very*. Everybody owns it," replied Liddy. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XII, 105.

ii. "You see there must be some one who is a stranger, and who has access to this house. It is most awkward." — "*Very so*, madam." S. BARING GOULD, *The Red-haired Girl* (SWAEN, *Selection*, III, 145). (The use of *so* after *very* seems to be very rare.)

d) After the infinitive of the verb *to be* when not part of a complex predicate (Ch. I, 15), and, most probably, after the gerund and the present participle, *so* is rarely dispensed with. See, however, 30, d, Note.

i. \* Our contract was made when we were both poor and content *to be so*. DICK., *Christm. Car.* II, 50.

He wanted to ask her if she was mad or believed him *to be so*. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 173.

You are a good child, Pequita. Try *to be* always *so*. MAR. CORELLI, *Temporal Power*, 260.

Cards are responsible for many pitiful misfortunes; but they are not often of the graver kind. I hope they will not prove *to be so* to-night. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. VIII, 20a.

\*\* I want you to be happy . . . I believe you'd stand a jolly good chance of *being so* with Ethel Pierpont. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*.

- ii. Even if they were really poor, they probably deserved *to be*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VIII, 146.

"Mother!" said Tatham impetuously, "was Melrose ever in love with you?" — "I believe he supposed himself *to be*." Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. VII, 140.

Note. In the following quotation it appears to be rather *one* than *so* which is dispensed with. Compare *f*, Note  $\delta$ .

Henry Ringwood became a shareholder in our Company, and the Earl of Crabs offered *to be*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 84.

- e) After the infinitive of *to be*, when forming part of a complex predicate, *so* is now used now dispensed with, apparently without discrimination. Perhaps the distinction is as under *f*).

- i. I am so confounded! . . . I told you I *should be so*, sir — I knew it. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (260).

Why should not this be the greatest commercial association in the world? . . . But do you suppose that it *can be so*, unless every man amongst us use his utmost exertions to forward the success of the enterprise? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 59.

He could not be genial and happy at Surbiton College; but he was by no means satisfied with himself that he *should not have been so*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VII, 76.

My heart is in Spain and *will ever be so*. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. VIII, 40b.

It is all very well for a man to boast that, in all his life, he has never been frightened, and believes that he never *could be so*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVIII, 221.

- ii. "I am afraid you have scarcely been a favourite with Papa," she said timidly. — "There is no reason," replied Walter smiling, "why I *should be*." DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XIV, 175.

We are happy now that he has come — or, at any rate, *ought to be*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 50.

"Between ourselves, Linda, are they not lovers?" — "I don't believe that they are a bit." — "And why *should* they not *be*?" *Ib.*, Ch. V, 53.

You say I am honest and I *will be*. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 362.

I am not popular and never *shall be*. MARIE CORELLI, *Temporal Power*, 123. They are afraid of them and *will always be*. *Ib.*, 352.

Literature cannot be the business of a woman's life, and it *ought not to be*. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VII, 32.

- f) Usage is also divided after *to be* when forming the predicate by itself, the absence of *so* implying, apparently, an emphasized affirmation or denial of the quality referred to. (37—42). For the absence of *so* in conditional clauses see 42, *d*.



- i. Thou art a happy fellow; once I *was so*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 1, (255). Row. There is no making you serious a moment. — CHAS. SURF. Yes, faith, I *am so* now. SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 2, (407).  
For man, to man so oft unjust, | Is always *so* to women. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, cc.  
"It must be owned that it is a very sudden attachment." — "All attachments *are so*." THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 234.  
"He is very simple and modest in his habits for one so wealthy," remarks Maria. — "Rich people often *are so*." Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 167.  
Mamma calls me a stupid boy, and I think I *am so*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVI, 220.  
They (sc. the memoirs) are very bad; but they *are so*, as it seems to us, not from a decay of power, but from a total perversion of power. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (728a).  
Monmouth did not venture to pronounce himself the rightful King, and yet denied that his uncle *was so*. Ib., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 156.  
Don't call me censorious, Mark; you know I *am* not *so*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 8.  
The vices of incivilisation are far worse and far more destructive of human life; and it is just because they *are so* that the rude tribes deteriorate physically less than polished nations. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 1a.  
"Your Government is really more or less of a Republic." — "All Governments *are so* in these days, I imagine." MAR. CORELLI, *Temp. Power*, 262.  
He is a very honest young man. It is unfortunate that he *is so*; a ploughman may be honest, but a prince never. Ib., 62.  
I do not at all deny that this House is the predominant partner. By the practice of the Constitution it undoubtedly *is so*. ARTHUR BALFOUR (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5173, 1c).  
ii. You are my true friend, and always *have been*. DICK, *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 58a.  
You will be kind and good to him, for you *are* to every one. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 474.  
He was a little wild: how many young men *are*! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 127.  
You are a little romantic and sentimental (you know *you are* — women with those large beautiful eyes always *are*). Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 86.  
Gertrude and Linda . . . were accustomed — as what girls *are* not? — to talk half through the night. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 57.  
He (sc. the Doctor) is dreadfully difficult, my dear. When you are as old as I am, you will say that all men *are*. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. V, 22a.  
The orators are Christians and I hope I *am* also. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3677, 495c).  
It is worth while to consider the scheme of the "Times" in detail. It is not a "vindictive" scheme — what scheme ever *was*? *Morning Leader*.  
It (sc. the house) is shut up, it *has been* for twenty years. EL GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. III, 37.

Note. a) The following is an instance of divided practice:

"How is it that we find the dreadful times of the past so interesting to us — in pictures and poetry?" Old Hammond smiled. "It always *was so*, and I suppose always *will be*." W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XVI, 113.

β) After the emphatic *to be* we sometimes find the practice of repeating the preceding nominal instead of using *so*.

I believe he is stupid — I am certain he *is stupid*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 341.  
Don't be irreligious and unnatural, Martin Lambert! I say you *are unnatural*, sir! Ib., Ch. XXXIII, 339.

γ) Sometimes *so* precedes *to be* instead of following it.



VIO. "I have heard my father name him: | He was a bachelor then." — CAP. "And *so is* now, or was so very late." *Twelfth Night*, I, 2, 36.

δ) In the following quotations it is rather the prop-word *one* than *so* that it is dispensed with. Compare *d*, Note.

SIR BEN. Perhaps, sir, you are not a doctor? — SIR OLIV. Truly, I am to thank you for my degree if I *am*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 2, (227). "I ought to have been an actress," she said . . . "Ah! then! if I *had been*!" sighed Mrs. Mount. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 357.

g) Also the past participle after *to be* as an auxiliary of the passive voice, is often represented by *so*. Apparently *so* can hardly be dispensed with, except in the case of strong affirmation or denial. (37—42.)

\* It is certainly a charity to rescue Maria from such a libertine, who, if he is to be reclaimed, can *be so* only by a person of your ladyship's superior accomplishments and understanding. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (366). MAR. " 'Twere fit | He should be punish'd grievously." — ANG. "He *is so*." BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 1, (358b).

This help *has been* underestimated by the English, even more *so* than the military qualities of the Boers. *Morning Leader*.

\*\* This book is still steadily reprinted and will continue *to be*. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. MARY LAMB, 447c.

Note. Much rarer is *it* in this position.

He means you're very innocent, because you don't know what it is to be interviewed. But you must have been *it*, all the same. C. N. & A. M. WILLIAMSON, *Lady Betty*, 22—23.

h) On the other hand the infinitive after *to be* in the sense of a modified *must*, is never represented by *so*.

It (sc. this lesson) must show them (sc. the inferior sort of people) the wide distinction fortune intends between those persons who are to be corrected for their faults, and those who *are not*. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. XI, 56b.

29. *So* is often used after *to do*, this verb together with *so* representing a preceding verb with its enlargements (objects and adverbial adjuncts).

In this combination *to do* is a verb of indefinite action, its meaning being coloured by the preceding verb. As in the case of *to be*, there is a great deal of irregularity in the use of *so* after *to do*, which it is difficult to always account for satisfactorily.

a) *So* seems to be almost regularly used after any verbal of *to do*. Compare, however, 30.

i. \* If our observant lady readers can deduce any satisfactory inferences from these facts, we beg them by all means *to do so*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 273.

"Do you slide?" — "I used *to do so*, on the gutters, when I was a boy." *Ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.

"Call him back", said Mr. Dombey. Mr. Carker was quick *to do so*. *Id.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XIII, 117.

What though I place my friend's money, my family's money . . . all upon this enterprise? You young men will not *do so*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 61.

I have not yet made the acquaintance of Lady Roehampton . . . ; but I hope to *do so*. DISR., *Endymion*, II, 5.

"Will you think me ungrateful, if I ask you something?" — "You have every right to *do so*." PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. II, 12*b*.

Those wanting to take the oath in the old way may *do so*. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3690, 37.

If that does not involve immediate and drastic consequences, what, they ask, will *do so*? WESTM. GAZ., No. 5243, 1*c*.

If Turkey goes in, we may be sure that she will *do so* with a full intention of recovering Salonica if she wins. *Ib.*, No. 6630, 2*b*.

\*\* "I have no assistant, my Lord," said the chemist. — "I can't help that, sir," replied Mr. Justice Stareleigh. "You should hire one." — "I can't afford it, my Lord," rejoined the chemist. — "Then you ought to be able to afford it, sir," said the judge, reddening . . . — "I know I ought to *do*, if I got on as well as I deserved, but I don't, my Lord," answered the chemist. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 306.

All the house belongs to me, or will *do* in a few years. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 6.

She thought she could love, and would *do*, should it ever be her lot to be wooed by such a lover as her young fancy pictured to her. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 57.

- ii. I frequently thought of mentioning to you our Association, but feelings of delicacy prevented me from *doing so*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 63.

People who deceive us once are capable of *doing so* again. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 147.

- iii. It was the most intensely interesting thing . . . to contemplate the playful smile which mantled on his face when he had accomplished the distance, and the eagerness with which he turned round when he *had done so*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 271.

If I fail, you will remain with me if you wish, or go to your friends, the same gentle young lady that I have found you. Others *have not done so*, I admit, but [etc.]. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. V, 25*b*.

Note. *a*) *So* is sometimes placed before the infinitive, the gerund or the participles of *to do*, apparently for no particular purpose beyond that of ameliorating the rhythm. According to MURRAY (s. v. *so*, 2), this order is "now only literary and archaic," but it seems doubtful that this applies to all cases. So far as the infinitive is concerned, the practice, no doubt, owes its frequency to the following passage in the Common Prayer Book: *And although we ought at all times humbly to acknowledge our sins before God; yet ought we most chiefly so to do, when [etc.].*

- i. I'm sure I have as much forgot your poor dear uncle as if he had never existed — and I thought it my duty *so to do*. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2.  
Gumbo would have turned pale with fear had he been able *so to do*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 373.
- ii. However he might have mistook the road, or embarrassed me in *so doing*, his heart was in no fault. STERNE, *Sent. Journ.*, Amiens.  
With a violent effort, Mr. Weller disengaged himself from the grasp of the agonised Pickwickian and, in *so doing*, administered a considerable impetus to the unhappy Mr. Winkle. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 270.
- iii. Why, then, should Coppy be guilty of the unmanly weakness of kissing . . . a big girl? . . . Wee Willie Winkie had seen Coppy *so doing*. RUDY. KIPLING.  
Wee Willie Winkie.

A man will laugh, or clap his hands or hiss, or "boo", when others are *so doing*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 7b.

- iv. Doubtless William *would have so done* (sc. bought Earl Asbiorn off), if he could. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XXV, 105a.

β) The placing of *so* before other forms of *to do* as in the following quotation, seems rare. See, however, 32 and 33.

"If he is not here by the end of the week, I shall go after him." — "Ay, *so do*, Sir John," cried Mrs. Jennings. JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sens., Ch. XIII, 37.

- b) After the finite forms of *to do* usage is divided, but in an analogous way as in the case of the verb *to be* (28, f), there is a tendency to drop *so* when emphasized affirmation or denial of the action referred to is intended. (37—42.) *So* seems to be regularly used in temporal clauses opening with the conjunction *as* or *while*, and is very common in sentences expressing a compliance with a request or a fulfilling of an arrangement or intention. Conversely *so* is rare in conditional clauses opening with *if*. (42, d.)

- i. \* "I write," said Warrington. "I don't tell the world that I *do so*," he added with a blush. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 332.

Now and again Mr. Hardlines would look in, but he *did so* rather as an enemy than as a friend. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. VI, 61.

I would not have assigned him his place in the school, but Mr. Baker *did so* before I could stop it. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 46.

He intends to tell the whole of the Bible history... and he *does so*. SAINTS-BURY, Short Hist. of Eng. Lit., 71.

A little while ago I was asked to give evidence before the Committee on the Censorship, and, being of a meek and law-abiding nature, I *did so*. CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News, No. 3984 A, 751b).

He (sc. Wilhelm Kuhnert) showed such ability in the drawing and painting of animals that he was strongly advised to devote himself entirely to that branch of art. He *did so*, and in pursuit of subjects has travelled and hunted extensively in Africa and the East. Il. Lond. News, No. 3686, 850.

Durham lives simply on the up-country trade. It *does so now*; it has always done *so*. Morning Leader.

One day he was dared by a companion to drink a glass of beer, and rather than be called a coward he *did so*. Punch, No. 3674, 413b.

\*\* He drank his tasteless tea, and ate his uncooked eggs, threatening the waiter as he *did so* with sundry pains and penalties. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. X, 108.

Dunstan's first act was... to go to the bed; but while he *did so*, his eyes travelled over the floor. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. IV, 33.

I remember him looking round the cove and whistling to himself as he *did so*. STEVENSON, Treas. Island, Ch. I, 15.

- ii. \* "Every person has a right to take care of themselves. He always *did!*" — "That's true indeed!" said the laundress, "No man more *so*." DICK., Christm. Car<sup>5</sup>, IV, 91.

Walter hesitated for a moment, thinking that one or other of them would notice it (sc. the letter lying on the floor); but finding that neither *did*, he stopped, came back, picked it up, and laid it himself on Mr. Dombey's desk. Id., Dombey, Ch. XIII, 118.

You never hold trumps, you know — I always *do*. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. III, 24.

"I'm sure it (sc. the diamond) would light up the room of itself," says Gus. "I've read they *do* in — in history." THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 47.

Be honest, my boy, and call things by their right names — always *do*. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 47.

He despises the Galls. that lofty nephew of mine; he lets you know that he *does*. MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. IV, 63.

"Who knows what may turn up?" — "Oh yes, something always *does*." MR. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 15.

You learned, before I *did*, to distinguish between needing and wanting. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman, Ch. XXX, 270.

I've brought a lamb for Miss Everdene. I thought she might like one to rear; girls *do*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. IV, 30.

"Can you sing at all?" — "My friends say that I can." — "Ah, one's friends generally *do*." PEMBERTON, Doctor Xavier, Ch. II, 9b.

You knew I would come: of course you *did*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVII, 224.

"You had better write about the cottage." — "I will," said the Vicar; and he forthwith *did*. MAR. CRAWFORD, Tale of a Lon. Parish, Ch. III, 24. (The absence of *so* strikes one as incongruous.)

In your heart you think she's a poor, harmless, gentle, misunderstood little creature, and that we've all behaved brutally to her. Now you know you *do*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, III, Ch. VIII, 304.

- c) When the reference is to the doing of a deed, whether good or bad, *to do so* is mostly replaced by *to do it*.

The verb *to do* then appears as a verb of definite action, but the distinction of the definite and the indefinite *to do* is not always clear, and consequently *to do it* and *to do so* are to a certain extent used indifferently. It may, however, be observed α) that *it* can hardly take the place of *so*, when the reference is to the performing of a command, request, advice, etc.: *I commanded (requested, advised, etc.) him to withdraw from the concern, and he did so*; β) that *it* can never be suppressed. Compare also MURRAY, s. v. *do*, 24, d.

He made a stand for the absent Glubb though he *did it* trembling. DICK., Domb, Ch. XII, 103.

Buy them (sc. the books) for me, dear, and I will never forget how kind it was of you to *do it*. *Ib.*, Ch. XII, 111.

Off with you, and show 'em how to *do it*. *Id.*, Pickw., Ch. XXX, 269.

If they would rather die, they had better *do it*. *Id.*, Christm. Car., I, 15.

We shall not quarrel easily among ourselves, and forget poor Tony Tim in *doing it*. *Ib.*, IV, 101.

I remember, when that fellow was hanged for murdering a woman, Barnes said he did not wonder at his having *done it*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XXX, 343.

If there is anything that I can do — write your letters or look after your books, I am sure I should *do it* very willingly. PEMBERTON, Doctor Xavier, Ch. V, 24a.

"They have cut your portrait to pieces." . . . — "Who *did it*?" READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. IX, 49.

If a father says, "Burgomaster, lock up my son," he must *do it*. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 38.

Won't you help me off with my cloak? No? Then I must *do it* for myself. HALL CAINE, The Christian, II, 268.

I fink (= think) I'll into the garden and eat worms. If I *don't do it* to-day, I'll have *to do it* to-morrow. Westm. Gaz., No. 5201, 10b.



But even if it were possible for them to educate the nation at their own private cost, why should they be expected to *do it*. B. SHAW, *Plays Pleasant and Unpleasant*, II, *Intro.d.*; 12.

**Note.** When the reference is to a noun or gerund, *it* seems to be the only substitute.

Hunting has this charm, the greatest of all attractions: any one can *do it*. *Good Words* (STOF., Leesb., I, 41).

There is not the least difficulty in doing a thing, if you only know how to *do it*. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*.

No Liberal who does the merest lip-homage to the principle of nationalism can justify, except on grounds of greed or vainglory, the annexation of the Free States. We may *do it* to round off our South African possessions and make our map monotonously red. We may *do it* from a desire to reward our Colonists in the Cape and to satisfy their lust of vengeance. But we shall not *do it* from the honest conviction that the inhabitants of the Republic will fare better under our flag. *Morning Leader*.

- d) Also *this* and *that* are not seldom found after *to do* whether indefinite or definite. When stressed, they do not bear being replaced by either *so* or *it*, and sometimes have front-position.

JOS. SURF. Charles, you have lately given that worthy man grounds for great uneasiness. — CHAS. SURF. Yes, they tell me I *do that* to a great many worthy men. SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 3, (416).

They begged her for Heaven's sake to hold her tongue. *This* she said she could *do*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 61.

"What fun it would be to send it (sc. the valentine) to the stupid old Boldwood!" . . . — "No, I won't *do that*." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 110.

Offended me! As if you could *do that*, Bathsheba! *Ib.*, Ch. LVI, 466.

In most audiences there is usually a man who means to amuse himself and possibly his friends by trying to 'stump' the unfortunate performer. If he is careful, he can *do this* in such a very natural way that the two thought-readers are in trouble etc. *Pall Mall Mag.*, 1907, March, 356.

"He does stare dreadfully, though," she resumed a moment later. "But I suppose all artists *do that*." MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 112.

30. a) A preceding verb with enlargements is mostly left unrepresented in any way after the verbs that form a complex predicate with an infinitive, i. e. after *can*, *may*, *must*, *need*, *ought*, *shall* and *will*. Ch. I, 15.

For instances in certain sentences and clauses of mere affirmation or denial, or of inquiry after affirmation or denial see 37—42.

**can.** Could she not leave the house any day, . . . to London's solitude and the vortex of her misfortunes? She knew that she *could*. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. V, 22a.

**may.** If my daughter flies in my face, surely my husband *may*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, IV, Ch. V, 67.

**must.** "How can I leave you, Lorna?" — "You *must* — you *must*." BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 225.

**need.** I beg of you . . . not . . . to speak to him of the man Sykypri, for a good long time, if you ever *need*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXI, 190.



**shall.** "Can you love me well enough to be my wife?" — "To tell you the truth, I don't think I ever *shall*." TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 51.

**should.** JOS. SURF. "Maria, I see you have no satisfaction in this society." — MAR. "How is it possible I *should*?" SHER., *School for Scand.*, II, 2, (383).

**will.** You can buy me the books, Susan; and you *will*, when you know I want them. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

Just hold me at first Sam; *will* you? Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 269.

Swear now, it will do you good, Mr. Trail, indeed it *will*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 3.

**would.** He had not sown his wild oats, but he *would* soon. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 127.

Note. Occasionally we find the auxiliary *to have* together with one or other of the above verbs to obviate misunderstanding of tense.

I know now what you meant to-day at tea time. Why didn't you tell me right out? You *should have*! OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan*, II, (63).

- b) Also after certain equivalents of *will* (Ch. I, 48, Obs. II) we usually find no word to represent the preceding verb with its enlargements, not, at least, in adverbial clause of time or condition.

**to choose.** His hand actually seemed like a steel vice that could have crushed mine, if he had *chosen*. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. II, 15.

It looks as if he might have got another good run out of "The Importance", had he *chosen*. II. Lond. News, No. 3853, 230b.

**to like.** "You had better give it (sc. the money) to me to take care of," he said, "At least, you can if you *like*." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43a.

**to please.** The flying man is not always able to start precisely, when he *pleases*. II. Lond. News, No. 3678, 525b.

**to wish.** If I fail, you will remain with me if you *wish*, or go to your friends. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. V, 25b.

If you wish me to go abroad with you, please let it be on the understanding that I can come home when I *wish*. Ib., Ch. VIII, 41a.

Note. a) Thus also after *had rather* and *had better*, the former expressing a kind of volition, the latter a kind of obligation.

"I wish you'd let me bleed you," said Mr. Benjamin, with great eagerness. — "No thank you," replied Mr. Winkle hurriedly. — "I really think you *had better*," said Allen. — "Thank you," replied Mr. Winkle, "I'd *rather* not." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 270.

β) After infinitives the omission of the pronoun seems to be at variance with idiom. Thus *that* could hardly be dispensed with in:

"Perhaps you'd like to spend a couple of shillings or so, in a bottle of currant wine by-and-by, up in the bedroom?" said Steerforth . . . It certainly had not occurred to me before, but I said, Yes, I should *like that*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43a.

- c) It is hardly necessary to observe that the phrases *to do so (it)* and *to be so* are frequently employed to fulfil representative duties after the verbs mentioned in a). For instances see respectively 28, e and 29, a. The following are instances of divided practice:
- "I really have not had an opportunity of perusing them (sc. the literary articles)." — "You *should do so*, sir," said Pott, with a severe countenance. "I *will*," said Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 471.

"Can you count them (sc. the rooks' nests), from above, do you think?" ... — "No doubt, I *can*; or if I *cannot*, it will not take me long to find a spot whence I *can do it*." BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 226.

- d) The use of the bare verb *to be* in this function is also quite common, but the bare verb *to do* is but rarely found in this position. For instances see respectively 28, *e* and 29, *a*.

Note. *To be* without *so* may also be common enough after *to want* and other equivalents of *will*.

The most sacred stamp and seal of the cad is this — that he cannot be courteous even when he really *wants to be*. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3937, 470*b*).

- e) The use of *so* without *to do* or *to be* after the verbs mentioned under *a*) seems to be confined to the older stages of the language.

BRUT. Repair to the Capitol. — CITIZENS. We *will so*. *Coriolanus*, II, 3, 264. It's well I have a husband a-coming, or ecod I'd marry the baker, I *would so*. *SHER.*, *Trip to Seab.* III, 4.

The following is a late instance: I've a mind to cut the whole of it; and but for the girls I *would so*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 223.

Note. *a*) According to KRUISINGA (*A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 445) *so* is occasionally met with in front-position, especially in conditional clauses.

But let the author explain himself (if *so* he can) in the words of his preface.

β) *So* without *to do* or *to be* is found frequently enough in connection with certain equivalents of *will*, apparently in the majority of cases preceding the verb.

**to choose.** He might have married her, had he *so chosen*. *Mrs. WARD*, *Marc.* II, 156.

**desire.** National granaries be in existence before Christmas, if the nation *so desired*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 467, 495*c*.

We may dismiss as idle the notion that the King could resist, even if he *so desired*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 1*c*.

**to purpose.** ROSALIND. Did he leave him there. | Food to the suck'd and hungry lioness? — OLIVER. Twice did he turn his back and *purposed so*. As you like it, IV, 3, 127.

**to think fit.** He may claim the right of refusing duel to any man, if he shall *so think fit*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 108*b*.

- f) In clauses of comparison, i. e. such as open with *as* or *than*, the use of *so* is, of course, impossible, but *to be* and *to do* are common enough after the verbs mentioned in *a*).

- i. (She paid) her way from month to month, as widows with limited incomes *should do*. *TROL.*, *Three Clerks*, Ch. III, 23.

In their early days they lived together, as sisters *should do*. *ib.*, Ch. III, 25. (They chatted) about everything and nothing, as girls always *can do*. *ib.*, Ch. III, 26.

"How would Gertrude receive me?" said Alaric, pushing the matter further than he perhaps *should have done*. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 68.

- ii. She was a disgrace to her family and no better than she *should be*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 108*b*.

There is a certain classic which is not read as much as it *ought to be*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 2*c*.

Compare: She had looked at him quickly out of the corners of her eyes, as women *will*. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 77.

Many difficult questions may arise hereafter when we come, *as we shall*, to the task of constructing a Second Chamber on a tolerable basis. Westminster Gaz., No. 5207, 1c.

The taking of Brussels and the overrunning of North Belgium will not open the road to Paris even if it happens, as it *may*. Ib., No. 6618, 1b.

Note I. After *to use* when expressing recurrency (Ch. I, 53), the representation is mostly effected by pro-infinitive *to* (31).

i. He does not come so often as he *used to*.

ii. She seemed to love none of us as she *used*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XIII, 136.  
Men don't idealise women as they *used*. Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. III, 161.

- g) *It* as the representative of a preceding verb with its enlargements is never found after the verbs mentioned under *a*), but is occasionally met with after equivalents of *will*.

**to intend.** "I thought they were all going to return the same night," said he. — "Well, they did *intend it*." TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IV, 36.

**to like.** You can start as soon as it's daylight, you know, if you *like it*. Ib.

**will.** A man has only to say 'I believe', and he will believe, because he *wills it*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VI, 107.

**wish.** You have been in London, Jack, much longer than you *wished it*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVI, 213.

Note. This *it* sometimes represents an accusative with infinitive. Thus in:

"You're a humbug, sir." — "A what?" said Mr. Winkle, starting. — "A humbug, sir. I will speak plainer, if you *wish it*. An impostor, sir." DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 270.

The really delightful marriage must be that where your husband was a sort of father, and could teach you even Hebrew, if you *wished it*. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. I, 4.

Compare the following quotation, in which the accusative with infinitive is left unrepresented:

Of course I'll drop the subject if you *wish*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LI, 416.

- h) The demonstratives *this* and *that* can, apparently, stand with the verbs mentioned under *a*) only when strong-stressed and in front-position.

I shall be very sorry for his sake, *that* I should. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 318.

31. Peculiar to Late Modern English is the colloquial use of the bare preposition *to* instead of *to be so* or *to do so*.

The practice seems to prevail especially in the west of England (ALFORD, The Queen's English, § 307—8), but instances of the pro-infinitive *to*, as it is styled by JESPERSEN (Growth and Structure, § 211), are common enough, also in the works of writers that hail from other parts of the country. Compare also STORM, Eng. Phil., 877; BORST, E. S., XXXIX, 413; Drie Talen, XV, 10; WEBST., Dict., s. v. *to*, 4; MURRAY, s. v. *to*, 21.

Towards evening the mate and boatswain begged the master of our ship to let them cut away the foremast, which he *was very unwilling to*. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 9.

He has the misfortune to be of a very weak constitution; and consequently cannot accept of such cares and business as preferments in his function *would oblige him to*. *Spectator*, II, (9).

„Come, Tommy, tell your dear Cluppy.” — “Mother said I *wasn't to*.” DICK., *Pickw.* Ch. XLVI, 424.

“I cannot tell you (sc. the things said about you)” — “It would be wiser if you *were to*, I think.” HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 467.

“And you will keep the secret of my would-be marriage from Clym for the present.” — “I *have given my word to*.” Id., *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. II, 137.

“Will you be back before to-night?” — “I *shall try to*.” DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XIX.

You only ask me, because Mamma *told you to*. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Gadsbys*, 13.

“You haven't cut it off, have you?” — “I *was just about to*.” JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, A.

I do not think he will ever forgive him. If he does, it will be because you *ask him to*. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. VII, 31a.

“I do not know you, sir,” she said. — “But you *are about to*.” Ib., Ch. II, 12a. He (sc. the duke) could live on that scale all the time, if he *wanted to*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 4b.

The Chancellor of the Exchequer would have to raise untold millions more than even Mr. Lloyd George *has to*. Ib., No. 5207, 2a.

It is further to be explained to him (sc. the child) that in our souls we are all naturally loving and united (a lie) and that it is our natural bodies that delight to bark and bite, for *'tis their nature to*. CHESTERTON (II. *Lond. News*, No. 3689, 4b).

The boy hesitates whether to turn the jewel, which will reveal to him all the spirits present; the girl in terror of the ghosts, *implores him not to*. Ib., 4c.

George and Wallace think, or *seem to*, that a man wants nothing but a bit of land. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 478, 3c.

Note. The construction illustrated by the following quotations, in which *to* is further followed by *it* standing for *do so*, seems to be a vulgarity. Compare FRANZ, E. S., XII.

It's true that I don't see company, Mr. George, and that I don't treat. I can't *afford to it*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXI, 184.

“Do you know your mistress's name?” — “She has been my mistress a long time sir,” answered Peggotty, “I *ought to it*.” Id., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23a.

I can't read, nor I don't *want to it*. Id., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 31. Everything . . . I bring to figures. and my Aunt Elizabeth Hannah *taught me to it*. WIL. DE MORGAN, *Joseph Vance*, Ch. I, 1.

32. *So* is often found at the head of affirmative sentences expressing assent to a view, or compliance with a request, command, determination enunciated in a preceding sentence. In this case it is strongly conjunctive in function.

The predicate in these sentences is made up of a single verb and depends upon that of the preceding sentence, i. e. it is formed by *to be* or *to have*, or by any of the verbs that form a complex predicate with an infinitive, or by *to do*, this last verb being used when one or other of the above verbs is wanting in the preceding sentence.

*So* represents diverse parts of the preceding sentence, mostly the main part of the predicate with its adjuncts, sometimes, as in the case of *to have*, the object.

As the predicate is connotative of emphatic affirmation, it has full stress and is, accordingly, placed after the subject, practically without any exception. Ch. VIII, 8, *f*.

**to be.** "Such reports are highly scandalous" — "*So they are.*" SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (368).

It has been remarked that Mr. Pecksniff was a moral man. *So he was.* DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 7*a*.

"I thought you said you were going to stay the evening with Mr. Herbert." — "*So I am.*" — Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 36.

"I thought you were in London." — "*So I was yesterday.*" SWEET, *Dialogue*.

**to have.** "Always a delicate creature, whom a breath might have withered," said the Ghost. "But she had a large heart!" — "*So she had!*" DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 42.

**may.** "I may visit Joseph afterwards as old Stanley." — "True — *so you may.*" SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1, (389).

**ought.** I dare say he likes French actresses . . . better than me. And *so he ought*, and so they are better than me. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 341.

**should.** "You should have joined us last night," said Mr. Pickwick. — "*So we should,*" replied Bob Sawyer. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 267.

**will.** Row. Let them laugh, and retort their malice only by showing them you are happy in spite of it. SIR PET. I' faith, *so I will!* SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (431).

"Uncle," he said gaily . . . "what shall I send you home from Barbadoes?" — "Hope, my dear Wally. Hope that we shall meet again, on this side of the grave. Send me as much of that as you can." — "*So I will, uncle.*" DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XIX, 171.

**do.** He said I should heartily<sup>1</sup> repent his being listed, and *so I do* from my soul. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, V, 7, (345).

The benchers determined to have his door broken open, as he hadn't paid any rent for two years. *So they did.* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 183.

"Peg away, Bob," said Mr. Allen to his companion encouragingly. — "*So I do,*" replied Bob Sawyer. And *so*, to do him justice, *he did.* Ib., Ch. XXX, 267.

"You will see that my wife and Miss Brough consult my wishes in this respect." And *so they did.* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 79.

I'll say my father and mother want you to go and see them for a whole day, and *so they do*, for they've often said so. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

33. Obs. I. Sometimes the most significant part of the predicate is repeated. In this case *so* loses much of its pronominal character and to all intents and purposes becomes a pure conjunctive.

"I thought you had been asleep." — "*So I have been asleep.*" DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. VI, 25*b*.

"You have been pleased to say . . . that the very estates we hold in this country are not ours, but of right revert to your family." — "*So they are ours!*" THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 966.

COKANE. I have been called a fool. — FRENCH [morosely]. *So you are a fool.* SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, III, 63.

Note. The conjunctive character of *so* even makes it possible for a second *so* being used in the same sentence.



"I do hope you will go home soon," he added. — "Yes, said Richard, and I, *so do I hope so.*" G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVI, 337.

II. Admission of apparent or seeming correctness of the view expressed in the preceding sentence is indicated by *So it appears* or *so it seems*. "These new houses won't bear dancing in," observed Gunter's head man. — "*So it appears,*" replied I. MARRYAT, *Mod. Town Houses*.

III. Qualified or emphasized assent is expressed by an adverb of mood placed before *so*, with the rest of the sentence understood; or by an adverb of mood together with (followed by) a curtailed sentence without *so*; or by an adverb of mood without any accompanying word.

i. "He comes on the old affair, I suppose. The match between his son that's just returned from Paris, and Miss Richland, the young lady he's guardian to." — "*Perhaps so.*" GOLDS., *Good-nat. man*, I.

"I think one hears nothing else but scandal." — "*Just so, indeed, ma'am.*" SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (367).

"My lord," said Mr. Winkle, trembling with anxiety, "I — I'd rather not." — "*Perhaps so,*" said the little judge, "but you must." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 316.

"Of the Inner Temple, I believe?" said Miss Clarissa... Traddles said, "*Exactly so.*" Id., *Cop.*, Ch. XLI, 297b.

"At least I am pardoned!" — "*Surely so.*" G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXIII, 287.

ii. "When you shall hear your parents." — "Are no more." — "You apprehend me wrong." — "*Perhaps I do.*" LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, II, 1.

"The licence of invention some people take is monstrous indeed." — "'Tis so: but, in my opinion, those who report such things are equally culpable." — "*To be sure they are.*" SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (368).

"You're very poor, Tom." — "*I certainly am,*" said Tom Smart. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122.

"They must have been very nice men, both of 'em," said the dirty-faced man. — "*Yes, they were,*" replied the bagman; "very nice men indeed!" Ib., Ch. XIV, 127.

"Father, I fear you are tired." — "*Indeed, my son, I am.*" READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 8.

iii. "If Charles is undone, he'll find half his acquaintance ruined too, and that, you know, is a consolation." — "*Doubtless, ma'am — a very great one.*" SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (369).

"The brandy was too good to leave in a hurry: wasn't it, Ben?" — "*Certainly,*" said Mr. Benjamin Allen. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 267.

IV. In Older English this *so* sometimes has back-position. Occasional instances may be met with in the latest English. Compare FRANZ, E. S., XVIII.

SILV. You are some blockhead of a constable. — CON. *I am so.* FARQUHAR, *Rec. Off.*, V, 1, (327).

"The licence of invention some people take is monstrous indeed." — "'Tis so; but, in my opinion, those who report such things are equally culpable." SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (268).

"Many of our acquaintance have taste, spirit, and politeness; but, plague on't, they won't drink." — "*It is so, indeed, Charles!*" Ib., III, 2, (393).

"We also have a female Sovereign, mylord," said Morton. — "*We have so,* Douglas," said the Earl. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXVI, 391.

"Very nice pork-shop that 'ere, sir." — "Yes, *it seems so*," said Mr. Pickwick. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXI. (Possibly this *so* must be understood to refer to *nice* alone, not to the whole statement preceding.)

"And so you see 't was beautiful ale, and I wished to value his kindness as much as I could, and not to be so ill-mannered as to drink only a thimbleful, which would have been insulting to the man's generosity." — "True, Master Coggan, *'twould so*," corroborated Mark Clark. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 68.

- V. *That* is not infrequently found in the same position as *so* in these corroborative sentences.

"I am afraid," said Lady Booby, "he is a wild young fellow." — "*That he is*," said Slipslop. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VII, 14.

"Very trifling circumstances often give rise to the most injurious tales." — "*That they do*, I'll be sworn, ma'am." SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (371).

"I'm sure it will give us — infinite pleasure," said Lady Jane, though rather in a grave way." — "Oh, *that it will*," says Lady Fanny. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 28.

"He's rather a naughty child sometimes." — "Yes — *that he is*." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 110.

Note. In a sentence in which a man corroborates his own statement by way of emphasis, *that* is regularly used instead of *so*.

You are an angel, *that you are*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 74.

God bless you, old boy; don't be too hard upon me, you know I'm d—d miserable, *that I am*. Id., Newc., I, Ch. XXIX, 335.

Why, my boy Jacob there and your father were sworn brothers — *that they were*, sure — weren't ye, Jacob? HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VII, 61.

- VI. Assent to a negative view is mostly expressed by sentences opening with *no more*.

Row. Come, Sir Oliver, I know you cannot speak of Charles's follies with anger. — Sir Oliv. Odd's heart, *no more I can*; nor with gravity either. SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (435).

"If Mr. Pendennis had been alive, this scandal would never have happened." — "*No more it would*." THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 152.

"Clavering thinks he ain't fit for Parliament," said the Major. — "*No more he is*." Ib., II, Ch. XXVII, 299.

"I don't understand thee," quoth the abbot. And *no more he did*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 17a.

Note. *Nor* and *neither* in this position seem to be rare.

As to Bertie, one would have imagined from the sound of his voice and the gleam of his eye that he had not a sorrow nor a care in the world. *Nor had he*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIX, 147.

Both . . . looked as if they had not a money care in the world. And *neither had they*. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Mary Pechell*, Ch. I.

- VII. Qualified or emphasized assent to a negative view is expressed by sentences opening with an adverb or adverbial expression of mood followed by a curtailed sentence or by *not*.

i. "I never thought of the romance of this particular subject before, certainly," said Mr. Pickwick, laughing. — "*To be sure you didn't*," said the little old man, "*of course not*." DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXI, 183.

ii. SIR ANTH. Though he wa'n't the indulgent father that I am, Jack. — ABS. *I dare say not*, sir. SHER., *Rivals*, III, 1, (241).

"The cigars were not bad, or the pork chops either: were they Bob?" — "*Decidedly not*," said Bob. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 267.

"I didn't mean to treat you with any disrespect, sir," said Tom; in a much humbler tone than he had spoken in at first. — "Well, well," said the old fellow, "*perhaps not — perhaps not*." *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 122.

- VIII. In sentences expressing dissent from the proposition enounced in the preceding sentence, *so*, *that*, or *no more* or any such word is usually absent. (37, *b*.)

"You must be tired after your long walk." — "No, *I am not*."

"You cannot be tired yet." — "*I am*."

Note. Strong dissent is expressed with the help of such words as *of course*, placed before the curtailed sentences.

"You must be tired after your long walk." — "*Of course, I am not*."

Note also the vulgar mode of expressing dissent in:

"Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are one and the same person." —

"*The devil they are*." SHER., *Rivals*, I, 1, (213).

"Mr. Halifax will, I hope, dine with us next Sunday." — "*The devil he will*." MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVII, 168.

- IX. Corroborative statements may also stand without any of the above words.

"She is a dear old woman, I am sure." — "*She is*, Sowerby; and you would say so if you knew her." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 34.

- X. Very rarely is the subject found after the predicate in sentences of a corroborative tenor.

"He speaks the truth," said a second voice firmly. — "*Ay, that doth he*," said a third. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. III, 22.

"I thought you loved him." — "*Yes, so did I*." SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 102.

I'll punish him — by my soul, *that will I*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXI, 241.

34. The semi-conjunctive *so* is also found at the head of affirmative sentences that are expressive of the fact that the person(s), animal(s) or thing(s) indicated by the subject, is (are) in the same circumstances as that (those) indicated by the subject of the preceding sentence.

The predicate of these sentences is of the same nature as that in the sentences described in the preceding §, and also *so* has the same representative force, but as the subject is the principal word and, accordingly, has full stress, inverted word-order is the rule. Ch. VIII, 8, *f*.

**to be.** You are a young man, sir? said Pott. Mr. Bob Sawyer nodded assent. "*So are you, sir*," said Pott, addressing Mr. Ben Allen. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 471.

In his own expressive language he was "floored". *So was Mr. Ben Allen. So was Mr. Pickwick.* *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 468.

**to have.** You've a short memory, and *so have many of our tenants.* MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 77).

Steyne has a touch of the gout, and *so*, between ourselves, *has your brother.* THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXV, 264.

**can.** I know you could thrash me...; *so could most men.* THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 333.

**to do.** The children idolise him, and *so* indeed *does the whole neighbourhood.* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LVII, 526.

Jos thought of all these things and trembled. *So did all the rest of Brussels.* THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.

35. Obs. I. Sometimes the most significant part, or even the whole of the predicate of the preceding sentence is repeated for the sake of clearness, with the result that *so* is stripped of its pronominal character and becomes a pure conjunctive adverb.

Honest I know you are my boy — give me your hand! *So am I honest, so is every man in this Company honest.* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 59. Your poor grandmother . . . used to scold me, and called me worldly. Worldly my dear! *So is the world worldly.* Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIV, 251. He will be . . . so sorry about his rabbits — and *so am I sorry.* G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

"Ginevra saw you, I think?" — "*So do I think so.*" CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XX, 272.

- II. *Too* (or *also*) is sometimes added for more emphasis.

SIR TO. I could marry this wench for this device. — SIR AND. *So could I too.* *Twelfth Night*, II, 5, 201.

BAL. Nay, Captain, I must speak to you. — ROSE. And *so must I too*, Captain. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Offic.*, III, 2, (292).

They say a green Yule makes a fat churchyard, but *so does a white Yule too*, for that matter. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 46.

- III. When sameness of negative circumstances is to be expressed, the second sentence opens with *nor*, *neither* or *no more*; and sometimes with *and*, in which latter case (*n*)*either* is placed at the end. For illustrative quotations see Ch. X, 9—10.

- IV. In expressing dissimilarity of circumstances *not* is placed before *so*, while the verb is omitted in case the subject is a noun. When the subject is a pronoun, a full sentence with inverted word-order opening with *so* is mostly used.

- i. There hung over his brethren an appearance of mingled grief and terror . . . But *not so Father Ambrose.* SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIII, 123. The horse rose instantly — *not so the master.* LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 39.

Mr. B. did not show the least symptom of agitation. *Not so the assailant.* GRONDH. and ROORDA, *Eng. Leesb.*, I, 65.

- ii. \* WORTHY. I am sorry to hear, Mr. Balance, that your daughter is lost. — BAL. *So am not I*, sir, since an honest gentleman has found her. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Offic.*, V, 7, (347).

"I would have given a five-pound note to have heard it (sc. the lecture)," said Sir George. — "*So would not I*," said Lady Lufton. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IX, 88.

He was all smiles, but *so was not she* also. Id., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XVII, 137.

"I wish you had the task instead of me." — "*So do not I.*" Id., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VII, 77.

\*\* My wife was confused, but *not so I.* *Punch*, No. 3810, 1c.

## V. The declarative word-order is retained in these sentences:

- 1) when the sameness of circumstances does not concern what is indicated by the subject.

They said he was wandering in his head yesterday, poor boy, and so they said *the day before*. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXIV, 90a. Miss Ethel seemed to be very much pleased with these performances, which Miss Mackenzie likewise examined with great good nature and satisfaction. *So she did the views of Rome, Naples, Marble Head in the county of Sussex, etc. in the same collection*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 263.

"Your enthusiasm . . . refreshes me, on my honour it does." — "*So it does me* — by gad — perfectly refreshes me," cries Jack. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXVI, 272.

"Do you not know that he likes you?" — "Ah, yes; and *so he does Lady Scatterd*." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 371.

"It gave me quite a turn — his face," said Tall, breathing. — "And *so it did me*," said Samway. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIII, 439.

- 2) Occasionally when the subject is a pronoun modified by either *all* or *both*, the ordinary practice being, however, to place the subject after the verb.

i. When first he entered the corps, she was ready enough to admire him; but *so we all are*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 278, I thank you cordially, and *so we do all*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. VI, 321.

ii. I confess | That thou hast suffer'd much; *so have we both*. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, III, 1, (318b).

He and she had many a weary day of doubt and care, and *so have we all*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 907.

"You should practise as well as preach, Mr. Arabin!" — "Undoubtedly I should. *So should we all*." TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXX, 261.

"I am thinking rather of our poor friend who is lying so near us than of Mr. Slope." — "Of course you are. *So are we all*." *Id.*, Ch. XXXI, 272.

"We know you do (sc. hate him), miss," said Liddy; "and *so do we all*." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXX, 229.

"There — you've owned it!" — "So have you — *so have we all*." *Id.*, *Tess*, III, Ch. XXI, 175.

VI. Sameness of circumstances is sometimes expressed without *so*. In this case the declarative word-order is regularly retained.

"I'm perfectly aware that I have heaps of faults," she observed at last reflectively. "*We all have*, dear," he said. EDWIN PUGH, *The Fault-finder* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5243, 9a).

36. Sometimes we find *so* representing the main part of a preceding sentence or clause after adverbs or after the conjunction *if*. Compare also 28, c; 33, Obs. III; and 42, d.

a) JOS. SURF. Charles, you have lately given that worthy man grounds for great uneasiness. — CHAS. SURF. Yes, they tell me I do that to a great many worthy men. But *how so*, pray? SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 3, (416). "Don't you come from him, sir?" — "Not *immediately so*, sir." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXVIII, 206a.



The man for whose knowledge and purpose he had so much reverence, was actually living there; *not only so*, but living among the more thoughtful and mentally shining ones therein. HARDY, *Jude the Obscure*, I, 30.

He (sc. Byron) gave instant orders to Cawthorn to burn the whole impression, then being printed, of the fifth edition. *Not only so*, but in 1816... reading it over in a copy of the fourth edition, he recorded his own severe judgment of himself in the pages. ETH. COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, I, Ch. VII, 124.

In one case at least important positions were abandoned even before they had been attacked. *Not only so*, but when initiative was exceptionally exhibited, it was promptly suppressed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5241, 14a.

- b) You tell me you are sure he is innocent; *if so*, you do him the greatest service by giving him an opportunity to clear himself. *SHER.*, *School for Scand.*, IV, 3, (415),

(He was) wondering whether it (sc. the whisky) would ever be paid for, *and if so*, in how many years' time. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 184.

We feel that in this place we lay ourself open to the inquiry whether Mr. Winkle was whispering, during the brief conversation, to Arabella Allen: *and if so*, what he said; and furthermore, whether Mr. Snodgrass was conversing apart with Emily Wardle; *and if so*, what he said. *Ib.*, Ch. XXX, 273.

Note. The negative *not* drives out *so* in these incomplete clauses.

If I have a mind to list, why *so*; *if not*, why 'tis not *so*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 1.

37. In certain short sentences, whose chief or only function is that of affirmation or denial, or of inquiry after affirmation or denial, some element(s) to be found in the preceding sentence is (are) all but regularly left unrepresented. In them the predicate is determined by that of the latter, in like manner as in the sentences opening with conjunctive *so*. (32.)

The sentences here referred to are:

- a) such as have no further function than merely to answer a preceding question, the absence or presence of the negative *not* respectively indicating an affirmative or a negative answer. They are often preceded by either *yes* or *no*.

*Are you happy? (Yes,) I am; or (No,) I am not. Have you a copy of this book? (Yes,) I have; or (No,) I have not. Can you come? (Yes,) I can; or (No,) I cannot.*

"Are you the spirit whose coming was foretold me?" asked Scrooge. — "I am!" *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, II, 34.

"Are you the landlord?" inquired the gentleman. — "I am, sir," replied the landlord. *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 474.

"Do you know where I can find Mr. Perker, my good woman?" — "No, I don't," replied the old woman gruffly. *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 180.

- b) such as have no other function than merely to mark a contrast, and are, accordingly, often preceded by the conjunction *but*. In these sentences the Dutch has either strong-stressed *wel* or *niet*, as the case may be. Any word corresponding to the Dutch *wel* is never found in English. Compare 33, Obs. VIII.

*He is not happy, (but) I am. He is happy, (but) I am not. He has not a copy of the book, (but) I have. He has a copy of the book,*

(but) *I have not. He cannot come, (but) I can. He can come, (but) I cannot.*

- i. "Your own feeling tells you that you are not always what you were," she returned. — "*I am.*" DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 50.  
You are not in the world, but *I am.* THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 86.  
It isn't every dog that can kill a hedgehog. *Mine can*: let him alone a minute, and you'll soon see. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.  
"Alas, mamma!" said the Princess, "you have not looked at his face, then..." — "I beg your pardon," said the countess, "*I have.*" READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. III, 24.
  - ii. "What did you tell me it (sc. your name) was Daniel for, then, sir?" inquired the judge. — "*I didn't, my Lord,*" replied Mr. Winkle. — "*You did, sir,*" replied the judge with a severe frown. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 313.  
"I have already an offer for the whole amount of my shares at market price." — "*But I haven't, sir,*" says I. — "*You have, sir.*" THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 64.  
Some believe in it (sc. marrying by means of the Bible and key); *some don't; I do.* HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 108.
- c) such as serve to repeat the preceding statement in a curtailed form. (Ch. II, 44.) In these sentences the subject mostly stands after the predicate when it is a noun, regularly before the predicate when it is a personal pronoun.
- i. \* Oh! she was indeed a 'gushing thing'. *was the youngest Miss Pecksniff.* DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 7a.  
He will come to a bad end, *will that young Lord.* THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. II, 165.  
\*\* He's close, *Mr. Tom is.* G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. III, 361.  
She was but a young woman when she died, *my mother was.* *Ib.*, III, Ch. IX, 241.
  - ii. My dear, ma'am, you deserve a very excellent husband; — *you do indeed.* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 125.  
She is a real born lady, *she is.* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 4.  
You always stand up for your friends, *you do.* *Ib.*, Ch. V, 50.  
You're a deep little puss, *you are.* G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVI, 121.
- d) enclitic questions, such as *are you, have you, can you?* etc. or *are not you, have not you, cannot you?* etc., corresponding respectively to the Dutch *wel*, or *niet waar?*  
*You are not happy, are you? You are happy, are not you? You have not a copy of the book, have you? You have a copy of the book, have not you? You cannot come, can you? You can come, cannot you?*
- i. You don't like him, *do you?* MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, III, Ch. VIII, 390.
  - ii. I believe you are a particular friend of Pickwick, the defendant, *are not you?* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 313.  
It's uncommonly cold after the rain, *isn't it?* *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 475.  
It looks a nice warm exercise, that, *doesn't it?* *Ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.
- e) questions expressing disbelief of, or astonishment at what is expressed in the preceding statement. The ordinary Dutch equivalent of these sentences is *Zoo?* or *Niet?*  
*I am happy. — Are you? I am not happy. — Are not you? I have a copy of the book. — Have you? I have not a copy of the book. — Have not you? I can come. — Can you? I cannot come. — Cannot you?*

- i. "I am her guardian, Tom," said the old gentleman. — "*Are you?*" inquired Tom Smart. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122.  
 "She... made me this waistcoat, Tom." — "*Did she,*" said Tom Smart. *Ib.*  
 "If the excited and irritable populace knew I was here, I should be torn to pieces." — "No! *Would you, sir?*" inquired Sam. *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 470.  
 "All the shadows between the petals become blue, quite blue." — "*Do they really?*" E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 51.
- ii. "She wouldn't have me." — "*Wouldn't she?*" said the old gentleman, firmly. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 123.  
 "She will never have him." — "*Won't she,*" said Tom. *Ib.*  
 "But they would not be ashamed to tell their friends." — "*Would not they?*" TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. IX, 102.
- f) statements or questions belonging to complex sentences with a conditional clause that are equivalent to emphatic statements.  
*If he is not happy, nobody is. If he is happy, everybody is. If anybody deserves encouragement, he does. If he does not deserve encouragement, nobody does. If he cannot achieve this, who can?*  
 If ever man were sorely puzzled and perplexed, *the locksmith was that night.* DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLII, 164a.  
 If Heaven did not send the young gentleman to us, *who did?* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXII, 338.  
 If its learning (sc. that of the book) was not profound, *its wisdom was.* R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. IX, 106.  
 If ever a man was an abject slave to a woman, *I was.* *Titbits*, 1895, 389a.  
 To say that the body begets evil and the soul good, is to say that the Publican is worse than the Pharisee; and if that is not un-Christian, *what is?* CHESTERTON, *11. Lond. News*, No. 3689, 4b.  
 If we are a studying nation, *Germany undoubtedly is.* *Eng. Rev.*, No. 71, 392.
- g) rhetorical questions, often parenthetical, equivalent to emphatic statements.  
*These boys were fond of sport. What right-minded boys are not? These boys did not like sneaks. What right-minded boys do? These boys would have given the poor wretch all they could spare. What right-minded boys would not?*  
 All Americans who love the old country — *and what gently-nurtured man or woman of Anglo-Saxon race does not?* — have ere this rehearsed their English travels. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 6.

### 38. Observations on the sentences referred to under a).

- I. The presence of an assertive adverb does not entail the use of *so*.  
 "It's uncommonly cold after the rain, isn't it?" — "*It really is,*" replied Mr. Pickwick, shivering. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 475.  
 "It looks a nice, warm exercise that, doesn't it?" — "*Ah, it does indeed.*" *Ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.
- II. Occasionally *so* is met with.  
 "I believe, your name is George?" — "*It is so, sir.*" DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXVII, 233.  
 "Is that your friend?" — "*He is so.*" MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 150.
- III. A bare affirmative or negative adverb often supplies the place of the curtailed sentence.

"Do you feel the bottom there, old fellow?" said Wardle. — *"Yes, certainly,"* replied Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 272.

"Did you ever read any of this man's foolery, sir?" inquired Slurk of Bob Sawyer. — *"Never,"* replied Bob. *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 476.

IV. When the matter expressed in the question is distinctly thought of, we find *that*, more or less emphatic, placed at the head of the answer, or immediately after an adverb of affirmation or negation.

PORT. Thou hast some suit to Caesar, hast thou not? — SOOTH. *That I have.* *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 4, 28.

BAL. What! are you a soldier? — BULL. *Ay, that I am.* FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, V, 2, (330).

"You respect your sleeping host yonder?" — *"That I do."* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 76.

"She is to be trusted, is she?" — *"That she ain't!"* said Mrs. Gamp. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 393*b*

"He's rather a naughty child sometimes." — *"Yes — that he is."* HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 110.

Note. Thus also in such cases as are instanced by the following quotation, in which the opening sentence is virtually a question:

"I wish you would put down something in a book for me." — *"That I will."* MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 14.

VI. In these answers the predicate invariably has strong stress and is, accordingly, placed in back-position, i. e. after the subject. Very rarely does the predicate precede the subject, as in:

ACRES. What does the gentleman say about dancing? — ABS. He says the lady we speak of dances as well as she sings. — ACRES. *Ay, truly, does she* — there was at our last race ball. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, II, 1, (229).

"And is their maister (= master) up at Wolf's Crag?" said Girder. — *"Ay, troth, is he,"* replied his man of confidence. *SCOTT*, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XII, 130.

"Can you cook this young gentleman's breakfast for him, if you please," said the master at Salem House. — "Can I?" said the old woman. *"Yes, can I, sure!"* DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37*b*.

"Did he, though?" inquired another cabman. *"Yes, did he,"* replied the first. *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 6.

### 39. Observations on the sentences referred to under *b*)

I. The contrast is often concealed, i. e. the first member of the contrasting statements is often merely implied in the discourse.

I am a baby now, a most absurd, silly, little baby — don't talk to me, Mrs. Lambert, *I am.* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 34. (You may be of opinion that I am not a baby, but I can assure you that I am.)

II. Sometimes the contrast is merely one of tense.

"Ben, dear!" said Arabella, blushing; "have — have you been introduced to Mr. Winkle?" — *"I have not been, but I shall be very happy to be, Arabella,"* replied her brother gravely. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 268.

### 40. Observations on the sentences referred to under *d*).

The enclitic questions are, as a rule, negative when the preceding statement is affirmative, and vice versa. Their purpose is not so much to make an inquiry as to elicit assent to the proposition, view or sentiment contained in the statement. This becomes clear from the frequent use



of immers or toch as substitutes in Dutch. *You are not happy, are you?* = Je bent immers (toch) niet gelukkig? *You are happy, are not you?* = Je bent immers (toch) gelukkig?

The whole expression is an emotional form of speech, the feeling connotated being that of qualified uncertainty, often but little short of conviction.

Sometimes the enclitic question is affirmative as well as the preceding statement. In this case the feeling of uncertainty appears tinged with varying emotions, mostly one of good-humoured or sarcastic mockery, sometimes one of pleasure at the belief of having found out some important fact, and occasionally also one of astonishment at the fact that one has just found out.

It is but rarely that we find both the enclitic question and the preceding statement negative. Probably this form of speech is capable of expressing the same variety of emotions as the preceding one. For some interesting observations about these idioms see especially JULES B. VAN AMERONGEN, *De Drie Talen*, XXIV, 133 ff.

i. HAST. I hate sleeping by the fireside. — MAR. And I detest your three chairs and a bolster. — TONY. You do, *do you?* — then, let me see — what if you go on a mile farther, to the Buck's Head? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, I, (176).

HARD. My Dorothy and the cook-maid settle these things between them. I leave these kind of things entirely to them. — MAR. You do, *do you?* *Ib.*, II, (184).

MOS. Then, you, you haven't the moneys yourself, but are forced to borrow them for him of a friend. — SIR OLIV. Oh! I borrow it of a friend, *do I?* —

MOS. And your friend is an unconscionable dog; but you can't help that. — SIR

OLIV. My friend an unconscionable dog, *is he?* — MOS. Yes, and he himself has not the moneys by him, but is forced to sell stock at a great loss. — SIR

OLIV. He is forced to sell stock at a great loss, *is he?* Well that's very kind of him. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, I, (390).

So the old fellow has found out that he has a young wife, *has he?* *Ib.*, IV, 3, (416).

"She is to be trusted, *is she?*" — "That she ain't!" said Mrs. Gamp. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 393b.

"Who eats tripe?" said Mr. Filer warmly. "Who eats tripe?" Trotty made a miserable bow. "You do, *do you?*" said Mr. Filer. *Id.*, *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 27.

Then it's you, *is it*, sir, who have encouraged and brought about this match? *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVIII, 443.

"I am to be sworn, my Lord, *am I?*" said the chemist. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 306.

So his name is Hoskins, *is it?* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 27.

So your pin was given you, *was it?* *Ib.*, Ch. VI, 58.

You want to marry the widow with the Sloperton and Squashtail estate, *do you?* Well, well, have your way. I've promised not to have anything more to do with the widow, and a Wapshot's honour is sacred. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 111.

"O, that's your errand, *is it?*" cried the old man, jumping up. "What! perhaps he condoles with me, *does he?* Very kind of him, the stiff-backed prig, with his dandified airs and West-end swagger. He's hankering about my house, *is he still?*" *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 210.

Those great Virginian estates yield a great revenue, *do they?* *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XV, 154.

"Uncle Arthur's come." — "He is, *is he?*" *Id.*, *Pend.*, Ch. VII, 80.

"It's kind of you to wish us an Irish row! — considering that if I miss my chance to-night, I shall never get another!" — "Then for heaven's sake don't let us wish it!" she said decidedly. Oh, that is the Irish Secretary answering now, *is it?* MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, III, Ch. VIII, 390.

ii. "And he wouldn't be persuaded by the ladies, *wouldn't he?*" said Sam. DICK.,



Pickw., Ch. XXVII, 241. (Compare: "So you wouldn't subscribe to the flannel veskits?" said Sam, after another interval of smoking. *Ib.*, 242.)

"Why, thankee, I'd rather not (sc. ask my friend here)," said Mr. Jackson, with some embarrassment of manner. "He's not much used to ladies' society, and it makes him bashful. If you'll order the waiter to deliver him anything short, he won't drink it off at once, *won't he!* only try him!" Mr. Jackson's fingers wandered playfully round his nose. at this portion of his discourse, to warn his hearers that he was speaking ironically. *Id.*, Ch. XLVI, 428.

"Serve him so, sir!" reiterated Slurk in a louder voice than before. — "I will not, sir," rejoined Pott. — "Oh, *you won't, won't you, sir?*" said Mr. Slurk, in a taunting manner. *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 476.

"My dear Miss Dunstable! a clergyman hunt, while he is staying in the same house with the bishop? Think of the proprieties!" — "Oh — ah! The bishop wouldn't like it, *wouldn't he?* Now, do tell me, sir, what would the bishop do to you, if you did hunt?" TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. III, 23.

II. An interjection often takes the place of the curtailed sentence.

Will, so one of my nephews is a wild rogue, *hey?* SHER., School for Scand., II, 3, (386).

#### 41. Observations on the sentences mentioned under *e*) and *f*).

I. In Older English the use of *so* in sentences expressing disbelief or astonishment seems to have been common enough. Occasional instances are also found in Nineteenth Century English. STOF., Taalst., II, 33; FRANZ, E. S., XVIII; *id.*, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 448; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 938.

PROSP. Where was she born? speak; tell me. — ARIEL. Sir, in Argier. — PROP. O, *was she so?* Temp., I, 2, 262.

"He's within, in his chamber, with my wife; she's playing the wag with him." — "*Is she so?*" WYCH., Plain Dealer, IV, 3.

"He has taught that song to our Dick," cried Moses, "and I think he goes through it very prettily." — "*Does he so?*" cried. "then let us have it." GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XVII.

"He has been married to six or eight wives, whom he has deceived and abandoned." — "*Has he so?*" *Ib.*, Ch. XXI.

CROSS. I'm your husband's captain. — SUSAN. I am glad of it, sir. — CROSS. *Are you so?* DOUGLAS JERROLD, Black-Ey'd Susan, I, 6, (28).

Thus also in the statements referred to under *f*), *so* is occasionally met with.

If ever a poet was a master of phrasing, he (sc. Tennyson) *was so*. B. C. BRADLEY, Com. on Ten.'s In Mem., Ch. VI, 75.

II. Astonishment or disbelief is, of course, also expressed by *indeed*, and occasionally by *truly so*. The bare *so*, corresponding to the usual Dutch *zoo*, is never used.

"Would you object to my pointing out, my dear, that Mr. John Rokesmith is not (so far as I am acquainted with him), strictly speaking a Mendicant." — "*Indeed?*" returned Mrs. Wilfer, with an awful air of politeness. *Truly so?* I am not aware that Mr. John Rokesmith was a gentleman of landed property. But I am much relieved to hear it. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, IV, Ch. V, 67. "He read up for the subject, at my desire, in the Encyclopædia Britannica" — "*Indeed!*" said Mr. Pickwick. *Id.*, Pickw., Ch. LI, 472.

#### 42. Also in certain subordinate clauses corresponding to the sentences referred to in 37 or resembling them in essential respects, any

representative of the chief element of a preceding sentence is regularly, or almost regularly absent. In them also the predicate is determined by that of the preceding sentence, in like manner as in the sentences opening with conjunctive *so*. (32).

- a) subordinate statements: I never could find out, gentlemen, whether Tom did or did not kiss the widow at that particular moment. He used to tell my uncle *he didn't*, but I have my doubts about it. Between ourselves, gentlemen, I rather think *he did*. DICK., PICKW., Ch. XIV, 126.

Arabella Allen repaired to her place of destination, wherever it might have been — we dare say Mr. Winkle knew, but we confess *we don't*. *Id.*, Ch. XXX, 273.

"Isn't a pretty name?" Laura owned *that it was*. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XXII, 235. I have been wildly, madly adored. I am sorry *I have*. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Windermere's Fan*, III, (113).

We could have done better, of course, we wish *we had*. *Sat. Rev.* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 16c).

"Can you sing at all?" — "My friends say *that I can*." PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. II, 9b.

The Protectionist countries supply crushing proof that the foreigner does not pay the taxes, and no one in any of them ventures to maintain *that he does*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5207, 2a.

In the following quotations *so* (together with the preceding verb) appears superfluous:

She had liked Lucy's face, but she had thought that others probably *did not do so*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 98.

"Do you really believe it is possible to make a woman beautiful by natural means?" — I believe *it is so*." PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. V, 25a.

- b) subordinate questions: If I don't know Mr. Lammeter's cows, I should like to know *who does*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. VI, 38.

If that is not a case for the law to take its course, I don't know *what is?* GALSORTHY, *Justice*, I, 1, (20).

- c) attributive adnominal clauses: If they cannot do the work, we must engage such people *as can*.

Only a few people managed to make their escape. Those *who did* were, however, caught afterwards.

How many men in this walk of life can be trusted? And those *who can* — at how terribly high a price do they rate their own fidelity? TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VIII, 88.

- d) adverbial clauses of various descriptions: If you really cannot see the difference between hockey and lawn-tennis, I suggest that you try using your brains *until you do*. CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News, No. 3841, 793a).

It was not in Linda's nature to be angry because her sister was admired, and *because she was not*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. V, 53.

Note especially the absence of any pronominal representative in conditional clauses after:

*to be*. Why wasn't he natural in his lifetime? *If he had been*, he'd have had somebody to look after him when he was struck with death. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, Ch. IV, 92.

The travellers' room at the White Horse Cellar is of course uncomfortable; it would be no travellers' room *if it were not*. *Id.*, PICKW., Ch. XXXV, 321.

I heard a very extraordinary story to-day, . . . though I don't for a moment believe it is true. *If it is*, we shall find that Mrs. Ames cannot dine with us on the twenty-eighth. E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. I 15.

Tell them (sc. the children) the dogma of immortality, if you are so lucky as to believe in it. Leave the thing alone, *if you are not*. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News, No. 3689, 4c).

**to do.** Do you think I want to cheat Gates? . . . You can't think so, sir; I should be a disgrace to human nature *if I did*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 61. The book of Nature is in many volumes, Miss Venn: few read it through. We should all be the better *if we did*. PEMBERTON, Doct. Xavier, Ch. III, 14a. I do not think he will ever forgive him. *If he does*, it will be because you ask him to. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 31a.

R. L. Stevenson, who loved the islands, *if any man ever did*, speaks of this lost god. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 10b.

It will then be for the Lords to say if they will take their stand on a definite claim to control the finances of the country. *If they do*, the battle will be fought out on that issue; *if they do not*, the way will be clear for the next step. *Ib.*, No. 5213, 1c—2a.

**can**, etc. I shall be very happy to help you, *if I can*. PEMBERTON, Doct. Xavier, Ch. V, 24a.

Could she not leave the house any day, and go back *if she would*? *Ib.*, Ch. V, 22a.

A few quotations are appended in which *so* seems to be used at variance with ordinary usage.

I am happy, if you *have been so*. SHER., Riv., III, 2, (243).

I do not know if this will ever reach you, but if it *does so*, do not be alarmed if you do not hear from me speedily again. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night. Ch. III, 29

The court-jester complained that a nobleman had threatened to shoot him... If he *does so*, I'll hang him a few minutes after. Anecdote (GÜNTH., Leerb., 92).

Observe that *so* cannot be dispensed with in incomplete conditional clauses. (36, b.)

#### OTHER PRONOMINAL EQUIVALENTS.

43. Another interesting substitute for the personal pronoun *it* is *as much*, sometimes varying with *so much*, which latter is now, however, less common. Compare AL. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. *much*.

These word-groups assume their altered function from the obscuring and consequent dropping of the second member of the comparison. Thus in the following quotation the second member of the comparison appears as practically redundant and could be omitted without detriment to the sense:

If I had liked him, that is no reason why I should marry him. Your ladyship hath taught me *as much as that*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVII, 172.

*As much*, or *so much* is chiefly found:

a) after the verb *to know*.

**to know.** i. I am grieved *to know as much*. TENNYSON, Becket.

ii. KITE. Your mother has a hundred pound in hard money, lying at this minute in the hands of a mercer, not forty yards from this place. — BUTCHER. Oons! and so she has, but very few *know so much*. FARQUHAR, Recruit. Offic., IV, 3, (317).

b) after verbs of judging and declaring.

**to acknowledge.** Pride of place, and the power of living well in front of the world's eye, are dear to us all; — are doubtless intended to be dear. Only in *acknowledging so much*, let us remember that there are prices at which these good things may be too costly. TROL., Fram. Pars., Ch. XXI, 204.

**to confess.** i. Our chance is over, I believe, though I dare not *confess as much* to the men. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXIII, 168b.

ii. Both are anxious that the world should be priest-governed, though they have probably never confessed *so much*, even to themselves. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. IV, 28.

**to guess.** It was by aid of such tales, indeed, that reform, so soon to come, was already growing in the dark; but neither Royd nor Parson Horrocks *guessed as much*. HALIWELL SUTCLIFFE, Mistress Barbara Cunliffe, Ch. XIV.

**to hear (— to be told).** I must confess that I have heard *so much*. Mids. Night's Dream, I, 1, 111.

**to own.** I would not wish to say of poor Arthur Pendennis that he was worse than his neighbours, only that his neighbours are bad for the most part. Let us have the candour to *own as much* at least. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182. And Laura's (sc. love) — he would have fain carried her affection with him too, but she had denied it, as he is not worthy of it. He *owns as much* with shame and remorse. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 296.

**to say.** i. Our mother took him out of the dirt. I have heard her *say as much*. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 19.

Of course Mr. Asquith says that there is "no question of separation", and that the Imperial Parliament will remain supreme. Mr. Gladstone always *said as much*. Spectator (Westm. Gaz., 5185, 18c).

ii. So Richard says . . . will I marry him on New Year's Day . . . It's a short notice, father — isn't it? — but I haven't my fortune to be settled, or my wedding dresses to be made, like the great ladies, father — have I. And he *said so much*, and said it in his way. DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 23.

**to signify.** Trotty knew he spoke the truth in this, and shook his head to *signify as much*. *Ib.*, II, 54.

**to tell.** i. He hopes to gain over my family through me. He *told me as much* as we drove down. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 81.

I do think your father has no ill-will to me more than to another. He *told* Peter Buyskens *as much*, and Peter told me. CH. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. IX, 49.

ii. Yet my heart | Throbs to know one thing: tell me, if your art | Can *tell me so much*. MACB., IV, 1, 102.

**to think.** I thought *as much*. Henry VI, B, II, 1, 15.

I thought *as much*. SHER., Rivals, IV, 2, (263).

c) after the verb *to do*.

More than three months of precious time had that martyr of a Major given up to his nephew — was ever selfish man called upon to make a greater sacrifice? Do you know many men or Majors who would *do as much*? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

He departed in a whirl, to secure a copy of every morning-paper. It had been the send-off the Boys had given him that had prevented his *doing as much* at Charing Cross. WELLS, Kipps; III, 3, § 6

Note. It will have been observed that *as* and *so* in these quasi-pronominal collocations are weak-stressed. *So much* with *so* strong-stressed,



and placed in front-position, is also used with reference to a subsequent or preceding part of the discourse, but in that case its pronominal function is very weak or non-existent. This *so much* varies with *this much* and *thus much*. Ch. XXXVI, 9, Obs. II.

- i. "He could not," he said, "be a message-carrier between young ladies who were pining and young lovers on whom the sweetheart's gates were shut: but *so much* he would venture *to say*, that he had seen me, and was prescribing for me, too." THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXV, 799.
- ii. It was a letter that no parish clergyman should have received. *So much* he acknowledged to himself. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XII, 122.

44. The noun (*the*) *thing* often does duty for the personal pronoun *it*.

There are not, I say, many people who would care to sleep in a church. I don't mean at sermon-time in warm weather (when *the thing* has actually been done once or twice), but in the night. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 1.

Tell him (sc. the children) the dogma of immortality, if you are so lucky as to believe in it. Leave *the thing* alone, if you are not. CHESTERTON (II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3689, 4c).

45. Besides pronouns there are several other forms of address, varying according to the title or social status of the person(s) spoken to. Such are *Your Majesty*, *Your Excellency*, etc. Thus also *His* (or *Her*) *Majesty*, *His Excellency*, etc. are often used in referring to these persons in the third person. This practice requires no illustration.

It may however be observed that *My Lord* and *My Lady* are used not only in the vocative, but also in the third person, often followed by a proper name. SWEET (N. E. GR., § 2111) observes that "this usage seems to have arisen from the desire to avoid confusion with *Lord* (*God*)!, *the Lord*." *My Lord* and *My Lady* vary with *His Lordship* and *Her Ladyship*. The plurals *My Lords* and *My Ladies* are similarly applied for *Their Lordships* and *Their Ladyships*.

I fancy, sister, he may be some gentleman, a friend of *my lord's*, that *his lordship* has pitched upon for his courage, fidelity and discretion. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, III, 3, (403).

Mr. Gumbo's account of his mistress's wealth and splendour was carried to *my lord* by *his lordship's* man, and to Madame de Bernstein and *my ladies* by their respective waiting-women. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 166.

Fanny wanted to marry their cousin the wild Indian, and *my lady* countess would not let her. *Ib.*, Ch. XVII, 173.

As *my Lady Castlewood* and her son and daughter passed through one door of the saloon, . . . *my Lord Castlewood* departed by another issue. *Ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 179.

He gave up London in May, — his newspapers and his mornings — his afternoons from club to club, his little confidential visits to *my ladies*, his rides in Rotten Row [etc.]. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. IX, 99.

It (sc. the way in which the book is announced) reminds one of the volumes of secret sighs and yearning which used to be sent forth in silk-bound covers from *my young lady's* "bower", in the days when Byron had begun to touch all imaginations. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 483, 167a.



46. The affectionately familiar use of names of profession or relationship as a form of address, as in *Wil dominé nog een kopje thee? Wil vader mij even helpen?*, etc., is very rare in English. The following is the only instance found up to the time of writing.

*Shepherd* would like to hear the pedigree of yer life, father, wouldn't ye, shepherd? *HARDY*, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 71.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

#### FORM.

1. The possessive pronouns have different forms, according as they are used conjointly or absolutely.

		Conjoint.		Absolute.	
		Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1st. Pers.		my (mine)	our	mine	ours
2nd. Pers.		thy (thine)	your	thine	yours
	Masc.	his	} their	his	} theirs.
3rd. Pers.	Fem.	her		hers	
	Neut.	its		its	

2. Obs. I. In Old English there were not separate forms for the two functions: *mīn*, *þīn*, etc. being used conjointly as well as absolutely. In Middle English the *n* of *mīn* and *þīn* began to be dropped before a consonant, being retained before a vowel or *h* + vowel, e. g.: *mī fader*, *mīn arm*, *þīn herte*, *thyn housbond* (CHAUC., Cant. Tales, D, 19). The *n* was regularly kept when the pronouns were used absolutely, or when they followed the noun: *hit is mīn*, *broþer mīn*! Towards the end of the Middle English period the *n* was frequently dropped before a vowel as well. The unsettled state of the pronouns when followed by a vowel or *h* + vowel, continued in Early Modern English, but the shortened forms soon became the rule, especially in prose. Very common were *mine* and *thine* before *own*, and *mine host*, a

reminiscence of CHAUCER'S *mine host* (of the *Tabard*), became a standing expression.

In Present English the forms *mine* and *thine* are almost exclusively used absolutely or substantively. Only poets use them conjointly before a vowel or before a silent *h*, less frequently before a sounded *h*. Thus Early Modern English *mine heart* = Present English *my heart*. Quite frequent, however, is still the use of the traditional *mine host*, often equivalent to *the host*; also *mine hostess* is not uncommon in a similar application. For details see SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1093—1103; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 326; id., E. S., XVII; A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. *mine*; and especially JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.211—16.231.

- i. I pray thee, gentle mortal, sing again: | *Mine ear* is much enamour'd of thy note. *Mids.*, III, 1, 141.  
My life upon't, young though thou art, *thine eye* | Hath stay'd upon some favour that it loves. *Twelfth Night*, I, 4, 24.  
For if *thine eye* be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. *Bible*, *Matth.*, VI, 23.  
In *mine earldom* | A man may hang gold bracelets on a bush, | And leave them for a year, and coming back | Find them again. *TEN.*, *Harold*, II, 1, (661b).  
Draw me to thee that I *thine arms* may feel. *W. MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 78b.  
They brought me to *mine image* on the sands. *Ib.*
- ii. Well, keep me company but two years moe, | Thou shalt not 'know the sound of *thine own* tongue. *Merch.*, I, 1, 109.  
I have a pretty living o' *mine own* too, beside, hard-by here. *BEN JONSON*, *Every Man in his Humour*, I, 2, 8.  
And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in *thine own eye*? *Ib.*, *Matth.*, VII, 4.  
*Mine own* romantic town! *SCOTT*, *Marmion*, IV, xxx, 18.  
Purify *thine own* heart. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXI, 221.
- iii. I'll prove *mine honour* and *mine honesty* | Against thee presently, if thou darest stand. *Com. of Er.*, V, I, 80.  
He was *thine host* in England when I went | To visit Edward. *TEN.*, *Harold*, II, 2, 3.  
For by *mine head* she knows his hiding-place. *Id.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 709.  
Speak not, sweet maid, till I have loosed *thine hands*. *W. MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 76a.
- iv. And the three party is, lastly and finally, *mine host* of the Garter. *Merry Wives*, I, 1, 143. (Thus throughout this play, according to FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 326.)  
At the earnest instigation of *mine host*, . . . (he) indulged the company with the following morsel of melody. *SCOTT*, *Kenilw.*, Ch. II, 21.  
We sent *mine host* to purchase female gear. *TEN.*, *Princ.*, I, 196.  
"Ah! Mr. Leigh — Captain Leigh now, I beg pardon," quoth *mine host*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho.*!, Ch. XIV, 119a.
- v. *Mine hostess* privately assured me, that though built of solid oak, such was the fervent zeal of devotees, that the chair (sc. Shakespeare's chair) had to be new bottomed at least once in three years. *WASH. IRVING*, *Sketch-Book*, XXVI, 259.  
I went even so far as willingly to believe the claims of *mine hostess* to a lineal descent from the poet. *Ib.*, 260.

II. The use of *n* as an abbreviated form of *mine*, as in the following quotation, would appear to be very rare:

And did I wrong *n'*own Rhodophil, with a false suspicion? DRYDEN, *Marriage a la Mode*, III, 2, (290).

III. In vulgar language unstressed *his* is often mutilated into *s*.

But t' hear some o' them preachers, you'd think as a man must be doing nothing all's life but shuttin's eyes and looking what's a-going on inside him. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 5.

IV. In Irish English *me* often appears for *my*. Compare Ch. XXXIV, 1, Note  $\beta$ .

I think you'll like Miss Fotheringay, in Mrs. Haller, or *me* name's not Jack Costigan. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 44.

3. The placing of *mine* after the names of persons in the vocative seems at all times to have belonged to emotional language. The practice may be traced to the latest English. For illustration see Ch. VIII, 97. Compare also BIRGER PALM, *Place of the Adj.*, § 255; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.24.

Instances of *mine* placed after the noun modified in other cases seem to be extremely rare. None are given by MURRAY.

i. Good health to you and me, sweet *neighbour mine*, | And all these peoples.  
MRS. BROWNING, *Aur. Leigh*, II, 8.

ii. And now by Mark the King | For that small charm of *feature mine*, pursued —  
If any such be mine — I fly to thee. TEN., *Merl. and Viv.*, 75.

Note. According to FIJN VAN DRAAT (*Rhythm in English Prose*, *The Adj.*, § 3) post-position of the possessive pronoun is in Modern English a rhythmic device and is not, accordingly, applied when the head-word is a monosyllable. This is, indeed, confirmed by all the instances given in Ch. VIII, 97.

The following is a rare instance of *mine* being placed after a monosyllable.

What answer would you have me make to that, *wife mine*? CH. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. XV, 66a.

4. The absolute forms *hers*, *ours*, *yours* and *theirs* are sometimes spelled with an apostrophe (*her's*, etc.) representing a lost *e* (*heres*, etc.). MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 144, N.

i. Shee was forced to confesse *her's* was the fault. LADY M. WORTH, *Urania*, 464<sup>1)</sup>.

ii. Blessed are the poor in spirit: for *their's* is the kingdom of Heaven. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 3.

Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not *their's*. *Ib.*, *Gen.*, XV, 13.

*Their's* not to reason why, | *Their's* but to do and die. TEN., *Charge of the Light Brigade*.

5. Besides the absolute forms *his*, *her(e)s*, *our(e)s*, *your(e)s*, *their(e)s*. Late Middle English also had forms in *n*: *hisn*, *hern*, *ourn*, *yourn*,

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

*theirn*, sometimes with an apostrophe, and otherwise in a variety of spellings. These forms have been retained in some Southern and Midland dialects. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 57; FRANZ, E. S., XVII; MURRAY, s. v. *hisn*, etc.; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.26.

Not so much as the vorth o' that 'ere old umberella o' *yourn*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 484.

"Whose compliments Charley?" — "*His'n*, miss," returned Charley. *Id.*, *Break House*.

We want what's *ourn* by law. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. IV, 52.

Him wot cops wot isn't '*is'n* | When 'e's cotched deserves a prison. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6594, 16a.

6. The form *its* is comparatively recent. In Old and Early Middle English *his* was the ordinary possessive pronoun also for the neuter gender. When with the gradual loss of grammatical gender *his* was getting to be distinctly suggestive of living beings, especially persons, of the male sex, its use in referring to inferior animals and inanimate things was felt to be incongruous. Already in Late Middle English the neuter *his* came, consequently, to be avoided, *thereof*, *of it* and *the* (14) being used as substitutes. The historical neuter *his* lingered on till late in the 17th century. In Present English *his* when referring to inanimate things, implies personification.

Towards the end of the sixteenth century *its*, spelled *it's*, arose in the South (London and Oxford), at first only as a colloquialism. *Its* was not admitted in the Bible of 1611, which has *thereof*, besides the *his* or *her* of the old grammatical gender. The genitive *it* occurs once (Lev., XXV, 5), but in an edition of 1660 was altered to *its*, which appears in all current editions. *Its* does not occur in any of the works of SHAKESPEARE published during his life-time, but there are nine examples of *it's* and one of *its* in the plays printed in the folio of 1623.

The genitive *it* occurs fifteen times in the earlier editions of SHAKESPEARE'S works and the first folio printed before his death, but it never gained a firm footing in Standard English, and soon disappeared. It is, however, still heard in the dialects of Westmoreland, Lincolnshire and parts of the adjacent counties. Compare also MURRAY, s. v. *its*; ARDEN, note to Hamlet, I, 2, 216; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1101; BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 56; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, §§ 263 and 320.

For *its* as an indefinite pronoun or the genitive of the anticipating *it*, see Ch. XL, 69.

*Thereof* survives as an archaism, and is especially met with in legal phraseology.

The word-group *of it* and the definite article still vary with the possessive pronoun. See 8 and 12, Obs. II; 24, Obs. VI.

**his.** The earth brought forth grass, and herb yielding seed after *his* kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed was in itself, after *his* kind. Bible, Gen., I, 12. Goutwort . . . easeth the pains of the Gout, and . . . had not *his* Name for nothing. G. SMITH, *Eng. Improv. Reviv'd*, 225 (published in 1670.<sup>1)</sup>)

1) MURRAY.



*it*. Yet once methought | It lifted up *it* head and did address | Itself to motion. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 217.

This doth betoken | The corse they follow did with desperate hand | Fordo *it* own life. *Id.*, V, 1, 243.

The hedge-sparrow fed the cuckoo so long | That it had *it* head bit off by *it* young. *Lear*, I, 4, 206.

**thereof.** Sufficient unto the day is the evil *thereof*. *Bible*, *Matth.*, VI, 34. King Solomon made himself a chariot of the wood of Lebanon. He made the pillars *thereof* of silver, the bottom *thereof* of gold, the covering *of it* of purple, the midst *thereof* being paved with love, for the daughters of Jerusalem. *Id.*, *Solomon's Song*, III, 9—10. (Note the use of *of it* as a variant of *thereof*.) Beauty is Nature's coin, must not be hoarded, | But must be current; and the good *thereof* | Consists in mutual and partak'n bliss. *MILTON*, *Comus*, 740. Take a dried bladder and put peas in it, the rattle *thereof* terrifies the boldest. *CARLYLE*, *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. IX.

Mr. Harry Warrington . . . lived upon the fat of the land, and drank bumpers of the best wine *thereof*. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XLIII, 442.

We had beheld St. Peter's at Rome and the bishop *thereof*. *Ib.*, Ch. XC, 968. This was the explanation of that mysterious parcel . . . , whose contents he could not explain to her, saying that time would soon show her the purpose *thereof*. *HARDY*, *Tess*, V, Ch. XXXV, 303.

The following resolutions are proposed for acceptance: . . . 8. That gowns should be made so that women can cope with the fastenings *thereof* of themselves. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 19b.

All other his property, is to be held in trust to pay the interest *thereof* to his wife during widowhood. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3829, 372b.

**of it.** If ever thou shalt love, | In the sweet pangs *of it* remember me. *Twelfth Night*, II, 3, 17.

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house and it fell: and great was the fall *of it*. *Bible*, *Matth.*, VII, 27.

## USE.

### CONJOINT POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

7. The possessive pronouns are related to the personal pronouns as the genitive of a noun to its common case.

They lack, of course, the power of classifying substances (Ch. XXIV, 7) and naturally are incapable of expressing any relation of either measure or opposition. (Ch. XXIV, 8, 20—23). Conversely they are more freely used than the genitives of nouns to express the objective relation. Except for certain combinations and syntactical constructions (8), objective possessive pronouns are even practically incapable of being replaced by their analytical equivalents with *of* in the majority of cases, at least so far as they indicate sex. Also the neuter *its*, and its plural *their*, in this function are often preferred to their prepositional equivalents. Instances of objective *it* (or *their*) before a gerund, however, appear to be rare. In all cases the use of the emphatic *own* precludes the employment of the analytical construction.

*SWEET* (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2105) observes that "if the noun is associated in

meaning with a transitive, the prepositional genitive is used, such constructions as *his murderer* = 'the man who murdered him' being now exceptional." This seems to be hardly in harmony with fact. Such constructions as *his murderer*, *his persecutor*, *her lover*, *his pursuer*, *his visitor*, *his defender*, *his employer*, *his teacher*, etc., are as common as *his friend*, *his enemy*, *his tailor*, etc.; indeed they are practically used to the exclusion of their prepositional equivalents *the murderer of him*, etc. Compare Ch. XXIV, 20.

Also *the army and its commander*, *the cycle and its rider*, and similar phrases with an objective possessive denoting a thing, are more in accordance with ordinary idiom than their expanded equivalents *the army and the commander of it*, etc.

The reason why possessive pronouns are mostly freely used in the objective relation, also before nouns of action, may be the fact that misapprehension is, in the majority of cases, out of the question. If, however, before a given noun a possessive pronoun is usually understood in a subjective relation, it is avoided when an objective relation has to be expressed. Thus *his love*, *his hatred*, etc. are hardly available as variants of *the love of him*, *the hatred of him*, etc. Compare also Ch. XXIV, 20. For an instance of *his love* with *his* in the objective relation see below Note α).

**dread, fear.** *The fear of you* and *the dread of you* shall be upon every beast. Bible, Gen., IX, 2.

**hatred.** *Hatred of her* (sc. England) became almost a legend. Eng. Rev., No. 72, 470.

**love.** The grand morality is *love of thee*. YOUNG, Night Thoughts, IV, 783. Why, thou wouldst not persuade me that you... desire to stay here for *the love of me*? SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. VII, 79.

It is hardly necessary to observe that a variety of constructions are available to take the place of objectionable or impossible objective possessive pronouns. Thus for *He consented to her severe punishment*, which seems bad English, we could say *He consented that she should be severely punished*, or *He consented to her being severely punished*. This last construction, with the possessive pronoun in the subjective relation to a passive gerund is mostly employed instead of that with the possessive pronoun in the objective relation to an active gerund. For detailed treatment of this subject see the discussion of the Gerund in a subsequent portion of this work.

To avoid the use of an objective possessive pronoun before an agent-noun, a construction with an adnominal clause may be substituted. Thus *her deceiver* may be replaced by *the man who deceived her*; *the songs and their singers* by *the songs and those who sang them*.

Another device to avoid the point is the use of the definite article.

Only a hundred copies (sc. of the volume) were printed. John Pigot was again one of the earliest recipients. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, BYRON, I, Ch. VII, 108.

In conclusion it may be observed that when the noun modified corresponds to an intransitive verb construed with the preposition *of* (e. g. *to think of*, *to dispose of*), substitution of the possessive pronoun for *of* + personal pronoun is out of the question.

It is *the thought of her* that drives me almost to madness. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., The Wife.

An aunt of mine who has a considerable sum of money in loose cash . . . had consulted me as to *the disposal of it*. THACK., Sam. Tiim., Ch. VII, 80.

a) The possessive pronoun denoting a person or anything thought of as a person.

\* It must be at last confessed, . . . if much of *his* (sc. Shakespeare's) *praise* is paid by perception and judgment, much is likewise given by custom and veneration. JOHNSON (JOHN BAILEY, Johnson and his Circle, Ch. I, 33).

I shall love thee to the last. | And bear *thy memory* with me to the grave. WORDSWORTH, Michael, 417.

He consented to *my murder*. LINGARD, Hist. of Eng. (HERRIG, 530b).

While I was yet inconsolable for *his loss*, another friend of mine in Yorkshire, discovered an older and more gifted raven at a village public-house. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Preface.

(He) actually does leave a disconsolate family to mourn *his loss*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 4.

The streets of London blazed with bonfires, and peals rang out from steeple to steeple at the news of *her* (sc. Mary Stuart's) *condemnation*; but in spite of the prayer of Parliament for *her execution*, and the pressure of the Council, Elizabeth shrank from her death. GREEN, A Short Hist., Ch. VII, § VI, 417.

He . . . was entrusted with the task of freeing Mary Horneck from the enemy who had planned *her destruction*. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XXI, 181.

I don't wish to go to Sir John Fielding for a warrant for *your arrest* for stealing my property. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVI, 235.

He was expected to understand the many allusions daily made to the incident of *his rejection*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 290.

*His assassination* was not wholly distasteful to Germany. Eng. Rev., No. 70, 254.

The German emperor refused to sanction *his appointment*. *Ib.*, No. 71, 321.

\*\* I never meant this miscreant should escape. | But wish'd you to suppress such gusts of passion, | That we more surely might devise together | *His taking off*. BYRON, Mar. Fal., I, 2, (355a).

His pore (= poor) mother . . . made a mistake at *his christening*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. X, 91.

The Commons should now avert the consequences (sc. of this disastrous precedent) by making another precedent to *their own undoing*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5255, 1b. Where are those 17,000 officers to come from? . . . How can the nation pay for *their training*? Nation (Westm. Gaz., No. 6095, 18c).

You think it possible that I could take advantage of his second mistake that your kind and sympathetic heart has made for *your own undoing*? FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XXXI, 296.

They now put the finishing touch to *their training* and their equipment. 11. Lond. News, No. 3940, 569a.

\*\*\* This increased the uneasiness of my eldest daughter, who, desirous of shunning *her betrayer*, returned to the house with her sister. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XXIV, (404).

Her industry and obedience have endeared her to *her instructors*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 3.

He could not speak for some time after *his visitor* had spoken. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XX, 176.

No man owes so much to *his biographer* as Johnson to Boswell. JOHN BAILEY, Dr. Johnson and his Circle, Ch. I, 13.

If Mary had told *her adorer* to go back to Harrow, he would have gone. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. IV, 57.

Compare: The pig is an animal which to be prized needs but to be known.

for all *connoisseurs of him* are also enthusiastic amateurs. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 27. (The analytical construction is most probably preferred, because the reference is to an animal.)

\*\*\*\* Did you ever have *your likeness* taken? JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. VI, 41. The gentleman who wanted to take *your portrait*. LYTTON, What will he do with it?, I, Ch. VI, 21.

One of *his* (sc. Achilles') most famous *statues* is that at Paris. NETTLESHIP, Dict. Clas. Antiq., s.v. Achilles.

This, then, has been the cause of the long postponement of *his biography*. Bookman, Ch. 276, 243a.

Compare: Taking his portrait, *the picture of him* began with a tall hat. W. COLLINS, No Name, 14.<sup>1)</sup>

Pisistratus was growing *the very image of him*. LYTTON, Caxtons, I, Ch. III, 14. How very pretty is *the perfect image of her* in my memory! ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. I, 14.

b) The possessive pronoun denoting a thing.

\* Till now that she was threatened with *its loss*, Emma had never known how much of her happiness depended on being first with Mr. Knightley. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XLVIII, 391.

Quiz. Of obscure origin: possibly a fanciful coinage, but it is doubtful whether any reliance can be placed on the anecdote of *its invention* by Daly, a Dublin theatre-manager. MURRAY.

*Its rejection* (sc. of the budget) furnished the case on which one at least of the Government's resolutions is founded. Westm. Gaz., No. 5289, 1b.

Westminster Abbey, St. Paul's, the British Museum, the National Gallery, were each in turn considered as appropriate places for *its* (sc. Lord Byron's statue) *reception*. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. VI, 103.

The Powers only knew of it (sc. the Austrian Note to Servia) twelve hours after *its delivery*. Eng. Rev., No. 70, 217.

German 'parlementaires' came into the town under a flag of truce to demand *its* immediate *surrender*. Graphic, No. 2345, 645.

This task ... needs for *its accomplishment* that every man among us ... should give what he has and do what he can. Times, No. 1976, 897c.

We are inclined to share these doubts; but *their realization* depends very largely upon ourselves. Ib., No. 1966, 894c.

Compare: My thoughts aspire to a production of a far higher character, but *the execution of it* will require some years. SHELLEY, Let. to Ollier (Shel. Mem. 155).

I will ask for *the loan of them*. Books for the Bairns, No. 56, 33a.

\*\* It is an odd function for a Cabinet Minister, but we make sure that ... the duty caused as much gratification to *its performer*, as the reason for his attendance afforded throughout the kingdom. Graph.

The British Army, under the gallant and skilled leadership of *its commander*, has proved itself to be not so contemptible an engine of war as some were disposed to consider it. Times, No. 1976, 897a.

These (sc. visions) are something more than revocations, and shine for *their possessors* in the light that never was on sea or land. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. I, 12.

\*\*\* She looked at it (sc. the secretaire) thoughtfully when ... she went to get her hat, recalling the occasion of *its giving*. UNA L. SILBERRAD, Success, Ch. II, 31.

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 45.



Note α) The fact that in certain combinations the possessive pronoun is mostly understood in other relations, sometimes causes some difficulty in apprehending it in the objective function. See FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 322.

- i. *Our oppression* hath made up this league. King John, III, 1, 106. (= *our being oppressed*.)
- ii. For his sake | Did I expose myself, pure for *his love*, | Into the danger of this adverse town. Twelfth Night, V, 1, 86. (= *out of love for him*.)

Conversely a possessive pronoun which, judged by ordinary practice, appears to stand for an objective genitive, sometimes has to be understood in another way.

- i. Thy dukedom I resign, and do entreat | Thou pardon me *my wrongs*. Temp., V, 1, 118. (= *the wrongs I have done*.)

*Your wrongs* do set a scandal on my sex. Mids., II, 1, 240. (= *the wrongs you do me*.)

Compare with this: If thou consider rightly of the matter, | Cæsar has *had great wrong*. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 115. (= *suffered great wrong*.)

He's truly valiant, that can wisely suffer | The worst that man can breathe; | And make *his wrongs* his outsides, | To wear them like his raiment, carelessly. Timon of Athens, III, 4, 32. (= *the wrongs done to him*.)

- i love him still, despite *my wrongs*. SCOTT, Lady of the Lake, II, xxxii.
- ii. They know the corn | Was not *our recompense*, resting well assured | They ne'er did service for't. Coriolanus, III, 1, 121. (= *the recompense given by us*.)

β) In the older writers we sometimes find the possessive pronouns expressing relations of which they are hardly capable in Present English. See also FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 322.

- i. Let them not lick | The sweet which is *their poison*. Coriolanus, III, 1, 156. (= *poison to them*.)
- ii. Were 't *my fitness* | To let these hands obey my blood, | They are apt enough to dislocate and tear | Thy flesh and bones. Lear, IV, 2, 64. (= *fitting for me*.)
- iii. DUKE. Who saw Cesario, ho? — VIOL. On *your attendance*, my lord, here. Twelfth Night, I, 4, 11. (= *in attendance on you*.)
- iv. If she have a sour breath, let her never discourse fasting, and always talk at *her distance*. BEN JONSON, Epicæne, IV, 1, (196a). (= *at some distance from her interlocutors*.)

Also in Late Modern English possessive pronouns are sometimes made to express relations which differ widely from those ordinarily denoted by the genitive.

- i. (He)...was dependent...on a hired serving-woman, who would be to the child, for the time, all that even *his alliance* could have made his own wife. DICK., Domb., Ch. II, 15. (= *the alliance with him*.)

For a teacher to seek *her alliance* in any crisis of insubordination was equivalent to securing her expulsion. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. IX, 99.

There are many courting *your alliance*. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. IV, 212.

Compare Ch. XXIV, 21, Obs. IV, and also: Mr. Dombey would have reasoned: That a *matrimonial alliance with himself* must, in the nature of things, be gratifying and honourable to any woman of common sense. DICK., Domb., Ch. I, 6. Henry's resentment at the empty result of this warfare, broke the *Spanish alliance*. BEERBOHM TREE, Henry VIII, 8.

It was the divorce from Katharine of Arragon ... which finally put an end to *the alliance with Spain*. Ib., 11.

- ii. He would have preferred to put *her idea* aside altogether, if he had known how. DICK., Domb., Ch. III, 24. (= *the idea or thought of her*.)



- iii. Mr. Bumble was at once instructed that Oliver and *his indentures* were to be conveyed before the magistrate, for signature and approval, that very afternoon. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 39. (= *the indentures* or *contract concerning him*.)
- iv. Mr. Abednego and the two gentlemen from Houndsditch were present to swear to *their debts*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 150. (= *the moneys owing to them*.)

8. The use of *of* + personal pronoun for a possessive pronoun is much less common than that of *of* + common case for the genitive of a noun. In the older stages of the language substitution seems to have been more usual. Compare 6 and see EINENKEL, *Streifz.*, 85; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 230; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 323; id., *E. S.*, XVII; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 44.

The analytical construction with the preposition *of* is now, in the main, confined to certain combinations, in most of which, however, it is used in preference to, or practically to the exclusion of, the possessive pronoun. According to SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2104) it sometimes implies disparagement. He cites *I will break the neck of you*, and in support of his view draws attention to the different practice in *the man's head* and *the head of the beast*. Instances of disparaging possessive pronouns may be found under *body*, *conceit*, *like*, *teeth*.

Possibly also the reason why in some combinations the analytical construction is preferred is that it meets the requirements of metre or rhythm.

a) As may be expected, the use of *of* + personal pronoun instead of a possessive pronoun is least frequent when the reference is to (a) person(s). The combinations in which the analytical construction is used, are especially such as contain the following nouns:

**conceit.** *The conceit of him* was too great for the tolerance of the universal spirit of things. MAR. CORELLI, *Master Christian*, 67.

Note. An unusual construction, expressing contempt.

**body.** i. *Body o' me*, I have a Shoulder of an Egyptian King, that I purloin'd from one of the Pyramids. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 5, 35. "*Body of me*, where is the Count?" said the Duke. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 350.

ii. In all but *the misshapen body of him* he was a proven man. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 2.

His heart is big enough, if only *the body of him* would give it room. Id., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. III, 66.

Note. The analytical construction is regular in the obsolete ejaculation *body of (o') me*, but for the rest appears to be rare and expressive of contempt.

**death.** i. \*To relate the manner (sc. how your wife and babes were slaughter'd) Were, on the quarry of these murder'd deer, | To add *the death of you*. Macb., IV, 3, 205.

\*\* I know he'll be *the death of you*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 157.

It might be *the death of you*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVI, 466.

Women will be *the death of me*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XLI, 321.

It was well-nigh *the death of him*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 467, 491c.

ii. A school would be *his death*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, I, (168).

I cannot leave him now! I could not be *his death*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XL, 374.

Note. After *to be* in the sense of a weak *to cause*, the analytical construction is the rule, especially in colloquial language.

In the quotation from SHAKESPEARE it is, apparently, due to the requirements of metre.

**eye.** And verily he has *the eye of me*. W. MORRIS. *The Earthly Par.*, *The Doom of King Acrisius*, 71b.

Note. The analytical construction seems to be very rare. In the above quotation it is evidently used for the sake of the metre and the rhyme. Possibly it is due to the analogy of (*to have*) *the heart of me*. See below.

**heart.** i. I will have *the heart of him*, if he forfeit. *Merch.* III, 1, 132.

I love him so well, it would break *the heart of me* to think him a rascal. FARQUHAR. *Recruit. Offic.*, II, 2, (274).

It has often grieved *the heart of me* to see how some unhuman wretches murder their kind fortunes. *Id.*, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, I, 1, (365).

ii. Thy disdain | Has broke *my heart*. ADDISON, *Cato*, III, 3, 31.

The great calamity . . . had almost broken *his heart*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 253.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The analytical construction appears to be archaic and uncommon. In the above quotations it may have been preferred for the sake of metre or rhythm.

**history.** i. I will tell *the history of him*, just as if he were not my cousin. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XII, 67.

ii. The whole train of events connected with a particular country, society, person, thing, etc., and forming the subject of *his* or *its history*. MURRAY, *s. v. history*, 4. b.

Note. The analytical construction seems to be unusual.

**like.** i. \* I guess it's (sc. the room is) too dear for *the like of you*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XI, 148.

\*\* My audience shall consist of society . . . that society which is so much to aunt and *the likes of her*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XII, Ch. I, 331.

ii. \* George hated Jack Firebrace and Tom Humbold and all *their like*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. V, 46.

\*\* Pass, and mingle with *your likes*. TEN., *Princ.*, VI, 321.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. See also ELLINGER, E. S., XXXI, 167; and compare Ch. XXIX, 7. According to MURRAY (*s. v. like*, C, 3, e) the analytical construction is colloquial and often depreciatory.

**life.** i. He couldn't *for the life of him* resist any new temptation to fun and mischief. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 104).

He couldn't *for the life of him* help admiring and envying him. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 84.

*For the life of us* we cannot see how he is going to reconcile that admission with the statement that Mr. Krüger has not refused to redress them. *Times*.

ii. I cannot *for my life* tell what cause for pride there can possibly be in having them (sc. children). CH. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, *A Bachelor's Complaint*. I daren't *for my life* be alone with that poor child to-night. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 17.

Lizzie could not tell *for her life* how much more might have been in it (sc. her pocket). BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXX, 176.

Once I had begun, I couldn't leave off *for my life*. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 30.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**Note.** The analytical construction is used only in the combination *for the life of me* (etc.), as used in the special meaning illustrated by the above quotations. *For the soul of me* (etc.) is an occasional variant. See below.

*For my life* has an entirely different meaning in: It so happens, that instead of the fellow killing me, I by accident kill him, and lo! a pig-headed magistrate sends me to be tried *for my life*. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXIX, 263.

**look.** Obviously a Balliol scholar, from *the look of him*. HAM. GIBBS, *Compl. Oxf. Man*, Ch. V, 31.

**Note.** Apparently the usual construction.

**owner.** A gentleman, when he has a good horse in his stable, does not like to leave him there eating his head off. If he be a gig-horse, *the owner of him* will be keen to drive a gig. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 134.

**Note.** Apparently an exceptional construction.

**ransom.** i. You can have it (sc. the field) *for the ransom of me*, if you will but let me go. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LI, 538.

ii. Like all . . . prisoners of war, she must . . . pay *her ransom* in gold. MAR. EDGEW., *Moral Tales*, I, 208. <sup>1)</sup>

**Note.** The analytical construction seems to be rather the exception than the rule.

**ruin.** i. I must give it up, or it 'll be *the ruin of me*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VI, 60.

It will be *the ruin of him*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2103.

ii. He had checkmated the villain who had sought *her ruin*. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXVI, 220.

**Note.** The analytical construction is common only after *to be* in the meaning of *to cause*.

**shape.** Then I could see by *the shape of him* that I hadn't even got up to his waistband yet. MARK TWAIN, *Captain Stormfield's Visit*, I, 12.

I love *the* clean, strong *shape of him*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 8.

**Note.** Apparently an unusual construction.

**sight.** The only wonder is that I don't hate *the very sight of you*. MISS YONGE, *The Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. VI, 102.

*The sight of her* has taught me what was supremely lovely. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVI, 129b.

He had no other diversion than shouting at a frightened footman, who hated *the sight of him*. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 170.

I cannot bear *the sight of him*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2102.

**Note.** To all appearance the alternative construction is never used. This also applies to the prepositional expression *at (the) sight of*; see below under c).

**soul.** i. \* I can't help laughing at that — he! he! he! — *for the soul of me*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (178).

Justice is an old, hobbling beldame, and I can't get her to keep pace with Generosity, *for the soul of me*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 2, (407).

\*\* His fiddle was old and rheumatic as himself; but *the soul of him* ran down the bow, and all his song was magical. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 4.

ii. \* I couldn't *for my soul* interfere and throw damp upon it (sc. the fun). HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIII, 440.

\*\* I'll punish him — *by my soul*, that will I! *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 242.

1) MURRAY.

**Note.** The analytical construction appears to be usual only in the combination *for the soul of me* (etc.) in the meaning illustrated by the above quotations. *For the life of me* (etc.) is a frequent variant. See above.

**teeth.** A devil draw the *teeth of him!* SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. I, 7.

**Note.** An unusual construction expressing contempt.

- b) The use of the analytical construction is more usual when the reference is to (a) thing(s). In most cases the possessive pronoun could be used instead without detriment to idiomatic propriety.

**face.** i. Silence seemed, *on the face of it*, best for her adored one's happiness. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXI, 251.

*On the face of it* there is something in the argument. Let us see how much water it will hold. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5271, 7b.

The general principle that a self-governing Dominion should consume its own smoke is *on the face of it* reasonable. *Nineteenth Cent.*, No. 6453, 7a.

- ii. What the exact and proper interpretation of this curious fact may be, it would probably be hard to say; but *on its face* it suggests that if you are German or a foreigner generally, you will be able to read these things without moral injury; but if you are an ordinary Briton, you must certainly be defended from them. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 61, 128.

**Note.** The synthetical construction is decidedly exceptional.

Also the following construction, taken from FELLINGER (*Verm. Beitr.*, 45) illustrates an unusual application: What did he look like *on the face of him*.

WILKIE COLLINS, *No Name*, 14.

Compare *surface*.

**gaiety.** What an awful place! not for the sadness, strangely enough, as I thought, but *for the gaiety of it*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 157.

**like.** I never heard *the like of it*. MARK TWAIN, *Captain Stormfield's Visit*, I, 14.

**Note.** The analytical construction seems to be the usual one.

**look.** Ours (sc. our fire) is well-nigh out by *the look o't*. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 33.

**object.** "I think there's a prior attachment." — "Have you any idea who *the object of it* might be?" DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 351.

**original.** There is a passage in *Childe Harold*, but this ode appears to me *the original of it*. NOEL, *Es. on Poetry*, 45.

**partner.** Does yonder dear creature know all my life, who has been *the partner of it* for thirty years? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 906.

**quakeries.** We shall not see into the true heart of anything, if we look at *the quakeries of it*. CARLYLE, *Hero-Worship*, I, 4.

**shape, size.** I should say it (sc. the chest) was made for a burgomaster. The *shape and size of it* . . . suggest it was meant . . . for the reception of unset jewels. UNA. L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 26.

**surface.** Something which, *on the surface of it*, seems to contradict known principles or received opinions. ANNANDALE, *Stud. Dict.*, s. v. *paradox*.

**Note.** Only in the combination illustrated above does the analytical construction appear to be the ordinary one. It may be added that *of it*, as a useless appendage, is often suppressed: This, *on the surface*, might appear to be a matter of lighter loads. *Times*.

The question is not, after all, so very complicated as it would appear, *on the surface*, to be. *Harp. Weekly*.



ELLINGER (E. S., XXXI, 157) quotes: Mr. Vanstone showed his character *on the surface of him* freely to all men. WILKIE COLLINS, No Name. This also seems to be an unusual application.

**tone.** Sir Eldon Gorst makes an interesting report on Egypt and the Soudan, although *the tone of it* is not altogether reassuring. Westm. Gaz., No. 5613, 2b.

- c) Separate mention must be made of combinations with certain prepositional expressions made up of a preposition + noun + *of*. Ch. XXXI, 65, c.

In some of these, owing, perhaps, to the weakened individuality of the component parts of the word-group, the analytical construction is practically the only one in use. In others the two constructions are employed side by side, the synthetic being sometimes required or common, when the reference is to persons. The use of the emphatic *own* always precludes the application of the former.

The expressions here referred to are very numerous, and for lack of material only a limited number can be passed under review. For further discussion see also a subsequent chapter: Prepositions and Prepositional Expressions.

**back.** i. Mary, still fondly lingering by Harry's chair, with her hand *at the back of it*, could see his cards. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 283.

ii. Here's my master | With more than half the city *at his back*. BYRON, Don Juan, l, cxxxvii.

Note. In a purely local meaning the combination hardly admits of change into the alternative construction. When, however, other meanings are implied (supporting, following or pursuing) the analytical construction is rare, if used at all. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *back*, 5 and 23. This construction is probably regular in connection with *on the back of* in the sense of *after*: The child took the measles, and then *on the back of it* came scarlatina.

**centre.** A large mansion-house stood *in the centre of it* (sc. the farm). WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl. I, 109).

Note. The analytical construction appears to be the ordinary one. Compare *middle* and *midst*.

**close.** Such an election would take place on the sole and single issue of the House of Lords. It would be impossible *at the close of it* to question the relevancy of the result. Westm. Gaz., No. 5448, 1b.

Note. The analytical construction is probably the ordinary one. Compare *end*.

**cover.** The scheme suits his present exigencies. *Under cover of it* he can indulge in lavish and riotous hospitality at his niece's expense. DEIGHTON, Introd. to Twelfth Night, 15.

Note. The phrase in both its shades of meaning: *under the protection or shelter of*, and *under the disguise of* (MURRAY, s. v. *cover*, 3, c and d) hardly admits of change.

**end.** My fair young reader, if you are not so perfect a beauty as the peerless Lindamira, Queen of the Ball; if *at the end of it*, as you retire to bed, you meekly own that you have had but two or three partners [etc.]. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 281.

Note. Substitution of *at its end*, etc. seems to be unidiomatic. Compare *close*.



**face.** What changed his nature was the famine, and the way in which Government behaved *in face of it*. ACADEMY.<sup>1)</sup>

*In the face of them* (sc. these figures and facts) the Government will (not) question our action in taking suspected cargoes to a Prize Court. TIMES, No. 1985. 55a.

Note. No alternative construction seems to be possible.

**favour.** i. Thirty-six of the bishops present were *in favour of it*. PRIESTLEY, CORRUPT CHR. I, i, 97.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. It surprises us less that the "Old Guard" are in arms against it (sc. payment of members) than that so many of the young bloods are hotly *in its favour*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5424, 1c.

Note. The synthetic construction is probably exceptional. Compare with the above *in my* (your, etc.) *favour* in the sense of *to my* (your, etc.) *interest*, which does not, apparently, admit of change.

I think you will say something *in my favour*. FRANKF. MOORE, The JESSAMY BRIDE, Ch. XXVII, 246.

**front.** i. \* A shell plumped down and burst about 100 yards *in front of me*. TIMES, No. 1978, 936d.

\*\* (He) gazed *in front of him*. EL. GLYN, HALCYONE, Ch. XXVIII, 248.

She was staring *in front of her*. Id., The Reason Why, Ch. XL, 376.

\*\*\* Members have at last *in front of them* the prospect of an unbroken three months' vacation. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5371, 1b.

He was . . . an Oxford man, with four glorious years *in front of him* in which to become famous. HAM. GIBBS, Compl. Oxf. Man, Ch. I, 2.

ii. Forcing a passage across the river *in his front*. SIR H. DOUGLAS, Milit. Bridges, 144.

Note. The analytical construction is decidedly the rule, and is, probably, the only one in actual use when the reference is to things.

**memory.** Let us, *in memory of him*, make it a national demonstration of sorrow and affection. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5317, 2a.

Note. The alternative construction may be as usual.

**midst.** i. We saw Emily torn *from the midst of us*, when our hearts clung to her with intense attachment. MRS. GASK., Life of CHARL. BRONTË, 287.

They saw Bathsheba *in the midst of them*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LIV, 452.

The rider pranced *into the midst of them*. Id., Ch. LV, 458.

ii. A soft brushing-by of garments might have been heard among them (sc. the ferns), and Bathsheba appeared *in their midst*. Id., XXVIII, 212.

The village of Weatherbury was quiet as the graveyard *in its midst*. Id., Ch. XXXII, 244.

The pleasant circle at Bunbury's country house wished to have him once again *in their midst*. FRANKF. MOORE, The JESSAMY BRIDE, Ch. XXX, 278.

Note. About the alternative construction WEBSTER (s. v. *midst*) observes: "The phrases *in our midst*, *in your midst*, *in their midst*, instead of *in the midst of us* or *them*, have unhappily found great currency in this country, and are sometimes, though rarely, to be found in the writings of reputable English authors. The expressions seem contrary to the genius of the language, as well as opposed to the practice of our best and most accurate writers, and should therefore be abandoned." MURRAY (s. v. *midst*, 2, c) merely observes: "This use is scarcely found before the 19th century."

**reach.** i. The kind creature helped me . . . to load my fusil, which he placed *within reach of me*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LI, 531.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst., X.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. Some parts of it (sc. the Paper) may be a little *out of their Reach*. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 58.<sup>1)</sup>

Anything like sustained reasoning was *beyond his reach*. L. STEPHEN, *Pope*, VII, 163.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Usage may be equally divided, irrespective of the preposition which stands first in these combinations.

**rear.** i. The houses were built in 1877. *At the rear of them* was a 9-inch sewer. *Law Times*.<sup>2)</sup>

- ii. The huge mountain-range . . . rose *on their rear*, and cut off their return. STANLEY, *Jewish Ch.*, I, v, 108.<sup>2)</sup>

He had detached himself from a tea-party *in her rear*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, I, Ch. VII, 93.

Note. Usage is probably in favour of the synthetic construction.

**sight.** The dog was angry *at the sight of me*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 22a.

He blenched *at sight of her*. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, III, 275.

Note. Apparently the alternative construction is never used. Compare also *sight* under a), above.

**spite.** 'Tis he then, and escaped *in spite of us*. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, III, I, 2167.

Note. No alternative construction.

**stead.** i. I wanted the personal assistance of your brother, but *instead of him* they sent me his servant.

He deserved the gratitude of his fellow citizens. *Instead of it* he was treated as a common malefactor and locked up in a dark and gloomy prison.

- ii. Another pedagogue reigned *in his stead*. WASH. IRV., *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, (374).

And what is this? Who reigneth *in my stead*. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, 89a.

Note. As the above sentences show, the two constructions express different shades of meaning: the analytical construction negatives an action or state with regard to a person or thing, affirming it at the same time as regards another; the synthetic expresses substitution of one person or thing for another in a certain position.

**top.** I drank them (sc. the waters) neat for six consecutive days, and they nearly killed me; but after then, I adopted the plan of taking a stiff glass of brandy and water immediately *on the top of them*, and found much relief thereby. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 72.

The straddling bowman lost his left foothold and went over head downwards on the slope with John *on top of him*. CHESTERTON, *The Free Man* (T. P.'s Christmas Numb. for 1911, 4c).

Two heavy falls in a week, and a bad cold *on the top of them*. *St. Stephen's Review*, 1886, 13 March, 11/2.<sup>3)</sup>

Note. No alternative construction, whether the reference is to place or time.

- d) 1) Sometimes the syntactical connections make the analytical construction obligatory. Thus when the head-word is preceded by another modifier than the definite article, or by no modifier beyond an adjective.

- i. What ravages I committed on my favourite authors in the course of *my interpretation of them*, I am not in a condition to say. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 46b.  
Trinity College has placed *Thorwaldsen's statue of him* in her Library.  
ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, Ch. VI, 102.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *reach*, 6 and 7. 2) Id., s. v. *rear*, 4. 3) Id., s. v. *top*, 21.

I will change *my treatment of him*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2102.

- ii. Scores of visitors to the Pines will recall that nothing awakened his anger so much as any undue disparagement of 'Boz'. And at one time *disparagement of him* was only too common. T. W. D., Editor's Pref. to SWINBURNE, Charles Dickens, 20.

- 2) The analytical construction seems to be preferable when the head-word, although preceded by the definite article, is modified by a restrictive clause.

The last words *of him that are recorded*, are worthy the greatness of his soul. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXVIII, 304.

Note. In the cases mentioned under *a)* and *b)* the personal pronoun is replaced by the absolute possessive pronoun, when another relation than the objective is to be expressed. (23.)

9. *a)* In the combinations *all* (or *both*) + plural possessive pronoun + plural noun, *all* (or *both*) mostly modifies the following word-group: *All* (or *both*) *our* (or *your* or *their*) *sons died in action*. See, however, Ch. V, 16.

But in these combinations *all* (or *both*) + *our* (or *your* or *their*) may also represent, especially in the older writers, the genitive of *we* (or *you* or *they*) + *all* (or *both*), the order of the words being usually reversed. For exceptions see below. Compare Ch. V, 16, Obs. VI; Ch. XXIV, 44, Obs. V; JESPERSEN, Progress, § 226; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 324; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1062; MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 135, Note; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 235; UHRSTRÖM, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 43.

According to MURRAY (s. v. *both*, A, 4, *b*) the idiom is now only met with in vulgar language, but this odium seems hardly to attach to the instances, most of them taken from the Latest English, cited below.

**all.** Have I not *all their letters* to meet me in arms? Henry IV, A, II, 3, 28.

*All their countenances* expressed displeasure. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 50.

But the spell of those rare halcyon days is so potent over *all our minds* that ever afterwards we must fain seek the hidden lineaments of that most sweet and gracious sovereign. Times 1902, 23 May, 330c.

Here is a great body of common doctrine, which commanded the assent of all the Commissioners, and which might . . . have been presented to us in a Report carrying *all their signatures*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4931, 1a.

The birds which come to us on their spring migration arrive, without exception, for the business which is of the greatest interest of *all their life's dramas* for us. Ib., No. 5277, 4c.

Athena was dead — gone, for ever, out of his life, out of *all their lives*. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. XX, 265.

He took down *all our names*. MURRAY, s. v. *all*, 2, *c*.

**both.** My brother Foresight has cast *both their nativities*. CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 2, (215).

They had . . . permitted him to kiss *both their hands*. SCOTT, *Quent Durw.*, Ch. XVII, 230.

That mis-called firmness . . . was the bane of *both our lives*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 27a. You may fancy the feelings of these women, when they were told that *both their husbands* were safe. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 349.

I have long been wanting . . . to say something about a matter that concerns *both our futures*. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, III, Ch. III, 490.

You will end by making *both their lives* miserable. E. W. HORNING, *No Hero*, Ch. X. I want *both our names* added to the inscription. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. VIII, 200.

You let me go and spoil *both our lives*! EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXXII, 300.

There is no doubt that the fatal passion . . . had already taken possession of *both their souls*. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 503, 802c.

Only once did Fraide allude to the incident that was paramount in *both their minds*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. XXV, 277.

Note α) The plural form of the head-word is practically regular also when the corresponding analytical equivalent would have the singular. Thus in the frequent combinations with *sake*.

**all.** This will break out | To *all our sorrows*, and ere long I doubt. King John, IV, 1, 102.

Tell her it's *all our ways*. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (265).

"Mark," she said, after a while, "don't be unkind to me. I make as little of it as I can, *for all our sakes*." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXV, 344.

I trust, *for all our sakes*, that there is at least some drinkable beer to be had. M. E. FRANCIS, *Lady Lucy*.

**both.** For *both our sakes* I would that word were true. *Taming of the Shrew*, V, 1, 15.

Would you were . . . *both our mothers*. All's Well, I, 3, 169.

Let there be always a strict friendship between you and the butler, for it is *both your interests* to be united. SWIFT, *Direct. to Serv.*, Ch. II, (565a).

I am glad of it . . . *for both their sakes*. FRANCES BURNAY, *Evelina*, LXV.

"There is no reason why we should not wed." |—"Then for God's sake," he answered, "*both our sakes*, | So you will wed me, let it be at once." TEN., *En. Ard.*, 505.

The following quotation affords an instance of the singular being used:

BRU. Caius Marcius was | A worthy officer i' the war; but insolent, | O'ercome with pride, ambitious past all thinking, Self-loving, — SIC. And affecting one sole throne, | Without assistance. — MEN. I think not so. — SIC. We should by this, to *all our lamentation*, | If he had gone forth consul, found it so. *Coriolanus*, IV, 6, 34. (*lamentation* = *grief*.)

Unwarranted is the varied number of the successive nouns in:

Looking at *both their ages and position* he could have had no right to forbid it. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 401.

β) Before a gerund the possessive pronoun precedes *all* or *both*.

i. It is all along of *your all going away*. Miss BURNAY, *Evelina*, XVI, 62.

ii. To prevent the confusion that might arise from *our both addressing* the same lady. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (254).

She . . . insisted on *their both accepting* it (sc. the invitation) directly. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense and Sens.*, Ch. XXV, 152.

Your mother will feel *your both going away*. Mrs. GASK., *Wives and Daught.*, Ch. XVI, 161.



Whilst at Harrow he (sc. Sheridan) formed an intimacy with a fellow-pupil Mr. Halhed, with whom he entered into a literary partnership, which was not dissolved by *their both quitting* their school, the one for Oxford, the other for Bath. G. G. S., *Life of Rich. Brinsl. Sheridan*, 10.

;) *All* and *both* may be divided from the possessive pronoun, when the latter modifies the subject.

i. *Their eyes were all* fixed on the yet living one. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 65.

ii. It cannot be wondered at that *their* retiring *all* to sleep at so unusual an hour should excite his curiosity. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, III, 71.<sup>1)</sup>

δ) Also *two* and, perhaps, other numerals may enter into the same kind of combinations with possessive pronouns as *all* and *both*.

A sort of screen of ice had hitherto, all through *our two lives*, glazed the medium through which we exchanged intercourse. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVIII, 240. I am going to pass entirely out of *your two lives*. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Wind-Fan*, IV, (143).

ε) A few quotations are subjoined exhibiting the more usual practice. See also JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 228.

**all.** The instances are not to seek — are at *the fingers of us all*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 1.

There was some excitement in *the bosoms of them all*. Id., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. LII, 454.

**both.** I hate *the ugly faces of both of you*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 967.

"And you played this pretty trick off at my wife's expense, Mr. Smithers?" said I. "At your wife's expense, certainly, but for *the benefit of both of you*. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 114.

This analytical construction is practically unavoidable when the head-word is a noun that does not admit of the plural.

It will be more for *the happiness of both of you*. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense and Sens.*, Ch. XXIV, 147.

He was resolved either on a marriage, or on *the blood of both of them*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 125.

b) Also when a numeral or an indefinite pronoun is followed by *of* + plural possessive pronoun + plural noun, as in *one* (or *two*, *many*, *some*, *any*, *none*, *every one*, *either*, *each*, etc.) of *our* (or *your* or *their*) *advantages*, the reference of the numeral or indefinite pronoun is mostly to the following word-group.

But in these combinations *one* (or *two*, *many*, *some*, etc.) of *our* (or *your* or *their*) may also stand for the genitive of the word-groups *one* (or *two*, *many*, *some* etc.) of *us* (or *you* or *them*). Instances are, however, rare, and have an incongruous effect. See JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 232; UHRSTRÖM, *Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson*, 43.

By this time, had the King permitted us, | *One of our souls* had wander'd in the air. *Richard II*, I, 3, 194.

Fare thee well: and God have mercy upon *one of our souls*! *Twelfth Night*, III, 4, 184.

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 227.



She holds up her riding-rod, as if she would lay it about *some of their cars*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIX, 198.

They (sc. the reasons) arise from a painful circumstance which is attributable to *none of our faults*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXV, 371.

I am taking the trouble of writing true history for *all of your benefits*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VI, 118.

"All right, Miss Mentor — he's only her father," I said reassuringly. — "Is he *all of our fathers*?" she exclaimed wrathfully. *Punch*, 1905, 11 Jan., 35.

Compare: And yet, would you take *either of those men's creeds*? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

10. a) When a possessive pronoun precedes a genitive modifying the same noun, it is placed either in the conjoint or in the absolute form. MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 237; JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 238; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 330.

- i. We shall not see into the true heart of anything, if we look merely at the quackeries of it; if we do not reject the quackeries altogether; as mere diseases, corruptions, with which *our and all men's* sole duty is to have done with them. CARLYLE, *Hero-Worship*, I, 4.  
She implores *your and Heaven's* assistance. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 57.

*My (and Harry's)* old friend, Parson Sampson, . . . was occupying poor Hal's vacant bed at my lodgings at this time. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVIII, 830.

- ii. Go tell the lords o' the city I am here: | Deliver them this paper: having read it, | Bid them repair to the market-place; where I, | Even in *theirs and in the commons' ears* | Will vouch the truth of it. *Coriolanus*, V, 6, 4.  
*Mine and my father's* death come not upon thee, | Nor thine on me. *Hamlet*, V, 2, 341.

I go to chide my Olivia for intending to steal a marriage without *mine or her aunt's* consent. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, II.

I wished to avail myself of *yours and Mr. G's* criticism before I began to adjust my events into a story. MARY WOLLSTONECRAFT (*Bookman*, No. 262, 164b).

The following is a curious instance of divided practice:

So had she looked when she had opened the door of the Greek Room and led in *their — hers and Richard's* — illustrious guest. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. XIX, 251.

- b) Also when two possessive pronouns precede and modify one and the same noun, that which stands first may have either the conjoint or the absolute form. MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 237; JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 238; *id.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.25, 16.29.

- i. If we use the phrase (sc. I guess) — parenthetically, that is, like Chaucer and the Yankees —, we have it not from Chaucer, but from the Yankees, and with *their, not his*, exact shade of meaning. *The King's English*, 24.

- ii. We all were sea-swallow'd, though some cast again, | And by that destiny to perform an act | Whereof what's past is prologue, what to come | In *yours and my* discharge. *Tempest*, II, 1, 254.

Had I a dozen sons, each in my love alike, and none less dear than *thine* and *my* good Marcius, [etc.]. *Coriolanus*, I, 3, 24.

Doubt you whether, | This she felt as, looking at me, | *Mine* and *her* souls rushed together? *Browning, Cristina*, VI. (This she felt as = As she felt this.)

Note a) When joint ownership, agency, etc. is in question, the conjoint forms seem to be preferred.

Let it be *your* and *my* gift. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste*, III, Ch. IX, 309.

β) It stands to reason that, if the genitive precedes the possessive pronoun, the latter regularly has the conjoint form.

(I) have traversed land and sea in constant duty. | Through almost sixty years, and still for Venice, | *My fathers' and my* birthplace. *BYRON, Mar. Feb.*, I, 2, (357a).

It was not *the umbrella's*, but *my* fault. *Punch*, No. 3687, 179.

γ) When the absolute and the conjoint forms are alike, it is, of course, impossible to tell which is meant.

i. In specially jocose moments he would make allusions to the day when it (sc. the hatchment) would be refurbished in *his* or *Jane's* honour. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 135.

*His* and *his comrades'* behaviour was exemplary. *II. Lond. News*, No. 2341, 518c.

ii. He bade them be assured . . . that he would grasp the first opportunity of being revenged on *his* and *their* enemies. *LINGARD, Hist. of Eng.* (HERRIG<sup>45</sup>, 530a).

We read that the father, before he joined the paper in *this* and *its* youth, had "given much consideration to the social reforms advocated by *The Athenæum*." *Athen.*, No. 4405, 362a.

His (sc. a working man's wife) must be his general servant, his children's nurse, *his* and *their* sick nurse, cook and cleaner and needlewoman. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3877, 232a.

c) The possessive pronouns and genitives as used in the above combinations are sometimes replaced by their analytical equivalents.

The shortest way to the pockets of *you* and *me*. *Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm.*, II, 297.<sup>1)</sup>

For the sake of *me* and *my* husband. *HARDY, Tess*, VI, Ch. XLVI, 411.

d) Constructions like those mentioned under a), b) and c) are more or less unusual. The ordinary practice is:

1) to place the head-word between the two modifiers, thus: *John's friends and mine*, *my friends and John's*, *my friends and yours*.

Blasted be you Pine, | *My father's ancient crest and mine*, | If from its shade in danger part | The lineage of the Bleeding Heart. *SCOTT, Lady*, II, xxx, 4. If his royal highness, the prince, had not turned back at Derby, *your king and mine*, now, would be his Majesty, King James the Third. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 226.

I scruple to speak of what will tend to *your profit and mine*. *Ib.*, Ch. I, 5. That, my dear Catiline, I need not remind you, was *your idea and mine*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 3277, 4a.

1) JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 238.

- 2) to place *own* after the (first) possessive pronoun, which in this combination always has the conjoint form, the use of *own* being justified by the invariably stressed nature of the pronoun.

You can, at lowest, hold your peace about them (sc. the things that Nature meant), turn away *your own and others'* face from them. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship, The Hero as Poet*, 97.

There could be no reason why Pen should not marry according to *his own and his mother's* wish. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 399.

Mr. Costigan can protect *his own and his daughter's* honour. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XI, 119.

Men are so careless with *their own and other people's* property. *Punch*, No. 3687, 179a.

He neglected those affairs of life which would have added to *his own and his daughter's* comfort. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 12b.

The other fact which added considerably to *our own and our guests* enjoyment requires a rather longer explanation. *Ib.*, No. 6435, 5b.

Note. Also when the head-word stands between a genitive and a possessive pronoun (or between two possessive pronouns), the (last) possessive pronoun is often emphasized by *own*.

Is it possible for me, with ordinary decency, to turn a young gentleman out of my house, who saved *my daughter's life and my own*? SCOTT *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 220.

Miss Fotheringay presents grateful compliments to Mr. Pendennis, and in *her papa's name and her own* begs to thank him for his most beautiful presents. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 97.

Similarly *own* is often used in constructions like the following:

It was natural that the man who had made such rare discoveries should unconsciously magnify their merits to *his own eyes and to those of others*.

PRESCOTT, *Conquest of Mexico* (HERRIG, *Brit. Clas. Auth.*<sup>45</sup>, 668a).

11. When a possessive pronoun and another adnominal adjunct modify the same noun, either the former or the latter stands first.

a) The possessive pronoun stands first, when the other modifier is:

- 1) an adjective: *his good son*.
- 2) a noun in the common case or in the genitive: *her angel grace, his tailor's bills*.
- 3) one of the following indefinite pronouns or numerals: *every, other, many* or *few*: *his every movement, his other son, his many virtues, his few weaknesses*.
- 4) a cardinal or an ordinal numeral: *his two sons, his second success*.

b) The possessive pronoun stands last, when the other modifier is a demonstrative pronoun: *these my children*.

For the place of *all, both, double* and *half*, when modifying a noun preceded by a possessive pronoun, see Ch. V, 16; Ch. VIII, 100.

12. Obs. I. Sometimes we find the adjective preceding the possessive pronoun. Such combinations as *good my lord, dear my liege, gentle m*

*lord, sweet my coz*, etc., in which some emotional adjective and the possessive *my* are transposed, are quite frequent in Early Modern English. Later instances occur only archaically. The practice is, no doubt, due to *my lord, my liege* etc. being understood as a kind of unit. Numerous instances are given by A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *my*. Compare also Ch. VIII, 113 and FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 328; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 13; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.16 and FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose, The Adj.*, § 4.

*Gentle my lord*, sleek o'er your rugged looks. *Macb.*, III, 2, 27.

I pray thee, Rosalind, *sweet my coz*, be merry. As you like it, I, 2, 1.

And how doth your kinsman. *good mine host*? *SCOTT*, *Kenilw.*, Ch. III, 29.

*Young my lord* begins hectoring two or three long loafing fellows. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 84.

- II. Combinations in which *every* follows the possessive pronoun, are frequent enough, at least in literary English, but they are mostly replaced by a construction in which *of* + absolute possessive pronoun is placed after the noun: literary *his every whim* = colloquial *every whim of his*. (23.) This latter construction is not, however, available in the case of the neuter singular *its*, the absolute use of this pronoun being practically non-existent. (25.) In place of it the personal pronoun *it* is often used. Thus instead of *\*every stone of its* we find *every stone of it*. Compare 24, Obs. VI and MURRAY, s. v. *every*, I, 1, b; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 234; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 50.

- i. Wouldst thou *thy every future year* | In ceaseless prayer and penance dree? *SCOTT*, *Lay*, II, v. (= to dree = to suffer, to endure.)

*Her every expressed want* is gratified, *her every known dictate* respected. *JEROME*, *John Ingerfield*, 45.

He would indulge *his every whim*. *MISS BURNETT*, *Little Lord*, 195.

The spirit of leniency has marked *my every sentence*. *Punch*, 1893, 309a.

- ii. The yard was so dark that even Scrooge, who knew *its every stone*, was fain to grope with his hands. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 18.

She had spoken to him of her mutilated limb, her youth destroyed in its fullest bloom, her beauty robbed of *its every charm*. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXVII, 330.

*Its* (sc. Prague's) stones are saturated with history and romance; *its every suburb* must have been a battlefield. *JEROME*, *Three men on the Bummel*, Ch. VIII, 177.

- iii. In the primate to the meanest deacon *every minister of it* (sc. the Church) derived from him (sc. Henry the Eighth) his sole right to exercise spiritual powers. *GREEN*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 1, 349.

- III. Occasionally we find *other* preceding instead of following the possessive pronoun. Only three instances are given by A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *other*: *Merry Wives*, II, 2, 259; *Henry IV*, B, IV, 5, 53; *Lear*, I, 259. EINENKEL (*Anglia*, XXVI, 535) quotes an instance from BUNYAN: *Grace Abounding*, 302.

The practice, which even in Older English does not seem to have been particularly usual, has not yet become quite extinct. Compare also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 329.

Reader, in thy passage from the Bank . . . — to the Flower Pot, to secure a place for Dalston, or Shacklewell, or some *other thy suburban retreat* northerly — didst thou never observe a melancholy-looking, handsome, brick-and-stone edifice



to the left, where Threadneedle Street abuts upon Bishopsgate? CH. LAMB, *Es. of El., The South-Sea House*.

When he with Laura in his hand went into the kitchen on his way to the dog-kennel, the fowl-houses, and *other his favourite haunts*, all the servants there assembled in great silence. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 31.

All *other his property* is to be held in trust to pay the income thereof to his wife during widowhood. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3829, 372*b*.

Compare the archaic *other the king's enemies* in:

To joyn with Cardinal Pool and *other the Kings Enemies*. LD. HERBERT, *Henry VIII*, 531.<sup>1)</sup>

- IV. Through the suppression of partitive *of* numerals, especially certain indefinite numerals, may come to stand immediately before a conjoint possessive pronoun. The practice is now quite obsolete, but may be traced down to SCOTT and THACKERAY. See also MURRAY, s. v. *many*, 2, *b*; EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 88.

i. The death of Fulvia, with more urgent touches, | Do strongly speak to us; but the letters too | Of *many our contriving friends* in Rome | Petition us at home. *Ant. and Cleop.*, I, 2, 189.

He hath sent me an earnest inviting, which *many my near occasions* did urge me to put off. *Tim. of Athens*, III, 6, 11.

'Tis such as you, | That creep like shadows by him and do sigh | At *each his needless heavings*. *Wint. Tale*, II, 3, 35.

She forgot *most her grievances* against the other. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. IV, 194.

ii. Had she seen *an hundred his equals* or his superiors in those particulars, no one else could have been linked to her heart by the strong associations of remembered danger and escape. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. IV, 59.

And he gave me *one his noble smiles*. BLACKMORE, *Erema*, I, 98 <sup>2)</sup>

- V. The construction in which a demonstrative precedes a conjoint possessive pronoun, though frequent enough in the literary language, is practically unknown in colloquial English, which substitutes one with partitive *of* + absolute possessive pronoun. Thus for the literary *these mine enemies* colloquial English would have *these enemies of mine*. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2115. For illustration of the colloquial construction see 23.

My high charms work, | And *these mine enemies* are all knit up | In their distractions. *Temp.*, III, 3, 88.

Grant that *these my two sons* may sit, the one on thy right hand, and the other on thy left, in thy kingdom. *Bible*, *Matth.*, XX, 21.

Should *this our broomstick* pretend to enter the scene [etc.]. SWIFT, *Meditation upon a Broomstick*.

As brisk as bees . . . did the four Pickwickians assemble on the morning of the twenty-second day of December, in the year of grace in which *these, their faithfully-recorded adventures*, were undertaken and accomplished. *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 245.

Promise me . . . that if aught should befall him and me, you will protect *this my poor old mother* and *this my child*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXIII, 96*b*.

Treat me honourably, for I was once a king's daughter, and *this my boy* . . . is of no common race. *Id.*, *The Heroes*, I, Ch. I, 29.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *other*, 5, d.    <sup>2)</sup> ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.* 18.



She perceived that only the slightest ordinary care was necessary for holding her own in Angel Clare's heart against *these her candid friends*. HARDY, *Tess*, Ch. XXI, 176.

It must not, however, be supposed that, apart from considerations of diction, this substitution would always yield good idiom. Except for such disparaging expressions as *that husband of mine*, etc. (23), the colloquial construction implies a vaguely partitive notion which is absent in the literary; and it stands, therefore, to reason that when this notion is out of the question, it would hardly do to substitute the former for the latter. Compare also ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 49.

Trebonius doth desire you to o'er-read, | At your best leisure, *this his humble suit*.  
Jul. Cæs., III. 1, 5.

For *this our determination* we do not hold ourselves strictly bound to assign any reason. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. I, 63b.

She was now literally trembling and panting at *this her temerity*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXVIII, 212.

Either the natural shyness of the softer sex or a sarcastic attitude on the part of male relatives, had denuded such women's clubs as remained of *this their glory and consummation*. Id., *Tess*, I, Ch. II, 12.

Never do I see that light from the closing of the west, even in *these my aged days*, without thinking of her. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 95.

In the Middle Ages the grocer was not troubled with the thousand-and-one tiny articles of seeming necessity in *this our day*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5371, 13c.

Miss Braddon is more wonderful in *these, her later years*, than she ever was in her early ones. *Standard*.

Substitution would even appear to be impossible when the head-word is modified by a superlative or superlative equivalent (*chief, principal, final*).

Of the other illustrious persons whom Becky had the honour to encounter on *this her first presentation* to the grand world, it does not become the present historian to say much. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIV, 145.

"My dear creature," said he, in *that his politest tone*, "I think it certainly as well that I came down." Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 94.

Dryden scarcely survived *this his last success*. GOSSE, *Eighteenth Cent. Lit.*, 23.

She has been looking at me with such reproachful eyes, for having neglected her all *this, our last afternoon!* EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXXI, 292.

The Reviewers had called forth *this, its earliest manifestation* (sc. of Byronism).

ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, I, Ch. VII, 124.

Miss Whyte has delighted many readers with her stories, but she has excelled herself in *this her latest book*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 5c.

It was a desperate time indeed which the young couple spent in the French capital on *this their first visit*. *Ib.*, No. 5631, 12b.

Our laws, our literature, and our social life owe whatever excellence they possess largely to the influence to *this our chief classic*. PRES. TAFT, *Message* (Rev. of Rev., No. 256, 322a).

The chief interest of *this our final report* lies in the fact that it embodies the results of matured judgment. *Times*, No. 1815, 821a.

Conversely the colloquial construction sometimes seems to be the only one available. Thus, apparently, in appositions:

He (sc. Swinburne) could recite long passages from Dickens and Jane Austen from memory — *that prodigious memory of his*. T. W. D., *Editor's Pref.*, to SWINBURNE, *Charles Dickens*, 18.

13. Like the personal pronouns (Ch. XXXII, 18) the possessive pronouns of the third person, whether conjoint or absolute, are sometimes used as determinative pronouns. This construction seems at one time to have been quite common, at least in the literary language, but is now unusual, the possessive pronoun being usually replaced by its analytical equivalent: *of* + personal pronoun. Compare Ch. XXXIX, 6; and see FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 321; ELLINGER, E. S., XXXI, 156; id., *Verm. Beitr.*, 48, SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2106.

i. \* Love make *his* heart of flint that you shall love. *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 305. He must observe *their* moods on whom he jests. *Ib.*, III, 1, 69.

"Kinsman," she said, "*his* race is run, | That should have sped thine errand on." SCOTT, *Lady*, III, xviii, 23.

O peaceful Sisterhood, | Receive, and yield me sanctuary. nor ask | *Her* name to whom ye yield it. TEN., *Guin.*, 141.

Thus he read; And ever in the reading, lords and dames | Wept, looking often from *his* face who read | To hers which lay so silent. *Id.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 1276.

\*\* Be it (sc. the ring) *his* that finds it. *Twelfth Night*, II, 2, 13.

She was one | Made but to love, to feel that she was *his* | Who was her chosen. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, ccii.

- ii. Figg's blow was delivered so mightily that the weapon brake in his hands, less constant than the heart *of him* who wielded it. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 384.

14. In English a possessive pronoun is often used where the Dutch prefers a construction with the objective of a personal pronoun. This is the case:

a) when the latter denotes the owner of anything mentioned in the sentence. See Ch. III, 15 and especially 16, where some exceptions to the ordinary English practice have been discussed. I served both for *his* prop and guide. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 552. (= diende *hem* tot steun.)

If he was to make so bold as say a word to me, I should slap *his* face. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 55a. (= *hem* in het gezicht slaan.)

Would you mind not standing quite so much in *my* light? ANSTEE, *Lyre and Lancet*, 13. (= *mij* niet zoo in het licht staan.)

Boldwood slipped the ring on *her* finger. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIII, 443. (= stak *haar* ongemerkt den ring aan den vinger.)

Note. Thus also when a reflexive pronoun takes the place of a personal pronoun.

Mrs. and Mr. Creakle were both wiping *their* eyes. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 42a. (= wisschten *zich* de tranen uit de oogen.)

I tore *my* fingers with the point of my new diamond pin. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46. (= schramde *mij* de vingers open.)

Philip bit *his* lips. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.* (= beet *zich* op de lippen.)

- b) in certain constructions with verbs expressing an asking or requesting. For further information see Ch. III, 17.

I besought *her* forgiveness. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 30a. (= *smeekte haar om vergiffenis*.)

It was long before people ceased to take long walks for the sake of asking *his* aid. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., Ch. II, 14. (= *om hem om hulp te vragen*.)

Note. The Dutch construction is occasionally met with in English also. Strap asked *him* pardon. SMOLLETT, Rod. Random, Ch. XI, 64.

I pray *you* pardon. BYRON, Mar, Fal., II, 1, (360a).

This last construction is unavoidable when the thing-object is preceded by a modifier.

I beg *you a thousand pardons*. LYTON, Caxtons, III, Ch. IV, 67.

Observe also that in colloquial language we often meet with *I beg (ask) pardon*, without any pronoun either possessive or personal.

Come, come, brother, won't you *ask pardon*? FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem, II, 1, (375).

I did not mean to wound you — *I beg pardon*. LYTON, What will he do with it?, I, Ch. VIII, 26.

- c) after the prepositions (*as*) *against*, *for* or *to*, in certain combinations denoting a value contrasted with another mentioned in an earlier part of the sentence.

In these combinations *to* seems to be the usual preposition, *for* being only occasionally met with. Compare Ch. XXIV, 14, b.

**against.** The imports (sc. of the United States) are smaller than our own, amounting in 1909, in round figures, to £ 295.000.000 *against* our £ 534.000.000. Westm. Gaz., No. 5271, 4a. (= *tegen £ 534.000.000 bij ons*.)

**for.** At this he only tossed his nose, as if he had been in London at least three times *for my one*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVIII, 228. (= *tegen ik eenmaal*.)

**to.** The grown men on our side were six *to their nineteen*. STEV., Treas. Isl., Ch. XII, 73. (= *tegen zij negentien*.)

They being ten *to his one*, he was forthwith pulled overboard. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVIII, 136a.

They are masters of three languages in use here *to our one*. Times.

Six Irish Nationalists opposite me represent no more electors than I do, who have as *against* me six votes *to my one*. Id.

Compare with the above the construction in the following quotation expressing approximately the same meaning:

There is come lately to live in our Square, at Kensington, a grocer's widow from London Bridge, whose daughters have three gowns *where I have one*. THACKERAY, Virg., Ch. XVII, 173.

15. The notions of possession, origin, etc., which are expressed by the possessive pronoun, are sometimes but dimly present to the speaker's or writer's mind, or seem to need no expression, inasmuch that the definite article is not seldom used instead. The substitution is, on the whole, less frequent in English than in Dutch, the difference in practice being especially marked before the names of parts of the human body or of articles of dress or personal adornment.

- a) Before such nouns the possessive pronoun is the rule, contrary to ordinary Dutch practice, when the owner of the things referred to is indicated by the subject of an active sentence.

In passing it may here be observed that the noun modified by the possessive pronoun mostly agrees, as to number, with the subject. CH. XXV, 33.

Those silver sounds, so soft, so dear, | The list'ner held *his breath* to hear. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xviii.

He put *his shoulder* to the wheel. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, Pref., 5b.

He did not seem to heed the little preparations for his comfort, but, resting *his cheek on his right hand*, his left drooped on *his crossed knees*. LYTTON, *What will he do with it?*, I, Ch. VI, 19.

She shook *her head*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXVII, 211.

Taking her purpose between *her teeth* she determined not to yield so easily. G. MOORE, *Sister Teresa*, 84.

Once more we shall go to the country with that infernal Budget and the Peers on *our backs*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5277, 4a.

Have you got her under *your thumb*? MRS. WARD, *Sir G. Tres.*, III, Ch. XXI, 177b. Mothers-in-law . . . interfered with everything and had their sons under *their thumbs*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XIV, 125.

Note especially the all but regular use of the possessive pronoun after *with*.

Mr. Burchell sat *with his face* to the fire. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*.

Here was the man *with his soul* in his mouth at the first kick (sc. of the horse). THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 34.

"I beg your pardon, sir," said the other man, advancing, *with his hand* to his hat. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 169.

Hubert, *with his gun* by his side, sat waiting all night in the kitchen. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 45.

- b) When, on the other hand, the owner is indicated by the object, or by the subject of a passive sentence, the definite article is mostly preferred in English also.

i. The spirit touched him on *the arm*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

Brough took me by *the hand*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 71.

The accusation cut me to *the heart*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 35. (Note that this saying is used in a totally different meaning in: Cæsar cut his soldiers to the heart by giving them the respectful title of Quirites. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 232.)

One was as ready as the other to pull the interloper by *the nose*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. II, 195.

Dorian touched him on *the arm*. OSCAR WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. III, 60. I have kissed Juliet on *the mouth*. *ib.*, Ch. VII, 102.

He insisted on shaking him by *the hand*. *ib.*, Ch. VII.

He chilled me to *the bone*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 16.

ii. He was hanged by *the neck*. STOF., *Hanal.*, II, 151.

He was shot through *the cheek*. *ib.*

He was run through *the body*. *ib.*

Note. Also when the owner of the thing referred to is the person addressed, the definite article sometimes takes the place of the possessive pronoun.

Shall I take a little off *the beard*? (said by a hair-cutter.) SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2020.



- c) Deviations from the practice described under a) are, however, frequent enough. The practice referred to under b) seems to be more rigidly observed.

i. The King is angry: see, he bites *the lip*. RICH. III, IV, 2, 27.

Good is his luck if he can keep *the head* on his own shoulders. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. VI, 67.

She made *the eyes* twinkle with such slyness and beauty that they were perfectly irresistible. DICK., PICKW., Ch. LII, 478.

He shoots out *the tongue*. MAC., ADDISON, (755b).

So she low-toned, while with shut eyes I lay | Listening; then look'd.

Pale was *the perfect face*; | *The bosom* with long sighs labour'd; and meek | Seem'd *the full lips*, and mild *the luminous eyes*, | And *the voice* trembled and *the hand*. TEN., PRINC., VII, 208—212.

His Eminence (sc. the late Cardinal Rampolla) was blind in *the left eye*. GRAPH., No. 2300, 1213.

- ii. The dog tried to catch the boy by *his coat*. GÜNTHER, Leerboek, 19.

d) The definite article seems to be regularly used:

1) in descriptions of the habit of animals.

These animals have *the tail* tipped with hair. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2020.

The skylark is larger than the sparrow; *the breast* is brown, *the bill* is short. J. HASSELL, Familiar Objects.

These monkeys have *the tail* reduced to a mere rudiment. Ib.

The Irish hare differs from the common hare in having *the fur* composed of only one kind of hair. Ib.

2) in certain locutions, especially such as contain the following nouns:

**brain.** Mr. Balfour has the Irish *on the brain*, and we need not attach serious importance to what he says when he sees green. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5283, 1b.

**face.** Mr. Winkle pulled at the bridle of the tall horse till he was *black in the face*. DICK., PICKW., Ch. V, 41.

**mouth.** The truth is I'm a bit *down in the mouth*. G. MOORE, ESTH. WAT., Ch. XXX, 209.

**nose.** I know some of the best men of the best families in England who are *paying through the nose* in that way. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XXV, 277.

**shoulder.** Casaubon has devilish good reasons . . . for *turning the cold shoulder* on a young fellow whose bringing-up he paid for. G. ELIOT, MID., V, Ch XLVI, 341.

**tooth.** She was lean and yellow and *long in the tooth*. THACK., HENRY ESMOND, I, Ch. II, 14.

*Armed to the teeth*, but *entrenched up to their teeth*. MURRAY, S. V. *tooth*, 6.

All Europe kept on arming *to the teeth*. ENG. REV., No. 71, 319.

Compare: She had bidden them defiance *to their teeth*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXIII, 252.

Curious is the varied practice instanced in:

To have bees in *the head* or *the brains*, a bee in *one's bonnet*. MURRAY, S. V. *bee*, 5.

16. The dimness of the notion of possession, origin, etc., together with considerations of economy and, perhaps, rhythm often causes the possessive pronoun to be suppressed altogether.



As has already been pointed out in discussing the use and absence of the article (Ch. XXXI, 62 ff), there cannot always be certainty as to which modifier is suppressed, when a noun stands unmodified contrary to the sense conveyed. In the following list, accordingly, only such cases are included as hardly leave room for assuming the omission of another modifier. It will be observed that, as in the case of the article, the noun in question is mostly either the non-prepositional object, or part of a prepositional word-group.

**appearance.** i. The young couple has not yet *made appearance*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXI, 215*b*.

ii. Another of his father's brothers now *makes his appearance* as his patron. TRAILL, *Sterne*, Ch. II, 16.

Note. The construction without the pronoun seems to be exceptional.

**call.** The Percies have Northumberland *at call*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 13.

At length I saw a lady *within call*. TEN., *Dream of Fair Wom.*, 85.

Note. The suppression seems to be regular. MURRAY, s. v. *call*, 14.

**caste.** I thought of all the things by which a woman, past middle age, could earn, or add to a living, without materially *losing caste*. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 257.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *caste*, 3) also mentions *to renounce caste* and quotes an instance, dated 1796, in which the pronoun is used after *to lose*.

**colour.** "What is it, Dick?" asked Marjory, *changing colour*. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, II, Ch. X, 179.

James *turns colour*. RID. HAG., *Mr. Mees. Will*<sup>2</sup>, Ch. XXI, 235.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *colour*, *b*) also has *to lose*, and *to regain colour*.

**countenance.** At this point the King *changed countenance* with wrath. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. V, § 1, 229.

Note. MURRAY, s. v. *change*, 9, has only *to change countenance*, marked as obsolete, and s. v. *countenance*, 4, *b*, only *to change one's countenance*, the latter not supported by any illustrative quotation. He also mentions *to keep one's countenance*, in which, apparently, the pronoun never falls out. FLÜGEL, s. v. *countenance*, has *to change countenance* and *to keep (one's) countenance*, without any illustration.

**courage.** i. He *took courage*, and put away the abominable idols. Bible, *Chronicles*, XV, 8.

(They) *took courage* and approached hand in hand. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 33.

ii. He *plucked up his courage*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 184.

The King never *lost his courage*. THACK., *The Four Georges*, II, 35.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *courage*, 4, *d*) mentions *to take courage*, *to pluck up courage*, *to lose courage*, etc. The use of the pronoun after *to lose* and *to pluck up* seems to be exceptional.

**court.** i. Mr. Wolfe was for ever coming over from Westerham *to pay court* to the lady of his love. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 290.

I do believe he invited his brother-in-law to Richmond for no other purpose than *to pay court* to his son's nurse. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 179.

The Prince of Tarentum *pays court* to him. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. III, 197.

ii. Casaubon... had probably fallen in love with Estienne's MSS collections, before he began *to pay his court* to the daughter. M. PATTISON, *Casaubon*, 29.<sup>1</sup>)

Note. Both MURRAY (s. v. *court*, 17) and FLÜGEL give *to pay (make) one's court* without any hint as to which is the usual construction. That without the pronoun appears, however, to be more common than that with. Compare also: Was it not there . . . that the Queen *held her court*? SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVI, 158.

**ease.** i. We all felt more *at ease* when a safe footing was secured. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, I, § 27, 202.

ii. Finding himself now *at his ease* and near shelter, his curiosity began to awake. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 22.

He felt quite *at his ease*. FRANF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXIII, 205.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**faith.** i. Men who are in the habit of *breaking faith* should be distrusted. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 79.1)

ii. Sir Francis was about *to break his faith* towards her. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 260.

Note. MURRAY has *to engage, pledge, plight (one's) faith; to perjure one's faith; to keep, break, violate (one's) faith*, without giving a hint as to which is the ordinary practice.

**foot.** I know the Prince . . . | Yearns *to set foot* upon your island shore. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, 5, (590a).

When she first *set foot* on our soil. Times.

He rode as fast as the pony could *put foot* to the ground in the direction of the river. RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *change*, 9) also has *to change foot* = *to change feet* = *to change step*.

**guard.** i. The Opposition will make an effort to catch them *off guard*. *Westm Gaz.*, No. 6276, 3a.

ii. Isaac Levi caught both faces *off their guard*. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 36.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *guard*, 5) mentions only the construction with the pronoun, and this is, no doubt, the ordinary one. Of *on (or upon) one's guard* he gives *on guard* as a variant, but also this latter seems to be rare.

**hand(s).** \* She in beauty, education, blood | *Holds hand* with any princess of the world. King John, II, 493.

\*\* He will *join hand* with them. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVIII, 177.

It seems not improbable that the net result of the crisis may be that Serbia and Montenegro *will join hands*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 509a.

Col. Plumer *has joined hands* with the garrison. Times. (Compare: I hope I shall live *to join your hands*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. LII, 584).

\*\*\* *Shake hands* upon it! Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. XVII, 281.

**heart.** \* At sight of his enemy he *lost heart*.

\*\* *Take heart, take heart*, we'll find them! DICK., *Barn. Rudge*.

I *took heart* at all this. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 66.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *heart*, 11) has *to pluck up, gather, keep (up), lose heart*; also (s. v. *heart*, 49) *to take heart* = *to take heart of grace*. Observe the difference between *to lose heart* = *to lose courage* and *to lose one's heart (to)* = *to fall in love (with)*. The article is of course, used in such a sentence as: My father never *plucked up the heart* to insist on having more (sc. money). STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. I, 18.

Also in numerous combinations with a preposition: *at heart, by heart, out of heart, to heart*, etc., *heart* regularly stands without the possessive pronoun. For illustration see MURRAY, s. v. *heart*, 31—44.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *break*, 15, c.

**heel(s).** Thou art fray'd i' the knees, and out at elbow, and bald o' the back, and bursten at the toes, and *down at heels*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, 1, (580). I am almost *out at heels*. *Merry Wives*, I, 3, 34.

Note. In both these combinations the suppression seems to be regular.

**house.** My wife is paralysed, I'm sorry to say, . . . her sister *keeps house* and does the honours. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. VIII, 111. My daughter *keeps house* for me. *Punch*, No. 3705, 25b.

Note. With *to keep house* compare *to keep the* (or *one's*) house (= to be confined to one's house, as in the case of illness).

**leave.** i. \* The idea that he must *take leave* of his hearty host and pretty mistress. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 142).

She *took leave* of us that Sunday night in a very loving way. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. I, 9.

\*\* And Satan bowing low . . . | *Took leave*. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, III, 739.

ii. I *take my leave* at once. *Macb.*, IV, 2, 29.

Bold *took his leave*. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XV, 196.

Note. The pronoun seems to be regularly absent when *of* + (pro)noun follows. Otherwise there appears to be a distinct tendency to retain it.

**life.** Newcastle offered him . . . the Duchy of Lancaster *for life*. MAC., *Es.*, Pitt. This has been her gift and heritage *through life*. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I.

Note. The suppression seems to be regular when the reference is to time. Compare: I only remain debtor to you *for my life* (sc. which you have saved). SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. V, 60.

**mind.** \* Bearing this *in mind*, one can agree with our Berlin Correspondent that it was a moderate and restrained appeal. *Times*, No. 1823, 983b.

\*\* Mr. Wyndham had *in mind* a certain well-known advertisement. *Punch*.

Time *out of mind*. Out of sight, *out of mind*.

He cannot on the moment recall it *to mind*. *Not. & Quer.*

Note. Thus also the pronoun is absent in *to keep in mind*; *to bring (to call) to mind*; *presence (greatness, etc.) of mind*.

**mouth.** He fell down in the market-place, and foamed *at mouth*, and was speechless. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 251.

Ajax hath lost a friend, | And foams *at mouth*. *Troil. and Cres.*, V, 5, 36.

Note. Of the practice illustrated by the quotations from SHAKESPEARE no further instances have been found. It seems to be rare. Quite common, however, is the expression *by word of mouth*, in which *by word of* may be understood as a prepositional expression.

**patience.** i. Chuffey boggled over his plate so long, that Mr. Jonas. *losing patience*, took it from at last. *Dick.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XI, 93b.

ii. I begin to *lose my patience*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, IV, (210).

Though we lost our fortune, yet we should not *lose our patience*. *Ib.*, III, (200). Nora *lost her patience*. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, I, Ch. I, 3.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**place.** Mr. Irwine bowed to her with a benignant deference, which would have been equally *in place*, if she had been the most dignified lady of his acquaintance. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

The open piano with its sheet of music held *in place* by a lady's . . . fan. ANNA K. GREENE, *Leavenworth Case*, II, 8.1)

It may not be *out of place* to examine it here. *Law Times*, XCII, 1581.1)

Note. The suppression seems to be very common.

**residence.** i. He *took up residence* at the Abbey in September 1808. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, I, Ch. VIII, 128.

ii. He *took up his residence* in Paris. *Times*, 1808, 662d.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *residence*, 1. a) has only *to take up one's residence*, and the absence of the pronoun seems to be only exceptional.

**shoulders.** Not even the most fiery Nationalist in politics openly *rubbed shoulders* and clasped hands with the assassins. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 453a.

It was a new sensation to many people *to rub shoulders* and make acquaintance with men distinguished in every profession of life. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5137, 9c. *Statesmen, poets, actors . . . rub shoulders* with each other. *Ib.*

Note. The suppression appears to be regular.

**time.** i. \* It is not *before time*. *Rev. of Rev.*

\*\* He is never *behind time*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXV, 234.

You are two and a half minutes *behind time*. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler*.

ii. We were half an hour *behind our time*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XIX, 246.

Note. After *behind* the possessive pronoun seems to be suppressed or retained indifferently.

Compare also: They will have difficulty in comprehending how one and the same man should have been far *before his age* and far behind it. MAC., *Byron*, (371a). China was a thousand years *before her time*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 74, 192.

**while.** i. You might know I should hardly think it was *worth while* to unpin a bed, and go to all that trouble now. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XII, 421.

It was not *worth while* to undeceive others. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIX, 953.

I am proud that you should have thought it *worth while* to tell me. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. I, 2.

ii. The man did not think it *worth his while* to turn round in recognition of Goldsmith's entrance. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXIII, 206.

It is *worth your while* to invest a few shillings to prove the accuracy of this statement. *Times*, No. 1979, Advert.

Note. In the sense of *capable of bringing profit*, as in the fifth of the above quotations, the pronoun is never dispensed with; for the rest the construction without the pronoun appears, perhaps, somewhat more frequently than that with. In generalizing and indefinite statements the pronoun is, naturally, always absent. Thus in: It must have been *worth while* having a mere ordinary plague now and then in London to get rid of both the lawyers and the Parliament. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XVI, 210.

Compare also: I wonder whether it would be *worth any gentleman's while* to buy that observation for the papers. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 13.

**wing.** \* Impatient of a yoke which calumny made intolerable, a swarm of them (sc. the Boers), many thousands strong, *took wing* in 1835 and 1836. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 45.

\*\* Sometimes my approach was too close, when the birds would *take to wing*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6171, 13a.

Note. The suppression of the pronoun is attended by a substitution of the singular for the plural. With *to take (to) wing* compare *to take to one's heels*.

**word.** i. Keep *word*, Lysander. *Mids.*, I, 1, 222.

ii. I *kept my word*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 194.

I know you will *keep your word*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 417.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. Observe also *to pass one's word*, *to pledge one's word*, *to break one's word*, always with the possessive pronoun.



I had better not *pass my word*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 273.

I'll *pledge my word* on it. *Ib.*, Ch. XXI, 275.

The king *would gladly have broken his word*. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, II, 79.<sup>1)</sup>

**youth.** i. They had trained themselves, *from youth*, to manage the barb, and bear. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, II, Ch. IV, 103.

ii. Those whose calling, *from their youth up*, has been to flatter and sue [etc.]. *MAC.*, *Mad. d'Arblay*, (716*b*).

*From her youth up* she was subject to fits of hysteria. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVIII, 363*a*.

**Note.** So far as the evidence goes, the pronoun is regularly used in the more usual expression *from his* (etc.) *youth up*.

17. *a*) Such words as *brother*, *sister*, *friend*, etc. sometimes lose the possessive pronoun, when coupled with a personal or emphatic pronoun, or with a noun.

Had we lived at home, and twenty years sooner, *brother and I* often and often agreed that our heads would have been in danger. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 226.

As Mr. Pickwick contemplated a stay of at least two months in Bath, he deemed it advisable to take private lodgings for *himself and friends* for that period. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVI, 331.

(He) said when we came up with him, "*Mr. Pip and friend*." *Id.*, *Great Expect.*, 258 (Nelson's 6 d. Ed.).

- b*) The same nouns, whether or no followed by a proper name, may also reject the possessive pronoun, when the relationship they express concerns the speaker or writer. Compare Ch. XXXI, 16, *a*, and 53, *a*.

i. "There's *father* coming," cried the young Cratchits. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, III, 65.

ii. For me or *neighbour Costar* here to take such an oath, 'twould be a downright perjury. *FARQUHAR*, *Recruit. Offic.*, II, 3, (278).

Suppose she had married Harry, and then *cousin George* had made his appearance. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LVII, 587.

18. As in the case of genitives (Ch. XXIV, 38—39) the relation of possession or origin that may be expressed by possessive pronouns, is often emphasized by the adjective *own*, which also in this position is used:

conjointly: She remembered trying to box *her own ears* for having cheated herself in a game of croquet. *LEWIS CARROLL*, *Alice's Advent. in Wonderland*, Ch. I, 17.

absolutely: Condemn no one till his case has been *your own*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5295, 2*c*.

substantively: A man can do what he likes with *his own*. *Cent. Dict.*

For a discussion of the substantive *own* see Ch. XXIX, 26.

19. Obs. I. The conjoint *own* is often made to do duty for the emphatic pronoun, i. e. for *myself*, *yourself*, etc. Compare *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2118. This *own* is quite usual before the object, but has an incongruous effect after a preposition.

<sup>1)</sup> *MURRAY*, s. v. *break*, 15, *c*.



- i. You... could give *your own message* so much better. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32b. You've got to get *your own living* now. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. III, 27. Silas in his solitude had to provide *his own breakfast, dinner and supper*. Id., *Marnier*, I, Ch. II, 12. Ah me! you must bear *your own burthen*, fashion *your own faith*, think *your own thoughts*, and pray *your own prayer*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.
- ii. She's at *her own disposal*, she has fifteen hundred pound in her pocket. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, II, 1, (267). ABBOT. Herman! I command thee, | Knock, and apprise the Count of my approach. — HERM. We dare not. — ABBOT. Then it seems I must be herald | Of *my own purpose*. BYRON, *Manfred*, III, 3, (298a).
- II. The absolute or substantive *own*, preceded by a conjoint possessive pronoun, often represents the emphatic absolute or substantive pronoun preceded by the definite article in Dutch.
- i. He confesses how much better and loftier her nature is than *his own*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 296 (= Dutch *de zijne*.)
- ii. \* God will defend *his own*, though it be forsaken and despised of men. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. X, 92. (= Dutch *het zijne*.)
- \*\* Within a few days Francesca might be *his own*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 10. (= Dutch *de zijne*.)
- The Lord is mindful of *his own*. (= Dutch *de zijnen*.)
- III. As *own* can hardly be used without a preceding genitive or possessive pronoun (see, however, Ch. XXIV, 39), a construction with the possessive pronoun followed by absolute *own* is put into requisition, when no such word precedes the noun modified. This construction is met with:
- α) after the indefinite article: He gave it to *a friend of his own*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2117.
- Note the idiom in: i. Melancholy has *a happiness of its own*. LYTTON, *Kenelm Chil.*<sup>1)</sup> (= a happiness that is peculiar to it.)
- ii. He has *a spirit of his own*. Ib.<sup>1)</sup> (= is obstinate.)
- You know Emily has *a will of her own*. TROL., *Prime Min.*<sup>1)</sup> (= is obstinate.)
- iii. He has *an opinion of his own*. Ib.<sup>1)</sup> (= is rather opinionated.)
- β) after *such*: And then he has *such faults of his own*. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>
- γ) after some indefinite pronouns: The next day Mr. Harry was off on *some expedition of his own*. THACK., *Virg.*<sup>1)</sup>
- He has *no house of his own*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2117.
- δ) after a numeral: I have got *a hundred and twenty pounds a year of my own*. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 12.
- ε) when no modifier precedes: I have *secrets of my own*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 332.
- Theo composes, and sings *songs of her own*. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVII, 278. "You have *children of your own*," said Mr. Dombey. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. II, 15. He has *money of his own*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2118.
- Note the idiom in: The Major had, for *reasons of his own*, neglected up to the present moment his humble rural petitioner. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 13. (= private reasons.)

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

The chaplain had *reasons of his own* for desiring to know how far the affair between Harry and my Lady Maria had gone. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 318.

- IV. Sometimes the word-group of + possessive pronoun + *own* is divided from the noun it belongs to.

Some vagrant is found lurking in the neighbourhood, who has Mr. Brown's watch in his possession, and *more money* about him than he is likely to possess of *his own*. ANNA BUCKLAND, *Our Nat. Inst.*, 52.

- V. Some further idiomatic applications of the conjoint *own* deserve attention:

- a) *for my* (or *our*) *own part* = *for* + (strong-stressed) *my* (or *our*) *part for myself* (or *ourselves*) = *as for me* (or *us*).

*For my own part* I confess that I do not think I have ever read . . . a more decided specimen of the to-be-damned doggrel, than was then exhibited by Lord Byron himself. LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 15b.

*For my own part* I can say without hesitation that it would be absolutely impossible for me to remember a piece of music I heard played through. *Not. and Quer.*

Compare: i. *For my part*, I don't desire to say that the shoemaker's daughter has the coat of the tall man with the red whiskers. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

We greatly hope, *for our part*, . . . there will be a disposition among parties to settle this question. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5283, 1c.

- ii. *For ourselves*, we believe that the question of the recidivist, or habitual criminal, is still the greatest unsolved problem. *Spectator* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5371, 16c).

- iii. *As for me*, I was a little puzzled. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. III, 18.

*Own* has a similar shade of meaning in:

If I may be pardoned the personal allusion, I may say that in *my own case*, if I am keenly desirous of remembering facts, figures or ideas of any kind, I find it a great help to talk the matter over with a friend or friends. *Not. and Quer.*

*My own impression* is that I heard it first somewhat before 1870. *Id.*

*My own idea*, on first catching sight of the object, was that it was a Roman relic of some sort. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XIX, 237.

- β) *to keep one's (own counsel)* = *to keep one's own secret*, *to be reticent about one's intentions* (or *opinions*). MURRAY. Also, occasionally, *to maintain one's own counsel*.

- i. As to the cause of so sad a business, he determined *to keep his own counsel*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XIV, 118.

The Cabinet would, in any case, be bound *to keep its own counsel*. *Times*. If he could *keep his own counsel*, he on his side had a right to do so. MARION CRAWFORD, *Adam Johnstone's Son*, Ch. V.

- ii. They *have maintained their own counsel*! *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVIII, 346a.

Compare: i. The players cannot *keep counsel*. *Hamlet*, III, 2, 152. (Now, according to MURRAY, archaic and dialectal.)

How hard it is for women *to keep counsel*! *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 4, 8.

- ii. I'm really puzzled what to think or say, she *kept her counsel* in so close a way. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, LXVIII. (An unusual construction.)

- iii. Mrs. Lightfoot . . . *had kept his counsel*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 411. (Now, according to MURRAY, archaic or obsolete.)

I will *keep thy counsel*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XVI, 163.

- γ) *in* (or *with*) *his* (her or *their*) *own way* (*manner* or *fashion*, etc.) *in the way* (*manner* or *fashion*, etc.) *peculiar to him* (her or *them*).

He laid down a plan of restoring his falling fortune. For this purpose, *in his own whimsical manner*, he travelled through Europe on foot. GOLD-SMITH, Vicar, Ch. III, (252).

What follies will not youth perpetrate *with its own admirable gravity and simplicity*? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

Kuropatkin *in his own half-hearted fashion*, nourished an intention of assuming the offensive. Westm. Gaz., No. 5249, 14a.

A similar notion is expressed in: His virtues are all *his own*; all plain, home-bred and unaffected. WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Bk., XXIX, 319.

She (sc. Elizabeth) listened, she weighed, she used or put by the counsels of each in turn, but her policy as a whole was *her own*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

Compare also: Trilby, as was her wont in such matters, assuming an authority that did not rightly *belong to her*, and of course getting her own way in the end. DU MAURIER, Trilby, 209.

δ) *to be one's own man* = *to be master of oneself*.

So, Constance Neville may marry whom she pleases, and Tony Lumbkin *is his own man* again. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, V.

ε) *of one's own accord*, also less frequently *of one's own motion* = Dutch *uit eigen beweging*, *van zelf*.

i. She walked *of her own accord* to the presence of the great man. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXVII, 297.

It (sc. the gun) will go off *of its own accord*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 165.

ii. Ultimately Poi's own tribesmen, though unconverted pagans, *of their own motion*, put him to death. Westm. Gaz., No. 5642, 11b.

ς) *from one's own choice* = Dutch *uit eigen verkiezing*.

Many of his activities have *from his own choice* passed unrecorded. Times, No. 1980, 974c.

η) *to be fond of (to have a liking for) one's own way* — Dutch *graag zijn eigen zin doen*.

She *is fond of her own way*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 212.

The darling *has a decided liking for her own way*. Ib., Ch. X, 163.

20. Another adjective to emphasize the relation of possession or origin is *proper*. Though common enough in Older English, it is now used only archaically, except for some special, particularly scientific, connections, such as *proper motion*, *proper light*. MURRAY, s. v. *proper*, I, 1.

Some of the secondary notions conveyed by *own*, may also be expressed by *proper*.

The application of *proper* does not seem to be narrowed by certain syntactical connections, as is the case with *own*.

*Proper* is sometimes found preceded by a redundant *own*: the latter seems indispensable in such constructions as *an existence of one's own proper* (= *an existence of one's own*).

i. \* The bloody book of law | You shall yourself read in the bitter letter | After your own sense, yea, though *your proper son* | Stood in your action. Othello, I, 3, 69.

Then might I find, ere yet the morn | Breaks hither over Indian seas, | That Shadow waiting with the keys, | To shroud me *from my proper scorn*. TEN., In Memoriam, XXVI, iv.

He sat there at his ease — as though the cottage were *his proper* dwelling. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XLV, 177b.

\*\* He that hath . . . | Thrown out his angle for *my proper* life. Hamlet, V, 2, 66. (= *even for my life*.)

\*\*\* Every animal has *his proper instincts* and inclinations, appetites and habits. WEBST., s. v. *proper*. (= *peculiar*.)

- ii. \* Astronomers have observed what they call a *proper motion* in several of the fixed stars. HERSCHEL, in Phil. Trans., LXXIII, 267.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Let her have your voices. | Vouch with me, heaven, I therefore beg it not, | To please the palate of my appetite, | Nor to comply with heat — the young affects | In me defunct — and *proper satisfaction*, | But to be free and bounteous to her mind. Othello, I, 3, 265.

- iii. \* O Julius Cæsar, thou art mighty yet! | Thy spirit walks abroad, and turns our swords | In *our own proper* entrails. Jul. Cæs., V, 3, 96.  
In the simplicity of his good faith, he himself vowed a pilgrimage to the Three Kings of Cologne in *his own proper person*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XVII, 232.

If you try the effect, by way of experiment, in *your own proper person*, you will experience the full force of this observation. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 118. Our Dominions . . . [claim] to have reached the adult stage in the process of social growth and therefore to determine *their own proper affairs*. BALFOUR (Daily Mail, No. 4457, 5e).

\*\* They had no sartorial existence *of their own proper*. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. IX, 46b.

#### ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

### 21. The absolute possessive pronouns are used:

- a) with reference to a preceding or subsequent noun;
- b) without reference to a preceding or subsequent noun; that is substantively;
- c) predicatively.

### 22. The absolute possessive pronoun is used with distinct reference to a preceding noun in such sentences as:

"Whose fault is it that I have not done so too?" said Bucklaw — "whose but the devil's and *yours*?" SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. V, 65.

What a face he had, now that it was almost on a level with *mine*! CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 33.

It isn't every dog that can kill a hedgehog. *Mine* can. SWEET, Old Chapel. Note. a) Peculiar to English is the frequent use of the absolute possessive pronouns as subjects of nominal predicates. Ch. II, 1.

*Theirs* was that substantial affection which arises when the two who are thrown together begin first by knowing the rougher sides of each other's character. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LVI, 468.

Compare: *Mrs. Gummidge's* was rather a fretful disposition. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 19b.

β) The constructions illustrated by the following quotations are only exceptional:

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- i. That is our task and our privilege, *ours* of the new generation. DICKENSON, *A Modern Symposium*, 83.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. One day I would picture our meeting, Antony's and *mine*; the next I would push him away from my thoughts. EM, GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, III, Ch. V, 315.

23. As conjoint possessive pronouns hardly bear adnominal adjuncts before them (see, however, 11, *b*; 12, Obs. III and IV), a construction with *of* + absolute possessive pronoun is mostly substituted, when such an adjunct precedes: *a (this, which, some, one) friend (kind friend) of mine*; *these (such, which, some, several, two) friends (kind friends) of mine*. The same construction is also frequent, when the head-word is not preceded by any modifier beyond an adjective: *friends (kind friends) of mine*.

The absolute possessive pronoun here stands in the place of the corresponding personal pronoun, but the change of pronouns has imparted a partitive meaning to the construction. This partitive meaning, however, is always more or less vague, and sometimes absent altogether. Thus in *two friends of mine*, which does not necessarily imply that the number of friends exceeds that of two, the partitive notion is less pure than in *two of my friends*, which distinctly extends the number of friends beyond two. Compare 12, Obs. V, and also ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 237 and § 91.

Any partitive notion is excluded in such colloquial and disparaging expressions as *that husband of mine* (Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 279), and also in such a combination as:

Is Mr. Thornbull *so near a neighbour of yours*? GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XX, (367).

The construction closely corresponds to the pleonastic genitive (Ch. XXIV, 33—34) and almost all the observations made about this idiom, 'mutatis mutandis', also apply here. There is, however, no alternative expression with the objective of the personal pronoun. Thus there is no such construction as *a friend of him* corresponding to *a friend of Mr. Gladstone*.

The relation expressed by the pronoun is mostly one of possession, origin or agency, or one understood as such (Ch. XXIV, 9, Obs. I; 33). These distinctions are not taken into account in the following quotations, which are arranged according to the modifier preceding the head-word.

- a) The preceding modifier is the indefinite article.

Now we are friends indeed; for I shall have *a secret of yours* as a pledge for mine. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, III, 1, (386).

I drew *a tooth of his*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 349.

*A rich relation of mine* was induced to purchase a number of shares. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 153.

- b) The preceding modifier is a demonstrative pronoun.

And every one that heareth *these sayings of mine*, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand. Bible, *Matth.*, VII, 26.

*That pride of hers* has drawn my love from her. LAMB, *Tales*, *Two Gent.*, 103.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.283.



i was not fit for *this wicked, selfish old world of ours*. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 20. I suppose *yonder property of yours* is a fine one by this time. Ib., Ch. XV, 152. It comes from living so much alone, and listening to the bug-a-boo stories of *that jenny of hers*. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XI, 201.

What are you doing with *that everlasting sketch-book of yours*? RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, Ch. II, 17.

She had all sorts of fancies about *this husband of hers*. MARIE CORELLI, The Murder of Delicia, Ch. I, 1.

Do you think you will like *this old England of ours*? EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XIV, 126.

Note. a) The quotations show that the demonstrative in this connection is often disparaging. Ch. XXXVI, 2, Note.

β) The following quotation may be understood as an elliptical sentence, the elements suppressed being a demonstrative + noun:

This is a *long tale of yours*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. VII, 111. (= This is a *long tale*, *this tale of yours*.)

- c) The preceding modifier is an interrogative pronoun.

What *grief of mine* has it not felt, that gentlest and most compassionate of hearts? THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXV, 798.

What a *noble horse* that is of *yours*! CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., 218. (Butterworth & Co.)

- d) The preceding modifier is an indefinite pronoun.

Let *no clumsy prying or dull meddling of ours* try to disturb it (sc. a secret pleasure-place) in our children. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 40.

The murderer was safe from *any impeachment of his*. MRS. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXIII, 240.

There yet existed *certain latent prejudices of theirs*, which would require some tact to overcome. HARDY, Tess, Ch. XXVI, 214.

The exaltation ... came now without *any determination of hers*. Ib., III, Ch. XIX, 158.

I believe *some picture of mine* had made a great success at the time. OSCAR WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. I, 15. (= *some picture painted by me*.)

I'm deaf, Francis — shall be always deaf to *any word of yours*. HAL. SUTCL. Pam the Fiddler, Ch. II, 26.

It may be said that such matters are *no concern of ours*. Nineteenth Cent., No. 397, 536.

I am afraid that *no word of mine* can avail much to help Dr. Axham. Truth, No. 1801, 24a.

Thus also after certain absolute indefinite pronouns.

If he chooses to do so silly a thing, the affair is *none of mine*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXVI, 370.

A present! who are you who talk of presents? See if I do not bring a nobler one than *all of yours* together! CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, I, Ch. II, 41.

- e) None of the above modifiers precedes.

My soul is too much charged | With *blood of thine* already. Macb., V, 8, 7.

My Lord, I have *remembrances of yours* | That I have longed long to re-deliver. Hamlet, III, 1, 93.

It was a debt you expected me to pay by sacrificing all my chances of happiness to satisfy *feelings of yours*, which I can never share. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. VIII, 393.

Note. a) Normally the noun modified denotes a notion without limits, but occasionally we find this construction extended to nouns expressing a conception within limits, especially names of kinship. In the majority of cases there is every plausibility in assuming the suppression of the

indefinite article, but such an assumption is sometimes open to objection and, if the head-word is a vocative, even impossible.

- i. And all too well sad Guendolen | Hath taught the faithlessness of men, | That *child of hers* should pity, when | Their meed they undergo. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, II, xxi.

But now there never will be *wife of mine*. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 931.

Never more shall *horse of thine* enter stable here. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XI, 62.

It is not an occupation to which I would care to doom *daughter or sister of mine*. Rev. of Rev., CCI, 257a.

- ii. \* *Wife o' his'n* will never work away fra' home. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. X, 113.

*Wife of mine* shall need no watching save in sickness and sorrow. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, XVIII, Ch. VI, 496.

\*\* Your orders, *knight of mine*? HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VIII, 115.

We're not children, *wife o' mine*. Id., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. III, 71.

- β) In *Dobbin of ours* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V) *ours* seems to stand for *our regiment*.

24. Obs. I. The construction is freely used to express an objective relation when the head-word is an agent-noun.

But surely you are *a worshipper of hers*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, XXVII, 232.

- II. After the definite article the construction seems to have some degree of currency only when it is distinctly determinative in function. Compare Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. I.

*The productions of mine* which you commend, hold a very low place in my esteem. SHELLEY, *Letter to Godwin*.

Hetty was particularly clever at making up the butter; it was *the one performance of hers* that her aunt allowed to pass without severe criticism. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. VI, 71.

My curse on the *grandson of mine* who shall try to seize that fatal crown. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XVIII, 78b.

"The Maiden Queen", *the only play of his* which has been revived in recent time. GOSSE, *Eighteenth Cent. Lit.*, 42.

You judge me, of course, by *the stories of mine* that you have read. JEROME, *Second Thoughts*, 67.

(Those) are *the only things of mine* — my own — that are here. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. VII, 161.

The following quotation illustrates an unusual application:

In *the matter of mine* I perceive clearly that craft, and not bravery will prevail to save me. FRANKFORT MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XIX, 167.

Note. Comparing the combinations instanced in the above quotations with those mentioned in 6: *the pangs of it*, *the fall of it*, and those mentioned in 8: *the conceit of him*, *the eye of him*, *the heart of him*, etc., we find that in the former there is a distinctly partitive notion, which is absent in the latter.

- III. The construction is rare after the determinative *that* or *those* when used absolutely. Compare Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. II.

And to decline | Upon a wretch, whose natural gifts were poor | To *those of mine*. HAML., I, 5, 51. (*those of mine* = *mine*.)

I wanted to know whether *those of mine* (sc. my letters) contained any topics worthy of notice. HOGG, *Life of Shelley*, II, 145.

- IV. The noun modified is sometimes divided from the modifying word-group by other elements of the sentences. Compare Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. III. You remember *the letter* I found *of hers* evidently intended for Charles. SHERIDAN, *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (431).

I . . . wondered *what business* it was *of his*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14a.

I don't know *what business* it is *of yours*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXV, 261.

- V. The personal pronoun takes the place of the absolute possessive pronoun:

- a) if the head-word denotes a portion of what is expressed by the pronoun in the modifying word-group.

He is a sailor *every inch of him*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 246.

(Compare: I know *every inch about her*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (194).)

*Every pulse of her* thrilled in yearning for — the wider life. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 2c.

Similarly in: Owing to some shifting of the passers-by she saw *the whole of him*. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 36.

This is invariably the case when this pronoun denotes (a) thing(s). (12, Obs. II.)

I was desirous to hear Johnson's opinion of it (sc. Dr. Dodd's poem, entitled "Thoughts in Prison": to my surprise he told me he had not read *a line of it*. BOSWELL, *Johnson*, 375b.

I was talking to my old friend General Hobbler about some lines I dashed off for him in the year 1806, when we were at the Cape, and Gad, he remembered *every line of them* still. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 96.

The history of the chorus in Greek tragedy is a history of gradual decay. None the less, the chorus remained *a formal feature of it*. HUDSON, *Introduction to the Study of Lit.*, 309.

My objections to *certain parts of it* (sc. the Budget) . . . were exactly in proportion to my belief in *other parts of it*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4b.

Note also the regular use of this construction after *side* when preceded by an adnominal modifier, and after such words as *back*, *front*, etc. mentioned in 8.

Here; you sit *on the right side of me!* DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XI, 92a.

Blanche had thus the two young men, one on *each side of her*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. I, 8.

They came riding in, the great marquis at the head of them all, with Robert le Frison *on one side of him*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. VIII, 48b.

Then Old Hubert, trembling like a leaf, and looking *on every side of him* as if fearing a vagrant bullet, came cautiously to the place. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 91.

Compare: i. With the "Black Prince" *at his side* he (sc. Edward III) won the Battle of Crecy. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3947, 797a.

ii. An order was dispatched for a close-fitting . . . hat with a feather *on the side of it*. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou Gavest me*, Ch. X, 42.

- β) if the head-word is such a noun as *portrait*, *statue*, *effigy*, etc. Compare Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. VI.

He is never more present in my work than when *no image of him* is there. OSCAR WILDE, *The Pict. of Dot. Gray*, Ch. I, 20.

- VI. The partitive notion that usually attaches to the analytical construction with the absolute possessive pronoun, sometimes causes other construc-

tions to be preferred when any such notion is foreign to the speaker's intentions. Compare Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. VIII.

- a) The most common of these substitutes is a construction with the preposition *with*, which is especially used in connection with the following nouns or adjectives:

**(ac)custom(ed).** It is *an accustomed action with her*. Macb., V, 1, 32.

**favourite.** This was *a favourite subject with her*. CLUTTON BROCK, Shelley, 67.

Compare: My father had once been *a favourite of hers*. DICK., Cop., Ch. I. Nick was *an immense favourite of hers*. ETHEL M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle, II, Ch. XIII, 100.

**habit.** In truth this business is merely *a habit with me*. DICK., Domb., Ch. IV, 29.

**idea.** This is *no new idea with me*. STEAD, Rev. of Rev.

**merit.** To yield readily to the persuasion of a friend is *no merit with you*. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. X.

**(mono)mania.** He thought it was becoming a sort of *monomania with him*. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. VI, 376.

Moral blather has always been *a mania with us*. Eng. Rev., No. 54, 315.

**passion.** I insist upon the purity of our native language. It is *with me a perfect passion*. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's.

**pet.** He soon became very fond of his engine; it became *a sort of pet with him*. Cassell's Mod. School Read., George Steph.

**principle.** It is *a principle with me*, if you have an idea, carry it out. DICK., Great Expect., 208 (Nelson's 6 d. Ed.).

- i) Other approximate equivalents of the construction with *of* — absolute possessive pronoun are those illustrated by the following quotations:

i. On *that vice in him* will my revenge find notable cause to work. Twelfth Night, II, 3, 165.

ii. That eye of hers, that voice stirred *every antipathy I had*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 38.

He came in, too, to look at *a famous geranium we had*. DICK., Cop., Ch. II. Dobbin was spelling over *a favourite copy of the Arabian Nights which he had*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 42.

I want myself to go to *another place I have*. Id., Virg., Ch. XX, 203.

iii. I gave Peggy to understand that she was as jolly as I could wish, and that she desired her compliments — which was *a polite fiction on my part*. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 16a.

25. The absolute *its* is practically non-existent. The following is a solitary instance:

Each following day | Became the next day's master, till the last | Made former wonders *its*. Henry VIII, I, 1, 18.

26. The substantive use of the absolute forms of the possessive pronouns is confined to some special applications. They are used:

- a) to denote a circle of relations or friends, mostly in connection with a personal pronoun of the same person and number. JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.232.



- i. And, laying down my pen, I make my bow, | Leaving Don Juan and Haidée to plead | For *them and theirs* with all who deign to read. BYRON, Don Juan, II, CCXVI.

This lord did *him and his* two grievous wrongs. THACK., Henry EsM., I, Ch. VI, 58.

I have sinned against *thee and thine*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. XII, 68.

Now write — write as you'll remember what Wakem's done to your father, and you'll make *him and his* feel it, if ever the day comes. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 241.

You have more cause than I thought to hate *me and mine*. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. IX, 85.

He said blasphemously that *I and mine* had cheated your ladyship . . . out of many a fat manor ere now. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 9b.

- ii. Your servants ever | Have *theirs*, themselves and what is theirs, in compt. Mac b., I, 6, 26.

Some of *mine* . . . would look down upon her. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXVIII, 938.

These are times in which good Englishmen must not sleep — and sleep I will not, trust me; nor *mine* either. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. XX, 90a.

Do no harm to *mine*, and *mine* shall do no harm to you. Ib., Ch. IX, 51a.

- b) in subscriptions at the end of letters, mostly either followed or preceded by an adverb denoting the formal relation in which the writer wishes to represent himself to the addressee: *yours N. N.*; *yours truly N. N.*; *faithfully yours* or *yours faithfully N. N.* From the circumstances of the case this application is confined to the second person.

Note. In familiar, would-be humorous, language *yours truly* is sometimes used instead of *me* or *I*.

Give the young one a glass, R., and score it up to *yours truly*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 42.

- c) in epistolary style, especially in business, as an equivalent of *your letter* or *your favour* = Dutch uw geeerde. Variations of this practice, *mine*, *ours*, etc. have not come to hand and are not registered by MURRAY.

I have just received *yours* of this morning. Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 33. *Yours* of the 18th has just reached me here this morning. Times.

- d) in some syntactical connection with certain indefinite pronouns denoting things, especially *all*, *anything*, *none*, *nothing*, *nought*, *something*; and the interrogative *what*.

- i. Nor stand so much on your gentility, | Which is an aery, and mere borrowed thing, | From dead men's dust, and bones; and *none of yours*, | Except you make, or hold it. BEN JONSON, Every Man in his Humour, I, 1, 96.

"Well," said Lord Byron, "how do you like it (sc. The Deformed Transformed)?" — "Least," replied he (sc. Shelley), "of *anything*. I ever saw of *yours*. Note I to 'The Deformed Transformed'.

Alas! the love of women! it is known | To be a lovely and a fearful thing; For *all of theirs* upon that die is thrown. BYRON, Don Juan, II, CXCIX.

He used all men, great and small, that came near him, as his instruments alike, and took *something of theirs*, either some quality or some property.

THACK., Henry EsM., II, Ch. IX, 227.



And *nought of mine* the pirate folk did bear | Across the sea. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par., The Son of Cræsus*, XII.  
*Everything of hers* is marked with that. EL. GLYN, *Ref. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. II, 89.

- ii. Let me think *what* I have *of hers* that you would like. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, VI, Ch. IV, 502.

- e) in the phrase *mine and thine* as in: He does not seem to know the distinction between *mine and thine*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 203.

Note. Instead of this we sometimes find the Latin *tuum* and *meum* or *meum* and *tuum*.

He really didn't seem to know the difference betwixt *tuum* and *meum*. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I.

It is certainly part of a Liberal policy to make clear such an elementary distinction between *meum* and *tuum*, when territory is in question. Morning Leader.

Compare: (His) consciousness of strength made him . . . negligent of *the laws of property*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 27.

27. In Dutch the applications of substantive possessive pronouns are more numerous. Here follow some quotations giving the approximate equivalents of some of these:

- a) I'm glad they're come back to reclaim *their due*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops to Conquer*, V, (232). (= *het hunne*.)  
 b) On the general scheme and tendencies of Prof. Saintsbury's History of Criticism we said *our say* at some length. Acad. and Lit. (= *het onze*.)  
 c) The meeting was held *at his lodgings*. (= *ten zijnent*.)

28. Absolute possessive pronouns may be used predicatively either as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct. The relations which they are capable of expressing, though sometimes difficult to define, may be grouped as follows. The pronoun denotes the person(s) that is (are) represented:

- a) as owning or possessing what is expressed by the subject.

- i. She said her papa and mamma had promised that Gildrig should be *hers*. SWIFT, *Gul.*, II, Ch. II, (143a).

The jewels, my dear Con, shall be *yours* incontinently. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, IV, (208).

If virtue can give happiness, I need not wish it you, for it is *yours* already. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XLII, 454.

If the whole of North America were *yours*, we could but give you our best. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 226.

"Now, the saints be blest," quoth the chief, "she (sc. the boat) is *ours*." LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 14.

With better luck and more experience the prize would have been *his*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5295, 2b.

A charming house on the high ground of Coventry with a nice garden is already *ours*. Times, No. 1809, 707d.

- ii. Come, Casca, you and I will yet ere day | See Brutus at his house: three parts of him | Is *ours* already, and the man entire | Upon the next encounter yields him *ours*. JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 155.

If by direct or collateral hand | They find us touch'd, we will our kingdom give, | Our crown, our life, and all that we call *ours*, | To you in satisfaction. HAMLET, IV, 5, 207.

Prosper well in this, | And thou shalt live as freely as thy lord, | To call his fortunes *thine*. *Twelfth Night*, I, 4, 39.

The instant they (sc. the jewels) are put into my possession, you shall find me ready to make them and myself *yours*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (187).

Note. The relation of ownership or possession appears more or less modified in:

The vapours linger round the Heights, | They melt, and soon must vanish; One hour is *theirs*, nor more is *mine*. WORDSWORTH, *Yarrow visited*, XI, 3. The alley and the gutter were *mine*, as they will be my death-bed. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XL, 371.

He had tried the 'mock heroic' with brilliant success, but the true heroic was not *his*. ALFRED H. MILES, *William Tennant*, (287).

Major, the honor is *moine*; I'm delighted to see ye. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 111. (The speaker is a vulgar Irishman.)

The risk is *theirs* not *ours*. *Truth*, No. 1801, 24b.

b) as originating what is expressed by the subject.

Those cantos (sc. the two first cantos of *Don Juan*) were printed without Lord Byron's name; but all the world knew that they were *his*. Footnote to Pref. of *Byron's Vision of Judgment*, Lond. Ed.

I write in the *Law Reviews*: look here, these articles are *mine*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 333.

c) as having a rightful claim to what is expressed by the subject.

What is now given to you . . . is *yours* by every right. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XLII, 454.

The wages were fairly *his*. CROKER, *Three Advices*.

A great deal of the triumph of the moment was *his*. *Times*, No. 1820, 924c.

d) as assigned, obliged, privileged or entitled to perform the action expressed by the following infinitive.

Through worlds unnumbered though the God be known, | 'Tis *ours* to trace him only in our own. POPE, *Es. on Man*, I, 22.

Ye friends to truth, ye statesmen who survey | The rich men's joys increase, the poor's decay — | 'Tis *yours* to judge, how wide the limits stand | Between a splendid and a happy land. GOLDSMITH, *Des. Vil.*, 267.

"List, Allan Bane! From mainland cast | I hear my father's signal blast. "Be *ours*," she cried, "the skiff to guide, | And waft him from the mountain-side." SCOTT, *Lady*, II, xxi, 19.

Through many a clime 'tis *mine* to go, | With mady a retrospection curst; And all my solace is to know, | Whate'er betides, I've known the worst. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, to Inez.

"Dear boy," said he, "may it rather be *mine* to provide for your wishes!" LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 12.

It was *his* (sc. for Thackeray), in short, not so much to argue as to observe, to feel, to laugh with no unkindness but with infinite comprehension, to enjoy, to suffer. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. III, 154.

Gillian was a treasure for any man to win, but the treasure was *hers* to bestow. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. V, 42.

We did France no service when we assumed to allow her a free hand in Morocco, which was not *ours* to give. *Truth*, No. 1801, 6d.

29. Obs. I. Almost the only application of the predicative possessive pronoun, current in ordinary English is that in which it denotes the person(s) represented as owning or originating the thing

indicated by the subject, and this even with restriction to the present or the past: *This purse is (or was) mine. This essay is (or was) mine.* Even its use to express a relation of possession, as opposed to ownership, is chiefly literary, ordinary spoken English preferring other idioms. Sometimes the construction gives rise to obscurity. Thus in:

"That I live to hear," he said, "is yours." TEN., *Lanc. & E.L.*, 923. (= *owing to your care.*)

II. The following quotations exhibit some constructions which in ordinary English are substituted for the unusual idiom:

i. But feeling now | Your grief is private, it *belongs to me* | To lighten or divide it. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, II, 1, (361a).

ii. It is *your place* to be humble. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 8.

iii. It was *her nature* to see that he required charming, and it was *her province* to charm him. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 336.

iv. It was not *for her* to cast stones at those who... inclined to the same belief. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIV, 260.

A life of self-indulgence is *for us*, | A life of self-denial is *for them*. MRS. NORTON, *Child of the Islands*.

It is *for me* to receive your words, not to judge them. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VI, 77.

Unless we desire war, it is not *for us* to demand from Germany any reduction in her Naval programme or even to expect it. *Eng. Rev.*, 1921, July, 601.

Note the varied constructions in: And up the valley came again the music on the wind. | But you were sleeping; and I said, "It's not *for them*: it's *mine*". TEN., *The May Queen*, *Concl.*, X.

III. When the copula *to be* connects an absolute possessive pronoun with a noun, doubts may arise as to which should be considered as the subject. Although the subject is mostly placed in front, there may be reasons why this arrangement is departed from, so that the word-order is not always a reliable guide. Taking into consideration that it is the predicate which expresses the principal part of the communication (Ch. XXVI, 4 Note), it seems safe to say that a noun which is accompanied by an important modifier is mostly the predicate. This, for example, is the case in all the quotations given in Ch. II, 1, and also in the following, in some of which the subject has back, in some front position:

i. Thoughts of great deeds were *mine*. SHELLEY, *Revolt, Dedic.*, III.

Their own fault, perhaps, — ignorance, wild habits, — . . . ; such fault may have been *mine* too. LYTTON, *What will he do with it?* I, Ch. VIII, 26.

ii. *Hers* is a zeal which age cannot quell. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. IX, 87.

Do not let us forget that *ours* is a common misery. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 24.

*His* was a case which called for special severity. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. XI, 125.

But in the following quotations the noun, although accompanied by an important adjunct appears as the subject, as is evident from the sense:

i. Gay hope is *theirs* by fancy fed, | Less pleasing when possest. GRAY, *Ode Eton Col.*, 41. (= gay hope is their portion, has been granted to them.) *Theirs* buxom health of rosy hue, | Wild wit, invention ever-new, | And lively cheer of vigour born. *Ib.*, 45. (same interpretation.)

- Be *mine* the philosopher's life in the quiet woodland ways. TEN., Maud, IV, 8, 1. (same interpretation.)
- ii. *His* are the verses signed "N. E. P.", addressed "To a tear." THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 35. (= the verses signed "N. E. P." were written by him.)
- iii. *Ours* are the villages on the heights. RUDY. KIPLING, Wee Willie Winkie, (204). (= the villages on the heights are our property.)

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### PRONOMINAL COMPOUNDS OF SELF.

#### FORM.

1. The pronominal compounds of *self* are *myself*, *thysself*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *ourselves (ourself)*, *yourselves (yourself)*, *themselves*, *oneself* (or *one's self*).

Note. a) For a discussion of the distinction between *ourselves* and *ourself* see Ch. XXXV, 8.

*Yourselves* is used in speaking to more persons than one, *yourself* in speaking to one person.

*One's self*, sometimes hyphenated, is an earlier form than the more usual *oneself*: the former is formed on the analogy of *myself*, the latter on that of *himself*. Both *one's self* and *oneself* are comparatively recent, no instances being found in SHAKESPEARE nor, apparently, in the Authorized Version, although MURRAY quotes an instance dated 1548, and SPIES (Studien zur Geschichte des englischen Pronomens) gives four instances from SIDNEY (three from Arcadia). Instead of *oneself* (or *one's self*) earlier English mostly had *himself*, sometimes *themselves*. Compare Ch. XXVI, 32; Ch. XL, 160, Obs. III, and see MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 71; FRANZ, E. S., XVII and SHAK. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, §§ 292 and 310.

- i. To make one's sweetheart miserable is well enough, and quite right, but to be made miserable *one's self* is a little too much. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XX, 78b.

You are something to interest *one's-self* about. MISS YONGE, Heir of Red., I, Ch. VI, 102.

It is nobler to receive sword and belt from a man of God than from a man of blood like *one's self*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 89b.

- ii. To visit the Fatherless and Widows in their affliction, and to keep *himself* unspotted from the World. BUNYAN, Pilgr. Progr.<sup>1)</sup>
- iii. A most incomparable delight it is so to melancholize, and build castles in the air, to go smiling to *themselves*. BURTON, Anatomy of Melancholy.<sup>1)</sup>
- β) Vulgar English sometimes has *meself* for *myself*. Compare Ch. XXXIII, 2, Obs. IV.

Three of our men's been called out with the Reserve this mornin'... I'd like to be goin' *meself*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6606, 21a.

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.



2. Obs. I. The word *self*, which figures as the second part of these compounds was originally used as an adjective in two functions:

- a) as an emphatic pronoun, like the Modern English *myself*, etc., or the Dutch *zelf*.

Abraham þa hēt Isāac beran þone wudu to þære stōwe, and hē *self* bær his sweord and fyr. *ÆLFRIC*, Gen., XXII.<sup>1</sup>) (= A. then ordered I. to carry the wood to the place, and he himself carried his sword and the fire.)

- b) in the meaning of *same*: *þy sylfan dæge* (= on the same day). *SWEET*, N. E. Gr., § 1104.

- II. The rise of the compounds as we know them now, both as reflective and emphatic pronouns, belongs to a stage of the language with which this grammar does not profess to deal. A detailed account is given by *KELLNER* in *Hist. Outlines of Eng. Synt.*, § 290 ff. See also *SWEET*, N. E. Gr., § 1104 ff; *MORRIS*, *Eng. Accid.*, Ch. XII, § 162 ff; *JESPERSEN*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.431 and especially *MURRAY*, s. v. *self*. Here the process can only be traced in the merest outline.

In Old English it was a common practice to use a personal pronoun in the function of a reflective pronoun, as a kind of redundant or emotional object. See Ch. III, 6 ff, and compare also *SWEET*, N. E. Gr., § 1106.

Hē ondrēd *him* þone mann. *SWEET*, N. E. Gr., § 1106. (= He feared *for himself* that man, in which *for himself* is redundant.)

This practice, although now less common than it used to be, has by no means become extinct, not, at least, in the literary language. We find it especially in connection with certain verbs expressing either doubt, fear or conviction. See also 23 and compare Ch. III, 6, a, 2; *ONIONS*, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 102; *JESPERSEN*, *Progress*, § 188; *FRANZ*, E. S., XLV, I, 89.

**to doubt.** I *doubt me* very much if the modesty of the unknown and unheralded is responsible for the strict anonymity of the book. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 483, 167a.

**to dread.** If I go to the lists, I *dread me*, we shall be shamed. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIX, 308.

I *dread me*, if I draw it (sc. the lance-head), you will die. *TEN.*, *Lanc. and El.*, 511.

**to fear.** Ay, a flash, | I *fear me*, that will strike my blossom down. *Ib.*, 965. (Instances are frequent.)

**to hear.** As I passed under the great painted window, . . . I *hears me* the lattice open. *SCOTT*, *Kenilworth*, Ch. II, 25.

**to warrant.** Your aunt Pedigree will keep you secure, I'll *warrant me*. *GOLDSMITH*, *She Stoops*, IV, (217). (Instances are frequent.)

Such a personal pronoun was frequently used together with the emphatic *self*.

<sup>1</sup>) *SWEET*, *Ang. Sax. Prim.*

God forescēawap, min sunu. *him self* þā offrunge. ÆLFRIC, Gen., XXII, 8. 1) (= God will provide, my son, *himself* the offering.)

Hē (sc. the phoenix) biþ *him self* gehwæper, sunu and fæder. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1106.

In Middle English *me* and *the* as used in these combinations, came to be pronounced in a way which caused them to be mistaken for possessive pronouns, with the result that *self* was understood as a noun. The change of personal into possessive pronoun in the 1st and 2nd persons singular soon affected the 1st and 2nd persons plural and was responsible for *self* being inflected for the plural: *our selves*, *your selves*, originally written separately.

In the third person the personal pronouns were retained and have been preserved to the present day, at least in the language of the educated. The forms *herself* and *itself*, of course, bear a twofold interpretation. In the language of the illiterate the possessive pronouns have been substituted for the personal throughout.

I've been a turnin' this bis'ness over in my mind, and he may make *his-self* easy, Sammy. DICK., Pickw.

If they've stuck in the chimbley, roasting their feet makes 'em struggle to hextricate *themselves*. Id., Ol. Twist, Ch. III, 37.

From what has been said above it follows that the use of *self* as an emphatic formative is older than its application to form reflective pronouns. In Old English, indeed, the personal pronouns were used to express reflectiveness, and such a sentence as *Hē ofsticode hine* represented the Present English *He stabbed himself* as well as *He stabbed him* (23). The adjective *self* might be added for emphasis to the pronoun in the accusative case, but this could be done to *hine* in both meanings: in fact *Hē ofsticode hine selfne* was originally as ambiguous as *Hē ofsticode hine*. As early as the beginning of the Middle English period, however, such a word-group with *selfne* became restricted in meaning and assumed the reflective sense which its descendant has in Modern English. See SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1105), from whom the above explanation has in substance been borrowed.

III. When *self* in these connections had once come to be considered as a substantival word, it was capable of further development in this direction.

a) Throughout all the periods of Modern English we may find it preceded by other adnominal modifiers; i.e.:

1) by a genitive. This practice is still rather uncommon, and seems to have always been so. In colloquial English it is hardly tolerated.

*Tarquin's self* he met. CORIOLANUS, II, 2, 98.

*Wisdom's self* | Oft seeks to sweet retired solitude. MILTON, Com., 375.  
There on the daïs sat another king, | Wearing his robes, his crown, his signet-ring, | *King Robert's self* in features, form and height. LONGFELLOW, King Robert of Sicily, 65.

1) SWEET, Ang. Sax. Prim., 79.

*Elizabeth's self* consecrated her (sc. the ship in which Drake had sailed round the world) solemnly. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XVI, 126a. (Thus frequently throughout this novel.)

He's the Captain over again. He's *the Captain's self* to the life. FRANCES H. BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 163.

Sure enough it was *Carver's self*, who stood bareheaded, and half undressed, in the doorway. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 222.

Her cotton gown was *simplicity's self*. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. IV.

2) by a possessive pronoun in conjunction with an adjective.

Combinations with *own*, now chiefly heard in the language of the illiterate, and with the Early Modern English *proper*, are mostly equivalent to the emphatic reflective pronoun, less frequently to the personal pronoun — the emphatic pronoun, or to the bare emphatic pronoun (3). Sometimes *own* occurs together with other adjectives, in which case *self* may be equivalent to *nature* or *disposition*.

*Very*, also reduplicated, occasionally appears as an emphatic variant of *own*.

*self* after *own* or *proper*. i. This above all: to *thine own self* be true.

Hamlet, I, 3, 78. (= *thyself*.)

I have made you mad: | And even with such-like valour men hang and drown  
*Their proper selves*. Temp., III, 3, 60.

It won't be me that you'll have to blame, but *your own self*, and no other.  
Dick., *Barnaby Rudge*.

(He is) the worst deceiver of all, a deceiver of *his own self*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6171, 4c.

ii. She has a notion that a widow should not marry within seven years of her husband's death — that *her own self* shouldn't, I mean — because his body was not found. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LII, III, 426. (= *she herself*.)

iii. When Mummy sharpened it (sc. the pencil), it wrote thick, and when Daddy did it, it broke, and when I did it *my own self*, it grew shorter and shorter. Westm. Gaz., No. 6065, 6c. (= *myself*.)

iv. Le Geyt looked brighter; some of *his own careless, happy-go-lucky self* came back again at intervals. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. III, 92.

*self* after *very*. I thought, Angel, that you loved me — me, *my very self*. HARDY, *Tess*, V, Ch. XXXV, 297.

It is myself, dearest, *my very, very self*. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, IV, Ch. XV, 282a (Heinemann).

*self* after other adjectives. *His former self* turned down the lamps as he gave utterance to the wish. Dick., *Christm. Carol*, II, 48.

What care bride and groom | Save for *their dear selves*? BROWNING, *Pippa passes*, I, 51.

He returned to his own ship as Sir Amyas Leigh Knight, to the joy and glory of every soul on board, except *his moody self*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXI, 235a.

She you love is not *my real self*. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXIII, 278.

I have a wish to know *my other self*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M.P.*, Ch. I, 13.

Goldsmith in these days was more regular than ever in his attendance at the Club, where he hoped to escape from *his miserable self*. R. ASHE KING, *O. I. Goldsmith*, Ch. XXII, 256.

- 3) by a possessive pronoun in conjunction with a numeral. Instances are rare.

Without any indelicate display of regard, or any peculiarity of manner, where *their two selves* only were concerned, he was soliciting the good opinion of her friends. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIV, 259.

We consider that our respectability lies solely in *our two selves*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XX, 199.

It was a party, including *our two selves*, of fourteen. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, N, 232.

- 4) by a demonstrative pronoun in connection with an adjective. Only the following instance has been found:

*That better self* shall live till human Time | Shall fold its eyelids. G. ELIOT, "O may I join the Choir Invisible", 30.

- 5) by an indefinite pronoun. Instances are very infrequent.

I have *no self* but thee. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, III, 4, 3063.

You cannot call up any wilder vision than a city in which men ask themselves if they have *any selves*. CHESTERTON, *Orthodoxy*, III, 63.1)

- b) All periods of Modern English also furnish instances of *self* used as a noun without any preceding modifier. In this function *self* mostly has the value of the emphatic reflective pronoun. Thus in all the following quotations except the last, where it is equivalent to the personal pronoun + the emphatic pronoun. (3.) Note especially the commercial *self and partner(s)* and its variants.

- i. My lord does me and you the honour to send his compliments per *self*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXVIII, 149b.

Mrs. Paradyne was rather absorbed in *self*. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 84.

In his victory over *self*, the question of her protection predominated, KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M.P.*, Ch. XXXIV, 362.

It (sc. war) will do no good to any of us, unless we meet it with control and discipline and forgetfulness of *self*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6606, 7b.

We must admire . . . the will to concentrate and educate *self*. *Athen.*, No. 4542, 493c.

So only shall we . . . do honour to more than *self*, to the memory and the lives and deaths of those who have stood . . . in the forefront of the battle. *Ib.*

- ii. \*"Well, sir," said Dodson: for *self and partner*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 326.

I am, dear sirs, for *self and partners*, yours most faithfully, Samuel Jackson. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 70.

This I know, that there are late crops of wild oats, as well as early harvests of them; and (from observation of *self and neighbour*) I have an idea that the 'avena fatua' grows up to the very last days of the year. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXVII, 280.

\*\* I only called to say that if there was anything we could do, in present circumstances, *mother or self*, or Wickfield and Heep, we should be really glad. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXV, 257b.

- c) The use of *self* in the genitive case seems to be rare. The following is the only instance to hand:

He is likewise a rival of mine — that is of my other *self's*. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1, (227).

1) MURRAY, *S. v. Self*, C, 3.

d) The substantive *self*, with the value of the emphatic reflective pronoun, appears as a component member of numerous and varied compounds, for which see the dictionary.

i. Her guardian, however, he is, *self-constituted* as I believe. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 20.

ii. I think we ought to be *self-supporting*. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 37.

iii. *Self-reverence, self-knowledge, self-control*. | These three alone lead life to sovereign power. TEN., *Ænone*, XII.

Compare the varied practice in: Success will depend on finding . . . men who understand what is due from a *self-respecting* Opposition to a Government which *respects itself*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6517, 2b.

IV. The ordinary meaning of *self* sometimes branches off into that of *self-seeking* or *selfishness*.

A new plot; a new plot. Oh *self, self, self!* At every turn nothing but *self!* DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 22b.

Oh may I . . . live | In pulses stirred to generosity, | In deeds of daring rectitude, in scorn | For miserable aims that end with *self*. G. ELIOT, "O May I join the Choir Invisible", 6.

V. In this connection it may also be pointed out that the indubitable noun *person* is sometimes found in the position of *self*.

Norna had raised *her person* slowly from the stooping posture in which she sat. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. X, 114.

Her Ladyship . . . appointed her preserver, as she called him, apothecary to *her person* and family. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

Compare also: With this Dolf comforted *his heart*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 125).

WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 197) mentions *way, ground* and *own* in such collocations as *to fight (find, lose, thread, edge, feel, wind) one's way; to hold (maintain) one's ground; to hold one's own*, as words that may take the place of *self*.

In SHAKESPEARE *my body* etc. sometimes seems to be equivalent to *myself*, etc. Compare Ch. XLIII, 30, Obs. II; also EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 192.

I commit *my body* to your mercies. HENRY IV, B, V, 5, 130.

I hold him but a fool that will endanger | *His body* for a girl that loves him not. Two GENTL., V, 4, 134.

We and our wives and children all will fight | And have *our bodies* slaughter'd by thy foes. HENRY VI, A, III, 1, 101.

VI. The use of *self* as an adjective is now quite obsolete. Instances, however, occur in Early Modern English. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 318. In the majority of cases it is equivalent to *same*; sometimes it has the value of *own*.

i. I am made of that *self* metal as my sister. King LEAR, I, 1, 60.

But if you please | To shoot another arrow that *self* way | Which you did shoot the first, I do not doubt, | As I will watch the aim, or to find both | Or bring your latter hazard back again | And thankfully rest debtor for the first. Merch. of Ven., I, 1, 148.

ii. This fiend-like queen, | Who, as 'tis thought, by *self* and violent hands Took off her life. Macb., V, 8, 70.

The Present-English representative of the obsolete adjective *self* is *self-same*, which, however, was already in use in Early Modern English. The adjective *self-same* is now met with only in the higher literary style.



In my school-days, when I had lost one shaft, | I shot his fellow of the *self-same* flight | The *self-same* way with more advised watch. Merchant of Ven., I, 1, 141—2.

And Jesus said unto the centurion, Go thy way; and as thou hast believed, so be it done unto thee. And his servant was healed in the *self-same* hour. Bible, Matth., VIII, 13.

Pray, Alice, pray, my darling wife, | That we may die the *self-same* day. TEN., Miller's Daughter, III.

It is quite startling . . . to see how true to his date a personal friend of mine, a willow-wren, returns vernally to the *self-same* branch of the *self-same* birch-tree. HOR. HUTCHINSON, On Migration (Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 4c).

This *self-same* bureau . . . was the first to organise the famous Imperial Home Re-Union Association, whose purpose is to re-unite the emigrant with his family. Graph., No. 2307, Sup., 12c.

#### USE.

### 3. In Present English the pronominal compounds of *self* are used:

a) as reflective pronouns, i. e. to denote that the person(s) or thing(s) referred to in any enlargement of the predicate is (are) the same as that (those) indicated by the subject. For this function the Dutch has *zich* in the third person. This enlargement of the predicate may be:

1) the direct object: He got into bed, covered *himself* up warm and fell asleep. DICK., Pickw., I, Ch. XIV, 121.

2) the indirect object: Silas asked *himself* if he had been asleep. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. I, 8.

3) a prepositional object: They reserved to *themselves* the right to reconsider the whole problem. Times, 1899, 600a.

The Prussian military party has taken an enormous responsibility *upon itself*. Times, No. 1975, 875d.

4) an adverbial adjunct: He took the girl's hands and drew her *to himself*. WALT. BESANT, By Celia's Arbour, I, Ch. I, 15.

Note a) The reflective pronoun in an undeveloped clause refers to the subject-indicating word of that clause.

I must tell my man to consider *himself* in custody. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXIV, 215. (= that he should consider *himself* in custody.) John told him to give *himself* plenty of time. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 207. (= that he should give *himself* plenty of time.)

β) The personal pronoun takes the place of the reflective pronoun, if the person or thing mentioned in the undeveloped clause is identical with that indicated by the subject of the head-sentence.

i. He begged me to defend *him*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 208. (= that I should defend *him*.)

ii. Love, Thomas . . . (as you may get read to *you*) has been a masquerader ever since the days of Jupiter. SHER., Rivals, I, 1. (Compare 17.) Once more Clark had a short note handed to *him* by the servant. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

Have any of you fellows ever had that happen to *you*? MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XV, 265.

In the following quotation the personal pronoun seems to stand improperly for the reflective:

A footman in a blue livery had brought her ten guineas to buy *her* baby-clothes. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, I, 2, (260). (=that she might buy *herself* baby-clothes.)

γ) There is no occasion for the use of the reflective pronoun in the following quotations, unless it is intended as emphatic (ε), which seems doubtful:

We understand Portia to hesitate for a word which shall describe *herself* appropriately. Note to *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 159, in *Clar. Press*. Neither would he consent . . . to any steps which might tend to proving *himself* innocent. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 240.

δ) In the literary language the contracted construction *his or herself* is sometimes used instead of the clumsy *himself or herself*. Instances seem to be rare.

Some person who had pledged *his or herself* to do what can be done. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCV, 225.

- b) as emphatic or distinctive pronouns, i. e. to denote emphatically or distinctly that (a) certain person(s) or thing(s) and no (none) other(s) is (are) meant. For this function the Dutch has *zelf*.

She was rewarded by a letter from none other than Gloriana *herself*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 11b.

- c) as emphatic (or distinctive) reflective pronouns, i. e. in the two preceding functions combined and, accordingly, corresponding to the Dutch *zichzelf* in the third person. The elements of the sentence which may be represented by them in this function are the same as in the case of the purely reflective pronouns.

i. We should try to see *ourselves* as others see us. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 207.

ii. I allowed him better food than I allowed *myself*.

iii. He thinks too much *of himself*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 127.

iv. What did you do *with yourself* yesterday? MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 285.

Note α) Emphatic reflective pronoun occur also as nominal part of the predicate, in the pregnant meaning of *my* (etc.) *usual self*. Compare with this the use of the unattended emphatic pronoun commented on in 28, α, 2.

I shall not be *myself* till we are reconciled. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3.

Scarcely had the meeting broken up, when he was *himself* again. MAC., *Lord Clive*, (518a).

Hullo, Jack! What's the matter? You don't look *yourself*. PUNCH, No. 3712, 187.

Compare: She was, indeed, so much surprised by what had taken place that she was not altogether *her usual self*. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VIII, 139.

β) The following is an, apparently, rare instance of a compound of *self* used as a noun.

This house, these servants, and this same *myself*, | Are yours, my lord. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 172.

## COMPOUNDS OF SELF AS REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

4. As reflective pronouns the compounds of *self* occur chiefly as the direct object. As almost any transitive verb may have a reflective pronoun for its direct object, ample illustration is hardly necessary.
- to better.** It was a desire *to better herself* that led her to the dreadful step. PUNCH, No. 3721, 346b.
- to breathe.** The porter underwent some hard panting before he could speak; having *breathed himself* by coming incautiously out of his chair. DICK., CHIMES<sup>3</sup>, I, 40.
- Note. This application of *to breathe oneself* seems to be rare, the only sense registered by MURRAY (s.v. *breathe*, 13) being 'to give oneself breathing space'.
- delight.** He can *delight himself* in trying to give her pleasure. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 55.
- to embroil.** They have no wish *to embroil themselves* with the Government. Daily News.
- to establish.** He must have begun to know by this time that he had no chance of *establishing himself* as a ruler anywhere. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.* Ch. XIII, 188.
- force.** I certainly sha'n't *force myself* upon her any more. MRS. WARD, *Sir G. Tres.*, II, Ch. XV, 125a.
- to master.** In a few moments she had *mastered herself*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 20.
- to restrain.** My mother, after vainly trying to *restrain herself*, began to cry. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 3b.
- to right.** There was . . . a temporary disturbance, but that has *righted itself*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6465, 2b.
- to subject.** But you need not *subject yourself* to these enticing dangers, unless you desire them. TROL., *Good Words* (STOF., *Eng. Leesb.*, I, 40).
5. Many verbs are more or less modified in signification when they are connected with a reflective pronoun. In this case the latter has lost some of its independent meaning, being often so indissolubly united with the verb as to express with it but one idea.
- to abandon.** *To abandon oneself* to grief. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*  
They *abandoned themselves* to the air as a swimmer to the wave. HARDY, *Tess.* IV, Ch. XXVII, 226.
- to address.** i. Then did Christian *address himself* to go back. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (156). (= *to prepare oneself*.)  
The hangman *addressed himself* to his office. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 195.
- ii. To that philosophy we now *address ourselves*. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, Ch. I, 27. (*to turn one's attention*.)  
The Government should *address itself* to diminishing the death-rate. Graph.
- iii. My father *addressed himself* to the gentleman point-blank. HARDY, *Tess.* IV, Ch. XXVII, 226.  
Compare: He *had addressed* her quite like an old friend. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XI, 111.
- to avail.** He had hardly *availed himself* of the permission. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 263.

- to avow.** I could extend my free forgiveness to the offender, if he will only come forward and *avow himself*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 44.
- to bear.** She *bears herself* with dignity. PUNCH, 1889, 157*b*.
- to carry.** The Abbot-elect *carried himself* with more dignity than formerly. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 367.
- to collect.** Hilda Wade seemed to *collect herself*. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. IV, 111.
- to commit.** In later days Miss Sharp would never have *committed herself* so far as to advance opinions the untruth of which would have been so easily detected. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 17.
- to conduct.** You must *conduct yourselves* with the strictest decorum. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.
- to declare.** i. He could not *declare himself*; the time had gone by. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 81. (= *to avow oneself*.)  
 ii. I can't say that I was any more fortunate in my second (sc. attachment), which flame was illumined by the bright eyes of a cousin three years older than myself. who boxed my ears on my *declaring myself* in the back-parlour on a wet Sunday. MISS BRADDON, Captain Thomas. (= *to declare one's love*.)
- to deliver (up).** i. He never *delivered himself up* to the vanities of dress. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XVIII, 153*b*.  
 ii. It would require a painter to depict my aunt's face as she *delivered herself* of this very unexpected sentiment. Id., Cop., Ch. XIV.
- to enjoy.** Did you *enjoy yourself* at the party? MURRAY.
- to forget.** i. The church clock struck, when suddenly the student said that he must leave — he had been *forgetting himself* — he had to join his companions. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. II, 17. (= *to omit care of oneself*.)  
 ii. Mr. Annarly, you *forget yourself*. UNA L. SILBERRAD, Success, Ch. I, 18. (= *to lose remembrance of one's station*. See also under *to remember*.)
- to gather together.** When it comes to honest work, when we come to *gather ourselves together* for an effort, we may sound the trumpet as loud and long as we please. STEVENSON, Walking Tours (PEACOCK, Sel. Eng. Es., 530).
- to give up.** Why don't you *give yourself up* to music? Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 39.
- to help.** It will be found that when it comes to a pinch, we shall always give in, not because we wish to, but because we cannot *help ourselves*. STEAD, Rev. of Rev.
- to improve.** He never read to *improve himself* out of school hours. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 25. (= *to add to one's mental acquisitions*.)
- to interest.** You are something to *interest one's-self* about. Miss YONGE, Heir of Redcl., I, Ch. VI, 102.
- to lay out.** I like a woman who *lays herself out* a little more to please us. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. X, 63. (= *to exert oneself*.)  
 The horse was *laying himself out* at the rate of nearly four miles an hour. JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. IV, 36.
- to lose.** i. He *lost himself* in the study of the faces flocking by. RUDY. KIFLING, The Light that failed, Ch. IV, 54. (= *to become absorbed*.)  
 ii. A house in which you incontinently *lost yourself*. MISS BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 3. (= *to lose one's way*.)  
 iii. His mother's sister made a bad match — a Pole, I think — *lost herself* — at any rate was disowned by her family. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. VIII, 48. (= *to demean oneself*.)

**to pull together.** No sooner have you passed the straps over your shoulder than the lees of sleep are cleared from you, you *pull yourself together* with a shake and fall at once into your stride. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours* (PEACOCK, Sel. Eng. Es., 537).

**to recollect.** i. "O delightful!" said Rebecca, clapping her hands; but she *recollected herself*, and paused, like a modest creature, as she was. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. IV, 28. (= *to recover one's self-possession*.)

He seemed *to recollect himself* presently, and smothered the storm in a brutal curse. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch II, 10a.

ii. "Michael Lambourne!" said the stranger, as if endeavouring *to recollect himself* — "what, no relation to Michael Lambourne, the gallant cavalier, who behaved so bravely at the siege of Venlo!" SCOTT, *Kenilworth*, Ch. I, 13. (= *to recall oneself to something temporarily forgotten*.)

In the midst of an anxious . . . discussion . . . all of a sudden the lawyer *recollected himself*. Id., *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 30.

Did you never express a desire that your grandson should be dismissed my house? *Recollect yourself*, my Christian friend. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. LII, 407a.

Note. According to MURRAY (s.v. *recollect*, v1, 6) the first application is now rare. Also the second is unusual, but is not infrequent in SCOTT.

**to remember.** Those would have been fitting words for the expression of her ladyship's ideas; but she *remembered herself*, and did not use them. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XV, 146. (= *to bethink oneself, to change one's mind*.)

Note. This reflective use of *to remember* is now rare. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *remember*, I, 5, a. In the following quotation the verb is used in its ordinary meaning, but also this application is unusual.

"You have not forgotten yourself, I hope?" — "No, sir, no . . . I have *remembered myself* . . . I could wish you had remembered me a little sooner." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 48b.

**to report.** As soon as the captain *had reported himself* [etc.]. PUNCH, 1889, 73.

**to take (off).** i. *Take yourself* to your room! SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2. (220).

ii. He had a most pressing appointment and *took himself off* accordingly. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 241.

6. Some verbs are never, or hardly ever, found without the reflective pronoun in Present English. Also these may be said to form a kind of unit with the reflective pronoun. The following may be mentioned here:

**to absent.** You have *absented yourself*, I do not doubt, upon some act of kindness to me. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. LII, 405b.

**to bemean.** During the whole course of that miserable intrigue, Cecil so *bemeaned himself* as to avoid, first, the displeasure of Northumberland, and afterwards the displeasure of Mary. MAC., *Burl.*, (222a). (= *to demean oneself*.)

**to bestir.** What is wanted is that the Americans shall *bestir themselves* to establish in every part of the Republic a system of judicial administration worthy of a free and great nation. GRAPH., 1891, 310b.

**to betake.** i. Twice or thrice a week Miss Briggs used *to betake herself* to a bathing-machine. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 267. (= *to wend one's way, to go*.)

On receiving my diploma I *betook myself* to Landsdowne Road. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 344.

ii. *To betake oneself* to one's heels. MURRAY. (= *to have recourse*. Mostly replaced by *to take to one's heels*.)

iii. After the regiment's departure she *betook herself* to this volume for meditation. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXX, 317. (= *to turn one's attention*.)



There was, however, another kind of composition in which his talents and acquirements qualified him to succeed; and to that he judiciously *betook himself*. MAC., Com. Dram., (572a).

If he saw a clergyman staring at the soldiers, he admonished the reverend gentleman to *betake himself* to study and prayer. ID., Fred., (660a).

**to bethink.** i. Rip *bethought himself* a moment. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk, V. (= *to think earnestly*.)

ii. But I *bethought myself* that I was in a boat. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 17b. (= *to reflect, to consider*.)

The situation was critical, for we were two women and three girls, when I *bethought myself* that we were unknown. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiog., 75.

iii. In an access of hunger for his good opinion she *bethought herself* of what she had latterly endeavoured to forget. HARDY, Tess, III, Ch. XIX, 163. (= *to become mindful*.)

iv. A Fellow has *bethought himself* of joining Profit and Pleasure together. STEELE, Spect., No. 264. (*to think, to form the intention*.)

Note. *To bethink* being a literary word, we often find the personal pronoun doing duty for the reflective. (23).

**to busy.** *To busy oneself* with books. WEBST., Dict.

The King *busied himself* in the erection of numerous castles. GREEN, Short Hist.

**to comport.** He *comported himself* as stoutly as I could have desired. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXVII, 288.

Arthur Pendennis at first *comported himself* with modesty. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 262.

**to compose.** It was long before he could *compose himself* to sleep. WASH. IRV., Dolf. Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 122).

The girls *composed themselves* to listen. WALT. BESANT, All Sorts and Cond. of Men, Ch. XXXI, 218.

Note. Occasionally with another object than the reflective pronoun: The porter underwent some hard panting before he could speak; having breathed himself by coming incautiously out of his chair, without first taking time to think about it and *compose his mind*. DICK., Chimes<sup>2</sup>, I, 40. (Compare 2, Obs. V.)

**to demean.** i. He *demeaned himself* there as a brave honest gentleman. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXVIII, 938.

ii. Have you the assurance to pretend that when a lady *demeans herself* to throw aside the rules of decency in order to honour you with the highest favour in her power, your virtue should resist her inclination? FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VIII, 18.

Don't *demean yourself*! W. BESANT, All Sorts and Cond. of Men, Ch. XXXV, 238.

Note a) In the second application occasionally with another object than the reflective pronoun.

A narrow life in Budmouth might have completely *demeaned her*. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. VII, 81.

β) It may also be observed that the second application, although rare before 1700, is now the ordinary one. MURRAY, s. v. *demean*<sup>2</sup>.

**to deport.** I am impatient to know how the little hussy *deports herself*. SHER., Riv., III, 3, (249).

**to intoxicate.** The driver went and *intoxicated himself* at the Yellow Lion. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 53.

Note. Occasionally with another object than the reflective pronoun: His fortune did not enable him to *intoxicate large assemblies* daily. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 315.

to **perjure**. A witness *perjures himself* when he swears to what he knows to be false. WEBST., Dict.

He turned very red again as he spoke, he felt he *was perjuring himself* horribly. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVI, 275.

Compare: A subject *forswears himself* when he breaks his oath of allegiance. WEBST., Dict.

to **pique**. He *piqued himself* upon the hearty abundance rather than the style in which he lived. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 351.

to **plume**. She *plumed herself* on the resolute manner of performing her task. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 199.

to **pride**. The men *prided themselves* on forestalling his wishes. CH. KINGSLEY, Westward Ho!, Ch. XVI, 132a.

I rather *pride myself* on my packing. JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. IV, 42.

to **value**. My friend, Will Honeycomb, *values himself* very much upon what he calls the knowledge of mankind. Spectator, No. 105.

I *valued myself* on being a strict monogamist. GOLDS., Vicar, Ch. II, (241).

Note. Frequent in 18th century literature, but now, apparently, obsolete.

To the above verbs we may add some compounds with *over*, all of them expressing an excess of what is denoted by the bare verb.

Master Ribstone coming home for the Christmas holidays from Eton, *over-ate himself* and had a fever. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 16.

He must not *overwork himself*. G. ELIOT, Mid., III, Ch. XXX, 213.

I used to tell her not to *overwalk herself* this weather. HARDY, Return of the Native, IV, Ch. VIII, 376.

The following are rare instances of the reflexive pronoun being dropped after these verbs.

She ought to have asked the maid if she had *overslept*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5394, 3b.

You rather *overwork*. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XVIII, 149.

Note. It will not seem unnatural that for a reflexive verb in which verb and pronoun express a kind of sense-unit, there should in many cases be an approximate equivalent, either in the same or in one of the kindred languages, which has no reflexive pronoun. Thus to *address oneself to a person* — to speak to a person; to *avail oneself of an opportunity* — to take advantage of an opportunity; to *avow oneself* = to plead guilty.

7. When little or no personal activity is implied (8), a reflexive verb often approximates to a passive verb. Thus there would be little change in the meaning of the following quotations if the reflexive verb were changed into a passive one:

to **bore**. I *bored myself* to death with an old volume of the Lady's Magazine. WASH. IRV., Bracebridge Hall (STOF., Eng. Leesb., I, 56).

Note. The change of *bored myself* into *was bored* would entail the substitution of *with* by *by*.

to **convey**. Some such impression *conveyed itself* to the two men who were walking with Mrs. Reffold. BEATR. HARRADEN, Ships, I, Ch. III, 12.

to **despoil**. The sea-blooms and the oozy woods, which wear | The sapless foliage of the ocean know | Thy voice, and suddenly grow gray with fear, | And tremble and *despoil themselves*. SHELLEY, Ode to the West Wind, 41.

**to discover.** Many points *discover themselves* upon which opinion has changed during the 19 months' duration of the struggle. *Times*.

**to double.** The population had not nearly *doubled itself*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 16.

**to enrol(l).** Philip the Fair *enrolled himself* as a member in one of these societies. MOTLEY, *Rise, Hist. Intr.*, 47a. (May also be understood: *caused himself to be enrolled*.)

Note a) Sometimes the reflective verb is equivalent to the copula *to be* + past participle rather than to a passive verb.

**to associate.** There was an earthy savour in the air, a chilly bareness in the place which *associated itself* somehow with too much getting-up by candle-light, and not too much to eat. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 38.

**console.** *Console yourself*, dear Miss Briggs. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 137.

**to exhaust.** The convulsion soon *exhausted itself*. SHAW, *How he lied to her Husband*, Pref.

**to persuade.** I *persuade myself* that the judicious will not only perceive the necessity of describing those situations. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Pref., 3.

**to vest.** Mrs. Pendennis had that vice (sc. of pride) ...; which *did not vest itself* so much in her own person, as that of her family. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

β) Conversely the copula *to be*, or the auxiliary of the passive voice, often forms a combination with a past participle that has the value of a reflective verb. Compare 14 and also a subsequent chapter on Tense-Aspects.

**to assure.** I will *be assured* I may (sc. take this bond); and, that I may be assured, I will bethink me. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 34.

**to bathe.** The open square outside *was bathed* in light. CON. DOYLE, *The Siege of Sunda-Gunge*. (Observe that the Dutch equivalent would be the reflective *baadde zich*.)

**to conduct.** There may be no sufficient ground for meddling with them so long as they *are conducted* as they have been. *Times*. (Thus also *to be well-conducted*, *ill-conducted*, etc.; *to be well-behaved*, *ill-behaved*, etc.)

**to forswear.** I am | Unknown to woman, never *was forsworn*. *Macb.*, IV, 3, 126. I could teach you | How to choose right, but then I *am forsworn*. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 11. (See also 6 under *to perjure oneself*.)

**to reconcile.** Leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way: first *be reconciled* to thy brother and then come and offer thy gift. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 24.

**to refresh.** And then I rose and *was refreshed*. LEIGH HUNT, *Mahmoud*.

**to revenge.** Therefore I would rail in my writings and *be revenged*. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1.

She wished *to be revenged* on that imprudent postman. BEATR. HARRADEN, *Ships*, I, Ch. IV, 16.

**to satisfy.** I must *be satisfied* that she has not been so very happy in my absence. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (242).

Note. Observe also that *to be ashamed of* = *zich schamen over*, *to beware of* = *zich wachten voor*, *to be hurt* = *zich bezeeren*, *to be mistaken* = *zich vergissen*.

8. Reflectiveness being distinctly associated with personal activity (7), we frequently find the reflective pronoun suppressed when any such notion is vague or entirely absent. Naturally this obtains most

frequently in case the subject is the name of an inanimate thing. Compare DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakkunst, III, § 82.

- a) Sometimes the suppression is practically regular, as in the connections instanced in the following quotations, which might be added to almost indefinitely:

**to attach.** No discredit *attaches* to such persons. BELLAMY, Look. Backw., 44.

**to draw (up).** i. The boats *drew* clear of one another. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

ii. The young gentleman's post-chaise *drew up* at the rustic inn. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 8.

**to fill.** My heart *fills* with gratitude. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 155.

Her eyes *filled* with tears. Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.

The room began *to fill*. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie.

**to turn.** The needle *turns* to the pole. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

- b) Sometimes the two constructions, one with, the other without the reflective pronoun, are used side by side, mostly with a decided predilection for either one or the other.

**to develop.** i. Our constitutional system grows and *develops itself* year after year. MCCARTHY, Hist. of our own Times, II, xxii, 122.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. This function *has developed* naturally out of the other functions spoken of. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VIII, 110.

She was half amused and half surprised at the friendly relations so unexpectedly *developing* between herself and Rashleigh. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 223.

Note. The reflective pronoun seems to be retained only when the notion is 'to come to a state nearer perfection'.

The same practice prevails, apparently, when the subject is the name of a person: He naturally *developed* into a liar. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, Ch. I, 5.

Who could have imagined that the thin, awkward child he dimly remembered would have *developed* into such an elegant-looking girl? MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XII, 207.

**to manifest.** i. Wisdom and knowledge of the world *manifested itself* in the gifted youth. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. II, 17.

Mr. Tulkinghorn, with some shadowy sign of amusement *manifesting itself* through his self-possession, stands on the hearth-rug with his back to the fire. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXVII, 235.

ii. To the Atheist that Existence *manifests* as Force-Matter, unconscious, unintelligent, while to the Pantheist it *manifests* as Life-Matter, conscious, intelligent. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 147.

Note. The suppression seems to be exceptional.

**to move.** i. The earth turning under the moon generates the tidal wave, which, as the earth's rotation is from west to east, *moves itself* from east to west. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. V, 74.

ii. The earth *moves*. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

Note. The suppression is all but regular.

Thus also when the subject is the name of a person: As he *moved* a little way from us, his foot struck against something. SWEET, Old Chapel.

**to offer.** i. It is scarce possible to avoid judging... of almost everything which *offers itself* to one's thoughts. BUTLER, Pref. Sermon, Wks., 1874, II, 5.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *develop*, 8.

<sup>2)</sup> Id., s. v. *offer*, 8.



- ii. The worst of it was that I knew I should not eat anything when an opportunity *offered*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35*b*.

The suggestion *offers* that a little of the sensation might have been exchanged with advantage for a little more literary talent. *Academy*.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The suppression seems to be rather the exception than the rule.

- to present.** i. She merely inquired why such an obvious suggestion had not *presented itself* to her husband's mind before. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 57. An opportunity for showing his skill *presented itself* before long. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 234.

Two fundamental objections immediately *presented themselves*. *Times*.

- ii. Two or three days elapsed before any opportunity *presented* for returning down the river. WASH. IRVING, *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 145).

Note. The suppression seems to be unusual.

- to spread.** i. The sieges were frequent when any unusually ambrosial odour *spread itself* from the den to the neighbouring studies. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 239.

A sweet smile *spread itself* gently over his face. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

- ii. The clouds *spread* over the sky. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

A disease *spreads* into all parts of a city. WEBSTER, *Dict.*

Note. Suppression seems to be the rule.

Thus also when the subject denotes a person: The Boers *spread* over a territory as large as France. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 46.

9. Another peculiar feature of the reflective pronoun in English is that it is often dropped when it readily suggests itself and does not, therefore, appear necessary for the right understanding of the sentence. Here again we may distinguish two cases:

- a) The suppression is practically regular. Instances are very numerous and a little illustration will, therefore, suffice.

**to engage.** He readily *engaged* for taking the earliest opportunity of waiting on her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 106.

I'll *engage* he's lurking there. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 44*a*.

I *had engaged* to call again next day. *Ib.*, Ch. XXIV, 123*b*.

**to retire.** He chose to *retire* to this place. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, III, 3, (395).

**to unbend.** i. You must *unbend*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXX, 211. (= *to take some recreation*.)

ii. Very few could resist him when he *unbent*. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. VIII, 100. (= *to give up austerity of manner*.)

Compare: M. de Zuytlestein . . . only *unbent* his haughty manner to the Prince. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 80.

- b) The suppression is frequent or occasional and may, or may not, be attended by a modification in meaning.

**to apply.** i. \* He was quick at his learning, whenever he could be brought to *apply himself*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 104). (= *to do one's best*.)

\*\* Mrs. Gummidge . . . *applied herself* to blowing the fire. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 70*a*. (= *to set oneself*.)

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI.



He *applied himself* to study with vigour and success. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (702a).

Mr. Thornburgh would not *apply himself* to the case of Mary Backhouse. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 39.

\*\*\* If any dispute arises, they *apply themselves* to him for the decision. *Spectator*, No. 106. (= *to address oneself for information or aid.*)

An old woman *applied herself* to me for my charity. *ib.*, No. 117.

- ii. \* Adèle was not easy to teach that day; she would not *apply*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XIII, 141. (= *to do one's best.*)

\*\* Catherine said no more; and with an endeavour to do right, *applied* to her work. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXX, 233. (= *to set oneself.*)

\*\*\* A friend... to whom she resolved *to apply* in her distress. MAR. EDGEWORTH, *Moral Tales*, I, xii, 98.1) (= *to address oneself for information or aid.*)

Exiles who had come... *to apply* for succour. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 8.1)

Note. The quotations show that *to apply* with and *to apply* without the reflective pronoun are used in the same shades of meaning. In the two first of these the pronoun is usually retained, in the third it is now regularly suppressed, but the alternative practice was quite common in Early Modern English, frequent instances being found in the *Spectator*.

- to behave.** i. \* If you cannot *behave yourself*, you had better stay at home. MURRAY. *Behave yourself* to visitors, my lady! DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. X, 84.

\*\* He *behaved himself* very bravely. FARQ., *The Constant Couple*, I, I, (47). *Behave yourself* well, hold to the right and do your duty. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 356.

I do hope you will *behave yourself* properly in future. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 29.

- ii. \* Mr. Hareton will ask the master to send you upstairs, if you don't *behave*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXXII, 154a.

\*\* I'll make her *behave* as becomes a young woman. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3, (248). He made Clark feel like a boy in the lower fifth who has not been *behaving* well. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

Susan Merton had two unfavoured lovers; it is well to observe how differently these two *behaved*. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.

Note. *To behave* is almost regularly used with the reflective pronoun, when it is unattended by any modifier denoting the kind of behaviour. In this case it implies good behaviour, or, in modern practice proper behaviour, and is especially said of children who might 'misbehave themselves'.

When accompanied by a modifier denoting the kind of behaviour, the reflective pronoun is oftener suppressed than used. Compare MURRAY.

- to consort.** i. How can any youth of nineteen or twenty do other than *consort himself* with the daily companions of his usual avocations? TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. II, 17.

- ii. Men *consort* in camp and town, | But the poet dwells alone. EMERSON, *Poems*, I, 472.1)

Note. The construction with the reflective pronoun is now obsolete. MURRAY.

- to contain.** i. He could *contain himself* no longer and broke forth in a shout of delight. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIII, 256b.

He was scarcely able to *contain himself* for laughter. GORDON HOLMES, *Silvia Craven*, 41.

- ii. I can *contain* no longer. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (250).

Note. The construction with the reflective pronoun now seems to be the usual one. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *contain*, 14.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *apply*, 28.

- to **declare**. i. He *declared himself* a member of the Church of Rome. MAC., Hist., II, 115.<sup>1)</sup>  
 ii. All of us *declared* against the proposal. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XI, 66.  
 The French bishops *declared* in favour of making terms with the State. Rev. of Rev., No. CCI, 237a.

Note. The suppression is probably rather the exception than the rule.

- to **disport**. i. The clothes in which they were allowed *to disport themselves*, were so scandalous to the sober taste of the rector's wife. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 259.  
 ii. Say, father Thames, for thou hast seen | Full many a sprightly race | *Disporting* on thy margin green. GRAY, Ode Eton Col., 23.  
 What ardent, imaginative soul has not a secret pleasure-place, in which he *disports*? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 40.

Note. The reflective pronoun seems to be usually retained.

- to **draw up**. i. Mr. Chadband *draws himself up* again, and looks triumphantly at Mr. Snagsby. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXV, 221. (= *to assume a stiff and erect attitude*.)

The young farmer *drew himself up* and looked fearlessly in all his companions' eyes. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 29.

- ii. \* They did, indeed, *draw up* in Order of Battle. LEDIARD, Life Marlborough, I, 231.<sup>2)</sup> (= *to bring oneself into regular order*, as troops.)  
 \*\* We *drew up* to the table. JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. I, 7.  
 (= *to come close*.)

\*\*\* There was news from Morocco that their Minister had '*drawn up*' with the Sultan's dreaded rival. Sat. Rev., 1892, 9 July, 32/2.<sup>3)</sup> (= *to take up*.)

Note. In the first shade of meaning the reflective meaning is regularly retained. In the others it is as regularly suppressed. For *to draw up* in the meaning of *to stop* see 8.

- to **dress**. i. \* He was come back to *dress himself* for a ball. JOHNSON, Rambler, No. 27.<sup>3)</sup>

This was the first occasion on which she had endeavoured to *dress herself* with care since her father had died. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XI, 111.

\*\* Meanwhile Tess had hastily *dressed herself*. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. IV, 33.

- ii. \* She had *dressed* with more than usual care. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. XVIII, 92.

The two ladies went to *dress* for dinner. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 256.  
 I must not detain you by *dressing* for dinner. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XII, 198.

\*\* He grew careless of himself and never *dressed* afterwards. Spectator, No. 2.  
 No woman *dresses* below herself from caprice. LAMB.

That section of the world that '*dresses*' in contradistinction to merely wearing clothes. Daily News.<sup>3)</sup>

Note. Usage is very variable. According to MURRAY (s.v. *dress*, 7), the reflective pronoun is most frequently retained, when the notion is that the clothes are selected and put on with particular care, as in the case of a dinner or evening-party or a ceremonial occasion. This is not, however, borne out by the quotations given above and many others that might have been added to them.

In describing a custom the suppression is regular. In this case *to dress* is always used in the pregnant meaning referred to above.

- to **enlist**. i. When I first conceived the idea of *enlisting myself* in the great army of daily workers in the factories. OL. CHR. MALVERY, The Soul Market, Ch. V, 90.

1) MURRAY, s.v. *declare*, 5, b.    2) Id., s.v. *draw*, 89.    3) Id., s.v. *dress*, 7.

- ii. A carter in a smock-frock seemed wavering and disposed to *enlist*. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXI, 120*b*.

Note. The suppression is now almost regular, at least when military enlistment is meant. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *enlist*, 3.

- to feast.** i. Little could they see or understand of the masterly strategy which was conquering all England for Norman monks, in order that they, following the army like black ravens, might *feast themselves* upon the prey which others had won. CH. KINGSLEY, Her., Ch. XXV, 104*b*.

- ii. Then... Geraint... bad the host | Call in what men soever were his friends, | And *feast* with these in honour of their Earl. TEN., Ger. and En., 287.

Note. The suppression is practically regular.

- to form (up).** i. The soldiers *formed themselves* round the waggon. HT. MARTINEAU, Hill and Valley, VIII, 126.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Storm, Storm, Riflemen *form!* | Ready, be ready against the storm! TEN., Rifle-men Form, III.

When the 'assemble' sounds, both Forces will *form up* by Brigades. Army Corps Orders.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Usage seems to be in favour of suppression.

- to gorge.** *Gorging himself* and friends with tarts, when he had money to spend. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 2.

Sitting here cramming, and stuffing, and *gorging myself*; and you before me there, never so much as breaking your precious fast. DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 20.

- ii. We shall *gorge* on this for days. ZANGWILL, The Next Religion, I, 86.

Note. Suppression is rather the exception than the rule.

- to hide.** i. I wonder where this Captain Absolute *hides himself*. SHER., Riv., IV, 3, (265).

At length, after *hiding himself* away on several ships, he succeeds in secreting himself in a hold of a second-class-collier. PUNCH, 1889, 257*b*.

- ii. "There's father coming," cried the two young Cratchits, who were everywhere at once. "*Hide*, Martha, *hide!*" So Martha hid herself, and in came little Bob. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 66. (Note the varied practice.)

Note. Suppression seems to be rather unusual.

- to hurry.** i. Don't *hurry yourself* on my account to come back. DICK., Old Cur. Shop., Ch. XXXIII, 152*a*.

His Highness did not *hurry himself* for this, but came leisurely across the courtyard. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, Ch. VII, 82.

- ii. \* Nature never *hurries*, never takes leaps, never wearies. H. MACMILLAN, True Vine, VI, 259.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* They *hurried away* to make holiday in the fine weather. Graphic, 1889, 438*a*.  
*Hurry up*, lads! the lancers are coming. II. Lond. News.

Note. Suppression is the rule, and practically regular when the verb is connected with an adverb.

- to keep.** i. \* He could hardly *keep himself* from bursting out laughing again. SWEET, The Old Chapel.

\*\* One can no more escape from the world's inconveniences than I can *keep myself* dry in a shower. PAYN, The Heir of the Ages, I, 17.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\*\* She said that . . . she would *keep herself* like a lady as long as she could. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 95. (= *to comport oneself*.)

- ii. \* "How came this?" asked the young clerk who could scarce *keep* from laughter. CONAN DOYLE, The White Company, 7.

\*\* He would have *kept* silent to the end. ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. II, 41.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *form*, 8, *b*. <sup>2)</sup> Id., s. v. *hurry*, 2. <sup>3)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst., XI.

Note. The reflective pronoun is regularly retained in the sense of *to comport oneself*, marked as obsolete by MURRAY (s. v. *keep*, 22). In the two other applications illustrated above the suppression seems to be the rule. In most of the numerous combinations with adverbs or adverbial phrases (MURRAY, s. v. *keep*, 39—57) the reflective pronoun is all but regularly absent.

**to indulge.** i. \* She resolved to *indulge herself* in this last view of Joseph at his own expense. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XIII, 34.

Bungay woke up from a second snooze in which he *indulged himself*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 345.

\*\* It was only on occasion of a present like this that Silas *indulged himself* with roast-meat. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. V, 34.

This was perhaps but the just punishment for a trifle of exaggeration in the narrative with which I had here and there *indulged myself*. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, Q, 285.

ii. I was long since he had *indulged* in such a luxury. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

This is a vice in which the ladies very seldom *indulge*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXI, 215.

He at times *indulged* in wiles which modern statesmanship condemns. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 902b.

Note. Suppression is the rule when the verb is construed with *in*. In the less frequent construction with *with* the reflective pronoun is regularly retained.

**to misbehave.** i. A clergyman who has *misbehaved himself*. DICK., *Cop.*

I am not used to *misbehave myself* in the company of ladies. J. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The court can order costs to be paid by a trustee who has *misbehaved*. *Law Times Rep.*, XLIX, 775/2.<sup>2)</sup>

Note. The suppression seems to be the rule. Compare *to behave*.

**to prepare.** i. \* We read how a girl, before starting for a walk, *prepares herself* by drinking a tumbler of delicious cream. Rev. J. G. WOOD, *Transatlantic Contrasts* (Good Words for 1884).

\*\* He calmly *prepared himself* to die. MAC., *Addison*, (773b).

ii. Without delay I *prepared* for my departure. DE QUINCEY, *Confes.*, Ch. II, 17. She felt that she must *prepare* for that combat. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

He looks over the papers on his table and *prepares* to write a letter. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXVII, 234.

Note. When the prepositional object is understood, suppression seems to be impossible. For the rest usage may be equally divided, except in generalizing statements, in which the pronoun would hardly be tolerated. Thus: It is the part of prudence *to prepare* for the worst. *Times*, No. 1985, 56b.

**to qualify.** i. I am *qualifying myself* to give lessons. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXVIII.

ii. Some (sc. schoolmasters) have *qualified* in Science. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005, 4c. Note. The suppression seems to be unusual.

**to recover.** i. \* Seeing that he was losing ground at Court, he intended to *recover himself* a little with the people. BURNET, *Own Time*, III, 1, 582.<sup>3)</sup> (= *to regain one's natural position or balance*.)

\*\* Jo stands staring, and is still staring, when she *recovers herself*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XVI, 139. (= *to return to life or consciousness*.)

"Yes," he went on, *recovering himself* a little. I am going to die in this horrible place." RIDER HAGGARD, *Mr. Meeson's Will*, Ch. IX, 89.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI. <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *misbehave*, 1. <sup>3)</sup> *Id.*, s. v. *recover*, 16, a. H. POUTSMA, *A Grammar of Late Modern English*. II.



George was the first *to recover himself*. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. IV, 50.

\*\*\* The overworked lawyer has only to bestow an occasional day upon any of the various sports within his reach, and he speedily *recovers himself*. STONEHENGE, Brit. Rur. Sports, Introd., 13. 1) (= *to get over fatigue or illness, to get well*.)

- ii. \* He *recovered* slowly. The patient *is recovering*, etc. (= *to get well*.)

\*\* *To recover* from a state of poverty or depression. WEBSTER, Dict. (the same sense.)

James had at length suffered a shock *from* which he had never *recovered*. MAC., Hist., X.

Her blue eyes had in them a startled look like that of a person who *has* not yet *recovered from* some great fright. (?), Miss Providence.

\*\*\* † The man *recovered of* the bite, | The dog it was that died. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. XVII. (the same sense.)

Very many of the brave —th were still at Brussels, *recovering of* their wounds. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 387.

Note. When used in either of the two first shades of meaning, the reflective pronoun is regularly retained. Suppression is the rule when recovery from a state of illness, fatigue, etc. is expressed, and, apparently, regular in the frequent case that the derangement is mentioned. This derangement is mentioned in a prepositional phrase with either *from* or *of*, apparently with some preference for the former preposition when it is a mental disturbance, and for the latter when it is a physical disease or injury that is in question. Observe also that the transitive *to recover* is practically equivalent to *to recover from* (or *of*).

He soon *recovered* the effects of his attachment. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVII.

I daresay she'll *recover* the shock. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 118.

I hope he will *recover* the attack. Mrs. WOOD, East Lynne, I, 131.

**to reform.** i. And as we hear you do reform *your selves*, | We will according to your strength and qualities, | Give you advancement. Henry IV, B. V, 5, 72.

- ii. I suppose that, if I had given up billiards, he would have been impressed with the idea that I was about to *reform*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. I, 11.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**to refrain.** i. Though the temptation to preach was very powerful, he *refrained himself* for a while. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. V, 50. (= *to put a restraint upon oneself*.)

- ii. He could not *refrain* from telling how he had come by the mill. ANDREW LANG, Blue Fairy Book. (= *to keep oneself*.)

Note. In the first shade of meaning, now archaic, the reflective pronoun is as regularly retained as it is suppressed in the second.

**to remove.** i. [The swine] made . . . no haste *to remove themselves* from the luxurious banquet of beech-mast and acorns. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. I, 7. (= *to withdraw*.)

One bright morning Giles Compass Esq. unexpectedly *removed himself* to that wider field for a genius like his, the United States. LYTTON, Caxtons, II, Ch. II, 34.

- ii. \* He begs a Certificate, when he *removes* from the Ship. E. WARD, Wooden World Diss., 29. 2) (= *to withdraw*.)

\*\* Newton received this letter when he was *removing* from Jermyn Street to Chelsea. BREWSTER, Newton, II, XXI, 252. 2) (= *to change one's residence*.)

Note. In the first shade of meaning the two constructions seem to be used indifferently, in the second the suppression is regular.

1) MURRAY, s.v. *recover*, 16, d. 2) Id., s.v. *remove*, 9.



**to set.** i. \* He now *set himself* to cultivate Parliamentary interest. MAC., Clive, (526a). Abdul Hamid had *set himself* to destroy the traditional institutions of the Ottoman Empire. Times.

\*\* So now we must *set ourselves* seriously to finding this gentleman. CONAN DOYLE, Sherlock Holmes, Blue Carbuncle.

\*\*\* Lucy had promptly *set herself* to her task. PHILIPS, Mad. Leroux, Ch. V.

ii. \* He *set* to collecting eggs. RID. HAGGARD, Mr. Meeson's Will, Ch. XI, 110.

\*\* He *set* to work to uncork the bottles. MISS BRADDON, My First Happy Christmas.

\*\*\* He *set about* composing the history of his life. CARLYLE, Life of Schiller, Appendix, I, 277.

He was going to *set up* as a Parliament man. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 280.

Note. Before an infinitive the reflective pronoun is mostly retained. Before a gerund or a prepositional phrase with *to*, retention seems to be regular, except for the collocation *to set to work*, in which *work* may be apprehended either as an infinitive or a noun. Suppression is regular in combinations with adverbs such as *to set about* (Ch. XIX, 22), *to set in*, *to set out*, *to set up* (Ch. VI, 24), etc.

**to separate.** i. \* He *separated himself* ... from his dearest friends. MAC., Hist.

\*\* But presently they *separated themselves* into parties. JOHN RUSKIN, Sesame and Lilies.

ii. \* While I live, I will not *separate* from you. SCOTT, Guy Man., Ch. XV.

\*\* Our young people ... made the most solemn promises to keep together during the evening, and *separated* in ten minutes afterwards. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 53.

Note. Suppression seems to be the rule in all shades of meaning.

**to settle.** i. \* With inconceivable rapidity did the new landowner *settle himself* in his comfortable homestead. LYTON, Caxtons, II Ch. II, 33. (= *to establish oneself*.)

\*\* "I wish," said Hallin, when Marcella had *settled herself*, "that we were going to be alone to-night." MRS. WARD, Marcella. (= *to come to a quiet or orderly state* after excitement or restless activity.)

George *settled himself* deliberately in his chair. Id., Sir G. Tres., I, Ch. II, 7a. He has *settled himself* for a snooze in the study. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XV, 256.

She *settled herself* and worked diligently for a couple of hours before going to bed. Ib., II, Ch. IV, 67.

\*\*\* Sybil *settled herself* in the drawing-room to write to Mrs. Winter. Ib., II, Ch. X, 165. (= *to dispose or set oneself steadily*.)

At last Rashleigh *settled himself* to write. Ib., I, Ch. XVI, 271.

\*\*\*\* Mr. Oakhurst *settled himself* coolly to the losing game before him. BRET HARTE, Outcasts, 29. (= *to resign oneself*.)

ii. It was some little time before Sybil could *settle* to her writing. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 214. (= *to dispose or set oneself steadily*.)

Next morning Sybil came down immediately after her breakfast, and *settled* as usual to her work. Ib., II, Ch. III, 58.

Note. As may be concluded from the foregoing quotations, *to settle* retains the reflective pronoun in most shades of meaning. There is, however, varied practice, when the notion is 'to dispose or set oneself to some employment'; possibly the reflective pronoun is mostly retained before an infinitive and suppressed before a noun of action.

*To settle down*, which is used in shades of meaning that differ but little from that of *to settle (oneself)*, seems to lose the reflective pronoun regularly.

Also when *to settle* has the name of a thing for its subject, it always discards the reflective pronoun.

- i. There is all the noise attendant upon two or three hundred boys and girls . . . *settling down* into their places. ESCOTT, England, Ch. XVI, 278.  
The warrior *settled down* into the farmer. GREEN, Short Hist.
- ii. \* The wind *settles* in the west. Wine *settles* by standing. A road *settles* in the spring. The grounds of coffee *settle*. A house *settles* on its foundation. WEBST., Dict.

\*\* Before it *settles in* for a wet evening. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman, Ch. II, 21.

to *shave*. i. Mr. George, *having shaved himself* before a looking-glass of minute proportions, then marches out. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXVI, 224.

ii. \* He *had shaved* in cold water. MRS. WOOD, East Lynne, I, 96.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* He *had not shaved* for years. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. IV, 109.

Note. The two constructions seem to be used indiscriminately. Only the suppression is regular in describing a custom.

to *shelter*. i. If it is meant . . . that I have any purpose of *sheltering myself* behind the Prelate's authority. SCOTT, Betrothed, Ch. XIX.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Let me *shelter* under your protection. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XVII, 143.

Note. In the figurative meaning of 'to protect oneself from punishment or censure', the reflective pronoun seems to be regularly retained; otherwise it is, apparently, mostly suppressed.

to *show*. i. \* Yesterday the new king *shewed himself* to his subjects. GOLDSM., Citiz. of the World, V.<sup>2)</sup> (= *to appear (in public.)*)

ii. When did this elder brother *show*? THACK., Virg., Ch. LIII, 552. (= *to put in an appearance.*)

Her husband never *shows* at her at-homes. CONC. Oxf. Dict.

You have found a woman. | Let her *shew* here again, I'll set the dog on her. SHAW, The Admirable Bashville, I, (296).

\*\* He got a living by '*showing*' in the various public-houses in the neighbourhood at entertainments got up for his benefit. Daily News.<sup>2)</sup> (= *to exhibit oneself for money.*)

\*\*\* He *showed* against the sky, he and his horse. BIERCE, In Midst of Life, 97.<sup>2)</sup> (= *to be distinctly visible, to be thrown into relief*)

\*\*\*\* Becket never *showed* to more advantage than in moments of personal danger. FROUDE, Short. Stud., IV, i, iv, 48.<sup>2)</sup> (= *to distinguish oneself.*)

Note a) As the above quotations seem to show, the suppression of the reflective pronoun may be attended by modifications of meaning. This does not appear to be the case, when it is followed by a predicative adnominal adjunct, but in this connection suppression appears to be rare.

i. She *showed herself* much more lavishly . . . bugled and bangled than the Americans. Cent. Mag., I, 589.<sup>2)</sup>

He *had shown himself* . . . inconsiderate to the verge of cruelty. BLACK, Princ. of Thule, Ch. XIX, 302.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Now near enough; your leavy screens throw down, | And *show* like those you are. Macb., V, 6, 2.

f) Also when the subject is the name of a thing, usage depends on the shade of meaning to be expressed. Of the numerous applications of *to show* with the reflective pronoun either expressed or suppressed, only a few, and those the most usual ones, are here exhibited.

i. Even that might be overcome by time and patience, so as to let a few grey hairs *show themselves* in the hussy's head. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. III, 29. (= *to present oneself to observation.*)

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. \* The blood *shows* through her skin. CONC. OXF. DICT. (= *to be visible*.)

The stain will never *show*. IB.

\*\* The buds are just *showing*. IB. (= *to make one's appearance*.)

- to submit.** i. We were a little afraid of Peggotty and *submitted ourselves* in most things to her direction. DICK., COP., CH. I, 6b.

He had great difficulty in *submitting himself* to the intellectual routine of the University. MRS. WARD., ROB. ELSM., I, 91.

- ii. She knew Rebecca to be too clever and spirited and desperate a woman to *submit* without a struggle. THACK., VAN. FAIR., I, CH. XIX, 196.

There was nothing for it but *to submit*. MCCARTHY, SHORT HIST., CH. IV, 53.

Note. To all appearance there is a tendency to suppress the reflective pronoun only when the prepositional object is left unexpressed. Compare also ELLINGER, VERM. BEITR., 70.

- to surrender.** \* Catherine restrained by a hundred ties of training and temperament would not *surrender herself*, and could not if she would. MRS. WARD., ROB. ELSM.

- ii. The enemy seeing no way of escape, *surrendered* at the first summons. WEBST., DICT.

\*\* He *surrendered himself* a prisoner. MCCARTHY, SHORT HIST., CH. IV, 47.

Note. Usage is, apparently, in favour of suppression, except, of course, when a predicative adnominal adjunct follows.

- to trouble.** i. He *troubled himself* little about decorating his abode. MAC., HIST., I, CH. III, 315.

Don't *trouble yourself* about it. W. MORRIS, NEWS FROM NOWHERE, CH. VI, 40.

- ii. Don't *trouble* about losing it, *ib.*, CH. VI, 37.

Note. Usage seems to be equally divided.

- to turn.** i. At this point of the narrative, the dress of the strange man rustled as if he had *turned himself* to hear more distinctly. DICK., BARN. RUDGE, CH. I, 7b.

- ii. \* A man *turns* on his heel. WEBST., DICT.

\*\* *Turn round*, Lydia. SHER., RIV., IV, 1, (260).

Note. The construction with the reflective pronoun retained expresses a greater and more deliberate effort than that with the reflective pronoun suppressed, but is not particularly frequent. In connection with adverbs the suppression appears to be regular.

- to wash.** i. The bell was rung, and he was obliged to *wash himself*, throw on his jacket and go up to answer the front door. MARRYAT, OLLA PODRIDA.

- ii. *Wash* in Jordan seven times. BIBLE, KINGS, B, V, 10.

I do not like *to wash* in cold water. SWEET, N. E. GR., § 254.

He considered that he paid sufficient respect to the virtue of cleanliness if he *washed* every morning. BIRMINGHAM, SPANISH GOLD, CH. I, 3.

Note. The two constructions seem to be used indiscriminately.

- to withdraw.** i. \* He *withdrew himself* a step behind the chair. DICK., COP., CH. LVI, 397b. (= *to move backward or aside*.)

\*\* When, however, the archers understood with whom they were to be matched, upwards of twenty *withdrew themselves* from the contest. SCOTT, IVANHOE, CH. XII, 134. (= *to give up participation* in a contest, some form of business, etc.)

\*\*\* Sir Everard . . . *had gradually withdrawn himself* from society. SCOTT, WAV., CH. IV, 31b. (= *to retire, to live apart*.)

He became almost a recluse, *withdrew himself* from the capital to a retired residence. ANT. HOPE, THE KING'S MIRROR, CH. I, 8.

\*\*\*\* And then he spoke so ingeniously and sincerely of the sacrifice he made in *withdrawing himself* for a time from Ada. DICK., BLEAK HOUSE, CH. XXIII, 199. (= *to give up intercourse or companionship with*.)

You *withdrew yourself* from me so quickly and resolutely when you saw the situation. HARDY, TESS, VI, CH. XLVI, 417.

\*\*\*\* George hastily *withdrew himself*. Mrs. WARD, Sir G. Tres., I, Ch. II, 12b. (=to go away, to leave.)

ii. \*\* He *withdrew* from the company at ten o'clock. WEBST., Dict. (=to give up companionship.)

\*\* He thinks fit to *withdraw* till he hears whether the gentleman's wounds be mortal or not. FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem, III, 3, (395). (=to go away.)

Note. Suppression is very common and, probably, the rule in all shades of meaning.

**to work (up).** i. "It's a shame, by Heavens," said George, *working himself up* into passion and enthusiasm as he proceeded, "to play at fast and loose with a young girl's affections." THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 223.

ii. "Juries " said Mr. Bumble, grasping his cane tightly as was his wont when *working* into a passion: "juries is ineddicated, vulgar, grovelling wretches." DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. IV, 48.

Note. The suppression is, probably, rather the exception than the rule.

**to worry.** i. Don't you, any of you, *worry yourselves* about that. JEROME, Three men in a Boat, Ch. III, 24.

ii. I am quite sure you are *worrying* without any cause. G. GISSING, Eve Madeley's Ransom, Ch. XXI.

Note. The two constructions seem to be used indiscriminately.

**to wrap up.** i. It is sunny and sheltered in the grounds; *wrap yourself up* and come for a walk. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 61.

ii. Mind you *wrap up* well, Sybil. Ib., I, Ch. XV, 243.

Note. Possibly there is a tendency to suppress the reflective pronoun, when the verb is accompanied by an intensive.

# 10. Special mention may be made of the suppression of the reflective pronoun before a predicative adnominal adjunct, which sometimes entails a marked change in meaning or grammatical function of the verb concerned.

a) Some verbs assume the nature of copulas when they lose the reflective pronoun. This is the case with: *to feel* (Ch. I, 5), *to make* (ib.), *to prove* (ib.), *to hold* (Ch. I, 9), *to keep* (ib.), *to get* (Ch. I, 10).

1) With *to get* as a copula compare: If Debora had lived, I've no doubt she would have seen after them (sc. the Notes), before they *got themselves* into this state. Mrs. GASK., Mrs. Cranf., Ch. XII, 248.

2) With *to make merry*, in which *to make* approximates in function to a copula, compare: With cunning and malice enough to *make himself merry* with all our embarrassments. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, IV. The young people *were making themselves perfectly happy*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVII, 154.

Also in the combinations *to make certain* (or *sure*) and *to make ready*, there is evidently suppression of the reflective pronoun, which causes the verb *to make* to assume the character of a copula. Compare:

i. \* Peggotty likes *to make herself as sure as she can* that it's (sc. our house is) not being robbed. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 8a.

\*\* While she *made her ready* for her ride. TEN., Lanc. and El., 775.

ii. \* She put her ear to the door *to make certain* that I was asleep and wanted nothing. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. II, 25.



\*\* She (sc. Italy) *is making ready* to take part with the Entente Powers. *Times*, No. 1985, 54c.

Note. This is a good opportunity of correcting a mistake in Ch. I, § 5. It is there stated that in *to make bold* the approximation of *to make* to the copula *to be* is due to the dropping of the reflective pronoun. It appears to be more probable that *to make bold* represents *to make it bold* with *to make it* in the meaning of *to act*, *to behave*. Compare the Dutch *maak het kort*. MURRAY s. v. *make* 68—69. Also the surmise, diffidently offered in the same place, that in *to make a good husband* and similar phrases *to make* has lost the reflective pronoun and thus has assumed the function of a copula, had better be withdrawn, there being no evidence for it.

3) As to *to prove* compare also Ch. VI, 14; Ch. XVIII, 30, *d* and 34, Obs. III.

b) For the dropping of the reflective pronoun when the predicative adnominal adjunct is represented by an infinitive (—clause) and the occasional attendant suppression of the copula *to be*, see Ch. XVIII, 34, Obs. III and IV. For illustration see also above: 9, *b* under *to declare* and *to show*.

11. a) It is hardly necessary to observe that in case the verb forms a kind of unit with the reflective pronoun, in which neither the former nor the latter expresses a meaning by itself, suppression is out of the question. This is for example the case with the verbs illustrated in 5: such sentences as *\*She bears with dignity* and *\*He lost in the study of the faces flocking by*, etc. being impossible.

b) Nor can the reflective pronoun be omitted when the verb from the nature of its meaning is ordinarily coupled with another object. Thus no suppression could take place in *He could not prevent himself from throwing the sofa cushion at her*.

12. In the cases described in the preceding §§ the notion of reflectiveness, although often considerably obscured by the dropping of the reflective pronoun, is still more or less perceptible. Sometimes this notion appears entirely effaced. This is, for example, the case in such sentences as *He got old* (7). *He stopped in doors*. *He turned pale*. *He turned out a brave man*. *He stole away*. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 255.

13. The frequent omission of the reflective pronoun explains why so many transitive verbs are also used intransitively. In fact a mere skimming through the pages of a dictionary will show that the number of verbs that are used only transitively is comparatively small, and reveal the fact that the passing from transitive to intransitive is chiefly due to the cause assigned.

14. The passive meaning which often attaches to reflective verbs may also frequently be observed in intransitive verbs that have assumed their intransitive character through the suppression of the reflective pronoun.



Thus *to associate* = *to be associated* in: Since vanity mostly *associates* with obvious beauty, it is not strange that the peacock, with its accentuated beauty and self-consciousness, should have come to be regarded as the proverbial personification of pride. Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 5a. (Compare to *associate itself* in 7, Note a).

For further instances see 8 and 9.

Conversely *to be driven away* = *to drive away* in: Then Miss Donny, the maid, and I got inside, and *were driven away*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. III, 15.

15. The reasoning set forth in the preceding §§ leads to the conclusion that there is a great analogy between reflectiveness, passiveness and intransitiveness.

Instructive is the definition of the intransitive *shut* in WEBSTER'S Dictionary: *to shut* = *to close itself, to become closed*.

Thus also *to lose oneself* (5) differs little from *to get lost*, as in: Mind you don't *get lost*. Egdon Heath is a bad place *to get lost* in. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. III, 38.

Compare furthermore the French *Cela s'oublie vite, s'apprend aisément*, etc. with the English *That is quickly forgotten, easily learned*, etc.; and also the French *Le livre se vend bien* with the English *The books sells well*.

For a discussion of this subject see also MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 69; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 316; KELLNER, Hist. Outl., § 216 f; EMIL ROHDE, Transitivity in Mod. Eng.

16. In the function of indirect or person-object the reflective pronoun calls for little or no comment, and the following illustration may suffice:

**to afford.** This was a season at which even poor people can *afford themselves* roses. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. XV.

You have been my right hand, but it's come to this that I can't *afford myself* a right hand. *ib.*, Ch. XII.

Note. The use of the reflective pronoun is rare, and it seems to be redundant. MURRAY does not give a single instance. Compare: We can *afford to pay* like men. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XII, 59a.

**to allow.** I could *allow myself* only one meal a day. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 17.

**to ask.** Silas *asked himself* if he had been asleep. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn. I, Ch. I, 8.

**to bore.** After many days of hard and patient labour they *had bored themselves* a new hole in the tree. II. Magaz.

Note. The reflective pronoun is, strictly speaking, redundant.

**to do.** I would *do myself* the honour to carry your message; but [etc.]. SHER., Riv., III, 4.

**to grudge.** He lived sumptuously and *grudged himself* nothing. LYTTON, Night and Morning.

**to save.** He might have *saved himself* that mystification. Times.

**to set.** The task he *set himself* was to trace the war back to its ultimate causes. Punch.

**to spare.** *Spare yourself* the trouble! LYTTON, *Night and Morning*.  
 Note. *To spare* without the reflective pronoun may express approximately the same meaning: He has *spared* no pains to make himself acquainted with every phase of our political life. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5311, 1c.

17. As part of a prepositional object the reflective pronoun is found chiefly in such combinations as have the value of indirect or person-objects, i. e. after the prepositions *for*, *from*, *of* or *to*. It may be observed that in some cases, especially in combinations with *for*, the object is practically redundant.

i. **to acquire.** Russia *has acquired for herself* a new and commanding position at the court of the Shah. TIMES.

**to earn.** He *has earned for himself* an admirable reputation. Ib.

**to mark.** He entered on the path he *had marked for himself*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVIII, 557.

**to recall.** Every one who is much read in Johnson *will recall for himself* other and, perhaps, better instances. JOHN BAILEY, *Dr. Johnson and his Circle*, Ch. I, 35.

ii. **to conceal.** She could not *conceal from herself* that the prospect had something ignominious about it. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XX.

**to hide.** At the same time we cannot *hide from ourselves* either the actual or the contingent difficulties involved in this most disagreeable undertaking. TIMES.

iii. **to inquire.** "Who was Nimrod?" Mrs. Snagsby repeatedly *inquires of herself*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXV, 219.

iv. **to assume.** The king *assumed to himself* the right of filling up the chief municipal offices. MAC., *History*, II, 126. <sup>1)</sup>

**to draw.** The judges... attempted *to draw to themselves* supreme authority. id., *War. Hist.*, (622a).

**to figure.** I will do more for you than you *figure to yourself* now. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIII, 197.

They had at last reached the promised land, the land which they had *figured to themselves* as flowing with milk and honey. MAC., *Fred.*, (664b).

**to gather.** Her greedy grasp had *gathered to itself*... no less than six-and-thirty thousand acres of good English soil. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVIII, 79a.

**to image.** He *imaged Laura to himself*, as his memory remembered her for years past. THACK., *Pend*, I, Ch. XXIV, 253.

**to make.** Thou shalt not *make to thyself* any graven image. Book of Com. Pray., Holy Com. (Compare: Thou shalt not *make unto thee* any graven image. Bible, Exod., XX, 4.)

Childhood is poetic and creative and can *make to itself* toys out of anything. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 483, 163a.

**to picture.** *Picture to yourself*, oh fair reader, a wordly, selfish, graceless, thankless, religionless old woman, writhing in pain and fear, and without her wig. *Picture her to yourself*, and ere you be old, learn to love and pray. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 140.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, S. V. *assume*, 7.

We should be mistaken if we *pictured to ourselves* the squires of the seventeenth century as men bearing a close resemblance to their descendants. MAC., Hist., I. Ch. III, 313.

**to prescribe.** It may, we fear, be impossible to compress so long and eventful a story within the limits which we must *prescribe to ourselves*. Id., Fred., (658a).

**to take (credit).** I *take no credit to myself* in the matter. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, IV, 70.

He *took great credit to himself* for not having attacked him. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., Ch. VII, 133.

The King had *taken to himself* the title of Defender of the Faith. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. II, 24.

18. Sometimes this construction varies with one without the reflective pronoun.

**to appropriate.** i. (They) had not hesitated *to appropriate to themselves* a part of the spoils. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XIII, 118.

It is illegal in the servants of the state *to appropriate* such acquisitions *to themselves*. MAC., Clive, (539a).

ii. The exposure of the Major's property, which he *had appropriated* ... would not have added to the reputation of Mr. Morgan. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 343. He has no right *to appropriate* what is mine. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXXI, 149b.

He pleaded guilty *to appropriating* the watch of a gentleman. Daily News.

**to arrogate.** i. He allowed himself, as a relation, even more latitude in his language than he would have *arrogated to himself* as Katherine's father. MAR. CRAW., Kath. Land., I, Ch. VIII, 133.

ii. Our presuming to pardon any work is *arrogating* a power that belongs to another. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, IV.

England will never consent that another country should *arrogate* the power of annulling at her pleasure the political system of Europe established by solemn treaties and guaranteed by the consent of the Powers. PITT (Westm. Gaz., No. 6648, 2a).

**to purpose** (Ch. XIX, 20). i. With what pleasure, he thought, would he embark in quest of new scenes and strange adventures, in which he *proposed to himself* to achieve such deeds as should be the theme of many a tale! SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. IX, 102.

ii. The events which I *propose* to relate form only a single act of a great and eventful drama. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 3.

**to reserve.** i. Hume and his confederates *had reserved to themselves* the superintendence of the stores. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 121.

They *reserved to themselves* the right to reconsider the whole problem. Times 1899, 600a.

ii. They *reserve*, as they were bound *to reserve*, all those rights which are vital to our defence. ib., No. 1985, 55a.

19. For the rest the only prepositional objects in which a reflective pronoun has been found up to the time of writing, are the following, all of them containing the preposition (*up*)*on*:

Compounds of *self* are, of course, frequent enough in this function as unattended emphatic pronouns (28, a, 4), or as emphatic reflective pronouns (29, f). It may be added that the following instances, at least some of them, may, with scarcely less justice, be included among those collected in the following §, the line of demarcation between prepositional objects and adverbial adjuncts being often very vague.

**to draw.** Ronald Græme had long been taught . . . to consider his form of religion as a profound secret, and to say nothing whatever in its defence when assailed, lest he should *draw upon himself* the suspicion of belonging to the unpopular and exploded church. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVI, 158.  
This man *draws upon himself* the heavy guilt of innocent blood. JEFFREY, Crit. on Byron's Manfred, (300a).

**to look.** He had a little of the German pride of territory in his composition, and almost *looked upon himself* as owner of a principality. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 109).

**to take.** i. The child of the Marshalsea *took upon herself* a new relation towards the Father. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. VII, 36b.

I did not choose *to take upon myself* the presumption to suppose that I could assist her. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIII, 248.

The Prussian military party *has taken* an enormous responsibility *upon itself*. Times, No. 1975, 875d.

ii. I have *taken upon myself* to make an arrangement for the deduction of a small sum from his quarterly salary. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LIII, 488.

So much of Dr. Wace's address either explicitly or implicitly concerns me, that I *take upon myself* to deal with it. HUXLEY, Lect. and Es., 83b.

Note. In the case that an infinitive (-clause) follows, as in the second group of the above quotations, the reflective pronoun is sometimes replaced by the personal pronoun. In Present English the clause is then usually announced by the anticipating *it*. Compare Ch. III, 24, Obs. III.

i. They *take upon them* to decide for the whole town. SHER., Critic, I, 1.

ii. Mr. Tapley *took it upon him* to issue divers general orders to the waiters. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LIII, 415b.

20. In adverbial adjuncts compounds of *self* in the function of purely reflective pronouns are uncommon, it being mostly more plausible to consider them as unattended emphatic (28, a, 4) or emphatic reflective (29).

When no emphasis is intended, the personal pronoun normally takes the place of the reflective. (23, d.) Here follow some quotations in which the pronoun is, apparently, best understood as purely reflective.

**below.** I should think your ladyship *condescended* a great deal *below yourself*. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VIII, 18.

No woman dresses *below herself* from caprice. LAMB, Es. of El., 2nd Ser., II, 248.1)

Compare 23, d, under *beneath*.

**in front of.** It distressed me to see him (sc. the German Emperor) sit, working listlessly, and now and again staring fixedly *in front of himself*. Times, No. 1988, 115c.

Compare: A simple aged officer staring earnestly *in front of him* — that is the impression which the portrait (sc. of the Kaiser) makes. Ib.

**to.** i. But here the God of my father gave me my wife, and there he took her *to himself* again. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 9.

ii. He took the girl's hand and drew her *to himself*. WALT. BESANT, By Celia's Arbour, I, Ch. I, 15.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *below*, 6, b.



Compare: i. He drew her *to him*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 22a.

I drew her *to me*. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. VI, 182.

ii. As he held his mother *to him*, he longed to tell her. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 69.

iii. That charming fever — that delicious longing; he hugged them *to him*. *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 66.

iv. The trembling mother... drew the children *towards her*. SCOTT, Monast., Ch. II, 60.

21. After certain verbs we sometimes find the reflective pronoun as a redundant object varying with the personal pronoun used reflectively, for which see 23, a. Thus after:

a) *to rest, to sit or to sit down*. In this combination these verbs may also be understood as instances of the frequent conversion of intransitives into causative transitives, which will be discussed at length in a subsequent chapter. For illustration see also ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 68.

i. When my mother is out of breath and *rests herself* in an elbow-chair, I watch her winding her bright curls round her fingers. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 85.

Will you *rest yourself* here an hour, Miss? CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXI, 276.

Compare: He decided *to rest her* in a clump of trees during the afternoon. HARDY, Tess, VII, Ch. LVIII, 511.

The Boers, when they got in rear of the columns knew they were safe, and could *rest themselves* and their horses. Times.

ii. She *sat herself* on a couch in a window. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. II, 13a. After this she came and *sat herself* on a slab of flat stone. RID. HAG., Jess, II, 186.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. She *sat herself down* before a cheerful fire. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXIII, 211.

Day after day, when school was over, and the pupils gone, did Nathaniel Pipkin *sit himself* down at the front window. *Id.*, Pickw., Ch. XVII, 151. He *sat himself down* under the shade of a great chestnut. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 289.

Compare. You may *sit down* twenty with ease. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

*to repent*. Instances seem to be very rare. None are given by MURRAY. Compare also ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., and, for further information about other constructions with this verb see Ch. II, 26.

For the Lord shall judge his people, and *repent himself* for his servants. Bible, Deut., XXXII, 36.

Halliin *repented himself*. Mrs. WARD, Marc., III, 227.

22. The plural reflective pronouns sometimes have the value of the reciprocal pronoun *each other* or *one another*. Thus often after *among* and *between*, and occasionally after *with*. Compare ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 48; *id.*, E. S., XXXI, 155. For illustration see also 23, Note β).

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst. XI.



**among.** And when you are *among yourselves*, how naturally, after the first compliments, do you apply your hands to each other's lappets, and ruffles, and mantuas! SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Lady*, (473b).

The conquerors had quarrelled *among themselves*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 290.

"All this money cannot have been honestly got," said the envious ones *among themselves*. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 5.

Compare: They... have no relief but in passing their afternoons in visits... and their evenings at cards *among each other*. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Lady*, (474b).

If you could hear those boys of fourteen who blush before mothers... talking *among each other* — it would be the woman's turn to blush then. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 26.

The low though extensive hall... was thronged with hot men, who talked *among each other* in twos and threes. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XII, 101.

**between.** Events and tidings brought it about that they (sc. an Englishman and his wife) resolved *between themselves* that they would start immediately. TROL., *Three Tales*, 60.<sup>1)</sup>

It is no time for feuds *between ourselves*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. III. 49.

**with.** Masters, you ought to consider *with yourselves*: to bring in — God shield us! — a lion among the ladies, is a most dreadful thing. MIDS., III, 1, 27  
The convicts quarrelled *with themselves* and the Natives. TROL., *South Africa*, 3.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. In SHAKESPEARE the reflective pronoun seems to be used in this function also in other positions. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 312. The instances to hand, however, also bear another interpretation.

Get thee gone: to-morrow | We'll hear *ourselves* again. MACB., III, 4, 31. (The meaning of this sentence is greatly disputed.)

If they were but a week married, they would talk *themselves* mad. MUCH ADO, II, 1, 369.

## 23. In Old English, which had no reflective pronoun, the personal pronouns were used to express reflectiveness. (2, Obs. II.)

Hie gesamnodon *hīe*. (= They collected *themselves*.)

Hie ābædon *him* wif. SWEET, *Anglo Saxon Primer*, 20. (= They asked for wives *for themselves*.)

This old practice has never been totally abandoned. Frequent instances occur in Middle English and Early Modern English, and not until DRYDEN does it appear to have been discarded from the ordinary written and spoken language. Already in SHAKESPEARE, especially in his prose, the forms in *self* are the usual ones. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 307.

In Late Modern English the use of personal pronouns in a reflective meaning survives only as an archaism, except in adverbial adjuncts after prepositions, where the reflective forms are the exception. (20.) Poets find in it a welcome expedient to satisfy the requirements of metre and rhythm, and also prose-writers will occasionally avail them-

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 48.

selves of it to secure a rhythmical flow for their sentences. Ample illustration being easily accessible both in poetry and literary prose, we may confine ourselves to some few cases.

The reflective personal pronoun is met with:

a) as the direct object.

**to bethink.** I will be assured that I may (sc. take this bond); and that I may be assured, I will *bethink me*. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 37. (For the varied meanings of *to bethink one* see 6.)

*Bethink thee*, is there then no other gift | Which we can make not worthless in thine eyes? *BYRON, Manfred*, I, 1.

A month after her flight she *had bethought her* of Amelia. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 178.

Langham *bethought him*. This afternoon he knew she had a last rehearsal at Searle House. *Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm.*, III, 100.

**to boun.** But when he *boun'd him* to such task, | Well could it (sc. the sword) cleave the strongest casque. *SCOTT, Lord of the Isles*, I, xxviii. (Now quite obsolete, but surviving in the phrases *bound for* (or *to*) = *ready to start* (or *having started*) *for* and *bound on* = *ready to start* (or *having started*) *on* (sc. a journey.)

**to commend.** My Lord, his majesty *commended* him to you by young Osric. *Hamlet*, V, 2, 201. (Compare: *I commend me to you* = I present my kind regards or remembrances; *He commends him(self) to you* = He asks to be kindly remembered to you, sends his kind remembrances; *Commend me to* = remember me kindly to. This use of *to commend* is now obsolete. *MURRAY.*)

**to grieve.** I *grieve me* much for the accident. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16. (Apparently a rare construction.)

**to lay down.** It was a night . . . for the homeless starving wretch *to lay him* down and die. *DICK., Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 211.

**to make.** While she *made her* ready for her ride. *TEN., Lanc. and El.*, 775. (Now only in archaic language or in dialects.)

**to mind.** I *mind me* of it now. *THACK., Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. II, 165. (Now only in archaic language or in dialects.)

**to remember.** And I *remember me* of that past day. *W. MORRIS, Earthly Par.*, Wand. 24a. (Compare: First a man shal remembre him of hise sinnes. *CHAUC., Cant. Tales, Pers. Tale*, § 8. The pronoun more frequently appears as the indirect object. See below under b).

Separate mention may be made of *to lie down*, *to rest*, *to sit* or *to sit down* and *to repent*, after which the reflective personal pronoun may be apprehended as a redundant or emotional object. (21.) According to *MACMILLAN and HAKIM (Eng. Gram. for Indian Schools)*, the use of the reflective personal pronoun after *to lie down* and *to sit (down)* is frequent also in prose and ordinary conversation. (*KONRAD MEIER, E. S.*, XXXI, 324.)

i. He had lost his way and *lain him down* to die. *JEROME, Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. X, 127.

ii. We'll *rest us*. *Mids.*, II, 3, 37.

Here will I *rest me* till the break of day. *Ib.*, III, 2, 446.

iii. There we *sat us*. *SARAH GRAND, Our Manifold Nature*, 107

iv. She went and *sat her* down over against him. *Bible, Gen.*, XXI, 16.

They *sat them down* upon the yellow sand. *TEN., Lotos-eaters*, V, 37.

The Rector *sat him down* to his task. *Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm.*, II, 151.

v. And the children of Israel *repented them* for Benjamin their brother. Bible, Judges, XXI, 6.

Strong, perhaps, *repented him* of the falsehood which he had told to the freehanded colonel. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 258.

I *repent me* of all I did. TEN., Edw. Gray, VI.

Robert *repented him*. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 151.

A foolish girl had *repented her* of her folly. *id.*, *Marc.*, III, 16.

- b) as the indirect object. In this function it is often redundant or emotional. For illustration see also 2, Obs. II.

Let every soldier *hew him* down a bough. *Macb.*, V, 4, 7.

And he *took him* a potsherd to scrape himself withal. Bible, Job, II, 8.

I *made me* a large tent. DEFOE, *Rob. Crus.*, 58.

Note especially the archaic use of the reflective personal pronoun with *to remember*: He had taken the fourth deep draught of the black jack ere he *remembered him* that he had spoken in its dispraise. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIX, 193.

I *remember me* . . . that the lady Nina spoke to you by the great staircase. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 153.

- c) as part of a prepositional object. In this function it does not appear to be very common. See also 19, s. v. *take*, and compare 3, a, 4, Note a. The following quotations are doubtful instances, as bearing different interpretations:

A brother of Vitellius *prepared for him* a feast in which were served, of fish, two thousand dishes, etc. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 108.

Mr. Thackeray died suddenly at the house in Kensington, which he had lately built *for him*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIX, 265.

- d) as part of an adverbial adjunct. In this function it is used practically to the exclusion of the reflective pronoun. (20.)

**about.** He looked *about him*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 208.

**among.** We have here *among us* . . . a brother and a boy. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXV, 221.

**after.** He closed the door *after him*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 17.

**before.** She sate looking *before her*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 389.

**behind.** She at once left the room, and slammed the door *behind her*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 482.

**beneath.** They did not think it *beneath them* to keep in touch with their readers. BOOKMAN, No. 276, 235a.

There are many members of the opposition who have not thought it *beneath them* to inveigh against the Government . . . for [etc.]. *Times*.

Compare 20, under *below*.

**within.** The doctor now felt all the dignity of a landholder rising *within him*. WASH. IRVING, *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 109).

Note a) When attached to an imperative, the reflective personal pronoun, whether logical or emotional, may sometimes also be considered as an original nominative: i. e. the pronoun which is sometimes added to an imperative to indicate emphatically the person spoken to (Ch. I, 67, c; Ch. VIII, 23), may, owing to its position after the verb, have been taken for, and changed into an objective. SHAKESPEARE and his contemporaries seem to have used the nominative *thou* and the objective *thee* after an imperative almost indiscriminately. Compare also Ch. XXXII, 10, e, and JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 188 ff; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 307; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 212.

**to sit.** i. Come hither, Harry, *sit thou* by my bed. Henry IV, B, IV, 5, 182.

ii. *Sit thee* down, Clitus: slaying is the word. Jul. Cæs., V, 5, 4.

**to stay.** i. I prithee, Strato, *stay thou* by thy lord. Ib., V, 5, 44.

ii. But *stay thee*; 'tis the fruits of love I mean. Henry VI, C, III, 2, 58.

**to turn.** i. *Turn thou* unto me. Bible, Psalm, LXIX, 16.

ii. *Turn thee* unto me. id., Psalm, XXV, 16.

Also in the following quotations the pronoun may be understood either as the subject or as an emotional object:

**to break.** Peace, *break thee* off! Haml., I, 1, 40.

**to fare.** i. \* *Fare ye* well! Merch. I, 1, 58.

\*\* So, *fare you* well at once! Jul. Cæs., V, 5, 39.

*Fare you* well, my tenant! SHAW, The Admirable Bashville, I, (296).

ii. But *fare thee* well! Merch. of Ven., II, 3, 4.

*Fare thee* well! and if for ever, | Still for ever *fare thee* well! BYRON.

**to hark.** But *hark thee*, we are now bound for Holyrood. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVII, 160.

**to hear.** *Hear thee*, Gratiano! Merch. of Ven., II, 2, 163.

**to hie.** *Hie thee*, gentle Jew! ib., I, 3, 179.

**to rest.** *Rest ye* here. SCOTT, Lord of the Isles, I, xxx.

*Rest thee* sure | That I shall love thee well and cleave to thee. TEN., CENONE, 156.

Note the alternate employment of *thee* and *thou* and observe the incongruous use of *your* in the following quotation:

But, *hark thee*, Adam . . . if there was a dozen vacant abbacies in your road, . . . draw *thou* never one of their mitres over thy brows. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XX, 207.

β) Sometimes the construction with the (emphatic) reflective pronoun and that with the reflective personal pronoun convey different meanings. This is the case in combinations with the prepositions *between* and *among*. It will be observed that in some of these the reflective pronoun has a reciprocal meaning. (22.)

**between.** i. \* *Between ourselves*, three pounds five shillings and twopence is no bad day's work. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. II, (304). (= *between you and me*, as a matter not to be communicated to others: in this meaning admitting of no variation.)

*Between ourselves*, I would rather we should be more alone. DISRAELI, Endym., I, Ch. I.

Note. In the same meaning *between* (*betwixt*) *friends* in: *Betwixt friends*, I am afraid of being detected in a weakness that [etc.]. SMOL., Humphry Clink, X, 23,

*Between friends*, I think, every man of tolerable parts ought, at my time of day, to be both physician and lawyer. Ib., XI, 23.

\*\* She and Mrs. Girond fell to talking *between themselves*. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XV. (= *in private*.)

\*\*\* They divided the booty *between themselves*. (= *each of them receiving a share, with exclusion of others*.)

ii. \* Settle that *between you*. SHER., Rivals, II, 1. (= *without any outside interference or help*.)

We will write it (sc. the letter) *between us*. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XIX, 165. They've arranged it *between them*. BERN. SHAW, Getting Married, (226).

\*\* *Between them* they caught three or four small fish and a perch. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. II, 24. (= *by their united action or efforts*.)

*Between us* we caught the mouse, and there he is in a pail of water. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 91.



\*\*\* We were but forty years old *between us*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 95. (= *in the aggregate*.)

\*\*\*\* I'll break your faces till you haven't a profile *between you*. DICK., Old Cur. Shop. <sup>1)</sup> (= *as joint property, for joint use*.)

Three of them had but one coat *between them*. THACK., Eng. Hum. <sup>1)</sup>

**among.** i. \* We were not so comfortable *among ourselves*. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 11b. (= *in private*.)

So Jos and his acquaintances dined and drank their claret *among themselves* in silence. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVI, 280.

\*\* The invaders divided Europe *among themselves*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Pref. (= *each of them receiving a share with exclusion of others*.)

\*\*\* Now-a-days we light a pipe and let the girls fight it out *amongst themselves*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, V, 80. (= *without any outside interference*.)

ii. \* Those ten persons, therefore, could make *among them* upwards of forty-eight thousand pins a day. ADAM SMITH, Wealth of Nat., I, Ch. I, 7. (= *by their united action or efforts*.)

One physician . . . assured the Queen that his brethren would kill the king *among them*. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 14.

\*\* That leaves five shillings *among us*. MURRAY, s. v. *among*, 7. (= *in the aggregate, each of us entitled to a share*.)

\*\*\* All the boys and girls had but a couple of chairs *among them*. (= *as joint property, for joint use*.)

\*\*\*\* We have here *among us* a brother and a boy. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXV, 221. (= *in our midst*.)

Note. It may here be observed that in some of these idioms *between* is not seldom met with when the reference is to a larger number than two.

There are only six leading men who do the reviews, and *between them* they cover all the English magazines. MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., I, Ch. IX, 123. Three nations, all of them Teutonic, have to-day a greater naval force *between them* than all the rest of the world. CARNEGIE, Il. Lond. News, No. 3831, 358b.

In the Parliament the United Kingdom would have 220 members, and all the Dominions *between them* only 77. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 1b.

#### COMPOUNDS OF SELF AS EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

#### 24. As emphatic pronouns compounds of *self* modify either nouns or pronouns.

i. I well knew that aspiring beggary is *wretchedness itself*. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. III, (246).

All this activity abroad was far from distracting the Duke's attention from *Normandy itself*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 4, 77.

*Death itself* took its colour from the savage solitude of his life. Ib., 76.

The sight of my passports renders the Governor *civility itself*. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. XI, 125.

ii. There was a sharp whirring noise, that made Mr. Winkle start back, as if *he* had been shot *himself*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

The blue infinity of waters teaches us to forget that *we ourselves* are old. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 26.

Note <sup>a)</sup> In vulgar and colloquial language *own* is sometimes placed between the possessive pronoun and *self* for emphasis.

<sup>1)</sup> HOPPE, Sup. Lex.



There's many things you'll have to alter *your own self* when you gets time to look about you. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVI, 216a.

β) Observe the English equivalents of certain idiomatic Dutch expressions with the emphatic pronoun.

i. *Tell me true*, are you not glad to be fairly shot of him? SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXXI, 292. (= *Zeg nu zelf maar*.)

ii. *Though I say it that should not*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 123. (= *Al zeg ik het zelf*.)

*Though I say it who shouldn't*. PUNCH.

*Though I say it*, I'm better than the best collector he ever done business with. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 33.

iii. *I have it on his own authority*. (?), *Unlucky in Love*, *Lucky at Play*. (= *Ik heb het van hemzelf*.)

25. The emphatic pronouns have not a fixed place in the sentence. Their ordinary position is in immediate succession to the (pro)noun they modify. When, however, this (pro)noun is the subject, they are often put either in the body of a complex or nominal predicate or after the whole of the predicate, the former being the least emphatic, the latter the most emphatic position (Ch. VIII, 98.) For illustration see also 26.

i. They acted as *we ourselves* also acted invariably in similar circumstances. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 42.

ii. Sir Everard had never been *himself* a student. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. III, 31a. He was, a surgeon, and had *himself* taken opium largely. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 40.

William was *himself* a type of transition. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 4, 75.

iii. There was a sharp whirring noise, that made Mr. Winkle start back, as if he had been shot *himself*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

Note α) It stands to reason that the pronoun must be placed in immediate succession to the (pro)noun it belongs to, if from its form it might also refer to another (pro)noun in the sentence. Thus in: *He himself spoke to the Home Secretary about the affair*.

β) The placing of the emphatic pronoun between *to* and the infinitive, as in the following quotation, seems, as yet, to be very rare:

As politician he (sc. Björnstjerne Björnson) was not sufficiently practical *to himself* give form to the causes he inspired and elevated by his oratory. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5295, 2b.

26. The emphatic pronouns sometimes have the secondary meaning of:  
a) *even*, Dutch *zelfs*. In this case they always stand in immediate succession to their head-word, *even* or *very* being sometimes added for further emphasis.

i. The Pope *himself* was forced to preach humanity and moderation to the princes. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 136.

The Gods *themselves* cannot recall their gifts. TEN., *Tithonus*. 49.

There was no physician in London *itself* more skilful than Mr. Brinjis. W. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, Ch. I, 3.

ii. They said that *even* the doctor *himself* was afraid of him. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

Highwaymen sometimes pursued their calling *even* in the metropolis *itself*. JOHN DENNIS, *Good Words*.

- iii. The *very* season *itself* seemed to forbid my reading philosophy. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 33.

b) *for my* (etc.) *part, personally*. In this case their ordinary place is at the end, or at least after the main part of the sentence.

- i. I prefer the dark style *myself* — like my cousin. MARION CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
It is very delightful being towed up by a launch. It prefer it *myself*. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. XVI, 211.
- ii. I do not *myself* care for angling. THEOD. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. IX, 443.
- iii. It is a constant speculation for the reader as to which of the ladies holds the pen (we *ourselves* think it is Jane). *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 13b.  
Compare: *Personally*, I like Englishmen better than Jews. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, II, 45.  
*Personally* I do not like M. de Witt. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. XII, 138.

Note a) According to A. G. VAN HAMEL (*On Anglo-Irish Syntax*, E. S., XLV, 287) *itself* is sometimes used in Anglo-Irish in the sense of *even*, independently of any noun or pronoun in the same sentence.

And he is not tidied or laid out *itself*. J. M. SYNGE, *The Shadow of the Glen*.

Let you go along with her, stranger, if it's raining *itself*. *Ib.*

β) Another curious application of *itself* in Anglo-Irish is its use in the meaning of *so*.

Yet, if it is *itself*, who can help it at all? J. M. SYNGE, *The Shadow of the Glen*.

γ) *Himself* and *herself* in Anglo-Irish often stand respectively for *the master of the house* or *(her) husband* and *the mistress of the house* or *(his wife)*.

She hit *himself* with a worn pick. J. M. SYNGE, *The Playboy of the Western World*.

Some time *herself* will be down. *Id.*, *Riders of the Sea*.

27. The emphatic pronoun, especially *myself*, is sometimes found where there seems to be no occasion for it, and the personal pronoun would appear to be more appropriate. See also Ch. XXXII, 7, b; and compare HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, II, 90.

Won't your brother be angry with you for wishing to marry a penniless girl like *myself*? Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 181.

The German Foreign Secretary has already made, not a complete, but a large disclosure of what has passed in conversation between the German Ambassador in London and *myself* in the summer. *Times*, No. 1822, 953d.

28. a) When the emphatic pronoun modifies a personal pronoun, the latter is, as a rule, expressed only when it is the simple subject of a full sentence or clause. See the quotations in 24—26. In other functions this pronoun is more or less regularly suppressed, delegating to the emphatic pronoun its

grammatical duties. MATZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 11; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 44.

Thus the unattended emphatic pronoun may be:

- 1) the subject of an incomplete sentence or clause.

Who suffers by his whims? *Himself* always. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 78.

The tyrant suffered none but *himself* to wrong his country. MAC., Hist., Ch. I, 136.

We expected that the Dutch should recognize as instantaneously as *ourselves* the wickedness of the institution of slavery. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 44.

*Itself* eternally young, the blue infinity of water teaches us to forget that we ourselves are old. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 26.

When everybody except *ourselves* had gone, I rallied him on his moping pre-occupation. ANT. HOPE, The Prisoner of Zenda, 15.

There sat *one* solitary mouse in the midst of the bones of his companions, *himself* in the last stage of exhaustion. SWEET, Old Chapel.

Some persons, *myself* among the number, let the breath escape on one side only. LAURA SOAMES, Introd. to the Stud. of Phon., 34.

In his campaign he made himself an international force, although *himself* practically without money. Westm. Gaz., No. 5442, 2b.

Compare. "I don't set up to be a lady-killer; but I do own that she's as devilish fond of me as she can be. Anybody can see that with half an eye." — "And you yourself?" THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 131.]

Our unfortunate Turkish allies were in a far more wretched plight than even *we ourselves*. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XI, 153.

And none of them more sheepish, or more innocent, than *I myself*. BLACKM. Lorna Doone, Ch. XVI, 93.

No one knows as much about us that is unworthy as *we ourselves*, and yet no one thinks as highly of us as *we ourselves*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5295, 2c.

Americans follow the course of the war with even more eagerness than *we ourselves*. Graph., No. 2352, 894a.

- 2) the nominal part of the predicate. Compare with this the use of the emphatic reflective pronoun in the same function mentioned in 3, c, Note.

At this long expected change of tactics the old gentleman rose, and....gravely said: "That was *himself*!" STOF., Handl., I, 58 (The Troublesome Auditor).

Compare: I got that letter from Mr. Slope before dinner. It was *you yourself* who gave it to me. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVIII, 247.

It was *you yourself* that wrote to Germany. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. XVI, 131.

There's no doubt that the Vestries have legal powers to play old Harry with slum properties... That didn't matter in the good old times, because the Vestries used to be *us ourselves*. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, III, 63.

It is *we ourselves* who have been giving our German foes a practical lesson in the art of raiding. Il. Lond. News, No. 3945, 727c.

- 3) the non-prepositional object, either in a complete or in an incomplete sentence or clause.

Both were too deeply engrossed with sentiments of interest and commiseration for their royal mistress, to think of anything which regarded *themselves*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXII, 236.

Why do you ask me? Why don't you ask *himself*? TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XVI, 127.

Examine that child as a stranger, and it will startle *yourself*. LYTTON, Caxtons, I, Ch. VI, 25.

We know . . . how that work profits every member of the Alliance as well as *ourselves*. Times, No. 1986, 75a.

Compare: If Lady Rockminster asks *you yourself*, will you listen to her? THACK., Pend., II, Ch. IV, 49.

Note. In the following quotation the personal pronoun is expressed even twice: She hardly dared to take *him* to task, *him himself*. TROLL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIV, 132.

- 4) part of a prepositional word-group in the function of either a prepositional object or an adverbial adjunct. Compare 18 and 19.

You shall hear from one of *themselves*. GOLDSM., She Stoops, IV, (210).

He did not in the least know how to parry the blows that were aimed at *himself*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 45.

If the very few unfavourable remarks made in England *as regards ourselves* are sifted to the bottom, it is made clear that they refer only to the question of the insults to the Queen. Daily Chronicle.

Compare: Was it well done, sir, . . . to deliver what I entrusted to *you yourself*, to the care of another, sir? GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, IV, (218). She said no word that was personal to *him himself*. TROLL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IX, 88.

Juliet, she | So light of foot, so light of spirit — Oh, she | *To me myself* for some three careless moons, | The summer's pilot of an empty heart | Unto the shores of nothing. TEN., Gard. Daught., 15.

Note. In the following quotation the personal pronoun has been retained for clearness: Don't for God's sake speak as saint to sinner, but as *you yourself* to *me myself*. HARDY, Tess, II, Ch. XIV, 122.

- 5) a member of a sentence connected with another by *and* or (*n*)*or*.

*Myself and squires*, with Hamlet and Abdalla, will warrant you against that disgrace. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. II, 21.

I date from those summer holidays the commencement of that familiar and endearing intimacy which ever after existed between *my father and myself*. LYTTON, Caxtons, II, Ch. III, 45.

The very clock had been thrown down by these fellows in their furious hunt after *my mother and myself*. STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., Ch. V, 30.

*My husband or myself* (or *Myself or my husband*) will attend to this.

*Neither my husband nor myself* (or *Neither myself nor my husband*) knew anything of what had happened.

Compare: Whilst the result of the trapper's mission to my home was yet uncertain, and *Museau and I myself* expected the payment of my ransom, I was treated kindly enough. THACK., Virg., Ch. LI, 537.

- b) The suppression of the personal pronoun before the emphatic pronoun, when it is the simple subject of a full sentence or clause, seems to be less common now than it used to be, but the practice has by no means become extinct, repeated instances being met with also in ordinary prose, especially of the forms of the third person singular.

The message that *himself* has sent. ADDISON, Rosamond, I, 5.

St. John is unmarried: he never will marry now. *Himself* has hitherto sufficed to the toil, and the toil draws near its close. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXVIII, 557.

Steele found Addison a stately college Don at Oxford, and *himself* did not make much figure at this place. THACK., Eng. Hum., Steele, 117.



"Have patience!" I replied, "*ourselves* are full | Of social wrong." TEN., Princ., Concl., 72.

It was Beatrice who bade the traveller draw near the fire, and *herself* stirred with a poker the sleepy logs into a blaze. L. B. WALFORD, Stay-at-homes, Ch. I.

*Ourselves* lose by every calamity that happens to our customers. The New Statesman, No. 96, 429.

Note. *One('s)self* hardly tolerates the indefinite *one* before it, but its application in the function of subject, as in the following quotations, is rare:

"How can one feel sorry for people one does not know or has ever seen, —" I began. "Exactly! — How is it possible? And there we have it — how can one feel, when *one's self* is so thoroughly comfortable as to be without any other feeling save that of material ease. MARIE CORELLI, The Sorrows of Satan, 1, Ch. VII, 97.

*Oneself* is the last person upon whom one turns the light of comedy. J. W. BEACH, The Comic Spirit in G. Meredith, Ch. I, 10.

#### COMPOUNDS OF SELF AS EMPHATIC REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

29. As emphatic reflective pronouns the compounds of *self* are sometimes difficult to distinguish from the purely reflective, at least in the written or printed language, which lacks the means of the spoken language, stress and intonation, to express emphasis.

Thus the nature of the compound of *self* in the following quotation is uncertain, although it is probably intended as emphatic:

She generally gave *herself* very good advice (though she very seldom followed it), and sometimes scolded *herself* so severely as to bring tears into her eyes; and once she remembered trying to box her own ears for having cheated *herself* in a game of croquet she was playing against herself, for this curious child was very fond of pretending to be two people. LEWIS CARROLL, Alice's Advent. in Wonderland, Ch. I, 17.

But the context clearly brings out the emphatic nature of the pronoun in:

A good man is as much in awe of *himself* as of a whole assembly. JEREMY, Taylor.

In their fondness for pushing a joke they have not spared even *themselves*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 308.

He has never hurt anybody but *himself*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXVI, 228. When we heard this sentence, we lost all command of *ourselves*. SWEET, Old Chapel.

If people were as satisfied with the degree of happiness they possess as they are with *themselves*, most of us would be quite happy. Westm. Gaz., No. 5295, 2c. How can we arrive at a knowledge of *ourselves*? Never by reflection, but by action. Try to do your duty, and you will at once know *yourself*. And what is your duty? That which the day requires of you. Ib.

Note a) In the following quotations a word-play is based on the two-fold utterance, strong- or weak-stressed, of the compound of *self*.



WOULD-BE CONSIDERATE HOSTESS [to Son of the House] "How inattentive you are, John! You really must look after Mr. Brown. He's helping *himself* to everything!" [Discomfiture of Brown, who, if somewhat shy, is conscious of a very healthy appetite]. PUNCH, 1893, 23 Sept.<sup>1</sup>) HE. "Nellie, you look at that man standing behind me. I don't think I ever saw any one so plain." — SHE. "Hush, dear; you forget *yourself*!" Ib., 1898, 29 Oct., 198a.1)

p) Observe also the following idioms, in which the first compound of *self* is purely reflective, the second emphatic reflective:

- i. At that thought she *drew herself into herself*, tried to harden her heart again, and went to bed, but not to sleep. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XII, 58b. (= Dutch *keerde in tot zich zelf*.)
- ii. The inhabitants (sc. of the street) keep *themselves to themselves*, and watch the doings of other people from behind the window curtains. Eng. Rev., No. 62, 278. (= Dutch *bemoeien zich met hun eigen zaken*.) Most of them have wives, who are described as "quiet, decent, *keep-themselves-to-themselves*" kind of women. Ib.

30. Sometimes the emphatic reflective pronoun represents the emphatic pronoun (attached to the subject) + the reflective pronoun (or personal pronoun used in a reflective meaning).

Thus *I must introduce myself, as the girl has deserted me* (RID. HAGGARD, Mr. Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 36) stands for \**I myself must introduce myself* etc. Similarly *We brought this dreadful ruin on ourselves* (G. LILLO, Fatal Curiosity, III, 3) is equivalent to \**We ourselves have brought this ruin on us* (or *ourselves*). The constructions instanced by either of these substitutes seem to be non-existent, although they would be perfectly intelligible and logically quite correct.

- i. Ah! numskull! I have taken better precautions for you than you did *for yourself*. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, IV, (209).

If a dear girl has no dear mamma to settle matters with the young man, she must do it *for herself*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Won't you help me off with my cloak? No? Then I must do it *for myself*. HALL CAINE, The Christian.

We have been content merely to show that variety exists, and to help the reader to know what he must observe *for himself*. WYLD, The Growth of Eng., Ch. V, 69.

Few among our statesmen have seen anything of Colonial life and Colonial Institutions *for themselves*. Times.

- ii. I know more of you than you do of *yourself*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXVII, 301. He must take care *of himself*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1103.

- iii. James said that he was sorry for the misery which the prisoner had brought *on himself*. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 189.

"They have brought it *on themselves*," said Hereward bitterly. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XVII, 71a.

Note. It will be observed that the idea expressed by the above quotations with *for* may also be expressed by the same sentences without *for*, in which the emphatic pronoun would have its legitimate function as a modifier of the subject placed in back-position. In other words *for* as used in this construction seems superfluous or inorganic.

<sup>1</sup>) STOF., E. S., XXXI, 115.

The construction with superfluous *for* is also found after imperatives, and in infinitive-clauses.

i. "Nay," said I, taking out Mrs. Hoggarty's letter, "read *for yourself*." THACK., Sam. Titm.

Look at it *for yourselves*! PUNCH.

ii. She bade him, if he doubted her, go see *for himself*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!

Better let the girls choose *for themselves*. HALL CAINE, Christ., I, 97.

STOFFEL (E. S. XXXI, 114) tries to establish a difference between *You must find it out for yourself* and *You must find it out yourself*. The former, to him, is equivalent to *You must find it out without the help of others*, the latter to *You must find it out personally*, i. e. *you must not let another find it out for you*. In other words *for yourself*, as used in the above connection, is by STOFFEL considered to be a variant of *by yourself*. (31.) This seems to be making a distinction without a difference. For a discussion of the idiom see also WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng. I, 198; and especially MALMSTEDT, Stud. in Eng. Gram., III.

31. Certain locutions in which the emphatic reflective pronoun is preceded by a preposition deserve special mention. In some of these the component parts have given up more or less their individuality, with the result that the pronoun has lost some of its strong stress. (20.)

**below.** "And how is your mother, Penelope?" — "Thank you, poor mummie's a bit *below herself* this morning — what with the cook and the Kaiser." PUNCH, No. 3830, 453.

**beside.** The fact is, I was a trifle *beside myself*; or rather out of myself, as the French would say. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 7.

She laughed like one *beside herself*. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. X, 50b.

**by.** i. (The boy) dwelt in a little study *by himself*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 237. (= *alone, without any companion*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *by*, 4.)

ii. I'll manage the giants *by myself*. ANDREW LANG, The Blue Fairy Book. (= *without any assistance*.)

**for.** If you take away his artillery from him, he has not a word to say *for himself*. SPECTATOR, No. 105.

Let me see what more she has to say *for herself*. DOR. GERARD, The Etern. Woman, Ch. IV.

**in.** i. The inalienable habit of saving, as an end *in itself*, belonged to the industrious men of a former generation. G. ELIOT, Mill, Ch. XII, 108. (= *apart from any connexion with, or relation to others*; Dutch *op zichzelf*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *in*, 22.)

ii. The refreshing little crunch that it made beneath her feet, seemed *in itself* to invigorate her. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XVII, 153. (= Dutch *alleen reeds*.)

**like.** Spoken *like yourself*, good comrade. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XXV, 106a. (= *as may be expected from you*.)

**of.** Take, therefore, no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things *of itself*. Bible, Matthew, VI, 34. (= *independently of any foreign pressure, spontaneously*; Dutch *zelf* or *uit zichzelf*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *of*, 12, b.)

I *of myself* would never have given you the appointment you now hold. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. V, 224.

- ii. That gentleman's history would fill a *volume of itself*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 181. (= *independently of any foreign aid*; Dutch op zichzelf.)  
 A portion of this forest comes up close behind the mansion and *of itself* gives a character and celebrity to the place. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. III, 19.  
 Our dominions are becoming great nations *of themselves*. BALFOUR (Daily Mail, No. 4451, 5c).  
 There was a certain self-consciousness in the attitude, which *of itself* afforded some excuse for the gossips. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. III.
- iii. The top of my ink-bottle shut *of itself* with a click. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, D, 71. (= *independently of any foreign agency*; Dutch van zelf.)  
 We have stood by, until the thing has happened "*of itself*." Eng. Rev., 1912, Nov., 629.
- out of.** i. I was so overrun with the spleen, that I was perfectly *out of myself*. GAY, The Beggar's Opera, III. (= *out of the ordinary tenor of one's life*; Dutch uit zijn gewone doen.)

ii. Rashleigh was, therefore, much from home and thankful to be drawn *out of himself*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. II, 34. (= *out of one's engrossing thoughts*; Dutch uit zijn gewone gedachtensfeer.)  
 During the time she had spent in the study she had been taken *out of herself*. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 173.
- to.** i. We have but yonder ugly negro boy... and a passenger who has the state cabin *to himself*. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 3. (= *for one's own exclusive use*; Dutch voor zich alleen.)  
 We had the school-room all *to ourselves*. SWEET, Old Chapel.

ii. During the three hours which we have *to ourselves* we rest, write letters and diaries. Westm. Gaz., No. 6630, 6b. (= *without any one intruding on one's privacy*; Dutch voor zich zelf.)

iii. For a time he kept his situation *to himself*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., The Wife, 26. (= *without revealing or uttering (it) to anybody*; Dutch voor zich.)  
 I kept my reflections *to myself*. DICK., Cop., Ch. XLIV, 319b.  
 Keep your compliments *to yourself*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XVII, 233.  
 Compare: "It has altered the destinies of three people." — "Five," Eustacia thought; but she kept that *in*. HARDY, Return of the Native, IV, Ch. IV, 340.

iv. Australians forgather at one hostel, and New Zealanders at another; while the Anglo-Indian, a class *to itself*, divides into provinces, each province having one particular hostel *to itself*. Times. (= *separated from others*; Dutch op zichzelf.)

v. \* A feeble moan told presently that the lady was coming *to herself*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXV, 367. (= *to a state of restored consciousness or composure*; Dutch tot zichzelf or bij.)  
 It was with a start that he suddenly came *to himself*. CON. DOYLE, Ref., 324.  
 He was off in one of those hysterical outbursts which come upon a strong nature when some great crisis is over and gone. Presently he came *to himself* once more, very weary and blushing hotly. Id., Sherl. Holm., II, 103.  
 \*\* At length (he) had recollection enough to throw a little water in her face, by which application she was brought *to herself*. SMOL., Humphry Clink., X, 22.  
 Mrs. Partridge was, at length... brought *to herself*. FIELDING, Tom Jones, II, Ch. IV, 21a.  
 Compare: Her ladyship... has miraculously brought you *to yourself*.

FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, IV, 1 (417), in which a personal pronoun is understood before the emphatic pronoun.

Note. In the application referred to under *v* the pronoun sometimes gets absorbed into *to*, which then is converted into an adverb and receives strong stress.

When he came *to*, (they) saw him safely out of the churchyard. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 63.

I think I must have been senseless for a long time. When I came *to*, I found that it (sc. the thumb) was still bleeding. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 103.

\*\* 'I'll bring her *to*!' said the driver with a brutal grin. MRS. STOWE, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, Ch. XXXIII, 299.<sup>1)</sup>

*within*. i. A prison is a world *within itself*. SCOTT, *The Heart of Mid-Lothian*, Ch. I, 25.

ii. He thought *within himself* that [etc.]. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 162.

---

<sup>1)</sup> M'RRAY.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

### OBSERVATIONS ON PERSON-EXHIBITING PRONOUNS IN GENERAL.

#### PERSON-EXHIBITING PRONOUNS USED INDEFINITELY.

1. The *plural* person-exhibiting pronouns are often applied in a more or less indefinite way. As the corresponding Dutch pronouns are practically used in the same shades of meaning and in the same kinds of diction, there seems to be little need of any detailed comment. The following observations may, therefore, suffice. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2097—8, 2110; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 325.

- a) In their altered function the plural pronouns of the first person are, of course, used only when what is expressed in the predicate distinctly applies to the speaker or writer as well as to other persons.

We learn *our* own language very gradually by hearing *our* parents, nurses, and teachers repeat a word a great many times, and seeing them point to the thing or person for which the word stands. WYLD, *The Growth of Eng.*, Ch. I, 5.

- b) *You*, etc. is more clearly indefinite than either *we*, etc. or *they*, etc., and, accordingly, approaches more closely to the Dutch *men*, the French *on* or the German *man*.

"*You* mustn't marry more than one person at a time, may *you* Peggotty?" — "Certainly not," replies Peggotty with the promptest decision. — "But if *you* marry a person and that person dies, why then *you* may marry another person, mayn't *you*, Peggotty?" — "*You* may," says Peggotty, "if *you* choose, my dear." DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. II, 9.

You and everybody have a notion that there is, or should be an existence of *yours* beyond *you*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 43a.

The right bank of a river is on *your* right side when *you* stand with *your* face to its source. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2097.

Note. *You* etc. is, of course, avoided when it might give offence. Thus it would hardly do to say, if we wish our words to be understood in a generalizing way:

*You* haven't always *your* wits about *you*.

- c) The pronouns of the third person plural are especially used when a number, group or class of persons are meant exclusive of both the



speaker and the person(s) spoken to. *They* is most frequent as the subject of such verbs as *to say*, *to tell*. *They say (They tell me) there is no danger*. BAIN, Comp. 61.

*They* want to send out more missionaries. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 8.

At Vienna *they* were not altogether displeased at the King's landing in Germany. BAIN, Comp., 61.

In Germany *they* manage things better. *Ib.*

*They* say we shall have a hard winter. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2098.

2. Obs. I. The indefinite personal pronouns are chiefly used as nominatives or as objectives dependent on a preceding nominative. As independent objectives they are less common, at least so far as that of the third person is concerned. For instances of the independent indefinite *you* see also Obs. IV and V.

i. O, wad some power the giftie gie *us*, | To see oursel's as ithers see *us*. BURNS.

ii. A portrait that looks at *you*, if it's like at all, is so much more like than one that looks away. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., I, Ch. X, 185.

A blind man will not thank *you* for a looking glass. Proverb.

iii. By living a year or two in town she's as fond of gauze and French frippery as the best of *them*. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, I, (169). (the best of them = the fashionable people.)

Poor Dolf will yet hold up his head with the best of *them*! WASH. IRV., Dolf. Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 111).

There will be such a ball danced in a day or two as some of 'em has (= have) never heard the chune (= tune) of. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXX, 316.

- II. When not depending on a preceding personal pronoun, only the conjoint possessive pronoun of the first person is at all frequent in an indefinite sense. Absolute possessive pronouns of the third person, whether conjoint or absolute, are not, apparently, capable of being thus used. For instances of the indefinite *your* see also Obs. IV and V.

i. *Our* flatterers are *our* worst enemies.

ii. Last August, when he (sc. the Englishman) decided to embark upon it (sc. the war), he took care to prop it up with a just and moral cause, forgetting only, as everybody does, that *your* idea of justice and morality may differ substantially from *your* neighbour's. Graph., No. 2359, 212a.

- III. Sometimes there is a passing of one person to another.

*You* sometimes hear it said that *we* ought to pronounce in such and such a way, because the word is so written. WYLD, The Growth of Eng., Ch. I, 7.

- IV. a) Not seldom the pronouns of the second person are used, although there is a distinct reference to the speaker or writer himself. In this case the indefinite *one* is at least as common, in style, that is, which is not distinctly colloquial. See Ch. XL, 151b. Our Turkish captives are as fierce and intractable as Odin himself could have been; yet two months in my household, . . . under the management of my master of the slaves, has made them humble, submissive, serviceable, and observant of *your* will. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. II, 19.

Yes! with a mother-in-law who is a perfect Turk and Tartar, for all I hear — with Indian war-whoops howling all round *you*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVII, 173.

I have been hiding, sir, at a place where people never think of finding *you*. Id., *Henry Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 243.

Thus also in reported speech, as in: She was occupied in telling me an immense long story about her waltzing with the Count de Schloppen-zollern, . . . and how odd she thought it to go whirling round the room with a great man's arm round *your* waist. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 43.

β) The application of *we* (or *us*) in the way of *one* is less frequent.

This (sc. Lancashire *r*) . . . is difficult to imitate unless *we* have always been in the habit of using the sound. WYLD, *The Growth of Eng.*, Ch. IV, 51.

V. *You* and *your* also refer only vaguely to the person(s) spoken to in such emotional colloquialisms as are instanced in the following quotations. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2110; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 325.

i. \* He could knock *you* off forty Latin verses in an hour. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

A pleasant sort o' soft woman may go on breeding *you* stupid lads and 'cute wenches. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 13.

Often, too, you will find some faculty strikingly developed; the child will have a turn for mechanics, perhaps, and make *you* a model of a steam-boat — or it will have an ear tuned to verse, and will write *you* a poem like that it has got by heart from 'the Speaker'. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. VI, 25. (Observe the different shades of meaning of the first *you* and the second and third *you*.)

\*\* Mr. Squills . . . was a phrenologist, placed his hand on my forehead. "Gad, sir, here's ideality *for you*; and bless my soul, what a constructiveness!" Ib., I, Ch. V, 23.

ii. There is not a more fearful wild-fowl than *your lion*. Mids., III, 1, 33.

I detest *your three chairs and a bolster*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, I, (176). *Your mere puny stripling*, that winced at the least flourish of the rod, was passed by with indulgence. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 345.

He has spent but a few pounds of *your mortal money*; three or four, perhaps. Is that so much that he deserves this praise? DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 48.

*Your true rustic* turns his back on his interlocutor. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. II, 13.

Note. It will have been observed that the indefinite *your* as used in the above quotations is distinctly depreciative. Its connotation may also be appreciative, apparently, chiefly when modifying the nominal part of the predicate, as in:

This is *your true life*, my boy! WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 133).

In the following quotation *your* may also be intended as appreciative: I could munch *your* good dry oats. Mids., IV, 1, 35.

3. Also the masculine singular pronouns may be indefinite in meaning.

a) As has already been pointed out in Ch. XXVI, 32, they are not infrequently applied, also in the latest English, as reference-words of the indefinite *one*.

- b) Early Modern English also has them in an indefinite function as independent words.

And, at our stamp, here o'er and o'er one falls; | *He* murder cries and help from Athens calls. *Mids.*, III, 2, 5.

Were I king, | I should cut off the nobles for their lands; | Desire *his* jewels, and this other's house. *Macb.*, IV, 3, 80.

Now, for your answer: | As there is no firm reason to be render'd, | Why *he* cannot abide a gaping pig; | Why *he*, a harmless necessary cat; | Why *he*, a woollen bag-pipe; but of force | Must yield to such inevitable shame [etc.]. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 53ff.

- c) For the indefinite use of these pronouns, as well as their plurals, as determinatives see Ch. XXXII, 18, *f*, and Ch. XXXIII, 13.

#### SPECIAL APPLICATIONS OF THE PLURAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

4. As in Dutch, the plural of the first person is sometimes used by sovereigns, especially in public utterances, when speaking of themselves.

About this Plural of Majesty or Plural of Dignity, as it is commonly called, SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2095) observes: "We see the beginnings of this usage in Old-English laws, where the king speaks of himself as *ic*, and then goes on to say *wē bebēodath*.. 'we command..', the *wē* being meant to include the witan or councillors." Compare also KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, § 276; ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 221.

*We* were not born to sue, but to command. *Rich.* II, II, 1, 196.

Fair and noble hostess, | *We* are your guest to-night. *Macb.*, I, 6, 24.

Should *our* host murder *us* on this spot — *us*, his king and his kinsman, ... *our* fate will be little lightened, but, on the contrary greatly aggravated, by your stirring. *Scott, Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 354.

The Queen said ...: "*We* are this day fortunate — *we* enjoy the company of *our* amiable hostess at an unusual hour. *Id.*, *Abbot*, Ch. XXI, 225.

Note. This practice seems to have become unusual or extinct in the personal utterances of sovereigns to their audiences, having been preserved only in public instruments.

Thus King George V in his reply to the address of the Corporation of Bombay uses *I*, etc.:

You have rightly said that *I* am no stranger among you [etc.]. *Times*, No. 1823, 974*b*.

Similarly in his Address on the occasion of the opening of the Coronation Durbar:

It is with genuine feelings of thankfulness and satisfaction that *I* stand here to-day among you [etc.]. *Id.*, No. 1824, 1001*d*.

But in the instrument announcing the fact that the seat of the Government of India will be transferred from Calcutta to Delhi, we find *we*, etc.: *We* are pleased to announce to Our People [etc.]. *Id.*

5. The plural is sometimes used by authors or writers in speaking of themselves. According to SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2096) this

Plural of Modesty or Editorial We, as it is sometimes called, "arose probably from using *we* in the indefinite sense of *myself and the other authorities on the subject*".

- a) The practice seems to be regular in the language of editors of newspapers or other political periodicals, the notion being that they speak also on behalf of their party, co-editors, etc.

*We* said last week that there could be only one justification for continuing the Conference over the recess. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5371, 1b.

A short time ago *we* urged the Government to consider whether it would not be well that the Imperial Conference should be held this year, as it would be held in the ordinary course, if there were no war. *Times*, No. 1986, 75b.

- b) It seems to be quite common in sentences or clauses inserted into, or appended to longer passages, and bearing solely on the incidents described in them.

i. Arabella Allen repaired to her place of destination, wherever it might have been — *we* dare say Mr. Winkle knew, but *we* confess *we* don't. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 272—3.

Mr. Cuff paused, turned down his coat sleeves again, put his hands into his pockets, and walked away with a sneer. But he never meddled personally with the grocer's boy after that; though *we* must do him the justice to say he always spoke of Mr. Dobbin with contempt behind his back. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 92.

ii. Perhaps some beloved female subscriber has arrayed an ass in the splendour and glory of her imagination; admired his dullness as manly simplicity; worshipped his selfishness as manly superiority; treated his stupidity as majestic gravity, and used him as the brilliant fairy Titania did a certain weaver at Athens. *I* think *I* have seen such comedies of errors going on in the world. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XIII, 127.

- c) But in observations of a more general character, referring to the whole composition or to a portion of it, the singular pronouns are more frequent than the plural.

i. As *we* do not disdain to borrow wit or wisdom from any man who is capable of lending *us* either, *we* have condescended to take a hint from these honest virtualisers. *FIELDING*, *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. I, 1a.

Having premised thus much, *we* will now detain those who like *our* bill of fare no longer from their diet. *Ib.*, 2a.

*We* have said that Mr. Harry Warrington brought his colonial modesty along with him to the old country. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 314.

*We* had at one time determined to omit Hobbes from *our* History. *LEWES*, *Biogr. Hist. of Phil.*, 439.

ii. Reader, *I* think proper, before *we* proceed any farther together, to acquaint thee that *I* intend to digress, through this whole history, as often as *I* see occasion. *FIELDING*, *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. II, 2b.

*I* have told my reader in the preceding chapter, that Mr. Allworthy inherited a large fortune. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 2b.

If *I* had the pen of a Napier, or a Bell's life, *I* should like to describe this combat properly. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

- d) In prefaces, dedicatory epistles, introductory observations, etc., designed to give some general information about the literary composition, for instance about the object with which it has been written, the scope within which the subject-matter ranges, the materials that have been



utilized, and the diction, verse, measure, etc. that have been employed in its composition; the plural pronouns are unusual.

Thus only the singular forms are found in the prefaces, etc., which the following writers have prefixed to their compositions: SPENSER, DRYDEN, POPE, JOHNSON, WORDSWORTH, DICKENS, THACKERAY.

MACAULAY uses the singular in setting forth the general character of his History. In his Essays, whether he comments on the treatise or book reviewed or on the personages or events described in them, the plural forms are, however, used throughout.

- i. *I* purpose to write the history of England from the accession of King James the Second down to a time which is within the memory of men still living. MAC., Hist., Ch. I.
- ii. But *we* will not go into the discussion of these points. MAC., Milton, (2a).  
We venture to say . . . that no poet has ever had to struggle with more unfavourable circumstances than Milton. Ib., (2b).

WYLD in his *The Growth of English* refers to himself by the singular pronouns in the Preface, but in the body of the book he uses the plural pronouns more frequently than the singular, sometimes in reminding his reader of some fundamental truth, sometimes in drawing his attention to the point to which the argument has proceeded or calling upon him to mark the progress of the discourse, sometimes for no apparent reason.

- i. \* *My* experience leads me to believe that it is hardly possible to state things too simply or too plainly in a work designed for beginners, and *I* think [etc.]. Preface, 1.  
*I* can do no more in a little book like this than show you how you should begin the study of your own English. Ib., Ch. II, 12.  
*I* shall only mention a few points which it is very easy for each one to find out for himself with a little careful observation. *I* begin with consonants formed with the lips. Ib., 19.  
To prevent error, *I* have tried to pick out only such words as will contain the desired sound, in the pronunciation of every speaker who uses the sound at all, unless, of course, his natural dialect is very different indeed from *mine*. Ib., Ch. III, 28.
- ii. \* *We* have said that *we* can express *our* thought by gestures or signs. Ib., Ch. I, 2. (Note the difference between the first and the second *we*.)  
*We* have already said that the sounds of speech themselves are only the symbols of thoughts, not the thoughts themselves. Ib., Ch. I, 7.  
\*\* In this chapter *we* have tried to make clear the following points. Ib., Ch. I, 9.  
*We* now come to Vowels. Ib., Ch. II, 15.  
*We* want just now to consider more especially what that way of expressing our thoughts is that we call 'speech', or 'language'. Ib., Ch. I, 3.  
\*\*\* It will be easier to explain this later on, when *we* have said something about what is called the history of language. Ib., 8.  
The first thing which must be observed in studying a language is its pronunciation. *We* therefore begin our survey of our own language by enumerating the sounds now in use in educated polite speech. Ib., Ch. III, 28.

6. Obs. I. Sometimes a writer passes abruptly from the plural to the singular, or vice versa, without any apparent reason.

- i. The provision then which *we* have here made, is no other than Human Nature. Nor do *I* fear that *my* sensible reader, though most luxurious

in his taste, will start, cavil or be offended, because *I* have named but one article. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. I, 1b.

- ii. *I* know that the tune *I* am piping is a very mild one (although there are some terrific chapters coming presently), and must beg the good-natured reader to remember, that *we* are only discoursing at present about a stock-broker's family in Russell Square. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 52.

- II. Another expedient to avoid the egotism attaching to the singular pronouns is the use of such expressions as *the present writer* (*speaker*, etc.), *the author* (*writer*, etc.). Compare Ch. XXXVI, 4, *b*, Note; 11, *e*, and also MURRAY, s. v. *present*, 2.

- i. Finally, suppose Harry did not care to spell so elegantly for Mrs. Mountain as for his lady-mother, what affair is that of *the present biographer*? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXX, 310.

Of course it does not become *the present writer* ... to make fun of their hospitality. *Id.*, *A Little Din.* at Tim., Ch. VII.

*The present writer* remembers hearing it (sc. this thesis) expounded by an eminent German statesman. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 11a.

- ii. This merely proves that your way of speaking is different in this particular respect from that of *the writer*. WYLD, *The Growth of English*, Ch. III, 12.

- III. Even in the best writers we sometimes find an abrupt passing from the third person to the first.

It was *the author's* intention, faithful to history, to depict all the characters of this tale in their proper costumes, as they wore them at the commencement of the century. But when *I* remember the appearance of people in those days ... *I* have not the heart to disfigure my heroes and heroines by costumes so hideous. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 64, footnote.

- 7. *a*) Also in other cases the plural is sometimes used by a speaker in referring to himself.

ABBOT. Herman! *I* command thee, | Knock, and apprise the Count of my approach. — HERM. *We* dare not. BYRON, *Manfred* III, 3, (298a).

"*I* have no doubt, Mrs. Raddle," said Bob Sawyer, "that before the middle of next week *we* shall be able to set *ourselves* quite square, and go on, on a better system, afterwards." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXII, 286.

- b*) In colloquial language the use of *us* instead of *me* is quite common, at least after an imperative. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2096.

Give *us* your hand, Frank. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 335.

Come, let *us* see some of her letters. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. IX, 101.

- 8. *Ourselves* is often met with instead of *myself* in the language of sovereigns and writers in speaking of themselves.

The practice seems to be less common now than it used to be, *ourselves* being the ordinary form in Present English. Compare KONRAD MEIER, *E. S.*, XXXI, 324; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, I, 322; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 4.13.

Now for *ourselves* and for this time of meeting. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 26. (In an earlier part of this, the first speech of the King, we find *ourselves*: Yet so far hath discretion fought with nature That *we* with wisest sorrow think on him. | Together with remembrance of *ourselves*.)

We will see France *ourselves* — we will *ourselves* charge him with our wrongs, and *ourselves* state to him the reparation which we expect and demand. SCOTT, Quent. Ch. XXX, 385.

We feel that in this place we lay *ourselves* open to the inquiry whether Mr. Winkle was whispering, during this brief conversation, to Arabella Allen. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 273.

We think we have hinted elsewhere, that Mr. Benjamin Allen had a way of becoming sentimental after brandy. The case is not a peculiar one, as we *ourselves* can testify. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 351.

Howbeit *ourselves*, foreseeing casualty, | Nor willing men should come among us, learnt, | For many weary moons before we came, | This craft of healing. TEN., Princ., III, 300. (Thus throughout this poem. In the *Idylls*, however, *ourselves* seems to be ordinary word in Arthur's utterances concerning himself, so far as the plural of dignity is employed. Thus: Since the knight | Came not to us, of us to claim the prize, | *Ourselves* will send it after. LANC. & EL., 543. It should, be observed that the plural of dignity is used only exceptionally in these poems. See, for example, the Holy Grail, the Passing of Arthur.)

- ii. We wish, however, to avail *ourselves* of the interest, transient as it may be, which this work has excited. MAC., Milton, (2a).

For *ourselves*, we own that we do not understand the common phrase, a good man, but a bad king. *Ib.*, (16a). (Thus throughout the whole collection.)

Note. The use of *ourselves* in a quasi-indefinite meaning, as in the following quotation, seems to be rare:

We are to love our neighbour as *ourselves*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. I, 18.

9. Sometimes a speaker, in using plural pronouns of the first person, in reality refers to the person(s) spoken to.

This form of speech may be the expression of a courteous identifying of the latter's interests with the speaker's own, but seems to be as frequently employed to mark sarcasm or some other unfriendly emotion.

"Well, but the news, my young master . . . what did the Regent say to you?" — "Nothing that I am to repeat again." — "Why, heyday, . . . how prudent *we* are become all of a sudden." SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XIX, 191.

Monsieur Blaise . . . waited upon him now. "'Tis well, 'tis well!" said Blaise, that night . . . when they lay again at an inn. "*We* are a little lord here; *we* shall see what *we* are when we come to Castlewood, where my lady is." THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. III, 22.

"My poor dear child," cried Miss Crawley, who was always quite ready to be sentimental, "is *our* passion unrequited then? Are *we* pining in secret? Tell me all and let me console you." *Id.*, Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 159.

"Oho!" said Dunsey, turning his head on one side, and trying to speak in a mincing treble. "And there's sweet Miss Nancy coming; and *we* shall dance with her and promise never to be naughty again, and be taken into favour." G. ELIOT, Silas Marner, I, Ch. III, 22.

She was going to bestow on me a kiss, in her schoolgirl fashion of showing her delight: but I said, "Steady! Let *us* be steady, and know what *we* are about, and find out the meaning of *our* magnificence." CH. BRONTË, Vil., Ch. IX, 107.

The old man, who looked fresh and rosy in spite of his gout, looked at her slyly. "And *we* have grown up! Our hair is braided around *our* head, *our* skirts are long, and *we* have a figure! To say nothing of a lover." BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. I, 112.

FAMILY PHYSICIAN (to Cleopatra). "Ah! *we've* been drinking pearls again, have *we*?" PUNCH, No. 3686, 161.

How are *we* this morning, ma'am? HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou Gavest me*, Ch. III, 11.

What! Sir Patrick! And how are *we* to-day? BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, I, 17.

Ah, Mrs. Dudebat! And how are *we* to-day? *ib.*, III, 72.

Note α) In the following quotation the speaker passes from the plural to the singular of the first person, to resume soon after the ordinary form of address. The use of *my nephew* is on a par with that of *my lord* and *my lady* in the third person. Compare Ch. XXXII, 45. "To what the devil does this tend, sir? and how does the secret which you have surprised, concern me, I should like to know?" asked Major Pendennis, with great majesty. — "How does it concern me, indeed? how grand *we* are! How does it concern *my nephew*, I wonder? How does it concern *my nephew's* seat in Parlyment: and to subornation to bigamy? How does it concern that? What, are *you* to be the only man to have a secret, and to trade on it?" THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 341.

β) The use of the plural pronouns of the first person to denote (a) persons other than either the speaker or the person(s) spoken to, seems to be less common.

Clara, my dear, you will not be made uncomfortable any more, I hope. We shall soon improve *our* youthful humours. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23b. (The speaker is Mr. Murdstone, and *ours* refers to his unhappy step-child.)

Blanche, . . . seeing Lickcheese's overcoat on her chair, takes it up, amused, and looks at the fur. THE PARLOUR MAID. Oh, *we* are fine, ain't *we*, Miss Blanche? I think Mr. Lickcheese must have come into a legacy. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, III, 58.

# 10. The possessive *our* has some applications of its own, which are not found in the corresponding personal or reflective pronoun.

a) *Our* sometimes has the function of drawing the person (animal or thing) spoken about within the hearer's or reader's interest. Thus in the language of narrative we often find such collocations as *our hero*, *our young friend*, *our young scapegrace*, etc. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2109.

Behold then *our hero*, all at once transformed from an unlucky urchin, running wild about the streets, to a student of medicine. WASH. IRVING, *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 107).

But what did *our* Pen care? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 5.

Note. Occasionally the singular *my* is similarly employed.

*My juvenal*, being beyond measure appalled at his own unexpected and unmerited success in this strange encounter, takes the flight and leaves me here. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 288.

b) Sometimes *our* is made to express the same secondary notion as *your*, as described below in 2, Obs. V. Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2110. Gus said I must go to the best place, to be sure, and have none of *our* cheap and common east-end stuff. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 49.

*Our* medical guide, philosopher, and friend is like the hero in a melodrama, he always comes upon the scene just, and only just, in the nick of time. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 71.

Observe that in the celebrated passage from *Hamlet* (I, 5, 167): "There are more things in heaven and earth, Horatio, | Than are dreamt of in *your* philosophy," several editors prefer to read *our*, which is in the folio of 1623. instead of *your*, which is in the quarto of 1604.



USE OF THE PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, AS COMPARED  
WITH THE PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

11. The ordinary pronouns in speaking to a single person are now the plural *you, your, yours, yourself*.

"The origin of this custom is to be found in the official Latin of the "later Roman Empire, in which a great person of state was addressed "with *you* instead of *thou*, just as, in formal documents, he wrote *we* "instead of *I*. The use of the plural *you* as a mark of respect, passed "into all the Romanic languages, and from them into German, Dutch "and Scandinavian. It is a well-known fact that forms of politeness "originally used only in addressing superiors have in all languages a "tendency to become more and more widely applied; and hence in "Europe generally the singular *thou* has, except in religious language "and in diction more or less poetical, come to be used only in speaking "to intimate friends or inferiors. In England, during the last two "centuries, the use of *thou*, so far as ordinary language is concerned, "has become obsolete; it is only among the speakers of some northern "dialects that it continues to be employed by parents to their children, "or by brothers and sisters to each other. Our language has thus lost "whatever advantage it had gained by having a polite as well as a "familiar form of address; and unfortunately the form that has survived "is ambiguous. There is a translation of the New Testament into "modern English in which *you* is everywhere substituted for *thou*, "except in addresses to the Deity. It is a significant fact that in one "place the translator has felt obliged to inform his readers by a footnote "that in the original the pronoun changes from the plural to the sin- "gular. The English language is, in respect of clearness, decidedly "the worse for the change which has abolished the formal distinction "of number in the second person of the pronoun and the verb." BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 62 63.

For further information see also ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 231—235; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 289<sup>a-h</sup>; id., *E. S.*, XVII; STOF., *Taal-studie*, II, 32; LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus.*, Acc., V; JESPERSEN, *Growth and Struct.*, § 238—9; id., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 2.8.

a) According to KELLNER (*Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, § 277) the use of the plural of courtesy did not appear until the thirteenth century. In CHAUCER's *Knights Tale* (722—763) the combatant knights address each other with *thou*, etc.

The Host in addressing the different persons that make up the medley party with whom he sets out on his pilgrimage, uses the plural or the singular pronouns, according to their rank and station. Thus in speaking to the Monk he says:

Now telleth ye, sir Monk, if that ye conne. | Sumwhat, to quyte with the  
Knights tale. *The Miller's Prologue*.

But in addressing himself to the drunken miller he uses the singular:  
Tel on, a devel wey! | *Thou* art a fool, *thy* wit is overcome. ib.

So does the Reve:

Stint thy clappe, | Lat be *thy* lewed dronken harlotrye. Ib.

The miller in his reply to the Reve also uses the singular:

Leve brother Osewold, | Who hath no wyf, he is no cokewold. | But I sey not therefore that *thou* art oon. Ib.

- b) 1) At the time of SHAKESPEARE the plural nouns had become the usual polite forms of address. See, for instance, the dialogue between Brutus and Cassius in *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3 and that between Macbeth and Banquo in *Macb.*, I, 3.

Duncan in speaking to his subjects, Macbeth and Banquo, uses the singular forms; thus also in his message to the former through Rosse. But the laws of courtesy prompt him to address Lady Macbeth, his hostess, with *you*, etc.

The use of *thou*, etc. in speaking to strangers who were not inferiors, implied a touch of contempt. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 233. This is shown by the following quotation:

If *thou* *thou*'st him some thrice, it shall not be amiss. *Twelfth Night*, III, 2, 48.

Observe also that Portia in speaking to Shylock (*Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1) mostly uses the singular forms, while in addressing herself to Antonio and her husband in the same scene, she invariably employs the plural forms.

- 2) The singular pronouns were used especially to mark:

- a) loving familiarity, as of parents to their children and husbands to their wives. Children mostly addressed their parents with *you*, etc.; wives varied between *thou*, etc. and *you*, etc., but used the latter more frequently than the former.

Thus Prospero (see for instance *Tempest*, I, 2) addresses his daughter with *thou*, etc.; Miranda answers with *you*, etc.

Lady Macd. speaking to her son says: "How wilt *thou* do for a father?" The son replies: "Nay, how will *you* do for a husband?" *Macb.*, IV, 2, 38—39.

Lady Macbeth in welcoming her husband home uses the singular, but soon passes to the plural pronouns, which she regularly uses in the sequel of this interview:

*Thy* letters have transported me beyond | This ignorant present... *Your* face, my thane, is as a book where men | May read strange matters. To beguile the time, | Look like the time; bear welcome in *your* eye, | *Your* hand, *your* tongue. *Macb.*, I, 5, 57—66.

In the seventh scene of the same act, in the middle of her passionate appeal to her husband not to flinch from his half-formed resolve, she for a moment forgets her station as the wife of a nobleman and addresses him with *thou*, etc., but she soon recollects herself and resumes the courteous *you* with which she began:

LADY M. Was the hope drunk | Wherein *you* dress'd *yourself*? hath it slept since? | And wakes it now, to look so green and pale | At what it did so freely? From this time | Such I account *thy* love. Art *thou* afraid? | To be the same in *thine* own act and valour | As *thou* art in desire? Wouldst *thou* have that | Which *thou* esteem'st the ornament of

life, | And live a coward in *thine* own esteem, | Letting 'I dare not' wait upon 'I would', | Like the poor cat i' the adage? — MACB. Prithee, peace: | I dare do all that may become a man; | Who dares do more is none. | — LADY M. What beast was't, then, | That made *you* break this enterprise to me? | When *you* durst do it, then *you* were a man . . . Macb., I, 7, 35—49.

In Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 204—308 Portia uses the plural pronouns throughout in speaking to her husband, the latter answers with the same forms, except towards the end, where his loving tenderness for his wife prompts him to use the affectionate *thy*:

Portia, go in awhile; | And by and by *thy* bosom shall partake | The secrets of my heart.

- β) affection towards friends. Jestings, however, hardly bears the ponderous verbal termination *est*; hence we sometimes meet with a sudden turning from the singular to the plural forms. A good example is afforded by the conversation of Valentine and Proteus in the opening lines of *The Two Gentleman of Verona*. In the first twenty lines we find the two friends in the earnest dialogue of leave-taking using the affectionate *thou*, etc. But the singular forms are discarded as soon as they fall to jesting.

- γ) good-humoured superiority to servants. Thus Brutus in speaking to his attendant, Lucius:

"Bear with me, good boy, I am much forgetful. Canst *thou* hold up thy heavy eyes awhile, | And touch thy instrument a strain or two?" — "Ay, my lord, an't please *you*." — "It does, my boy: I trouble *thee* too much, but *thou* art willing." Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 255—259.

Juliet in speaking to the nurse says:

Now, nurse, what news? What hast *thou* there? the cords | That Romeo bid *thee* fetch? Romeo and Juliet, III, 2, 34.

- 3) The changes in a man's temper are often reflected in his use of the pronouns of address. Thus Hotspur in addressing his wife mostly uses *thou*, etc., but when he becomes serious, he passes to *you*, etc. See especially Henry IV, A, II, 3, 103—115.

When a master is speaking to a servant, the use of *you* for *thou* mostly marks a change of familiarity to aloofness, much as a passing from *jij* to *u* in Dutch.

- 4) In speaking to persons of inferior rank the introduction of the vocative *sir* often announces a changing from *thou* to *you*. As an instance we may cite the following words spoken by Oliver to his brother Orlando:

And what wilt *thou* do?, beg, when that is spent? Well, *sir*, get *you* in: I will not long be troubled with *you*; *you* shall have some part of *your* will. I pray *you*, leave me. As *you* like it, I, I, 79.

Compare also the words addressed by Flavius to the different commoners in Jul. Cæs.:

Speak, what trade *art thou*? Jul. Cæs., I, 1, 5.

You, *sir*, what trade are *you*? Ib., I, 1, 9.

- c) In the course of the 17th and 18th centuries the singular forms fell more and more into disuse in ordinary language. Instances are not, however, rare.

HARD. (to his daughter) What a quantity of superfluous silk hast *thou* about *thee*! GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, I, (169).

d) In the English of the 19th and 20th centuries the older practice is sometimes followed archaically.

1) Thus in CHARLES KINGSLEY's *Hypatia*, Ch. I, Pamba, in up-braiding Philammon usually addresses the youth with *thou*, etc., while the latter in his reply uses *you*, etc.

2) Also among the lower classes of some districts the practice of using *thou*, etc. to children seems to have kept its ground.

"Oh, father, what can I do for *you*? Do tell me! I'll do anything." — "I know *thou* wilt. *Thou* must not fret *thyself* ill, that's the first thing I ask." Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. III, 19.

3) Occasionally an excited state of mind causes a speaker to use the singular pronouns, sometimes in a discourse which begins or (and) ends with the ordinary *you*. A good instance is found in CHARL. BRONTË's *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, where Mr. Rochester relates the revulsion in his feelings and his longing desire to meet his beloved Jane. The passage with *thou* etc. alone is here set down:

I longed for *thee*, Janet! Oh! I longed for *thee* both with soul and flesh!

Here is another instance:

"And I think I did my duty to my husband, though I own I left my papa for him," added Mrs. Lambert, softly. — "Excellent wench! Perdition catch my soul! but I do love *thee*, Molly!" says the good colonel. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 339.

4) Also when a writer, turning from the thread of his narrative, addresses his readers, we sometimes find him using the singular pronouns.

I dare say I made a gaby of myself to the world: pray, my good friend, hast *thou* never done likewise? If *thou* hast never been a fool, be sure *thou* wilt be a wise man. THACK., *Lovel*, Ch. I, 18.

5) The use of the singulars in addressing a single person was long retained by Quakers, but is now less general. Ch. XXXII, 9.

6) For the rest the singular forms are now common only in poetry and elevated prose. They are used to the exclusion of the plural forms in addressing God or Christ, and in homiletic language generally. This requires no illustration.

e) In the literature of the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries, and even occasionally in that of the 19th century, we frequently meet with instances of the form of address being abruptly changed from the singular to the plural, or vice versa, without any apparent reason.

If *thou* beest not immortal, look about *you*. JUL. CÆS., II, 3, 6.

If I have done *you* any service, Captain, 'twas to please myself, for I love *thee*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit Offic.*, II, 1, (267).

Tattle and *you* should never be asunder, *you* are light and shadow, and show one another; he is perfectly *thy* reverse, both in humour and understanding; and, as *you* set up for defamation, he is a mender of reputations. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2, (209).



*Thou* seem'st to think he's dead; enjoy that thought; | Persuade *yourself*, that what *you* wish is true. G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, II, 1.

Let this be *your* consolation as *you* travel on. Go, my boy; whatever be *thy* fortune, let me see *thee* once a year. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III.

HAST. (to MISS NEV.). *Thou*, dear dissembler! *You* must know, my Constance, I have just seized the happy opportunity of my friend's visit here to get admittance into the family. Id., *She Stoops*.

Kate, Kate, art *thou* not ashamed to deceive *your* father? Ib., III, (236).

ABSOLUTE (to his son). Upon my word, Jack, *thou'rt* either a great hypocrite, or — but, come, I know *your* indifference on such a subject must be all a lie. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1, (241).

"Why, *thou* wouldst not persuade me," said his father, somewhat hastily, "that *you* stay here, or desire to stay here, for the love of me?" SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. VII, 79.

Dear brother, . . . I cannot express to *thee* how I enjoy these evening hours. To *you* alone I feel as if I were not a mere visionary and idler when I talk of the uncertain future. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 10.

Dostn't wish *th'* wast three sixes again, Grandfer, as *you* was when *you* first learnt to sing it. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 20.

#### AMBIGUITY OF THE PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

12. The pronouns of the third person are often ambiguous, as they may refer to any of the nouns that occur in a preceding part of the context.

Thus *he* (etc.) refers to three different nouns in the following sentence quoted by BAIN (*Companion*, 42):

The pedant (1) assured *his* (1) patron (2) that although *he* (1) could not divest the boy (3) of the knowledge *he* (3) had already imbibed, unless *he* (2) would empower *him* (1) to disable *his* (3) fingers, *he* (1) should endeavour, with God's help, to prevent *his* (3) future improvement. SMOLLETT, *Rod. Rand.*

Further instances of ambiguity are afforded by:

*He* (1) reminded *his* (1) companion (2) that, *he* (2) had not yet heard the ballad which *he* (1) had made for the Abbot of Unreason's revel. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIX, 193.

When Renneth (sc. the doctor) (1) warned him (2) that his (1) medicines were useless at that stage of the malady, and *he* (1) needn't put *him* (2) to further expense by attending her, *he* (2) retorted [etc.]. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 35b.

Then Sir Lavaine (1) did well and worshipfully; | *He* (1) bore a knight of old repute (2) to the earth, | And brought *his* (2) horse to Lancelot (3) where *he* (3) lay. | *He* (3) up the side, sweating with agony, got. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 489—492.

*She* (1) had made up *her* (1) mind that he was to marry Laura (2); *she* (2) would be eighteen when Pen was six-and-twenty. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 40.

In most cases the import of the sentence is a sufficient guide to find out the references of the pronoun. When this is thought inadequate, the following, among, perhaps, other devices, are resorted to to preclude misunderstanding:

- a) the insertion of a suitable noun, placed by way of apposition to the pronoun.

The doctor (1) begged the captain (2) to pardon Morgan (3) with his (2) wonted goodness, upon condition that he (3), *the delinquent*, should make such submission as the nature of *his* (3) misdemeanour demanded. SMOLLETT<sup>1</sup>.)

The man (1) would be certain to awake, and Goldsmith (2) knew that, intoxicated though *he* (1) was, *he* (1) was strong enough to cope with three men of *his* (2), *Goldsmith's*, physique. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXV, 220.

Dr. Johnson (1) had been right when *he* (1) said that *he* (2), *Oliver Goldsmith*, had taken advantage of the gracious generosity of the girl and her family. *ib.*, Ch. XXV, 226.

*He* (1) could not help feeling that Baretti (2) was the victim of *his* (2), *Goldsmith's*, want of consideration. *ib.*, Ch. XXIX, 261.

An amusing instance of the confusion which may adhere to the discourse, notwithstanding the insertion of an explanatory noun, is furnished by the following quotation:

When a twelfth century youth (1) fell in love, he (1) did not take three paces backward, gaze into her eyes, and tell her she was too beautiful to live. *He* (1) said *he* (1) would step outside and see about it. And if, when *he* (1) got out, *he* (1) met a man (2) and broke *his* (2) head — *the other man's* head, I mean — then that proved that his (1) — *the first fellow's* girl — was a pretty girl. But if the other fellow (2) broke *his* (1) head — not *his* (2) own, you know, but the other fellow's — the other fellow to the second fellow, that is, because of course the other fellow would only be the other fellow to *him* (2), not the first fellow, who — well, if *he* (2) broke *his* (1) head, then *his* (2) girl — not the other's fellow but the fellow, who was the — Look here, if A broke B's head, then A's girl was a pretty girl; but if B broke A's head, then A's girl wasn't a pretty girl, but B's girl was. That was their method of conducting art criticism. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 79—80.

- b) the use of demonstratives. In this case the singular forms are always followed by a suitable noun. Compare Ch. XXXVI, 5.

*He* (1) needn't have taken the trouble to shrink from Mr. Bumble's (2) glance, however; for *that* *functionary* (2) . . . thought that . . . the subject was better avoided. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 59.

"I say insolent familiarity, sir," said Mr. Pickwick (1), turning upon Fogg (2) with a fierceness of gesture which caused *that* *person* (2) to retreat towards the door with great expedition. *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 492.

- c) the use of *the latter*, or *the former*. Instances of *the former* being used for distinction of reference are, apparently, unusual. For illustration compare also Ch. XXX, 11.

Dobbin (1) accommodated Mr. Osborne (2) with a few pound notes, which *the latter* (2) took after a little faint scruple. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 125.

Dick (1) followed Torpenhow (2) wherever *the latter's* (2) fancy chose to lead him (1). RUDY. KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. II, 21.

John (1) again spoke to his friend (2) about the letter which *the former* (1) had received by that morning's post.

I was much vexed at her and the servant (1) for their mutual revelations; having no doubt of Linton's (2) approaching arrival, communicated by *the former* (1), being reported to Mr. Heathcliff. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XVIII, 99a.

Note. *The latter* not seldom takes the place of *he*, etc., although no ambiguity would attach to these pronouns.

<sup>1</sup>) BAIN, *Comp.*, 43.

The day after I had been introduced to Buol (1), *the latter* (1) asked us to dine with him (1). Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 8c.

- d) the placing of *own* after the possessive or of the emphatic pronoun after the personal pronoun.

Thus the understanding of the following quotation would be aided by placing *own* after *his* and *himself* after *he* (1).

I believe the master (1) would relish Earnshaw's (2) thrashing *him* (3) to a mummy, if *he* (3) were not *his* (1) son; and I'm certain *he* (1) would be fit to turn *him* (3) out of doors, if *he* (1) knew half the nursing *he* (3) gives *hisseln* (3). EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXI, 106*b*.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

---

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The demonstrative pronouns are *this* and *that* for the singular and *these* and *those* for the plural. They are used not only as purely demonstrative words, but also as determinative and as indefinite pronouns.

For peculiarities of concord see Ch. XXVI, 5, Note I. and 18, f.

#### PURE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

2. Pure demonstrative pronouns are used in the same meanings and, in substance, with the same distinctions in English as they are in Dutch, i. e. they are employed to express:

- a) comparative proximity to the speaker, *this (these)* denoting greater nearness than *that (those)*.

*This* apple is ripe, but *that* apple is still quite green.

- b) comparative proximity as to time, *this (these)* denoting the present, *that (those)* either the past or the future.

i. I would not, in plain terms, from *this* time forth, | Have you so slander any moment's leisure, | As to give words or talk with the Lord Hamlet. *Hamlet*, I, 3, 132.

ii. The harvest was late *that* year. *EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXII, 115a.

iii. "After school," says he after a pause and a look, as much as to say: Make your will and communicate your best wishes to your friends between *this* time and *that*. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 45.

- c) order of disposition in the discourse, *this (these)* indicating what has been mentioned last, *that (those)* denoting what has been mentioned first.

i. In poets as true genius is but rare, | True taste as seldom is the critics' share; | Both must alike from heaven derive their light, | *These* born to judge, as well as *those* to write. *POPE, Es. on Crit.*, I, 14.

What conscience dictates to be done, | Or warns me not to do, | *This*, teach me more than hell to shun, | *That*, more than heav'n pursue. *Id., The Universal Prayer*, IV.

ii. Both Scots, and Southern chiefs, prolong | Applauses of Fitztraver's song; | *These* hated Henry's name as death, | And *those* still held the ancient faith. *SCOTT, Lay*, VI, xxi.



Note a) When used substantively (7—8), demonstratives represent, besides, the things in which the above relations are observed.

β) The local relation of demonstratives is sometimes mixed with, or even subservient to certain secondary notions, i. e. they sometimes imply:

- 1) some emotion, mostly one of irritation, impatience or contempt on the part of the speaker. Some such colouring almost regularly attaches to them when they modify a pleonastic genitive (Ch. XXIV, 33), or its pronominal equivalent (Ch. XXXIII, 23. b), or a substantival adjective denoting a nationality (Ch. XXIX, 15, a). But it is also frequent enough independently of these connections.

LADY CAP. Nurse, where's my daughter? call her forth to me. NURSE. . . What, lamb! what, lady-bird! God forbid! Where's *this girl*? Rom. and Jul., I, 3, 3. I wonder where *this* Captain Absolute hides himself! Upon my conscience! *these officers* are always in one's way in love affairs. SHER., Riv., IV, 3.

As to *this Ravenswood*, he only meets with the treatment which... he gave to a much-valued friend of mine. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 220.

There was never believing half of what *that Bob* said. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 18.

Lady Lufton does not like *those Chaldicotes people*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 8.

- 2) supposed notoriety of the matter spoken about, sometimes together with the emotional colouring referred to above. *That (those)* seems to be excluded from this application.

*This mysterious Morier* — the hero of Lodi, and the favourite of the commander-in-chief, — has risen to a colonel's rank in two years and a half. LYTTON, *Lady of Lyons*, V, 1.

Pray, General, can you tell us who *this Morier* really is? Ib.

By what he could make out, *this Duke of Wellington* was no better than he should be. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 64.

What do you think of *this wireless telegraphy*? MURRAY, s. v. *this*, B, II, 1, d. *This railway strike* is a serious business. Ib.

Do you approve of *these old-age pensions*? Ib., s. v. *these*, B, II, 1, c.

Who are *these Manchu's* in China? Ib.

It may be added that the demonstratives are also frequently employed to emphasize the emotion implied by their head-word or by the adjective preceding their head-word.

- i At night, all the world ... thronged round my Lady Yarmouth; ... my Lady Blanche Pendragon, *that model of virtue*; Sir Lancelot Quintain, *that pattern of knighthood and valour*; Mr. Dean of Ealing, *that exemplary divine and preacher*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIV, 348.

That's the way with *these fortune-hunters*; they know that to be polite and attentive to Mamma is the very best way of making up to a daughter who happens to be an heiress. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

- ii *These tedious old fools!* Haml., II, 2, 223.

I will serve *this poor Queen* as a subject should serve an imprisoned and wronged sovereign. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXIX, 318.

The picturesque Tourist, in a sunny autumn day, through *this bounteous realm of England*, descries the Union Workhouse on his path. CARLYLE, *Past and Pres.*, Ch. I, 2.

Twice when I wanted them most, *this kind Maria* aided me with her sympathy and friendship. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVIII, 938.

γ) When occurring singly, demonstratives are, of course, incapable of marking antithesis as to order of disposition in the discourse. In this case their choice is determined by other considerations. (4, c.)

3. Demonstratives often occur in pairs. In this case they naturally have strong stress. See also 2.

- i. From *that* station to *this* is a distance of exactly thirty miles.
- ii. After *this*, he stirred the fire; after *that*, he rubbed his hands and looked at Sam. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 484.
- iii. Virtue and vice offer themselves for your choice: *this* leads to misery, *that* to happiness. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 146.

Note. Sometimes it is only the last member of the two (or more) things mentioned in the discourse, which is further commented on in the sequel. In this case *this* (*these*) is often followed by *latter* or *last* for more distinctness. Curiously enough, *that* (*those*) sometimes takes the place of *this* (*these*) in these combinations. (4, c.)

- i. Tho the hearer... *f* is not primarily a lip-teeth consonant, but a hiss consonant similar to that denoted by *þ*, although *this latter* is formed by quite a different articulation. SWEET, *The Sounds of English*, § 21.  
In Germany... short shrift has been given by the military caste to the commercial classes: *these latter* must suffer quite as much as the proletariat. *The New Age*, No. 1173, 475a.
- ii. \* I learned to spell, and to make pot-hooks, under the joint care of my mother and dame Primmins. *This last* was one of an old race fast dying away — the race of old faithful servants. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 16.  
\*\* Thus, let the student cut up the word five into *ff*, *vv*, and *ai*, and *this last* into its two constituent vowels. SWEET, *The Sounds of English*, § 25.  
\*\*\* Those new-fashioned authorities in education... would have given, perhaps, a dangerous shake to the foundations of our great classical seminaries, if *those last* had not very wisely, though very cautiously, borrowed some of the principles... of their innovating rivals and assailants. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. I, 27.

4. When demonstratives occur singly, their antithetic force often appears more or less weakened, but is never entirely absent.

The absence of any notion of antithesis would occasion a personal pronoun of the third person to be used instead. (5.) This is shown by the alternate use of the personal and the demonstrative pronouns in:

It was intimated to the prisoners that *they* were to die. Among *them* were three or four men. *These* were called out and shot. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 189.

a) The antithesis is mostly clearly perceptible when the reference is chiefly to comparative proximity as to place.

- i. Deliver *this* letter to the agent when you reach Liverpool. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 489.  
*This way*, my dear sirs. *Ib.*, 493.  
Faith, a man must be hard to please, Bungay, who can't eat a good dinner in *this* house. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 361.
- ii. "*That*," cried he, pointing to a very magnificent house which stood at some distance, "belongs to Mr. Thornhill. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. III (25). (i.e. the house over there.)

If *those* two fellows were to commit a burglary to-morrow, my opinion of this action (sc. of Mr. Pickwick's procuring their release from the Fleet etc.) would be equally high. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 490. (i. e. the two fellows who have just left the room.)

"Your lip is trembling," said the Ghost. "And what is *that* upon your cheek?" *Id.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 36.

Note a) We say *this friend* (matter, etc.) of mine or ours, but *that friend* (matter, etc.) of yours, his, hers or theirs. See Ch. XXXIII, 23, b.

β) *This country* (kingdom, empire, island, etc.), *these shores*, etc. = England, the British Empire; *that country* (kingdom, empire, island, etc.) = another country, etc. than England; often Scotland or Ireland. *this country*, etc. The army that they want is an army, not for the defence of *this country*, but for operations abroad, an army, which we believe to be incompatible with the true policy of *this country*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5382, 1c. *that country*, etc. Ireland had never, since the days of Henry the Second, been able to expel the foreign invaders; but she had struggled against them long and fiercely. During the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the English power in *that island* was constantly declining. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 63.

In mental cultivation Scotland had an indisputable superiority. Though *that kingdom* was then the poorest in Christendom, it already vied in every branch of learning with the most favoured countries. *Id.*, 64.

γ) *This House* = the House of Commons or the House of Lords, according as the speaker is a member of the former or the latter: *that House* or *the other House* being used to designate the House of which the speaker is not a member.

- b) When the reference is to comparative proximity as to time, the distinction between present as opposed to either past or future, although mostly clearly discernible, is often obliterated by that of comparative concern in the matter discussed on the part of the speaker or writer (c), insomuch that *this* and *these* are frequently used in speaking of the past. These latter are, apparently, never used in referring to the future.

**this (these).** i. referring to the present: A life so vile as his | Were nothing at *this* hour. *BYRON*, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2.

The true university in *these* days is a collection of books. *CARLYLE*.

If I had my will, I would trot off *this* very night. *THACK.*, *Virg.* Ch. XXXIII, 342. (i. e. the night of *this* day, and, therefore, felt as a present, although actually a future is expressed. Compare also: The ghost of Cæsar hath appeared to me | Two several times by night; at Sardis once, | And, *this* last night, here in Philippi fields. *JUL. CÆS.*, V, 5, 18.)

They (sc. the songs) were all for her *this* time being. *BERNARD CAPES*, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. VI, 69. (Instead of *this time being* mostly for the time being.)

- ii. referring to the past: During the whole of *this* time, Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 48.

For the first time all the British isles were peaceably united under one sceptre. It should seem that the weight of England among European nations ought, from *this* epoch, to have greatly increased. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 67.

In 1666 he (sc. Dryden) wrote his first long poem, the 'Annus Mirabilis',... and from *this* date his life is "one long literary labour". MEIKLEJOHN, *The Eng. Lang.*, IV, Ch. V, 306.

**that (those).** i. referring to the past: Caleb ... placed on the table ... two rudely-framed tallow-candles, such as in *those* days were only used by the peasantry. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XIII, 145.

The funeral had evidently taken place *that* day. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 480. In the year 1603 the great Queen died. *That* year is, on many accounts, one of the most important epochs in our history. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 63.

ii. referring to the future: I fear I shall be weather-bound for half an hour, if you can afford me shelter during *that* space. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. II, 9b.

In sharp contrast to the passivity of Tolstoy we have the activity of Mr. Roosevelt, who does not purpose "quietly" to "await" his day. He wants *that* day to come sooner rather than later. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 1c.

Note α) In reported speech *this (these)* is sometimes placed before the name of an epoch of the past, although a purely temporal relation is meant. Compare 10, b, 2, Note.

Alfonso, pommell'd to his heart's desire, | Swore lustily he'd be revenged *this* night. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CLXXXIV.

β) Instead of *this week*, *this month*, etc. we frequently find *the present week*, *the present month*, etc. Occasionally the demonstrative and the adjective *present*, sometimes varying with an ordinal numeral, occur together. (9, Obs. I.) Observe also that the bare definite article is sometimes practically equivalent to *this* or *the present* in these combinations. Compare Ch. XXXI, 6, a.

i. The above paragraph appeared in most of the London newspapers during *the present month*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5394, 13a.

*The present week* has also brought to the fore another question of great importance. *ib.*, 1c.

ii. We of the house of Ravenswood do our endeavour in keeping up... that due and fitting connection betwixt superior and vassal, whilk (Sc. for *which*) is in some danger of falling into desuetude, owing to the general license and misrule of *these present* unhappy times. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XIII, 143.

iii. If we were to accept her statements literally, we should be forced to say that such atrocities as were practised upon her were unparalleled in *this twentieth century*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5394, 13b.

All (sc. these buildings) are delivered in *this twentieth century* to the dry prose of commerce. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. I, 2.

iv. So the need of *the moment* be met and the deed of *the day* be done, the concern of *the* practical man is ended. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 553a.

For other applications of *the present* as a substitute for the demonstrative *this* see 11, e.

c) When the demonstratives are used singly as pure reference-words, they do not, of course, mark any antithesis as to order of disposition in the discourse. In this case their discrimination must, consequently, depend on other considerations. These considerations appear to be vague and hard to define, so that the choice of the pronoun frequently strikes the reader as a matter of arbitrary



usage, or even of mere chance. The following observations are, therefore, offered in a tentative spirit and with no ordinary diffidence:

- 1) As to subjects introduced by the speaker or writer himself, *this (these)* seems, as a rule, to imply greater interest and closer familiarity on his part than *that (those)*. The following quotations are intended to illustrate this principle:

- i. Take this book too, it will be your comfort on the way: *these* two lines are worth a million, "I have been young, and now am old; yet never saw I the righteous man forsaken, of his seed begging their bread." Let *this* be your consolation as you travel on. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. III, (247).

He knew, however, the whole neighbourhood to which I was removing, particularly Squire Thornhill, who was to be my landlord... *This* gentleman he described as one who desired to know little more of the world than its pleasures. *Ib.*, (248).

There's no occasion for Mr. Pickwick to move... Mr. Pickwick is pretty well acquainted with *these* proceedings. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 491.

It was thought desirable to send a boat to the beach with one of the refugees named Thomas Dare. *This* man, though of low mind and manners, had great influence at Taunton. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 141.

The Irish were the only people of northern Europe who remained true to the old religion. *This* is to be partly ascribed to the circumstances that they were some centuries behind their neighbours in knowledge. *Ib.*, I, Ch. I, 66.

I considered it best to confess my presence... With *this* intention, I turned and opened the panels. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. III, 16a.

The general was in command of a large force. *This* force consisted of artillery and cavalry. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 146.

- ii. "You're early, Mr. Pickwick," said a voice behind him. — "Ah, Mr. Lowten," replied *that* gentleman, looking round, and recognising his old acquaintance. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 486.

"I say insolent familiarity, sir," said Mr. Pickwick, turning upon Fogg with a fierceness of gesture which caused *that* person to retreat towards the door with great expedition. *Ib.*, 492.

Thus it was that Laura Bell became Mrs. Pendennis's daughter. Neither her husband, nor *that* gentleman's brother, the Major, viewed her with very favourable eyes. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

I should first relate the gathering on the way to Mrs. Jamieson's. *That* lady lived in a large house just outside the town. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 149.

One morning... he came plump... upon Madame Gonzalès and her young charges. *Those* were three in all. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. VI, 69.

Note. Sometimes the pronouns may have been made to vary for the sake of euphony. Thus in the following quotation, borrowed from I. SCHMIDT (*Gram. der Eng. Sprache*, § 278, 3, Anm. 2):

Bonaparte entered Tuscany and took possession of Leghorn. In consequence of *this* movement Nelson blockaded *that* port and landed a British force in the isle of Elba, to secure Porto Ferraja.

- 2) When the reference is to matters in which another party than the speaker or writer is chiefly concerned, *that (those)* is the ordinary pronoun.

His mind had leaned upon their adulation, and *that* support taken away, he could find no pleasure in the applause of his heart. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III, (251).

He has spent but a few pounds of your mortal money; three or four perhaps. Is *that* so much that he deserves this praise? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 48. She was not a gossip, I feared; unless about her own affairs, and *those* could hardly interest me. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IV, 19b. If I knocked him down twenty times, *that* wouldn't make him less handsome or me more so. *Id.*, Ch. VII, 30b.

The fashion of the moment has been to represent Miss Nightingale as the embodiment of the softer virtues of her sex. Yet it was not merely a fund of pity, sympathy, and the graces of the ministering angel that reformed anarchy in the Crimea. The woman who did *that* was a woman of strong and determined character, with an intellect of the first class, and a will of steel. *That* strength of character was shown not less in the way in which she put aside all honours and public rewards than in the simplicity with which, her work accomplished, she sank back into the routine of a life finely lived. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 2b. (Observe that the first *that* is strong-stressed, the second weak-stressed.)

- ii. I was inclined to believe . . . that conscience had turned his heart to an earthly hell. Though he seldom before had revealed *this* state of mind, even by looks, it was his habitual mood, I had no doubt. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXXIII, 161a.

Thus *that* (*those*) may even be used when the reference is to the last of two or more things.

He offered, if I would lend him books out of the library, to do what I wished; but I preferred giving him my own and *that* satisfied him better. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXIV, 123b.

He could keep her out of his house, out of his office, but not out of his life. She had come here with the deliberate intention of wrecking *that*. VICT. CROSS, *Six Women*, Ch. III, 97.

What is more the combination *that* (*those*) + *latter* or *last* has not an incongruous effect. See 3, Note.

- 3) In referring to subjects introduced into the discourse by the person spoken to or some other party, the speaker or writer seems to use *that* (*those*) almost to the exclusion of *this* (*these*).

- i. The hostess entered the room to inform her husband that the strange gentleman, who had been two days in the house, wanted money . . . "Want money?" replied the host, "*that* must be impossible." GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. III, (248) „Well," interrupted Perker, "*is that* all?" — "It is all summed up in *that*," rejoined Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 493. "I know you are a man of your word." — "You may be sure of *that*." THACKERAY, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 319. "Are you feeling better this morning?" — "Much." — "*That's* good news." EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. X, 48a.

- ii. HAML. There's ne'er a villain dwelling in all Denmark, | But he's an arrant knave. HOR. There needs no ghost, my lord, come from the grave | To tell us *this*. HAML., I, 5, 126.

- 4) It is, in the main, in harmony with the above principles:

- a) that *this* (*these*) is far more frequent than *that* (*those*) when the reference is to matters mentioned in a subsequent part of the discourse. Compare BAIN, *Comp.*, 53; MURRAY, s.v. *that*, I, 1, c.

- i. There; my blessing with thee! And *these* few precepts in thy memory see thou character. . . *This* above all: to thine own self be true. HAML., I, 3, 57—78.

I know nothing of the Scotch law, but *this* I know, that we should not hang a dog here on the grounds on which my Lord Argyle has been sentenced. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 108.

Yea, *this* in him was the peculiar grace | . . . That before living he'd learn how to live. BROWNING, Gram. Fun., 37.

I neither know nor care (sc. whether I shall escape): but *this* I know that withersoever I go, I shall go sword in hand. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XXVI, 108a.

What I have to say to you is *this*: one\* glass of rum won't kill you, but if you take one you'll take another and another, and I stake my wig if you don't break off short, you'll die -- do you understand that? STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., Ch. II, 25. (Note the alternate use of *this* and *that*.)

- ii. *That* ever holds: who riseth from a feast | With that keen appetite that he sits down? Where is the horse that doth untread again | His tedious measures with the unbated fire | That he did pace them first [etc.]. Merch. of Ven., II, 6, 8.

Think of *that*! Bob had but fifteen 'Bob' a-week himself. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 64.

- β) that *this* (*these*) is mostly used when the reference is to a subject mentioned in a direct quotation. Compare, however, δ) and especially 3, α, 3 and 7, d.

"I dare say all will work out, somehow or other, for the best." As he said *these* words, he put forth his hand to extinguish the candle. WASH. IRV., Do!f Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 143).

"It is remarkable, Mr. Feeder, that the Romans —" At the mention of *this* terrible people . . . every young gentleman fastened his gaze upon the Doctor. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 106.

"Will you tell her that I'll come, if she'll promise not to talk?" I delivered *this* message to Mrs. Earnshaw. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VIII, 34b.

- γ) that *this* (*these*) is the ordinary demonstrative used in summarizing a series of facts mentioned in a preceding part of the discourse.

Human pride and envy, human ambition and emulation, the desire to shine in the world — and to rise to a higher status — *these* . . . are the main causes of the war. The New Age, No. 1174, 497a.

- δ) that *that* is more frequent than *this* as a variant of *it* or the semi-pronominial *so*. Compare Ch. XXXII, 24—38.

- i. I never bargained for *this*. He knows *that* very well. DICK., Pickw., Ch. L, 467.

"The fact was, I was so comfortable here that I really couldn't move." Such a grin Lady Drum gave me when I said *that*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 35.

"Thy hopes are mine," and saying *that*, she choked. TEN., Lanc. & El., 603. A battle was the finest thing in the world — when your side won it — and Englishmen always did *that*. Id., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXI, 119b.

"He does stare dreadfully, though," she resumed a moment later. "But I suppose all artists do *that*." MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VI, 112.

- ii. The Major had sunk every shilling he could scrape together on an annuity, and of course was going to leave Pen nothing; but he did not tell Foker *this*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 110.

- ε) that *that is* is more usual than *this is* as an introductory phrase to all manner of subordinate clauses, except, of course, in the cases mentioned under α) and β). Compare also 7, c, 1, Note γ.

- i. How very black and cross you look! — and how funny and grim! But *that's* because I'm used to Edgar and Isabella Linton. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VII, 29a.

*That's* not what I intend — *that's* not what I mean. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 43a.

*That is* how I'm loved. *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 82a.

Germany boasts that it is her appointed mission to conquer a great world-empire, through which she may impose her ideals upon mankind. Our Empire and our ideals are the chief obstacles in her path. *That* consideration is the key to all her world-policy. *That is* why she has grasped at the trident. *That is* why she has been intriguing for years in Egypt, in India and in South Africa. *That is* why she has watched our domestic controversies and the supposed symptoms of our decadence with malignant vigilance. *That is* why she has sought, again and again, to sow mistrust between us and our partners. *Times*, No. 1993, 222d.

- ii. \* *This is* what he saw. The road ran straight across the river, etc. (Here follows a long description). BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. I, 11.

\*\* The conscience . . . seemed to say, "When did Ned's parents ask you? If ever, certainly not just now. And yet *this is* what you want your parents and your master to believe, though you don't exactly say it." SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

- ζ) that *that* is the ordinary pronoun in the idioms illustrated by the following quotations, some of which are also commented on in 10, Obs. II.

- i. I've been wet . . . and I'm cold, *that's all*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 45b.

I wished to punish her sauciness, *that's all*. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 55b.

- ii. \* *That will do* for the present. *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 78a. (Compare MURRAY, s. v. *do*, 20).

I think *that will do* for him. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

\*\* I think *this will do*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 342.

- iii. \* Don't let us be splitting hairs, *and that* amongst ourselves. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. IX, 111.

\*\* Eve has to make decision between the claims of those she loves best, *and this* not only in regions of the ideal and fantastic. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5418, 7a.

- iv. She's twice as clever a girl as Fotheringay, and literary *and that*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 109.

Things were not satisfactory at home, and I wanted a man to keep me, *and all that*. VICT. CROSS, *Six Women*, Ch. I, 8.

- v. A still more forcible defence should occur to any who has ever beheld a man (and a fashionable and dissipated young man *at that*) helpless before the indomitable will of a child of two years old. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, Ch. I, 10.

- vi. Lend me a shilling, *that's a good fellow!* MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 146.

- vii. They set up as their leader a pious man, a Mohammedan prophet, whom they called the Mahdi, *that is* the Reformer. YORK POWELL, *Life of Ch. Gordon*.

- viii. *For all that*, I have contrived . . . to give some thought to my mother tongue. F. HALL, *Mod. Eng.*, p. XV.<sup>1)</sup>

- ix. He was a tailor, but *what of that?* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 76.

5. a) In Dutch the antithetic force of demonstratives is often so sensibly weakened that they may be put into requisition to replace personal pronouns, when these latter for some reason or another are more or less objectionable. This does not appear to be the case in an equal

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *for*, 23.



degree with the English demonstratives. Besides, the singulars of the latter are often unavailable when no noun follows. (7.) These and, perhaps, other circumstances not seldom cause personal pronouns in English to correspond to possible demonstratives in Dutch.

- i. As to Rip's son and heir, who was the ditto of himself, ... *he* was employed to work on the farm. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V. (Dutch *deze* or *die*.) A considerable number of prisoners were immediately selected for execution. Among *them* was a youth famous for his speed. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 182. (Dutch *dezen*.)  
 "He had a son, it seems?" — "Yes, he had one — *he* is dead." EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. IV, 20a. (Dutch *die*.)  
 "Here stand I; I can none other." Luther replied to the young Emperor, Charles the Fifth, as *he* pressed him to recant in the Diet of Worms. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § 5, 320.
- ii. "Wot observations?" inquired Sam. — "Them as she made, arter she was took ill," replied the old gentleman. — "Wot was *they*?" DICK., Pickw., Ch. LI, 480. (Dutch *dat* or *die*.)  
 The boy's broken arm had been set, and as soon as *it* was better, he was to be sent to King George's College. HALL CAINE, The Woman Thou Gavest me, Ch. X, 37. (Dutch *die*, *hij* would be ambiguous.)  
 He said that the key lay on his desk, but I have in vain looked for *it* there. STOR., Handl., II, 163.

In the following quotation there seems to be no call for *these* instead of *their*:

Take the problem of flying. Men could hardly solve it by growing wings, without *these* being some encumbrance to him when he was using them for flying. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6517, 24a.

Note. Similarly the genitive *diens* might be used in translating the possessive pronouns employed in:

And Lady Godiva called for old Abbot Ulfketyl, the good and brave; and fell upon *his* neck, and told him all her tale. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. XX, 87b. The growth of the Norman power was jealously watched by Geoffry Martel, the Count of Anjou, and *his* influence succeeded in converting France from friend to foe. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 4, 76.

- ;) Demonstratives are often followed in the sequel of the discourse by personal pronouns referring to the same person or thing. The reason for this change of pronoun is that the intended antithesis having been marked with sufficient distinctness, there is no further occasion to dwell on it by a repeated use of the demonstrative. The stronger antithetic force of the English demonstratives causes this change to be more frequent in English than in Dutch, as may be shown by a comparison of the following quotations with their probable Dutch equivalents. Observe that there is a more frequent change from *that* to *it* than from *this* to *it*.

- i. "It follows that I am compelled to stay." — "*That* you may settle with your host, I have nothing to do with *it*." EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. II, 11b. You love Mr. Edgar because he is handsome, and young, and cheerful, and rich, and loves you. The last, however, goes for nothing, you would love him without *that*, probably, and with *it* you wouldn't. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 41b. We both said, "Yes, yes, that would be glorious, but will Mr. Webb let us go?" Ned said, "Leave *that* to me: I'll manage *it*." SWEET, Old Chapel. "Don't say *that*." — "I do say *it*, I feel *it*, I know *it*." OSCAR WILDE, Lady Windermere's Fan, I, 10.

Has a mother no rights in her own child . . . that other people . . . should take it away from her . . . ? But you shall not do *that*! No, you shall not! As long as there's breath in my body you shall not do *it*. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou gavest me*, Ch. X, 40.

"The rift is widening to an abyss," said Eleanor to her mother that afternoon. — "I should not tell *that* to any one," remarked her mother after long reflection. — "Naturally, I should not talk about *it* very much," said Eleanor, "but why shouldn't I mention *it* to any one?" SAKI, *The Jestings of Arlington Stringham* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 9b).

- ii. One half the coin in that plethoric purse belonged not to Ghysbrecht Van Swieten, but to that faded old man and that comely girl . . . They did not know *this*, but Ghysbrecht knew *it*. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 10.

Changes from *this* (*that*) to *he* (*him*) or *she* (*her*), and from *these* (*those*) to *they* (*them*) are, of course, frequent enough, but are of minor interest.

They prepared to walk forward, when they found there was another passenger in the same deserted situation with themselves. *This* was the elderly and sickly-looking person who had been precipitated into the river along with the two young lawyers. *He*, it seems, had been too modest to push his plea against the coach-man, when he saw that of his betters rejected. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 21.

- c) It may be added that also personal pronouns of the third person may express some antithesis. But this antithesis is of a different nature from that indicated by demonstratives.

The instant they (sc. the jewels) are put into my possession, you shall find me ready to make *them* and myself yours. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (187). All (were) strangers to me and I to *them*. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou gavest me*, Ch. XII, 50.

At half-past seven three more of our nurses appeared, followed by two guards. We stared at *them*, and *they* stared at us, wondering what was going to happen. Eng. Rev., No. 75, 308.

May they (sc. the English) not hope to-day . . . that America will do unto *them* as in the day of her visitation and her trial, *they* did unto her? Times, No. 1992, 203a.

But, as has already been hinted at in *a*), the line of demarcation between personal and demonstrative pronouns is not always easy to draw. We add a few quotations in which, apparently, the personal pronoun could be replaced by a demonstrative. Compare also the quotations with *it* in Ch. XXXII, 3, *a*.

I should commence, sir, with a tribute to the lady's beauty and excellent qualities; from *them*, sir, I should diverge to my own unworthiness. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

"Mr. Warrington might see his relations of his father's family," suggests Mr. Chaplain. — "Suffolk country boobies, drinking beer and hallooing after foxes! I don't see anything to be gained by his frequenting *them*, Mr. Sampson!" THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 365.

I am only good to ride and play at cards, and drink burgundy . . . But *them* I can do as well as most fellows. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXVII, 385.

As to knights, | *Them* surely can I silence with all ease. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 109.

6. When the demonstratives are used for the purpose of referring to

some preceding part of the discourse, they are more or less conjunctive in function.

The conjunctive force is especially exhibited by certain adverbial word-groups consisting of a preposition and a substantival demonstrative, mostly *this*. Compare Ch. VIII, 4, the end. For instances see also 7, c, 2, Note  $\beta$ .

These prepositional word-groups are equivalent to certain pronominal adverbs consisting of *here* or *there* and a preposition: *hereafter*, *there-with*, etc. For a comparison see a subsequent chapter on pronominal adverbs.

I begged the landlord would introduce me to a stranger of so much charity he described. *With this* he complied. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. III, (248).

He had not resolution enough to give any man pain by a denial. *By this* he drew round him crowds of dependents. *Ib.*, 251.

Compare: He laid down a plan restoring his falling fortune. *For this purpose*, in his own whimsical manner, he travelled through Europe on foot. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 252.

7. The singular forms *this* and *that*, when purely demonstrative, are used:

a) conjointly: *this man*, *that woman*.

For the use of the prop-word *one* and of the numeral *one* after the singular demonstratives see, respectively, Ch. XLIII and Ch. XL.

b) absolutely; 1) of persons; a) when the noun modified follows,  $\beta$ ) when the noun modified precedes. Instances are infrequent.

i. How a woman could transfer her affection from *this* to that man is more than I can understand.

ii. The old count loved not | The roar of revel; are you sure that *this* does?  
BYRON, *Werner*, IV, 1, (555a). (The author has *this* printed in italics.)  
This high man, aiming at a million, | Misses an unit. | *That*, has the world here — should he need the next, | Let the world mind him! BROWNING, *Gram. Fun.*, 60.

2) of things; a) when the noun modified follows,  $\beta$ ) when the modified precedes.

i. He had influence sufficient to control Richard Swiveller's proceeding in *this* or any matter. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. VII, 29.

I have no power to feel for him: and I would not, though he groaned from *this* to his dying day. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XVII, 88a,  
And peradventure had he seen her first, | She might have made *this* and that other world | Another world for the sick man. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 868.  
For *this* and other reasons it was considered best that I should not return at Christmas. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou gavest me*, Ch. XIV, 57.

ii. From here they went up a wide staircase that groaned and created as they trod. *This* led to another hall on the second story. WASH. IRV., *Dolf. Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 116).

Is it a letter from another 'Jook'?... Pendenis would not be leaving *that* to the last. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 13.

This cut is fresh; | *That* ten years back; *this* dealt him at Caerlyle; | *That* at Caerleon; *this* at Camelot. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 21—23.

Easter fell in March last year and will fall in April *this*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6506, 3a.

- c) substantively; 1) of persons; now only as the subject of a nominal predicate, as in *This is my brother John*, in which *this* is understood as equivalent to *this person* (plural: *These are my brothers, John and Harry = these persons are etc.*). Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.341.

Is *that* Dombey? DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 108.

Nelly, is *that* you? EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. X, 48b.

*This* is my house and *this* my little wife. TEN., En. Ard., 28.

*This* is our new inspector. MURRAY, s.v. *this*, B, I, 1, b.

Note a) In Early Modern English the singular demonstratives were used of persons without this restriction. Compare FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 313; Id., E. S., XII; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.31; 16.33. *This* too, with whom you are to marry, may have made a conveyance of her virginity aforehand. BEN JONS., Sil. Wom., II, 4, 233.

Hector was but a Trojan in respect to *this*. Love's Labour's Lost, V, 2, 640. Ambition *this* shall tempt to rise, | Then whirl the wretch from high, | To bitter Scorn a sacrifice, | And grinning Infamy. GRAY, Ode Eton College, VIII. Lo, in the vale of years beneath | A griesly troop are seen, | The painful family of Death, | More hideous than their Queen: | *This* racks the joints, *this* fires the veins, | *That* every labouring sinew strains, | Those in the deeper vitals rage. Ib., IX.

Ellen and Margaret fearfully | Sought comfort in each other's eye, | They turned their ghastly look, each one, | *This* to her sire, *that* to her son. SCOTT, Lady, II, xxix, 4.

Lo! by the grave I stand of one, for whom | A prodigal Nature and a niggard Doom | (*That* all bestowing, *this* withholding all) | Made each chance knell from distant spire or dome | Sound like a seeking Mother's anxious call, | Return poor Child! COLERIDGE, Monody on the Death of Chatterton, 12.

β) Like *it* (pag. 328, 702 and 731), the substantive *that* is occasionally used of persons to express contempt. In this case its function is not confined to that of the subject of a nominal predicate.

"Would you like to marry Malcolm?" I asked. "Fancy being owned by *that*! Fancy seeing it every day!" EL. GLYN, Vicis. Evangeline, 127.<sup>1)</sup>

Compare: Poor Frank! was all the beef gone? did *it* get nothing but bread and cheese and ginger beer? SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Prof., II, (187).

γ) In such sentences as the following the demonstrative is not determinative (12), but purely demonstrative in character, the clause which stands after it being substantival, not adnominal. In other words the relative is condensed, i.e. equivalent to *he that* (or *who*) or *that which* (or *that*). Compare especially Ch. XXXIX, 25, b. It may, furthermore, be observed that in questions this demonstrative is a kind of anticipating subject, to which the following clause is related as an apposition.

Who is *that* that spoke? Two Gentl., IV, 2, 87.

Who's *that* which calls? Meas. for Meas., I, 4, 6.

Who is *that* that has just come in? TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLV, 403.

It was *that* that began it. R. H. BENSON, An Average Man, I, Ch. XIII, 198.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s.v. *that*, I, 1.



Thus also when the substantival clause is represented by a present participle, as in:

Who's *that* laughing? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 27. (= \*Who's *that*, he who is laughing?)

Who's *this* smoking? *Ib.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 401.

2) of things; very frequently in all manner of functions and combinations.

*This* above all: to thine own self be true! *Hamlet*, I, 3, 78.

What day of the month is *this*? *Dick.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 6b.

"Turn me off a copy of verses to *this*." — "What's *this*? A Church Porch. — A lady entering it, and a youth out of a wine-shop ogling her. — What the deuce am I to do with it?" *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 335.

*That's* a remarkable piece of logic *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. IX, 155.

Note a) The following specialized applications of the singular substantive demonstratives deserve attention:

i. *This* is where he lives. *Dick.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. X, 83.

Framley church was distant from *this* just a quarter of a mile. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 10.

I must leave *this* at two. *Id.*, *The Warden*, Ch. XIX, 239.

ii. On the receipt of *this* send Williams thither with my saddle-horse. *SMOL.*, *Humphry Clink*, I, 9. (= *this letter*.)

I should like to know whether she left *this* herself. *Dick.*, *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. VII, 29b.

I do not know if *this* will ever reach you. *BUCHANAN*, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 29.

iii. I must do my duty, Sir, ... so take *that* — and *that* — and *that* — (thrashing the man with his rattan). *MARRYAT*, *Peter Simple*, Ch. XII.

β) Of great frequency is the use of *this* and *that* after prepositions, especially in adverbial adjuncts of time. Compare *MURRAY*, s. v. *that*, B, I, 1, d.

i. *MACB.* Is't far you ride? — *BAN.* As far, my lord, as will fill up the time 'Twixt *this* and supper. *Macb.*, III, 1, 26.

I should then, sir, come to the plain and simple question, "Will you have me?" I think I am justified in assuming that *upon this*, she would turn away her head. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

*At this* the spirit raised a frightful cry. *Id.*, *Christm. Car.*, I, 25.

*With this* the old lady bade me adieu. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

Shortly *after this* appeared a prospectus of the "New Grand National Benevolent Insurance Company." *LYTTON*, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. II, 33.

ii. The bishop, also, had been minded to be of the party; so, at least he had said on the previous evening; ... but *since that*, he and Mrs. Proudie had discussed the matter in private, and at breakfast his lordship declared that he had changed his mind. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 33.

I have known him all my life ... having been at school and college with him, and for years *since that* I was on terms of the closest intimacy with him. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXVI, 345.

γ) In Early Modern English *that* and *this* are sometimes used substantively in the sense of *the dictum* het gezegde. *FRANZ* (E. S. XVII) quotes: This brings to my mind *that* of Moses, by which he describeth the beast that is clean. *BUNYAN*, *Pilgr. Progr.*, 75.

And *this* of Philo Judaeus. Perturbations often offend the body and are most frequent cases of Melancholy *BURTON*, *Anat. of Mel.*, I, 2, 92.

δ) After the comparative words *as*, *like* and *than* it is sometimes rather a quality than the person animal or thing indicated by the preceding noun which is referred to by the singular demonstratives. This becomes evident from the singular form being sometimes retained even if the preceding noun is a plural, and also from the disinclination to use the prop-word *one*. Compare Ch. XLIII, 20. In this case the demonstrative is rather substantival than absolute.

i. I wonder, when you had Laura at home, you could take up with such an affected little creature *as that*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 318.

Can any of you show me a woman *like that*? *Ib.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

The gardener never disliked an excuse for going up to the Court gardens, even on so wet a day *as this*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 40.

He is rich enough to live in a finer house *than this*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IV, 20a.

ii. \* "Tooth-ache!" exclaimed Mrs. Proudie, but her eyes said more terrible things *than that*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 63.

"What!" said her ladyship; "you are to show me such a letter as that, and I am not to tell you what I think?" — "Not, if you think such hard things *as that*." *Ib.*, Ch. V, 46.

\*\* Their salaries cannot afford ornaments *like those*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 57.

He complained so seldom, indeed, of such stirs *as these*, that I really thought him not vindictive. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IV, 23a.

In the following quotations the demonstrative cannot possibly be understood to refer to a preceding noun and is, consequently, unmistakably substantival:

"No other secret marriage, I hope?" — "No, no," replied old Wardle; not so bad *as that*; no." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIV, 495.

There are only five minutes now, and it will take you more *than that* to thrash me. THACK., *Men's Wives*, Ch. I, (319).

On the top of Ben Nevis it would be about 6 deg. colder *than that*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 3b.

d) predicatively. *This* seems to be rare in this function.

You are an angel, *that* you are. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 74.

"Your father walked up the hall, his left hand on his sword-hilt, looking an earl all over, as he is." — "He is *that*," said Hereward in a low voice. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. I, 14b.

I hear, fair maid — for that you are *that* I will do you the justice to confess — that you are old enough to be married this four years since. *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 62a.

"He's rather a naughty child sometimes." — "Yes — *that* he is." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIII, 110.

"Listen," he said, "friend — dear friend . . . I may call you so, for you have been *that* to me." AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. IV, 156.

Note. Predicative *that* (or *this*) to a certain extent varies with *so*. Compare Ch. XXXII, 28.

e) adverbially, in the meaning of *so*, and suggestive either of an adverbial clause of comparison introduced by *as* (Ch. XVII, 125 ff), or one of consequence introduced by *that* (Ch. XVII, 132 f).

In the first application, which seems to be used in good colloquial language, *that* implies more precision than *so*. Compare *this (that) much*

(10, *a*). The second employment of adverbial *that*, which bears some resemblance to the use of the determinative *that* as an intensive (14, Obs. 1), is decidedly vulgar. Instances of adverbial *this* are far less frequent than those of adverbial *that*. See also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 801; FRANZ, E. S., XII; DEAN ALFORD, The Queen's Eng., § 159; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.395 and MURRAY, s.v. *that*, III, and *this*, adv.

i. \* In a quarter of an hour... could I wait *that long*? G. MOORE, In Search of Divinity, Ch. IV. (= *so long as that*.)

When they had got *that far*, they heard the notes of the Chanson Triste being played again from Zara's sitting-room. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XXI, 188.

It wasn't *that long* ago. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. I, 115.

I didn't think he was *that young*. JACK LONDON, Martin Eden, I, Ch. II, 34. The old tradition survives *that far*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 7a.

\*\* As for t'other one, I'll put it in my pocket rather than not stay, now we are *this far* away from Ancoats. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. III, 11. "Oh, Mimo! how could you let him sit on the grass!" Zara exclaimed reproachfully, when he got *this far*. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XV, 132.

ii. He drove his bow into them strings *that glorious grand*, that he e'en a'most sawed the bass-viol into two pieces. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. V, 56.

Now he keeps trumpeting as God be *that gigantic*, the blacksmith's God be a baby by comparison. ZANGWILL, The Next Religion, II, 78.

I married a very fine figure of a woman; but she was *that changeable* and, what you might call, susceptible, you would not believe. BERN. SHAW, Getting Married, I, (197).

I'm *that hungry*, I could eat... a dog. HALL CAINE, The Woman Thou Gavest me, Ch. IX, 34.

8. The plural forms *these* and *those*, when purely demonstrative, are used:

*a*) conjointly: *these women*, *those books*.

*b*) absolutely, whether of persons or things, in any grammatical function:

i. He... rode a simple knight among his knights, | And many of *these* in richer arms than he. TEN., Com. of Arth., 52.

He carried Tom through the great gates, where were only two or three boys. *These* satisfied themselves with stock questions. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. V, 86.

It was intimated to the prisoners that they were to die. Among them were three or four men. *These* were called out and shot. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 189.

ii. Of all the blithe sounds he had ever heard, *those* were the blithest in her ears. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, V, 107.

He landed him in the long dark passage... upon which the studies opened. Into one of *these*... East bolted with our hero. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. V, 87.

Is he not yonder in those uttermost | Parts of the morning? If I flee from *these*, | Can I go from Him? TEN., En. Ard., 224.

Only two of the boats floated. Two of *these* drifted to the Oudh shore and those on board them were killed. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 187.

Note. Sometimes it is open to doubt whether the demonstrative is intended to refer distinctly to the preceding noun. In this case the pronoun may also be understood to be used substantively. This may apply to some of the above quotations.

- c) substantively; 1) when there is no back-reference, apparently, only of persons and as the subject of a nominal predicate; 2) when there is back-reference, of either persons or things, irrespective of grammatical function.

i. Who are *those* yonder getting over the stile? SHER., Riv., V, 3.  
Who are *those* passing? *Those* are our neighbours. SMITH and JONES.  
MURRAY, s. v. *those*, I, 2.

ii. \* O weary night, O long and tedious night, | Abate thy hours! Shine comforts from the east, | That I may back to Athens by daylight, | From *these* that my poor company detest. MIDS., III, 2, 434.

Here the hoary statesman, . . . there the soldier, . . . there again passed my lord's serving man . . . To *these* might be added, the poor suitor, . . . the officer, full of his brief authority. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. XVIII, 175.  
For them (sc. the profiteers) . . . Shakespeare, Milton and Bacon . . . have lived in vain. If *these* have failed, what can we do? THE NEW AGE, No. 1158; 330a.

\*\* In the meantime, we had found nothing of any value but the silver and the trinkets, but neither of *these* were in our way. STEVENSON, TREAS. ISL., Ch. V, 33.

The guineas, too, were about the scarcest, and it was with *these* only that my mother knew how to make her count. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, 34.

Note. There seems to be no restriction in the substantive use of *these* or *those*, when the reference is effected by other means than language, as, for example, by a nod of the head or a sign of the hand. "Ah, your favourites are among *these*!" I concluded turning to an obscure cushion full of something like cats. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. II, 8b.

9. Obs. 1. Demonstrative pronouns take precedence of other adnominal adjuncts modifying the same noun. In the majority of cases they modify the word-group following, as in *this good man*, *these two men*, *those gentlemen boarders*, *these ladies' maids*, *this many a day*, *these many friends* (Merch. of Ven., V, 237).

Note the unusual combinations in: I heard my mother tell my father that I was miserable, and that Matthews was equally wretched; that we had loved one another for *these some years*. MISS LINLEY (G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 26).

The absence of *this so great an* enjoyment. BURKE, ES. on the Sublime, B, I, VIII.

But they may also refer to the noun alone, the other modifier being also defining in character and fulfilling the function of an explanatory apposition to the demonstrative. Thus regularly when the latter is a possessive pronoun: *these my enemies*, and in such collocations as *these present (unhappy) times*, *this twentieth century*. Compare 4, b, Note β.

*This twelfth* year of the duke's enjoyment of his Italian possessions found the court largely weeded of its original Spanish dependants. BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. II, 15.



It seems clear that Meredith designed, in *this first one* of his novels, a comedy somewhat like that of Sir Willoughby Patterne. J. W. BEACH, *The Com. Spir. in G. Meredith*, Ch. III, 35.

It is to the present state of our Bastardy Laws that I would call attention in *this, the ninth month* of the war. Eng. Rev., No. 78, 234.

With other adjuncts instances occur but rarely. Only the following are to hand at the moment of writing:

- i. Who, impotent and bed-rid, scarcely hears | Of *this his nephew's purpose*. Haml., I, 2, 30. (Analogous to *this his purpose*, etc.)

No son of Adam and no daughter of Eve on *this God's earth*, as his (sc. Dickens's) occasional friend, Mr. Carlyle, might have expressed it, could have imagined it possible... for anything in later comedy to rival the unspeakable perfection of Mrs. Quickly's eloquence at its best. SWINBURNE, *Charles Dickens*, 26.

It can hardly be doubted that *this — Hamlet's first word* — is spoken aside. DOWDEN, *Note to Haml.*, I, 2, 65.

- ii. The whole German race has been saturated with *this, the Kaiser-idea*. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 324.

- iii. It is a disgrace to *this the richest land* under the sun that they should want. LLOYD GEORGE (*Times*, No. 1853, 522c).

They allow that *this, the greatest war* ever known, has its roots in causes other than capitalism. *The New Age*, No. 1184, 497a.

Compare: Our Radicals should have thought of all this before, when against the prayers and entreaties of *those the best* who knew and who warned them... they thrust full responsibility on the Dutch majority. *Sat. Rev.* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6276, 16c).

- iv. William Plowden, being *this 31st March*, 1739, full 70 years of age. J. O. PAYNE.<sup>1)</sup> (Thus now only in legal or formal language.)

- II. The demonstrative sometimes appears as an emphatic repetition of a (pro)noun in the preceding statement, especially one with a nominal predicate.

- i. They are no ordinary houses, *those*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI.

It looks a nine warm exercise, *that*, doesn't it? *Ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.

- ii. She's a real little fool. I have it from good authority, *that*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XII, 67b.

It is killing me, *this*, Damon! HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. V, 50.

This practice is particularly common after an elliptic statement containing no other element than a noun with its modifiers. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *that*, I, 1.

Monstrous handsome young man, *that*! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

A sweet voice, *that* — you scarce could better that. TEN., *Sisters*, 14.

A gracious gift to give a lady, *this*! *Id.*, *Aylmer's Field*, 240.

Compare Ch. II, 39 ff, and also such sentences as:

- i. He was not going to be a snuffy schoolmaster — *he*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. I, 101,

- ii. They were bedraggled and dishevelled, *these poor English women*. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

They were indeed infamous, *those Germans*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 38.

He was a wonderful man, *that uncle of yours*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2100.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s.v. *this*, B, II, 1, c.

iii. He will come to a bad end, *will that young Lord*. THACK., Henry Es m., II, Ch. II, 165.

III. Substantive demonstrative pronouns may also be found after nouns to indicate emphatically the same thing as the preceding noun.

Your great name, | *This* conquers. TEN., Lanc. & El., 150.

10. Many idiomatic applications of the demonstrative pronouns deserve special mention. We may distinguish:

I. Collocations denoting either a period or an epoch.

a) The pronouns *this* and *these* are often found in collocations denoting a period, mostly past, sometimes future, reckoned from the moment of speaking or writing. This period is mostly one of definite, less frequently one of indefinite length.

past definite: My father died *within's two hours*. Ham l., III, 2, 136. (within's = within this.)

I have never lived so wicked a life as I have done *this twelvemonth*. Wych., Gent. Dan c. Mast., I, 1, (139).

I have been on the South Parade *this half hour*. SHER., Riv., II, 2.

The girls have been in the house *these three weeks*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 183.

The pistol hasn't been loaded *these fifteen years*. Id., Pend., Ch. XXXI, 342.

past indefinite: i. "Left that place for good, Pendennis?" . . . — "Yes, *this year and more*." Ib., I, Ch. III, 41.

ii. I have been saving up money *these many months*. Ib., Ch. XXV, 268. The Disagreeable Man had yearned for his freedom *these many years*. BEATR. HAR., Ships, II, Ch. II, 119.

iii. It (sc. your face) is much pleasanter than that horrid old Brett's that I have had scowling about my bedroom *these ever so long years*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXIII, 877.

*These recent years* the Big Powers have taken little heed of the progress . . . of the little Balkan States. Eng. Rev., 1912, 1 Nov., 626.

It (sc. Islam) has been allowed to stay in Europe *all these years*. Ib., 628.

iv. Mother, I have yet something more to say. It has been upon my mind, night and day, *this long time*. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. V, 24b. They've never been to look at my poultry *this long while*. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. VIII, 79.

v. I have had but little pride *this many a day*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 352.

vi. We an't seen her *this ever such a time*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 261.

I have been here *this ever-so-long*. Id., Virg., Ch. LXXXI, 857.

future: You'll resolve yourself that question within *these three days*. Wych., Gent. Dan. Mast., I, 1, (132).

I shall never recover my spirits *these three days*. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. Man, I.

I'll live *these fifty years* to plague him. SHER., Riv., III, 1.

They won't dine *these two hours*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

He intends to live *these thirty years*. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. XI, 189.

Note a) Only rarely do we meet with these collocations with *this* or *these* in passages describing past events.

Pen remembered that there was a letter from Mr. Tatham *these three days*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVII, 392.

β) *These* is also used in expressions denoting a number of epochs within a period reckoned from the present moment.

*These three Saturdays* I have come along this road: each time I have had a puncture. II. Lond. News.

I've been on the point of killing myself *this many a time* to get away from my own thoughts. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXXV, 344.

γ) Like many other phrases denoting a measure of time, these collocations are sometimes preceded by the preposition *for*, less frequently by *during*.

i. How does your honour *for this many a day*? Hamlet, III, 1, 91.

He was in France *for these late years*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXXIV, 383.

You know there has not been *for these five years* | So full a harvest. TEN., Dora.

His chariot has been at the gate *for these three minutes*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. II, 7a.

I have watched you *for these months*. WALT. BES., All Sorts & Cond. of Men, Ch. XVI, 127.

ii. You have it (sc. my note) in your hand, though I declare *during these two hours* you have not been gracious enough to read it. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVII, 236.

δ) When a period of the past is meant, these expressions, are sometimes followed by *back*, *past* or *since*, the corresponding phrase to mark the future being *to come*. *Past* sometimes stands between the demonstrative and the noun modified.

i. \* Blackberry has scarcely done an earthly thing *for this month past*. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. X, (292).

What I have been thinking of *this month back*! DICK., Cop., Ch. X, 69b.

I have watched it *this month past*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 321.

I have known it *these months past*. Ib., Ch. LXVI, 708.

You are old enough to be married *this four years since*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XIV, 62a.

Has old Pam taught you, lad, or has he not, *these years and years past*? HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. I, 16.

\*\* We've been freezing at the Danchesters' *this past week*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. IV, 129.

ii. The entrance of Germany into the competition . . . must *for many years to come* inflict a heavy burden on the people of this country. Westm. Gaz., No. 5442, 1c.

ε) The above collocations with demonstratives are now more or less archaic and literary, ordinary English preferring other turns, such as *for the last ten* (etc.) *days* (etc.); *for many* (etc.) *years* (etc.) *back* or *past*; *for the next ten* (etc.) *days* (etc.); *for many* (etc.) *years* (etc.) *to come*. Compare also Ch. XXX, 11 and 12.

She may live *for many a long day*. SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. V, 65.

We have been walking on mines *for the last six months*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LIV, 495.

(He) has been in Lisbon *for the last three weeks*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5430, 8c.

It is the best-written story we have read *for many a long day*. Daily Chronicle.

ζ) With some slight modification of meaning *in* may take the place of *for*.

I am not going to discuss education: we have had enough of that, perhaps, for the moment in the House of Commons *in the last three days*. Times.

η) For *in these later* (*latter* or *last*) *days, weeks, months*, etc., as compared with of *late years*, see Ch. XXX, 11, b, 1.

- b) For *this day* and *this night* we also find, respectively, *to-day* and *to-night*. These latter are more frequent in ordinary spoken English, *this day* and *this night* being chiefly met with:

1) in liturgical or biblical English.

Give us *this day* our daily bread. Bible, Matth., VI, 11.

*This night*, before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice. Ib., XXVI, 34.  
Vouchsafe, O Lord: to keep us *this day* without sin. Bk. of Com. Pray., Te Deum.

Grant that *this day* we fall into no sin. Ib., 3rd Collect.

Compare: *To-day*, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts. Bible, Psalm XCV, 8.

2) in certain collocations stating that the present day is taken as the starting-point in determining an epoch either future or past, mostly the former.

i. We shall return home *this day week*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXX, 262.  
*This day fortnight*, when I'm of age, I'll prove my confidence, too. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 76.

ii. The crime was committed *this day two-and-twenty years*. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 8a.

He was a better man than I was *this day twenty years*. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVI, 283.

Compare: i. We leave *to-day week*. ANTH. HOPE, Comedies of Courtship, I, Ch. IV, 36.

Lady Deane and Sir Roger start for Paris *to-day week*. Ib., I, Ch. IV, 39. (Thus, apparently, throughout the volume.)

ii. \* I shall not return till *this time next week*. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXII, 117b.

\*\* It was put in the plaintiff's parlour-window just *this time three years*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV.

iii. Shall I say *Tuesday fortnight*? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 183.

Note. Instances of *to-day* or *to-night* indicating an epoch of the past, as in the following quotation, seem to be rare. Compare 4, b, Note a).

*To-night*, therefore, sherry was on offer. E. F. BENSON, Mrs. Ames, Ch. II, 42.

Compare: Alfunso, pommell'd to his heart's desire, | Swore lustily he'd be revenged *this night*. BYRON, Don Juan, I, CLXXXIV.

3) in certain collocations stating that the present day is taken as the starting-point or finishing-point in determining a period, i. e. in the collocations:

a) *from this day forth* or *forward*, or simply *from this day*. The use of *forth* in this combination is somewhat archaic. MURRAY, s. v. *forth*, A, 3.

*From this day forth*, | I'll use you for my mirth. JUL. CÆS., IV, 3, 48.

*From this day* | Such I account thy love. Macbeth, I, 7, 38.

Compare: *From this time forward* the interests of the mass of the people must more and more assert themselves to the lowering of tariffs. Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 1c.

β) *to this day*:

Wherever a language, derived from that of ancient Rome is spoken, the religion of modern Rome *to this day* prevails. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 67.



How we came there I have never discovered *to this day*. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., Handl., I, 75).

Compare: *To this hour* they dare not presume to touch my bread, or drink out of the same cup. SWIFT, *Gul, Trav.*, IV, Ch. XI, (214a).

c) *This minute* (or *instant*) = at once.

"Mark," said Tom Pinch energetically: "if you don't sit down *this minute*, I'll swear at you." DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLVIII, 370b.

If you do not put that knife *this instant* in your pocket, I promise, upon my honour, you shall hang at next assizes. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. I, 19.

d) *These days* = at present. Compare e).

I doubt everything *these days*. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 27.  
We're all for Restoration *these days*. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 33.

e) *One* (occasionally *some*) of *these days* — within no long distance of time.

i. They'll be good shots *one of these days*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

I'll tell you what, you'll get hanged *one of these days*. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. I have a mind, *some of these days*, to serve him as he served Mademoiselle's hound — to put a bullet through his heart. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 70.

Note a) The noun in these collections may be preceded by an adjective.

I had a great idea of marrying her myself, *one of these odd days*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIV, 495.

f) (*For*) *this once* = at least on this one occasion. *For* seems to be usually absent.

i. But sealing, *this once*, my pardon, let me to-morrow, in the face of Heaven, receive my future guide and monitress. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

Do forgive us *this once*! SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. *For this once* they might be contented with the sacrifice of Byng. MAC., *Pitt*, (303a).

I can only hope that, *for this once*, he is correct. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VII, 105.

Compare: The slab in the church . . . records his name and some of his virtues, and *for once* tells no lies. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 980.

The prize is not always to the brave. In our revolution it certainly did fall, *for once and for a wonder*, to the most deserving. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 962.

g) *By this time* = now that the present moment has come round.

ANG. What was the Doge's answer? — MAR. That he was | That moment summon'd to a conference; | But 'tis *by this time* ended. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, II, 1, (359a).

*By this time* we had all long ceased to pay any particular notice to the song. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. I, 19.

Compare: i. Johnson's style was *by this* thoroughly established in the public favour. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. IX, 107.

We ought to have been at Heksebakken Station *by this*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5418, 3a.

ii. They (sc. the Territorials) would *by now* have reached their full strength. *Id.*, No. 5400, 2a.

h) *At these (late) years* = at my (your, etc.) great age.

I wonder'd to perceive you so forget | All prudence in your fury *at these years*. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2, (355b).

And never having hitherto refused | Toil, charge, or duty for the state, I did not, *At these late years*, decline what was the highest | Of all in seeming. *Ib.*, (357a)

Note. In the idioms mentioned under *b—h that (those)* takes the place of *this (these)* in narrating past events. The following illustration may suffice:

- i. We may throw them (sc. our vices) from us, and that is what I shall think of doing *one of those days*, — that is, when old Lady Girnington dies. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. VI, 76.
- ii. On *that day week* I left Windsor for Reading. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. III, 14.
- iii. As the prisoner had never broken his fast since yesterday's dinner, I would wink at his cheating Mr. Hindley *that once*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VII, 32*b*.  
Nobody... ever approached her door, except *that once*. *ib.*, Ch. XXX, 146*a*.  
She had forgiven him *that once*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VII, 120.

## II. Collocations not denoting a relation of time.

a) *This (that) much* = at least this (that). Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.391—3.

- i. *This much* we may divulge, that an article upon foreign policy... was in reality composed by Captain Shandon. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXV, 370. *This much* must be said of the War Office that [etc.]. *Daily Mail*.
- ii. I'll give you my shawl, and you can sell it for four or five shillings, — ah! won't *that much* do? MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXVII, 276. He would have given away all the wine-kegs and all the money and all the land, and only reserved to himself some hut on a hill-top hard by...: he meant fully *that much*, but the world interfered. BROWNING, *A Soul's Trag.*, II, (33).

The question of the House of Lords will have to be dealt with during the coming session. *That much* is clear from the preliminary discussion that has gone on during the month. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 122*a*.

Note a) *This (that) much* is also met with adnominally.

I hope, by the way, you will at least do me *this much service*. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. III, 35.

β) Possibly owing to its similarity in sound to *this*, the adverb *thus* sometimes takes the place of the demonstrative. WEBST., *Dict.*; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 121; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 315.

- i. "You're wanted — some one at the door —" and having exerted himself to articulate *thus much*, Mr. Tracy Tupman turned round and fell fast asleep again. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 16.  
*Thus much*, at least, is certain, that both Swift and Voltaire have been successfully mimicked, and that no man has yet been able to mimic Addison. MAC., *Addison*, (755*b*).
- ii. There never has been *thus much plain-speaking* between us before. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XV, 59*b*.

γ) Also *so much* is a frequent variant of *this (that) much*. It implies less precision (7, *e*) and, when weak-stressed, may have the value of the neuter personal pronoun. See Ch. XXXII, 43.

*So much* for Julia... Now we'll turn to Juan. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, LXXXVI. *So much* may be said in favour of Mr. Warrington that, having engaged in play, he fought his battle like a hero. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLII, 439.

It was a letter that no parish clergyman should have received. *So much* he acknowledged to himself. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XII, 122.

*So much* for the pretence that we must set up a Protective tariff in order to save the Empire. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 1*b*.

b) *That*, used either substantively or conjointly, may have the pregnant meaning of *that even* or *even that*. The other demonstratives are but rarely found in this application. Observe that the demonstrative is always preceded by *and*.

i. \* Mangy mutton, brutal beef, pudding on Thursdays and Sundays, *and that* fit to poison you. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 41.

Don't let us be splitting hairs, *and that* amongst ourselves. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. IX, 111.

He stood his ground, *and that* firmly. BAIN, *Comp.*, 53.

\*\* Jeames slept two in a bed, four in a room, *and that room* a cellar very likely. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXV, 255.

ii. To look at the fire, *and* think that there was no house near but this one, *and this one* a boat, was like enchantment. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 166.

iii. I therefore touch only on three points, *and these* but very succinctly. LORD ROSEBERY, *Speech*.

Note a) The same notion can be expressed by *and* without the demonstrative:

Madam Esmond had pointed out to him in her letters that . . . he had himself a name, *and* a very ancient one to support. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 629.

She was suffering herself, too, *and* greatly — much more than she had suffered so long as her anger had lasted. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 270.

β) Similar in meaning are also the idioms instanced in:

i. Mrs. Proudie . . . would not hear of her guest — *and he* a clergyman — going out to the inn for his breakfast on a Sunday morning. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 62.

ii. It's enough to distract me. In my honeymoon, *too*, when my most inveterate enemy might relent. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22b.

Tom was quite disgusted with the levity of his behaviour; — *and* at his time of life, *too*. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 122.

How could I tell what had become of you — *and* night coming on, *too*! SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, II, (182).

c) *And (all) that* sometimes stands for a vague *etc.*, which the speaker is not prepared to specify in the hurry of the discourse.

i. There might be some credit in being jolly with a wife, 'specially if the children had the measles *and that*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. V, 35b.

I ain't a literary man *and that*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

You'd have a little to do, such as reading *and that*. HARDY, *Return of the Nat.*, I, Ch. X, 112.

ii. You're good and kind *and all that*, but I've no right to make your life a burden to you. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. II, 18.

Note. The phrase *and that sort of thing* is often applied in a similar way: Her father must have been a man of genius, and fine feelings, *and that sort of thing*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

d) *At that* is, in recent English, sometimes found in a sense approximating to that of *into the bargain*. According to MURRAY (s.v. *that*, I, 5, c) the phrase is originally an Americanism and may be an extension from *dear* (or *cheap*) *at that* (*price*). Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16,343.

By God! Moleskin, you'll pay for this! . . . damned soon, and damned sharp too, *at that*! Eng. Rev., No. 66, 226.

She was a second of his father's and a poor one *at that*. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 34.

To set out deliberately to "penalise" the industries of another country is neither commercial nor political statesmanship, but a form . . . of buccaneering, and unprofitable buccaneering *at that*. *The New Statesman*, No. 96, 430a.

- e) *That is a good boy*, and similar coaxing forms, are often used after imperative sentences, especially in colloquial diction, to obtain the compliance with a wish.

"Very well," cried I, "*that's a good girl*, I find you are perfectly qualified for making converts." *GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. VII, (274).*

Then don't be so again, *that's a dear good soul!* *DICK., Chimes, IV, 79.*

Note. In the same application we often find *there is a good boy*, etc.

- i. Don't be rash, *there's a good fellow!* *DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. III, 14a.*

Have a cup of tea, *there's a good soul!* *Id., Pickw., Ch. III, 481.*

And now return to the nursery — *there's a dear!* *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 38.*

Now, Grace, be quick, *there's a dear!* *TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 353.*

Compare also: i. "After two days I will discharge thee" — "*That's my noble master!*" *Temp., I, 2, 299.*

- ii. Now he's going to beautify himself — *here's a precious locksmith!* *DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. IV, 18b.*

- f) *That is* and *that is to say* often stand with explanatory words or phrases, mostly preceding, but not infrequently standing after them. Compare Ch. IV, 5.

- i. \* They set up as their leader a pious man, a Mohammedan prophet, whom they called the Mahdi, *that is* the Reformer. *YORK POWELL, Life of Ch. Gordon.*

\*\* The omnibus is, in London at least, the truly popular vehicle; popular, *that is*, in the sense that it is in favour with all classes of the community. *GÜNTHER, Leerb., I, 24.*

- ii. \* He directed that in memory of his great actions Calcutta should be called Alliganore, *that is to say*, the Port of God. *MAC., Clive, (514b).*

\*\* She may not associate the two — the stranger of the ford, *that is to say*, and the philosopher — but she may come to. *BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. IV, 45.*

These developments are likely to injure certain British commercial interests — interests, *that is to say*, 'in posse' if not 'in esse'. *The New Statesman*, No. 103, 604a.

- g) *For* (or *with*) *all that* (or *this*) are used by way of adversative conjunctives. See Ch. XI, 9. *For all*, with or without *that*, often has the value of a concessive conjunction. See Ch. XVII, 89.

- i. The rank is but the guinea stamp; | The man's the gowd *for a' that*. *BURNS, For a' that, 1.*

He had an alarming way now, when he was drunk, of drawing his cutlass and laying it bare before him on the table. But, *with all that*, he minded people less. *STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., Ch. III, 28.*

- ii. \* She's a good girl, Ephraim, and he is a fine man, *for all that* their ways are not the same as ours. *CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 231.*

\*\* He's the most harmless man in the world, *for all* he talks so. *FARQUHAR, Recruit. Offic., V, 3, (330).*

- h) Finally we call attention to the following idioms:

- 1) Dutch *dit zeggende* = *so saying*, less commonly *thus saying*. For illustration see Ch. XXXII, 27, Obs. I, Note a.



- 2) Dutch (Het is wel goed, maar het is niet) dat = ... *just so* (or *it*).

If the appetite is uncertain or the cooking is not '*just so*', Yorkshire Relish will put things right. 11. Lond. News, Advert.

To use a rag-time expression, they (sc. the pianos) are '*just it*'. Eng. Rev., No. 269.

11. Also the following words are often used in the function of demonstrative pronouns:

- a) the adjectives *the former* (*the first*) and *the latter* (*the last*). See Ch. XXIX, 19; Ch. XXX, 11 and 14; Ch. XXXV, 12.
- b) the adjectives *the farther* (*further*) and *the hither*. See Ch. XXX, 10 and Ch. XL, 165.
- c) the definite article. See Ch. XXXI, 6.
- d) the indefinite pronouns (*the*) *one* . . . *the other* or *another*. See Ch. XL, 155, 156 and 165.
- e) the adjective *present* preceded by the definite article, as in *the present writer* (*author*, etc.), (Ch. XXXV, 6, Obs. II); *the present week* (*month*, etc.) (Ch. XXXVI, 4, *b*, Note  $\beta$ ); also in other combinations, such as are instanced in:

I could not avoid expressing my concern to the stranger at seeing a gentleman in such circumstances and offered my purse to satisfy *the present demand*. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. III, (249).

In *the present case* there were no scenes, no stage, no machinery. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXVII, 294.

On *the present occasion*, however, fate had decreed that I should not enjoy the consummation of the amusement. Id., Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. I, 19. Of these new words which have been formed in English itself we shall have to speak later; in *the present chapter* we shall treat of those which have been adopted from foreign languages. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. III, 80.

In the eyes of Mr. Collings a speech delivered so far back as January has no bearing on *the present situation*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2a.

- f) the adverb *yonder* and its abbreviated forms *yond* and *yon*.

As quasi-demonstratives these are now chiefly found in proetical language: *yonder* seems to have the greatest currency; *yon* is especially found in poets that hail from the North or Scotland; *yond* has now entirely fallen into disuse, except in dialects, but is at least as common as either *yonder* or *yon* in SHAKESPEARE. See A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex.

In poetry and rhythmical prose the choice between *yonder* and *yon* is largely determined by the laws of metre and rhythm.

As an adverb *yonder* is not uncommon in ordinary spoken English, but the adverbial *yon* and *yond* seem to belong to the language of the illiterate. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 378; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 319; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.41.

i. Sweet was the sound, when oft, at evening's close, | Up *yonder* hill the village murmur rose. GOLDSM., Des. Vil., 114.

Near *yonder* copse where once the garden smiled. Ib., 137.

There at the foot of *yonder* nodding beech, | That wreathes its old fantastic roots so high, | His listless length at noontide would he stretch. GRAY, *Elegy*, 101.

*Yonder* little child may have thoughts too deep even for your great mind. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 40.

We have but *yonder* ugly negro boy... and a passenger who has the state cabin to himself. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. I, 3.

- ii. Hard by *yon* wood, now smiling as in scorn, | Mutt'ring his wayward fancies, he would rove. GRAY, *Elegy*, 106.

Look at *yon* City Cross! | See, on its battled towers appear | Phantoms, that scutcheons seem to rear. SCOTT, *Marm.*, V, xxiv, 29.

I know not why we... should have less knowledge of the laws of love than those gayer dames of the South, whose blood runs — to judge by her dark hair — in the veins of *yon* fair maid. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XIV, 62a.

- iii. *Yond* Cassius hath a lean and hungry look. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 194.

*Yond* boy would find out the bit o' manhood in me. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 8.

If you and me had met with either o' *yond* rutting stags [etc.]. *Id.*, Ch. VI, 82.

- iv. \* The little fountain *yonder* was meant only to cool their (sc. of the 'rouës') claret. THACK., *Men's Wives*, Ch. II, (326).

His very lodge-porter *yonder* is a share-holder. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 81. Who is that little child calling her chickens, or watering her roses *yonder*? *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 362.

\*\* *Yon's* our house Mas'r Davy. DICK., *Cop.*, 15a.

\*\*\* Then she let them (sc. her eyes) go past me to what was *yond*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LII, iv, 428.

Note. In the last quotation but one *yon* may also be understood as a substantive word. This is certainly its character in:

Who's *yon*, that, near the waterfall, | ... Sits upright on a feeding horse? WORDSWORTH, *The Idiot-Boy*, 347.

I can read *yon* now. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXIV, 124b.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS USED IN OTHER FUNCTIONS.

##### DEMONSTRATIVES AS DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

12. The demonstratives used as determinatives are chiefly *that* and *those*; *this* occurs but rarely in this function, and of *these* no instances have been found.

- i. *That* which promised happiness when we were one in heart, is fraught with misery now that we are two. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 50.

- ii. We never forgive *those* whom we have injured. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 45.

- iii. Come hither, gentlemen, | And lay your hands again upon my sword: Never to speak of *this* that you have heard. *Ham.*, I, 5, 159.

There is no kind of exercise which I would so recommend to my readers of both sexes as *this* of riding. *Spect.*, No. CXV.

She had other things to vex her, besides *this* about Mr. Robarts. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 48.

13. Determinative demonstratives may be used conjointly:

Let us... seek in humbler circumstances *that* place with which all may be happy. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III, (246).

I was never much displeased with *those* harmless delusions that tend to make us more happy. *Id.*, Ch. III, (253).

Standard French is the dialect of *that* district of which Paris is the centre-SWEET, *Sounds of English*, § 2.

For the use of the prop-word *one* after the singulars see Ch. XLIII, 20, c.

- b) absolutely, both in the singular and the plural: in the singular chiefly of things.

i. \* Which son of his was killed in action? Not *that*, I hope, whom you praised so much for his excellent character.

\*\* Have you a flower-pot like *that* I bought some months ago? LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 20.

I took a seat at the end of the hearthstone opposite *that* towards which my landlord advanced. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. I, 6b.

We must never forget that the country of which we read was a very different country from *that* in which we live. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 275.

ii. \* *Those* of the farmers with whom she had no dealings were continually asking each other, "Who is she?" HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XII, 103.

\*\* It is not easy to perceive what fumes *those* are which most oppress the senses. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. X, 84.

Note a) Especial mention may here be made of the application of the absolute determinative demonstrative pronouns followed by *of* to replace an absolute genitive, which for various reasons may be impossible or objectionable. See Ch. XXIV, 47, Note. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.322.

We keep, if not our own birthday, *those* of our children. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. LII, 456.

β) In familiar style the absolute determinative with back-reference is often replaced by *the one(s)*, when the meaning of the noun understood admits of such substitution. Compare Ch. XLIII, 17; also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.521 and 16.324—5.

Whereat Scrooge's niece's sister — the plump one with the lace tucker: not *the one* with the roses — blushed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>10</sup>, III, 83.

γ) *The ones* is an acceptable variant of *those* in the function of the nominal part of the predicate, when the subject is a demonstrative. These words were for centuries accented in the French way, and these are especially *the ones* we ought to attend to. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 155.

- c) substantively: *that (which)*, only with regard to things; *those (who or that)*, only with regard to persons.

i. We can but give thee *that which* we possess. BYRON, *Manfred*, I, 1.

ii. Will was not one of *those whose* wit "keeps the roadway." G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVII, 346.

Note. The plural determinative *those*, when followed by an incomplete clause, has a function which is similar to that of a prop-word. Compare Ch. XXIX, 14, *L*, Note I and 18, *c*, Note III; Ch. XXXII, 19, Obs. III; also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.371.

Lord Roberts and Lord Strathcona had each a particularly cordial welcome from *those present*. *Times*, No. 1830, 67d.

There was no time, no opportunity for *those on board* to save themselves. *Id.*, No. 1832, 111c.

I should venture to suggest that... *those in authority* should consider certain points, which at present they are prone to overlook. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6347, 4a.

14. Obs. I. Sometimes the determinative *that* has an intensive meaning, i. e. it has the value of *such*, when referring to the intensity of a quality. Like *such* it is in this case followed either by an adnominal or an adverbial clause. Compare Ch. XXXVII, 7, *b*.
- i. I'm not *that* rake that the world imagines. FARQUHAR, *Recruit*. Of., IV, I, (308).  
(He) felt *that* tempest brooding round his heart, | Which, if he spoke at all, would break perforce | Upon a head so dear, in thunder. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, II.  
We both have undergone | *That* trouble which has left me thrice your own. *Ib.*, 736.
- ii. For my part I have *that* regard for you that I should be sorry the thing went on. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXIV, 244.  
The affectionate girl was in *that* state of rapture and was so overjoyed to talk about the night when she brought me the flowers, ... that I was just obliged to get into the little carriage and calm her down. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXV, 531.
- II. The substantive determinatives *that* and *those* often supply the place of the indefinite *certain*, which is used only conjointly or absolutely. See Ch. XL, 185. They are distinguished from *certain* in being always followed by an adnominal clause giving information about the thing or persons indicated, and preserve, accordingly, their determinative function. In the Dutch equivalent of the idiom the singular has *iets* or *een zeker iets*, the plural *zekere mensen* (*personen* or *lieden*, etc.) or also simply *mensen* or the pronominal *er*.  
It deserves to be noted that the use of the determinatives in this function is confined to affirmative declarative sentences.  
For a detailed and highly valuable discussion of this idiom see WILLERT, *Eng. Stud.*, XXXIII. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.355 and 16.372.
- i. There was *that* between him and you which neither durst so much as speak of. DICK., *Barnaby Rudge*, Ch. VI, 24*b*.  
There was *that* in his pale face which made the other rise immediately and ask him what the matter was. *Id.*, *Cricket*, III, 70.  
There is *that* in the indolent Mortimer which seems to hint that ... he might be impressed by what he here relates. *Id.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 21.  
There was *that* in Lady Jane's innocence which rendered light talking impertinence before her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 368.  
There was *that* about his style and appearance which stamped him as a man of 'ton'. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 313.
- ii. There be *those* in this house who would be alarmed by the sight of a stranger. SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. III, 39.  
There are | *Those* who would live to think on't (sc. my fate) and avenge me. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2, (358*a*).  
There were *those* among them who said he was the house-steward, only he dined with the family. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 232.  
There were *those* who said that the loss had not been near so heavy as was supposed. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 128.  
There were *those* who looked on the militia with no friendly eye. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 287.



It would hurt me to know that there were *those* looking at me who thought me unfit to sit in your rooms. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 353.

There may be *those* to whom this news says nothing. HORACE HUTCHINSON, The Insect-hunter (Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 4c).

Note a) Although the above application of *that* and *those* is especially frequent in sentences opening with *there is* or *was*, as in all the preceding quotations, it is not seldom extended to others of a similar tenor. Of particular interest are such as have been framed in conscious or unconscious imitation of the celebrated passage from Hamlet (I, 2, 85): *But I have that within which passeth show*.

- i. \* I left home originally, because I had *that* within me which wouldn't be domineered over by a sister. DICK., Chuz., 106.<sup>1)</sup>

Besides his grief, which he took into prison with him, he had *that* in his heart which secretly cheered and consoled him, THACK., Henry Esmond, 153.<sup>1)</sup> For I have *that* within me that shall tire | Torture and Time, and breathe when I expire. ETHEL C. MAYNE, Byron, Intro.d., 16.

\*\* His general appearance was grand and commanding; but, looking at him with attention, men read *that* in his dark features from which they willingly withdrew their eyes. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XLIII, 461.

\*\*\* He had done *that* which could never be forgiven. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 186.

- ii. \* This disease is beyond my practice: Yet I have known *those* which have walked in their sleep, who have died holily in their beds. MACB., V, 1, 66.  
There were not wanting *those* who predicted that he would . . . grow impatient of the time and effort required to establish a serious newspaper. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 4b.

β) The relative pronoun is sometimes dropped after *that* as used in the above application. See Ch. XXXIX, 27 ff. The following quotation is an instance of an unusual practice:

I see *that* in Dirk Brower's eye makes me tremble. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XII, 64.

γ) Also the conjoint demonstrative is occasionally found in the sense of *certain*.

It was felt throughout its performance (sc. of the 'School for Scandal') that there were *those qualities* in it which excite our admiration, and leave behind the happiest impression. G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 52.

δ) The meaning of *that* as described above may also be approximately expressed by:

- 1) *a something*, or occasionally *a certain something*,
- 2) *something* and its archaic variant *somewhat*.

- i. \* There was in Mr. W's tragedy *a something* which reminded him both of Coriolanus and Othello. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXIII, 661.

But you see, miss, there's always *a something* that you'd like to alter, go where you will. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsem., Ch. XXI, 188.

\*\* And yet Harold's face had in it *a certain something* that is not to be found in a brother's, and Miranda's had just the first shade — the faint dawn of something that is not to be found in a sister's. TAUCHNITZ Mag., IX, 49.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. \* Those same sunken eyes . . . had *something* in them that was at once commanding and sinister. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 43.

There was *something* in his whole appearance that indicated a being of a different order from the bustling race about him. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Book, Roscoe, 17.

1) WILLERT, E. S., XXXIII, 242.

Even when he was poorest and most obscure, there was *something* about him that secured respect. JOHN BAILEY, Dr. Johnson and his Circle, Ch. I, 15.  
 \*\* Mr. Jones had *somewhat* about him which, though writers are not thoroughly agreed in its name, doth certainly inhabit some human breasts. FIELDING, Tom Jones, I, 135.<sup>1)</sup>

ε) As an approximate equivalent of *those* we find *some*; *any* being used in corresponding sentences that are interrogative, negative or conditional (in import).

i. There are *some* who say, jealousy is no more to be hid than a cough. WYCHERLEY, Gent. Danc. Mast., I, 1, (137).

There are *some* who say that Florence Nightingale is her own memorial. Westm. Gaz., No. 5448, 8c.

ii. He is wide of the mark when he thinks that there are *any* in England whose desire it is to oppress and colonize the countries of the South American continent. Athen., No. 4447, 61a.

ζ) Analogous to the above is the archaic construction without *some* or *any*, as in:

If Mævius scribble in Apollo's spite, | *There are* who judge still worse than he can write. POPE, Es. on Crit., I, 35.

*There are* who have, at midnight hour, | In slumber scaled a dizzy tower. SCOTT, Lady, II, xxxi.

Yet *live there* still who can remember well, | How, when a mountain chief his bugle blew, | Both field and forest, dingle, cliff, and dell, | And solitary heath, the signal knew. Ib., III, 1, 10.

*There are* who ask not if thine eye | Be on them. WORDSWORTH, Ode to Duty, II.

η) It is hardly necessary to add that also certain nouns preceded by the indefinite article may have the value of *that* as here described. There was *a bone* about Sir Barnes Newcome she did not like. THACK., Newcomes, III, 233.<sup>1)</sup>

Joseph had little ear or liking for music; yet there was *a quality* in Tiretta's which constantly fascinated while it aggravated him. BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. I, 9.

III. In careless language the determinative *that* is sometimes dropped, often together with the preposition *of*. Compare FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>1)</sup>, § 185; id., E. S., XVII; HODGSON, Errors in the Use of English<sup>8</sup>, 239.

The place was yielded without other conditions than *of quarter*. CLAR., Hist. Reb., VI, 4, 172.<sup>2)</sup>

The courage of the soldier and *the citizen* are essentially different. HAZLITT, Free Thoughts on Public Affairs, 143.<sup>3)</sup>

The result of his investigations appears to be that the position of idealist and *materialist* is alike untenable. Westm. Rev., July 1875, 229.<sup>3)</sup>

#### DEMONSTRATIVES AS INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

15. The demonstratives, whether singular or plural, are often used as indefinite pronouns.

1) WILLERT, E. S., XXXIII, 241. 2) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

3) HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 139.

In this application they never stand by themselves, i.e. *this* is always followed by *that*, or by *the other* or *another* as a substitute for *that*; *these* is always followed by *those*. Sometimes *the other* or *another* stands after a combination of *this* and *that*.

The conjunctive is either *and* or *or*, often without much difference of meaning; not infrequently there is no conjunctive.

Both the singulars and the plurals may be used conjointly, absolutely or substantively. In this last case they may denote either persons or things. The substantive use with reference to persons is unusual, the prop-word *one* being mostly called into requisition. It is not always clear, however, whether this prop-word is, or is not to be understood as a substitute for a preceding or subsequent noun. The latter view mostly appears to be the more plausible one and has been taken in doubtful cases. The substantive use with regard to things is seldom doubtful, the prop-word *one* being only used when there is a clear reference to a preceding noun.

a) The singulars used as modifiers of a subsequent or preceding noun denoting either a person or a thing,

1) the whole combination standing before the noun modified.

At last he had a morbid horror of a snob — a morbid fear lest *this* or *the other* man should turn snob on his hands. TROL., THACK., Ch. I, 6.

People glibly speculate upon *this*, *that* and *the other* contingency that will follow the invention of a really safe sky-going airship. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 561. One party must not say to the other, "I will only confer, providing you, on your part, will first subscribe to *this*, *that*, or *the other* general principle or particular method." Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 1b.

2) the noun modified standing after *this* and not repeated or represented by the prop-word after the other member(s) of the combination.

Our good child ransacked all her drawers . . . selecting *this* thing and *that* and *the other* to make a little heap for Rebecca. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 64.

On *this* point or *that* she (sc. Japan) may give way, but the seriousness of her general intentions cannot be doubted. The New Statesman, No. 103, 604b.

3) the noun modified standing after *this* and repeated after *that*.

I despatched emissaries down *this* path, and *that* path, and at last went wandering in search of her myself. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XVIII, 97b. Praise *this* man's virtues and *that* man's vices. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 47.

4) *this* and *that* modifying different nouns.

The incidents which we see being debated at the end of this affair — the fate of *this* little town or *that* big village — seem trivial and petty. Westm. Gaz., No. 6199, 1b.

5) *this*, as well as the other member(s) of the combination, used absolutely, the head-word being found in a preceding part of the discourse.

Two wheels she had | Of antique form; *this* large, for spinning wool; | *That* small for flax. WORDSWORTH, Michael, 83.

Post upon post arrived at the Monastery of St. Mary's . . . *this* from the Privy Council, *that* from the Primate of Scotland, and *this other* again from the Queen Mother. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. VI, 90.

- b) The singulars used without reference to a subsequent or preceding noun denoting either a person or a thing,
- 1) the combination used consecutively, either without or with the prop-word *one* after *this*.
- i. \* The gentleman knew intimately, as it appeared, all the leading men of letters of his day, and talked about Tom Campbell, and Tom Hood, and Sydney Smith, and *this and the other*, as if he had been their most intimate friend. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.
- \*\* Dora slipped in among them, smiling at *this one and that*, till she came to the stout cook. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 295.
- At the opening of each Session some one proposes that *this one or that* be elected Chairman of the party. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 53, 124.
- ii. He looked me steadily in the face, and talked of *this and that*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LII, 544.
- So by *this and that* . . . I left home . . . with as awful a reputation as ever a young gentleman earned. *Ib.*, Ch. LV, 571.
- Mamma began quite an artless conversation about *this or that*. *Ib.*, Ch. LXVII, 706.
- Don't you say every day "*This and that* will happen, please God." G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. II, 19.
- Between *this and that*, I was so utterly terrified of the blind beggar that I forgot my terror of the captain. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 29. (= Dutch Door het een en ander.)
- They (sc. the journalists) are in a frightful fuss about the "effect" of *this or that* on the "relations" of *that and the other*. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3837, 632a).
- He was presently explaining to us that, if *this, that and the other* had had been done, . . . the whole thing would have been over in a month or two. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 192.
- As you read the narrative, you will say that *this, that, and the other* were most suspicious circumstances. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Oct., 412.
- 2) the combination split up by other elements of the sentence, either without or with the prop-word *one* after *this*, repetition of the prop-word after *that* being unusual.
- i. \* There's some particular prize we all of us value, and that every man of spirit will venture his life for. With *this*, it may be to achieve a great reputation for learning; with *that*, to be a man of fashion, and the admiration of the town; with *another*, to consummate a great work of art or poetry, and go to immortality that way; and with *another* for a certain time of his life, the sole object and aim is a woman. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, III, Ch. II, 326.
- \*\* Cuff, the unquestioned king of the school, ruled over his subjects and bullied them with splendid superiority. *This one* blacked his shoes, *that* toasted him bread, *others* would fag out and give him balls at cricket. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.
- People moved about ceaselessly and restless, like caged animals in a menagerie. Men were playing at fives. Others pacing and tramping: *this one* in colloquy with his lawyer in dingy black — *that one* walking sadly, with his wife by his side, and a child on his arm. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340. (The reference is to the Fleet Prison.)
- The innocent dancing youth who pressed round her, attracted by her beauty, were rather afraid, after a while, of engaging her. *This one* felt dimly that she despised him; *another* that his simpering common-places only occasioned Miss Newcome's laughter. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 270.



- ii. It was Mr. Hampton *this*, Mr. Hampton *that*, Mr. Hampton *the other thing*, till I got really alarmed about her acquaintance with Mr. Hampton. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

b) The plurals denoting persons or things.

- i. The busy sylphs surround their darling care, | *These* set the head, and *those* divide the hair, | Some fold the sleeve, while others plait the gown. POPE, *Rape*, I, 145—148.
- ii. On all the floors were piles of books, to the amount, perhaps, of some thousands of volumes: *these*, still in bales! *those*, wrapped in paper, as they had been purchased: *others* scattered singly or in heaps. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 310b.

Note a) The singulars are sometimes used as head-words.

Had she ever said a word against Mrs. *This* or Miss *That*? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVI, 922.

You've got your head so stuffed with the New Humor and the New Woman and the New *This*, *That* and *the Other*, all mixed up with your own old Adam, that you've lost your senses. SHAW, *The Philanderer*, II, (108).

β) The employment of a singular as a component part of a parasynthetic compound appears to be rare.

They (sc. the poet and the artist) are divided between the blonde and the brunette; the aquiline nose and the Proserpine: *this shaped eye and that*. G. MER., *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVIII, 215.

γ) Instances of two identical demonstratives placed in immediate succession are uncommon.

And since the quarrel | Will bear no colour for the thing he is, | Fashion it thus; that what he is, augmented, | Would run to *these and these* extremities. JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 31.

Young as I was, I also could put *that* and *that* together. MARRYAT, *Perc. Keene*, Ch. XIV.<sup>1)</sup>

16. a) In vulgar language *here* or *there*, both mostly mutilated into into *'ere*, is often placed after the conjoint, less frequently after the absolute or substantival *this* or *that*, respectively. Occasionally *here* or *'ere* is also met with after the conjoint *these*, but no instances have been found of the combination *those there* (or *'ere*). Compare FRANZ, E. S., XII; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2)</sup>, 800; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.95.

- i. \* I hope *this here* reverend gen'l'm'n'll excuse me saying that I was *the* Weller as owns you. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 240.

You are the forty-fifth as come about *this 'ere* place. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 171.

\*\* "I've only got to say *this 'ere*," said Sam, stopping short, "that if I was the proprietor o' the Markis o' Granby, and that *'ere* Stiggins came and made toast in my bar, I'd —". DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 244.

"Well, what has that to do with the postboys?" asked Bob Sawyer. — "*This here*," replied Sam. *Ib.*, Ch. LI, 469.

- ii. "What's the matter wit *that 'ere* gen'l'm'n?" inquired Sam. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVII, 241. You'll live to see me punch *that 'ere* Stiggins yet. *Ib.*, Ch. LII, 481.

1) MURRAY, S. V. *that*, B, I, 3.

Under the church of *that there* parish lie my ancestors. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. I, 7.

\*\* I've read *that 'ere* in the newspapers. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIII, 399. Besides *that 'ere*, I wondered to see the gen'l'm'n so formiliar with his servant, *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 178.

"Amiable man *that 'ere*, Sammy," said Mr. Weller, smoking violently. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVII, 242.

- iii. The worst o' *these here* shepherds, is, my boy, that they reg'larly turns the heads of all the young ladies about here. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVII, 243.

If I'd my vay, Samivel, I'd just stick some o' *these here* lazy shepherds behind a wheel-barrow, and run'em up and down a fourteen-inch-wide plank all day. *Ib.*

Hand down *these 'ere* trunks. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 68.

Note a) No further instances have been found of the vulgarism instanced in:

I should not like to sleep in *this yeer* bed. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 72.

β) *Here* or *there* may also stand after the noun modified by a demonstrative, but this idiom is also met with in good colloquial language.

I got a promise of this fair one *here* | To have her love. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 208.

*That* doctor *there*, why, what do he know about seafaring men? STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, Ch. III, 26.

- b) *Them* is often used, irrespective of case, to replace the conjoint, absolute or substantive *these* or *those*, either as pure demonstratives or as determinatives. Although the practice may be traced back to late Middle English (MURRAY quotes an instance from CAXTON), no instances seem to have been found in SHAKESPEARE. See also STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 800; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.13.

- i. Like *them* sums in the 'rithmetic book 'bout the rails in the horse's shoes. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 242.

I hope ven I'm gone, Veller, that you'll think on me as I was afore I know'd *them* people. *Ib.*, Ch. LH, 480.

Asked me to psalm-singing once, and to hear Mr. Ward preach: don't care for *them* sort of entertainments. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 5.

I don't trust *them* governesses. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

- ii. "Wot observations?" inquired Sam. — "*Them* as she made, arter she was took ill." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 480

- iii. "I begin to see now," she says, "ven it's too late, that if a married 'ooman vishes to be religious, she should begin with dischargin' her dooties at home, and makin' *them* as is about her cheerful and happy," *Ib.*

- c) Much rarer is the use of *they* to replace either *these* or *those*.

"*They* women knows nothin' and understands nothin'," said the gardener. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 40.

Our mis'ess has too much sense under *they* knots of black hair to do such a mad thing. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXIII, 261.

- d) *That* is often used for *so* as an adverb of degree; the use of *this* in this meaning is uncommon. For illustration see 7, e.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The determinative pronouns are *same* and *such*, which are both indeclinable.

SAME.

2. *Same*, normally preceded by the definite article is, in the main, found in the same meanings and applications as the Dutch (de)zelde. For illustration see also Ch. XVI, 9—10.

Note *a*) The dropping of the definite article is especially met with in vulgar language (3, *e*, 1, Note *β*) and in mercantile style (4, Obs. II). It was your milkman that happened to tell Matthew that he had a customer *same* name as himself. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VIII, 170.

*β*) In the case of a compound subject *the same* is often preceded by *one*, thus: *one and the same*. The addition of *one* answers the purpose of obviating the ambiguity which attaches to *the same*, when the second member of the comparison is understood.

Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are *one and the same* person. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (213).

3. *The same* is used:

- a) conjointly: He offered me *the same* conditions as he offered you. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 38.

For the use of the prop-word *one* after *the same*, see Ch. XLIII, 21.

- b) absolutely: Why do you trouble yourself, Mistress Stella, about my instrument? I have *the same* the Archbishop gave me; and it is as good now the Bishops are away. SWIFT, *Journ. to Stella*, 29 Sept.

- c) substantively, apparently only with regard to things, and sometimes more or less adverbial in character.

- i. Everybody else said *the same*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 78.

Simpkins could have said *the same*. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, A, 10.

The man seized Webb without saying a word, and pulled him after him through the woods; and the other man did *the same* with Ned and me. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

- ii. You'll never think *the same* of me again. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XVIII. If there is one person I despise more than another, it is the man who does not think exactly *the same* on all topics as I do. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XI, 182.

Also in the following quotations *the same* is used rather substantively than absolutely, standing as it does for *the same material* (or a noun of some such meaning):

A shirt of linked mail, with sleeves and gloves of *the same*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 13.

(His tunic was) formed ... of the skin of the grey squirrel ... He had breeches of *the same*. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 25.

d) predicatively, with a subject denoting either a person or a thing, and partly adjectival, partly substantival in character.

i. But she was always *the same* to me. She never changed to her foolish Peggotty. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X.

He ... looked exactly *the same* under all circumstances. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 9.

It won't be Miss who spoils your ease; you'd be *the same*, had she never come. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XIII, 120a.

I am different to you from what I am to other people; I can never be *the same* to you that I am to other people. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., *Handl.*<sup>2</sup>, I, 67).

ii. If you should change your mind and take the old lady — 't is *the same* to me — I'll marry the niece. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1, (241).

When the subject is a noun, or a demonstrative as the representative of a noun, the predicative *the same* may also be understood as absolute.

i. She knew that life could never be *the same* again, if she could not believe her son. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VII, 123.

ii. Joseph was with difficulty prevailed upon to show it (sc. the piece of gold) them ... He, however, attested this to be *the same* which had been taken from him. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XV, 39.

e) adverbially, in various shades of meaning, i. e. in that of:

1) *in the same way*: Cædit, cedit and sedit are all pronounced *the same*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6059, 4a.

Do you mean to say that I am expected to treat my daughter *the same* as I would any other girl? SHAW, *The Philanderer*, II, (150).

Compare: The whole place was ... quite as delightful a place as ever; and yet did not impress me *in the same way*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 70a.

Note a) Sometimes *the same* becomes adverbial through transposition. Poor wretch! ... you have a heart and nerves *the same* as your brother-men! EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XVI, 85a.

It has been urged by the Congress of Teachers, 1912, that definite trade instruction should be given to the girls *the same* as to the boys. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 64, 551.

ß) In vulgar language this *same*, without the definite article, is sometimes placed for emphasis before the conjunction *as*.

I'll put in some bread and water for him, *same as* you advised me to. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, E, 95.

That night Joe Barcomb came up to this 'ere Cauliflower public-house, *same as* he'd been told. *Ib.*, F, 112.

She's got to make her living *same as* everybody else. *Punch*, No. 3721, 346b.

2) *so also*. This application seems to be rare. Compare the Latin *idem*. Sir Lancelot, as became a noble knight, | Was gracious to all ladies, and *the same* | In open battle or the tilting-field | Forbore his own advantage. TEN., *Guin.*, 327.

3) *with the same readiness, cleverness, ease*, etc., invariably preceded by an intensive: Here was a most respectable attachment, and she would have taken Bullock Senior *just the same*. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 119.



4) *in any (or either) case*. In this sense now obsolete: Suppose I am a cabinet-maker? When I send in my chairs, do I ask who is to sit upon them? No; it's all one to me . . . ; I must be paid for the chairs *the same*, use them who may. MISS BURNEY, *Cecilia*, V, viii.<sup>1)</sup>

5) *nevertheless or notwithstanding*, only in conjunction with *all* or *just*. For illustration see Ch. XI, 9.

*All the same* appears in a modified meaning, apparently that of *quite*, in: Joseph would speak his mind, and lecture her *all the same* as if she were a little girl. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 46b.

4. Obs. I. The conjoint *same* is sometimes used co-ordinately with:

a) a demonstrative pronoun, the definite article, which normally precedes *same*, falling out. The combination often expresses disparagement, consequent on irritation; occasionally, playful familiarity. See Ch. XXXVI, 2, c, Note  $\beta$ . In SHAKESPEARE out of 95 instances of *same*, 55 occur in conjunction with a demonstrative. The practice is now archaic. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 317 and MURRAY, s. v. *same*, 5.

Take *this same* letter, | And use thou all the endeavour of a man | In speed to Padua. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 4, 47.

What did you mean by *that same* handkerchief you gave me even now? *Othello*, IV, 1, 154.

List, lady; be not coy, and be not cozen'd | With *that same* vaunted name *Virginity*. MILTON, *Comus*, 738.

Tell me that *this same* Kite will be hanged. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, IV, 3, (317).

If *this same* Palmer will me lead | From hence to Holy-Rood, | Like his good saint, I'll pay his meed, | Instead of cockle-shell, or head, | With angels fair and good. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, xxv.

Your castle of Wolf's Crag . . . will afford the same hospitality to your kinsman of A— that it gave to *this same* Sir William Ashton. *Id.*, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXIV, 245.

The integrity of their Unions was demanded in addition: *those same* Unions that have taken years to erect as barricades against the aggression of Capital. *The New Age*, No. 1173, 474b.

Note. The substantive use of *this (that) same*, as in the following quotation, seems to occur but rarely:

Doctors always send ailing folk for change of air: and you know I've had plenty o' *that same* lately. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XII, 133.

$\beta$ ) *any* and, perhaps, other indefinite pronouns, such as *all*, *every*, *either*. The practice seems to be uncommon, and is certainly met with only in literary language.

The Numerator and the Denominator of a fraction may be multiplied or divided by *any, the same* number without altering the value of the fraction. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 111.

II. In older English the substantive *the same* is often used by way of personal pronoun. The usage is now confined to literary diction, in which it is occasionally employed to impart a ring of mock-dignity to the style. The language of the law preserves the ancient practice to this day. Also in mercantile style *the*

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

*same*, or rather *same*, is a frequent substitute for *it* and its plural *they* or *them*. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *same*, 4; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 317.

- i. The Scripture moveth us in sundry places... that we should... confess our sins to the end that we may obtain forgiveness for *the same*. **Book of Common Prayer.**

The Baron rose, and . . . | With cheerful wonder in his eyes | The lady Geraldine espies, | And gave such welcome to *the same*, | As might beseem so bright a dame. COLERIDGE, *Christabel*, II, 401.

For in my sleep I saw that dove, | That gentle bird, whom thou dost love, | . . . I saw *the same* | Fluttering, and uttering fearful moan. *Ib.*, 534.

He had about him that sort of slovenly smartness and swaggering gait, which is peculiar to young gentlemen who *smoke* in the streets by day, shout and scream in *the same* by night. DICK., *Pickw.* Ch. XXX, 267. In the meantime the youngest Miss Pecksniff brought from the kitchen a smoking dish of ham and eggs, and, setting *the same* before her father, took up her station at a low stool. *Id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 6b.

That Hamilton was wasting his substance on another went home far more keenly to his lawful wife than that he was wasting his love on *the same*. VICT. CROSS, *Six Women*, Ch. III, 94.

- ii. It is requested that any Reader observing a defect in, or damage to, a Book, Manuscript, or Map will point out *the same* to the Superintendent of the Reading-Room. **British Museum, Reading-Room.**

- iii. I beg to acknowledge receipt of your esteemed order of April 15th. *The same* shall have my best attention. **Business Letter Writer.**

In answer to your correspondent's enquiry for an illustrated edition of the "Ancient Mariner", we can supply *same* for 3 s. 6 d. and 4 d. postage. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 488, 351c.

Your order is received with thanks; *same* shall have our best care. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005, 9b.

- III. Quite archaic and literary is the use of *the same* — relative with the value of *he* (or *she*) + relative, as in:

Well; tell me now, what lady is *the same* | To whom you swore a secret pilgrimage? *Merch. of Ven.*, I, I, 119.

And Christabel awoke and spied | *The same* who lay down by her side. COLERIDGE, *Christabel*, II, 370.

5. Independently of its grammatical function *the same* is often found modified by adverbs of degree, such as *all*, *exactly*, *just*, *much*, *precisely*, *quite*, *very*.

Of these combinations only the following deserve more than a passing mention:

- a) *Much the same* = approximately the same: Life tastes *much the same*, whether we quaff it from a golden goblet, or drink it from a stone mug. **JEROME, Idle Thoughts.**

The symptoms of the infirmity (sc. the blues) are *much the same* in every case. *Ib.*, II, 30.

- b) *The very same*. Note that the adverbial modifier in this combination is placed after the definite article: They said *the very same* thing about my Lord March. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 317.

*The very same* message says that they were so tired that they had to halt for two days. *Daily Chronicle*.

6. a) Some shades of meaning of *same* may also be expressed by:

- 1) *ilk*, which is now quite obsolete, but survives in the Scotch of *that ilk* = "of the same place, territorial designation, or name: chiefly in names of landed families, as *Guthrie of that Ilk*, *Wemyss of that Ilk* = Guthrie of Guthrie, Wemyss of Wemyss." MURRAY, s. v. *ilk*, a<sup>1</sup>, 3.

i. In this *ilk* londe, as thinketh me, | Right as holie legendes tell, | Snottreth from a roke a well. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXVII, 296.

ii. This was, indeed, balanced in some sort by the impression which his ruddy cheek and robust frame had the fortune to make upon Miss Barbara Clinkscale, daughter of the umquhile, and sister to the then existing, Clinkscale of *that Ilk*. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. IV, 38.

A brood of wild-geese . . . were supposed to have some mysterious connection with the ancient family of MacFarlane of *that Ilk*. Id., Mon., Ch. XIII (Footnote).

He bore distant relation to . . . the ancient family of Lundin of *that Ilk*. Id., Abbot, Ch. XXVI, 286.

Of more general use are *of that (the) ilk*, *of his (her, etc.) ilk*, occasionally met with in Present English, in the sense of *of that (the, his, etc.) family, class, set or 'lot'*. This application has evidently arisen from misunderstanding the Scotch expression. The deil's in the carline, . . . because she was the wife of a cock-laird, she thinks herself grander . . . than the bowerwoman of a lady of *that ilk*! SCOTT, Mon., Ch. IV, 77.

The general idea among them (sc. the Walkers) is that it (sc. their name) means what it appears to mean, a pedestrian. Indeed, one of *the ilk* has suggested that an ancestor probably walked to the Crusades. Westm. Gaz., No. 6529, 11a.

For that particular invisible bait still hovered about the surface of his slow mental stream, and he was still making a second shot after it, after the manner of *his ilk*. ALG. BLACKWOOD, If the Cap fits (Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 9a).

- 2) *self*, now also quite obsolete, but still in occasional literary use in the tautological *self-same*. For illustration see Ch. XXXIV, 2, Obs. I and VI.

- 3) *very*, preceded by the definite article, or by either *this* or *that*.

i. Why, this is the very same; *the very hand, the very hand*. Mids., II, 1, 84.

The poet meant, no doubt . . . | *The very thing* which everybody feels | . . . That no one likes to be disturb'd at meals | Or love. BYRON, Don Juan, I, LXXXIX.

ii. The queen o' the sky . . . Bids thee leave these, and with her sovereign grace, | Here on this grass-plot, in *this very place*, | To come and sport. Temp., IV, 1, 73.

I wish we were on our way home again, and, if I had my will, would trot off *this very* might. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXIII, 342.

iii. *That very* time I saw, but thou couldst not, | Flying between the cold moon and the earth, | Cupid all arm'd. Mids., II, 1, 155.

He remembered having stood under *that very* pillar where Pen the younger now stood. Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 27.

Note. Sometimes *the very* = the exact; *the very one(s)* — exactly that (or those). For other meanings of *the very* see the dictionary.

- i. You have named *the very* thing I would be at. SHER., Riv., IV, 3, (266).  
*The very* thing I proposed to you. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 21.
  - ii. The changes which we are ourselves helping to bring about are *the very ones* which we are most likely to fail in observing. CARLYLE, Past and Present, 8.
- b) Also the adjectives *identical*, *precise* and the adverbial expression *as much* may be used in a meaning analogous to that of (*the*) *same*.
- i. Yes, sir, *that very identical* tall, squinting lady you were pleased to take me for. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (230).  
 Instead of ringing the bell, she came and looked in at *that identical* window. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 3a.  
 Both faces were *identical* as regards expression. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. I, 8.
  - ii. A new letter was written in *the precise* terms of the former. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXX, 291.
  - iii. If thou speak'st false, | Upon the next tree shalt thou hang alive, | Till famine cling thee: if thy speech be sooth, | I care not if thou dost for me *as much*. Macb., V, 5, 41.

## SUCH.

7. The meaning of *such* (etymologically = *so* + *like*) is the same as that of the Dutch *zulk(e)*, *zoo-* (or *dus*) *danig(e)*. It is, however, of much wider application than its Dutch equivalents. *Such* refers either to a quality or to the degree of a quality.

a) When *such* refers to a quality, it is normally followed:

- 1) by an adnominal clause, which in Present English is introduced by *as*, in Early Modern English also by a relative pronoun. (Ch. XVI, 9—10.)

- i. I don't admire *such* books *as* he writes. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 411.
- ii. Let *such* teach others *who* themselves excel. POPE, Es. on Critic., 15.  
 They have withdrawn themselves from the rest of the world at certain seasons, to commemorate in their own thoughts *such* of their acquaintance *who* have gone before them out of this life. STEELE, *Reollections of Childhood* (PEACOCK, Select. Eng. Es., 75).

Note the idiom in: (Mr. Bumble) thought that now the undertaker had got Oliver upon trial, the subject was better avoided, *until such time as* he should be firmly bound for seven years. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 59. (= *until*.)

- 2) by an adverbial clause introduced by *that*. (Ch. XVII, 114.)

The seats and desks must be of *such* a kind *that* the pupils will naturally assume positions favourable for good breathing. RIPPMAUN, *Sounds of Spoken English*, § 5.

When the subject of this clause is identical with that of the head-sentence, it is often replaced by an infinitive-clause opening with *as*. (Ch. XVIII, 28, a.)

His (sc. Locke's) language is always *such* as to be intelligible to a plain understanding. TH. B. SHAW, *Hist. Eng. Lit.*, 273.



- b) 1) When *such* refers to the intensity of a quality, it is, or is not followed by an adjective denoting this quality. In the latter case an adjective indicating a degree of intensity is implied in *such*. Thus *I never witnessed such a storm as raged over our city yesterday* stands for *I never witnessed such a violent (or some such word) storm* etc.

Note. When the adjective is actually expressed, *such* is essentially, although not functionally, adverbial. This becomes apparent from a comparison with constructions with the adverb *so*, which have the same meaning and are often available as alternatives. Thus *such a violent storm* — *so violent a storm*; *such violence* — *so much violence*. It may here be observed that *so* rarely appears before an adjective + a plural noun. MURRAY registers no instances.

In ancient times, no work of genius was thought to require *so great parts* and capacity as the speaking in public. HUME, Es., XIII, Of Eloquence, 99. But then the dogs are not *so good scholars*. JOHNSON (CUNING WALTERS, Phases of Dick., Ch. III, 68).

Quite usual, however, is the use of *so* before *few* or *many* + plural noun.

There were *so few* people in the house that the first act of the play languished entirely. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIV, 138.

- 2) Also when the intensity of a quality is referred to, *such* is normally followed:

- a) by an adnominal clause, now introduced by *as*, in Early Modern English also by a relative pronoun. (Ch. XVI, 9—10.)

i. On his death it (sc. the nation) gave him (sc. the Duke of Wellington) *such* a public funeral *as* hero never had. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 126.

ii. QUEEN. What have I done that thou dar'st wag thy tongue | In noise so rude against me? — HAML. *Such* an act | *That* blurs the grace and blush of modesty. HAML., III, 4, 41.

Note. The adnominal clause is often understood. In this case *such* has exceptionally strong stress and is, accordingly, sometimes printed in italics, as in the first of the quotations following:

There's *such* a goose Martha! DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 65.

Smirke was in love too. Who could help it, being in daily intercourse with *such* a woman? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 37.

We have had *such* sport! *such* an enjoyable evening! FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

Your husband is leading *such* a life! VICT. CROSS, Six Women, Ch. III, 88.

- β) by an adverbial clause, now ordinarily introduced by *as* or *that*. Compare Ch. XVII, 130—133.

i. He broke forth into *such* a hideous yell, *as* made the whole company tremble. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIII, 84.

He lent his antagonist *such* a box on the ear, *as* made him stagger to the other side of the room. Ib., Ch. XIII, 81.

ii. *Such* a bustle ensued *that* you might have thought a goose the rarest of all birds. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 67.

Note. *a*) In Older English, and archaically in Present English, the conjunction *that* is sometimes suppressed. Compare Ch. XVII, 133, Obs. II. In sweet music is *such* art, | Killing care and grief of heart | Fall asleep, or hearing, die. Henry VIII, III, 1, 12.

For he saw | One of her house, and sent him to the Queen | Bearing his wish whereto the Queen agreed | With *such* and so unmoved a majesty | She might have seem'd her statue. TEN., Lanc. & El., 1163.

*β*) An infinitive clause in this function always opens with *as*. Compare Ch. XVIII, 28, *c*.

The rain descended in *such* torrents *as* absolutely to spatter up and smoke along the ground. WASH. IRV., The Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., I, 83).

8. Obs. I. The qualitative meaning of *such* described in 7, *a*, 1, often appears so much weakened that the word approximates to the identifying determinative *those*, a demonstrative pronoun or even the personal pronoun *they* (or *them*).

*a*) *Such as* in the sense of *those who* (or *that*) is now archaic, but is still frequent enough in Nineteenth Century English.

The number of those who were thus butchered cannot now be ascertained. Nine were entered in the parish registers of Taunton: but those registers contain the names of *such* only *as* had Christian burial. Those who were hanged in chains, and those whose head and limbs were sent to the neighbouring villages must have been much more numerous. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 202. (Note the successive use of *those who* and *such as* in one and the same sentence.)

You have very benevolently employed your valuable efforts to assist *such* members of our faith *as* have sought the bodies of lost friends to give them burial in our consecrated grounds, DICK., Uncommercial Trav., Ch. II, 24.

Major Pendennis spent the autumn passing from house to house of *such* country friends *as* were at home to receive him. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXX, 329.

*β*) As the equivalent of a demonstrative, *such* is found conjointly, substantively and predicatively. In the first-mentioned application it loses the indefinite article, by which it is normally followed when modifying a noun denoting a conception within limits. Compare 9, *b*, Note.

i. It is true that the debates of both Houses of Parliament, the whole session through, uniformly tended to the protracted deliberation, How not to do it. It is true that the royal speech at the opening of *such* session virtually said, My Lords and gentlemen, you have a considerable stroke of work to do, and you will please to retire to your respective chambers and discuss, How not to do it. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. X, 54*a*.

Look back . . . at your own youth . . . A man has not many years of *such* time. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 34.

If you are content to live at Framley all your life . . . why, in *such* case, it may perhaps be useless for you to extend the circle of your friends. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IV, 34.

ii. It were a matter of indifference to me whether our heroines are chaste or our candle-snuffers burn their fingers, did not *such* make a great part of public care and polite conversation. GOLDSMITH Enquiry (R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsm., Ch. IX, 101).

He always brought down the last news of the nobility, and spoke of *such* with soldierlike respect and decorum. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

That they drank uncommonly good port wine, and abused the Bishop over their dessert, are very likely matters: but with *such* we have nothing at present to do. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

- iii. Contrary to the custom, and even to the law of the time, the body was met by a priest of the Scottish Episcopal communion, arrayed in his surplice, and prepared to read over the coffin of the deceased the funeral service of the church. *Such* had been the desire of Lord Ravenswood in his last illness. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. I, 31.

*Such* continued to be the talk, in the sparse towns of our Virginian province, at the gentry's houses, and the rough roadside taverns. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 124.

She never told the young vicar that Miss Monsell accompanied her ladyship's married daughter to Framley Court expressly that he, Mark, might fall in love with her; but *such* was in truth the case. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 3.

It is needless to demonstrate that a poem is *such*, only inasmuch as it intensely excites, by elevating the soul. POE, *Phil. of Comp.*, (372).

I may have offended, but *such* was not my intention. FOWLER, *Conc.* Oxf. Dict.

;) The use of *such* in the sense of *they* or *them* is confined to vulgar or commercial language.

Those who leave parcels in a train cannot expect to recover *such*. FOWLER, *Oxf. Dict.*

- II. The qualitative *such* (7, a, 1) often has a depreciatory meaning, so that in some connections *such as* is practically equivalent to *what* (*little* or *few*). Compare Ch. XXXIX, 4, e. From its altered meaning the noun modified also in this case loses the indefinite article, which otherwise it would have had.

*Such* colour as had ever been there, had long ago started away. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. V, 28a.

Having ruined all whom he should have loved, . . . (he) is at last left to finish his life with *such* bread and water as these men get. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 119.

If Framley were sequestered, why should not he, as well as another, undertake the duty — with *such* stipend as the bishop might award? *Ib.*, Ch. XLV, 433.

*Such* charm as he had for women lay in the frankness, good humour and simplicity of character. MAR. CRAWF., *Ad. Johnstone's Son*, Ch. XX.

He (sc. Thackeray) has told us how *such* plot as there was had been altered at the very last. SAINTSB., *Introd. to Pend.*, 18.

Also when standing predicatively at the head of the clause, the qualitative *such* is often depreciative, being often practically equivalent to the adjective *poor*.

For every man hath business and desire, | *Such* as it is. *Hamlet*, I, 5, 151.

He was impatient for the presence of his favourite clown Wamba; whose jests, *such* as they were, served for a sort of seasoning to his evening meal. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 27.

She had herself received her education, *such* as it was, in Mr. Cripples's evening academy. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 48b.

She had a capricious and hasty temper, and indifferent ideas of principle or justice: still *such* as she was, I preferred her to any one else at Gateshead Hall. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 29.

But his morality, *such* as it was, was consistent. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IX, 100.  
I got my learning, *such* as it is, from Dr. Carter. MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. I, 7.

- III. Conversely the intensive *such* (7, b), when used predicatively, may also be equivalent to *so great* (or some such adjective). In this case it mostly has front-position.

i. *Such* was the impatience and rashness of the exiles that they tried to find another leader. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 103.

*Such* was the devotion of the people to their unhappy favourite that, in the face of the strongest evidence by which the fact of a death was ever verified, many continued to cherish a hope that he was still living. *Ib.*, 197.

ii. The success of this convenient friend had been *such*, that he had obtained from Sir William, not indeed a directly favourable answer, but certainly a most patient hearing. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XIX, 195.

- IV. The use of *such* in the sense of *so much*, as in the following quotation, seems to be infrequent:

I should be inclined to dispute the amount, if I were in a condition to pay him *such* of it as I really do owe him. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIX, 150.

- V. Vulgar is the use of the substantive *such* in the sense of *the like*, or *such-like* representing the *etc.* of enumerations.

A keeper complained that all sorts of "varmins" infested his woods, polecats, wizzles, stoats and *such*. STERNBERG, *Dialect. of Northamptonsh.* 1)  
O it's Rudyard this, and Kipling that, with poems, tales and *such*. *A cad.*, 1890, 21 Oct., 444. 2)

- VI. In legal or formal style, *such* is sometimes used in the sense of *the aforesaid* or *of the aforesaid kind*.

Whoever shall make *such* return falsely. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

- VII. Observe also the idiom in: *Such master, such servant* — *Like master, like man*. Compare the French *tel maître, tel valet*.

## 9. *Such* is used:

- a) conjointly. When the noun following is singular and denotes a thing thought of within limits, *such* is normally followed by the indefinite article. See, however, 8, I,  $\beta$  and II. Usage is variable when the noun following denotes a thing without limits. (Ch. XXXI, 42.) For the use of the prop-word *one* after the conjoint *such* see Ch. XLIII, 21.

i. \* In *such* a night as this, | When the sweet wind did gently kiss the trees, | And they did make no noise, in *such* a night | Troilus methinks mounted the Trojan walls | And sigh'd his soul towards the Grecian tents, | Where Cressid lay that night. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 16.

\*\* To me it was not easy to sleep after a day of *such* excitement. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 190.

All I ask of you now . . . is to acquit me of *such* fault as that. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXIX, 380. (The absence of the article strikes one as unusual.)

ii. Give your children *such* precepts as tend to make them wiser and better. WEBSTER, *Dict.*, s.v. *such*.

- b) absolutely: I perceive my lord, you are about to enter upon an unpleasant subject. I am sorry any *such* should have occurred at this time. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 223.



Ah fool, and made myself a Queen of farce! | When comes another *such*? TEN., Princ., VII, 229.

William Black was at present engaged in carving slices of roast beef for *such* of the sixty (sc. boys) as sat at his table. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

Note. When *such* refers to a preceding part of the discourse, it is mostly felt as independent of any preceding noun, i. e. as a substantival word. Thus in *I know there are a set of malicious, prating gossips . . . , who murder characters to kill time . . . But I am not to be prejudiced against my nephew by such* (SHER., School for Scand., II, 3), *such* does not indicate a kind of gossips, is not, accordingly, equivalent to *such gossips*, but to *such people or persons*. A similar interpretation may be put upon most of the quotations in c). Compare also 8, Obs. I, β.

- c) substantively: with reference to persons mostly in a plural, occasionally in a singular meaning; with reference to things mostly in a singular, sometimes in a plural meaning.

For the use of *such a one* instead of the singular substantive *such* denoting a person see Ch. XLIII, 10.

- i. \* Adulation ever follows the ambitious, for *such* alone receive most pleasure from flattery. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. III, (250). (= *such persons*.)

So perish all *such*! FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

What do I care for you, or a thousand *such*? SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 35.

\*\* I heartily wish you a companion in my room, if *such* can be found, who is capable of enduring women's caprices without going distracted. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. 255. (= *such a person*.)

When a seaman put up at the "Admiral Benbow", . . . he would look in at him through the curtained door before he entered the parlour; and he was always sure to be as silent as a mouse when any *such* was present. STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., Ch. I, 16. (= *any such person*.)

To give him up to *such* as Lady Damerel — never! Mrs. CRAIK, King Arthur, Ch. VII, 200.

A turbulent time is now before the wearer (sc. of the antlers), if he be the master of the herd, for he must justify his leadership in the tourney field, or give place to some younger and more vigorous rival, and *such* is never lacking. II. Lond News. No. 3930, 392a.

If the public desires the assistance of an unqualified person, he is at liberty, of course, to employ *such*. Truth, No. 1801, 24b.

- ii. \* This rebuke, if it was intended for *such*, seemed above the comprehension of the travelling merchant. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. VI, 71. (= *such a thing*.) There was . . . no real ground whatever for such an apprehension, nor could he be seriously said to entertain *such* for a moment. Id., Bride of Lam., Ch. XIX, 194.

\*\* He (sc. my father) bestow'd my hand | Upon Faliero: he had known him noble, | Brave, generous; rich in all the qualities | Of soldier, citizen, and friend; in all | *Such* have I found him as my father said. BYRON, Mar. Fal., II, I, (360a). (= *such things*.)

I trusted | Not to my qualities, nor would have faith | In *such*. Ib., II, I, (362b).

- d) predicatively: i. e. as nominal part of the predicate, or as predicative adnominal part of the predicate. In the second of these functions it is always preceded by *as*, or its substitute *for*, when the adjunct is one of the first kind. Compare Ch. VI.

*Such* was the dust with which the dust of Monmouth mingled. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 196.

*Such* were the sentiments of the King's two kinsmen. Ib., 277.

*Such* was Frederic the ruler. Id., Fred., (675a).

Knowing now that escape was impossible, Blanche stepped out from her hiding-place, and stood, pale as death, but resolute, looking at the two officers; for *such* they were. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. IV, 35.

The cigar was *such* as costs a crown in a restaurant. ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. IX, 195.

- ii. \* Though ill-nature is far from being wit, yet it is generally laughed at as *such*. GOLDSMITH, Enquiry (R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. IX, 103). The Marquis's visit is an honour, and should be received as *such*. SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XX, 197.

He was a magistrate, and, as *such*, administered gratuitously to those who dwelt around him a rude patriarchal justice. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 316. Japan has become a continental Power, and must be prepared to defend her position as *such*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5394, 2b.

In country places a stranger is welcome as *such*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

\*\* M. Gaspard Fagel . . . waited in the library, or the chamber that served for *such*. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. III, 194.

- iii. From this time | *Such* I account thy love. Macb., I, 7, 38.

*Such* as his training made him, *such* he was. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 4. You perceive that Arthur Donnithorne was "a good fellow" — all his college friends thought him *such*. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. XII, 106.

Any teacher — and many who call themselves *such* are anything but teachers — will uphold me when I say that "force" is a word not used by the real educationist. Westm. Gaz., No. 5555, 4a.

10. Obs. I. The conjoint *such* is often found after the noun modified. In this position it is apt to be suppressed, a practice which is objected to by precise writers. (Compare The King's English, II, 29.) The *as* which then remains often varies with *like*. For illustration see Ch. XVI, 10, Obs. VI.

This night methinks is but the daylight sick; | It looks a little paler: 'tis a day, | *Such* as the day is when the sun is hid. Merch. of Ven., V, 1, 126.

Even in public he (sc. the Duke of Wellington) had more than once given way to outbursts of emotion *such as* a stranger would never have expected from one of that cold and rigid demeanour. M'CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 125.

We are losing an admirable chance of putting England in her proper place, an opportunity *such as* we shall not find again in a hundred years. Morn. Leader.

Sometimes *such* when placed after a noun is rather absolute than conjoint. In this case *such as* is practically equivalent to a continuative relative pronoun.

And less rigid ladies, | *Such as* abound in Venice, would be loud  
And all-inexorable in their cry | For justice. BYRON, Mar. Fal., II, 1, (359b.) (= *who* abound in Venice)

- II. The substantive *such* sometimes varies with the indefinite pronoun *one*.

And the shield— | I pray you lend me *one*, if *such* you have. TEN., Lanc. & El., 192.

If 'Zack' is not yet a master, she is on the way to become *such*. Acad. 1899, 21 Oct., 455.<sup>1)</sup>

# 11. *Such* is sometimes coupled with a pleonastic *like*.

I have made you mad; | And even with *such-like* valour men hang and drown  
Their proper selves. *Tempest*, III, 3, 59.

For laying aside the commandment of God, ye hold the tradition of men, as the washing of pots and cups: and many other *such-like* things. Bible, Mark, VII, 8.

For *such-like* need, my lord, I trow, | Norham can find you guides enough. SCOTT, *Marmion*, I, xix, 1.

But I'm digressing; what on earth has Néro, | Or any *such-like* sovereign buffoons, | To do with the transactions of my hero? BYRON, *Don Juan*, III, cx. In this way . . . he had got into a habit of looking at the hounds, and keeping up his acquaintance in the county, meeting Lord Dumbello, Mr. Green Walker, Harold Smith and other *such-like* sinners. TROL., *Framl. Pars*, Ch. XII, 119. There was even a party of the younger men who pretended to admire him, calling him a "true sea-dog", and a "real old salt", and *such-like* names. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. I, 18.

Note. In familiar and vulgar style *such-like* is sometimes used substantively, both with reference to persons and things, to express contempt.

- i. "And whose fault is it that I have not done so too?" said Bucklaw — "whose but the devil's and yours, and *such-like* as you?" SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. V, 65.

Was it (sc. the bishop bill) not about to be made law in order that other Proudis and *such-like* might be hoisted up into high places and large incomes, to the terrible detriment of the Church? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXV, 239.

In the first place there was a dreadful line to be drawn. Who were to dispose themselves within the ha-ha, and who without? To this the unthinking will give an off-hand answer, as they will to every ponderous question. Oh, the bishop and *such-like* within the ha-ha; and farmer Greenacre and *such-like* without. True, my unthinking friend; but who shall define these *such-likes*? Id., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 306.

- ii. (He) asked why I did not keep the public road, and *such-like*. SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. II, 26.

With reference to diamonds and *such-like* the archdeacon at once declared his intention of taking the matter into his own hands. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XL, 387.

Do not hold with theatres and balls and *such-like*! FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

# 12. A word-group made up of *such* + noun may be modified by:

- a) a genitive of measure: It is impossible that I should be indifferent to the results of *thirty years' such* work as you can give to so great a subject. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, III, Ch. XXIV, 169a,
- b) the interrogative pronoun *what*: *What such* surprise can be in store for me? DICK., *Little Dor.*, II, 278.<sup>2)</sup> (Instances appear to be very rare.)

<sup>1)</sup> EININKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 462.    <sup>2)</sup> FLÜGEL, s.v. *such*.

## c) an indefinite pronoun or numeral.

In the following quotations are included some instances of the absolute or substantive *such* being preceded by such a modifier. Combinations of *such* with the distributives *each* and (*n*)*either* seem to be non-existent, and those with the other distributive, *every*, are infrequent.

**all.** He (sc. my father) bestow'd my hand | Upon Faliero: he had known him noble, | Brave, generous; rich in all the qualities | Of soldier, citizen, and friend; in *all* | *Such* have I found him as my father said. BYRON, *Mar. Faliero*, II, 1, (360a).

"Lucy has got no habit," said Mr. Robarts, making use of the excuse common on *all such* occasions. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 128.

**another.** When comes *another such* (sc. Queen)? TEN., *Princ.*, VII, 229. I'd walk twice as far to spend *another such* evening. WILLIAM BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VI.

**any.** Neither of them did me *any such* favour. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 37. It is an awful shame that a gold watch or *any such* bribe should be needed. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 67.

She had never seen him, as she believed, in *any such* condition. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 271.

Compare: I will not be the medium of *any so absurd a* requisition. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XVI, 130.

**every.** The irresolute fingers fluttered more and more ineffectually about the trembling lip on *every such* occasion. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 30b.

*Every such* complex has several resonances. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 3.

*Every such* application must be made two days at least before admission is required. *Regul. British Museum, Reading Room.*

(a) **few.** Almost every man who lives in the world has the happiness, let us hope, of counting *a few such* persons amongst his circle of acquaintance. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

**many.** If he (sc. that man) goes to strange countries, as *many such* do, I know not but this may be as adventurous a service as that of those Guards of Louis. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. V, 87.

**most.** In *most such* young hearts the memory of a mother's kisses . . . is sufficient to sweep away any recollection of a mother's ill-treatment. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. VI, 68.

**no.** Let *no such* man be trusted. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 88.

My readers must hope for *no such* romance. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 53.

The world shall say *no such* thing! TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVI, 159.

He wanted *no such* companion. *Ib.*, 161.

The return was *no such* easy matter. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXII, 116b.

**none.** "You did not tell me whether any (sc. offers of marriage) had been made that you meant to accept." — "*None such* was ever made to me." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 366.

**other.** There were shelves, and pegs, and *other such* conveniences. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. VIII, 43b.

He would have been in residence, but for the butter-flies and *other such* summer-day considerations. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. VI, 43.

No *other such* judge has dishonoured the English ermine, since Jefferies drank himself to death in the Tower. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (624a).

I ironed, or pursued *other such* stationary employment as I could not well do in the parlour. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXXII, 164b.



How often does one hear it said: "Oh, the treatment is worse than the disease, and *other such* nonsense. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 247.

But this was a Kingdom of Faerie, over which she ruled by the aid of Ariels and Nereids and *other such* elemental and intangible ministers. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. I, 3.

**several.** *Several such* schemes were laid in the course of the war. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 968.

There were *several such* groups in the county. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. IX, 85.  
**some.** What generous youth is there that has not courted *some such* windy mistress in his time? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

You know that this man Horner, the plumber, had been concerned in *some such* matter before. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

*Some such* alliance is needed, for parties in the House are balanced pretty much as they were in the last Chamber. *Graph.*

*Some such* measure will certainly be tried. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5436, 16c.

Note α) Sometimes we find the indefinite article after *such* when preceded by an indefinite pronoun or numeral. Instances seem to be rare.

- i. They had done their best to drive *all such a* spirit out of France. MRS. MARSH, *Ev. Marston*, II, 315.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. There isn't *another such a* dropsy in the parish. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 48.
- iii. If any one asserted that there was *no such a* thing as the soul, what should you answer? MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 108.
- iv. As he had sometimes felt, gazing up from the deck at midnight into the boundless starlit depths overhead, in a rapture of devout wonder at the endless brightness and beauty — in *some such a way* now, the depth of this pure devotion . . . quite smote him. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. VI, 203.

β) The use of *so* + adjective + indefinite article after any of the above words instead of *such* + adjective, as in the following quotation, appears to be rare:

I will not be the medium of *any so absurd a* requisition. TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XVI, 130. (Compare: Did you ever know of *any such gross* outrage of decency? BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.)

γ) *Another* and *such* are often transposed. Less usual appears to be the transposition of *other* and *such*. With the following quotations compare those given above:

- i. *Such another* opportunity may not occur. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.  
He thought that *such another* creature, quite as graceful and as full of promise might have called him father. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 53.  
You remember him, I dare say, when he was just *such another* as that chubby child. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 42a.
- ii. I should not now be writing this letter to you, had I not been led to believe by other judgment than my own that the proposition which I am going to make would be regarded by you with favour. Without *such other* judgment I should, I own, have feared that the great disparity between you and me in regard to money would have given to such a proposition an appearance of being false and mercenary. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXIX, 380.
- δ) The substantive *other such* varies with *others such*, which seems to be very rare, and *such others*.  
1. Setting aside the hideous vulgarity of the well-to-do stockbrokers and *other such*, . . . even this beginning of the country Thames was always beautiful. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXII, 161.

- ii. Cultivated men-professors and *others such*. SPENSER, Autobiography, I, 486.<sup>1)</sup>
- iii. Your Lordship, and *such others* as you may please to consult on the matter, will at once see that my resignation of the wardenship need offer not the slightest bar to its occupation by another person. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XIX, 243.

d) a cardinal numeral.

In this combination we find *such* conjointly as well as substantively or absolutely.

Extremely happy, I am sure, to have the honour of an introduction to *two such* gentlemen. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. LX, 221a.

I have the strength of *ten such* men as you. Id., Nich. Nickl., Ch. XIII, 78a.

We came upon more than *one such* family. THACK., Virg., Ch. LII, 547.

Do you mean with your company of Wolfe's you would hesitate to attack *five hundred such*? Ib., Ch. LXXXVIII, 944.

*One such* army had held dominion in England. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 288.

On *one such* occasion . . . he did meet Mr. Sowerby. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XII, 119.

"If ever you hear 'of such a one, mind you tell me.'" It was almost on Mrs. Gresham's tongue to say that she did know of *one such* — meaning her uncle. Ib., Ch. XXXVIII, 369.

After *one such* ride she came home a little flushed and uncertain of herself. Westm. Gaz., No. 5400, 3a.

- e) an ordinal numeral: It was the *first such* sight he had ever seen. RIDER HAGGARD, Mr. Meeson's Will, Ch. IV, 37. (Instances seem to be infrequent.)

WORDS AND WORD-GROUPS THAT MAY HAVE A DETERMINATIVE FUNCTION.

13. Also the following words or word-groups may have a determinative function:

- a) the definite article, sometimes followed by the prop-word *one*. Ch. XXXI, 5, a; Ch. XLIII, 7 and 17.
- b) personal pronouns of the third person. Ch. XXXII, 18—19.
- c) possessive pronouns of the third person. Ch. XXXIII, 13.
- d) demonstrative pronouns. Ch. XXXVI, 12—14.
- e) the indefinite pronoun *one*. Ch. XL, 161.
- f) *such* word-groups as *a man* and *a thing* with their variants. Ch. XL, 195.
- g) certain equivalents of *the same*. Ch. XXXVII, 6.

Also (*the*) *like* is determinative in import. As *such* it mostly partakes of the meaning of *such*, less frequently of that of (*the*) *same*.

- i. For rain and mountain storms! *the like* thou need'st not fear. WORDSWORTH, The Pet-Lamb, VIII.

Did anybody ever hear *the like* EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXI, 114a.

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.75.

*The like of this* is with her Excellency a rare ebullition. BERN. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. III, 32.

For his daring in this and other *like* directions he was put in gaol. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 561a.

- ii. Here is a creature that feeds on *the like* food with himself. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 12b.

#### *Such* AS AN INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

14. *Such* is often used by way of indefinite pronoun to denote a particular person, animal or thing that does not require to be specified.

In this application it is chiefly found in connection with another *such*, with which it is mostly connected by *and*, sometimes by *or*. The indefinite *such and such*, *such or such* and *such* are now only used conjointly.

In Early Modern English *such-a(n)-one* was also used substantively to denote a person; *such* seems to have been less frequent in this function.

- i. No man or woman ever once in all his life inquired the way to *such and such* a place, of Scrooge. *Dick.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 8.

If there was any question about etiquette, society, who was married to whom, of what age *such and such* a duke was, Pendennis was the man to whom every one appealed. *Thack.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

He told anecdotes of . . . entertainments at which he had been present, and at which *such and such* a thing occurred. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 346.

It's rather a strain upon me to keep thinking and thinking what I should do if *such and such* a thing happened. *Mrs. Gask.*, *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 248.

The great point about this ringing is that, whereas in the old days you could say that the storks left Africa about *such and such* a date and arrived in Denmark at *such and such* another, you have now your individual stork marked as distinctly as if you had his birth register and a photograph of his fingerprints. HORACE HUTCHINSON, *On Migration* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4c).

And even if by chance . . . she should discover | That all within was not so very well, | And, if still free, that *such or such* a lover | Might please perhaps, a virtuous wife can quell | Such thoughts, and be the better when they're over. *BYRON*, *Don Juan*, I, LXXVIII.

The question which we contend is of so transcendent moment, is, not whether *such or such* knowledge is of worth, but what is its relative worth. *SPENSER*, *Education*, Ch. I, 12a.

- iii. If you repay me not on *such* a day, | In *such* a place, *such* sum or sums as are | Expressed in the condition, let the forfeit | Be nominated for an equal pound | Of your fair flesh. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 147—151.

He will take notice to you what *such* a minister said upon *such* and *such* an occasion. *Spectator*, II.

What strange creatures brothers are! You would not write to each other, but upon the most urgent necessity in the world; and when obliged to take up the pen to say that *such* a horse is ill, or *such* relation is dead, it is done in the fewest possible words. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. VI, 61.

- iv. This might be my lord *such-a-one*, that praised my lord *such-a-one's* horse. *Hamlet*, V, 1, 92.

You have a foolish saying, that *such-a-one* knows no more than the man in the moon. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, IV, 3, (315).

For all these important relations, he has ever (= always) about the same time received a kind glance or a blow of a fan from some celebrated beauty, mother of the present Lord *such-a-one*. SPECTATOR, II.

The soup would be sent round in a most spiritless manner, . . . without . . . a single entertaining story about "my friend *such-a-one*." JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. VI, 53.

Were you in your ignorance to surmise that *such-a-one* was of a good family, because the head of his family was a baronet of old date, he would open his eyes with a delightful look of surprise. TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XXII, 173. We often say, *such-a-one* overshot himself, that is, overshot his mark or aim. HUDSON, *Note to Macb.*, I, 7, 27.

v. I know the gentleman; | I saw him yesterday, or t'other day, | Or then, or then, with *such*, or *such*. HAMLET, II, 1, 57.

Note. With *such* (*and such*) in the above application compare *so and so* and similar indefinite designations, as illustrated by:

I only regretted that it might cost me *so and so*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XX, 291. This author states he was born in *such and such* a year. It is a lie. He was born in the year *so-and-so*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 571.

You, who know the world, know very well that if you see Mrs. *So-and-So*'s name in the list of people at an entertainment, on looking down the list you will presently be sure to come on Mr. *Whatd'youcall'em's*. If Lord and Lady *Blank*, of *Such-and-such* Castle, received a distinguished circle (including Lady *Dash*) for Christmas or Easter, without reading farther the names of the guests, you may venture on any wager that Cap. in *Asterisk* is one of the company. Id., *New comes*, II, Ch. VII, 83.

Look at *So-and-So* and *So-and-So*: who are their fathers? WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XXIV, 170.

He could recall how . . . owing to an error it had happened to great *So-and-So*. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. III, 64.

Some things are permitted and some forbidden, not by his inner consciousness or by his sense of rectitude, but by paragraph *so-and-so* and section *this, that, and the other*. Athen., No. 4571, 498a.



## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### FORM.

1. The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *what*, *which* and *whether*. Only *who* is declined: Nom. *who*, Gen. *whose*, Obj. *whom*.  
For the declension of *whoever*, *whosoever* and *whoso*, and for details about the use of these compounds see Ch. XLI.
2. Obs. I. The genitive of the word-group *who else* is formed in three ways: *whose else*, *who else's*, *whose else's*. The first form is grammatically the most correct, *else* being an adverb. It is also the oldest and is still preferred when no noun follows. *Who else's* is now the common form when a noun follows, and *whose else's*, like other cumulate forms, may be considered as vulgar. Compare JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 233.
  - i. MAR. Is this Mr. Hardcastle's house, child? — MISS HARD. Ay, sure. *Whose else* should it be? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, IV, (212).
  - ii. Yes, *who else's* daughter should I be? GOSSE AND ARCHER, transl. of Ibsen's *Master Builder*, 51.1)
  - iii. "His blankets?" asked Joe. — "*Whose else's* do you think?" replied the woman. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 94.
- II. In Present Spoken English *whom* is often replaced by *who*, except in the rather uncommon construction when the pronoun is preceded by a preposition. Thus the literary *Of whom are you speaking?* answers to the familiar *Who are you speaking of?* Numerous instances of this substitution of *who* for the strictly grammatical *whom* occur in SHAKESPEARE, and the practice seems to have been prevalent in all stages of Modern English. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1086; JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 171; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 680; A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *who*; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 51; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 333; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 274; FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *who*, 2, *b*.  
HOR. My lord, I think I saw him yesternight. — HAM. Saw? *who?* *Ham.*, I, 2, 190.  
Have you no guess *who* I mean? SHER., *School for Scand.*, IV, 3, (412).  
*Who* does it (sc. the letter) come from? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops* IV, (225).

1) JESPERSEN, *Progr.*, § 233.

*Who* should I tell it to? DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. III, 14a.

*Who* does that bust put you in mind of? LYTTON, Night and Morn., 63.

*Who* had we better ask first? Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander. Ch. VII, 116.

Compare: Good, yet remember *whom* thou hast aboard. Tempest, I, 1, 20.

*Whom* are you talking to? DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 48a.

If it were a kingdom, I know *whom* Mr. Warrington would make queen of it. THACK., Virg., Ch. XX, 205.

*Whom* shall I ask to come to my help? Ib., Ch. XLVI, 473.

The following anecdote cited by HODGSON (Errors<sup>4</sup>, 158) may find a place here: THACKERAY, having been requested to write in a lady's album, found, on scanning its contents, the subjoined lines: — "Mont Blanc is the monarch of mountains — | They crown'd him long ago; | But *who* they got to put it on | Nobody seems to know." Under these T. speedily wrote the following: — "A HUMBLE SUGGESTION: I know that Albert wrote in hurry; | To criticize I scarce presume; | But yet methinks that Lindley Murray, | Instead of *who*, had written *whom*."

It may be added that in his numerous writings THACKERAY himself seems to use *whom* regularly when required by the grammar.

Sometimes we find *whom* where the grammar would require *who*. Compare ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 51; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 680; FLÜGEL, Dict., s.v. *who*, 2, a.

*Whom* say the people that I am? Bible, Luke, IX, 18.

Some one was close behind, I knew not *whom*. STEVENSON, Treas. Island, Ch. XXI, 111.

- III. Instead of word-groups consisting of a preposition and the interrogative *what*, earlier English also had pronominal adverbs, such as *whereby*, *wherefore*, etc. These have now well-nigh disappeared from the language. For a detailed discussion see a subsequent chapter.

## USE AND MEANING.

3. a) The nominative and objective cases of *who* are used substantively: *Who* told you this? *Whom* did you see?  
The nominative is also used predicatively: *Who* is that gentleman?
- b) The genitive *whose* is used:
  - 1) conjointly: *Whose* son are you? CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 3b.
  - 2) absolutely: *Whose* fault is it that I have not done so too? — *whose* but the devil's and yours? SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. V, 65.
  - 3) predicatively: *Whose* was the subtle wit that induced the local coroner to appear in the Farnham Pageant? Westm. Gaz., No. 5376, 3b.  
Note a) The interrogative *whose* is, most probably, used as freely as the possessive pronouns (Ch. XXXIII, 7) to denote the objective relation. Unfortunately, practically no documentary evidence has turned up to substantiate this presumption.

Whose is this image and superscription? Bible, Matth., XXII, 20.

β) Instances of *whose* being replaced by its analytical equivalent of *whom* seem to be chiefly confined to the case that the noun modified expresses how one person is related or disposed to another, i. e. when *of* is a variant of *to*. See Ch. XXIX, 36. Also this point must unfortunately remain unsettled for the time being, owing to lack of illustrative material. Compare, however, Ch. XXXIX, 4, *b*.

i. Can any of your readers tell me *of whom* Miss Fairbrother, the celebrated actress, was the daughter? Notes & Queries, 1897, April 3, 267.

ii. *Of whom* is this portrait? BIRRELL.<sup>1)</sup>

"Carries he a portrait say you?" — "Certainly." — "You know not *who 'tis of?*" BRIDGES, Hum. of the Court, II, 2, 1397.

#### c) *What* is used:

1) substantively: *What* are you reading?

2) conjointly: *What book* are you reading?

3) predicatively: *What* is he? is he a lawyer? SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2119. "What do you call this?" said Joe. "Bed-curtains!" DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, IV, 93.

For further examples see 5, *b*.

Note *a*) *What* is sometimes found as part of a parasynthetic compound.

"And now," quoth Oxenham, "my merry men all, make up your minds *what mannered* men you be minded to be before you take your bounties." CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 3*b*.

γ) The conjoint *what* can stand with no other adnominal modifier than an adjective. Such an adjective is mostly a positive, occasionally a comparative, and rarely a superlative.

i. *What great* man found out this fundamental truth?

ii. *What greater* sacrifice has ever been made by man?

iii. For the twentieth time he consulted his "Bradshaw" to see at *what earliest* hour Dr. Grantly could arrive from Barchester. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XVI, 267.

#### d) *Which* is used:

1) substantively: Yet both are near, and both are dear, | And *which* the dearest I cannot tell. TEN., The Victim, V.

I don't know *which* is right, Peachum or Lockit. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

2) conjointly: *Which train* shall we go by to-morrow? SWEET.

3) absolutely: *Which* is the shortest way? SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2120.

4) predicatively: *Which* is he, a military or a civil officer?

#### e) *Whether*, now obsolete, is used:

1) substantively: One knows not *whether* most to admire, the men or the machines. Truth, No. 1800, 1685*b*.

2) conjointly: While thus the case in doubtful balance hung, | Unsure *whether* side it would incline. SPENSER.<sup>2)</sup>

3) absolutely: *Whether* of them twain did the will of his father? Bible, Matth., XXI, 31.

<sup>1)</sup> GÜNTHER, Man., § 495.    <sup>2)</sup> MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 155.

4. *Who*, like the Dutch *wie*, is used in inquiries that are made to find out or establish the identity of the person(s) concerned in the action or state expressed by the predicate.

*Who* broke that window? MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 255.

*Who* can have told you this puzzles me. *ib.*, § 250.

*Who's* in fault? PINERO, Mid-Channel, I, (48).

Note the idiom in: i. With these admirable moralists it was *who* should fling the stone at poor Pen. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIII, 138.

It was *who* should reach his hat, and *who* should bring his coat, and *who* should fetch his umbrella, and *who* should get his last kiss. (?), Wolves, 138. (In the same position we also find *which*: The three ladies all look up at the ceiling. They will reclaim the dear prodigal. It is *which* shall reclaim him most. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLV, 467.)

- ii. \* *Who* should presently come up but the Right Hon. Edmund Preston. *Id.*, Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 31.

\*\* *Whom* but Maud should I meet | Last night? TEN., Maud, I, VI, II.

## 5. *What* is used:

- a) in questions analogous to the above: substantively, only regarding things, conjointly, also regarding persons.

- i. *What* are promises, *what* the hopes of mortals? SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXXVI, 408.

*What* will they think of me? *ib.*

*What* has he done wrong? TROL., The Warden, Ch. XI, 143.

- ii. \* *What* time shall I wake you fellows? JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. IV, 47.

*What* animals are man's most dangerous enemies?

\*\* *What* king of England took part in the third Crusade?

- b) in inquiries that are made regarding the nature, qualities or properties either of persons or things.

- i. THES. *What* are they that do play it? — PHIL. Hard-handed men that work in Athens here. MIDS., V, I, 71.

*Who*, and *what* are you? DICK., Christ. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 34.

I soon found out *what* Mr. Tidd was, and *what* he was longing for. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 75.

Some read (i. e. scanned) the King's face, some the Queen's, and all | Had marvel *what* the maid might be, but most | Predoom'd her as unworthy. TEN., Lan. & El., 723.

*What* a man is matters more autobiographically, than *what* he does, or *what* he suffers. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. V, 63.

I want to know . . . *who* and *what* are the men who come into my drawing-room. PINERO, Mid-Channel, I, (14).

- ii. *What* right have you to be dismal? *what* reason have you to be morose? DICK., Christ. Car.<sup>5</sup>, 10.

Will you decide *what* men shall live, *what* men shall die? *ib.*, III, 70.

Send a note with each of them to explain under *what* circumstances they came before me. SWEET, Old Chapel.

Note a) As the context often fails to show whether *what* is used for the purpose of establishing the identity or the nature of whatever we are speaking about, it is often followed by such collocations as *kind (manner, sort) of (a)*, when the latter function is the one intended. For illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 67.



*What manner of man is this, that even the wind and the sea obey him?* Bible, Mark., IV, 41.

*What kind of a place is this Bath?* SHER., Rivals, I, 1.

Martha told them *what kind of work* she had to do. DICK., Christ. Car., III, 72.

I was sure he would agree with me . . . when he learned *what sort of person* she is. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 7.

i) In Early Modern English *what for* (a) was used in an analogous way as the Dutch *wat voor* (een). Compare MURRAY, s.v. *for*, 19, c.

*What is he for a fool* that betroths himself to unquietness? Much ado, I, 3, 49.

*What is she, for a woman?* DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, I, 1.

"*What is that for a Zenobia?*" said Hartley. SCOTT, Surg. Dau., X, 1)

j) In Early Modern English we sometimes find *what* for *who*, when a person's name or equivalent indication of his identity is inquired for. Compare FRANZ, E. S., XVII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 342.

ROD. Most reverend signior, do you know my voice? — BRAB. Not I: *what* are you? — ROD. My name is Roderigo. Othello, I, 1, 95.

K. JOHN. *What* art thou? — ROB. The son and heir to that same Faulconbridge. King John, I, 1, 55.

6. *Which* takes the place of either *who* or *what*, when before the question is asked, the person(s), animal(s) or thing(s) inquired after has (have) been distinctly thought of as belonging to a group. It follows that *which* is the ordinary interrogative before partitive *of*. In this connection we find it not only in pure, but in rhetorical questions.

- i. "I say any man here would go round the room on his knees, if you bade him!" — "I think, madam, I know two or three who wouldn't!" says Mr. Warrington, with some spirit. — "Quick, let me hug them to my heart of hearts!" cried the old duchess. "*Which* are they?" THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXIV, 351.

"Great Heavens!" Harry groaned out, "are there two then in the family, who are —" — "*Which* two?" asked the chaplain. *Ib.*, 352.

*Which* train shall we go by to-morrow? There's one at nine, and another at half-past twelve or twelve thirty-five. I forget *which*. SWEET.

- ii. \* *Which of you* have done this? Mac b., III, 3, 48.

He began to wonder *which of his curtains* this new spectre would draw back. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 55.

He (sc. the English esquire of the seventeenth century) knew the genealogies and coats of arms of all his neighbours, and could tell *which of them* had assumed supporters without any right, and *which of them* were so unfortunate as to be great-grandsons of aldermen. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 316.

*Which of the young ladies* is the conqueror, sir? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXIV, 358. He laughs, rattles, in reply to his aunt, who asks him *which of the girls* is his sweetheart. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 362.

\*\* *Which of us* is happy in this world? *Which of us* has his desire, or having it, is satisfied? *Ib.*, Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 373.

*Which of us* has not his anxiety instantly present when his eyes are opened . . . after his night's sleep? *Ib.*, Pend., II, Ch. X, 112.

*Which of us* knows his fate? *Ib.*, Pend., I, Ch. III, 44.

1) MURRAY, s.v. *for*, 19, c.

Note a) But the distinction between *who* and *what* on the one side and *which* on the other, though commonly observed, is not unfrequently disregarded; i. e. either *who* or *what* is not seldom met with where, according to the rule, *which* would be required, even before partitive *of*. Compare ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 51; WENDT, E. S., XV, 472; id., *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 210.

i. *Who* foremost now delight to cleave | With pliant arm thy glassy wave? | The captive linnet *which* enthrall? | *What* idle progeny succeed | To chase the rolling circle's speed, | Or urge the flying ball? GRAY, *Ode Eton Col.*, III. (Note the varied practice.)

Will you decide *what* men shall live, *what* men shall die? DICK., *Christm. Carol*, III, 70.

To toss up = to throw a coin into the air and wager on *what* side it will fall. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *toss*.

They had it all (sc. all the furniture) packed before I came away. And I let them carry all . . . I was too sad to look *what* was ours and *what* was not. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XI, 147.

ii. \* Ask all Florence *who of those five men* has the truest heart. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, III, Ch. LIX, 424.

I confess I do like to know *who of my friends* have been the last to die. ANSTEY, *The Giant's Robe*, II, Ch. X, 121.

I want to show her *who's* the best man *of the two*. Id., *Vice Versa*, Ch. IX, 191.

It is not easy for the wisest of us to say off-hand *who of our acquaintance* is likely to become a pauper. *Times*.

\*\* *Who of us* has arrived at maturity and is so fortunate as not to know what suspense and terror are, in respect to those we love? PAYN, *Luck of the Darrells*, II, Ch. XX, 217.

*Who of her admirers* would not feel glad and proud to leave such fragrant blossoms offered to him in so light and graceful a way? *Academy*.<sup>1)</sup>

β) Before *amongst* in rhetorical questions *which* seems to be rarely, if ever, used.

*Who amongst us* is there that does not recollect similar hours of bitter, bitter, childish grief? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

*What man among us* has not had bad nights and hours like these? Id., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 362.

Ah! *who amongst you*, readers, can now summon back all those thoughts [etc.]? LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. V, 53.

Our archdeacon was wordly — *who among us* is not so? TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. I, 12.

*Who among the people* here could possibly think it worth his while to have his head done into marble? Id., Ch. XV, 117.

γ) In ordinary conversation one often hears *what* where *which* would be expected. Thus at table one may be asked *What will you have, beef or mutton?* etc. See also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.822.

δ) No distinction can be made between *who* and *which*, so far as the the genitive is concerned: *whose* standing for either. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.823.

## 7. *Whether* was formerly used instead of *which* when the inquiry

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, E. S., XV, 472.

concerned a group of two, but is now met with only in archaic language. See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 338; ALDIS WRIGHT, *Bible Word-book*, s. v. *whether*; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.741.

*Whether* hadst thou rather be, a Faulconbridge | And like thy brother, to enjoy thy land, | Or the reputed son of Cœur-de-Lion, | Lord of thy presence and no land beside? *King John*, I, I, 134.

*Whether* dost thou profess thyself, a knave or a fool? *All's Well*, IV, 5, 23.

*Whether* is the nobler being of the two? *SWIFT*, *Battle of the Books*.

On the 17th we came in full view of a great island, or continent, (for we knew not *whether*). *Id.*, *Gul. Trav.*, II, Ch. I, (138*b*).

*Whether* would you advise me, to purchase some post, by which I may rise in the state; or lay out my wife's fortune in land? *SMOLLETT*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVI, 103.

Eustace, his betrayer, is come to persuade him — or to entrap him? Eustace himself hardly knows *whether* of the two. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXII, 165.

*Whether* of the two was the stronger and the fiercer it would be hard to tell. *Id.*, *The Heroes*, II, II, 122.

One correspondent asks, *whether* of these two is right, "Death is obnoxious to men," or "Men are obnoxious to death." *ALFORD*, *The Queen's Eng.*, § 239.

## 8. Some idiomatic applications of *what* deserve special mention.

a) *What* varies with *how*, when used as predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind in connection with *to call*, but appears to be more common than the latter.

i. "*What* do you call this?" said Joe. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 93.

"Don't call me sir, Fanny," Arthur said . . . "*What* shall I call you?" she said. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 107.

*What* do you call a 'snob' in Dutch? *STOF.*, *Handl.*, III, § 127.

ii. *How* call you those grunting brutes running about on their four legs? *SCOTT*, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. I, 8.

Who is the man you search for? *how* d'ye call | Him? what's his lineage? *BYRON*, *Don Juan*, I, CLIV.

*How* do they call him? *DICK.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. XI, 66*a*.

I forget *how* my uncle used to call it. *Id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXII, 190.

And the temple — *how* do you call the temple? *BEATR. HARRADEN*, *Ships*, I, Ch. VI, 24.

Thus also: Catherine Linton, or Earnshaw, or *however* she was called — she must have been a changeling. *EM. BRONTË*, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. III, 16*b*.

Note the indefinite *What-do-you-call-him*, etc., as in:

Good even, good Master *What-ye-call't*: how do you, sir? As you like it, III, 3, 73.

How gets on the Duke of *Whatdyecallem*, starving in the castle? *THACK.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIX, 207.

If you see Mrs. So-and-So's name in the list of people at an entertainment, on looking down the list you will presently be sure to come on Mr. *What-d'youcall'em's*. *Id.*, II, Ch. VII, 83.

Hacks talks about giving him a copy of the book — the *what-d'you-call-'em*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 338.

But *how*, apparently, never takes the place of *what* in the synonymous expression *What is his* (etc.) *name*.

And *what's his name*, who was put down in his drawers, asleep, at the Gate of Damascus, don't you see him? DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 39.

It was that fellow — *what's-his-name* — the chap with the cloak PUNCH, No. 3682, 86c.

Note the peculiar applications of *What's its name* in:

I was afraid she mightn't like to have me calling on her among those great folks in *What's-its-name* Place. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. XXXI, 204b.

She's for all the world like one of those *what's-its-names*, who got poor old Ulysses into trouble. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. IV, 50.

- b) *What*, when followed by partitive *of*, has a quantitative meaning. For illustration see also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*, and compare WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 210.

I know not *what of harmony* pervaded her whole person. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. VIII, 85.

Quite a number of people in Britain and even in France realised *what* there was of *truth* in the German grievance. *The New Statesman*, No. 96, 435b.

- c) *What* is often used as a constituent part of elliptical sentences. The following idioms are of some interest:

- 1) *What* followed by various prepositions:

i. Are the English a nation? Obviously, yes. But *what about the Welsh?* *Athen.*, No. 4567, 419b.

ii. Say, Voltimand, *what from our brother Norway?* *Hamlet*, II, 2, 59.

iii. \* "She's lovely, she's divine. You know her." — "I remember," said his companion carelessly. "*What of her?*" DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. VII, 29a. (= *What about her?*)

*What of the knight with the red sleeve?* TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 617.

\*\* She speaks, yet she says nothing: *what of that?* | Her eye discourses. *Rom. & Jul.*, II, 2, 12. (= *What does it matter?*)

"And *what of all this*, Balderston?" said the Master; "what can it possibly have to do with my paying some ordinary civility to a neighbour?" SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVII, 169.

It may be quite true that many farmers personally dislike gamekeepers, but *what of that?* BAIN, *Comp.*, 56.

He was a tailor, but *what of that?* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 76.

\*\*\* Through Athens I am thought as fair as she. | But *what of that?* Demetrius thinks not so. *Mids.*, I, 1, 228. (= *of what avail?*)

- 2) *what* followed by the conjunctions *if* or *though*:

i. *What if* we still continue to deceive him? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (187).

"He called my mother names," replied Oliver. — "Well, and *what if* he did, you little ungrateful wretch?" DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VII, 74.

*What if*, instead of talking this morning, I should read you a copy of verses, with critical remarks by the author? EMERSON, *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-table*, Ch. I, 14b.

"Never before did he fail in his duty to you." — "But *what if* I have failed in mine to him? *What if* . . . I have come short toward him? Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIV, 366.

ii. ELI. I am thy grandam, Richard; call me so. — BAST. Madam, by chance, but not by truth; *what though?* *King John*, I, 1, 169.



*What though* all should conspire against me, I am happy in your approval. STOFF., HANDL., III, § 127.

- 3) *what then?* Say that his power lies in words and looks; in things so slight and insignificant that it is impossible to add and count'em up: *what then?* DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., II, 51.

Even if I have grown so much wiser, *what then?* *Ib.*, II, 52.

"Mrs. Tiltmarsh has a small property, sir," says I. "*What then?*" THACK., SAM. TITM., CH. XI, 139.

"Did you not recognize him, madame?" — "What if I did?" she said sullenly: "*What then?*" BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, CH. V, 65.

- 4) *what not?* Pain produces or elicits fortitude or endurance; difficulty perseverance; poverty industry and ingenuity; danger, courage and *what not?* THACK., PEND., I, CH. II, 24.

The New York burners might come from other parts of the country — from Philadelphia and *what not?* *Id.*, VIRG., CH. XC, 968.

To place up notice-boards, labelled "Socialism" or *what-not*, marking off the new territory from trespassers is the merest futility. WESTM. GAZ., NO. 5442, 1c.

9. Sometimes, especially in familiar and humorous language, we find two interrogative pronouns in one and the same sentence or clause. These pronouns are identical or different. In the latter case the change of pronouns sometimes seems to be due to a desire of variety.

- i. \* If there was any question about etiquette, society, *who* was married to *whom*, Pendennis was the man to whom every one appealed. THACK., PEND., I, CH. I, 12. I wish to heaven you would read . . . the account of family alliances, and *who* is related to *whom*. *Ib.*, I, CH. II, 99.

Suppose you haven't been long enough in England to know *who's who*, cousin. *Id.*, VIRG., CH. LXXIII, 769.

\*\* MACB. What is the night? — LADY M. Almost at odds with morning, *which* is *which*. MACB., III, 4, 127.

He then begs to make his dear Twemlow known to his two friends, Mr. Boots and Mr. Brewer, and clearly has no distinct idea *which* is *which*. DICK., OUR MUT. FRIEND, I, CH. II, 11.

I do not understand *which party* is *which*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, CH. XII, 106.

\*\*\* Come, boy, I'm an old fellow, and know *what's what*, as well as you that are younger. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (221).

- ii. It did not seem to matter much *which* sat on *what* throne. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, CH. I, 7.

(It) publishes long accounts of flower-shows and church functions and *who* decorated *which* stalls, and *who* presided at the organ or rendered the tenor solo on *what* occasion. R. H. BENSON, *An average Man*, I, CH. II, 20. After what has happened the notion of the Powers patting the four Balkan states on the head, and telling them to sit quiet in the corner, while their, elders and betters tidy up the room and settle *who* is to sleep in *which* bed is absurd. *Spectator* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6065, 20c).

Compare also: It would be of interest . . . to know what part the various regiments took and *who* commanded *where*. *The New Age*, No. 1175, 525b.

10. In exclamations *what* often loses its character of an interrogative pronoun. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2121.

The altered application often entails a changed word-order (Ch. VIII, 19), and sometimes occasions the use of the indefinite article. Thus *What dark history is this?* (Dick., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VI, 27a) is a question; *What a dark history this is!* is an exclamation.

The exclamatory *what* is found:

- a) as nominal part of the predicate in the sense of *how great*. Compare the analogous use of *such*. (Ch. XXXVII, 8, Obs. III.)

*What* was the astonishment of the Prince, when [etc.]! HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, 39.

*What* are my agony and indignation next day, when I hear a flying rumour that the Misses Nettingall have stood Miss Shepherd in the stocks for turning in her toes! Dick., *Cop.*, Ch. XVIII, 133a.

*What* was our surprise — our dismay — when we learned that Mr. and Mrs. Hoggins were returning on the following Tuesday! Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 281.

- b) as a conjoint attributive word, expressing a high degree of some quality, which is, or is not indicated by an adjective. When the adjective is actually expressed, *what* is essentially, although not functionally, an adverb. Compare *such* in a similar function. (Ch. XXXVII, 7, b.) This *what* is found before singulars as well as plurals. In the latter case it is never followed by the indefinite article, which is often found after the Dutch *wat* similarly employed. As regards the use of the indefinite article before singulars see Ch. XXXI, 42.

- i. At the mention of it, we jumped up and said, "*What* a place! and *what* weather! SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

O, *what* a day this would be for the old Chapel! Ib.

- ii. \* *What* good cigars these are! THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 273.

*What* vain weathercocks we are! EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IV, 19b.

*What* cold fingers! Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIV, 367.

*What* beautiful rooms these are! PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, I, (I).

\*\* *What* babies we are! ANT. HOPE, *The King's Mir.*, Ch. II, 28.

*What* barbarians we are! Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. I, 16.

Such an exclamation may stand by way of answer to a question.

"Is your brother an agreeable man, Peggotty?" I inquired, provisionally. — "Oh *what* an agreeable man he is!" cried Peggotty, holding up her hands. Dick., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 13b.

Note a) This exclamatory *what* is sometimes quantitative in import, equivalent, that is, to *how much* or *how many*.

*What* hours the boy had passed over those papers! *What* love and longing: *what* generous faith and manly devotion — *what* watchful nights and lonely fevers might they tell of! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 129.

If you took all those (sc. ears) that had heard scandal against you or others, *what* baskets you would fill! Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 318.

Rich, sir! . . . He has nobody knows *what* money, and every year it increases. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IV, 19b.

Instead of this more ordinary English has not only *how much* or *how many*, but also *what* + a (+ adjective) + noun denoting a quantity or number + *of*: *what a (large, immense, etc.) quantity (amount, lot, etc.) or number (lot, etc.) of*.

For *what a large number of*, etc. we find also *what a great many* without *of*. The use of *what a many* seems to be confined to the language

to the uneducated. See Ch. IV, 6, *a*. Compare also WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 211.

Oh, dear me! *what a many* — *many* years we have been acquainted! THACK., *Lovel*, Ch. III, 49.

*What a many* stones! G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 128.

β) The use of the exclamatory *which* seems to have become obsolete before the Modern English period. Instances are, however, frequent enough in Middle English.

Herke eek, lo! *which* a sharp word for the nones | Besyde a welle Jesus, god and man, | Spak in repreve of the Samaritan. CHAUC., *Can t. Tales*, D, 14.  
By god, I shal him quyten every grot. | I shall him tellen *which* a great honour It is to be a flatering limitour. *Ib.*, 1293.

11. As a pure adverb the interrogative or exclamatory *what* is found:

a) as an intensive modifier of *to avail*, *to care*, *to matter*, *to signify*, and, perhaps, other verbs of a similar import.

i. *What* avails speaking to thee? SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXII, 363.

*What* avail all these accomplishments, in Vanity Fair, to girls who are short, poor, plain, and have a bad complexion? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 370.

ii. *What* cares these roarers for the name of King? Temp., I, 1, 17.

*What* care I to be a colonel or a general? THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XV, 290.

We were very poor, but *what* cared she? *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 162.

*What* cared she so long as her husband was near her? *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 263.

*What* care I for the cause? BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. I.

iii. *What* matters a little name or a little fortune? *Id.*, *Henry Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 250.

*What* did Cecilia Cricklander's insults matter? *What* did anything on earth matter? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIII, 293.

iv. *What* signifies what weather we have? GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*, I.

*What* signifies kneeling, when you know I must have you? SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.

Note. Owing to its front-position this *what* is by some speakers felt as the subject of the sentence, which, accordingly, is sometimes constructed without *to do*, and has the finite verb in the third person singular, at variance with strict grammatical analysis. Compare Ch. I, 67, *b*, Note.

The misunderstanding may also be responsible for the construction in the following sentences, which, in strict grammar, would have the pronoun *it* as the subject:

*What* matters about a few paltry guineas? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 291.

*What* matters about fame or poverty? *Ib.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

If he chooses to frequent gambling-tables and loses his money to blacklegs, *what* matters to me? *Ib.*, II, Ch. VII, 71.

*What* matters? Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXII, 221.

b) as a modifier of *to need* and some other verbs, where it seems to be dimly understood in the sense of *why* or *for what purpose*.

i. GRIFFITH. Madam, you are call'd back. — Q. KATH. *What* need you note it? pray you, keep your way: | When you are call'd, return. Henry VIII, II, 4, 127.

*What* need you go? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (226).

*What* needs this violence? SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXXVIII, 436.

*What* need we any further witness? MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 372, 1, c. The butcher would know how to sell it (sc. a shoulder of mutton), and *what* need I know? DICK., Cop., Ch. XLI, 301a.

"People will say that I am too old for it (sc. the deanery)." — "Good heavens! people! people? *What* need you care for any people?" TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLVII, 423.

*What* need she care for the duplicity of such friends as Charlotte Stanhope? Ib., Ch. XLIX, 436.

- ii. *What* should such fellows as I do crawling between heaven and earth? Hamlet, III, 1, 130.

*What* dost thou mean | To stifle beauty and to steal his breath? SHAK., Ven. & Ad., 933.

And why the deuce does not he come himself? *What* does he send such idle fellows as thee of his errands? VANBRUGH, Conf., III, 2, 426. 1)

*What* should he labour? BAIN, H. E. Gr., 77.

"Come on," he said peevishly, clutching me by the arm; "*what* do you want dawdling? CH. KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Ch. VI, 46.

c) as a modifier of the adverb *the* before a comparative.

We have hurried through all the scenes that have framed the history, the poetry, the romance of the world — and *what the better* are we? Periodical.<sup>2)</sup>

Note a) Of the following adverbial applications of the interrogative or exclamatory *what* no traces have been found in Late Modern English:

- i. And *what* have I offended thee, that hast brought on me and my kingdom a great sin? Bible, Gen., XX, 9. (Instead of this *what* the Revised Edition has *wherein*.)

- ii. *What* poor an instrument | May do a noble deed! Ant. & Cleop., V, 2, 236.

Also the adverbial use of *what* as in the following quotation seems to be rare:

The picture shows us *what much* of interior Africa may become. Periodical.<sup>3)</sup>

β) For the rest the adverbial Dutch *wat* as an intensive modifier of a verb or adverb corresponds to the English *how*. Thus *Wat loopt hij*! = *How he runs*! *Wat loopt hij hard*! = *How fast he runs*!

12. In Early Modern English we find *what* used as a kind of interjection denoting impatience in calling a person. Of this practice no Late Modern English instances have come to hand, Compare A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. *what*, e; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 253 and § 342.

LADY CAP. Nurse, where's my daughter? call her forth to me. — NURSE... *What*, lamb! *what*, lady-bird! God forbid! Where's this girl? *What*, Juliet! Rom. & Jul., I, 3, 3.

SHYL. *What*, Jessica! — And sleep and snore and rend apparel out; — Why, Jessica, I say! ... (Enter Jessica). — Jes. Call you? *what* is your will? Merch. of Ven., II, 5, 4.

Compare with this: LAUNC. *Why*, Jessica! — SHY. Who bids thee call? Merch., II, 5, 6. (Here *why* appears to be used in the same function as *what*).

13. In sentences that are neither interrogative nor exclamatory *what*

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII. 2) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 212. 3) Ib., 210.



is also used as an indefinite pronoun, sometimes with an adverbial and conjunctive function (under *β*).

As such we find it:

a) in the sense of *something* in the colloquial expression *I'll tell you what*, often shortened into *I tell you what*.

i. *I'll tell you what*, you'll get hanged one of these days. SWEET, Old Chapel.

ii. Then *I tell you what*, Mr. Noggs, if you want to keep in the good books in that quarter, you had better not call her the old lady any more. DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. XXXI, 204b.

"*I tell you what*", said the milkman, looking hard at her [etc.]. Id., Cop., Ch. XXVII, 199b.

Look here, *I tell you what*! Id., Little Dorrit, Ch. X, 55b.

"*I tell you what*, cousin," he cried, "I won't move for the countess, or for the baroness, or for all the cousins in Castlewood." THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 17.

β) as a kind of conjunctive adverb in analysing copulative co-ordination. Compare Ch. X, 21.

*What* with his pace, which was at best an awkward one in the street; and *what* with his hat, which didn't improve it; he trotted against somebody in less than no time. DICK., Chimes, II, 37.

This *what* is sometimes used without a correlative.

I must walk up and see Jones about the duties; and then, *what* with getting ready, I shall have enough to do to get off in time. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 16.

It was only a short distance, though it had taken me, *what* of my wandering, all of a week to arrive. JACK LONDON, Before Adam, 26. (The use of *of* in connection with this *what* seems to be extremely rare. See especially FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S., XLIV, 480.)

In the morning, *what* of our new-gained respect for the Tree-people, we faced into the mountains. Ib., 63.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### FORM.

1. The relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, *what* and, in dialects and vulgar English, *as*.

Only *who* is declined: Nom. *who*, Gen. *whose*, Obj. *whom*.

For the declension of *whoever*, *whoso* and *whosoever*, and for details about the use of these compounds see Ch. XLI.

2. Obs. I. *Whose* is also the genitive of *what*, but as such has fallen into disuse. Occasional instances occur in Early Modern English.

What can be avoided | *Whose* end is purposed by the mighty Gods?  
Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 27.

*Whose* is, however, used frequently enough, also in Present English, as the genitive of *which* (9, b).

- II. When a relative is in a position which does not clearly bring out its relations to the other words in the sentence, its grammatical function is often mistaken, especially when the sentence is complex and requires careful analysis to be rightly understood. MASON (Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 382) cites the following instance \**That is the man whom I heard was ill*, in which the relative on a superficial view seems to be in the objective relation to *heard*, but is really the subject of *was ill*. Compare FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 334.

Young Ferdinand *whom* they suppose is drown'd. Temp., III, 3, 92  
One *whom* all the world knew was so wronged and so unhappy. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., II, 111).

The very two individuals *whom* he thought were far away. DISRAELI, Vivian Grey, II, Ch. I, 28. (Compare the following quotation, in which the relative in a similar connection is correctly kept in the nominative: Zenobia liked young men *who* she thought would become ministers of state. Id., Endymion, I, Ch. II, 10.)

Confusion of case-forms in the opposite direction is also met with, but instances of *who* being used for *whom* are now not nearly so common as in the case of the interrogative pronouns. Not so in Early Modern English, where the case-distinctions of

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, Progress, § 155.

the pronouns are so often disregarded. JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 172; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 274; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 333.

And bring some covering for this naked soul, | *Who* I'll entreat to lead me. *Lear*, IV, 1, 47.

Here had we now our country's honour roof'd, | Were the graced person of our Banquo present; | *Who* may I rather challenge for unkindness | Than pity for mischance. *Macb.*, III, 4, 41.

The writings of a certain Miss Berwick, *who* he knew to be a contributor under a feigned name. DICKENS, *Letters*.<sup>1)</sup>

*Who* I am most happy to see here. *Id.*, *Sketches*, 320.<sup>1)</sup>

The burthen of her talk is 'my Collin' *who* she makes out to be the most angelic babe. *Mrs. CRAIK*.<sup>2)</sup>

- III. Most probably in imitation of the French *lequel*, the definite article was in Middle English sometimes placed before the relative *which*. The usage has kept its ground down to the present day, although it is now felt as a decided archaism. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 337; S. R. WILSON, *Chaucer's Rel. Const.*, 23; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2132; EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 131.

*The which* is found both substantively and adnominally, in the latter application only conjointly. (4). It mostly introduces continuative clauses, but it is also met with at the head of restrictive clauses.

- i. There are other Trojans that thou dreamest not of, *the which* for sport sake are content to do the profession some grace. *Henry IV*, A, II, 1, 77.

Northumberland, thou ladder, by *the which* | My cousin Bolingbroke ascends my throne. *Henry IV*, B, III, 1, 71.

That is one of the points in *the which* women still give the lie to their consciences. As you like it, III, 2, 209.

When he had made a kind of dirt-pie under the direction of the mason, they brought a little vase containing coins, *the which* the member of the Gentlemanly interest juggled, as if he were going to conjure. *Dick.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 280a.

- ii. The better part of valour is discretion; in *the which* better part I have saved my life. *Henry IV*, A, V, 4, 122.

Now this overdone, or come tardy off, though it make the unskilful laugh, cannot but make the judicious grieve; the censure of *the which* one must in your allowance o'erweigh a whole theatre of others. *Hamlet*, III, 2, 32. (The quartos omit *the* before *which*.)

He shared his money with him: brought him unaccountable presents of knives, pencil-cases, gold-seals, toffee . . . *the which* tokens of homage George received graciously, as became his superior spirit. *Thack.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

He seemed to use his eyes rather as instruments to search other people's thoughts than as agents to reveal his own: *the which* combination of keenness and reserve was considerably more calculated to embarrass than to encourage.

*Ch. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXIX, 424.

Note. In Middle English also *whos* is sometimes found preceded by the definite article.

Thou shalt wel knowe by the autoritee of god, of *the whos* regne I speke, that certes the gode folk ben alwey mighty. *CHAUC.*, *Boethius*, IV, Prose I, 55.

IV. The Old English practice of placing after the indeclinable *þe* an oblique case-form of a personal pronoun for the purpose of indicating the grammatical relation of the relative (SIEVERS-COOK, Old Eng. Gram., § 340) has left some traces in Modern English even of a recent date, which, in vulgar diction, sometimes has *which* + possessive pronoun instead of *whose*. See also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 801; STOF., E. S., XXIX, 98.

Se stān, *þe hine* þā wyrhtan āwurpon<sup>1</sup>). (= the stone which the builders rejected.)

And of another thing they were as fayn | That of hem alle was there noon y-slayn,—Al were they sore y-hurt, and namely oon, | *That* with a spere was thirled (= pierced) *his* brest-boon. CHAUC., *Knights Tale*, 2710.

Thy currish spirit | Govern'd a wolf, *who*, hang'd for human slaughter, Even from the gallows did *his* fell soul fleet. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 134. Anger is like | A full-hot horse, *who* being allow'd his way, | Self-mettle tires *him*. *Henry VIII.*, I, 1, 133.

Mrs. Piper lives in the court (*which her* husband is a cabinet-maker). DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XI, 91.

Now, look here. I'm retired from business. Me and Mrs. Boffin — Henrietta Boffin — *which her* father's name was Henery, and her mother's name was Hetty. *Id.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. V, 75.

But the most, as you'll agree, | Had that server of his country, *which his* name is Disraelee. *Punch*, 1889, 16 April, 152a.

The Attorney-General, *which his* name is Sir Robert Collier. *Id.*, 1870, 1, 179b.

3. Instead of word-groups consisting of a preposition and a relative pronoun, earlier English also had pronominal adverbs, such as *whereby*, *whereof*, etc. These are now used only archaically. For a detailed discussion see a subsequent chapter, compare also Ch. XVI, 4 and 7.

A splendid freestone palace, with great stairs, statues and porticoes, *whereof* you may see a picture in the "Beauties of England and Wales." THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 21.

## USE AND MEANING.

### GRAMMATICAL USE OF RELATIVES.

4. a) The nominative and objective cases of *who* are used only substantively. Illustration is unnecessary in this connection.
- b) The genitive *whose* is found both conjointly and absolutely; in the latter function, to all appearance, but rarely. For illustration see also 9, *b* and 36, *c*.
  - i. In all games of chance or matters of sport (he) was quite a match for the three gentlemen into *whose* company he had fallen. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 159.
  - ii. An old gentleman . . . a humble relation of *whose* I married . . . was seized with a fit and went off. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIV, 405.

<sup>1</sup>) Cook, *A First Book in Old Eng.*, § 87.



Note a) The observations about the use of the possessive pronouns to express the objective relation may be assumed to apply also to the relative *whose*.

\* Our cousin the Duke is chafed at the tidings of the death of a near and loving friend, the venerable bishop of Liege, *whose slaughter* we lament as he does. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXVII, 354.

Her thoughts (were) with the father *whose loss* she had scarcely begun to realize. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of the Eagle, I, Ch. V, 54.

He had been threatened by some workmen, *whose dismissal* he had procured for incompetency. UNA L. SILBERRAD, Success, Ch. I, 12.

Presently he (sc. Lord Roberts) remembers his Indian comrades . . . *whose love and admiration* he had won. Times, No. 1977, 914d.

Moriarty redivivius meant also the release from prison of Col. Moran, *whose capture* was the first exploit after Holmes's return. Athen., No. 4572, 531a.

\*\* Our last king | *Whose image* even but now, appeared to us [etc.]. Haml., I, 1, 81. Your mysterious young friend, *whose name* you have never told me, but *whose picture* really fascinates me, never thinks. OSCAR WILDE, The Pict. of Dor. Gray, Ch. I, 10.

β) In the majority of cases *whose* hardly bears being replaced by its periphrastic equivalent *of whom*. Thus we could hardly say *\*the man the wife of whom died yesterday*. But the analytical construction may be common enough when the noun modified expresses how one person is related or disposed to another, or when an objective relation is to be denoted. Compare Ch. XXIV, 36.

\* He charged the sum which he disbursed for the seats to the account of the widow and the young scapegrace *of whom* he was guardian. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 15.

\*\* O God, who art the author of peace and lover of concord, in knowledge *of whom* standeth our eternal life, *whose service* is perfect freedom. Bk. of Com. Pray. 2nd Collect, for Peace.

The prodigal sonship was the outcome of remorse for his own departure from the methods of Pope — *of whom* . . . he was a worshipper. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, I, Ch VII, 121.

γ) The analytical construction seems, as a rule, to have front-position. Thus in the three preceding quotations, and also in the two following in which it expresses a relation of possession:

Pen . . . ran straightway to Mrs. Foker's lodgings *of whom* he had taken the direction on the previous day. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 53.

The young insulinary . . . said he had not wished to say a word against that person. "*Of whom* the name." cried I, "ought never to be spoken in these places." id., Newc., II, Ch. VIII, 95.

It may be added that *whose* is impossible when a partitive relation is to be indicated, a partitive genitive being non-existent in Modern English. See 5, b.

δ) Note the peculiar relation expressed by the genitive in: Mr. Sowerby was one *whose intimacy* few young men would wish to reject. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. III, 21.

They would never agree to my marrying . . . any one *whose union* would not be advantageous in a worldly point of view. THACK., Newc., II, Ch. IX, 116.

It is a vale *whose acquaintance* is best made by viewing it from the summits of the hills that surround it. Hardy. 1)

1) GÜNTH., Man., § 506.

Compare: How was it possible that such a one as our vicar should not relish *the intimacy of Mr. Sowerby*? *Ib.*; It was plain that the bishop thought no ill of him on account of *his intimacy with Mr. Sowerby*, *Ib.*, 23. Compare also the varied constructions with *alliance*. Ch. XXIV, 21, Obs. IV; Ch. XXXIII, 7, Note  $\beta$ .)

$\delta$ ) Instances of *of which* as a genitive equivalent are, of course, common enough. See 10 and 36, *a*.

- c) *That* is used only substantively. Illustration is unnecessary in this connection.

Note. *That* is sometimes equivalent to a conjunctive adverbial expression consisting of a preposition + *which*. In this case it is, however, rather a conjunction than a relative pronoun. See 32, c and Ch. XVI, 13. Compare also ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 284; EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XIII, 352. In the day *that* thou eatest thereof. *Bible*, Gen., II, 17.

He was not here the last Sunday *that* Sir George was with us. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 18.

Why, one day in the country | Is worth a month in town; | Is worth a day and a year | Of the dusty, musty, lag-last fashion | *That* days drone elsewhere. CHRIST. G. ROSSETTI, *Summer* (*Rainbow*, I, 7).

- d) *Which* is used both substantively and adnominally, in the latter application only in conjoint position. Illustration of the substantive *which* is unnecessary in this connection. For the conjoint *which* see also Ch. XVI, 2, c, 2.

The conjoint *which* is found before the names of both persons and things, but only in continuative clauses:

- 1) before a noun which is identical with the noun modified by the adnominal clause.

The French procured allies, *which allies* proved of the utmost importance. *Par. Gram. Ser.*, § 101.

This noun may be implied in an absolute modifier.

He gave him romantic books with large coloured pictures of knights and robbers, in many of *which latter* you might read inscriptions to George Sedley Osborne Esquire. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

- 2) before a noun which is a wider term for the noun modified by the adnominal clause.

Here we were met by the lieutenant, *which officer* was to show us over the ship. *BAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 51.

- 3) before a noun which is meant to represent the contents of the previous head sentence.

The army refused to march, *which circumstance* disconcerted all his plans. *RAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 51.

The clerk tried to warm himself at the candle, in *which effort* not being a man of a strong imagination he failed. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 9.

"Well, well; yours is quite yellow enough for us. Isn't it Emmy?" Mrs. Sedley said: at *which speech* Miss Amelia only made a smile and a blush. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

She arranged the glasses, and laid and smoothed the little cloth, all *which duties* she performed with a quiet grace and good humour. *Id.*, *Pend.* I, Ch. V, 63.

- 4) before a noun that is part of a conjunctive adverbial expression.  
 He came after tea, *at which time* all the guests were assembled.  
 It was very cold, *for which reason* he put on his greatcoat.  
 It may be very cold, *in which case* you are to put on your greatcoat.

- e) *What* is used both substantively and adnominally, in the latter application both conjointly and absolutely. The substantive *what* requires no special illustration in this connection.

The adnominal *what* is used when the antecedent is incorporated into the clause. Thus *Cite me what hero you please* = *Cite me any hero that you please*.

We find *what* in this application in a qualitative and in a quantitative meaning, i.e. in the sense of either *any ... that* or *all ... that*. Sometimes these two notions are blended and the arrangement of some of the following quotations is, consequently, more or less arbitrary.

The quantitative *what* is mostly depreciative, depreciation being often explicitly stated by the addition of *little* or *few*. The Dutch mostly expresses this notion by *nog*, which may go together with *weinig*(e). The absolute *what* seems to be always quantitative.

Clauses with adnominal *what* are substantival in character. (7.)

- a) *what* used conjointly, 1) with a qualitative meaning:  
 He told me he scorned *what* lies I could invent against him. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXI, 141.

*What* virtue he knew, he tried to practise; *what* knowledge he could master, he strove to acquire. THACK., The Four Georges, III, 75.

You may tell the archdeacon that wherever I am, I shall receive *what* letters I please and from whom I please. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVIII, 245.  
 I am soon to pack your trunk. Missis intends to leave Gateshead in a day or two, and you shall choose *what* toys you like to take with you. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 41.

Make *what* noise you will with your tongues, so it be not treason. TEN., Queen Mary, I, 1.

I stop with my head in the air admiring *what* architectural beauties its marble front can boast. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. III, 33.

We are entirely with Mr. Shaw in asking that managers should have liberty to produce *what* plays they please, subject to municipal control over their license. REV. OF REV., No. 211, 15b.

2) with a quantitative meaning: a) At my father's death I paid *what* debts I had contracted at college. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 26.  
 I had meant to be gay and careless, but the powerlessness of the strong man touched my heart to the quick: still I accosted him with *what* vivacity I could. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXVII, 541.

He carried on the fight with *what* best knowledge he had in such matters. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 81.

I gave him *what* help I could. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 158.

We will give ourselves *what* chance we can. CON. DOYLE, The Siege of Sunda Gunge.

β) He would exert *what little* power he had. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. III, 29a.  
*What little* wealth you had, seems almost wholly to have been lavished in private luxury. BELLAMY, Looking Backward, 28.

Compare with the above: I gave *all the little* fortune that my mother had bequeathed to us to get some tidings from you. LYTON, Night and Morn., 495.

Thus also *what* may stand as a modifier of the substantive *little*. From *what little* I have seen of you, you seem to be an honest, straight-minded young fellow. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 79.

But Dora stored *what little* she could save and sent it them by stealth. TEN., Dora.

- b) *what* used absolutely: The horses, he said, were very well *what* there were of them. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 165.

There is not much expression in his eyes, but from *what* there is, you would fancy that he was oppressed by a secret sorrow. Id., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. V.

"Come along, Magsie, and have tea", said Tom at last, when there was no more cake, except *what* was down-stairs. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 31.

You are not without sense, cousin Eliza; but *what* you have, I suppose, in another year will be walled up alive in a French convent. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXII, 295.

He affected no honours but *what* were freely offered him. WILLIAM FLEETWOOD, Sermon. (MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, 151).

We did our own cleaning, *what* there was of it, and our own cooking. CH. GARVICE, A Farm in Creamland (Bookman, No. 276, 237a).

Note. The conjoint *what* is also met with in the literary archaism *what time*, used as a conjunctive. See Ch. XVII, 28 and 31.

Already a line of sheep were walking sedately along a sheep track in single file, with the dog going slowly in the rear, *what time* the shepherd kept up a thin shrill whistle between his teeth. Westm. Gaz.

5. *Which*, *that* and *what* are also used predicatively, i. e. as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct.

In this case the noun or adjective to which *which* or *that* refers, is also used predicatively, the noun assuming more or less the character of an adjective. (Ch. XXIII, 16.) When the noun is modified by an adjective, it is, of course, the latter which in this connection conveys the qualitative meaning. Compare also 11, Obs. I.

- a) Clauses introduced by the predicative *which* are mostly continuative, less frequently restrictive.

- i. John is a soldier, *which* I should also like to be. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 36.

The waggons bringing the rifles up to Kimberly passed through the Dutch territory. The Free State magistrates stopped them as illegal, *which* they were. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 52.

Even if the pronunciations described were one and all vulgar, *which* they certainly are not, provided that they actually occur, *which* they certainly do, they would be just as instructive as if they were the height of refinement. WYLD, The Growth of English, Ch. VI, 73.

I love you and think you the prettiest girl in the world, *which* you are. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. XI, 86.

- ii. Like the clever girl *which* she undoubtedly was. BENSON, Relentless City, 84.

Note. In continuative clauses the predicative *which* varies with the conjunction *as*. See also Ch. XVII, 104, b.

Your father walked up the hall, his left hand on his sword-hilt, looking an earl all over, *as* he is. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 14b.

He seemed a foreigner, *as* in fact he was. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>.

I have prepared him to find you beautiful, *as* you are. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XIII, 117.



If he's really a fortune-hunter, *as* I take him to be, I'll soon find it out. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

b) The predicative *that* is found only in restrictive clauses.

He wasn't the indulgent father *that* I am, Jack. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1, (241).

A minute ago, the boy had looked the quiet, mild, dejected creature *that* harsh treatment had made him. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VI, 69.

I can never be the same to you *that* I am to other people. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 67).

If I fail, you will remain with me if you wish, or go to your friends, the same gentle young lady *that* I have found you. MAX PEMB., *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. V, 25b. He impresses you involuntarily as the high thinker and delicately imaginative poet *that* we know him to be. BOOKMAN, No. 272, 86b.

Note a) Of particular interest is the use of the predicative *that* to refer to a noun, whether or no preceded by an adjective, which stands by way predicative adnominal adjunct to a (pro)noun in the head-sentence that is identical with the subject of the subordinate clause. *Which* is only exceptionally used in the same function. See under a).

These little infirmities would not have prevented him, honest faithful man *that* he was, from being a shining light in the Dissenting Circle of Bridgeport. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. II, 21.

I have encouraged him too much — vain fool *that* I have been. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. IV, 18a.

Dora disdained to reply, gentle creature *that* she was. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 279.

The head sentence is sometimes incomplete.

Strange man *that* he is! MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLIV, 438.

The noun to which the relative refers is sometimes preceded by *like*.

But Hilda, *like* the Angel of Mercy *that* she was, whispered in the girl's ear [etc.]. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 19.

In the course of a morning ride, Wee Willie Winkie had seen Coppy so doing, and *like* the gentleman *that* he was, had promptly wheeled round and cantered back. RUDY KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

β) A frequent variant of the predicative *that* as described in Note a) is the conjunction *as*. When the antecedent is a noun, the latter is said by MURRAY (s. v. *as*, 25) to be less common than the former. Compare also Ch. XVII, 35, Obs. II; and STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 904 and 1045.

i. I will do my best to stop you, madman *as* you are. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 334.

Ah, grovel in the dust! crouch—crouch! wild beast *as* thou art. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. XII, 69.

Major Danvers . . . sat in the front of the carriage with the little postmaster from Philadelphia, Mr. Franklin, who, printer's boy *as* he had been, was a wonderful shrewd fellow. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 83.

Angel *as* she was, Dora began to lose her angelic temper. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV, 467.

ii. She professed to be dreadfully frightened *like* a hypocrite *as* she was. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 214.

George had given up his favourite mare, *like* a hero *as* he was, and was marching a-foot with the line. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 124.

You said nothing, *like* a wise woman *as* you are. *Ib.*, Ch. XLVI, 480.

Instead of *like* we sometimes find *as* placed before the noun modified.

And now, if you'll take my advice, you'll use your influence, *as* a good, dear, sweet wife *as* you are, to prevent his going there any more. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 51.

c) The predicative *what* occurs only as a condensed relative. (7.)

For the soul is dead that slumbers, | And things are not *what* they seem  
LONGF., Psalm of Life, I.

She looked, indeed, *what* I afterwards found she really was, an underteacher  
CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 47.

Their general likeness to each other, and their consecutive ages, would almost have suggested that they might be, *what* in fact they were, brothers  
HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. II, 15.

It is not *what* a woman does, but *what* she is, that a man loves and finds lovable. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 496, 591b.

GRAMMATICAL CHARACTER OF THE ANTECEDENT OF RELATIVES.

6. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is mostly a (pro)noun in the nominative or objective, but may be a noun in the genitive or a possessive pronoun. Compare Ch. XXVI, 26, c; Ch. XXXIII, 13; and see FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 321; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 48; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, 231; HODGSON, Errors<sup>2</sup>, II, 92.

- i. Pour in *sow's* blood, *that* hath eaten | Her nine farrow. Macb., IV, 1, 65.  
Coming from Sardis, on our former ensign | Two mighty eagles fell; and there they perched, | Gorging and feeding from *our soldiers'* hands, | *Who* to Philippi here consorted us. Jul. Cæs., IV, 1, 83.

(This) way, said he, will direct you to *a Gentleman's* house *that* hath skill to take off these Burdens. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog., (153).

Certainly it must be one of *my hopeful cousin's* tricks, *of whom* you have heard me talk so often. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, II, (186).

Do you refuse *this lady's* hand *whom* I now offer you. Ib., V, (232).

- ii. "Kinsman," she said, "*his* race is run, | *That* should have sped thine errand on." SCOTT, Lady, III, xviii, 23.

I might have learn'd *their* choice unwise, | *Who* rate the dower above the soul, | And Lucy's diamonds o'er her eyes. Id., Bridal of Triermain, Introd. VI.

Alas! for this gray shadow, once a man, | So glorious in his beauty and *thy* choice, | *Who* madest him thy chosen. TEN., Tithonus, 12.

Instances of the interrogative *whose* used as the antecedent of a relative seem to be rare. The following are the only ones to hand at the moment of writing: *Whose* is the other judgment of *whom* your uncle speaks in his letter. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXIX, 382.

*Whose* was the other judgment *to whom* he trusts so implicitly? Ib.

CHARACTER OF THE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY RELATIVES.

7. The relative pronouns are used to introduce either attributive adnominal or substantive clauses. (Ch. XVI and XV.) When introducing the latter, they are called by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 112) condensed relative pronouns.

In the following discussions it is only the substantive use of the relatives which is referred to, except, of course, in the case of the genitive *whose*. For a discussion of the adnominal *which* and *what* see 4, d and e.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS INTRODUCING ATTRIBUTIVE ADMOMINAL CLAUSES.

3. When used to introduce attributive adnominal clauses, the choice of the relative pronouns depends on:
  - a) the nature of the antecedent which may be:
    - 1) a single word, indicative of  $\alpha$ ) persons,  $\beta$ ) things,  $\gamma$ ) animals;
    - 2) an entire sentence or clause;
  - b) the nature of the clause, which may be:
    - 1) restrictive,  $\alpha$ ) individualizing,  $\beta$ ) classifying;
    - 2) continuative;
  - c) the nature of the diction, which may be literary, colloquial or vulgar.

## USE OF THE RELATIVES ACCORDING TO THE NATURE OF THE ANTECEDENT.

- a) *Who*, either in the nominative or the objective, is only used when the antecedent denotes a person, or anything thought of as a person.
  - i. Have you ever heard of any projector or inventor *who* failed to find it (sc. our government) all but inaccessible, and *whom* it did not discourage and ill-treat? DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. X, 63a.  
Perhaps if he had had an early love passage, she, too, had one day hoped for a different lot than to be wedded to a little gentleman *who* rapped his teeth and smiled artificially, *who* was laboriously polite to the butler as he slid upstairs into the drawing-room, and profusely civil to the lady's maid, *who* waited at the bedroom door; for *whom* her old patroness used to ring as for a servant, and *who* came with even more eagerness. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.
  - ii. We islanders love not blows, save those of holy Church, *who* chasteneth whom she loveth. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 23.  
Sweet is true love tho' given in vain, in vain; | And sweet is death *who* puts an end to pain. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1001.

Note. The Elizabethan poets seem to have been more prone to ascribe personal qualities to inanimate things than their successors of later times; at any rate we find them more inclined to use *who* in referring to inanimate things than seemed justifiable to their readers and editors, who lived a considerable number of years after them. Thus POPE in his edition of SHAKESPEARE's works changed many *who's* into *which*, sometimes even in cases where personification appears quite warranted. See also 15, *b*, Note, and compare FRANZ., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 325, ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 264.

The winds, | *Who* take the ruffian billows by the top. Henry IV, B, III, 1, 21.

A beggar's tongue | Make motion through my lips, and my arm'd knees,  
Who bow'd but in my stirrup, bend like his | That hath received an alms!  
Coriolanus, III, 2 119.

The first (sc. casket), of gold, *who* this inscription bears, | "Who clooseth me shall gain what many men desire." Merch. of Ven., II, 7, 4.

- b) The restriction mentioned above is less strict with regard to the genitive *whose*, which is found frequently enough to refer to inanimate things, also when personification is out of the question. Compare MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 544; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2131; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 52; MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 158.

The occasion of its use with reference to things is chiefly to avoid the clumsy and prosaic *of which*, and, accordingly, we find it chiefly:

- 1) when succinctness is aimed at, as in the language of definition.  
Barrel organ. The common hand-organ containing a barrel with pins, *whose* revolution opens the key-valves and produces the music. WEBST., Dict.

One working tailor mentioned a number of *shops*, both at the East and West ends, *whose* work was all taken by sweaters. CH. KINGSLEY, Cheap Clothes and Nasty, 65.

The only *consonants* *whose* notation requires special notice are the following. SWEET, Prim. of Spok. Eng., 9.

The gums extend from the 'teeth-rim' to the 'arch-rim', behind which comes the 'arch', *whose* front wall is formed by the 'teeth-roots' or alveolars. Id., Prim. of Phon., § 21.

- 2) in poetry, to meet the requirements of metre and rhythm:

And I will put that business in your bosoms | *Whose* execution takes your enemy off. Macb., III, 1, 106.

That pale, that white-faced shore, | *Whose* foot spurns back the ocean's roaring tides. King John, II, 1, 24.

I did not for this | Visit the villain's infamy on her, | But craved my country's justice on his head, | The justice due unto the humblest being, | Who hath a wife *whose* faith is sweet to him, | Who hath a home *whose* hearth is dear to him, | Who hath a name *whose* honour's all to him, | When these are tainted by the accursing breath | Of calumny aud scorn. BYRON, Mar. Fal., I, 2.

Ye *crag*s upon *whose* extreme edge I stand. Id., Manfred I, 2.

A *palace* huge and fair beneath him lay, | *Whose* roofs with silver plates were cover'd o'er. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Doom of King Acrisius, 73b.

For quotations with *of which* see the second group of the quotations in 10.

10. *Which* is chiefly used when the antecedent indicates an inanimate thing. For instances with *of which* see also 36, a.

- i. He always took possession of the same *table*, . . . from *which* nobody ever now thought of ousting him. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 1.

A cottage piano, *which* had seen better days, stood across a corner. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. III, 41.

The door by *which* Sybil entered was on the left of the fire-place. Ib.

- ii. He comes from the place, the name *of which* escapes me, but will suggest itself to everybody else here, where they make the wine. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. II, 18.

There was but one other house in the whole country the name *of which* was so distasteful to Lady Lufton. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 12.

She turned right, down a passage, at the end *of which* was the staircase. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. III, 41.



11. Obs. I. *Which*, not *who*, is also the ordinary relative when, although the antecedent denotes a person, the reference is rather to a quality than to (an) individual(s). *Who* would even seem to be impossible when the relative is the nominal part of the predicate, as in the quotations mentioned in 5, *a*. See also FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XV, 133; WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 217.

He is exactly the man *which* such an education was most likely to form. TROL., *Warden*, Ch. II, 19.

He was not the man *which* the Jupiter had described him to be. *Id.*, Ch. VIII, 106.

Oh, that he | Were once more that *landscape-painter*, | *Which* did win my heart from me! TEN., *The Lord of Burleigh*, 84.

He was surprised to find that he had come out upon quite a different Clark from *the one* to *which* he had accustomed. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

- II. In Early Modern English *which* was frequently used with reference to persons, and this practice lasted into the eighteenth century. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2132. According to BAIN, (*H. E. Gr.*, 35) even TENNYSON wrote *The one lover true lover which you ever had*, which, however, he subsequently changed into *The one true lover whom you ever own'd* (*Ger. and Enid.*, 344). From the statements of the above eminent grammarians it would seem to follow that the use of *which* with reference to persons is rare in Present Standard English. In face of the comparative frequency of instances, which the observant reader cannot fail to have noticed in current Literary English, this opinion can, however, hardly be upheld. See also WENDT (*Synt. des Eng.*, I, 216), who cites many instances.

I have known those *which* have walk'd in their sleep, who have died holily in their beds. *Macb.*, V, 1, 54. (Note the varied practice.)

The mistress *which* I serve quickens what's dead | And makes my labours pleasures. *Tempest*, III, 1, 6.

Blessed are the dead *which* die in the Lord. *Bible*, *Revel.*, XIV, 13. Our Father *which* art in heaven. *Id.*, *MATTH.*, VI, 9.

Spare thou them, O God, *which* confess their faults. *Bk. of Com. Pray.*, *Gen. Conf.*

As he spake by the mouth of his holy Prophets: *which* have been since the world began. *Id.*, *Benedictus*.

They would tell their People, they were all kill'd by Thunder and Lightning, not by the Hand of Man, and that the *two which* appear'd, viz. *Friday and me*, were two Heavenly Spirits or Furies. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 247. (Globe Ed.)

Mr. W-y's courier, *which* he sent from E. LADY WORTLEY MONTAGUE'S *Let.*, No. 23.

This is the *lord which* my cousin mentioned to me. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, II, 297. (T.)

All the *witnesses which* an accused person could produce. *Id.*, I, 72.

There was formerly a *santon* whose name was *Barsisa*, *which*, for the space of an hundred years, very fervently applied himself to prayer. STEELE, *Guardian*, Ch. XLVIII.

The Baron of Avenel was one of those tall, muscular, martial *figures*, *which* are the favourite subjects of Salvator Rosa. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXIV, 259. The very *clerks which* I remember in the South-Sea House . . . had an air very different from those in the public offices that I have had to do with since. CH. LAMB, *E. d. of E. l.*, I, (153).

Mr. Dawkins's appearance did not say a vast deal in favour of the comforts *which* his patron's interest obtained for *those which* he took under his protection. DICK., *O. l. Twist*, Ch. VIII, 83.

Only in Shakespeare are there heroines to match *those which* Meredith has given us. ROB. SHINDLER, *On certain Aspects of recent Eng. Lit.*, 51. Here I am — with a bare-legged peasant to wait on me at table, instead of the liveried *man which* my self-respect demands. DOR. GERARD, *Sawdust*, Ch. X. (In this instance the antecedent denotes rather an institution than a person.)

John Eyrick, or Heyrick — had five *sons*, the second of *which* sought a career in London. THOM. BAILEY ALDRICH, *Rob. Herrich* (*Cent. Mag.*, 1900, March.)

The number of *passengers* conveyed by it at this season of the year should exceed the paltry *few which*, for example, the Great Northern, Eastern or Western carry. *Punch* 1902, 27 Sept., 135.

We could train twice as many of these *midwives*, *which* the country so urgently requires. *Westm. Gaz.*, 1907, 30 March.

### III. In vulgar English the use of *which* instead of *who* is still quite common.

(She) had been told it herself by Mrs. Mudberry, *which* kept a mangle, and Mrs. Bunkin, *which* clear-starched. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 316.

The kind and blessed gentlemen, *which* is so many parents to you, Oliver, when you have none of your own: are a going to 'prentice you . . . although the expense to the parish is three pound ten! — . . . and all for a naughty orphan *which* nobody can't love. *Id.*, *O. l. Twist*, Ch. III, 39.

He had gone out to dinner; but his 'prentice (*which* is a very clever lad) sent 'em some medicine in a blacking-bottle off-hand. *Id.*, Ch. V, 58.

He was a shy and silent young gent: not like this one, *which* was the merriest, wildest young fellow, full of his songs and fun, THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 6. It would be unnecessary to state that suspicion would at once point to the real culprit, *which* would, of course, be his Royal Highness. BRET HARTE, *Mary Mc. Gillup*, II, 83. (T.)

### IV. Decidedly vulgar is also the use of *which* by way of a copulative co-ordinate conjunctive, i. e. as a kind of equivalent of *and*. Compare 2, Obs. IV and see STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 801; STOF., *Taalst.*, VIII, 220; *id.*, E. S., XXVIII, XXIX; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, § 115 ff; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 249; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 334, Anm. 3; *Id.*, E. S., XII; SPIES, *Stud. zur Geschichte des Eng. Pron.*; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>4</sup>, § 152, Note.

"We'll devote the evening, brother," exclaimed Wegg, "to prosecute our friendly move. And arterwards, crushing a flowing wine-cup — *which* I allude to brewing rum and water — will pledge one another." DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, III, Ch. VI, 90.

And wishing that your elth (= health) may be better than your looks, *which* your inside must be bad indeed if it's on the footing of your out. *Id.*, III, Ch. XI, 198.

<sup>1</sup>) *Drie Talen*, XXIV, I, 16.

This makes me quits with your lordship after yesterday's piquet, *which* I shall be very happy to give you your revenge. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIX, 404. He'd been a-makin a tremendous row the night afore, a-drinkin and a-singin, and wanting to fight Tom the post-boy: *which* I'm thinking he'd have had the worst of it. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 54.

Off he went as fast as the wind, *which* the wind behind could not catch the wind before. JOSEPH JACOBS, *More English Fairy Tales*, LXXI, 134. NURSE ARTHUR: He's a little dear, Mrs. Bonar, although I says it as shouldn't! NURSE BONAR: *Which* I don't think as much of him, Mrs. Arthur, as you pretend to! *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5519, 7.

Note a) This *which* sometimes occurs together with *and*.

I know of a marriage as is no marriage of a honourable Baronet as is no more married than I am; *and which* his wife is married to somebody else. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 340.

β) In the earlier stages of the language this *which* may also be met with in literary diction.

Our prerogative | Calls not your counsels, but our natural goodness | Imparts this; *which* if you, or stupified | Or seeming so in skill, cannot or will not | Relish a truth like us, inform yourselves | We need no more of your advice. *Winter's Tale*, II, 1, 165.

Mrs. Honour, therefore, had heard the whole story of Molly's shame, *which* she, being of a very communicative temper, had no sooner entered the apartment of her mistress, than she began to relate in the following manner: FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. XII, 58b.

V. *Which* often refers to an entire sentence or clause. In this application it varies with *what*. For illustration see 13.

Note. Special mention may be made of the literary *after which*, *(up)on which*, *since which* and similar combinations with a preposition, which are equivalent to such compounds as *where(up)on*, which will be discussed in a subsequent chapter.

A goodly company of old Cistercians is generally brought together to attend his oration; *after which* we go to chapel and hear a sermon. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XXVII, 396.

Nobody likes a fit of the blues. Nevertheless, everybody has them; *notwithstanding which*, nobody can tell why. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, II, 27.

I have seen — a man, *since which* I seem to be able the better to value your love! EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIII, 291.

## 12. *That* can be used with reference to both persons and things.

There is special occasion for its employment:

a) when there are more antecedents than one, not all indicating either persons or things. Thus according to I. SCHMIDT (*Eng. Gram*<sup>3</sup>, § 288). The cabmen and cabs *that* are found in London.

The sportsmen, hounds and horses *that* we saw in the fields.

Note. According to WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 214) also *which* is in this case frequent enough. He cites:

Time passes, or, as Maeterlinck suggests, we pass onward through time, and events and persons *which* once came well within our view recede into the distance, to be grouped under the name of history. Periodical.

*Which* is, of course, the only available relative when a preposition precedes (34).

The Company had indeed to procure, in the main, for themselves the money and the men *by which* India was conquered. SEELEY.

- b) when it is open to doubt whether the antecedent should be considered as the name of (a) person(s) or (a) thing(s).

You sometimes find characters *that* are quite unfathomable.

A youth entered Mr. Nolley's front garden with firm step. He was a type *that* I knew well, to judge from his old Norfolk jacket. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 489, 365a.

Note. In such a case *which* is, however, also met with. See also 15, d, Note a).

Mr. Micawber cannot get into those *firms which* decline to answer his letters. DICK., C o p., Ch. XXVIII, 207b.

Madame de Florac was . . . of the *sort which* is almost impossible to find now-a-days. THACK., New c., II, Ch. VIII, 93.

13. *What* is now chiefly used as the subject of a clause which forms a comment on the contents of a sentence or clause. The latter then figures as the antecedent.

In this application *what* is only employed when the clause precedes or is placed in the body of the head-sentence. When the clause follows after the head-sentence, *what* is replaced by *which*. The latter is not seldom met with also after a conjunction, especially the co-ordinating *and*, *but* or *or*, in case the clause precedes the head-sentence. It must be added that the use of *what*, when referring to an entire sentence or clause, is not a free one. Thus *He is fond of music, which I am glad to hear* cannot be changed into *What I am glad to hear, he is fond of music*. It is hardly necessary to observe that *What I am glad to hear is that he is fond of music*, although meaning practically the same as the above sentence, is an entirely different construction, *what* being in this case a condensed relative. (7.)

As appears from the following quotations the use of *what* is especially common in clauses with a nominal predicate.

Sometimes it is not an entire sentence or clause but a word or word-group that is commented on in the clause introduced by *what*. Probably also in this case *which* may be found as a variant, but no instances have been found up to the time of writing.

- i. \* But, *what* more amazed him, | His wife, now big with child, and much detesting | Her husband's practices, had willingly | Accompanied their flight. DRYDEN, Marriage a la Mode, I, 1, (426).

It is a just remark of Dr. Johnson (and *what* cannot often be said of his remarks, it is a very feeling one) that we never do anything consciously for the last time without sadness of heart. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 13.

Together with the cottage (a sorry antediluvian makeshift of a building you may think it), *what* was of much more importance, a fine litter of new-farrowed pigs, no less than nine in number, perished. CH. LAMB, Es. of Elia, Dis. on Roast Pig, (255).

*What* was strange, she had all her sails set and sailed right against wind and tide. WASH. IRV., The Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., I, 85).

Great men are too often unknown, or *what* is worse, misknown. CARL., Sart. Res., Ch. III, 10.

Do you know the game of "Pass it on, neighbour?" said the new-comer, addressing one of the company on the left. — "No," said the other, "and *what's* more, I don't care." STOF., Handl. I, 59.



Fortunately, Mr. Mayfield was at home and, *what* is rarer, disengaged. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. VI, 163.

The hamlet lay not many hundred yards away . . . ; and *what* greatly encouraged me, it was in an opposite direction from that whence the blind man had made his appearance. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IV, 31.

*What* was more serious, the prospects of income also disenchanting him of his dream, which was to make in Bermuda a home for himself and his family. STEPH. GWENN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. II, 31.

\*\* He wore, *what* was then very uncommon in this country, a loose brown linen blouse. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 129.

It is not for me to tell all she said, even supposing (*what* is not likely) that any one cared to know it. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXV, 210.

\*\*\* Other circumstances now occurred in the city of London which seemed to show that our director was — *what* is not to be found in Johnson's Dictionary — rather shaky. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 121.

As to Andrew Lang, far abler pens than mine have recently been busy doing justice to his extraordinary powers, and (*what* is infinitely more important) his greatness of nature. T. W. D., *Editor's Pref. to SWINBURNE*, Charles Dickens, 13.

Take next, *what* never palls or fails, | Hewlett's "New Canterbury Tales." P. C. BAINBRIDGE (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005).

ii. \* He likes reading, *which* I am glad to hear. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>

Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, *which* was in effect a declaration of war. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 36.

I said nothing, *which* made him still more furious. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 217.

The rain washed away the track, *which* prevented the trains from running. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 252.

The captain's order to mount at once and ride for Dr. Livesey would have left my mother alone and unprotected, *which* was not to be thought of. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IV, 30.

\*\* And *which* is more than all these boasts can be, | I am beloved of beauteous Hermia. *Mids.*, I, 1, 103.

And I . . . | Was never call'd to bear my part, | Or show the glory of our art? And, *which* is worse, all you have done | Hath been but for a wayward son. *Macb.*, III, 5, 10.

I'm sure she's young; and for her humour, she laughs, sings, and dances eternally; and, *which* is more, we never quarrel about it, for I do the same. DRYDEN, *Marriage à la Mode*, I, 1.

Whether this hard-hearted judge felt any remorse for his cruel treatment of his son and daughter, or (*which* is more probable) was afraid his character should suffer in the neighbourhood, he professed great sorrow for his conduct to my father. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. I, 11.

He was hard-favoured, and, *which* was worse, his face bore nothing of the careless jollity of the sailor on shore. SCOTT, *Guy. Man.*, 42.

Scrooge had as little of what is called fancy about him as any man in the City of London, even including — *which* is a bold word — the corporation, aldermen and livery. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 19.

If, *which* was far more difficult, it had been enforced. TREVELYAN, *England in the age of Wycliffe*, 43.

But, *which* was strange, they had not even kept the remembrance of their ancestors' worship. W. BESANT, *London*, I, 41.

And, *which* is more remarkable still, she won't have anything to say to him. *Id.*, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men.*, Ch. XXIV, 173.

She would never change unless, *which* was absurd, he changed first. ANSTEE, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. V, 77.

The course of true love did not run smooth, which was commonplace; but, *which* was less ordinary, the barrier to his hopes was not the want of money. MARY E. GROSE, *The Lady of the Lime Walk*.

The chairs (*which* is by no means always the case) combined comfort with costliness. Truth, 1902, 8 April.

Thus, *which* rarely happens in this world, he reaped the benefit of his chivalry. JAMES PAYN, *A Prince of the Blood*, I, 118 (T.).

14. a) In standard English *what* is seldom used to refer to a single (pro)noun.

Beginners should, therefore, be cautioned against writing, in conformity with Dutch practice, *\*All what I have is at your disposal*, *\*The first thing what he did was to pay his outstanding bills*, etc. Instances do not, however, seem to be entirely wanting. See also PRICK VAN WELY, E. S. XLV, I, 170.

*That what* we falsely call a religious cry is easily raised by men who have no religion. DICK., *Barnaby Rudge*, Pref.

Now this was not *all what* G. B. wanted. W. BLACK, *Sunrise*, I, 302.

Note. In the following quotations *that* is not, of course, the antecedent of *what*, but the nominal part of the predicate of the sentence whose subject is the substantive clause introduced by *what*.

And was *that what* you were going to marry on? SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, IV, (225).

Isn't *that what* it's called? ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. III, 71.

- b) In vulgar language instances are common enough. See also FRANZ, E. S. XII.

This here boy, sir, *wot* the parish wants to 'prentis. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 37.

I know a 'spectable old genelman as lives there (sc. in London) *wot'll* give you lodgings for nothink. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 82.

This is them two young sisters *what* tied themselves together with a handkercher. *Id.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 32.

Foreign blokes *wot* take the food from honest workers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5442, 3a.

Note a) The use of *what* after *all* seems to be an Irishism.

I did not mean to say that *all what* followed was inevitable. CH. LEVER, *Dodd Family*, I, 122.<sup>1)</sup>

*All what* the newspapers call heart-rending distress.<sup>1)</sup> *Ib.*, II, 312.

β) In the following quotation cited by WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 219) *all* is not the antecedent of *what*, but belongs adnominally to *our leading writers of fiction*.

*All what* may be termed our leading writers of fiction . . . regard as a slight upon their art the desire of a reader to unbend over their books when there is nothing else more pressing to do. *Periodical*. (= *What* may be termed our leading writers of fiction *all* regard etc.).

15. Sometimes there is varied practice according as the antecedent is intended to indicate anything thought of as a person or not. Compare also Ch. XXIV, 15—16 and Ch. XXXI, 9—11 and 36—38.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *all*, II, 3.

This is especially the case when the antecedent is:

a) Such a word as *child*, *baby*, *infant*.

- i. The *child who* was thrown under a train at B — on the 6th instant is progressing as well as can be expected in spite of the fact that she has lost both arms and a leg. *Times*, 1898, 255b.
- ii. She had a chubby *child* in her arms, *which* frightened at his looks began to cry. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, V.  
But the mother of the child hid away the weakest *child*, *which* was born the last. RIDER HAGGARD, *King Sol. Mines*, 112.

b) the name of an animal.

- i. He had a scoundrel *dog whom* he taught to whine in the most ludicrous manner. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 357.  
There is one *cock who* gets upon a post to crow . . . *who* makes me shiver, he is so fierce. Of the *geese . . . who* come waddling after me . . . I dream at night. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7b.  
"Then come up!" said the carrier to the lazy horse, *who* came up accordingly. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 31b.  
Rebecca was the *animal who* suffered most in the present state of Pen's mind. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 67.  
The rule has been that the *donkey who* bears the burden must always be so padded that he is unconscious of carrying anything. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5048, 1b.
- ii. The very *rats, which* here and there lay, putrefying in its rottenness (sc. of the kennel) were hideous with famine. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 59.  
In stature it (sc. the quagga) is rather less than the well-known zebra, *which* it greatly resembles. CASSELL, *Conc. Cycl.*

Note. In Early Modern English the use of *who* to refer to animals was more common than it is now, the least notion of personification being sufficient to justify the application of *who*. See 9, a, Note, and compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 264; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 335; *id.* E. S. XVII.

He stuck them up before the fulsome ewes, | *Who* then conceiving did in eaning time | Fall parti-colour'd lambs. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 88.

Why, I did but compare thee to some of the Birds that are of the brisker sort, *who* will run to and fro in trodden paths with the shell upon their heads. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*, 118.<sup>1)</sup>

c) the name of a state.

- i. Bulgaria, *who* has a fine army of 30.000 stalwart soldiers within a few days' march of Constantinople, may decide to stake her fortunes in a gallant effort to liberate the enslaved province. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 564a.  
Russia, *who* is only now recovering from a devastating struggle, and has internal problems of the utmost magnitude to face, could not take the risk of war on behalf of Servia. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4961, 1b.  
Another great military people will be established in Europe, a stratocracy like Germany, *who* will be driven closer than ever into the Alliance with Austria. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Nov., 628.
- ii. It seems unnecessary to remind our readers that the war in the Near East was begun by Montenegro, *which* declared war on Oct. 8. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3838, Sup. VI.  
Great Britain, *which* owns the allegiance of innumerably more Mahomedan

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

subjects than any other Power, is naturally sensitive in a very special degree to any action which may intensify the resentment of Mahomedan sympathizers with Turkey in other parts of the world for whose tranquillity the British Government is responsible. *Times*, No. 1835, 171c.

d) a collective noun denoting persons. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 485.

\* There is a numerous *class of readers who* imagine that the same words cannot be repeated without tautology. WORDSWORTH, Pref. Note to "The Thorn".

(He preferred) to make friends among the rising *generation*, with *whom* he soon grew into great favour. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V.

The bishop will be here, and indeed the whole *set who* are here now. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 30.

It was the outlying *enemy who* were discovered, pursued, destroyed by the vigilant scouts and skirmishers of the British force. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 124.

The profligate Wilkes retained his hold on the affections of a *rabble whom* he pillaged and ridiculed. Mac., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 199.

The misguided *rabble who* stoned the Lord Mayor of Dublin . . . are in no true sense the Irish nation. *Daily Chron.*

The inspector of police had been firing six shots into a *crowd who* were stoning the military. *Graph.*

\*\* Her Ladyship . . . appointed her preserver, as she called him, apothecary to her person and *family, which* was very large. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16. (*Who* would be impossible here).

Among the *company which* came to visit the two officers, was an old acquaintance of Henry Esmond. Id., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. II, 163.

Supplehouse belongs to a clique *which* monopolizes the wisdom of England. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 28.

Note a) In the majority cases *who* is followed by the plural form of the finite verb which depends on it as its subject, *which* by the singular. Deviations are not, however, infrequent, especially so far as the concord of *which* is concerned. Compare also 12, b, Note.

i. Our duty is now to record a fact concerning Pendennis, which . . . must . . . be made known to the *public who reads* his veritable memoirs. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 163.

i. Let me hope she (sc. the Lady Rowena) will be less cruel to the splendid *train which are* to meet at the tournament. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. IV, 37. Mr. Washington was the first to leave the jovial *party which were* doing so much honour to Madam Esmond's hospitality. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 92. The prisoner, William Clifton, is one of a notorious *gang which infest* the country. H. A. HERING, *An Unrecorded Trial* (*Pall Mall Mag.*, 1896, No. 10).

Browning was . . . of that *class of poets which are* also prophets. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 496, 600a.

β) *Which* and *who* are used alternately with reference to the same antecedent in:

His features . . . would have been considered as handsome, had they not been the marks of a physiognomy peculiar to a *race, which* . . . was alike detested by the credulous and prejudiced vulgar, and persecuted by the greedy and rapacious nobility, and *who* . . . had adopted a national character, in which there was much, to say the least, mean and unamiable. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. V, 41.



USE OF THE RELATIVES ACCORDING TO THE NATURE OF THE CLAUSE THEY INTRODUCE.

16. In Late Modern English *who* and *which* are the principal relatives to introduce continuative or progressive clauses, *that* being chiefly confined to such as are restrictive. See Ch. XVI, 1—2.

This fact is so well established and illustration of it is so easy to obtain that only a few quotations are given here.

- i. \* He (sc. the captain) was growing more and more excited, and this alarmed me for my father, *who* was very low that day, and needed quiet. STEVENSON, *Treasure Island*, Ch. III, 26.  
Dinner-time then came again to the especial delight of the two children, *who* felt rather empty. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2139.  
He had been well thrashed by a gentleman, *who* did not approve of his trespassing on his grounds. *Ib.*  
\*\* They were married in the dull Bath season, *which* was the height of the season in London. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 19.
- ii. "Jim, he said," you're the only one here *that's* worth anything. STEVENSON, *Treasure Island*, Ch. III, 25.

Note a) The continuative *which* is sometimes practically equivalent to *as*. For illustration see Ch. XVII, 104, b.

17. Obs. I. The use of *that* to introduce indubitably continuative clauses belongs to an older stage of the language; late instances must be looked on as archaisms. See Obs. IV and also MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 152.

Bacchus, *that* first from out the purple grape | Crush'd the sweet poison of misused wine. MILTON, *Comus*, 45.

This nymph, *that* gaz'd upon his clust'ring locks, | . . . Had by him, ere he parted thence, a son. *Ib.*, 54.

I'll lay my life, Mr. Leontine, *that* had twice as much to do, is setting off by this time from the inn. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, IV, (140).  
She's devilish like Miss Cutter, *that* I used to meet at Dumdum, only fairer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 27.

For the first few weeks she spoke only to the goat, *that* was her chiefest friend on earth and lived in the back garden. RUDY KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 5. (Compare, however, 12, b).

- II. When the progressiveness of the clause is vague *that* is sometimes preferred to *who*, more frequently to *which*. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2137; SCHULZE, *E. S.*, XX.

In some of the following quotations the use of *that* may, perhaps, be regarded as a survival of the old predilection for this relative.

- i. So saying he took the boy, | *that* cried aloud. TEN. *Dra.*  
He is a bad 'un; but there's worse *that* put him on. STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, Ch. III, 27.

Mrs. Carnaby was helped out of the trap; . . . then the children were lifted out by the mother; and then the nurse, an awkward, plain girl, *that* nobody helped, tumbled out by herself. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2137. (In this quotation the clause is the equivalent of an adjective that would be co-ordinate with the preceding *awkward* and *plain*).

- ii. He was dressed in a suit of black clothes, which were rather rusty and dry too, and rather short in the sleeves and legs; and he had a white neckerchief on, *that* was not overclean. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37a. (Note the varied practice.)

I have ten pounds, *that* I received from Mrs. Kenge. *Id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 47.

Here Mrs. Roundhand heaved her very large chest and gave me a look, *that* was so severe that, I declare, it made me look quite foolish. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 43.

Then we came to a wide gate-way, *that* seemed to lead to some ancient mansion in the woods. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

Once he piped up . . . a kind of country love-song, *that* he must have learned in his youth. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 28.

He wore a huge old tattered seacloak with a hood, *that* made him appear positively deformed. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 28.

In a quiet season, *that* has been fruitful of topics, Sir James Crichton—Browne has supplied us with two. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 2b.

- III. The use of *who* or *which* may give rise to ambiguity, which may be removed by substituting *that*. See also HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>s</sup>, II, 79—82. His conduct surprised his English friends *who* did not know him. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 37.

The next winter which you will spend in town, will give you opportunities of making a more prudent choice. *Ib.*

The boy *who* felt himself guilty, cast down his eyes.

The written language may obviate the ambiguity by strict observance of the rule that only continuative clauses should be divided from the antecedent by the comma. The spoken language, of course, easily distinguishes continuative clauses from restrictive by the falling tone with which the former are uttered.

- IV. The distinction between *who* and *which* on the one side, and *that* on the other, as described in 16, is one of comparatively recent times. SHAKESPEARE and MILTON and their contemporaries did not observe it. In fact in their time the differentiation between the relative pronouns seems to have been rather a matter of taste and fashion than of meaning. In Queen Anne's time *that* seems to have almost completely ousted *who* and *which*. Compare FRANZ, *E. S.*, XVII; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, 152, N. Hence also *that* is often found in proverbs, in which the older practice has been preserved.

*He that's coming* | Must be provided for. *Macb.*, I, 5, 67.

He giveth light unto *all that* are in the house. *Bible*, *Matth.*, V, 15.

*He that* fights and runs away may live to fight another day. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2140.

- V. Also in the latest English the observance of the distinction, although making for lucidity and variety of expression, and, therefore, advocated by some grammarians of high standing (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 37), is far from general. On the contrary, the fact that *who* as opposed to *that* is distinctly associated with personal attributes often outweighs the consideration that *that* is peculiarly adapted for restricting.

In the Literary English of the last hundred years, indeed, *that* appears far less frequently than *which*, and especially *who*. Thus one can

read page after page of the works of SCOTT, MACAULAY, DICKENS, THACKERAY, etc. without meeting with more than an occasional *that*. Also in the leading articles of the principal newspapers of the present day, such as the Times, the Westminster Gazette, the Review of Reviews, etc. *who* and *which* are by far the commonest relatives.

When *that* does appear, it is mostly in certain well-defined cases, i. e.:

- 1) when what is expressed in the clause is not anything markedly characterizing or applying to one particular person or thing or group of persons or things; in fact when it is something which is of minor importance and could almost be dispensed with without any serious detriment to the meaning of the sentence. This is often the case after a superlative. Thus in *Newton was one of the greatest men that ever lived* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2138) *that* is the proper relative, because what is contained in the clause is not a peculiarly personal activity, nor anything which distinguished Newton from other persons.

- i. The boy who addressed this inquiry to the young wayfarer, was about his own age: but one of the queerest looking boys *that* Oliver had ever seen. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VIII, 81. (Compare *that* with the preceding *who*.)

Is it to be hinted to me that I am wanting in affection for my precious treasure, the dearest little fellow *that* ever was? *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. II.

- ii. I warn you that the very next mistake *that* you make shall subject you to the punishment of the rod. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 27.

One bookseller sent to the palace a copy of the most stinging lampoon *that* perhaps was ever written. MAC., *Fred.*, (675a).

(The present year) is one of the best years *that* British trade has known. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5406, 1c.

Also in the following groups of quotations the choice of the relative pronoun may have been determined by the above considerations:

- i. I swear it before the God *that* saw it! DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 61.

- ii. And she is known to every star, | And every wind *that* blows. WORDSW., *The Thorn*, VII.

No wind *that* blew was bitterer than he. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 7.

As to Ginevra, she might take the silver wings of a dove, or any other fowl *that* flies. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVIII, 238.

The work in literary criticism *that* was done by him (sc. Leslie Stephen), and by Sir James Fitzjames Stephen, was unlike most of the criticism of the last age. W. RALEIGH, *Six Es. on Sam. Johns.*, I, 8.

Half-way up the steep of the hills the Norton's watch-tower stood, four-square to every wind *that* blew. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. III, 36.

This man, who feared no tangible thing *that* earth could bring against him, looked on love and was afraid. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 3a.

(Their) skilful and dignified speeches will deserve the success *that* they have secured. *Id.*, No. 5406, 1b

Compare with the above the following quotations in which the character of the clause is entirely different:

- i. \* Was Titania the first *who* fell in love with an ass? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 65.

The first *who* walked up the steps to the stage was that intrepid Sutton. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 383.

He (sc. Frederic the Great) was one of the first rulers *who* abolished the cruel and absurd practice of torture. MAC., *Fred.*, (674a).

\*\* In this mood he came to an account . . . of a woman *who* had laid her desperate hands not only on her own life, but on that of her young child. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 61.

Almost every man *who* lives in the world has the happiness, let us hope, of counting a few such persons amongst his circle of acquaintance. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24. (*That lives in the world* would mean little more than *that is alive*.)

He was in the grasp of one *who* never forgave. MAC., *Hist.*

An Englishman *who* begins to learn German cannot fail to be struck by the resemblance which that language presents to his native tongue. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. I, 1.

It is from the pen of a gentleman *who* (very wisely) disguises his identity by signing himself "Unionist Free Trader". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 1b. I cannot understand how any one *who* has once taken an interest in education, can ever lose it. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2139.

- ii. James gravely replied . . . that he was sorry for the misery *which* the prisoner had brought on himself. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 189.

The most important features of the polity *which* thus assumed a prominent organisation have been already indicated. MORTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898a.

Considered in the light of the preceding discussions, the alternative pronoun would seem to be more appropriate in:

- i. (He was) one of the few men of note in the world of thought *whom* America has produced in recent years. *West. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 2b.

- ii. \* The best English dinner *which* could be produced, of course, was at the service of the young Virginian and his noble friend. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 387.

Bagehot . . . was one of the greatest essayists *who* ever lived. BOOKMAN, No. 276, 243a.

It deserves to be classed among the best specimens of English prose *which* our age has produced. MAC., *Moore's Life of Byron*.

They bore the largest acorns *which* I had ever seen. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. VII, 98.

\*\* They seem to have been exasperated by the large number of disputes *that* have taken place in contravention of the agreement. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 2a.

- 2) when the clause is distinctly classifying. In this case the antecedent noun is suggestive of or preceded by some such word(-group) as *such* or *a kind of*.

- i. He is a man *that* will never get on in the world. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2138. I'm a man *that* has lived rough. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 26.

I'm not one of those silly sort of women *that* go losing themselves. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. V, 100.

- ii. He didn't speak, but in the rough coarse fingers, clenching and expanding in the fair hair of the child, there was an eloquence *that* said enough. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 60.

He gave it (sc. my arm) a wrench *that* made me cry out. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 29.

With that he gave me a twitch *that* I thought would have made me faint. *Ib.* The local man possesses a knowledge of affairs in his vicinity *that* the London manager cannot obtain. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5400, 2b.

A bird *that* is migratory always breeds in the coldest climate it visits. *Ib.*, No. 5412, 15c.



- VI. When the antecedent indicates a number of persons, *who* directs our attention to each separately, *that* causing us to think of them in the aggregate. Thus there is a shade of difference between *When the boat came near the shore, they thought they recognized one of the convicts that were in her* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2138). *They give prizes to the boys that have the best manners* (ib.), and the same sentences with *who* substituted for *that*.

It follows that *who* may be a more polite word than *that*, as making more account of a person's individuality. See also ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 63, c, and § 248, which are more or less contradictory. Thus the chairman of a meeting would incline to use *who* rather than *that* as a more polite and dignified word in such a sentence as: *Those members who are in favour of this resolution will please hold up their hands.* SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2139.

It is disrespect of the persons spoken to that may have prompted the speaker to use *that* in:

What ill-conditioned boy is there *that* dares to laugh? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 27.

- VII. In colloquial English *that* is more frequent, although, according to SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2136) "the present spoken English shows a reaction against the earlier colloquial tendency to favour *that*. The general tendency now is to substitute *who* for *that* when persons are referred to, *that* taking the place of the lost *which*." Compare with this the statement of another English grammarian, which is practically the expression of a directly opposite opinion: "In conversational language the commonest Relative Pronouns are *that*, *which* and *who*; *that* is used preferably with reference to persons; and *whom* is little used. Thus we tend to say *the meeting which I attended yesterday*, rather than *the meeting that . . .*; and again, *the sister of mine that you met* rather than *the sister of mine whom you met*." ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., 248, 1. In Literary English such a sentence as the following, in which there are three successive *that*'s, would hardly be tolerated.

The dence of it is that that fellow *that* came here this morning has found it out. ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. X, 226.

- VIII. In vulgar English *that* seems to be the ordinary relative, besides *which* (11, Obs. III), *what* (14, b) and *as* (20).

I only want to live like one of the Almighty's creeturs. I can't, I don't; and so there's a pit dug between me and them *that* can and do. DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, II, 54.

You gentlemen *that* sits at Sessions — when you see a man with discontent writ on his face, you says to one another "he's suspicious." THACK., Pend., Ch. III, 86.

To refuse a bill drawn on you *that* have been such a friend to the shop, and are a baronet and a member of Parliament, and a gentlemen and no mistake — damme, it's ungrateful. Ib., II, Ch. VI, 68.

He's a bad 'un; but there's worse *that* put him on. STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., Ch. III, 27.

18. It is, in the main, on the principles laid down in the preceding § that:

a) the ordinary relative after *all* is *that* when it has the meaning of *everything* and *who* when it has the meaning of *everybody*.

i. The old woman . . . had been wholly deaf to *all that* had passed. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 60.

Of *all that* they wrote against him, nothing has survived, except what he has himself preserved. MAC., *Fred.*, (677*b*).

You have already put *all that* you possess at our command. CH. KINGSLEY *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 187*a*.

Thus even in: But you don't know *all that* that means. SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, IV, (229).

ii. He . . . was absolute master of the life and liberty of *all who* sat at meat with him. MAC., *Fred.*, (676*b*).

I do believe *all who* were going on to the terminus felt honestly sorry to see me preparing to go. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5442, 9*b*.

It should be observed that *all which* is not at all unusual, but that *all that* instead of *all who* is now rare. Compare, however 17, Obs. IV.

i. This office was *all which* the critics of old aspired to. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, I, 171. (T.)

And this is much, and *all which* will not pass away, BYRON, *Childe Harold*, III, xxxv.

I take the first opportunity of altering *all which* my friends tell me should be altered. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Pref., 90.

My garden and *all which* it produces, is at your service. Id., *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 187*a*.

They are doing *all which* we have a right to expect of them. FROUDE *Oceana*, Ch. XIII, 201.

Here was *all which* heart of visitor could desire. Ib., VII, 97.

The armed invasion of the Netherlands was the necessary consequence of *all which* had gone before. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. I.

ii. Hitherto papa and mamma and Lady Lufton were *all that* he had known. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 98.

It was part of Emerald's code to be sweet to *all that* came her way. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. VII, 94.

There is certainly nothing unusual in the use of *which* after the numeral *all*, and *which* may be the usual relative after *all those* + name of thing.

A few general observations are *all which* are necessary by way of conclusion. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898*b*.

(He possessed) *all those* distinctions *which* are most coveted. WALT. BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. VI, 56.

b) the ordinary relative after the prop-words *body* or *one* is *who*.

*Everybody who* is in earnest to be good, carries two fairies about with him. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 20.

I'm glad to hear of *somebody who* got smashed first and celebrated afterwards. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. IV, 78.

Please talk of *somebody who* is successful. Ib., I, Ch. VII, 130.

c) the ordinary relative after *thing* and compounds of *thing* and the substantive *little* and *much* is *that*.

The combination *much which*, placed in immediate succession is, of course, avoided also for the discordant accumulation of sibilants which it would entail.

- i. \* The very name of Ravenswood shall be the sign of *everything that* is dishonourable, as it is already of all that is villanous. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXXIV, 316.  
 Dolf was again repeatedly perplexed by *something that* reminded him of the Haunted House. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 134).  
 Is this *anything that* I can do? DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. X, 55b.  
 The *only thing that* can be done now, that I know of, is to leave him in the cellar for a day or so. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VII, 74.  
 I like *everything that's* good. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 142.  
 I had quite forgotten in the morning *everything that* had taken place after a certain period on the night before. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 40.  
 Death is there associated . . . not . . . with *everything that* is most endearing in social and domestic charities; but with whatever is darkest in human nature and in human destiny. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 195.  
 There's *one thing*, Mary, *that* serves a bit to comfort me. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. V, 41.  
 \*\* The fortunes of those who have figured in this tale are nearly closed. The *little that* remains to their historian to relate is told in few and simple words. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LIII, 497.
- ii. He was half conscious of having done *something which* would be considered wholly outrageous among his associates. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. III, 56.  
 There was *nothing more which* could be said to be intended for ornament. Id., I, Ch. XII, 221.  
 He seemed to be thinking of *something which* did not displease him. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 193.  
 At last he sees *something which* alarms him. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 488, 323a.
- d) the ordinary relative after the determinative *he, she* and *they* is *who*. For illustration see Ch. XXXII, 18. The instances of *he that*, etc. there given belong to the English of a hundred or more years ago.  
 It is hardly necessary to observe that *who* is almost the only relative after personal pronouns, when they are not determinative. In this case, indeed, the clause it introduces is continuative. (16).  
*You, who* are so clever. LYTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. V, 23.  
 Mrs. Wapshot, as a doctor of divinity's lady, would have the 'pas' of *her, who* was only the wife of a medical practitioner. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.  
 For the use of *who*, as compared with *that*, after *it is* (or *was*) see 25.
- e) the ordinary relatives before the anticipating *it* are, respectively, *who* and *which*. Compare Ch. II, 12, Ch. XVI, 6, *d*, and Ch. XXXIX, 37, *a*.  
 i. She became a perfect Bohemian ere long, herding with people *whom* it would make your hair stand on end to meet. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXIX, 325.  
 ii. My poor mother has prejudices *which it* is impossible for my logic to overcome. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 14.
- f) the ordinary relative after *same* is *that* when the reference is to things, *who* being perhaps as frequent as *that* when the reference is to persons. Compare Ch. XVI, 10, Obs. II.  
 i. \* When I looked in his face, I thought I could see traces of the *same* mental struggles *that* I had gone through. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.  
 He uses the *same* books *that* you do. MURRAY, s.v. *as*, 23.  
 \*\* She was still the *same* person *that* she had been half an hour ago. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. I.

- ii. \* He attested this to be the *same which* had been taken from him. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XV, 39.  
 The easy king, . . . allowed to his mistress the same liberty *which* he claimed for himself. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (573*b*).  
 The older man recognized, no doubt, in the younger that *same* ardent longing to achieve distinction *which* dominated himself. GRAY.  
 \*\* Nobody in this world but himself knew that he was the *same* Silas Marner *who* had once loved his fellow with tender love. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marner*, I, Ch. X, 75.  
 And there was Mr. Green Walker, a young but rising man, *the same who* lectured not long since on a popular subject to his constituents at the Crewe Junction. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

## 19. It is for reasons of euphony that:

- a) *who* is avoided when the antecedent is the interrogative *who*, its place being taken by *that*, even when other words intervene between the antecedent and relative.
- i. *Who that* saw him then and knew him and loved him as I did, *who* would not have humbled his own heart? THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 400.  
*Who that* knows what men and women are would not have shrunk from that alternative? ANT. HOPE.
  - ii. *Who* is there upon earth *that* I could miss so much? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LIII, 381*b*.

*That* cannot, of course, take the place of *who* after a preposition. (34.)  
*Who in whom* that clergyman has any interest, is in the smallest degree damnified? PERIODICAL.<sup>1)</sup>

When, however, some other word is the antecedent, *who* is not rarely found in an interrogative sentence opening with *who*.

*Who* is that tall young gentleman *who* enters? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIX, 405.

*Who* are those two individuals with hooked noses and sallow countenances *who* worked into the church, in spite of some little opposition on the part of the beadle? *Ib.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 396.

*Who* are you *who* talk of presents? CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, Ch. II, 41.  
*Who* were the boys *who* learnt drawing last term? ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VI, 125.

The following sentence is different from those cited above, the clause being substantival and the relative pronoun, accordingly, condensed.

He demanded *who* they were *who* profaned that holy place? SCOTT, *Talisman*, 81.

- b) *that* is avoided after the determinative *that* and *those*. See also Ch. XXXII, 19, Obs. VI; Ch. XXXVI, 12—13.

- i. *That which* promised happiness when we were one in heart, is fraught with misery now that we are two. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 50.  
 He spoke in *that*, quiet deliberate manner, and in *that* underone, *which* is often observable in mechanics who consider and adjust with great nicety. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. X, 62*b*.  
 Her voice was of *that* rich and rare order, *which* does not require any great compass of notes to make itself appreciated. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. IV, 33.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 215.



ii. *Those who* live in glass houses must not throw stones. Prov.

No man succeeded more completely in inspiring *those who* approached him with vague hopes of some great advantage from his kindness. MAC., Fred., (676b). (Thus, apparently, regularly in the writings of the celebrated historian.)

Instances of *that* standing after the determinative *that* are especially found in Early Modern English. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2129; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.353. It is a significant fact that POPE, in his edition of SHAKESPEARE, changed *that that* into *that which*. FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 341.

Mark but my fall, and *that that* ruin'd me. Henry VIII, III, 2, 439.

c) *that* is avoided when the relative is divided from its predicate, inasmuch as the separation would impart to it what SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1895 and § 2128) calls break-stress, which it hardly tolerates. Thus *who* or *which* could not be replaced by *that* without detriment to idiomatic propriety in:

He was a man *who*, if he had been properly supported, would have worked wonders. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2128.

I shall recount the errors *which*, in a few months, alienated a loyal gentry and priesthood from the House of Stuart. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 1.

For even the mutual animosity of countries at war with each other is languid when compared with the animosity of nations *which*, morally separated, are yet locally intermingled. Ib., I, Ch. I, 16.

If I had been commanded to choose from the world's annals a name *which*, better than any other, should serve to illustrate the vital relations between those three subjects (sc. biography, criticism and ethics) and literature, I could find no better name than Samuel Johnson. W. RALEIGH, Six Es. on Sam. Johns., I, 19.

Instances of the relative *that* assuming break-stress are, however, by no means rare. See especially FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S., XXXIII, where a great many are given.

On the beautiful shores of Lake Leman ... he (sc. Voltaire) began his long war against all *that*, whether for good or evil, had authority over man. MAC., Fred., (782a).

A large thin-lipped mouth *that*, without weakness, suggested patience. Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught., I, 232. (T.)

We wonder what the book is *that*, according to the University Correspondent, has recently been set by the university of London. Lit. World, 1903, 24 April.

## 20. Restrictive clauses may also be introduced by *as*.

*As*, as a pure relative pronoun, is now only met with in dialects and in vulgar English, in which, however, it is very common. Its rise as such seems to be due to the use of the conjunction *as* after *same* and *such*, the classifying *such* and the individualizing *that* and *those* not being always clearly distinguished. Ch. XVI, 10, Obs. V; Ch. XXXVI, 13, Obs. I; Ch. XXXVII, 8, α. In SHAKESPEARE it appears chiefly after *these*, *those* or *that*, which often had a classifying import. See also FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 340; id., E. S., XII, XVII.

In vulgar language *as* and *what* sometimes seem to occur as variants.

- i. Brutus had rather be a villager | Than to repute himself a son of Rome | Under *these* hard conditions *as* this time | Is like to lay upon us. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 174.

I have not from your eyes *that* gentleness | And show of love *as* I was wont to have. *Ib.*, I, 2, 33.

- ii. Well! of all the ungratefulest, and worst-disposed boys *as* ever I see, you are the —. *Dick.*, *Ol. Twist*, IV, 50.

A woman who lodges in the same house made an application to the parochial surgeon to see a woman *as* was very bad. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 58.

I know a 'spectable old genelman *as* lives there (sc. in London), wot'll give you lodgings for nothink, and never ask for the change. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 82. It was on just such a sort of evening *as* this, when I was a little girl, and my aunt *as* brought me up, took me to hear a good man preach out-of-doors. *G. Eliot*, *Adam Bede*, Ch. II, 18.

If a poor man or woman's in trouble and has hard work to make out a living, they like to have a letter to tell 'em they've got a friend *as* will help 'em. *Ib.*, 19.

21. In this § are given some quotations in which different relative pronouns are used in exactly parallel conditions.

Spare thou *them*, O God, *which* confess their faults. Restore thou *them that* are penitent. *Book of Com. Prayer*, Gen. Conf.

For just experience tells, in every soil, | That *those who* think must govern *those that* toil. *GOLDSMITH*.

At a quarter past ten the Major invariably made his appearance in the best blacked boots in all London, with a checked morning cravat *that* never was rumpled until dinner time, a buff waistcoat *which* bore the crown of his sovereign on the buttons. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 11.

Miss Matty had not changed the cap with yellow ribbons *that* had been Miss Jenkyns's best, and *which* Miss Matty was now wearing out in private. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Cranf.*, Ch. VII, 623.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUNS INTRODUCING SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

22. The relative pronouns used to introduce substantive clauses are chiefly *who* and *what*; *which* and *that* appearing only in certain grammatical constructions.

23. a) *Who* was more common in the earlier stages of the language than it is at present. In most positions it is now felt as more or less archaic and is, accordingly, now chiefly met with in proverbial sayings. The genitive *whose* is rare also in older English.

- i. \* I dare do all that may become a man; | *Who* dares do more is none. *Macb.*, I, 7, 47.

*Who* chooseth me shall gain what many men desire. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 7, 5.

*Who* steals my purse steals trash. *Oihello*, III, 3, 156.

*Who* dares not stir by day must walk by night. *King John*, I, 1, 172.

Oft have I dream'd of thee! whose glorious name | *Who* knows not, knows not man's divinest lore. *BYRON*, *Childe Harold*, I, LXI.

*Who* hears us echo the dull vermin of the earth . . . *who* does so, does us wrong. *Dick.*, *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, III, 73.

*Who* touches a hair of yon grey head | Dies like a dog. WHITTIER, *Barbara Fritchie*.

*Who* lives to please must please to live, and *who* lives by drawing for a comic periodical must manage to please the greater number. DU MAURIER, *Soc. and Pict. Sat.*, 10.

\*\* *Who* dainties love, shall beggars prove. Proverb.

*Who* swims in sin, shall sink in sorrow. Id.

*Who* takes an eel by the tail and a woman by her word, may say that he holds nothing. Id.

*Who* hath a fair wife, needs more than two eyes. Id.

- ii. \* There is such a consociation of officers, between the prince and *whom* his favour breeds, that they help to sustain his power, as he their knowledge. BEN JONSON, *Dis.*, 742.

\*\* *Whom* the gods love die young. Proverb.

*Whom* great men wrong, they hate. Id.

*Whom* a serpent has bitten, a lizard alarms. Id.

- iii. *Whose* is the crime, the scandal too be theirs. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 467.

b) Even in the latest English there is not, however, anything quaint about the use of *who* in substantive clauses:

- 1) when the head-sentence is represented by *it is* (or *was*) + (pro)noun or (pro)noun + *it is* (or *was*), in which *it* must be considered as an anticipating subject. Compare Ch. II, 21, and see JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, 6.242.

He it is for *whom* I am thus anxious and malicious. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, I, (364).

It was he *who* founded the Clavering Book Club. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 20.

It is my parents *who* forbid that. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 413.

He it was *who* spurred on you. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XIX, 79.

It is only a woman *who* can think everything that is evil about a woman. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. VII, 63.

It may be noted that he it was *who* persuaded English capital . . . to build the Canadian Pacific Railway. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3901, 1196.

If she (sc. Germany) sees no harm in re-opening an old sore, it is not we *who* are touched. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5418, 1c.

Note a) Such a sentence as *Call it not vain: — they do not err, | Who say, that, when the Poet dies, | Mute Nature mourns her worshipper* (SCOTT, *Lay*, V, 1) admits of two interpretations. The clause opening with *who* may be considered either as an attributive adnominal (Ch. XVI), or as a substantive clause (Ch. XV): in other words the personal pronoun *they* may be understood either as the antecedent of *who*, or as the anticipating subject. If the head-sentence and the clause are transposed: *Who say that . . . they do not err*, which would yield an unusual but legitimate construction (Ch. II, 22), the former interpretation is, of course, untenable. In the transposed construction *they* would be an recapitulatory subject, which could, however, be dispensed with.

A similar twofold interpretation may be put upon: They have a blessed time on't, *who* marry for love. VANBRUGH, *Conf.*, II, I, 422.

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

He demanded who they were *who* profaned that holy place. SCOTT, *Talisman*, 81.

β) Substantive clauses introduced by *who* may also be announced by a demonstrative.

Was *that* your brother *who* knocked at the door? MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 251.

- 2) when the clause represents the non-prepositional object or stands after a preposition. In this case the relative itself is mostly an objective, but is a nominative after the imperative *let*. Instances with the genitive are infrequent.

i. He felt very certain now that the duke would not support him again, *let who* would be master of Chaldicotes. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXII, 311. *Let who* would be brought as a visitor to the house, after a fortnight's absence, she would kiss him: (sc. her husband) before she welcomed any one else. *Id.*, Ch. X, 98.

ii. \* *Let Jos marry whom* he likes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. VI, 54.

He could afford to marry *whom* he chooses. *Id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 72. So she, like many another babbler, hurt | *Whom* she would soothe. TEN., *Guinevere*, 353.

\*\* Mr. Slope turned over in his mind whether it would be well for him to tell this termagant at once that he should call on *whom he liked*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XVII, 138.

She has a right to correspond with *whom she pleases*. *Id.*, Ch. XXVIII, 238. Now, as if it were not enough towards his daughter's ruin to neglect her, to let her walk about and pick up *with whom* she would, Olbion must needs supply her with bundles of his pamphlets on Turkey and the Dardanelles. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5167, 7a.

It is not to *whom* it is you give your word, it is to you it matters that you keep it. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. VIII, 72. (*That* is a conjunction introducing a subordinate statement.)

iii. I shall accept *whose* company I choose. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, IV, Ch. III, 327.

- c) But except for these two cases, other constructions are now more commonly used. Thus SHAKESPEARE'S *Who dares not stir by day must walk by night* would run in Present English *He who* etc., or in more colloquial language *A (the) man who* etc. The ordinary Present English equivalent for *Whom the gods love die young* would be *Those whom* etc.
- d) In the majority of cases, as in all the above quotations, the clause introduced by *who* is indefinite in meaning. Much more unfrequently is it a definite person that is indicated.

*Who* was the thane lives yet, | But under heavy judgment bears that life. MACB., I, 3, 109.

What it is my Caius, | I shall unfold to thee, as we are going | *To whom* it must be done. JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 329.

Saw ye not *whom* the reeking sabre smote? BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, xxxviii.

- e) Finally mention is here made of the literary and more or less archaic locution *as who should say*. Ch. XVII, 102, d. See also *The King's English*, II, 325; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 157.

The cloudy messenger turns me his back, | And hums, *as who should say* "You'll rue the time | That clogs me with this answer". MACB., III, 6, 41.

A fifth retainer, proceeding up the staircase with a mournful air — *as who should say*, "Here is another wretched creature come to dinner; such is life!" — announces, "Mis-ter Twemlow"! DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 11.



Thus the melancholy retainer, *as who should say*, "Come down and be poisoned, ye unhappy children of men!" *Ib.*, I, Ch. II, 13.

24. Very common are substantive clauses introduced by *what*.

- a) Although *what* is usually employed as a singular, it may be the subject of a plural predicate. For instances see also Ch. XXVI, 5, *b*; and WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 220; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 6.243.

- i. *What* can't be cured must be endured. *Proverb.*

*What* belongs to the public belongs to nobody. *Id.*

There was never believing half of *what* that Bob said. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 18.

- ii. Manners are *what* vex or soothe, corrupt or purify, exalt or debase, barbarize or refine us by a constant, steady, uniform, insensible operation like that of the air we breathe. *BURKE.*<sup>1)</sup>

*What* chiefly count at the election . . . are the shibboleths of party. *Graph.*, No. 2249, 8*b*.

The sharp edges are *what* cut your stockings. *Advertisement.*

**Note.** In the following quotation *what* is practically equivalent to *who*:

Here, in a coffin bearing neither name nor date, were consigned to dust the remains of *what* was once lovely, beautiful, and innocent, though exasperated to frenzy by a long tract of unrelenting persecution. *SCOTT*, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXXIV, 313.

- b*) The singular *what* varies with *that which*. The latter is more precise and never approximates to the indefinite *whatever*, which is often the case with *what*. It is sometimes preferred to *what* from motives of rhythm. For illustration see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.352.

And *that which* should accompany old age, | As honour, love, obedience, troops of friends, | I must not look to have. *MACB.*, V, 3, 25.

One or two shattered yew-trees still grew within the precincts of *that which* had once been holy ground. *SCOTT*, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXII, 233.

We can but give thee *that which* we possess. *BYRON*, *Manfred*, I, 1.

*That which* promised happiness when we were one in heart, is fraught with misery now that we are two. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 50.

**Note** *a*) In the following quotation *that which* is practically equivalent to *he whom*:

'Tis safer to be *that which* we destroy | Than by destruction dwell in doubtful joy. *MACB.*, III, 2, 6.

*β*) *That which* cannot be replaced by *what* when *that* has approximately the meaning of the indefinite *a certain thing* (Ch. XXXVI, 13, *Obs.* II), as in:

There was *that* in Lady Jane's innocence *which* rendered light talking impertinence before her. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 368.

Nor is substitution possible when *that* is used absolutely, i. e. when a noun is understood after it.

There are the evidences of your first engagement; may you be more faithful to *that* which you have just formed. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXXII, 301.  
The paramount factor in 'our composition is *that which* is derived from the mother. WALLACE, *Introd. to Tennyson's Princ.*, 50.

It stands to reason that substitution is out of the question when *which* introduces a substantive clause standing after *it is* (or *was*) *that*, in which *that* is in the function of the nominal part of the predicate. See 25 and also Ch. XXXVI, 7, c Note γ.

It is *that which* makes him speak of what he feels and sees. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 41.

It was *that which* ruffled him. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. V, 320.

It was *that which* killed him. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. IX, 78.

- c) Like the adnominal *what* (4, e) the condensed relative *what* may have a depreciatory import.

We took *what* we could of food and of weapons and went out by the western gate. WALT. BESANT, *London I*, 39.

Nothing in this volume is quite so good as the study of Mr. Balfour's personality which Mr. Ward published in an earlier book. *What* there is, however, is of great interest. *Athen.*, No. 4507, 371*b*.

Conversely *what* is distinctly appreciative in:

I ate *what* I could. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 56 (= *as much as*).

- d) *What* is sometimes followed by partitive *of*. Compare Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*, and also WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 218.

*What of* my Dross thou findest there, be bold | To throw away, but yet preserve the Gold. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog., Concl.*, (280).

Fling down thy leading-staff — renounce thy command — unbind thy prisoners — restore thy spoil — distribute *what* else thou hast *of goods*, to relieve those whom thou hast made orphans and widows SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 286.

She set forward towards the court where Mary lived, to pick up *what* she could there *of information*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXI, 222.

- e) The meaning of a substantive clause introduced by *what* may be referred to by a demonstrative by way of recapitulatory subject or object.

i. *What* the leaves are to the forest, | *That* to the world are children. Longfellow.

ii *What* fates impose, *that* men must needs abide. HENRY VI, C, IV, 3, 58.

- f) The condensed *what* appears as part of a conjunctive word-group:

1) after *but* in attributive adnominal clauses Ch. XVI, 11 ff. The combination *but what* although somewhat vulgar, is common enough. It is applied to persons as well as things.

i. I hope there is no dissatisfied person *but what* is content. SHERIDAN, *Riv.*

There is no Tulliver *but what's* honest. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch IX, 243.

ii. No ill luck stirring *but what* lights on my shoulders. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 1, 82.

2) after *for* in adverbial clauses of restriction. Ch. XVII, 150 ff.

The boys are dead *for what* we know. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 38.

Note. In the conjunctive word-group *but what*, when introducing adverbial clauses of attendant circumstances (Ch. XVII, 118) or of degree (Ch. XVII, 134) *what* is equivalent to the conjunction *that*, with which it varies.

- i. I never knew a doctor called into any case yet, *but what* it transpired that another day's delay would have rendered cure hopeless. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 70.
- ii. He is not so tipsy at any rate, *but what* he knows his faults. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XLII, 370.

## 25. *Which* and *that* appear at the head of substantive clauses:

- a) after *it is* (or *was*), in which *it* must be considered as an anticipating subject, not as the antecedent of the following relative. Compare 23, *b*, 1; and see also Ch. II, 21; Ch. XXVI, 27; Ch. XXXVI, *c*, Note  $\gamma$ ). When the reference is to persons, *that* varies with *who*. For quotations illustrating the use of *who* after *it is* (or *was*) see also, 23, *b*, 1.
  - i. \* Assuredly it was a daring thing *which* she meant to do. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 114.  
And yet it was something quite other than egoism, *which* brought a grave look to Enrica's face. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. I, 12.  
\*\* It was my hand *that* traced a letter to his brother at his dictation. *Il. Lond. News.*  
it is this *that* makes our cruel bastardy laws so absurd. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 69, 83.
  - ii. \* It was the father *that* I got acquainted with first. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. XII, 71a.  
It is he *that* ruined the Bourbons and Mr. John Sedley. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.  
It is I *that* absolve you from an engagement which is impossible in our present misery. *Ib.*, 191.  
It is Brown *that* I want. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 15a.  
\*\* It is you *who* make dress pretty, and not dress *that* makes you pretty. GEORGE ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. III, 51.

Note. The combination demonstrative *that* + relative *that* is, of course, mostly avoided for the sake of euphony. Instances are not, however, particularly rare. See also Ch. XXXVI, 7, *c*, Note  $\gamma$ .

It was *that that* made me first think he cared for you. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XVI, 304.

### b) after *who* (or *what*) *is* (or *was*)?

SWEET'S explanation of such a sentence as *Who is that just rang?* (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2124) is that in it *that* is a demonstrative pronoun, after which the relative is dropped for reasons of euphony: the full clauses *Who is that who just rang?* and *Who is that that just rang?* being equally discordant. But this explanation would break down as regards such a sentence as *What is that he asked?* there being nothing objectionable to *What is that which he asked?* from the point of view of euphony.

Another factor which seems to speak for the view of considering *that* in SWEET'S sentence as a condensed relative, not as a determinative demonstrative, is the weak stress of the pronoun. Compare 26, Obs. II, and also Ch. II, 21, Ch. XXXII, 19, Obs. II and Ch. XXXVI, 7, *c*, Note  $\gamma$ .

- i. Lucius, who's *that* knocks? JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 307.  
 Tell me in sadness, who is *that* you love. ROM. and JUL., I, 1, 203.  
 Who is *that* comes up the road? C. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXV, 185a.  
 Who is *that* called just now? ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 64.
- ii. What is *that* you say? SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XVIII, 184.  
 And what was *that* they said? DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, II, 62.  
 What was *that* he was talking about? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 64.  
 What was *that* you said? G. MEREDITH, Ordeal of Rich. Fev., Ch. XLII, 422.  
 What was *that* he said about being turned out of the club? MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 96.

Note. Thus also when the clause is represented in the head-sentence by an anticipatory pronoun: *it*, *this* or *that*; or *he*, *she* or *they*.

- i. \* I will now shew thee who *it* was *that* deluded thee, and who *it* was also to whom he sent thee. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog., (154).  
 To whom, then, is this wealth of England wealth? Who is *it that* it blesses? CARLYLE, Past and Pres., Ch. V, 5.  
 Who is *it that* gives those three shrieks? THACK., Virg., Ch. XLIV, 463.  
 \*\* Who is *that that* has just come in? TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLV, 403.  
 \*\*\* Are *they* gods *that* attend here, or men? TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XX, 192.  
 Who was *she that* he danced with? HARDY, Return of the Native, II, Ch. V, 159.
- ii. \* What is *it that* displeases you? SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XXI, 220.  
 What is *it that* has put the poor devil under a cloud? THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 258.  
 What is *it that* you ask? TEN., En. Ard., 424.  
 \*\* What is *this* | *That* rises like the issue of a king? Macb., IV, 1, 87.  
 What was *this which* had fallen upon her? EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXVI, 212.

Note. Also in such a sentence as *All is but lip-wisdom that lacks experience* (Sir PHILIP SIDNEY) the clause introduced by *that* may be understood as a substantive clause modified by *all*, the alternative interpretation being to consider *all* as the head-word of the adnominal clause *that lacks experience*.

Similarly in: And be all traitors *that* do so (sc. swear and lie)? Macb., IV, 2, 48. (Compare with this: And must they all be hanged *that* swear and lie? [lb., IV, 2, 51], where *that* may be considered as an ordinary relative having *they* for its antecedent, but also as a condensed relative, *they* being a kind of anticipating subject.)

26. Obs. I. When in the construction under *b*) the interrogative *what* is replaced by the demonstrative *that*, the substantive clause is introduced by *what*.

That's *what* vexes me. SHER., School for Scand., IV, 3, (409).  
 You may take my word, miss, that that's *what's* the matter with him. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XII, 106.

Of the corresponding change of the interrogative *who* into a personal pronoun and of the condensed *that* into *who* which would result into such a construction as \**He is who vexes me* instead of *He is it* (or *It is he*) *who vexes me*, no instances have been found.

- II. When in sentences similarly constructed as the above mentioned under *a*) and *b*), but opening differently, *that* has strong stress,



it is best considered as a determinative demonstrative. Thus in the following quotations, in which, on a superficial view, it seems to have the value of *what*. In them *that* has approximately the meaning of a *certain thing* as discussed in Ch. XXXVI, 14, Obs. II, and the relative is suppressed in accordance with the practice described in 27—31. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.355.

I'll take that burthen from your back, | Or lay on *that* shall make your shoulders crack. *King John*, II, I, 146.

Here's *that* shall make you dance. *Rom. and Jul.*, III, 1, 50.

Do not presume too much upon my life: | I may do *that* I shall be sorry for. *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 3, 65.

Her passion will die like a lamp, for want of *that* the flame should feed upon. *SCOTT, Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVIII, 187.

I see *that* in Dirk Brower's eye makes me tremble. *CH. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XII, 64.

- III. When *that* has weak stress or rhythmical medium-stress, its nature is sometimes doubtful. Thus it may be considered either as a determinative demonstrative or a condensed relative in:

I am possess'd of *that* is mine. *Tit. Andr.*, I, 1, 408.

All the conspirators save only he, | Did *that* they did in envy of great Cæsar. *Jul. Cæsar*, V, 5, 70.

Now follows, *that* you know, young Fortinbras, | Holding a weak supposal of our worth | . . . He hath not fail'd to pester us with message. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 17. So call it, | Since not the exterior nor the inward man | Resembles *that* it was. *Ib.*, II, 2, 7.

'T is strange, my Theseus, *that* these lovers speak of. *Mids.*, V, 1, 1.

Stop *that* you're reading. *EVA ANSTRUTHER, A Spinster Unemployed (Westm. Gaz., No. 5273, 9a).*

Also in the three following quotations the grammatical nature of *that* seems to be of an equally uncertain nature. WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.* I, 219), from whom they are borrowed, considers the pronoun as a stressed determinative.

A man passes for *that* he is worth. *EMERSON.*

Every man is not so much a workman in the world, as he is a suggestion of *that* he should be. *Id.*

What am I? What has my will done to make me *that* I am? *Id.*

- IV. In SHAKESPEARE *that* is also used as the equivalent of *he who* where this is not possible in Present Standard English. *FRANZ, Shak., Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 313.

Be that thou know'st thou art, and then thou art | As great as *that* thou fear'st. *Twelfth Night*, V, 1, 153.

The ancient practice survives in the saying: Handsome is *that* handsome does.

- V. In such a sentence as *It is a long lane that has no turning* the pronoun *that* does not introduce a substantive but an adnominal clause: the sentence being equivalent to *\*It is a long lane, a lane that has no turning*. Compare 32, *b*. Thus also in:

It is a good divine *that* follows his own instructions. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 2, 15. (Erroneously quoted by A. SCHMIDT [*Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *it*] as an instance of *it* used for *he*.)

Whose house is *that* I see? *TEN., Walking on the Mail*, 9.

VI. In the following quotation *which*, though distinctly a condensed relative, seems to be used instead *who* on the same principle as that which determines the use of the interrogative *which*. See Ch. XXXVIII, 6.

*Which* spills the foremost foeman's life, | That party conquers in the strife.  
SCOTT, *Lady*, IV, vi.

#### THE RELATIVE UNDERSTOOD.

27. A peculiar and highly interesting feature of Modern English is the absence of the relative pronoun in connections where, to our linguistic instinct, it is a necessary constituent of a regularly constructed clause.

What strikes us now as an omission of the relative pronoun was originally a form of ἀπό κοινοῦ, a construction, that is, in which a word that is common to two elements of one and the same sentence or to two members of a complex sentence is mentioned only once. For a detailed discussion of ἀπό κοινοῦ in Latin see KÜHNER-STEGMANN, *Ausführliche Gram. der Lat. Sprache*<sup>2</sup>, II, § 241, 5; for instances in Middle-Dutch see STOETT, *Middelnederlandsche Spraakkunst*<sup>2</sup>, § 229.

The idiom has been traced back so far as some Middle English writers of the East Midlands, the earliest documentary instances appearing in *Genesis* and *Exodus*, probable date of manuscript ± 1300, and in ROBERT of BRUNNE's *Chronicle*, written between 1327 and 1338. From the time of CHAUCER we find it constantly spreading and developing in a great variety of forms until the Early Modern English period. Some of these forms have become unusual or obsolete, so that in Present English the construction is practically confined to certain well-defined cases. For a detailed discussion of the varied forms in Early Modern English see LOHMAN in *Anglia*, III. For a discussion of the probable origin of the idiom see especially EINENKEL in *Anglia* XIII, XIV and XXIX. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Growth and Structure*<sup>2</sup>, 80, a; WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, II, 167; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 244 ff; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 348.

No indubitable instances have been found in Pre-Conquest English and EINENKEL (*Anglia*, XIII, XIV, XXIX) is probably right in surmising that the idiom in some of its forms is due to imitation of a Norman Old-French practice, which subsequently came to an independent and constantly spreading development.

The omission of the relative imparts a mark of colloquialism to the style and is, therefore, eschewed in literature which claims to be free from colloquialisms. Thus we rarely find it in the leading articles of newspapers, Parliamentary reports and similar literary productions. This does not, of course, apply to poetry, in which the freedom in the use of the relative affords a convenient expedient to meet the demands of metre and rhythm.

Finally it should be observed that anything like a detailed discussion of the delicate conditions of diction, rhythm, connections, etc., on

which the omission of the relative may depend, cannot be attempted within the scope of the few pages that can here be devoted to the subject.

The clauses in which omission of the relative may be met with are either adnominal or substantival.

28. The adnominal clauses in which the relative is dispensed with are especially such as are restrictive. Omission is frequent:

a) when the relative is the non-prepositional object.

- i. The woman *a man loves* is the ideal in himself. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Introduction.

To find fault, therefore, with the woman *one loves* is to blame oneself. Ib. Gretchen is loving, yes, and superstitious; credulous and easily moved by *those she likes*. Ib., Ch. IV, 62.

- ii. The only uneasiness *I felt* was for my family. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (245).

Dear is the helpless creature *we defend* | *Against the world*; and dear the schoolboy spot | *We ne'er forget*, though there we are forgot. BYRON, *Don Juan*, l. CXXVI.

May you be happy in the life *you have chosen*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 55.

Colonel Heavytop took off three battles of *that* (sc. Madeira) *you sent me down*, under his belt the other day. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. III, 130.

b) when the relative belongs to a preposition in back-position.

The connections in which a preposition is apt to be shifted to the end of the sentence or clause have already been mentioned in Ch. VII, 83. So far as this shifting in connection with relatives is concerned, the following observations may be made:

1) Transposition is frequent:

- a) when the preposition forms part of a prepositional object,
- β) when the preposition forms part of an adverbial adjunct and is closely connected with the verb, which is often the case when it denotes a relation of place (or direction),
- γ) when the preposition forms part of an adverbial adjunct denoting a relation of instrumentality or purpose,
- δ) when the preposition forms part of an adverbial adjunct used predicatively, chiefly when it denotes a relation of place or direction.

- 2) Only in very colloquial language is post-position of the preposition at all usual when it forms part of an adnominal adjunct. They (sc. the letters) were very long and full of all sorts of nonsense, and Latin and things I couldn't understand the half of. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 128.

3) Shifting of the preposition is unusual or impossible:

- a) when it belongs to a prepositional object that has the value of an indirect or person object. Ch. III, 27—34. Thus such constructions as *\*the man (whom or that) I had written the letter to*; *\*the man (whom or that) I had withheld the truth from*, *\*the man (whom or that) I bestowed this book on*, etc. are unEnglish and almost non-existent. Compare, however, 4, a).
- β) when it belongs to an adverbial adjunct denoting a relation of attendant circumstances or time. Thus SWEET (N. E. Gr.

§ 2126) observes that *\*Observe the dignity he rises with!* (instead of *Observe the dignity with which he rises!*) would be 'unintelligible'. The same may be said of *\*the moment (that) he came at* (instead of *the moment at which he came*).

4) Conversely in some constructions transposition of the relative seems to be obligatory. This is the case:

a) when the relative belongs to a clause that is incorporated into the adnominal clause. Thus the preposition could not be shifted before the relative in:

i. This is really a fact *that I doubt if you are aware of*. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. IV, 65.

ii. Faith, ma'am, one is a young gentleman *whom I should be very sorry anything was to happen to*. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

Space must be saved . . . by the severest economy of expression . . . *that readers can be expected to put up with*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

Thus even: He was a man *that it was easy to tell a thing like that to*. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*

β) when it belongs to an adverbial adjunct used as nominal part of predicate, and the preposition has strong stress. Thus in:

She had so many merits *they were without*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. III, 65.

But even when in such a construction the preposition in its normal position would have weak stress, it can hardly be removed to the front of the clause, because this arrangement would impart to the meaningless copula *to be* the prominence and consequent stress of back-position.

Nobody thinking of him in the bustle *which the house was in*. THACK., *Henry Esq.*, I, Ch. I, 9.

The ship *King George was aboard* during his visit to the fleet. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3812, 713.

Note. This objection against placing the copula *to be* in prominent back-position may also be responsible for the occasional tautological repetition of the preposition, as in: To save her from the perilous position, *in which she was in*. RICH. BAGOT, *The just and the Unjust*, II, Ch. II, 43.

5) According to SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2126) the construction with front-position *that* and transposed preposition is sometimes applied as an expedient to avoid the stiff construction with front-position preposition + *which* on the one hand and the purely colloquial construction with the relative omitted and the preposition in back-position on the other. But as some of the following quotations show, also *who* and *which* are not unfrequently found in relative clauses with the preposition in back-position.

6) In the following quotations the instances of unusual shifting of the preposition have been marked with a dagger (†).

#### The relative suppressed with the preposition in back-position.

1) as part of a prepositional object, a) of verbs or equivalent expressions: She knew no man *she would sooner fix upon*. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III, (253).



But perhaps you would be very glad . . . if suddenly one of those good fairies *you read of* could change the domino-box into a beautiful geranium. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 19.

My gardener's little boy, who is just six years old, can write a more intelligible letter than the scrawl *you favour me with*. PUNCH., No. 3687, 183b.

$\beta$ ) of nominals or equivalent expressions: He had been allowed to see the drawing *she was now busy on*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. VII, 143.

† It ain't an agreeable job, pitchin' into a fellow *you've been on good terms with*. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, II, (106).

- 2) as part of an adverbial adjunct of verbs,  $\alpha$ ) denoting a relation of pure place or direction: They went into the parlour *my mother had come from*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I.

That's the stile *I came over*; there are the hedges *I crept behind*. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 474.

She had no more heart than the stone *you are leaning on*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 144.

Here are some fine houses *we are coming to*. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 386.

The ship *I sail in* passes here. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 214.

† *Paradises*, . . . compared with some of the places *I have been living among* in Italy. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. I, 17.

$\beta$ ) denoting a relation of instrumentality or purpose: That is the door *the thief came in by*.

The pen *he wrote with* belonged to his father.

The purpose *I have come for* is a secret to my friend.

The message *I have come on* is of the greatest importance.

$\gamma$ ) denoting a relation of attendant circumstances: † The dull, sullen oppression *she awoke with* was the result of the storm in the night. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XX, 173.

- 3) as part of an adverbial adjunct used predicatively,  $\alpha$ ) denoting a relation of pure place or direction: If you are come to talk to me about that house *you are in*, you may keep your breath to cool your porridge. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 8.

$\beta$ ) denoting another relation than that of pure place or direction:

i. You have named the very thing *I would be at*. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3. (Practically equivalent to *I aim at*, so that the relative might be apprehended as part of a prepositional object.)

By good fortune he met a friend who told him the peril *an old merchant of Syracuse was in*. LAMB., *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 215.

Will you add another to the many deep obligations *I am under to you* by writing to me. DICK., *Uncom. Trav.*, Ch. II, 23.

He told you of the difficulty *he was in*. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. XI, 248.

ii. I must have had another visitation like that *you have seen me under*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 8.

## The relative retained with the preposition in back-position.

- 1) as part of a prepositional object,  $\alpha$ ) of verbs or equivalent expressions: † Maria, my ward, *whom I ought to have the power of a father over*, is determined to turn rebel too, and absolutely refuses the man whom I have long resolved on for her husband. Id., *School for Scand.*, I, 2, (374).

China pigs have been esteemed a luxury all over the East from the remotest period *that we read of*. CH. LAMB., Es. of Elia, (225).

She fell into a fit of unusual duration *which she only came out of* to go into another. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XI, 93.

We saw the Scotch play *which everybody is talking about* t'other night. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXI, 631.

I will write one paper about . . . something *that nobody else has ever written or talked about before*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VII, 99.

He has some new claret, too, *that he goes into ecstasies over*. JOHN HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 8.

That, of course, is a sin *that Education sets its face against*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5442, 4a.

β) of nominals or equivalent expressions: This (sc. geranium) is finer than that *which your mamma was so fond of*. LYTTON, Caxtons, I, Ch. IV, 20.

In the rapid dispatch of actual business, our composition cannot always embody even the merits *that we are masters of*. BAIN, Comp., Pref., 7.

- 2) as part of an adverbial adjunct of verbs, α) denoting a relation of pure place or direction: It was the rampart of God's house | *That she was standing on*. D. G. ROSETTI, The Blessed Damozel, V. Whereabouts is our tree *that we sat in* when I was young and you were old? EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. X, 91.

β) denoting another relation than that of pure place or direction: † Am I the man *that you privately left your whip with*, before you rode away from the Maypole? DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXIII, 90a.

† She had that same dignity of movement from the hips *which the Niké of Samothrace seems to be advancing with*, as you come up the steps of the Louvre. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. X, 91.

- 3) as part of an adverbial adjunct used predicatively: There is the saucepan *that the gruel was in*. DICK., Christm. Car., V, 113. Nobody thinking of him in the bustle *which the house was in*. THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. I, 9.

## The relative retained with the preposition in front-position.

- i) as part of a prepositional object, α) of verbs or equivalent expressions, i. transposition at variance with idiom: He repeatedly gave private directions to his officers to pillage and demolish the houses of persons *against whom he had a grudge*. MAC., Fred., (682a). You may pass the criminal, meditating crimes *at which you will to-morrow shudder with horror* as you read them. MRS GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. VI, 58. They appointed lecturers from their own ranks in place of those to *whom they took objection*. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 691. There is no man *for whom I have sincerer respect*. PINERO, Iris, I, (45).
- ii. transposition possible: He was dressed with a thought more care and research than is usual with an Englishman of the type to *which he evidently belonged*. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Mary Pechell, Ch. I. He bitterly regretted that the little estate *on which he had set his heart* had slipped out of his hands. Ib. He opened his huge bag and pushed into it the papers and plan *at which he had been looking*. Ib.

β) of nominals or equivalent expressions, i. transposition at variance with idiom: Gumbo bragged... of the immense wealth *to which he* (sc. his young master) *was heir*. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 7. (Compare however: And by a sleep to say we end | The heart-ache, and the thousand natural shocks | *That flesh is heir to*. HAMLET, III, 1, 63.)

In real life Marcella would probably before long have been found trying to kick his shins — a mode of warfare *of which in her demon moods she was past mistress*. MRS. WARD, Marc., I, Ch. I, 11.

He attacked them with all the startling bitterness and invective *of which he is so capable*. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 684.

There are only a few in the world *to whom snuff is important*; and those are the few from whom it is to be taken away. IL Lond. News, No. 3789, 907b.

ii. transposition possible: She had ... to check herself in singing merry ditties, that she felt little accorded with the sewing *on which she was engaged*. MRS. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. VI, 67.

2) as part of an adverbial adjunct of verbs, a) denoting a relation of pure place or direction, i. transposition at variance with idiom: He knew ... the whole neighbourhood *to which I was removing*. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III, (247).

In this I satisfied him fully, not only mentioning my name and late misfortune, but the place *to which I was going to remove*. Ib., Ch. III, (249). The leaving a neighbourhood *in which we had enjoyed so many hours of tranquillity*, was not without a tear which scarce fortitude itself could suppress. Ib., Ch. III, (247).

ii. transposition possible: He was lodged in the same apartments *in which Saxe had lived*. MAC., Fred., (679b).

There is a picture of the home *in which Mr. Russell was brought up*, which, I fancy, is scarcely like most of the homes to-day in the same circles. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 489, 353b.

β) denoting another relation than that of pure place or direction, i. transposition practically impossible:

The day soon arrived *on which we were to disperse for the first time*. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III, (246).

Let us then, without repining, give up those splendours *with which numbers are wretched*, and seek in humbler circumstances that peace *with which all may be happy*. Ib., Ch. III, (246).

Hugh ... crept out of the door ... with an air so different from that *with which he had entered* that his patron ... smiled more than ever. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXIII, 92b.

He was ... accompanied by his faithful friend and secretary, Mr. William Minns: *without whom he never travelled*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIV, 139. The attention *with which he had been welcomed* surpassed description. MAC., Fred., (679b).

He gave her a full account ... of the state *in which he was living*. HARDY, Return of the Native, IV, Ch. IV, 337.

ii. transposition possible: If we are content to estimate the worth of a language by its efficiency in fulfilling the purposes *for which language exists*, we cannot reasonably deny that English has been immeasurably improved by its incorporation of alien elements. H. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. III, 110.

c) when the relative is the nominal part of the predicate.

I am glad you are not the dull, insensible varlet *you pretended to be*. SHER., Riv., IV, 2, (262).

I release you. With a full heart, for the love of him *you once were*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 51.

I am not the man *I was*. I will not be the man *I must have been* but for this intercourse. *Ib.*, IV, 103.

The fellow might after all be everything *he pretended to be*. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's.

Lady Susan Baliol had been the kind of aunt *most women in her position would have been* to so dutiful and satisfactory a nephew. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Mary Pechell, Ch. I

- d) When the relative is the subject of a clause in which weak *there* is placed before the verb *to be*. In such a clause *there*, to the ear, takes upon itself the function of the subject.

It might be a claw for the flesh *there was upon it*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 84.

A recently published book . . . tells us all *there is known about the bird*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5418, 13a.

29. The adnominal clauses in which the omission of the relative does not depend on the nature of the clause are such as stand after *there* (or *here*) *is* (or *was*) + (pro)noun. Thus in *There was a man (your grandfather, John Smith, etc.) once told me the following story*. It will be observed:

- a) that the absent relative would be the subject of the clause,  
 b) that the purely introductory *there* (or *here*) *is* (or *was*) can be struck out without any essential detriment to the meaning of the sentence.
- There's such divinity *doth hedge a king*, | That treason can but peep to what it would. HAMLET, IV, 5, 123.
- There's a willow *grows aslant a brook*. | That shows his hoar leaves in the glassy stream. *Ib.*, IV, 7, 167.
- Here are three or four of us *pass our time agreeably enough*. SHER., School for Scand., III, 2, (395).
- There is little more *can happen* to make me either glad or sorry in this world. SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XXXI, 292.
- 'Tis sweet to know there is an eye *will mark* | *Our coming*, and look brighter when we come. BYRON, Don Juan, I, CXXIII.
- There's no sweeter tobacco *comes from Virginia*. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 4.
- There is one of the greatest men in the kingdom *wants some* (sc. of this Madeira). *Id.*, Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 130.
- There is that jack-ass Fred Bullock *is going to marry Maria*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XX, 213.
- At last there was a terrible sad thing *happened*. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. VI.
- There's somewhat in this world amiss | *Shall be unriddled by and by*. | There's somewhat *flows to us in life*, | But more is taken quite away. TEN., Miller's Daught., III.
- There is nothing *gives glory and grandeur and romance and mystery to a place* like the impending presence of a high mountain. O. W. HOLMES, Elsie Venner, Ch. IV.
- There is nothing *makes a man look so supremely ridiculous* as losing his hat. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VII, 112.
- There is nothing *irritates me more* than seeing other people doing nothing when I am working. *Id.*, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. IV, 42.
- There's uncle Jack *says* I shall never be a man if I don't hunt. PUNCH, 1993, 287.



30. The substantive clauses in which the relative is often dispensed with are:

- a) such as stand after *it is* (or *was*) + (pro)noun, as in *It was your brother told me this* or *It is your brother I want*; or such as stand after *is* (or *was*) *it* + (pro)noun, as in *Was it your brother told you this?* or *Is it my brother you want?*

It will be observed:

- 1) that the absent relative would be either the subject or the object of the clause,
- 2) that, in like manner as in the sentences mentioned in 29, the purely introductory *it is* (or *was*) or *is it* (or *was*) can be struck out without any essential detriment to the meaning of the sentence. In a negative sentence like *It is not the fine coat makes the fine gentleman* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2124) the suppression of *It is* would not, indeed, leave an idiomatic construction, but we feel that the omission of the relative is perfectly justifiable owing to its being usual in the corresponding affirmative statement.

And now I do bethink me, it was she | *First told me* thou wast mad. Twelfth Night, V, 1, 356.

'T was you incensed the rabble. Coriol., IV, 2, 33.

When 'tis a point of honour *founds the quarrel*, the laws of swordsmen must be kept. VANBRUGH, False Friend, V, 1, 411.<sup>1)</sup>

'T is distance *lends enchantment to the view*. CAMPBELL, Pleasures of Hope, I, 7.

It's Mr. Arthur *has been telling*, hang him. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXV, 280.

It was Arbin *began*. Id., Denis Duval, Ch. VII, 269.

In part | It was ill counsel *had misled the girl* | To vex true hearts. TEN., Princ., VII, 227.

It was a serpent *tempted Eve to sin*. LONGFELLOW, Span. Stud., I, 3, (61).

Who is to say that it was not that new fellow *did it after all*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. V, 68.

It was that *decided her*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. VI, 179.

Note. Also when the anticipating subject in the head-sentence is *they* or a sex-indicating personal pronoun, the condensed relative may be understood.

They were royal troops *the French sent against you*. THACK., Virg., Ch. VI, 65.

- b) such as stand after *who* (or *what*) *is* (or *was*) *it* (*this* or *that*), as in *Who was it told you the news?* *Who was it he wanted to strike?* *What is this has happened?* *What is it he wants?*

From the above illustration it appears:

- 1) that the absent relative may be either the subject or the object of the clause,
- 2) that the word-group *is* (or *was*) *it* (*this* or *that*) may be dropped without any material detriment to the meaning of the sentence.

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

i. Who was't *came by*? Macb., IV, 1, 140.

If he knew who it was *wanted to see him*, perhaps he would not send such a message. SHER., School for Scand., III, 2, (395).

What's that *goes round the house, and round the house, and never touches the house*? GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, V, (224).

Who was it *told you* that I desired any repayment at your hand for doing the duty of an honest man? SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXII, 291.

Who is this *opens the door*? THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXV, 796.

What is this *has happened to Mr. Warrington*? Ib., XLVI, 477.

Who was it *set me on*? DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXIII, 91b.

What is it *takes you from me*? G. MEREDITH, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. XLIV, 450.

What is it *has gone so desperately wrong with her training of the child*? Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 174.

ii. What is this *I hear of lady Yarmouth* taking you into favour? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXVII, 385.

What is it *he wants*? Id., Pend., II, Ch. VI, 67.

31. The above are the principal connections in which the relative is often understood in Late Modern English. To these we may add some others in which the omission strikes us now as more or less unusual, although instances would seem to be frequent enough in Early Modern English. Classification seems to be difficult and can hardly fail to be arbitrary. The following seemed to be the most plausible at the time of writing:

## a) The clause is restrictive, the absent relative would be the subject.

There will come a Christian by, | *Will be worth a Jewess' eye*. Merch. of Ven., II, 5, 42.

This is the gentleman I told your lordship | *Had come along with me*. Two Gentlemen, II, 4, 87.

That's a wheel *will turn twenty others*. VANBRUGH, Confederacy, I, 3, 419. 1)

To have him 'peached is the only thing *could ever make me forgive her*. Gav, Beggar's Opera, I.

Show me the fair *would scorn to spy*. | And prize such conquest of her eye. SCOTT, Lady, II, v, 15.

I will be the man, cousin, . . . *will course the fox for you*. Id., Bride of Lam., Ch. XXIV, 244.

No stir of air was there, | Not so much life as on a summer's day | *Robs not one light seed from the feather'd grass*. KEATS, Hyperion, I, 9.

You beat that great Maryland man *was twice your size*. THACK., Virg., Ch. VIII, 80.

Mighty Seaman, this is he | *Was great by land* as thou by sea. TEN., Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wel., 83.

b) The clause, which may be either restrictive or continuative, depends on a head-sentence which bears some resemblance to those mentioned in 29. It will also be found that, when the words preceding the antecedent are struck out, the remainder is a complete sentence. The absent relative would be the subject.

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

There lies | Two Kinsmen *dig'd their graves with weeping eyes*. RICH. II, III, 3, 169.

Only they have a natural inclination *sways them generally to the worst*, when they are left to themselves. BEN. JONSON, *Sil. Woman*, IV, 2, 230.<sup>1)</sup>

I have a fund of love, I hope, *may last a little longer*. VANBRUGH, *Id., False Friend*, II, 1, 401.<sup>1)</sup>

I know nobody *sings so near a cherubim as your ladyship*. *Ib.*, II, 2, 344.<sup>1)</sup>

He has an uncle *will leave him some thousands*. STEELE, *Spectator*.<sup>1)</sup>

I have a thought *shall soon set all matters again to rights*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, I.

I could tell you some stories of him *would make you laugh heartily* if he were not your husband. SHER., *School for Scand.*, II, 2, (383).

You know you have a song *will excuse you*. *Ib.*, III, 2.

He knew something *would bring you down*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXX, 337. (The context shows that this sentence must not be interpreted: *He knew that something etc.*)

I knew an Irish lady *was married at fourteen*. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVIII, 226.

I have discovered something | *Concerns you nearly*. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, III, 2, 2583.

Note. It may be owing to the analogy of such sentences as *Was ever man so crossed as I am* (Ch. XXXI, 66) that the relative is omitted in:

*Was never subject long'd to be a king* | As I do long and wish to be a subject. HENRY VI, B, IV, 9, 5.

Q. ELIZ. *Was never widow had so dear a loss!* — CHIL. *Were never orphans had so dear a loss!* — DUCH. *Was never mother had so dear a loss!* RICH. III, II, 2, 77—79.

### 32. In some constructions it seems to be more than a mere relative that is understood.

- a) Sometimes the copula *to be* seems to be suppressed together with the relative pronoun. The remainder then is a kind of undeveloped clause.

There's nothing in that girl *more than woman*. FARQUHAR, *Recruit*, *Offic.*, I, 1, (259).

Happy the man whose wish and care | A few paternal acres bound, | *Content to breathe his native air* |, *In his own ground*. POPE, *A Wish*, I.

There's one of them *a stranger*, I can tell you. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3, (398).

Is there in human form, that bears a heart, | A wretch! a villain! *lost to love and truth!* | That can, with studied, sly, ensnaring art, | Betray sweet Jenny's unsuspecting youth? BURNS, *Cotter's Sat. Night*, X.

He had a little surgery *attended by a genteel young man*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

There's somebody *come*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 80.

- b) The antecedent, identical with a noun in the head-sentence and, therefore, readily supplied, seems to be understood together with the relative in:

It's an ill wind *blows nobody good*. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 3, (276). (= It's an all wind, (to wit) a wind that blows nobody good. For further instances see 26, Obs V.)

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

- c) Sometimes it appears that both the relative and the preposition are dispensed with. As the absent conjunctive adverbial expression varies with a conjunctive adverb, often one whose first element is *where*, or with the conjunction *that*, we may, of course, also assume the omission of either of these two last. Thus *the day he came to see me* may be understood as a shortened form for *the day on which he came to see me*, *the day whereon he came to see me* or *the day that he came to see me*. See 4, c, Note; Ch. XVI, 7 and 13, and compare MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 590; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 284 and WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., II, 168.

You are going my boy . . . to London on foot, in the manner *Hooker*, *your great ancestor, travelled there before you*. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. III, (247). My acquaintance with Mr Mac Donald dates from the time *I had just left college*. Rev. of Rev., No. 190, 359b.

- d) The preposition *of* together with the condensed *what* may be assumed to be understood in such a sentence as *I never understand a word she says* (Punch), which seems to stand for *I never understand a word of what (or that which) she says*.

One can't believe a word *his lordship says*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLIV, 461. (Compare: She sat . . . listening to Pen reading out to her o' nights, without comprehending one word *of what he read*. Id., Pend., I, Ch. III, 35.) Do not believe a word *she says*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXIX, 383. Half *they hear at public meetings* is false. Westm. Gaz., No. 5083, 16c. (Compare: There was never believing half *of what that Bob said*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 18. I understood but half *of what he said*. WALT. BES., Dor. Forst., Ch. VI, 53.)

33. This seems to be a suitable place of calling attention to the rather frequent omission of the objective of a personal pronoun in an adverbial clause which is incorporated into, or added to an adnominal clause.

For Pyramus therein (sc. in the play) doth kill himself. | Which, *when I saw rehearsed*, I must confess, | Made mine eyes water. MIDS., V, 1, 68.

She extended her hand to him, which, *when he had reverently kissed*, she said to him [etc.]. SCOTT, Quentin Durw., Ch. XXIII, 296.

Had I framed my story on this model, I should have done no more than have attempted to restore the lost drama of Æschylus; an ambition, which, *if my preference to this mode of treating the subject had incited me to cherish*, the recollection of the high comparison such an attempt would challenge might well abate. SHELLEY, Pref. to Prom. Unbound.

What fools we are! We cry for a plaything, which, like children, we are never satisfied with *till we break open*. BYRON (ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, BYRON, Ch. IV, 64).

And when she (sc. the novice) drew | No answer, by and by (she) began to hum | An air the nuns had taught her; 'Late, so late!' | Which, *when she heard*, the Queen looked up, and said [etc.]. TEN., Guin., 162.

He at times indulged in wiles which modern statesmanship, *even while it practises*, condemns. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 902b.

Ireland should not be plunged in an absurd religious warfare, which, *if Christianity does nothing to prevent*, it is the paramount duty of Ministers to keep out of the red pages of history. Eng. Rev., No. 68, 558.



I have known an ingenuous athlete express himself with a neatness and clarity I could envy *without reaching*. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. IV, 44.

- ii. Sir, there is a villain at that Maypole, . . . that, *unless you get rid of, and have kinapped and carried off at the very least*, . . . will marry your son to that young woman. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXIV, 94*b*.

With the above quotations compare the following, in which the objective of the personal pronoun is retained in accordance with ordinary practice: In short, he liked the girl the better for the want of that chastity which, *if she had possessed it*, must have been a bar to his pleasures. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. V, 71*a*.

The 'Humours of the Court' is founded on two Spanish comedies, which, *when I read them*, appeared to me to be variations of the same story. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*.

#### POSITION.

34. Relatives being in the first place words that serve as connecting links between sentences and clauses, it is only natural that they should normally have front-position. (Ch. VIII, 4.) This principle applies with absolute strictness to *that*. This pronoun is, accordingly, impossible in clauses in which the connections necessitate a relative to be preceded by a preposition, by *all* or *both* (35), or by a verbal (37 and 38). The following observations, therefore, apply exclusively to *who* and *which*.

35. a) Relatives are mostly kept in front-position when modified by *all* or *both*. Compare Ch. VIII, § 100, *c* and *d*; Ch. XL, 8, *b* and 30, *b*. For an alternative construction see below under 36, *b*.

- i. There had ridden along, with this old Princess's cavalcade, two gentlemen, *who both* were greeted with a great deal of cordiality. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. XII, 116.

The Prince had forebodings about this event, *which all* unhappily were realised. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5382, 2*c*.

- ii. I have not displeased the ladies, nor offended the clergy; *both which* are now pleased to say, that a comedy may be diverting without smut and profaneness. FARQUHAR, *Pref. to The Constant Couple*.

- b) *All* and *both* regularly take precedence of the relative after a preposition. For an alternative construction see below under 36.

This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; *in both which* I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance. Bible, Peter, B, III, 1. Bets were also laid as to the lady's answer, as to the terms of the settlement, and as to the period of the marriage — *of all which* poor Miss Dunstable of course knew nothing. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 81. I had two Latin Grammars, a book of French Exercises, a pocket-knife, Telemachus with the verbs in italics, and a new pair of boots; *with all which* I offered to endow her upon our marriage. MISS BRADDON, *Captain Thomas* (STOF., *Eng. Leesb. voor Aanvangskl.* II, 60).

- c) When a conjoint relative occurs together with either *all* or *both* modifying the same noun, it regularly stands after the

latter. This construction is, however, comparatively unusual, that in which absolute *all* or *both* are followed by partitive *of* + conjoint relative, being mostly used instead. Compare 36.

- i. *All which masterpieces* poor Mrs. Pendennis kept along with his first socks. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.
- ii. *Both of which letters* . . . were . . . published in the next number of the Watertoast Gazette. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXII, 186b.  
*All of which letters* Pendennis read gracefully. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 12.  
*All of which* ornaments set off this young fellow's figure to such advantage that [etc.]. *Ib.*, I, Ch. III, 41.  
 Mr. Oxford led him . . . into a very long chamber *both of whose long walls* were studded with thousands upon thousands of massive hooks. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. IX, 200.  
 The ladies on the steps are Lady Edward Cecil and Lady Bentinck *both of whose husbands* are in Mafeking and have been wounded. Graph., No. 1584, 502.

Note a) It will be observed that this partitive construction is practically unknown in Dutch, which has *alle* or *beide* by way of apposition after the noun modified by the relative. Thus the Dutch translation of the last quotation would be: De dames op de stoep zijn Lady Edward Cecil en Lady Bentinck, wier mannen beide in Mafeking zijn enz.

β) The construction with partitive *of* + conjoint relative is obligatory when another numeral takes the place of either *all* or *both*.

He gave him romantic books with large coloured pictures of knights and robbers, *in many of which latter* you might read inscriptions to George Sedley Osborne Esquire. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

36. a) The word-group *of* + *which*, i. e. the analytical equivalent of a genitive, is placed either after or before its head-word. The former position is the usual one, and obligatory when the head-word is preceded by a preposition or by the conjunction *as*. See also the second group of the quotations in 10.

- i. \* He resolved upon putting a certain question to her, *the very nature of which* made his pulse beat ninety, at least THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.  
 \*\* He said Traddles's was a character *to the steady virtues of which* he (Mr. Micawber) could lay no claim. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXVIII, 210a.  
 They went . . . to Tottenham Court Road, *at the back of which* . . . was then a place called the Green Lanes. *Id.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLIV, 170a.  
 He lost himself in the fields *in the midst of which* Middlesex Hospital stood. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 382.  
 \*\*\* Various remote quarters of London were filled with horrifying reports of encounters between the insurgents and the police or the military, in which the Chartists invariably had the better, and *as a result of which* they were marching in full force to the particular district where the momentary panic prevailed. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VIII, 89.
- ii. At least in my bed-room, to which I was obliged to go without a candle, and *of which the window* looked out on a dead wall, I could not see a wink. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 47.  
 One drives in a vehicle *of which the course* is under one's control. MURRAY, *s. v. drive*, 5, c.

b) Also a word-group consisting of *partitive of* + *relative* stands as a rule after its head-word. This arrangement appears to be obligatory when the head-word of the word-group is represented by either *all* or *both*, or is in its turn preceded by the preposition *of* as the substitute of a genitive. It should be observed that the construction with *all* or *both* here referred to is more common than that illustrated above under 35 a) and b).

- i. (This) had caused Gumbo . . . to be rather shy of the baroness's gentlemen, *the chief of whom* vowed he would break the bones, or have the life, of Gumbo, if he persisted in his attentions to Mrs. Betty. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 373.

He had five sons, *every one of whom* made himself more or less conspicuous as a practical reformer in one path or another. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch I, 14.

- . The Argentine member of the Tribunal differed from his colleagues, *two of whom* were a United States judge and a Canadian judge. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5406, 1b.

\*\* Ovid was indebted for that story to Euripides and Theocritus, *both of whom* he has sometimes followed minutely. MAC., ADDISON, (735a). She bore him in all a family of eight children, of whom two died in infancy; . . . *of all of whom* only the second daughter now survives. FORSTER, *Life of Ch. Dickens*, I, Ch. I, 2a.

- \*\*\* She did not fear a single English woman, *the powers of most of whom*, in her heart, she despised. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XII, 106.
- ii. She bore him in all a family of eight children, *of whom two* died in infancy. FORSTER, *Life of Ch. Dickens*, Ch. I, 1b.

The young fellow had had acquaintance with all sorts of queer company, — horse-jockeys, tavern-loungers, gambling and sporting men, *of whom a great number* were found in his native colony. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 158.

c) When *whose* + noun forms part of the analytical equivalent of a genitive, the relative must naturally give up its front-position.

It was no difficult matter to make him regard with horror the prospect of a union betwixt the daughter of a God-fearing, professing, and Presbyterian family of distinction, and the heir of a blood-thirsty prelatist and persecutor, *the hands of whose fathers* had been dyed to the wrists in the blood of God's saints. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXX, 290.

"And how do you intend to begin with them?" asked Mr. Supplehouse, *the business of whose life* it had been to suggest difficulties. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 28.

37. a) Objective relatives which belong to an infinitive-clause that is incorporated into a relative clause (Ch. XVI, 6, d), are placed either in front with the infinitive in back-position or before the adverbial adjuncts, or in immediate succession to the infinitive, which in this case has front-position. There is, indeed, a third arrangement in which the preposition is placed in front and the infinitive in back-position or before the adverbial adjunct(s), but this is rarely met with. See the quotation under c) on page 1008.

The choice between the different arrangements is determined by the connections of the elements of the sentence and by the relative importance of the latter, partly also by considerations of convenience, inasmuch that the alternative arrangement is, apparently, possible in not a few cases.

It may here also be observed that, when the relative has front-position and the infinitive is in the subjective relation to the finite verb of the clause, the employment of the anticipating *it* is necessary. This construction varies with another in which the relative is the subject of the same verb, the use of the anticipating *it* being, of course, unneeded. Compare also Ch. II, 12; and Ch. XVI, 6, *d*.

### **a) The relative in front-position.**

#### **1) as the non-prepositional object of the infinitive,**

- a) the infinitive in the subjective relation to the finite verb of the clause, or the relative as the subject of the same verb:** *i*. This I say advisedly, having heard from him of certain engagements which he has formed, and *which* it would be misery to all parties were he to attempt *to execute* now. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LVI, 582.

I shall only mention a few points *which* it is very easy for each one *to find out* for himself with a little careful observation. WYLD, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, 19.

Engineers have spoilt many waterfalls, but at Gatun they have presented the world with a new waterfall, *which* it is worth going far *to see*. Eng. Rev., No. 68, 513.

- ii*. It is a subject *which* will be requisite *to consider* carefully. HUXLEY, *Man's Place in Nature and other Es.*, V, 182.

The former terms (sc. voiced and voiceless) have a clear and precise meaning, *which* is quite easy *to grasp*. WYLD, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, 18.

This (sc. Lancashire *r*) . . . has a very harsh, ugly sound, *which* is difficult *to imitate*. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, 51.

There is hardly a page in this book *that* is not a delight *to read*. *Westm. Gaz.*

There are certain attitudes of mind *which* are almost impossible *to render* in English. *Ib.*, 1908, 26 Dec.

- β) the infinitive not in the subjective relation to the finite verb of the clause:** He (sc. Sir Charles Dilke) will possibly be best known to the next generation as the author of 'Greater Britain', a work *which* he travelled round the world *to write*. *Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz., No. 5525, 16c)*.

There are certain sections of the community *whom* we do well *to remember*. *Graph.*, No. 2339, 439c.

One of Mrs. Blundell's characteristics is a habit of disregarding 'les convenances' — a habit *which* I didn't go the right way *to check*. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, III, (149).

This must have the effect of isolating the fortress of Przemyśl, *which* the Russians may be content *to mask and leave to its fate*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6648, 1b.

- 2) as part of a prepositional object or adverbial adjunct:** I am very willing to acknowledge the beauties of this play, . . . *which* not to be *proud of* were the height of impudence. FARQUHAR, *Pref. to the Constant Couple*.

One is a young gentleman *whom* I should be very sorry anything was *to happen to*. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.



She walked briskly to the house with a strange feeling of relief and joy *which* she was quite unable *to account for* in any explicable way. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XIV, 122.

**b) The relative in immediate succession to the infinitive.**

- 1) as the non-prepositional object of the infinitive: Well, this was her sister, her little sister, much younger than Nell, whom she had not seen for five years, and *to bring whom* to that place on a short visit, she had been saving her poor means all that time. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXXII, 119a.

She resumed a sway over his house *to shake off which* had been the object of his life. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V.

The magnificent character of Becky Sharp (the attempt *to rival whom* by her almost exact contemporary, Valérie Marneffe, is a singular critical error) [etc.]. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. III, 155.

He gave one of those bows of his *to witness which* was a liberal education in the days when grace was an art. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. I, 12.

The upper diagram shows Paris, the goal *to attain which* the Germans have sacrificed several hundred thousand lives. Graph., No. 2337, 481.

- 2) as part of a prepositional object or adverbial adjunct: There are a thousand things, mean and trifling in themselves, which a man despises when he thinks of them in his philosophy, but *to dispense with which* puts his philosophy to so stern a proof. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 150.

**c) The preposition before the relative.**

A masterpiece *to which* Lytton lacked the lightness of touch even *to approach*. *Academy*, 1904, 8 Oct., 309.

- b) Objective relatives which belong to a gerund-clause that is incorporated into the relative clause (Ch. XVI, 6, e), mostly have front-position with the gerund placed at the end of the sentence, prepositions being, however, kept before the relative. Transposition seems to be possible only in certain constructions with temporal *in*. Occasionally, however, the connections of the sentence cause the relative to be placed after the gerund.

- 1) The relative in front-position, a) transposition impossible: Whether Mrs. Honour really deserved that suspicion, of which her mistress gave her a hint, is a matter *which* we cannot indulge our reader's curiosity by *resolving*. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. XII, 59a.

"But for charity, eh, deary?" said the old woman, bending greedily over the table to look at the money, *which* she appeared distrustful of her daughter's still *retaining* in her hand. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XXXIV, 319.

I am grievously afflicted with the head-ache, *which* I trust to change of air for *relieving*. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 364.

We may now turn to those of the life *which* he owes his fame to *recording*. J. BAILEY, *Dr. Johnson and his Circle*, 87.

Her lover's health had disquieting symptoms, *which* an eminent physician had struck her to the heart by *diagnosing* as cancer. H. WALES, *The Yoke*, 11.

There was one (sc. letter) from Cheiron, *which* he insisted upon *opening*. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXIV, 204.

Mrs. Cricklander was far too circumspect a hostess to attempt to arrange a tête-à-tête... under the eye of an important social leader like Lady Maulevrier, *whom* she had only just succeeded in *enticing* to stay in her country-house. *Ib.*, Ch. XVII, 140.

If the very bad time-keeping of certain classes of men... is indeed due to the causes described, then there is no action *which* the Government would not be supported by public opinion in *taking* to suppress those causes. *The New Statesman*, No. 104, 626*b*.

β) transposition possible: The Roundheads attacked the clock-tower, *which* my lord's father was slain in *defending*. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

The shack *that* I spent all my money in *building*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 66, 230.

- 2) The preposition before the relative: Two men were talking, and apparently one had said something illustrating his enthusiasm for his garden in the suburbs, *to which* he was looking forward to *hurrying back* by an afternoon train. E. V. LUCAS, *One Day and Another*, 19.

It is certain that some unmoral forces in American politics have received a blow *from which* they may be long in *rising*. *Westm. Gaz.*, 1908, 31 Oct. The *Novoe Vremya* published a long indictment of the Anti-Slav policy, *of which* it charges the Archduke with *being a leading protagonist*. *Times*, 1914, July 3, 530.

- 3) The relative after the gerund: When you make use of your position of favouritism here, sir,... to insult a gentleman —... — To insult one who is not fortunate in life, sir, and who never gave you the least offence, and the many reasons for not *insulting whom* you are old and wise enough to understand,... you commit a mean and base action. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. VII, 48*b*.

Dissenting chapels... had got themselves established on each side of the parish, in *pulling down which* Lady LUFTON thought that her pet parson was hardly as energetic as he might be. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 10.

9. In continuative clauses objective relatives are placed after participles, when the corresponding demonstrative would have this position.

- i. Miss Murdstone disposed of me in two words: "Wants manner!" *Having uttered which* with great distinctness, she begged the favour of being shown to her room. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24*a*.

"She's the maid-of-all work," announced Mrs. Anderson... *Hearing which*, Farmer Anderson chuckled to himself. *VICT. CROSS, Life's Shop Window*, Ch. I, 14.

- ii. The narrow streets and courts, at length, terminated in a large open space; *scattered about which* were pens for beasts and other indications of a cattle-market. *Id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XVI, 148.

A Royal Commission (has been) appointed to consider the vital question of the awful ravages caused in our society by sexual disease, *the harm done by which* in a large measure is due to the amazing conspiracy of silence. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6517, 10*a*.

39. In poetry the object or adverbial adjunct of an adnominal clause is sometimes placed before the relative pronoun, merely for the

sake of the metre or rime. This arrangement is a frequent mannerism with SCOTT.

And you, in many a danger true, | At Duncan's hest your blades *that* drew,  
To arms, and guard that orphan's head! SCOTT, *Lady*, III, xviii, 30.

And must the day, so blithe *that* rose, | And promised rapture in the close,  
Before its setting hour, divide | The bridegroom from the plighted bride? *Ib.*,  
III, xxi, 14.

## CHAPTER XL.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS.

#### ALL.

- 1) *All* is partly an indefinite pronoun or numeral, partly an adverb. For a detailed discussion of the varied grammatical functions of *all* see Ch. V, 16 and Ch. VIII, 100.

- 2) *All* is chiefly pronominal in nature when it has approximately the same meaning as *everything*, *the whole thing*, Dutch *alles*. For a comparison of *all* and *everything* see 54.

*All's well that ends well.* SHAKESPEARE.

*All that glisters is not gold.* Id., *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 7, 65.

I insist upon your telling *all* that is to be told about the man from Jamaica. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 16.

Compare: For instance, there may be a large number of chrysanthemums to be staked, and in such a case the student who is the first to finish her regular duties begins to do them. Then, one by one, the others join her, and together they work till *the whole thing* is completed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6630, 6*b*.

3. Obs. I. In such a sentence as *All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy*, the pronominal *all* stands partly as the head-word of a kind of apposition of the third kind (Ch. IV, 3, *c*), the second word of the word-group *all work* denoting the particulars of what is expressed by the first; partly as an adverbial adjunct. When such a word-group is not the subject but the nominal part of the predicate, as in *He was all kindness*, the pronominal *all* may also be regarded as a modifier of the subject, although also in this case the semi-adverbial nature of the word is retained. The adverbial notion of *all* in sentences like the above is shown by the fact that it is approximately equivalent to *only*, Dutch *alleen* or *een en al*. Compare also Obs. VI; 11, Obs. III and MURRAY, s. v. *all*, C, 1.

- i. *All play* and no work gives Jack a ragged shirt. *Times*, 1898, 536*a*.  
ii. I was *all ear*. MILTON, *Comus*, 560.

She was *all gentleness, all gaiety*. SAM. ROGERS, *Ginevra* (*Rainbow*, II, 75).

Honest Dick was *all flames and raptures* for a young lady, a West India fortune, whom he married. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, IV, Ch. XI, 242.



Also when the word-group has another grammatical function, *all* may convey this secondary adverbial notion.

In the midst of the general grief and the corpse still lying above, he had leisure to conclude that he would have it *all holidays* for the future. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 31.

Then down the long street having slowly stolen, | His heart foreshadowing *all* calamity, | His eyes upon the stones, he reach'd the home | Where Annie lived and loved him. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 679.

II. Sometimes *all* approximates in meaning to *the only thing*.

I should like to give him something, that's *all*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 40. "Is that *all*?" repeated my aunt. "Why, yes, that's *all*." *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXXV, 255a.

They led the way, indeed, but that was *all*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 66. (= Dutch *daar bleef het dan ook bij*.)

This was *all* he had in return for his passion and flames. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 98.

Thus also in: It was *all* that we could do to refrain from laughing. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 119. (= We could hardly refrain from laughing.)

III. The pronoun *all* may be followed by partitive *of*, a construction which is hardly possible with the Dutch *alles*. See also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*, and compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 139.

i. There (sc. within his solitary hall) were the painted forms of other times, | 'T was *all* they left *of virtues* or *of crimes*, | save vague tradition. BYRON, *Lara*, I, XI. But the Elizabeth whom they saw was far from being *all of Elizabeth*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

Do you think it was merciful... to take from me *all* I should ever have *of comfort*? ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 48.

ii. How *all of this* would have been changed, had she known of that little bill! TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IX, 90.

IV. Like the Dutch *alles*, *all* may be used as a singular pronoun to denote persons; apparently only when followed by an adnominal clause.

The sloping galleries were crowded with *all* that was noble, great, wealthy and beautiful in the northern and midland parts of England. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. VIII, 79.

V. The pronominal *all* forms some interesting combinations with certain prepositions:

**above all** (= above (before) all things; see 8, *a*, Note  $\delta$ , 2): This *above all*: to thine own self be true. | And it must follow, as the night the day, | Thou canst not then be false to any man. *Ham.*, I, 4, 78. (= Dutch *bovenal, vooral, voor alle dingen*.)

But as for Bishop Heber, and Mrs. Hemans *above all*, this lady used to melt right away. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 35.

*Above all*, he had been long an exile. MAC., *Hist.*

**after all** (See Ch. XI, 9): i. *After all*, was it necessary that he should obey Lady Lufton in all things? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 30. (= Dutch *alles wel beschouwd*.)

ii. Come, you are in time, *after all*. *Id.*, Ch. VII, 67. (= Dutch *toch*.)

iii. I began to imagine that the fellow might *after all* be everything he pretended to be. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. (= Dutch *ten slotte*.) Compare: Her amazing success *in the end* sprang mainly from this wise limitation of her aims. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371. (= Dutch *ten slotte*.)

**at all.** Only in sentences or clauses which are negative, interrogative or conditional, or which are negative or conditional in import. Besides modifying a sentence or clause as a whole, it attaches to a word or word-group in particular. This word or word-group may be a verb, an adjective, adverb or equivalent expression, or a noun. At the same time it often emphasizes the peculiar notion expressed by *any* or the negative notion of a negative word.

- 1) *At all* in sentences or clauses that are negative or negative in import, *a)* attaching to a verb, *i.* The Welsh dictionaries are very untrustworthy, and contain many words that never *existed at all*. HENRY BRADLEY, Eng. Place-Names (A. C. BRADLEY, Es. and Stud., 12). (*never... at all* = Dutch *heelemaal nooit*.)
- ii.* Long before the Chartists *had got together* on Kennington Common *at all*. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. VIII, 89. (= Dutch *zelfs maar*.) He 'went up' to Cambridge in the October of 1805, feeling miserable. *To go there at all* had been a great disappointment. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, I, Ch. VI, 87.
- β)* attaching to an adjective, adverb or equivalent expression, *i.* There is no duty which any woman owes to any other human being, *at all equal* to that which she owes to her husband. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 50. (= Dutch *ook maar eenigermate*.)  
I have not been *at all happy* since you left my den this morning. *Ib.* (*not... at all happy* = Dutch *allerminst gelukkig*. Compare *I have not at all been happy* = Dutch *Ik ben in het geheel niet gelukkig geweest*, in which *at all* modifies *not*, and the whole phrase *not at all* modifies *happy*.)
- ii.* H'd already certainly had quite as much as was *at all good* for him. Eng. Il. Mag., 1886, Feb., 326*b*. (= Dutch *ook maar eenigszins*.)
- γ)* attaching to a noun, *i.* He has *no ambition at all*. WEBST., Dict. (= Dutch *hoegenaamd*.)
- ii.* They were half moved with the consolation of getting *any hundreds at all* without working for them. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 247. (*the consolation of getting any hundreds at all* = Dutch *de troost dat zij nog een paar honderd kregen*.)  
It soon ceased to be *a garrison at all*. FREEMAN, Norm. Conq. IV, XVII, 55. (= Dutch *Het was spoedig heelemaal geen garnizoen meer*.)  
Am I to understand that your name's Ampton, without any *H at all* in the world to it. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's. (*without any H at all in the world* = Dutch *absoluut heelemaal zonder H*.)
- 2) *At all* in questions, *a)* attaching to a verb: Say why bareheaded you are come, | And why you *come at all*. COWPER, John Gilpin, XLII. (*why you come at all* = Dutch *waarom ge eigenlijk komt*.)  
*β)* attaching to an adjective, adverb or equivalent expression: I should like to know whether he is *at all comfortable*. (= Dutch *ook maar in het allerminst*.)  
*γ)* attaching to a noun: Has he *any property at all*? WEBST., Dict. (= Dutch *Heeft hij eigenlijk wel eenige bezitting?*)
- 3) *At all* in conditional clauses or clauses implying a condition, *a)* attaching to a verb, *i.* At any rate, if the subject is worth *studying at all*, it is worth studying with an honest desire to arrive at the truth. HENRY BRADLEY, Eng. Place-Names (A. C. BRADLEY, Es. and Stud., 9). (= Dutch *hoe dan ook*.)

If the general strike is *to succeed at all*, it must succeed as a revolution, and not as a strike. Westm. Gaz., No. 5452, 1b. (= Dutch hoe dan ook.)

- ii. Almost everybody who *read* the newspapers *at all*, knew the romantic story. MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 239. (*who read the newspapers at all* = Dutch die de kranten, al was het dan ook maar oppervlakkig, las.)
- β) attaching to an adjective, adverb or equivalent expression, i. If you are *at all dissatisfied* with his conduct, please to let me know. (= Dutch ook maar in het allerminst.)  
A shortness in her breathing when she has moved *at all quickly*. Mrs. GASK., Ch. Brontë, II, 69.1) (= Dutch ook maar eenigszins.)
- ii. The point-r is intolerable in any German declamation which is *at all colloquial* in subject. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 226. (= Dutch ook maar eenigszins.)
- ;) attaching to a noun, i. If they had *any religion at all*, it was marked by cruel sacrifices to a malignant unseen being. WALT. BESANT, London, I, 42. (*If they had any religion at all* = Dutch Als zij al (nog) eenigen godsdienst hadden.)
- ii. His plan has been adopted by every state which professes to have *any postal system at all*. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 14. (*a postal system at all* = Dutch een postdienst van eenige beteekenis, or in den eigenlijken zin van het woord.)

Compare the approximate equivalents of *at all* used in the following quotations:

- i. "It is giving you a great deal of trouble" — "Not *in the least* — I beg you won't mention it. No trouble *in the world*, I assure you". SHER., Riv., IV, 1, (257).  
He was not dressed *in the least* like a Quaker. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XV, Ch. II, 417.  
Don't let this worry you for a moment *at all*. It didn't matter *in the least* to me. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's.
- ii. When she was *in any way* displeased with her husband, she could not hide it. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. X, 99.  
She, and she alone, could *in any degree* control the absurdities of her sister. Id., Barch. Tow., Ch. IX, 63.

Note. The repetition of *at all* is especially frequent in Irish English.

I can't make you out *at all, at all*. CH. LEVER, One of them, II, 260<sup>1)</sup>.  
He didn't come on his knees *at all, at all*. TROL., Castle Richmond, I, 127<sup>1)</sup>.  
**for good (and all)** (See Ch. XXIX, 1, c, β and 24): This year I have wished to turn my back *for good and all* on my men. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 33. (= Dutch: voor goed.)

**in all**. When but *in all* I was six thousand strong. Henry VI, A, IV, 1, 20. (= Dutch in het geheel.)

He had been away *in all* seven years. DICK., Uncom. Trav., Ch. II, 25.  
The essays number ten *in all*. Not. and Quer.

**all in all**, which is used in various shades of meaning: a) all-powerful: And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be *all in all*. Bible, Cor., A, XV, 28.

The then prime minister was *all in all* at Oxford. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. I, 6.

β) in every respect, quite: Marry, patience: | Or I shall say you are *all in all* in spleen, | And nothing of a man. Othello, IV, 1, 89.

1) FLÜGEL, Dict., s. v. *all*, II, 1.

Is this the noble Moor whom our full senate | Call *all in all* sufficient? *Ib.*, IV, 1, 276.

Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs, | You would say it hath been *all in all* his study. *Henry V*, I, 1, 42.

;) precisely: I will do *all in all* as Hastings doth. *Rich. III*, III, 1, 168.

δ) the all-important thing; often preceded by the definite article:

i. I can justify myself to myself; and that is *all in all*. *RICHARDSON*, *Clar. Harl.*, III, 146.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. A section (sc. of the strikers) ... realised that wages were not *the all in all*. *The New Age*, No. 1174, 498b.

To us the command of the seas is *the all in all* of our being. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 55, 453.

ε) best and most beloved friend: But Philip was her children's *all-in-all*. *TEN.*, *En. Ard.*, 345.

ζ) in all: I read and reread Milton's "Poems" and Virgil's "Æneid" for six more months at every spare moment; thus spending over them, I suppose, *all in all*, far more time than most gentlemen have done. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Alton Locke*, Ch. IV, 43.

(take him) for all in all. The preposition *for* is sometimes absent:

i. He was a man *take him for all in all*, | I shall not look upon his like again. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 187.

ii. *Take him all in all*, | We have need of such, and such have need of us. *BYRON*, *Mar. Fal.*, II, 2, (365b).

It does but impair the excellence of that which, taken *all in all*, is a useful guide. *Athen.*, 1859, July, 49.<sup>1)</sup>

Note α) By way of hendiadys *all and all* sometimes stands for *all in all*. Compare *STORM*, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2)</sup>, II, 1052.

i. Patience is *all and all* with her now. *TROL.*, *Thorne*, I, 216.<sup>2)</sup>

There are some women in the world to whom love and truth are *all and all* here below. *THACK.*, *Adv. of Phil.*, I, 178.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. Take it *all and all*, I never spent so happy a summer. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XXII.<sup>3)</sup>

β) For a discussion of the above phrases see also *EINENKEL*, *Das Indefinitum*, § 141—2.

VI. Also the following idioms deserve attention: i. My friend already a speck on the snow far below me, zigzagging *for all he was worth* down into the valley. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5027, 9a. (= Dutch also of zijn leven er mee gemoeid was. The reference is to ski-running.)

ii. \* *It was all he could do* to keep his secret from Helen. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 73. (= *He could hardly* etc.)

*It was all the major could do* to keep from laughter. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 91.

\*\* William *had all he could do* to hold the minute creatures (sc. ponies). *EL. GLYN*, *Halcyone*, Ch. XIV, 124.

iii. \* *When all's done*, | You look but on a stool. *Macb.*, III, 3, 66.

I believe we must leave the killing out, *when all is done*. *Mids.*, III, 1, 13. Many thought, *when all was done*, that he had been somewhat harshly treated. *MCCARTHY*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIX, 268.

\*\* For really, *when all is said*, Queseda ... was only a degree better than commanders of the type of Ojeda, Cortes, Pizarro ... and the rest. *Athen.*, No. 4451, 183a.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict. s.v. all*, II, 1.    <sup>2)</sup> *STORM*, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2)</sup>, II, 1052.

<sup>3)</sup> *HOPPE*, *Sup. Lex.*<sup>2)</sup>.



But, *when all is said*, I think the best thing he (sc. M<sup>c</sup>Carthy) did... is simply that he was the first who thought of writing a careful and balanced book called "A History of Our Own Times". CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News, No. 3814, 795b).

\*\*\* You must have won more than you have lost, Mr. Warrington, *after all said and done*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LIII, 551.

You cannot trample on a minority, which is in fact a majority of England, the predominant partner, the man who pays *after all is said and done*. Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz., No. 5472, 20c).

Still, *all said and done*, the New York stores are wonders of utility and splendour. RITA, America-Seen through English eyes, Ch. II, 54.

- iv. \* The weeds which his broad-spreading leaves did shelter, | That seem'd in eating him to hold him up, | Are pluck'd up *root and all* by Bolingbroke. Rich. II, III, 4, 52.

\*\* ORL. Then love me, Rosalind. — Ros. Yes, faith, will I, *Fridays and Saturdays and all*. As you like it, IV, 1, 117. (= *every day of the week, even on Fridays and Saturdays*.)

\*\*\* To be left by a woman is *the deuce and all*, to be sure; but look how easily we leave'em. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 146. (= *deucedly bad*.)

You younger men are *the devil and all* when you're asked to ride on some one else's errand than your own. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. I, 19. (= *no better than devils*.)

\*\*\*\* And for the lady, she is too wealthy to fall to a poor Scottish lord, or I would put in my own claim, *fourscore years and all*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. VII, 110. (= Dutch *al ben ik dan ook tachtig jaar*.)

Note. For Middle English instances see especially EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 136.

- v. Ethel was *all that was bright and beautiful*. THACK., New c., I, Ch. XXX, 339. (= *all brightness and beauty*. Compare Obs. 1.)

Mrs. Cricklander had been *all that was sympathetic*. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXVIII, 241.

- vi. \* He was *all but* impervious to passing events. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. III, 41. (= *\*everything short of*, Dutch *zoo goed als*.) I beheld my first love, *all but* seventeen. Miss BRADDON, Captain Thomas. He was *all but* drowned. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

\*\* The mind is its own place, and in itself | Can make a Heaven of Hell, a Hell of Heaven. | What matter where, if I be still the same, | And what I should be, — *all but* less than he | Whom thunder hath made greater? MILTON, Par. Lost, I, 254—8. (= *only*; apparently a rare application.)

Note. The phrase is sometimes divided from its head-word, and occasionally used adnominally. i. I came yesterday from visiting *all but* the very death-bed of him who has been taken from us. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. VI, 290.

- ii. They traversed together those *all but* sheepwalks over the hills. Mrs. GORE, A Life's Lessons, I, 146.<sup>1)</sup>

β) With *all but* compare *anything but*, practically its opposite (= Dutch *alles behalve*), and *everything but*.

- i. Gabriel felt his position *anything but* a safe one, and he resolved to descend. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd.

My wife is better, but *anything but* strong. HUXL., Life and Let., I, Ch. XI, 209.

- ii. The book did *everything but* sell. Times, 1898, 252c.

γ) *All* is an indefinite numeral used absolutely in: The book is in nine chapters, *all but* one of which deal with France and England. Periodical.<sup>2)</sup>

Compare also: He troubles himself little with *anything but* detail zoology. HUXL., Life and Let., I, Ch. VII, 137.

1) FLÜGEL, Dict., s. v. *all*, II, 1.

2) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 227.

vii. From Falstaff downwards I have ever liked fat men: they are *all to nothing* the pleasantest fellows that walk the earth. BLACKW. MAG. (= *decidedly*, originally a betting term.)

It will be *all to one* a better match for your sister. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense and Sens.*, Ch. XXX, 192. (Like the above a betting term and similar in meaning.)

4. The pronominal *all* is used as the formative of certain compounds, in conjunction with:

a) agent-nouns, e. g.: *All-creator, All-giver, All-maker, All-seer, All-sustainer*; and similar denominations of the Supreme Being.

That high *All-Seer* that I dallied with | Hath turn'd my feigned prayer on my head | And given in earnest what I begg'd in jest. RICH. III, V, 1, 20.

b) participles, e. g.: *All-seeing, All-knowing* and similar epithets of the Supreme Being.

The eye of the *All-Seeing* is upon thee, and the hand of the All-Powerful shall protect! LYTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 164.

5. *All* is sometimes used as a pure noun. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 143.

a) In this function it mostly has the meaning of *everything that we have, or that concerns us or pertains to us*, etc., and is mostly preceded by a possessive pronoun. Sometimes it is used with reference to persons.

i. Think of the needy man who has spent *his all*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 183. Bingley gives her but two guineas a week!... which added to my own small means, makes *our all*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 57.

ii. The young Ginevra was *his all* in life. SAM. ROGERS, *Ginevra* (*Rainbow* II, 75.)

And this girl — his ewe-lamb — *his all* — was she fair? LYTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. III, 66.

Note a) The depreciative meaning which is implied in this *all* is often emphasized by *little* or a word of like import.

i. I was twice burned out, and lost *my little all* both times. SHER., *Crit.*, I, 2, (457).

Many a struggling tradesman has lost *his little all* in the fire. MURRAY, *s. v. all*, B, 1, c.

ii. *The wretched all* they here can have. PRIOR.<sup>1)</sup>

The little tenement and *the little all* of Vrouw Heyliger had been left to the worst fury of the devouring element. WASH. IRVING, *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 147).

There is no depreciation when the substantive *all* is preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative, the reference being to a preceding pronoun *all* (with an adnominal adjunct or clause).

"And what have you been acting?" — "Oh! they'll tell you all about it." — *The all* will soon be told," cried Tom hastily. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIX, 186.

We see and hear of such men as Mr. Sowerby, and are apt to think that they enjoy *all* that the world can give, and that they enjoy *that all* without payment either in care or labour. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVII, 360,

<sup>1)</sup> JOHNSON, *Dict.*

These South-Sea islanders have all that a kind Providence can bestow on them; but *that all* is as nothing without education. *Ib.*, Ch. VI, 59.

β) In Early Modern English this substantive *all* was sometimes used in the plural. See MURRAY, s. v. *all*, B, 1, b.

She therefore ordered Jenny immediately to pack up *her alls* and be gone. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. III, 19.

b) More rarely do we find *all* as a pure noun in other meanings, such as are illustrated by:

i. *An all* of rotten formulas. CARLYLE, *Past and Pres.*, 169. 1)

ii. I have (never) cared whether my poor personality shall remain distinct for ever from *the All* from whence it came and whither it goes. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 319.

iii. The nation is neither the few, nor the many, but *the all*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, 358. 2)

6. *All* has chiefly the character of an indefinite numeral when it modifies a noun or pronoun, or without any such (pro)noun denotes a number of persons or things.

In some of its applications *all* varies with *any* (18, Obs. III), or with *every* (54).

When followed by a singular noun, the numeral *all* differs from the pronoun *all* in that the functions of head-word and modifier are exchanged. Thus in *All sail was taken in*, *all* is the modifier, *sail* the head-word, whereas in *All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy* (3, Obs. I), *all* is the head-word and *work* the modifier.

When divided from its head-word by another modifier, *all* to some extent assumes an adverbial character. Thus in *He spent all his money on his library*, *all* is almost as much adverbial in meaning as *partly* in *He spent his money partly on his library*. Its position before the noun, however, shows that it has preserved its adnominal character. The semi-adverbial character of *all* often causes it to leave its place before the head-word. (11, Obs. I.)

When immediately followed by a noun, the numeral *all* corresponds to the Dutch *alle*: *all money* = *alle geld*, *all boys* = *alle jongens*. When another modifier intervenes between *all* and its head-word, its ordinary Dutch equivalent is *al*, sometimes the adjective *geheel(e)*: *all his money* = *al zijn geld*. *She has much more wit in her little finger than you have in all your head* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XV, 158) = . . . in uw geheele hoofd. The numeral *all*, when not followed by any noun, answers to the Dutch *allen*, which, however, can only be used when the reference is to persons. (10.)

When *all* is understood as a semi-adverbial word and is, consequently, shifted from its head-word (11, Obs. I), it is often rendered by *heelemaal* or *allemaal*: *her beauty was all gone* = *hare schoonheid was heelemaal verdwenen*; *the benefits were all forgotten* = *de weldaden waren allemaal vergeten*.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *all*, B, 2. 2) FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *all*, I, b.

7. The numeral *all* is used conjointly, absolutely and substantively. In the two first applications it may denote either quantity or number, in the last it always denotes number.

8. The conjoint *all* modifies either nouns or pronouns.

a) When *all* modifies a noun, it normally stands before its head-word with all its other modifiers. For exceptions see below, Note  $\beta$ . The noun may be either singular or plural in meaning, and *all* may, accordingly, denote quantity or number.

$\alpha$ ) before a singular: i. *All meat* is to be eaten, all maids to be wed. Proverb.

*All creation* seemed lapped in luxury, asleep on the breast of love. MAART. MAART., *My Lady Nobody*, I, 12.

We must clear out every cruel and evil force outside us and within us, till *all earth* becomes a garden. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, I, 34. We have before us the choice of evolution and revolution. *All history* warns us against the latter. British Weekly (Westm. Gaz., No. 6417, 16c).

ii. \* *All God's creation* . . . was twittering and fluttering and blushing and blooming in clouds of perfume and pollen. MAART. MAART., *My Lady Nobody*, I, 12.

\*\* For you have but mistook me *all this while*. Rich. II, III, 2, 174.

Where's Lufton *all this time*? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 27.

And *all this while* I've forgotten to congratulate you. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, I, 9.

\*\*\* From the mountains on every side rivulets descended that filled *all the valley* with verdure and fertility. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. I, 4.

b) before a plural: i. (Charity) beareth *all things*, believeth *all things*, hopeth *all things*, endureth *all things*. Bible, Cor., A., XIII, 7.

*All men* in *all places* talked much about the great Gatherum Castle confederation. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 78.

ii. \* You'll upset *all my other plans*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 71.

\*\* And you (sc. How are you) — after *all these years*? ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, I, 4.

\*\*\* *All the little crew* of the Young Rachel cheered from the ship's side as their passenger left it. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 6.

Note  $\alpha$ ) Before a singular noun *all* is sometimes equivalent to *all possible, the greatest possible*.

STAN. I in *all haste* was sent. ANNE. And I with *all unwillingness* will go. Rich. III, IV, 1, 57.

He hastened with *all speed* to escape from so frightful a neighbourhood. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 128).

The Count bade me take *all care* of you. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 11.

$\beta$ ) The plural *all* is frequently found after its head-word in vocatives, for the rest only exceptionally.

i. Hear me, William de la Marck; and *good men all*, if there be any here who deserve that name, hear the only terms I can offer to this ruffian! SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 286.

"And now," quoth Oxenham, "*my merry men all*, make up your minds!" CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 3b.

Now listen, *my masters all*! Ib., Ch. XXV, 184b.

I will tell you what we will do, *gentleman all*! Ib., Ch. XIX, 142b.



- ii. *Damned spirits all* | ... Already to their wormy beds are gone. Mids., III, 2, 382.  
 Up flew *the windows all*. COWPER, John Gilpin, XXVIII.  
*The ladies all* felt that he must add considerably to the pleasure of their engagements at Rosings. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXI, 172.  
 But soon the steeples called *good people all* to church and chapel. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 62.

;) *All* is sometimes divided from the noun it modifies by a personal pronoun to limit the meaning of the word-group.

Thus ever... move *all we restless travellers* through the pilgrimage of life. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. III, 15a.

*All we gaol-birds* are to breakfast together in something approaching to a Christian style. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 9.

That is what people call being good. Every pleasure cried fie upon; *all us wordly people* excommunicated; a ball an abomination of desolation. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIV, 560.

My father himself is longing to go, though he has mamma and *all us brats* at home. *Ib.*, Ch. LXII, 644.

Thus also when a substantive word takes the place of the noun.

The only one of *all us eight*. *Queer Stories from Truth*, 8th Series, 174.

*All* may also be found after the noun, the personal pronoun preceding the latter.

To begin with, *we students all* assemble in the office. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6630, 6b.

δ) The following idioms deserve attention:

- i) before singulars, i. Mrs. Jarley's wrath ... *passed all description*. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXXII, 117a.

ii. A little poverty and a great deal of occupation would do him *all the good in life*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 907. (= *very much good*.)

- iii. \* Thou art prompt enough *in all reasonable conscience*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXIV, 383.

You've enough of it (sc. woodland) at Greshamsbury *in all conscience*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 79.

\*\* i have been mortified enough *of all conscience*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (187). (An unusual collocation.)

- iv. \* Art is *of all time*. BARRY PAIN, *Fashion and Art*, I.

Nares' Glossary (is) one of the most entertaining dictionaries *of all time*. *The New Statesman*, No. 121, 401b.

\*\* This speaking is diffused *over all time*. FRENCH, *Miracles*, *Introd.*, 12. 1)

\*\*\* I would rather be a man for an hour than a poet *for all time*. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XVII, 154.

The deeds which it (Sir John French's dispatch) records will be remembered *for all time*. *Times*, No. 1998, 330c.

- v. Which of two things happens to-day may make *all the difference in the world* to the Liberal party. *Truth*, No. 1802, 81a. (= *a very great difference*.)

There is *all the difference in the world* ... between the hatred which is a protest against suffering and the hatred which takes pleasure in suffering. There is *all the difference in the world* between hatred which is born of love and hatred which is born of hatred. *The New Statesman*, No. 105, 10b.

Compare: Each one of these points, round which a desperate strife is waged from time to time, may make *the whole difference* to the security of some part of the line. *Times*, No. 1992, 204b.

1) MURRAY, S. V. *all*, A, 1, a.

- vi. Cecil was packed off to Switzerland to see snow-mountains and water-falls, when *all the time* she would far rather have been seeing the prosaic heights of the model lodging-houses and the dull London streets. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXX, 266. (= *however*.)
- vii. Lady Lufton had not sent for Dr. Roberts *all the way* from Exeter for nothing. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 2. (= *the large or enormous distance*.)
- viii. \* I was out hunting *all one day*. Ib., Ch. VIII, 71. (= *\*one day the whole day*.)  
 \*\* For *all an April morning* till the ear | Wearies to hear it, so the simple maid | Went half the night repeating, 'Must I die?' TEN., *Lanc. and E.L.*, 892.
- 2) before plurals: i. \* But friendship and my country's good *before all things*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. III, 92.  
 \*\* His hero (sc. John Bright) was *above all things* an orator. Athen., No. 4467, 609a.  
*Above all things*, those who are growing old should provide themselves either with some serious occupation or a hobby which will take its place. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3831, 428c.  
 Compare: *above all* (3 Obs. V), and: He was *more than anything else* a religious man. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898b.  
 She was an aristocrat *before anything*. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 496, 596c.
- ii. In one sense the Navy is *at all times* a serious and an anxious problem. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5442, 1c. (= Dutch: *ten allen tijde*.)
- iii. \* It was admitted *on all hands* to be an artistic achievement of the highest kind. BEERBOHM TREE, *Henry VIII*, 96.  
 \*\* It is to be admitted *on all sides* that military efficiency is not to be left to chance, but is a thing that governments must attend to. *Macm. Mag.*, 1892, 221a.
- iv. Fairies, be gone, and be *all ways* away. *Mids.*, IV, 1, 39. (= *in every direction*, an archaic application.)
- b) When *all* modifies a pronoun it normally stands after its head-word. This may be owing to its being, as a rule, much stronger-stressed than the pronoun to which it belongs. An exception must be made with demonstratives, which are rarely weak-stressed and are, consequently, mostly placed after *all*. Also relatives are sometimes placed after *all*, regularly when a preposition precedes. Compare Ch. XXXIX, 35, *b*; and EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 144.
- i. \* "Stop, stop, John Gilpin! — Here's the house!" *They all* at once did cry. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XXXVI.  
 \*\* He wanted *them all* to come in and have some wine. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.  
 No man was ever robbed as I have been. But I shall win through yet, in spite of *them all*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 74.  
 \*\*\* I'll explain *it all* to him. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. *It all* broke upon me with a burst. "You are a gentleman of property," I said slowly trying to take *it all* in. Ib.  
 Note: They (sc. the capitalist and employing classes) have had (all this) in full measure even to the half of our kingdom. But *with it all*, it is now patent that they have failed us. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 554a. (= Dutch *met dat al*.)
- ii. \* George what does *this all* mean? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VIII, 82.  
 I would have liked to have asked the driver what *this all* meant. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 11.  
 \*\* *All this* is distasteful to me. MURRAY, s.v. *all*, A, I, 1, c.

Go down and see that the tea is made and *all that*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 82.

Does *all that* mean that you're not in love with Bunny? SHAW, Misalliance, 18.

- iii. All manner of benefits and subscriptions, and I don't know *what all*, was got up for the poor man. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXXI, 282. (= Dutch *wat al meer*.)

The warm ground . . . where the ugly little seeds turn into beautiful flowers, and into grass and corn, and I don't know *what all* besides. ID., Dom b., Ch. III, 20.

They tell me you've become a red republican, and I don't know *what all* besides. FRANK HARRIS, Great Days, II, Ch. III, 162.

- iv. \* The Prince had forebodings about this event, *which all* unhappily were realised. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

\*\* Lady Bellaston took every opportunity very civilly and slyly to insult her, *to all which* her dejection of spirits disabled her from making any return. FIELDING, Tom Jones, II, XVII, Ch. VI, 142b.

9. *All* when used absolutely, i. e. with its head-word understood, does not give rise to much special comment.

Pen . . . galloped through the Iliad and the Odyssey, the tragic play-writers, and the charming wicked Aristophanes (whom he vowed to be the greatest poet of *all*). THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 35.

A few general observations are *all* which are necessary by way of conclusion. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 898b.

Note α) Absolute *all* + partitive *of* often stands for conjoint *all*. Compare Ch. XXXIX, 35, c and 36, a.

It is a curious fact that *all of Henry's wives* can trace their descent from this King (sc. Edward I). BEERBOHM TREE, Henry VIII, Ch. IV, 57.

A boy's personality must be very robust if it is not crushed into mediocrity by the methods employed at *all of our large schools*, Periodical. 1)

β) Note the idiom in: There are many fewer Germans, *all told*, in the whole of the German colonies than there are in London. The New Age, No. 1176, 561a.

10. The substantive *all* is used of both persons and things. For a comparison with *everybody* see 54.

- i. MACD. My children too? — Ross. Wife, children, servants, *all* | That could be found. Mac b., IV, 3, 211.

He was the chief now and lord. He was Pendennis: and *all* round about him were his servants and handmaids. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 30.

*All* said I was wicked, and perhaps I might be so. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 12.

There is one fact which I earnestly commend to the attention of *all* here present. Westm. Gaz., No. 5478, 1b.

- ii. Everything about him, his coat, his wig, his figure, his face, his scrofula, his St. Vitus's dance, etc. etc. . . . *all* are as familiar to us as the objects by which we have been surrounded from childhood. MAC., Boswell's Life of Johnson, (178a).

And ever labouring (he) had scoop'd himself | In the white rock a chapel and a hall | On massive columns, like a shorecliff cave, | And cells and chambers: *all* were fair and dry. TEN., Lanc. and El., 405.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 226.

His face, his figure, his mode of speech, his habit of thought, *all* were masculine exceedingly. Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 306.

Note. The use of the definite article before the substantive numeral *all*, as in the following quotation, seems to be very rare:

If, one by one, you wedded all the world, | Or from *the all* that are took something good, | To make a perfect woman, she you kill'd | Would be unparallel'd. Winter's Tale, V, 1, 14.

11. Obs. I. The semi-adverbial character which often attaches to *all*, frequently causes it to leave its normal place immediately before or after its head-word.

a) This shifting seems to be regular in adverbial adjuncts of place or time containing a preposition. Thus *all down the river* instead of *down all the river* and *all through the debate* instead of *through all the debate*. Compare with these collocations *down the whole river*, *through the whole debate*, which express approximately the same meaning.

This arrangement appears to be the usual one also when the head-word is a pronoun, although *all* in this case may also have back-position.

i. \* Thus *all though merry Islington* | These gambols he did play. COWPER, John Gilpin, XXXIII.

He was a twinkling-eyed, pimple-faced man, with his hair standing upright *all over his face*. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 34a.

We have unprotected young women *all about the world*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIII, 157.

And feeling *all along the garden wall*, | He crept to the gate. TEN., En. Ard., 769.

He admitted, too, that the majority of the trained economists of the country were against Tariff Reform, but that was not the case *all over the world*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5472, 1c.

\*\* He thought he was right *all through that affair*, but no man was ever so confoundedly wrong. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 83.

ii. \* 'T is the place, and *all around it*, as of old, the curlews call. TEN., Locksley Hall, II.

\*\* „Well, he was asleep, I think.” — “What, slept *through it all*?” TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IX, 89.

β) *All* is usually shifted into the body of a nominal predicate (Ch. I, 1, b) or a complex predicate (Ch. I, 15), when it modifies the subject of the sentence or clause. When the subject is the pronoun *it*, the shifting is obligatory.

i. Mr. Supplehouse felt that he was the master mind there at Gatherum Castle, and that those there were *all* puppets in his hand. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 77.

Nor were the benefits in this respect *all* on one side. Ib., Ch. XIV, 14.

She had possessed her share of woman's loveliness, but that was now *all* gone. Ib., Ch. XIV, 14.

ii. It was *all* arranged that night. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 14a.

Mrs. Roberts' mind was immediately opened, and she knew the rest as well as though it had *all* been spoken. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIII, 125.



This lecture at Barchester will be so late on Saturday evening, that you had *all* better come and dine with us. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IV, 35.

Now, here are five marks, all of which ought to be found in Junius. They are *all* five found in Francis. MAC., War. Hast., (610b).

It (sc. the news) has practically *all* been good. The New Statesman, No. 91, 305a.

- γ) It is considerations of metre which cause *all* to be put at the end of the sentence in:

But when Melrose he reach'd, 'twas silence *all*. SCOTT, Lay, I, xxxi, 13.

The tables were drawn, it was idlesse *all*. Ib., I, II, 1.

- δ) The combination *it ... all*, used in the function of the direct object, cannot be placed consecutively when a personal pronoun without the preposition *to* is the indirect or person-object of the same verb. Then he told *it her all*. TROL., Framl. Pars., II, 133.<sup>1)</sup> (Compare: Then he told *it all to her*.)

- ε) The shifting of *all* not infrequently causes it to give up its adnominal character almost entirely and to become to all intents and purposes an adverb. Compare 13.

i. The room seemed to be *all* nooks and corners. DICK., Cop., 208.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. She came in, and lay down on the settle, *all* soaked as she was. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. IX, 45a.

iii. The delay was *all* your fault. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 73.

iv. (His) family was strongly Puritan and *all* for the Parliament. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 9c.

Note. It should be added that the change of grammatical function may be independent of any shifting. Thus in:

i. "If ignorance be bliss, 't is folly to be wise." *It all* lies in the "if." TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 78.

ii. My brethren have been *all* my fellowship. TEN., Lanc. & El., 668.

- II. α) It is also the semi-adverbial character of *all* which constitutes its main difference from the purely adnominal *whole*, with which it often varies. For the rest the language hardly distinguishes between *all the town* (*world, country*, etc.) and *the whole town* (*world, country*, etc.); *all the time* (*day, week, year*, etc.) and *the whole time* (*day, week, year*, etc.); *all my life* (*heart*, etc.) and *my whole life* (*heart*, etc.) and many other collocations with *all* and *whole*.

i. JARVIS. *All the world* loves him. — SIR WIL. Say rather, that he loves *all the world*. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, I.

He was a whig ... *all the world* knew that. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 75.

He wishes *all the world* and his wife to know that he has a sore head. Rev. of Rev., 1892, 321a.

*All the world* eats too much. Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. II, 18b.

\*\* Though we should examine *the whole world*, we shall not find one man so happy as to have nothing left to wish for. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. XXIX, (443).

*The whole world* are aware that this assumed complaisance is a matter of ceremony. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVI, 327.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> JESPERSEN Mod. Eng. Gram. II 6.222.

Take me out of these streets where *the whole town* knows me from a child. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 168b.

*The whole town* knows it. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 393.

*The whole country* applauds. KING EDWARD VII (*Rev. of Rev.*, No. 212, 120b).

ii. \* I did more work in half an hour than he had done *all day*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 75.

\*\* The Storm-ship continued to be an article of belief through *the whole time* of the Dutch government. WASH. IRVING, *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 87).

iii. \* If you are content to live at Framley *all your life* [etc.]. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 34.

\*\* For that the child thanked me with *her whole heart*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 27.

I admire you with *my whole soul*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IX, 86.

β) The applications of *whole* even so far coincide with those of *all* that it is quite frequent before a plural.

The first syllable was not to be found in *the whole writings*. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, § II, 62b.

Recovering their horses, however, and wheeling them round, *the whole three* pursued their united purpose of bearing to the earth the Disinherited Knight. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 125.

*The whole usages* of Virginia, indeed, were fondly modelled after the English customs. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. III, 27.

She (sc. Mary Smith) waved her hands as much as *the whole nine*. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 92.

Conditions = *the whole affecting circumstances* under which a thing exists. MURRAY, s.v. *conditions*, 4, c.

One church only of *the whole thirteen* still stands. WALT. BESANT, *London*, I, 68.

γ) An important difference between the applications of *whole* and those of *all* is that, unlike the latter, it cannot be placed adnominally before a proper name. Thus we could not say \*(the) *whole London* instead of *all London*.

The following instance of adnominal *whole* before a proper name the only one that has turned up, has an incongruous effect:

In the year four 't was said there wasn't a finer figure in *the whole South Wessex* than I. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, II, Ch. VI, 171.

Quite common, however, are such collocations as *the whole of London*, etc. In colloquial style they seem even to be preferred to their equivalents *all London*, etc.

i. *The whole of London* knows it. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Wind Fan*, I, (22). Practically *the whole of Europe* is at war. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6638, 7a.

I assure you... that by accomplishing Peace you will secure the respect of *the whole of Europe*. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3844, 921.

ii. *All England* did not possess his peer. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 38.

In *all London*, perhaps, the unlucky Fortunate Youth could not have found a more dangerous companion. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIX, 406.

*All Barsestshire* knew — at any rate *all West Barsestshire* — that Miss Dunstable had been brought down in those parts in order that Mr. Sowerby might marry her. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 80.

With the above compare also: *All of Belgium* has been strangled, except her spirit. Eng. Rev., No. 72, 500.

Also in other connections *the whole of* is a frequent variant of *all*.

During *the whole of this time* Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, 2, 48.

She loved her husband with *the whole of her quick little heart*. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. IX, 32.

The curate is satisfied to do the duty of the place for an indefinite period in consideration of a small stipend and *the whole of the produce* of the garden. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. II, 16.

Not often were *the whole of the boys* assembled in the hall as on this afternoon. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 38.

He devoted *the whole of his leisure time* to us. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

The third volume of the collected works of the Lambs consists of the books for children, *the whole of which* are now for the first time included between two covers. Not. and Quer.

In the month of August *the whole of Nature* seems to indulge in a siesta. Westm. Gaz., No. 6305, 13a.

- III. Like the pronoun *all* (3, Obs. I), the numeral *all* often implies the notion ordinarily expressed by *only*.

I did not, and do not, suppose that this neckerchief was *all* the linen he wore, but it was *all* he showed or gave any hint of. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37b.

*All* her grief was... that her daughter, Minny, was too old for him. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 34.

Hitherto papa and mamma and Lady Lufton were *all* that he had known. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 98.

For *all* answer Jack or Charles throws up his handsome head and fumbles with his sock-suspenders. Eng. Rev., Sept. 1912, 304.

That's about *all* the plan. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. III, 37.

Thus apparently also in: The Jew shall have *all* justice. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 313. (Compare: He shall have *merely* justice and his bond. *ib.*, IV, 1, 331.)

Sometimes *all* is ambiguous: "Is this *all* your family, ma'am?" said my aunt. — "There are no more at present," returned Mrs. Micawber. — "Good gracious, I didn't mean that, ma'am," said my aunt. "I mean are all these yours?" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LII, 379b.

- IV. a) In conformity with Dutch practice, *of all*, whether or no followed by a noun, is often used in connection with an adnominal or adverbial superlative to mark absolute superiority, sometimes further emphasized by some such phrase as *in (of) the world (town, etc.)*. The superlative either precedes or follows.

- i. Last night *of all*, | When yond same star that's westward from the pole [etc.]. HAM., I, 1, 35.

That's the hardest thing *of all*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 68.

Yet it was, after all, the child who had dealt her the blow that hurt her deepest *of all the stabs* of this afternoon of ugliness and sorrow. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. V, 72.

- ii. And *of all women*, she that I dread most to encounter. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (188).

"Yer know, Work'us," continued Noah, emboldened by Oliver's silence, and speaking in a jeering tone of affected pity: *of all tones* the most annoying. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VI, 66.

The New Testament was *of all books in the world* the most unfamiliar to me. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 97.

The idiom is often used in vituperative language to express disgust, in which case the sentence is often left uncompleted.

*Of all* the ungratefulest, and worst-disposed boys as ever I see, Oliver, you are the —. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IV, 50.

*Of all* the miserable weak rubbish I ever tried, Ariadne in Naxos is the most mawkish and disgusting. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 334.

I never came across such a set in all my life — upon my word I didn't. Six of you! — and you can't find a coat that I put down not five minutes ago! Well, *of all* the —. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. III, 25.

- β) Peculiar to English is the catachrestic application of the same word-group + noun, especially *things*, without a superlative. In this case it appears more or less modified in meaning, the whole collocation being equivalent to *exceedingly, in a very high degree, especially*, etc., with the notion of comparison thrown into the background. The phrases *in (of) the world, town*, etc. are sometimes added for further emphasis.

- i. I nauseate it (sc. marriage) *of all things*. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1.

To be a maid-of-honour were yet *of all things* my aversion. *Ib.*

We like your company *of all things*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (189).

SIR PET. Have you a mind to have a good laugh at Joseph? — CHAR. SURF.

I should like it *of all things*. SHER., *School for Scand.* IV, 3, (418).

Indeed she was a woman not prone to give up anything, and *of all things* not prone to give up a 'protégé'. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 135.

Maggie dreaded Tom's anger *of all things*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 27.

- ii. Are they (sc. the Peers) not known *of all men* for their moderation and for their freedom from the partisanship and the winds of vain doctrine which afflict the elective House? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5266.

- γ) Instead of *of* we often find *above* in these phrases, which better suits the meaning to be conveyed. Compare 8, *a*, Note δ, 2.

He declared that he should like a biscuit and a glass of wine *above all things*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

I shall like it *above all things*. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Gadsbys*, I, 15.

We have had it drilled into us always that Fashion is fickle *above all things*. *Graph.*, No. 2309, 370a.

Thus by extension also: I shall be delighted *above all things*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 29.

- δ) Sometimes the idiom undergoes some further modification, being used to denote surprise, disgust or some other emotion at the fact, that what is expressed by the predicate applies to a particular person or thing. Compare Ch. V, 13, *b*. In this case the use of *above* instead of *of* seems to be rare.

- i. He smiled rather bitterly as he thought that he *of all men in the world* should be the person upon whom the care of the marriage had fallen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 205.

"Oh, my dear Mr. Arabin," said she, "have you never sat down yet? I am so distressed. You *of all men too*." TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 341.

One of the best things about the resolution passed at Rugby was the amendment introduced by Mr. Perks, *of all men in the world*. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1901, 15 March, 228a.

To Dr. Ketteler, *of all men*, this Jewish agitator went for assistance. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 468, 522b.



- ii. Why I was found in Wales — ... what had led to my-being discovered ... in London *above all places*, and in a painter's studio — these questions were with me night and day. THEOD. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. XII, 451.  
Compare: i. Why on earth — so he was thinking — should Fontenoy have chosen this *particular* hour and this *particular* night to 'débiter' these very stale things? MRS. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, Ch. III, 15a.  
What had induced her to sing those *particular* words? EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VI, 51.  
In this *particular* locality I can assure you that everything appears to be in a depressed condition. BUS. LET. WRITER, XVII.
- ii. Supposing she had chanced to pick up any other book but *just* "Vanity Fair". DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Woom.*, Ch. IV.
- ε) The word-group *of all* is sometimes followed by *others* or *other* + plural noun, as in:  
*Of all other affections* it is the most importune. BACON, *Essays*, *Envy*.  
It (sc. the Sentimental Comedy) is *of all others* the most easily written. GOLDSMITH. (*Eighteenth Cent. Lit.*, Clar. Press, 1909).  
It seems that this construction, which it has been proposed to term inclusive superlative, is the result of the blending of two others: *of all affections* etc. and *above* (or *more than*) *all other affections* etc. Compare Ch. XXX, 47.  
Equally catachrestic as the above are such sentences as:  
*Of all men else* I have avoided thee. Macb., V, 8, 4. (The superlative *most* may be supplied here.)  
This is the greatest error *of all the rest*. Mids., V, 250.
- ζ) Also this construction often appears without the superlative, both in the meaning referred to under β) and that described under δ).  
i. It is a time *of all others*, when Want is keenly felt, and Abundance rejoices. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 14.  
The long discussion about the subject which *of all others* was most painful. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 184. (Observe that the superlative is absolute.)  
ii. To mistake this house *of all others* for an inn! GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, IV, (212).  
Exceedingly unfortunate, that they should have chosen this night, *of all others*, for such a purpose. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 145.  
She felt that this *of all others* was not the occasion on which she could keep up a studiously cold manner. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VIII, 85.
- η) Sometimes *of all others* is accompanied by the adverb *exceedingly* or *particularly*, or by the adjective *particular* or *very*.  
i. I rejoice to say that the young man whom *of all others* I *particularly* abhor, has left for Bath. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXVII, 208.  
ii. It was the *very* thing *of all others* to be wished. Id., *Mansfield Park*, Ch. X, 101.  
Dear, dear! to think that I should be late on this *particular* morning, *of all others*, DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. XX, 126a.  
There was no particular reason to expect that he should be irregular on that *particular* day *of all others*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 277.
- θ) Instead of *of all others* (or *other* + plural noun), the more logically correct *above* or *beyond all others* (or *other* + plural noun) is also met with, especially in the latest English.

i. Lord Halsbury kept up a spirited protest to the last and confessed himself utterly unable to understand why the Peers should choose this moment *above all others* to pass a vote of no-confidence in themselves. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5266, 1c.

And this was the moment, *above all others*, which poor Helene seized to reveal the secret of her love. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 467, 490c.

His sphere of influence was one which, *above all others*, fitted his exceptional endowments. *Athen.*, No. 4470, 689a.

ii. This assuredly is not the line of policy for a country famous *beyond all others* for its invention and enterprise. *Times*, No. 1825, 1031d.

c) Finally it may be observed that *all* + plural noun varies with *any* + singular noun in some of the above constructions. See 18, Obs. IX and X. For a discussion of this and the preceding idioms see also HODGSON, *Errors in the Use of Eng.*<sup>8</sup>, 72; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 409; and especially STOR., *E. S.*, XXXI, 261 ff.

V. *All* often appears in conjunction with *any*, *each* or *every*, all of them expressing various shades of meaning besides that of universality denoted by *all*. The combinations are chiefly intended for emphasis, and are used practically without distinction. Sometimes the order is reversed, i. e. instead of *all and any* etc. we find *any* etc. *and all*.

Of approximately the same meaning are also *one and all*, the colloquial, but rather infrequent *all and sundry*, and the now obsolete *some and all*. The usual conjunction in these collocations is *and*, *or* appears only in connection with *any*, sometimes in affirmative, regularly in negative sentences.

**all and (or) any:** i. I knew nothing at all about modern books, so I just sent for *all and any* I saw in the advertisements in the papers. *EL. GLYN*, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. VII, 162.

ii. \* Winking and waving his glass gracefully to his audience, (he) challenged *all or any* to come in and take a share of his punch. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 58.

*All or any* of these (sc. subjects) serve for an interview. *RYTA*, *America-Seen through Eng. eyes*, Ch. III, 65.

\*\* But not for *all or any* of these reasons did Lady Lufton think of giving way. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXV, 340.

**all and each:** And *all and each* that passed that way | Did join in the pursuit. *COWPER*, *John Gilpin*, 239.

Their open interiors were *all and each* radiant with the gaudy yet harmonious colours of frescoes, inconceivably varied in fancy and design. *LYTTON*, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. II, 10a.

Returning, therefore, to *all and each* my best thanks for their liberality [etc.]. *TOZER*, *Intr. to Byron's Childe Harold*, 51.

Observe the following variant: So thanks to *all at once and to each one*, Whom we invite to see us crown'd at Scone. *Macb.*, V, 8, 75.

**all and every:** Perhaps an imitation of the Latin *universi et singuli*. See *MURRAY*, s. v. *every* 7, b.

He was too much addicted to the pleasures of the field, and the exercise of feudal hospitality, to bestir himself upon *all and every* occasion when the Fair Town would have desired his active interference. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VII, 78. Americans of *all and every* class never believe anything unless it does appear in a paper. *Periodical*. 1)

1) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 226.

**all and some.** Now stop your noses, readers *all and some*. DRYDEN, *Abs. and Arch.*, II, 457.

Two hours after midnight *all and some* | Into the hall to wait his word should come. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.* 1)

**all and sundry** — all collectively and individually, the world at large; Dutch *iedereen, allemaal, Jan en alleman, 'de wereld*. The phrase is also used adnominally.

i. I take up the gauntlet, and maintain against *all and sundry* that I hold the stains to be of no modern date. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Intro.*, 12.

My respects to *all and sundry*. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 242. He has essayed to make his poet (sc. Browning) comprehensible to *all and sundry*. *Lit. World*, 1892, 12a.

To *all and sundry* the poor child became *Stella-maris*. W. LOCKE, *Stella-maris*, Ch. I, 1.

ii. He, this school autocrat, gathered *all and sundry reins* into the hollow of his one hand. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XV, 191.

Compare the colloquial equivalents instanced in: It never entered his head while conversing with *Jack and Tom* that he was in any respect their better. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

They (sc. dogs) are "Hail, fellow, well met" with *every Tom, Dick, or Harry* that they come across. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, II, Ch. 42.

"Keep still!" ordered my mother, "I won't have you talking to *Tom, Dick and Harry*." W. PETT RIDGE, *The Leading Lady* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5442, 9a).

**any and (or) all.** i. Give the word and *any and all* of us will go with you. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 144a.

ii. In the same way as India has succeeded in permanently maintaining the value of its rupees at a fixed ratio of 1 s. 4 d. relatively to the sovereign, so can *any or all* countries, if they so wish, permanently maintain the purchasing power of their currencies at a fixed ratio relatively to commodities in general. *Eng. Rev.*, August. 1912, 144.

**each and all.** They seem'd joyous *each and all*. BYRON, *Pris. of chillon*. Old friends, new friends, people whom he had never met and whom he had no intention of meeting — were *each and all* in full cry. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. VII, 108.

**every one and all.** We have not relaxed, nor shall we relax, in the pursuit of *every one and all* of the aims which I have described *The New Statesman*, No. 100, 522a.

**one and all** = Dutch *allen zonder uitzondering*: The insurance offices, *one and all*, shut up shop. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia*, *Dis. on Roast Pig*, (256).

The whole conversation ran on the breakfast, which *one and all* abused roundly. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 50.

These reverend gentlemen, *one and all*, gave it as their opinion that the Salem Church members were among the least enlightened of the Lord's people. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. II, 197.

The were doomed, *one and all*, to suffer death. M'CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

VI. a) In the phrase *once for all* (= definitively, Dutch *eens voor al*, German *ein für allemal*, French *une fois pour toutes*) *all* may be apprehended absolutely, the noun *times*, which is implied

1) EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 541.

in *once*, being understood, so that the whole is equivalent to *\*one time for all times*. Instead of *once for all* we often find *once and for all*.

- i. I tell you *once for all* that in this point I cannot obey you. SHER., Riv., II, 1, (234).

Our reader must now... transport himself with Arthur Pendennis to London, whither he goes *once for all* to face the world and to make his fortune. THACK., Pend., Ch. XXVIII, 296.

It was decided *once for all* to regard all the geese at the farm as the direct descendants of the saviours of the Capitol. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. VIII.

- ii. I beg pardon, *once and for all*, of those readers who take up novels merely for amusement, for plaguing them so long with old-fashioned politics. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. V, 35b.

Before quitting, *once and for all*, the arid region of genealogy, it may be worth mentioning [etc.]. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. I, 3.

It will, therefore, be more consonant with its dignity and peace of mind, if the British nation realizes *once and for all* that the period of the duration of the war cannot be calculated by weeks or months. Times. While helping to crush *once and for all* the aspirations of the Boers, it is supplying us with a highly trained army. Ib.

Practically identical in meaning with the above is the phrase *for once and all*, which, however, seems to occur but rarely.

Let me remark *for once and all* [etc.]. COL., Aids Refl., I, 177.<sup>1)</sup>

- β) A similar interpretation may be put upon adverbial phrases in which a superlative is followed by *of all*: *last of all*, *first of all*, *least of all*. In them *all* may be understood to modify a noun of an uncertain or vague character, implied in the preceding superlative.

And then she lost in the mining way, and *last of all*, to set the thing entirely to rights, she lost in the banking way. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXV, 254b.

The habitual drunkard, when he is absolutely and painfully sober, does not laugh loud and long; he does not necessarily limp; he does not talk boisterously about his infirmity; *least of all* does he get drunk in ten minutes. Times.

## VII. Also the following idioms deserve attention:

**for all**, in which *for* has the meaning of *notwithstanding*. See STOF., Taalst., X; id., Stud., § 29. Note especially *for all the world*, a phrase used in affirming a surprising fact; Dutch *waarempel*. For illustration of *for all that* (or *this*) used by way of adversative conjunctives see Ch. IX, 9; and of *for all*, with or without *that*, as a kind of concessive conjunction see Ch. XVII, 89. Instances are also given in Ch. XXXVI, 10, II, g.

- i. For *all* his youthful philosophy, Joseph was susceptible where girlish beauty was concerned. BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. I, 11.
- ii. BAPT. Who comes with him? — BION. O, Sir, his lackey *for all the world* caparisoned like the horse Taming of the Shrew, III, 2, 74.

They flapped and fluttered about *for all the world* as if they were truly alive and not mere stage properties. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. III, 38.

**by all (manner of) means**. For illustration see Ch. XXV, 20.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



VIII. a) Like the pronoun *all* (3, Obs. III), the numeral *all*, whether understood absolutely or substantively, is often followed by partitive *of*, especially before pronouns. See also 9. For the use of *of* before relatives see Ch. XXXIX, 35, *c* and 36, *b*.

i. *All of us* have said so at times. I have heard it from *all of you*.  
MURRAY, S. V. *all*, A, 2, *c*.

(He took down the names of *all of us*. *lb.* (= all our names. Compare XXXIII, 9, *a*).

ii. He and Blanche... came bolt up against the heavy dragoon and his lady, and with such force that the centre of gravity was lost by *all four of the circumvolving bodies*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 276.

*All of these tribes* had the same language. SWEET, A. S. Read., *Intr.*, 11.

β) The word-group *all* + plural pronoun is often added appositionally to a noun or pronoun by way of emphasis. Compare Ch. VIII, 100, *e*.

We *all of us* thought... that he was an admiral at the very least. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 69).

12. The numeral *all* often combines with nouns to form a kind of compound. Note especially:

*All Father* (= Odin, God), *All-Fools' Day* (1 April), *All-Saints' Day* (1 Nov.), *All-Souls' Day* (2 Nov.), *All-Hallows* (= *Hallowmas* = *All-Saints' Day*).

13. The purely adverbial *all* mostly modifies either a predicative adjective or equivalent word(-group), or an adverbial adjunct or clause. It is but rarely that we find it modifying an attributive adjective (?), a classifying genitive or a verb.

The adverbial *all* mostly denotes that nothing is wanting of whatever is expressed by the following word(-group) or clause, and is more commonly said of notions expressing something undesirable than of such as express the reverse. Hence it approximates more frequently to *utterly* than to *perfectly*. Before prepositional adverbs, such as *over*, *round*, etc., it clearly suggests the meaning of *whole*, while in some connections hardly any of the original meaning of *all* makes itself felt. For the development of adnominal *all* into adverbial *all* see 11, Obs. I.

a) *all* modifying a predicative adjective or equivalent word-group.

1) For us to levy power | Proportionable to the enemy | Is *all impossible*.  
RICH. II, II, 2, 126.

So three doors off the chaise was stayed, | Where they did all get in, |  
Six precious souls, and *all agog* | To dash through thick and thin.  
COWPER, John Gilpin, X. (may also be understood as a numeral.)

*All loose* her negligent attire, | *All loose* her golden hair, | Hung Margaret  
o'er her slaughter'd sire. SCOTT, Lay, I, x.

Her lover 'gainst her father's clan, | With Carr in arms had stood, | When  
Mathouse-burn to Melrose ran | *All purple* with their blood. *lb.*, I, x.

She's young . . . *all beautiful*. BYRON, *Werner*, IV, 1.

"Boxer's pretty well, I hope?" — "*All thriving*, Caleb," replied Dot. DICK., *Cricket*, I, 26.

At the twelfth round the latter gentleman was *all abroad*, as the saying is. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

He was not *all unhappy*. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 795.

Of course, Sowerby thinks it *all right*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 74.

There's your chair, *all ready* for you. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. IX, 153.

- 2) α) Lord Curzon is *all against* any form of Home Rule being accepted by the Unionist Party. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5466, 2b. (against = opposed to.)

I am *all for* women's suffrage, but I want it all round. LLOYD GEORGE.<sup>1)</sup> (for = in favour of.)

β) GREY. The quarrel is between our masters and us their men. — SAM. 'Tis *all one* . . . when I have fought with the men, I will be cruel with the maids. *Rom. and Jul.*, I, 1, 22.

It's *all one* to me, whether I go or stay. MURRAY, s. v. *all*, C, II, 5!

γ) Spain would have given us a reformation *all other* than that devised by Luther or Calvin. *Notes and Quer.*

δ) Your legs are not so long as *all that*. GÜNTH., *Leerb.*

Note the use of *all* before a predicative adjective in concessive clauses, as in:

And on the thought my words brake forth, | *All incoherent* as they were — ,  
Their eloquence was little worth, | But yet she listen'd. BYRON, *Mazepa*, VI. (*all . . . as* = *however*.)

He saw clearly that, *all unworthy* as he was, he might henceforth rest secure of her affection. ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. V, 77.

b) *all* modifying an adverbial adjunct or clause.

- 1) α) i. Here lies a brother by a sister slain, | *All for the common good of womankind*. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 192.

He had a coarse . . . kind of eloquence *all about dogs, cats . . . and weasel-hunting*. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

- ii. *All at once* . . . the name of Will's ship flashed across her mind. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 240.

β) i. \* This impost was *all along* felt to be a great burthen. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, II, VII, 123.<sup>2)</sup> (= *all the time*.)

One of the highest living Indian authorities has *all along* declared that there is no famine in Bengal. *Athen.*, 1874, Feb., 283.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\* He that foots it best may be sometimes found *all along*. THOMAS BROOKS, *Works*, VI, 441.<sup>4)</sup> (= *lying full length*.)

I found a woman of a matchless form | Stretch'd *all along* upon the marble floor. TUKE, *Advent. of Five Hours*, II, 1.<sup>4)</sup>

- ii. \* The coach was in the yard, shining very much *all over*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 33a.

Laache *all over*. MURRAY, s. v. *all over*.

\*\* It's *all over* with poor John. *Ib.*

- iii. \* Hands *all round*! God the traitor's hope confound! TEN.

\*\* To make things pleasant *all round*. MURRAY, s. v. *all round*.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 226.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *along*, 5.

<sup>3)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *all*, III, 3.    <sup>4)</sup> HOFPE, *Sup. Lex.*<sup>2)</sup>

Home Rule *all round* is a factor in efficient democracy. The Nation (Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 20c).

\*\*\* Taking them *all round*, they created a really fine impression indeed. Westm. Gaz., No. 6041, 19b.

Note also: \* *an all-round man*, actor, scholar, etc.

\*\* A British piano unsurpassed for *all-round* excellence. Il. Lond. News, No. 3832, Advert.

\*\*\* It struck me that while the cannonade was an *all round* one in this direction, there was... another fight going on. ARCH. FORBES, Experiences, II, 80.<sup>1)</sup>

- 7) i. For courtesy wins woman *all as well* | As valour may. TEN., Last Tourn., 692,

But I should *all as soon* believe that his (sc. manners), | Sir Lancelot's, were as noble as the King's, | As I could think, sweet lady, yours would be | Such as they are, were you the sinful Queen. TEN., Guin., 348.

- ii. I thank you *all the same*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 45.

- iii. He was *all the more resolved* to go. TEN., Lover's Tale.

Fifty years ago... children had fewer books to read and were *all the better* scholars. Westm. Gaz., No. 5484, 4c.

Compare: The danger makes the sport *only the pleasanter*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 33.

- iv. For threescore years, in penance spent, | My knees those flinty stones have worn; | Yet *all too little* to atone | For knowing what should ne'er be known. SCOTT, Lay, II, v. (More or less archaic, but apparently reviving in the latest English.)

But ah! alas, he was *all too late*. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. VIII, 87.

Life piled on life | Were *all too little*. TEN., Ulysses, 25.

To Lionel the time went by *all too quickly*. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XVI.

The hours and the days wore themselves away quickly — *all too quickly* for Athena Maule and Hew Lingard. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. VIII, 123.

"May all your servants ever | Love you as I do him! Yet that's too much." —

"'Tis *all too much*. BRIDGES, Hum. of the Court, II, 2, 1225.

The working-classes will benefit most by the adoption of Simplified Spelling, because their time for education is most limited and, therefore, a saving to them of... a year in their *all-too-limited* school life is a matter of vital importance. Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 4a.

It is *all too sad* for words. Graph., No. 2323, 1010a

- 2) None of noble sort | Would so offend a virgin and extort | A poor soul's patience, *all to make you sport*. MIDS., III, 2, 161. (*all* = *only*.)

He hopes his Theresia may succeed him, *all as a son would have done*. CARLYLE, Fred. the Great, II, 306. (*all* = *quite*.)

He (sc. Shakespeare) would be among the Bohemians;... he would mix with them in their merry meetings and befriend them *all he could*. DAVID MASSON (Athen., No. 4514, 614). (*all* = *as much as*.)

- e) *all* modifying an attributive adjective: Alice was in *all her best* clothes. ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. XI, 251. (= *her very best* clothes; or, perhaps, more plausibly: *the whole of her best* clothes.)

- d) *all* modifying a classifying genitive: When I think of..., I have *all a mother's* fondness in my eyes. LADY MONTAGU.<sup>2)</sup> (*all* = *quite*.)

The old man raised his face, and smiled; | And light'n'd up his faded eye, With *all a poet's* ecstasy. SCOTT, Lay, Introd., 90.

1) HOPPE, Sup. Lex.<sup>2</sup>

2) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng. I, 226.

Canada is practically an independent nation with *all an independent nation's* pride and patriotism, while she remains a devoted member of the British Empire. Periodical. <sup>1)</sup>

e) *all* modifying a verb:

I cannot *all command* the strings. TEN., II, 106. <sup>2)</sup>

Stolen . . . a black Gelding . . . *trots all*, except forced, and then paces a little. London Gaz. of 1705. <sup>3)</sup>

Note. In the following quotation *kindled* is best understood as a participial adjective: (He) saw the pair, | Enoch and Annie, sitting hand-in-hand, | His large gray eyes and weather-beaten face | *All-kindled* by a still and sacred fire. TEN., En. Ard., 71.

14. Some obsolete or obsolescent applications of adverbial *all* deserve special mention.

a) In old poetry, especially ballads, *all* is sometimes found in the sense of a weakened *just* or *even*, or more frequently as a mere stop-gap.

*All* in the Downs the fleet was moor'd. GAY, Black-eyed Susan.

To-morrow is our wedding-day, | And we will then repair | Unto the Bell at Edmonton | *All* in a chaise and pair. COWPER, John Gilpin, III.

He . . . | Gave them a chain of twelve marks' weight, | *All* as he lighted down. SCOTT, Marm., I, XI.

His bugle-horn hung by his side, | *All* in a wolf-skin baldric tied. Id., Lay, III, XVI.

They laid him on it (sc. the litter-bier) | *All* in the hollow of his shield. TEN., Ger. and En., 568.

b) In Early Modern English, and occasionally later as an archaism, we meet with *all* in the sense of *exactly* or *quite* in the combinations:

**all so.** Now coalesced into *also* with a changed meaning. MURRAY, s. v. *all*, c, 7: But *all so soon* as the all-cheering sun | Should in the farthest east begin to draw | The shady curtains from Aurora's bed, | Away from light steals home my heavy son. Rom. and Jul., I, 1, 138.

What occasion of import | Hath *all so* long detained you from your wife? Taming of the Shrew, III, 2, 105. (= German *gar so lange*.)

**all soon.** War is *all soon* enough when it cannot be helped. GEN. P. THOMPSON, Exerc., V, 191. <sup>4)</sup>

c) In Early Modern English *all* still appears occasionally before the verbal prefix *to*, corresponding to the German *zer* as in *zerbrechen*, and the Latin *di(s)* as in *dirumpere* and *disjungere*. Verbs with this prefix being at length rarely used without *all*, the fact that *to* belonged to the verb was lost sight of; consequently it was written separate, or even joined to *all*: *all to-torn*, *all to torn*, *alto torn*. This led to *al(l)to* or *all to* being considered as an adverb of degree in the meaning of *wholly*, *completely*. As such it is especially found before verbs beginning with the prefix *be*. MURRAY, s. v. *all*, c, 14 and 15; FLÜGEL, Dict., s. v. *all*, III, 3; FRANZ, E. S., XVIII.

1) FLÜGEL, Dict., s. v. *all*, I, a.    2) Ib., III, 7.    3) MURRAY, s. v. *all*, C, 4.

4) Ib., 6.



And a certain woman cast a piece of a millstone upon Abimelech's head, and *all to brake* his scull. *Bible*, *Judges*, IX, 53.

Her wings . . . Were *all to-ruffl'd*, and sometimes impaired. *MILTON*, *Comus*, 380.  
We be fallen into the dirt, and be *all-to dirtied*, even up to the ears. *LATIMER*,  
*Serm. and Rem.*, 398.<sup>1)</sup>

She *all-to-be-fooled* me. *BUNYAN*, *Pilgr. Progr.*, II, 48.<sup>1)</sup>

15. The adverb *all* appears as the first element of a great many compounds, with different degrees of coalescence. Compare the gradation in *all alive*, *all-important*, *all-powerful*, *almighty*.

The stress is not on *all*, except in a few compounds, in which the meaning of the component parts is no longer felt separately, as in *also* (14, *b*).

An *all-successful* minister . . . may it not be as well to ostracize him for awhile? *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 76.

Mention was here especially made of the *all-venerable* and *all-wise* Lord Boanerges. *Ib.*, 78.

He is in God's Hand now, and the *All-Powerful* is likewise the *All-Merciful*. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 277.

It becomes *all-important* to consider what his proposals will involve. *Times*, No. 1847, 410*d*.

#### ANY.

16. *Any* is used *a*) as an indefinite pronoun or numeral, *b*) as an adverb.
17. *a*) As an indefinite pronoun or numeral *any* refers at once to quality and to quantity or number. The more suggestive it is of quality, the stronger is the stress with which it is uttered. Weak-stressed *any* often differs but little from the indefinite article. (*Ch. XXXI*, 7, *c*.)

- b*) In its ordinary application *any* indicates that a specimen, variety or portion may be singled out at random of whatever we are speaking about. It has, therefore, the force of a concessive clause opening with a compound of *ever* (*Ch. XVII*, 93), or with the disjunctive *whether* (*Ch. XVII*, 97 ff).

There is a hamlet there in the hollow, which is a disgrace to *any* country, *any* owner, *any* agent. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 11.

You have no fortune, nor *any* prospect of *any* until your mother dies. *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 135.

Note *a*) Sometimes such a concessive clause follows for further emphasis or distinctness.

He would refuse to do *anything whatsoever*. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 120.

He was ready and keen to go with *any* rescue party on *any* errand, *however dangerous*. *Mrs. WARD*, *Sir George Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIV, 203*a*.

*β*) The same purpose is sometimes served by other words or phrases.  
See also 18, Obs. IV, *δ*.

1) *MURRAY*, *S. V. al!*, C, 15.

- i. And what have I ever done or said to Hugh that Hugh has *any* right *on earth* to forgive me for? JAMES PAYN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.
- ii. For 't would have anger'd *any* heart *alive* | To hear the men deny't. Macb., III, 6, 16. (Compare FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*, s.v. *alive*.)
- iii. My brother respected and admired the general as much as I did — that is to say, more than *any mortal* man. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 92.  
I will buy her *any mortal* thing she chooses. BIRMINGHAM, *Spanish Gold*, Ch. II, 13.
- iv. There are many writers capable of producing admirable and even memorable books, who, nevertheless fail to quicken in us *any slightest* ripple of interest concerning themselves. W. J. DAWSON, *The Makers of Eng. Fiction*, Ch. XVII, 228. (Note the absence of definite article and compare 18, Obs. XIV, a.)

18. Obs. I. In many cases the concessive idea which is implied in *any* is either appreciative or depreciative; i. e. *any* sometimes suggests such a clause as *however great* (*rich, powerful, much*, etc.) sometimes such a clause as *however small* (*poor, weak, little*, etc.). In the latter case it is often followed by *at all*. (3, Obs. IV.)

- i. I wouldn't have her heart for *anything*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 9.

He was of such a generous disposition that he would give away *anything* to any one. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 33.

I'm sure I'd give *any* money if I could cheer you up. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IX, 78.

Clive was justly regarded as a man equal to *any* command. MAC., *Clive*.

He could not but feel that he was a great match for *any* farmer's daughter. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*.

Note the idiom in: Whatever was to happen during the day, she must *at any cost* have control over her outward actions. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VI, 116. (French *coûte que coûte*.)

He realized that he must impress the fact upon his mother *at any cost*. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 118.

- ii. I am glad you take *any* pleasure in my poor poem. KEATS, *Letter to Shelley*. (subaudition: little though it may be.)

It was a proud thought that he had been able to render her *any* protection and assistance. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IX, 77.

They were half moved with the consolation of getting *any* hundreds at all without working for them. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 247.

Maria's elder brother had been at first quite willing that his sister... should marry with *any* bridegroom who presented himself. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLII, 435.

*Anything* was good enough for an old soldier. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIX, 205.

In a few weeks he had probably made the acquaintance of "everybody who was *anybody*" in the London society of that day. TRAILL, *Sterne*, Ch. V, 50.

It was from Faversham's mouth that he also, for the first time, accepted *any* remarks on his purchases that were not wholly rap-turous. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. VI, 126.

You must have a typewriter, but—don't get *anything*. *Athen.*, No. 4433, 427b.

- II. A peculiar application of the appreciative *any* is that when it is practically equivalent to an appreciative adjective preceded by the indefinite article. It has this meaning especially before *amount* or *number* and before *time*: *any amount* (or *number*) = *a large amount* (or *number*), *any time* = *a long time* or *a large number of times*. See also STOF., E. S., XXVI, 144 ff.
- i. Lots of successful men have never been poor; you can name *any number* who never went through anything like what nine students out of ten, in Paris for instance, suffer cheerfully. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. IX, 161. The company was very cosmopolitan; there were present two Russians, two Poles, one Austrian, three Germans, four French, one Dane, one Dutchman and *any number* of Americans and Colonists. STEAD, Rev. of Rev. Merely express and mail carriers. We have *any quantity* of them all over the country and the world. Ib. 1)
- I must say I never saw (in Australia) any getting drunk in squads such as Max O'Rell describes, though there was *any amount* of shouting (= standing drinks all round) going on. Lit. World, 1894, 16 Nov., 371a. 1)
- ii. Ay, that I do; and have done *any time* these three hundred years. Merry Wives, I, 1, 13. (= Dutch wie weet hoe lang or vaak)
- You have white hairs, I said — Had'em *any time* these twenty years. EMERSON, Autocr. of the Breakfast table, Ch. VII, 63b. (= Dutch wie weet hoe lang.)
- They had been in the habit of being together *any time* these fifteen years. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 40. (= Dutch wie weet hoe vaak.)
- III. The depreciatory *any* is sometimes equivalent to *any (at all) appreciable (considerable, essential, large, etc.)*. We find *any* in this shade of meaning especially in interrogative, negative or conditional sentences or clauses, or such as are negative or conditional in import. The word modified is, naturally, one which conveys a notion that admits of being measured, such a collocation as *any length (of time)* occurring with great frequency in this particular sense. For a discussion of this shade of meaning of *any* see also FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S., XXIV and STOFFEL, E. S., XXVI.
- It may here be observed that *some* may have a corresponding force in affirmative sentences or clauses. (149, Obs. II.)
- i. We must soon hear whether they really do assemble *any force*. SCOTT, Legend of Montrose, 461.
- I doubt whether any one endowed with the smallest power of observation could have been in his company for *any length of time* without being struck with his appearance. (?) An Englishman in Paris, II, 6.
- ii. \* Voiced stops cannot be maintained for *any length of time*. SWEET, Prim. of Phon., § 124.
- In these districts horses cannot be bought in *any number* without the express permission of the Minister of War. Times.
- He is a good sportsman and naturalist, but he does not treat of these subjects at *any length* in this book. Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 17b.
- This was no job for a white man to stay at for *any length of time*. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 85.
- \*\* Only once during dinner was there *any conversation* that included the young gentlemen. DICK., Dom b., Ch. XII, 106. (Underlying notion: There was *not any (appreciable) conversation* that included the young gentlemen during dinner, except once.)

1) STOF., E. S., XXVI.

The next tale of *any length* from Thackeray's pen in the magazine was that called Catharine. TROL. Thack., 65. (Underlying notion: There had *not* been *a(ny)* tale of *any (appreciable) length* for some time, until that called Catharine appeared.) She felt unable to support the character she had assumed for *any length of time*. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXI, 225. (*unable* = *not able*; the sentence is, therefore, practically negative.)

On the three months of the year machinery alone shows *any decline*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 2b. (Underlying notion: . . . *no* other matter than machinery shows *any (appreciable) decline*.)

During that memorable trip over the Atlantic, the highest speed maintained for *any length of time* was 26.4 knots. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 114. (Underlying notion: . . . *no* higher speed than 26.4 knots was maintained for *any appreciable length of time* during etc.)

- iii. \* Stamps are liable to deterioration when exposed to view for *any length of time*. CAMDEN PRATT, Unknown London. 1)

The same objection applies to both 1 and 2, when carried out to *any length*. SWEET, Handbk. of Phon., § 300

\*\* The Upper House was under the absolute control of the Crown and the Commons, and was indebted only to their moderation for *any power* which it might be suffered to retain. MAC., Addison, (772b). (Underlying notion: *If* the Upper House was suffered to retain *any (appreciable) power*, it was indebted etc.)

Every man of *any capacity* holds within himself two men, the wise and the foolish. FORSTER, Life of Dickens, I, 89. (Underlying notion: Every man *if* he has *any (appreciable) capacity* etc.)

In giving passages of *any length* in phonetic writing . . . it is necessary to have an alphabet which [etc.]. SWEET, Handbk. of Phon., § 303. (Underlying notion: *If* one gives passages of *any (appreciable) length* etc.)

Wind = air naturally in motion with *any degree of velocity*. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict. (Underlying notion: . . . if it has *any (appreciable) degree of velocity*.)

I feel certain that every soldier with *any experience* will support me when I say [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., No. CLXXXIX, 234a. (Underlying notion: . . . *if* he has *any (appreciable) experience* etc.)

Comrades to whose valour and military skill he owed *any success* that might have been achieved in South Africa. Il. Lond. News. (Underlying notion: *If* he had achieved *any (appreciable) success*, he owed it etc.)

Note a) An analogous notion may be implied in compounds of *any*, such as *anybody*, *anything*, etc.

I thought you knew him if he was *anybody*. DICK., Sketches. (= *anybody at all*.) She was delighted that her sister should have found *anybody* whom she cared to talk to or who could understand her. RIDER HAGGARD, Jess, Ch. IV, 33.

Of great frequency is the phrase *every one* (or *everybody*) *who is* (or *was*) *any one* (or *anybody*).

It only remains to say that every one who was *any one* seemed to be at the Durbar. Punch.

Every one who is *any one* can understand my indignation. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, D, 52.

Everybody — who was *anybody* had been asked except the Titbats. Ib., I, C. 60.

β) *Any* is often followed by such words as *considerable*, *essential*, *great*, etc. to bring out this secondary meaning more explicitly. Such a word, indeed, is often indispensable to preclude *any* being understood in its ordinary

1) FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S., XXIV.



meaning. Thus in the following quotations the omission of the intensive adjective would render the sentence ambiguous:

- i. Poor Charles! I'm sure I wish it were in my power to be of *any essential service* to him. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1.

It is difficult to conceive how borrowings and lendings to *any large extent* could be carried on without the medium of the Stock Exchange. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 112.

They are not conscious of making *any great effort*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 275.

He was glad to know that they could not do *any material damage*. *Times*. The end of the war has not been received with *any great enthusiasm*, either in Russia or in Japan. *Daily Mail*.

- ii. *Any particular merit* he may have possessed, or whatever his special qualification for his work, cannot be related. WALTERS, *Tennyson*, 8.

Conversely the intensive adjective does not appear to be absolutely necessary in:

It was only in Rome and at Fourmies that there was *any formidable display* of violence on the first of May. *Graphic*.

No force of *any considerable size* could hope to invade England. *Daily Mail*.

;) In the following quotations *much* has about the same meaning as *any appreciable*:

The only objects about which he ever displayed *much* enthusiasm were silver and cattle. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

- IV. In some connections approximately the same meaning as *any* is expressed by:

- α) the adnominal relative pronouns *what* (Ch. XXXIX, 4, e) or *what(so)ever* (Ch. XLI, 7). Thus *any* might be replaced by *what* or *what(so)ever*, and vice versa, in:

- i. He had promised to grant *any* boon the young nobleman should ask. *Black's Read. for the Young, Story of Old Mort.*, 38.

- ii. Even the fishermen armed themselves with *whatever* weapons they could procure. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 45.

The result would have confused and wearied, rather than interested or instructed, *whatever* class of readers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 10b.

Thus also *anybody* (*whom*) and *anything* (*that*) are often interchangeable with the substantive relatives *whom(soever)* and *what(ever)* respectively.

"I know that, if I was to die to-morrow, Quilp could marry *anybody* he pleased — now that he could, I know!" There was quite a scream of indignation at this idea. Marry *whom* he pleased! DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. IV, 15b. (Note the varied practice.)

I shall agree to *anything that* is desired. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 376.

- β) the superlative *the least*, and its synonyms *the faintest*, *the slightest*, *the smallest*. Compare Ch. XXXI, 20, b, Note, and also MURRAY, s. v. *least*, 1, b.

They would like to see him dare to think of marrying *any* of them; they would like to see *the faintest approach* to such a thing. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. IV, 15b.

I visited all the scenes that were in *the least* degree associated with Winnie. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIV, Ch. I, 386.

Have you *the least* idea of what they are talking about? BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (241).

- γ) the archaic or vulgar word-group *ever* (*e'er*) *a(n)*. Compare Ch. XXXI, 68, Obs. IV.

Reginald Front-de-Boeuf and Philip de Malvoisin know the use of curfew as well as William the Bastard himself, or *e'er a* Norman adventurer that fought at Hastings. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 28.

Methinks the old Count Siegenhof maintain'd | His feudal hospitality as high | As *e'er another* prince of the empire. BYRON, *Werner*, IV, 1, (555a). She said she'd never walk behind *ever a* beggarly civilian. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 82.

- δ) the following adjectives. Compare 17, Note β, and also Ch. XXXI, 68, Obs. IV, c.

i. There are women I know who can't do *a blessed* thing except write letters. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella-Maris*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. He believed Osborne to be... the most generous of *created* boys. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

iii. Blackberry has scarcely done *an earthly* thing for this month past. GOLD-SMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. X, (292).

Thun mayest thou to James Stuart tell, | Roderick will keep the lake and fell, | Nor lackey, with his freeborn clan, | The pageant pomp of *earthly* man. SCOTT, *Lady*, II, xxxv, 12.

iv. He had never repeated the lines to *living* mortal. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVII, 190.

v. He did not believe that *mortal* presumption could have carried Nathaniel Pipkin so far. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 154.

There was the chance of being blown up in some of the many experiments which Martin was always trying, with the most wondrous results in the way of explosions that *mortal* boy ever heard of. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

I said I would not come near you; and, in spite of such temptation as never before fell to *mortal* man. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. IX, 75.

Observe also that the substantive *mortal* and some other nouns without the indefinite article sometimes have the value of *anybody*. Compare Ch. XXXI, 68, Obs. IV, b and d.

i. I should be as soon displeased with Heaven for refusing the wildest wish *mortal* can form. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXVI, 406.

Some Christian had thought it his or her duty to stab the good soul who had never done *mortal* a wrong. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XIII, 139.

ii. The little Infanta was, in truth, at seventeen, most that *heart* could desire. BERN. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. II, 14.

- V. From its generalizing force *any* is eminently adapted to make a sweeping negative. Thus the insertion of *any* into *They were married without witnesses* (MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 283) would emphasize the negative implied in *without*. Sometimes the negation is further emphasized by *at all*. (3, Obs. IV.)

The coach was in the yard, shining very much all over, but without *any* horses to it as yet. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 33a.

Without a military education of *any* sort, or much conversing with *any* of the profession, from his judgment and good sense, he led on an army like an experienced officer and a brave soldier. MAC., *Lord Clive*, (508b).

She remembered that she had no money with her. She never had *any*, except what her mother gave her for her small expenses and during the last few days she had not cared to ask for *any*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VIII, 147.

Thus also *any* is frequent in sentences and clauses which, although not containing a negative, are negative in import.

I wonder *any one* should believe such a story of so prudent a lady as Miss Nicely. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (370). (Underlying notion: I did not expect that *any one* would believe such a story of so prudent a lady as Miss Nicely.)

Two or three days elapsed before *any* opportunity presented for returning down the river. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 154). (Underlying idea: No opportunity for returning down the river presented until two or three days had elapsed.) It is with a sad heart, my child, that I draw the sword against *any* fellow-creature. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 25. (Underlying notion: I would much rather not draw the sword against *any* fellow-creature.)

Especial mention may be made of the use of *any* in:

a) adnominal clauses whose antecedent is modified by a superlative, or by *only* or *all* with the secondary notion of *only*.

i. Then first appeared with distinctness that constitution which... deserves to be regarded as the *best* under which *any* great society has ever yet existed during many ages. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 17.

It is the *hardest* thing *any one* can do. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VIII, 156.

ii. (This) must be a great relief to the feelings of a man in the blues, rows being the *only* form of amusement in which he can take *any* interest. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, II, 30.

iii. I did not, and do not, suppose that the neckerchief was all the linen he wore, but it was *all* he showed or gave *any* hint of. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37a.

β) adverbial clauses of degree introduced by either *as* or *than*. (Ch. XVII, 124 ff.)

i. The Major had a sincere liking and regard for his sister-in-law, whom he pronounced... to be as fine a lady as *any* in England. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 23. (Underlying notion: No lady (or not *any* lady) was a finer lady than his sister-in-law.)

His hat was as well brushed, perhaps, as that of *any* man in this empire. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 22.

He (sc. Oliver Cromwell) was succeeded by his son Richard as quietly as *any* King had ever been succeeded by *any* Prince of Wales. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 137.

ii. Both of them (sc. Greek and Latin) are far more so (sc. flexional) than *any* of the languages of modern Europe. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 223.

Kingsley was very deeply impressed with the gravity and danger of the crisis—more so than than almost *any* of his friends. THOM. HUGHES, *Pref. Mem. to Kingsley's Alton Locke*, 14.

He was far more eager than *any* of his companions. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*.

Note. *Any* is not now used after the conjunction *as* or *than* when the similitude concerns things of a different nature, i. e. when the comparison is made to bring out a high degree of some quality. Observe that the preceding adverb *as* is in this case weak-stressed. See Ch. XVII, 126, Obs. II. The unstressed nature of *any* has caused the indefinite article to be used instead. Compare Ch. XXXI, 7, c and also Ch. XVII, 126, Obs. IV.

I will aggravate my voice so that I will roar you as gently as *any* sucking-dove. MIDS., II, 1, 85.

His mouth is wider than *any* church door. PLANCHÉ, *Fortunio*, I, 4.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, III, 267.

VI. α) It is also owing to its generalizing force, that *any* is especially frequent in sentences or clauses representing an action or state, or the existence of anything, as merely contingent or doubtful. It is, therefore, often found together with *can* (*could*) or *may* (*might*), whether these words are found in the same sentence or clause or in the one that is syntactically connected with it. This notion of uncertainty, sometimes emphasized by *at all* (3, Obs. IV), often distinguishes its meaning from that of either *every* or *all*. For a comparison see Obs. VIII. See also KRUMMACHER, *Die neueren Sprachen*, XIV, I, 45.

i. *Any* fool *can* make money, but only a wise man can keep it. *Proverb*. (He suspended the basket) by string and iron-wire twisted together, defiant of *any* sharp instrument which his persecutors *could* command. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 239.

Hunting has this charm, the greatest of all attractions; — *any* man *can* do it. TROL., *Good Words for 1879* (STOF., Leesb., I, 40).

ii. Let me tell him, gentlemen, that *any* gestures of dissent or disapprobation in which he *may* indulge in this court will not go down with you. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 309.

He *might* be seen driving *any* Sunday in Hyde Park. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 26.

*Any* one *might* take you for the winner, and me for the loser. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 10a.

He was by no means inclined to throw away *any* advantage which *might* arise to his child from such a friendship. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, I.

β) For the same reason *any* is frequent in questions and in adverbial clauses of condition or concession, which essentially imply uncertainty.

i. \* Have you got money, or have *any* of your relations money? or are *any* of them going to put it into the concern? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 65. Has there been *any* trouble — *anything* especial? MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 222.

\*\* He had never been able to understand why *any* one who could get meat should eat *anything* else. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XV, 277.

Whether there really is *any* prisoner still living behind that wall is another matter. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 17b.

ii. If they had *any* religion at all, it was marked by cruel sacrifices to a malignant unseen being. WALT. BES., *London*, I, 42.

Language isn't my strong point, if I have *any* strong point at all. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 182.

If *any* one made *any* disagreeable remarks, I should just tell the whole story as it happened. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XII, 224.

iii. When the union of the sexes first takes place, then an indissoluble marriage has been entered upon, whether or not it has been preceded by *any* ceremony. *Stead's Annual for 1906*, 31a.

Thus also in sentences which are concealed questions, or in sentences or clauses which imply a condition.

i. Bending over the dead body of the dog, she tried to discover *any* signs of life. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. IV, 38. (= *whether* there were *any* signs of life.)



- ii. As an exhibition of firing with *any* precise object, it was upon the whole, perhaps, a failure. DICK., PICKW., Ch. XIX, 166. (Underlying notion: If the firing had *any* precise object, the exhibition was upon the whole, perhaps, a failure.)

Qualities I am very sorry *any* children should prematurely change for worldly wisdom. ID., COP., Ch. V, 35*b*.

*Any* of the bodies that had clothes worth taking were carefully stripped before being consigned to this open grave. MCCARTHY, SHORT HIST., Ch: XIII, 190. On arriving at *any* large station the English traveller is struck with three peculiarities. REV. J. G. WOOD, Good Words for 1894 (STOF., LEESB., I, 64).

- VII. *Not*... *any* varies with *no*. The latter, however, has not the distinctly qualitative and generalizing meaning of the former, and, accordingly, is not such an emphatic negative. Conversely *no* sometimes conveys a secondary notion which is absent in *not*... *any*: viz. sometimes it more or less distinctly implies that whatever is expressed by the predicate applies to some other person or thing. The difference is only clearly brought out when the words have strong stress. Thus *I have not written any* (strong-stressed) *letters* might be supplemented: *whether pressing or not*, or *however pressing*, etc.; while *I have written no letters* (with *no* more strongly stressed than *letters*) suggests some such subaudition as *but I have done some other writing*. For a detailed discussion of the difference see under *no*.

- VIII. *a*) In sentences or clauses which are not interrogative, negative, conditional or concessive, *any* is often confounded with *every* and *all*, especially by Dutchmen. With them the confusion is, no doubt, due to the fact that the ordinary Dutch equivalents of all these words are the same, to wit: *ieder(e)*, *elk(e)*, or *alle*. Compare: *I shall highly appreciate any observation(s) that you may submit to my attention* with *I have paid due attention to every observation (all the observations) that you have made*. If it is borne in mind that *every* and *all* are mostly used with reference to number alone, and *any* to both quality and number, the differentiation does not seem to be particularly difficult. Thus *Every house has its trial* merely denotes that not one house is exempt from trials, while *any house has its trial* adds to this some such subaudition as *however rich or whether rich or poor*.

- β*) The notion that *any* implies more than *every*, which is the point in the following passage, quoted by TEN BRUG. (Taalst., IX), is hardly in accordance with the meaning conveyed by these words, *every* being not infrequently found in succession to *any* as a more comprehensive word. See below under *η*.

"Money, Paul, can do *anything*." — "*Anything*, Papa?" — "Yes, *anything* — almost," said Mr. Dombey. "*Anything* means *everything*" don't it, Papa? "asked his son, not observing, or possibly not understanding the qualification. — "It includes it, yes", said Mr. Dombey.

- γ*) While *any* is associated with uncertain or contingent action (VI) *every* and *all* are mostly found in sentences and clauses expressing fact. Compare: *Anybody can do this* with *Everybody has done this*. *He can read almost any classic without the aid of a*

dictionary with *He has read almost every classic (all the classics). This may happen any day with This has happened every day.*

Observe also the change of meaning which the substitution of *any* for *all* would involve in the following quotation:

He must destroy *all* remains of this detestable will. EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 64.

Sometimes the form of the predicate is not in harmony with the notion of uncertainty called forth by *any*.

He was laying a regular train, with lexicon and grammar, for blowing up and blasting (as it were) *any* difficulty he found in the choruses. DE QUINCEY, Conf. of an Opium-eater, Ch. II, 12. (*might find* instead of *found* would seem to be more appropriate.)

With this electric machine it was his greatest pleasure and glory to administer small shocks to *any* small boys who were rash enough to venture into his study. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 237. (*were* has the value of *should be*.)

As a matter of principle I always burn *any* letters I receive. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. IV, 68. (*receive* has the value of *may receive*.)

- d) The difference between *any* and *every* is, apparently, mostly distinctly felt; anyhow it is but rarely that we find *every* where *any* would seem to be required by the sense, and vice versa. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *every*, 5. The following are instances of the, apparently, erroneous use of *every* for *any* and vice versa:

i. I am sure I shal tel you more than *every* Angler yet knows. WALTON, Compleat Angler, II, 52.

I dare say you have seen enough of Edward to know that he would prefer the Church to *every* other profession. JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sens., Ch. XXIV, 146.

ii. And he was at last dismissed, and removed from *any* trust, for no other reason but because he was not wicked enough. CLARENDON, Hist. Reb. 1)

- e) The difference between *all* and *any* is less clearly established, i. e. *all* not seldom implies a notion of quality besides number or quantity. According to MURRAY (s. v. *all*, I, 4) this is "now only (the case) in such phrases as *beyond all question, doubt, controversy*, etc., or where the exclusion is expressed by a verb, as *to deny, disclaim renounce all connexion*." But this area of incidence is certainly far too narrow for qualitative *all*. Not only must the notion of exclusion be extended so as to include a great many kindred notions, but *all* is qualitative in certain expressions where any idea of exclusion is out of the question, such as *at all costs* (Ch. XXV, 20), *at all hazards*, *at (until) all hours (times)*, *in all places*, *in all weathers*.

i. Things *without all* remedy | Should be without regard: what's done is done. Macb., III, 2, II. (= *beyond all* remedy.)

The 'éclaircissement' which had taken place at Mermaiden's Fountain had *removed all* wish for sudden departure. SCOTT., Bride of Lam., Ch. XIX, 196. (Compare: Neill had recaptured Allahabad and *cleared* the country of *any* traces of rebellion. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 189.)

Scrooge reverently *disclaimed all* intention to offend, or *any* knowledge of having wilfully "bonneted" the spirit at any period of his life. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 35. (Note that *all* and *any* are used alternately in precisely the same meaning.)

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVIII.

The visitor, *declining all* refreshment but a cup of tea, retired. *Id.*, Crick., I, 33.

Without all the qualities which made him the jest and the torment of those among whom he lived, without the officiousness, the inquisitiveness, the effrontery, the toad-eating, the *insensibility* to *all* reproof, he (sc. Boswell) never could have produced so excellent a book. *Mac.*, Boswell's Life of Johnson, (176b).

*All* cleverness, whether in the rapid use of that difficult instrument the tongue, or in some other art unfamiliar to villagers, was in itself *suspicious*. *G. Eliot*, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. I, 2. (Observe that *all* is used, although a clause of disjunctive concession follows.)

*All* beer *disagrees* with me confoundedly. *Thack.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 175. But his work is quite unsuited to serve as an introduction to my Reader, and will be found to differ so totally in plan and execution from the present one as to *preclude all* idea of rivalry on my part. *Sweet*, *A. S. Primer*, Pref., 5.

- ii. \* Water *at all costs* must be had. *Con. Doyle*, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*. Industrial trouble should be avoided *at all cost*. *The New Age*, No. 1173, 473b. (The singular is rare in this expression.)

\*\* She must *at all hazards* be turned back. *Rudy*, *Kipling*, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

He knew that *at all hazards* he must get that miserable note into his own possession and destroy it. *Anstey*, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 214.

When once the lines of advance are clearly laid down, a forward policy *at all hazards* will be the one way of safety. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5243, 1c.

\*\*\* No mortal man can be seriously wise *at all hours*. *Trol.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VI, 53.

Nobody is wise *at all hours*. *Reade*, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VI, 60.

From these (sc. gentlemen) she heard... how very imprudent Mrs. Brown's conduct had been with young Swankey of the Body Guard, sitting up with him on deck *until all hours*. *Thack.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXV, 275.

- iv. I have a confused recollection of ... meetings *at all times* and *in all places*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5496, 3b.

- v. She was used to go about *in all weathers*. *Dick.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 50a. The doctor has to face *all weathers at all hours* of the night and day. *Bern. Shaw*, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref., 28.

He paced up and down there, *at all hours in all weathers*. *F. E. K.*, *Charles Kingsley*, Ch. IX, 191.

Here they have slept *in all weathers*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3686, 824c. (Compare: If a slave was ill, she would go to his quarters *in any weather*. *Thack.*, *Virg.*, Ch. V, 44.)

Also without *in*: It was ill-paid labour — ninepence a day fine days and sixpence *all weathers*. *Hall Caine*, *The Woman thou gavest me*, Ch. I, 2.

- ζ) Note also that *at all events* = \**at every event* = \**in any event* = *in any case* = *at any rate* = \**at all rates* = *anyhow* = *anyway* (21, b and d). The phrases marked with an asterisk seem to be unusual. *In any event* is also used in a shade of meaning differing from that of *at all events* (however this may be).

- i. "I've made mistakes in my life." — "Not many, mother dear." — "I've made a great one now, *at all events*." *Mar. Crawf.*, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 217.

The House of Lords itself "admits freely that there is a great constitutional question which requires to be dealt with." That, *at all events*, is a point gained. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5466, 2a.

- ii. "*At every event*, my dearest daughters," said the Bishop, . . . "Heaven forbid I should abandon the lamb to the wicked wolf, or noble ladies to the oppression of fainours." *SCOTT, Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVIII, 243,
- iii. *In any event*, the experiment is worth making. *Times*, No. 1815, 823c.  
We do not know whether the editors were influenced by a constitutional crisis in this country to publish them (sc. Lord Acton's Lectures on the French Revolution) at this time, but historians and politicians are, *in any event*, indebted to them for an opportunity of refreshing their memories from the annals of a period of which the beginnings at least have many points in common with the period of constitutional development at which this country has arrived. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5555, 12a.  
It seems to us extremely unlikely that the Peers will do other than reject the Government's scheme, but, *in any event*, we may add Lord Lansdowne's admission . . . to the acceptance of the Rosebery resolutions as evidence of the fact that it has at length been brought home to the conservative Party that the position they took up last year is impossible to maintain. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5466, 2a.

Dr. Amundsen has named the South Pole plateau after King Haakon VII, in evident ignorance of the fact that it had been already named King Edward VII. — a fact which we should have thought any local guide-book would have mentioned. Still, *in any event*, it is only a mistake of one word, and a purely family affair. *Punch*, No. 3689, 203a.

\*\* There are those who are confident that the Democrats are bound to win *in any event*. *Id.*, No. 6017, 1b. (= *whatever the course of events may be*. Compare: *In either event* Turkey can only hold this country by keeping herself on a war-footing. *Id.*, No. 6294, 1b).

- iv. *In any case*, he must see her as soon as possible. *MAR. CRAWF.*, Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 128.
- v. All Bassetshire knew — *at any rate* all West Bassetshire — that Miss Dunstable had been brought down in those parts in order that Mr. Sowerby might marry her. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 80.  
He had brought the Russian war to a close, which, if not glorious, was, *at any rate*, much more so than Englishmen at one time had ventured to hope. *Id.*, Ch. VIII, 75.
- vi. You are right, Minna; I must fly, *at all rates* — for your father's sake, I must fly. *SCOTT, Pirate*, Ch. XXXVII, 410.  
If thou art wise, thou wilt make for Lockerbie so soon as thy foot touches dry land, and let the packet find another bearer; *at all rates*, look it miscarries not. *Id.*, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXIII, 372.
- η) Sometimes *every* (or *all*) and *any* seem to be equally appropriate, although, of course, conveying different shades of meaning. Thus the alternative word might be used in:  
*Every* Englishman who cares for the welfare and solidarity of the Empire must regret that any misunderstanding should have arisen between the Admiralty and the Government of New Foundland. *Times*.
- θ) The fact that *any* and *every* (or *all*) express too aspects of universality often cause them to be used together, For the combination *any* and *all* see 11, Qbs. V. Compare also β), above.
- i. *Any and every* Poor-law is but a temporary measure. *CARLYLE, Past and Pres.*, Ch. I, 3.



Her righteous plan was to maintain an unbroken popularity with the pupils, at *any and every* cost of justice or comfort to the teachers. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. IX, 99.

He would have given *anything, everything* for power to ask this simple question. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXX, 267.

"By the seven stars in Allah's girdle," cried the infuriated king, "I can stand this no longer. Take my daughter! — take my kingdom! take *anything — everything*, but don't, pray, don't let us hear anything more of these detestable locusts! STOF., *Handl.*, I, 64.

What does my sex brood over? Religion, the affections, the discovery of a grey hair, *anything, everything*. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (4).

- iii. Obviously, old Newton went out on that dark, wet night in order to meet some one in the lane. That someone could not have been Sam Holder, whom he met *anywhere and everywhere*, and every day in his own house. BAR. ORCZY, *The Case of Miss Elliott*, X, Ch. III, 263.

- d) Finally it may be observed that *any*, like *every*, lacks the capability of expressing a secondary notion of *only*, which is often implied in *all*. See 3 Obs. II and 11, Obs. III, and compare 54.

- IX. The analogy to *every* (or *all*) may also, at least in part, be responsible for what seems a catachrestic use of *any* after a superlative as in *The Daily Chronicle has the largest circulation of any daily paper in London*, in which *any* (*paper*) seems to be wrongly used for *all* (*papers*). Possibly *any* has crept in here through the influence of a construction of practically the same meaning in which *any* is used in accordance with its ordinary application: *The Daily Chronicle has a larger circulation than any daily paper in London*. See MURRAY, s. v. of, 24; STOF., E. S., XXXI, 262 ff.; STRONG, LOGEMAN AND WHEELER, *Hist. of Lang.*, Ch. VIII, 149; PAUL, *Princ.*, § 118; EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 528.

He was placed there to study the laws of the land, and is *most learned of any* of the house in those of the stage. *Spectator*, II, (6).

He had the *most winning* presence of *any* man I ever saw. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XV, 287.

This man did work hard — at a task perhaps *the hardest of any* that a man may do. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 142.

I dislike you *the worst of anybody* in the world, except John Reed. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 38.

His versification is by far *the most perfect of any* English poet. SAINTSBURY, *Nineteenth Cent., Lit.*, 68.

Sir E. Clarke polled *the largest* majority of *any* candidate at the Election. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 134.

Everybody knows that I can preach *the worst* sermon of *any* man in London. *ib.*, CXC, 359b.

The British public have got *the bulliest* taste in dress of *any* civilised people on this earth or off it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 1c.

- X. Occasionally we find *any* used as a variant of *all* in the construction mentioned in 11, Obs. IV,  $\beta$ ) and  $\zeta$ ).

I do not like the Tower, of *any place*. *Rich.* III, III, 1, 68.

What! will you talk of him of *any man else*? WYCHERLEY, *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1, (134).

- XI. Quite common, although objectionable from a logical standpoint, is

the suppression of *other* after *any* in adverbial clauses of degree introduced by either *as* or *than*. See also HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, II, 70.

- i. Edinburgh has owed less to climate, to soil and to the fostering care of rulers than *any* capital, Protestant or Catholic. MAC., *Popes*, (559a).  
General Botha grasps that idea as firmly as *any* man. *Sat. Review* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 20c).

Why is it that your flowers are so much more beautiful than *anybody's*?  
E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 46.

- ii. Stars shoot and meteors glare oftener across the valley than in *any other* part of the country. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 342.  
Crowdie thought more of beauty than of *any other* gift. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 78.

- XII. α) *Any* and compounds of *any* are frequently found in connection with *hardly* or *scarce(ly)* where the Dutch has *bijna* (or *haast*) with the corresponding negative. Thus *hardly* (or *scarce(ly)*) *any* = *bijna* (or *haast*) *geen*; *hardly* (or *scarce(ly)*) *anything* = *bijna* (or *haast*) *niets*; *hardly* (or *scarce(ly)*) *anybody* (*one*) = *bijna* (or *haast*) *niemand*; *hardly* (or *scarce(ly)*) *anywhere* = *bijna* (or *haast*) *nergens*.

Thus also *hardly* (or *scarce(ly)*) *ever* = *bijna* (or *haast*) *nooit*.

He will eat *scarcely anything*. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 355.

She ate *scarce anything*. *Ib.*, Ch. XL, 417.

There was yet *hardly any* colour in the sketch. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 183.

- β) When *hardly* (or *scarcely*) is placed after *any* or the compound of *any*, a pleonastic *not* is used. This idiom was more common in older English than it is now. See MURRAY, s. v. *hardly*, 7.  
I *can't* do *anything hardly*, except write. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 28.  
Compare: "Who was there?" — "*Nobody hardly*." HARDY, *Return of the Native*, II, Ch. VIII, 200.

- γ) The combination *almost no* (or some other negative word), although unusual and often considered improper, is by no means rare. See STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 942, 1050; TEN BRUG., *Taalst.* XI. According to FRANZ (E. S., XVIII and SHAK. *Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 435) instances were more common in Early Modern English than they are now.

- i. There had been *almost no* conversation before supper. ARNOLD BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, II, Ch. V, I, 175.

The vast lustres produced *almost no* impression. *Id.*, *Buried alive*, 202.

We seemed to have *almost no* relations. E. ROBINS, *Where are you going to?*, 44.

Before 1530 there was *almost no* legislation on this subject. F. AYDELOTTE, *Elizabethan Rogues and Vagabonds*, 56.

- ii. "Then you will trust me fully? Will you have no secret unhappiness, or anxiety, concealed from me?" — "*Almost none*." DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. XXXII, 197b.

- iii. She said *almost nothing* to Rose's tirade. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 23.  
And what could he do to meet it? *Almost nothing*. *Id.*, *The Case of Rich. Meynell*, 313.

She had seen *almost nothing* of general society. E. ROBINS, *Where are you going to?*, 173.

They have *almost nothing* to do. *Ib.*, 204.

Of Stanley, the soldier in the war for the liberation of humanity, we see *almost nothing*. *Academy*, 1896, 15 Feb. 132.

Thus also *almost never* is sometimes used instead of the more usual *hardly* (or *scarcely*) *ever*.

The Old Testament is *almost never* read (except by small boys) for human pleasure. ANDREW LANG, *Homer & the Books of Samuel* (Morning Post).

He *almost never* bites. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. II, 121.

After the preposition *for* as used in the following quotations, and, perhaps, in other connections the construction with the negative even appears to bear no exchange for that with *hardly* (or *scarcely*).

With his aid we can dress the dinner and the confectionery at home *for almost nothing*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmin's*, Ch. III.

Mrs. Waters found herself obliged to sell her business *for almost nothing*. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. III, 22.

He would have given something valuable to the community *for almost nothing*. FRANK HARRIS, *Great Days*, 191.

δ) With *hardly* (*scarcely*) *any* compare *hardly* (or *scarcely*) *a*, as in the following quotation:

Bar Milner's speech, there has *scarcely* been *a* word about our policy in the whole of the debate. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 5a.

XIII. In connection with negative words *any* is sometimes found absent in Early Modern English, and archaically in Present English, where ordinary practice would now hardly dispense with it. See FRANZ, E. S., XVII. Compare, however, 20, *a*, Note and 103, Obs. III.

Might I but chuse mine own things, I would chuse *never* to think of those things *more*. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*<sup>1)</sup>

Solomon informs us that much reading is a weariness of the flesh; but neither he *nor other* inspir'd author tells us that such reading is unlawful. MILTON, *Areop.* <sup>1)</sup>

XIV. α) It is also chiefly in the older stages of the language that we may find a superlative preceded by the definite article interposed before the noun modified by *any*; e. g.: *any the most vulgar thing*. For this modern practice would require *any, even the most vulgar, thing* with the word-group *even the most vulgar* treated as a parenthesis. A similar usage may be observed with *every* (52, *b*) and *many* (86, Obs. I). See also EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 560; id., *Das Indefinitum*, § 118.

For what we know must be and is as common | As *any the most vulgar* thing to sense, | Why should we in our peevish opposition | Take it to heart? Haml., I, 2, 99.

He was indeed equal to the wielding of *any the most intricate* accounts of the most flourishing company in these or those days. CH. LAMB, *Elia South-Sea House*, 9.

Scarce in any instance will be discovered *any the least* danger of final deception. BENTHAM, *Bk. Fallacies*, II, 380.<sup>2)</sup>

Of the construction illustrated in the following quotation, in which the article is dispensed with before the superlative, no further instances have been found. See, however, the last quotation in 17, *b*, Note β.

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S., XVII. <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *least*, I, 1, *b*.

Let *any plainest* man who reads this think of his usual mode of getting himself into his matutinal garments, and confess how much such a struggle would cost him. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. IV, 140.

- β) Another unusual combination in which the grammatical relation of the members connected is of the same description, is that of *any* with *the same*, as in:

The Numerator and the Denominator of a fraction may be multiplied or divided by *any, the same*, number without altering the value of the fraction. PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 111.

## 19. Any is used:

- a) conjointly: *Any* day will suit me. I have not drunk *any* wine.

Note a) *Any* is sometimes divided from the word it modifies.

Wool-carding in Barchester there was no longer *any*. TROL., Warden, Ch. I, 3.

- β) It may be used as part of a parasynthetic compound in *ed*.

I can carry *any sized* bundle on my head. EL. GLYN, Reflect of Ambrosine, I, Ch. I, 6.

γ) In such a sentence as *He did not know yet the name of any one of the boys surrounding him* (Mrs. WOOD, Orville Col., Ch. I, 16), *one* is not a prop-word, but the numeral *one*. (Ch. XLII, 9, f.)

- b) absolutely: The inquiry made no impression on *any* of the bystanders. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 36b.

Thus also when a collective noun, or a plural pronoun, whether or not followed by an appositional and explanatory noun, takes the place of the noun to which *any* refers.

- i. They in their turn were always on the look-out to pounce upon *any of his numerous live stock*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 238.

- ii. If *any of you* lack wisdom, let him ask of God. Bible, James, I, V. How do you know more than *any of us*? STEELE, Spect., No. 154. Don't you, *any of you*, worry yourselves about that! JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. III, 24.

\*\* If *any of you boys* do know about this, just go in and earn it. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. V, 67.

Have *any of you fellows* ever had that happen to you? MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIV, 265.

Note a) When followed by partitive *of* + singular (pro)noun, *any* may be understood either absolutely or substantively and varies with *anything*. Compare the analogous use of *of* after *all* (3, Obs. III), *little* (67, Obs. II), *much* (93, Obs. III) *none* (142, Obs. I) and *some* (179, b). See also EINKENKEL, Anglia, XXVI, 553 and JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.132.

- i. If there be *any* of him left, I'll bury it. Wint. Tale, III, 3, 136. (him = his body.)

She was not near enough to hear *any* of their discourse. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. LIV, 333.

"You won't go fainting away, or *any* of that nonsense?" said Tom. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 126.

It would be such a pity to miss *any* of her. BENSON, Account Rendered, 228.



- ii. Everybody was pleased to think how much they had always disliked Mr. Darcy, before they had known *anything* of the matter. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XXIV, 139.

β) The numeral one is sometimes found in the same indefinite meaning as *any*, when followed by partitive *of* + plural (pro)noun or singular noun with a plural meaning.

It would give me great pain to see the wife of *one* of our bishops place herself in such a situation. TROL., *Framley Pars.*, Ch. IX, 89.

But those Jews, Mark, ... whatever you do, keep clear of them. Why, I could paper a room with their signatures, and yet I never had a claim upon *one* of them, though they always have claims upon me. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 74.

If *one* of the garrison should now venture into the square for the purpose of fetching water, he would run an imminent risk of being blown to atoms. CON. DOYLE, *The Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

### c) substantively,

#### 1) in the sense of *any person* or *any persons*.

As the following quotations will show, it is in many cases difficult, if not impossible, to tell for certain whether this *any* is intended as a singular or as a plural. Even when a plural pronoun is used in referring to it, it does not necessarily follow that *any* is to be understood as a plural, the plural pronouns being quite commonly found to point back to such undoubted singulars as *everybody*, *nobody*, *anybody* etc. See Ch. XXVI, 19, a. This much may, however, be said with safety that in Late Modern English this *any* is mostly to be understood as a plural, there being now a distinct tendency to place a prop-word after *any* when a singular is meant. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1149) even observes: "*Any* is now used only as an adjective, the corresponding noun being represented by the compound *anyone*, *anybody*, *anything*. In Early MnE. *any* was still used as a noun: *who is here so vile? . . . if any speak!* (SHAKESPEARE)", thus ignoring the singular substantival *any* altogether. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 6.43 and 17.12.

*Any* in the meaning of *any person(s)* is not confined to any particular constructions, but it seems to be most frequent before an adnominal clause or adjunct, or an adverbial clause (or adjunct) of exception introduced by *but*.

The following quotations are divided into three groups, in those of the first *any* is best understood as a plural; in those of the second it is best apprehended as a singular, although there is no contextual evidence for this view; in those of the third its concord with singular forms shows it to be an indubitable singular.

- i. It may not be improper to assure *any* who shall hereafter write for the theatre that merit, or supposed merit, will ever be a sufficient passport to his protection. GOLDSMITH, *Good. nat. man*, Pref.

You know I would lay it (sc. my life) down cheerfully for you or *any* you love. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 94.

I hope... that *any* who may be in doubt will pause before *they* swell the cry of those who condemn before they have adequately investigated. EARLE, *Phil.*, Pref.<sup>5</sup>, 7.

But poverty! How could it enter under the roof of *any* who bore the name of Lauderdale? MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XI, 205.

It was little short of a miracle that *any* in the train escaped with *their* lives. *Manchester Guardian*.

- ii. I see you think a little harmless railing too great a pleasure for *any* but yourself. WYCH., *Plain Dealer*, II, 2.

I am stout enough to exchange buffets with *any* who will challenge me to such a traffic. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XL, 417.

I come of as ancient and honourable a family as *any* in England. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 213.

Do you dare to own to yourself that your ambition in life is good claret, and that you'll dine with *any*, provided you get a stalled ox to feed on? *Ib.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 265.

How could he give the apple to *any* else but this enslaver? *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXII, 240.

Her jealousy even that my father should give his affection to *any* but herself. *Id.*, *Henry Esmond*, Pref., 12.

In their beds... it was scarcely possible for *any* but a nurse or a mother to tell the one from the other child. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. III, 30.

You love nor her, nor me, nor *any*. TEN., *Princ.*, VI, 242.

*Any* but Justice Shallow would have seen through them. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. XI, 134.

Now it came to pass that in time Danae bore a son; so beautiful a babe that *any* but King Acrisius would have had pity on it. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, Ch. I, 25.

He sprang to his feet, and spoke to the people as they had never heard *any* yet speak. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men.*, Ch. XLIX, 329.

*Any* but a fool would have obeyed her summons. (?), *The Mischief-maker*, Ch. IV. (Compare: *Any one* but a fool would understand. MURRAY, s.v. *but*, C, I, 1, b.)

No weightier responsibility can *any* take, no more sacred charge. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 189.

"The question is what will this youth do when he obtains the power?" St. Croix lowered his voice — "If *any* can discover, you have one in this house —". MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 116.

- iii. If I unwittingly, or in my rage | Have aught committed that is hardly borne | By *any* in this presence, | I desire to reconcile me to *his* friendly peace. *Rich.* III, II, 1, 56.

*Does any* here know me? *Lear*, I, 4, 247.

*Is there not yet any* of the house of Saul? *Bible*, *Samuel*, B, IX, 3.

He is under a vow never to step more than three steps from the dais of his own hall to meet *any* who *shares* not the blood of Saxon royalty. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 30.

*Does any* hear a runner's foot? BROWNING, *A Blot in the Scutcheon*, I, 1, 2.

Pray, Diana, tell me | What it is: you frighten me: *Was any* caught | Breaking the rules, or is it but suspicion? BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, II, 2, 1580.

Nor are the English alone in their forgetful ingratitude. Where, in all broad Scotland, *is there any* who *commemorate* with pilgrimage and song the anniversary of the crowning mercy of Bannockburn? *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC, 380*b*. (Note the curious passing from the singular to the plural.)

Compare with the above the following quotations representing the ordinary practice:

He would have been seen, if *anybody* but a blind man had happened to pass that way. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

I pay a fair rent — but if you think *any one* would give you more, you shall lose nothing by me. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 9. Katherine was not in the least aware that *any one* was looking at them. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 81.

- 2) in the sense of *anything*. In this meaning it is used only before *more* in the sense of *additionally, further*. Compare 100, Obs. I, β. There is no use saying *any more* about it. ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. XVI, 214.

Mrs. Lauderdale seemed to hesitate as to whether she should say *any more*. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 83.

Compare: Did you hear *anything more*? BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. IV, 44.

Pray do not let us hear *anything more* of these detestable locusts! STOF., Handl., I, 64.

Note. Before other comparatives than this *more*, as in *I think we had better not continue this discussion any further* (GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's) (= *any more*), *any* is a pure adverb of degree.

20. a) As an adverb of degree *any* mostly modifies the comparative of an adjective or adverb, or the adverb *the*, in its turn modifying the comparative of an adjective or adverb.

i. Are you *any better*? WEBST, Dict.

I don't brag to have been *any better* than other sons; but I have not been *any worse*, I dare say. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIV, 198a,

ii. I began to think that it was of no use crying *any more*. Id., Cop., Ch. V, 32a.

There were many who could not be got to admit that she was *any less* beautiful than she had ever been. Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. V, 99.

iii. What security have I that I shall be *any the better* for going out of the world after all? DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. VI, 38.

A girl is not necessarily *any the less* a lady because she sings at a music-hall. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. II, 42.

Note. Observe especially the conjunctive *any more than*, as in:

I could not help asking myself why we should visit on children the sins of their fathers *any more than* we visit the sins of children on their parents. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 46.

In poetry *any* is sometimes dropped before this *more than* for the sake of the metre. Compare 18, Obs. XIII.

But I | ... lay | Quite sunder'd from the moving Universe, | Nor knew what eye was on me nor the hand | That nursed me, *more than* infants in their sleep. TEN., Princ., VII, 39.

The same omission is occasionally met with in colloquial and vulgar English:

You would not fancy this (sc. shawl) I have on, *more* nor the scarf, would you? Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXV, 260. (In the Lancashire dialect *nor* takes the place of *than*.)

I don't object to Crofts *more* than to any other coarsely built man of his class. SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, IV, (231).

- b) The use of *any* as an adverb in other constructions is a decided Yankeeism. This also applies to *some*. (180, b.) Compare

STOF., E. S., XXXV, 389; EINENKEL, Anglia, XXVI, 555; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 899, 900, 902, 1043; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.17; MURRAY, s. v. *any*, 7; TEN BRUG, Taalst., IX.

He was far away across the seas and she must go just back to her old monotonous life, as if it had never been *any* different. MRS. CRAIK, The Laurel Bush, II, 79. How could any one sit *any* different from the way she does? ROB. HICHENS, The Fruitful Vine, Ch. I, 9.

Note a) The use of *not* . . . *any* as a substitute for the adverbial *none* before *too* (143, c) seems to be very rare.

In the space at his disposal he (sc. Andrew Lang) conveys a wonderful amount of information with regard to the Saxon poetry, though he does *not* make *any too* plain the fact that such poems as the Seafarer, The Plaint of Deor, and Waldhur are by unknown and probably distinct authors. Eng. Rev., Sept. 1912, 329.

β) Also *any otherwhere* is very rare.

More than *any otherwhere* he shaved in front of a wood fire. E. ROBINS, The Florentine Frame, 65.

21. *Any* is used as a constituent of the following compounds, some of which are not, however, written in combination:

a) *anyboay* = any one. See Ch. XLIII, 2, a and 11, a.

b) *anyhow*, which is used in the sense of:

- 1) in any way or manner, however imperfect.

"I should know her," said Toodle gruffly, "*anyhows* and *anywheres*." DICK., Domb., Ch. II, 17. (The *s* is an illiterate excrescence.) How delightful to be a man! Free to go everywhere, and earn one's living *anyhow*. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. III, 40.

If it is *anyhow* possible, they must marry now. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. XI, 117.

Note. In this shade of meaning *anyhow* is often more or less depreciative. Thus in the following quotations it means approximately *unconcernedly*, *carelessly*.

In they all came, *anyhow* and *everyhow*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 45. The father was generally the earliest in the breakfast-parlour, and Charlotte would soon follow and give him his coffee; but the others breakfasted anywhere, *anyhow*, and at any time. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XIX, 148.

He was not dressed in the least like a Quaker, unless a brown lounge coat tossed on *anyhow* over a waistcoat and trousers of the same colour is the costume of a shiny Quaker. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XV, Ch. II, 417.

The linen was all lyin' on the ground *any'ow*. PUNCH, No. 3748, 370b. He does his work *anyhow*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

Grotesque constructed garnitures are stuck on the hats *anyhow*. II. Lond. News, No. 3849, 446a.

In vulgar language *anyhow* has even come to be used as a euphemism for *bad(ly)*, *ill*, "*so so*." Compare STOF., E. S., XXVI; HOPPE, Sup. Lex., s. v. *any*.



Who is responsible for the binding of the Grovesnor Gallery Catalogue? The one we have got is all *anyhow*. PUNCH.<sup>1)</sup>

If a woman "gets on *anyhow*," to use a common phrase, a thousand impossible excuses are at once made for her conduct, F. G. TRAFFORD, *Too much alone*, 271.<sup>2)</sup>

Things are all *anyhow*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

In the following quotation *any-how* is probably to be understood in the sense of the preceding *in lumps* (= swollen so as to appear a number of lumps, Dutch *kapot*), the following *no-how* being used by way of climax:

The goal-keepers are all in lumps, *any-how* and *no-how*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 98.

- 2) at all events, in any case. Compare 18, Obs. VIII, ζ).

Is it that he has grown more vulgar or that I have grown more sensitive? *Anyhow* it jars terribly. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, 7.

I daresay he really thought I wasn't sober. *Anyhow*, he managed to knock my hat out of my hand and smash it. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XIV, 264.

Doctor Routh said I had a concussion of the brain and lost the sense of direction, but I lost my senses *anyhow*. *Ib.*, 265.

c) *anything*. See Ch. XLIII, 37.

d) *any way*, which is used in the meaning of:

- 1) in any way. In this application it is uncommon, *in any way* being mostly used instead.

- i. All those who are *any way* concerned in works of literature. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 529.

That if the Queen should die without a child, | The bond between the Kingdoms be dissolved; | That Philip should not mix us *any way* | With his French wars. TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, (612b).

You won't get him to vote *any way* but Blue. (?), *Madame Leroux*, Ch. X. Here was the scholar — the brother whom he could not *any way* despise. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 13.

- ii. "If I can be of service to you *in any way*," he said, giving me his card, "that's where I live." DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 100.

She did not . . . show that she was *in any way* either confused or conscious. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 128.

Note. Also *any way* sometimes seems to have a depreciative meaning. Not he that speaketh *any way* speaketh rightly. STANLEY, *Hist. Philos.*, 183.1<sup>3)</sup>

- 2) at all events, in any case. In this sense mostly written in combination, and varying with *anyhow*. Compare 18, Obs. VIII, ζ.

She was right about one thing, *anyway*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

I'll write him a word or too, *anyway*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. V, 57.

Note. Besides *anyway* we have *anyways*, an adverbial genitive. See the Chapter on Adverbs. *Anyways* is now unusual in educated English, and in the second shade of meaning decidedly vulgar.

- i. All those who are *any ways* afflicted . . . in mind, body or estate. Bk. of Com. Pray.

1) STOF., E. S., XXVI. 2) HOPPE, *Sup. Lex.* 3) MURRAY.

Lord bless you! father never dines on our company days! he don't like it; he takes a bit of cold meat *anyways*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXI, 859. Poyser wouldn't like to hear as his wife's niece was treated *any ways* disrespectful. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 15.

ii. *Anyways* I am gl'd [etc.]. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. XII, 228.

e) *anywhen* = at any time. Rare in literature, but common in southern dialects.

If I was quite sure how it would be living there, I would go *any-when*. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. VI, 55.

They (sc. the Americans) take their coats off anywhere and *anywhen*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 5a.

f) *anywhere* = in (to, into) any place.

Drive him gently without pulling his mouth about, and you might take him *anywhere*, almost at any pace. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 124.

I wish I was in the hulks, or *anywhere* out of this place. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. X, 123.

Note α) In colloquial language *anywhere* is often used in stating an approximate value.

The piano which cost you *anywhere* from 50 to 200 pounds. *Il. Lond. News*.

Just imagine that you have *anywhere* between fifty and a hundred millions, all of your own. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 286.

β) *Anywheres* is a vulgarism for *anywhere*.

I have made up my mind. Take me *anywheres*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. XIII, 228.

g) *anywhither* = in any direction whatever. Only in literary language and rare.

She would have fled *anywhither*. MRS. WHITNEY, *Faith Gartney*, XXX, 288.1)

h) *anywise*, a variant of *anyway(s)*, but much less frequent.

The only subject-matter of discussion, *anywise* important. BURKE, *Affairs of India*.1)

Note. Also *in any wise* is uncommon: The Duke still held his hand on the hilt of his sword, but refrained to draw his weapon, or to strike a foe who offered no sort of resistance which could *in any wise* provoke violence. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 352.

And bold the Kadee who dares say what he will believe, what disbelieve — not knowing *in any wise* the mind of Allah — not knowing *in any wise* his own heart. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 36.

22. In conclusion a few words may here be devoted to the Dutch equivalents of *any*. These equivalents depend chiefly upon whether or not the sentence or clause in which *any* is found is negative, interrogative, conditional or disjunctive concessive.

a) In those of the first kind the ordinary equivalent of *any* is *eenig*; also when the negative is not actually expressed, but is merely implied. This will become apparent by translating:  
i. *I do not think that any accident has happened. I am sur-*

1) MURRAY.

*prised that any accident should have happened ( I did not think that any accident would happen). This is the first time that any accident has happened (— No accident has happened before.)*

- ii. *Has any accident happened? I asked him whether any accident had happened.*
- iii. *If any accident had happened, we should have heard of it. Whether any accident had actually happened or not, he was unmoved.*

Further instances are afforded by:

He was surprised to see *any* human being in this lonely and unfrequented spot. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Rip van Winkle.

He (sc. Oliver Cromwell) was succeeded by his son Richard as quietly as *any* King had ever been succeeded by *any* Prince of Wales. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 137.

You have no fortune, nor *any* prospect of *any* until your mother dies. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 135.

He was forbidden to enter *any* house. MURRAY, s. v. *any*, 1, b.

Note a) Thus also when *any* is depreciative, whether explicitly or implicitly negative or conditional, some such additional phrase as *van eenige beteekenis* being often required to render its full meaning.

- i. We must soon hear whether they really assemble *any* force. SCOTT, Leg. of Montrose, 461.

Voiced stops cannot be maintained for *any* length of time. SWEET, Prim. of Phon., § 124.

If they had *any* religion at all, it was marked by cruel sacrifices to a malignant unseen being. WALT. BESANT, London, I, 42.

- ii. Only once during dinner was there *any* conversation that included the young gentlemen. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 106.

The next tale of *any* length from Thackeray's pen in the magazine was that called Catherine. TROL., Thack., Ch. II, 65.

I feel certain that every soldier with *any* experience will support me when I say [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., No. CLXXXIX, 234a.

He was the only person who had as yet found *any* kind of fame. CHESTERTON, Manalive, I, Ch. I, 17.

β) *Eenig* is also the ordinary equivalent of depreciative *any*, when the negative import of the sentence is merely implied.

I am glad you take *any* pleasure in my poor poem. KEATS, Letter to Shelley. It was a proud thought that he had been able to render her *any* protection and assistance. DICK., Domb., Ch. XX, 77.

γ) For the absolute *any* Dutch mostly has *eenig* with the noun repeated. Thus:

She never had *any* (sc. money). MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 147 = *Zij heeft nooit enig fortuin gehad.*

δ) The substantive *any* when referring to persons, whether understood as a plural or a singular (19, c), is mostly rendered by *iemand*.

- i. It was little short of a miracle that *any* in the train escaped with their lives. Manch. Guardian.

- ii. But poverty! How could it enter under the roof of *any* who bore the name of Lauderdale? MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XI, 205.

For the substantive *any* referring to *more* we sometimes use *iets*, but it is mostly left unrepresented by any special word.

There is no use saying *any* more about it. ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. XVI, 214.  
 Mrs. Lauderdale seemed to hesitate as to whether she should say *any* more.  
 MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 83.

ε) When followed by a prepositional expression introduced by partitive *of*, or by *among(st)* or *in*, *any* is mostly rendered by either *een* or *iets*, according as the reference is to number or quantity.

i. Have you got money, or have *any* of your relations money? or are *any* of them going to put it into the concern? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 65.  
 The Major... pronounced his sister-in-law as fine a lady as *any* in England.  
 THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

If *any* of you boys do know about this, just go in and earn it. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. V, 67.

ii. She was not near enough to hear *any* of their discourse. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. LIV, 333.

Note. Sometimes *een* would render *any* also although no such prepositional expression follows: Whether there really is *any* prisoner still living behind that wall is another matter. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 17b.

It may here be repeated that in this position also the numeral *one* is sometimes found in an indefinite meaning. See 19, b Note β.

ζ) For *not... any* in one and the same sentence the Dutch has *geen*. You haven't eaten *any* breakfast. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IX, 77.

η) Sometimes *any* is not represented by *apy* special word in Dutch. This is especially the case when the French would have the 'article partitif'.

Have you *any* milk, *any* eggs? MURRAY, s. v. *any*, 2.

The coach was in the yard, shining very much all over, but without *any* horses to it as yet. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 33a.

Note. Questions often have weak *ook*, not appreciably modifying the meaning of the sentence: Heb *jij ook* brieven ontvangen? = *Have you received any letters?*

b) In sentences and clauses of the second kind the ordinary equivalent of *any* is *elk* or *ieder* before a singular, and *alle* before a plural noun.

There is a hamlet there in the hollow, which is a disgrace to *any* country, *any* owner, *any* agent. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 11.

Neill had recaptured Allahabad and cleared the country of *any* traces of rebellion. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XVIII, 189.

He had an evening reception weekly, when he received *any* friends who cared to visit him. Pref. Mem. to Ch. Lamb's Poems and Es. (Chandos Clas.)

Note α) The substantive *any* corresponds to *een ieder* or *allen*, according as it is understood as a singular or a plural.

It may not be improper to assure *any* who shall hereafter write for the theatre. [etc.] GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, Pref.

You know I would lay down my life cheerfully for you or *any* you love. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 94.

β) Also when *any* has a distinctly appreciative or depreciative meaning, its ordinary equivalent is *elk*, *ieder*, or *alle*.

i. Clive was justly regarded as a man equal to *any* command. Mac., *Clive*.

ii. The danger is that *any* reform should be adopted, because some reform is needed. MARK PATTISON.

But in the peculiar application discussed in 18, Obs. II, *any* cannot be rendered by *elk*, *ieder* or *alle*.



There are *any* number of queer streets off the gay and prosperous Euston-road. Westm. Gaz., No. 5430, 7a. (= Dutch *wie weet hoe veel, ontelbaar vele*, etc.).

The old man had listened to those jokes *any time* these thirty years. THACK., Newc., II, Ch. VIII, 87. (= Dutch *wie weet hoe vaak, ontelbare malen*, etc.).

- c) Before a comparative or before the adverb *the*, *any* is mostly left unrepresented by any special word. Sometimes we find (ook maar) iets, eenigszins employed to render its meaning.

I don't brag to have been *any* better than other sons. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIV, 198a.

What security have I that I shall be *any* the better for going out of the world after all? ID., Nich. Nickl.

### AUGHT.

23. *Aught* is used: a) as an indefinite pronoun, b) as an adverb.

A secondary form of *ought* is *ought*, which is now used only archaically, but is frequent enough in Early Modern English. See MURRAY, s. v. *ought*.

24. As an indefinite pronoun *ought* (or *ought*) is used in the same meaning as *anything*, by which it is largely superseded in ordinary English. Nor is its area of incidence so wide as that of *anything*, being in the main confined to interrogative, negative conditional or concessive sentences or clauses, or such as are negative or conditional in import.

- i. \* Mourn not, my Swift, at *ought* our realm acquires. POPE, Dunciad, I, 26  
None of these | Came from his country, or could answer him, | If question'd,  
*ought* of what he cared to know TEN., En. Ard., 650.

\*\* Let us be too vain to stoop to *ought* that is mean or base. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 52.

- ii. Can we effect *ought*? LYTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 41,

- iii. \* Therefore, if thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath *ought* against thee. Bible, Matth., V, 23.

If you have *ought* to teach me, let me profit by it. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 58.

\*\* He is, too, far above thee for marriage, and for *ought* else, thou art too honest, and thy brother too proud. LYTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. IV, 31.

Note a) The following quotations are neither negative nor conditional, whether explicitly or implicitly.

It's come to a hard pass when a man would give *ought* in the world for work to keep his children from starving. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXXVII, 363.

Thus those shadowy forms influenced her in childhood and exercised over her a power that made her shrink from *ought* that was unworthy, petty or mean. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 116.

β) Apparently for the sake of the metre BYRON uses *ought* in the sense of respectively *anybody* and *somebody* in:

- i. There is a festival, where knights and dames, | And *ought* that wealth or lofty lineage claims, | Appear. LARA, I, xx.

- ii. Ah, happy she! to 'scape from him whose kiss | Had been pollution unto *ought* so chaste. CHILDE HAR., I, V.

γ) There is a transposition of the negative in the following quotation: For women's fear and love holds quantity, | In neither *aught*, or in extremity. Ham l., III, 2, 180. (In neither aught = in either naught.)

δ) Of especial interest are *for aught (ought) I know (I care, I can tell, etc.)*, in which, however, *aught (ought)* has also become unusual. See Ch. XVII, 150. Of these phrases *for aught (ought) I know* is the oldest, the others having been formed on its pattern. Thus in the following well-known passage the phrase italicized is intended as a nonce-formation:

*For aught that I could ever read, | Could ever hear by tale or history, |* The course of true love never did run smooth. Mid s., I, 1, 132.

ε) *Aught* is sometimes followed by partitive *of*. See also Ch. XXIX, 26, b. I would not *aught of false*. TEN., Princ., V, 392.

25. As an adverb *aught* has the sense of *to any extent (in any degree, in any respect), at all*. In this application it is even more uncommon than as an indefinite pronoun.

For he, with this rebellious rout, | Fell long before; nor *aught* availed him now | To have built in Heaven high towers. MILTON, Par. Lost, I, 748. (= nor did it avail him *aught*.)

But none the glittering evil valued *aught*. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par.<sup>1)</sup>

#### BOTH.

26. *Both* is occasionally found declined for the genitive in Early Modern English: *both's*. MURRAY'S latest instance is dated 1715: That the business be tried, and both sides allowed to counter-question *both's* witnesses. Let. in Wodrow Corr., II, 38.<sup>1)</sup>

27. *Both* is used in two shades of meaning: a) (the) one and the other combined, b) (the) one as well as the other.

In the second shade of meaning *both* is related to *either* in the sense of *each of two* (43) in like manner as *all* is to *every*, and is especially used to emphasize the fact that neither of a group of two persons, animals or things is excepted from what is expressed by the predicate. The Dutch *beide* is similarly employed, but its application is less strict, in so far as it is not infrequently met with to express merely the same as *(the) two*. Thus for *De beide dieven verdeelden de buit*. *Zijn beide makkers bespraken onderling de zaak*, we could hardly say *Both* (instead of *The two*) *thieves divided the booty. Both his companions* (instead of *His two companions*) *discussed the matter between them*. Occasional instances, however, occur; according to MURRAY (s. v. *both*, 8) especially in Earlier English. See also 34.

Sometimes *both* is used with regard to a larger number than two, but only when it is conjunctive (33). Compare MURRAY, s. v. *both*, B, 1, b and JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 7.71.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- i. So stooping down, as needs he must | Who cannot sit upright, | He grasped the mane with *both his hands*, | And eke with all his might. COWPER, John Gilpin, XXIII.

What was my astonishment when I beheld my aunt... seize him by the collar with *both hands*! DICK., Cop., Ch. LII, 377b.

"Oh, husband! I am so glad, yet so sorry!" creeping closer to me, and folding me in *both her arms*. lb., Ch. LIII, 381b.

Note the idiom in: A few (sc. schoolmasters), desperately *taking their courage in both hands*, have qualified in science. Westm. Gaz., No. 6005, 4c. (Compare Bible, Judges, XII, 3 and Samuel, XXVIII, 21.)

- ii. \* Rebecca used to come out (sc. Miss Crawley's bed-room) and comfort *both* of them (sc. father and son); or one or the other of them rather. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIV, 140.

\*\* *Both faces* were identical as regards expression. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. I, 8. (Instead of *The two faces*.)

- iii. *Both* God and man and beast. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

28. *Both* is partly a numeral or pronoun, partly an adverb. For a detailed discussion of the varied grammatical functions of *both* see Ch. V, 16, and Ch. VIII, 100, d.

29. The numeral or pronoun *both* is used conjointly, absolutely and substantively.

30. The conjoint *both* modifies either nouns or pronouns.

- a) When *both* modifies a noun, it normally stands before its head-word with its modifiers. Owing to its semi-adverbial character it is, however, apt to be shifted to another place, if the head-word is the subject of the sentence (33). Compare what has been said about *all* in 8 and 11.

i. War is the only game from which *both parties* rise losers. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVIII, 185.

ii. *Both young ladies* applied themselves to tending Mr. Pecksniff's wounds in the back parlour. DICK., Chuz., Ch. I, 6b.

iii. The other pressed *both the boy's hands*. THACK., Virg., I, 147. (T.)

iv. *Both thy brethren* are in Arthur's hall. TEN., Gar. and Lyn., 80.

He clasped *both her hands*. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXXI, 275.

Note a) Formerly *both* was sometimes placed between the article or defining pronoun and the noun modified, in like manner as this is done in Modern Dutch. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 3, b and EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 178.

To plate *the both horns* round about with gold. CHAPMAN, Odyssey, III, 572.<sup>1)</sup>

A King *whose both hands* God had filled with blessings of every kind. RAINBOWE, Sermon, II.<sup>1)</sup>

He... with *his both hands*, scoops up from the public funds. Transl. of Aristophanes' Knights, 85.<sup>1)</sup>

β) In lively and humorous address *both* sometimes stands after the noun, when the latter is not preceded by any modifier.

*Friends both*, go join you with some further aid. Haml., IV, 1, 34

Fare you well, *Gentlemen both*. Henry IV, B, III, 2, 308.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 3, b.

"All right, *Governors Both*," returned the ghost, carefully closing the room door; "tickler business." DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. XII, 224. (In the sequel of the discourse the persons addressed as 'Governors Both' are also referred to in the third person: The visitor... looked from one of *the Governors Both* to the other of *the Governors Both*. *Ib.*, 225.)

γ) Note the idiom in:

i. \* The cost of carriage *both ways* is defrayed by the customer. Macmillan's Announcement, 1911, Feb.

\*\* Whether you plead the justice of your cause or the advisability of taking immediate action, you are wrong *both ways*. (= *in both respects*.)

ii. The good woman had need of much management *to make both ends meet*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 112).

In the same meaning occasionally *to make (the) ends meet*.

The fiscal policy of the country... has rendered it impossible for the working-class *to make the ends meet*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5436, 1c.

Mrs. Enderby admitted... it was difficult, at times, *to make ends meet*. W. PETT RIDGE (Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 9a).

The minor dislocations of war made it difficult for many, and impossible for some, *to make ends meet*. Times, No. 1993, 223c.

b) When *both* modifies a pronoun, its place is either after or before its head-word. It regularly follows after a personal pronoun, probably owing to its having, as a rule, stronger stress than the latter. For the same reason it also normally stands after a relative, except when a preposition precedes. With absolute or substantive possessive or demonstrative pronouns, which mostly have strong stress, the order is reversed. Compare also Ch. XXXIX, 35, b.

For the shifting of *both*, consequent on its assuming an adverbial character, when it modifies the subject of the sentence see 33.

i. The secretary regarded *them both* with a very favourable expression of countenance. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXVIII, 147b.

*They both* bore testimony to his coolness, gallantry and good breeding. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVIII, 228.

*They both* went. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 4, a.

ii. \* He had two sons *who both* died in infancy.

\*\* Thus young minds are filled early with an inclination to good and an abhorrence of evil, *both which* increase in them. SWIFT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; *in both which* I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance. Bible, Peter, B. III, 1.

iii. He kissed the widow's timid little hand, and pressed it in *both his*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 84.

iv. I need *both these*. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 3, a.

Note SHAKESPEARE has *both they* in the meaning of *they together* in: Thy Edward he is dead, that stabb'd my Edward; | Thy other Edward dead, to quit my Edward; | Young York he is but boot, because *both they* | Match not the high perfection of my loss. Rich. III, IV, 4, 65.

Further instances of *both* preceding a personal pronoun in Early Modern English are given by EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 179.

31. *Both*, when used absolutely, i. e. with its head-word understood, does not give rise to much comment.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 228.



"Which of these two books had I better read?" — "I should advise you to read *both*." Note  $\alpha$ ) Absolute *both* + partitive *of* often stands for conjoint *both*. According to MURRAY (s.v. *both*, A, 6), "*both of* is now used before pronouns and pronominal words, instead of the simple *both*. The use with a noun, as *both of these arguments*, is colloquial, but scarcely ever occurs in literature." It must, however, be remarked that *both of* + noun is frequent enough also in literature which does not bear the stamp of being colloquial. For the use of *both of* + relative see also Ch. XXXIX, 35,  $c$  and 36,  $a$ .

- i. \* Fortune had left to *both of us* alike | What to delight in, what to sorrow for. Com. of Err., I, 1, 106.

I've been horribly bothered about... *both of us*. PINERO, Mid-Channel, II, (137).

\*\* Peter sat down again and gave her his hand, which for better security she held in *both of hers*. Mrs. GASKELL, Cranford, Ch. XV, 295.

\*\*\* Ovid was indebted for that story to Euripides and Theocritus, *both of whom* he has sometimes followed minutely. Mac., Addison, (735a).

- ii. *Both of these Jewish gents*... were insured in our office to the full amount of their loss. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 127.

*Both of these women* felt that their boy was changed. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 193.

Hamilton Bright was a distant relative to *both of these persons*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. I, 8.

*Both of our ancient Universities* seem determined to prove that reform from within must be wiped from the slate. Westm. Gaz., No. 5472, 2b.

- $\beta$ ) It may also be observed that *both of* + personal pronoun is sometimes added by way of apposition to a (pro)noun.

I am sure you *both of you* remember me. Com. of Err., V, 291.

They *both of them* passed much time in Europe. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 2.

With the above compare also the colloquial construction in:

Keep the peace, or I'll lay a heavy hand on *the pair of you*. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. II, 45.

### 32. The substantive *both* is used both of persons and things.

- i. "Aymer, the Prior Aymer? Brian de Brian de Bois-Guilbert?" muttered Cedric; "Normans *both*; — but Norman or Saxon, the hospitality of Rotherwood must not be impeached." SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. III, 29.

Nell and her grandfather ate sparingly, for *both* were occupied with their own reflections. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XXX, 111b.

At this | The little wife would weep for company, | And pray them not to quarrel for her sake, | And say she would be little wife to *both*. TEN., En. Ard., 36.

John and George *both* came. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 5.

The King and the Queen *both* honour him. Ib., s.v. *both*.

- ii. As to Latin and Greek, the boy hated *both*.

Latin and Greek *both* gave him extraordinary trouble.

### 33. *Both*, like *all* (3, Obs. I and 11), is mostly more or less adverbial in character. This adverbial character is responsible for the freedom with which it can be shifted in the sentence.

- $\alpha$ ) Like *all* (11, Obs. I,  $\beta$ ), *both* is usually shifted into the body of a nominal predicate with *to be* (Ch. I, 1,  $b$ ), or a complex predicate (Ch. I, 15), when it modifies the subject of the sentence. The transposition imparts to it additional emphasis.

\* My friends are *both* well-off.

The brothers are *both* dead. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict., s.v. *both*.

\*\* We are *both* men of the world. DICK., Pickw., Ch. X, 86.

ii. \* The brothers might *both* have come. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 2.

My friends had *both* seen it. Ib., s.v. *both*, A, 3, a.

\*\* We had *both* entered before he saw us. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. VIII, 87.

b) Also when the predicate consists of a simple verb, *both* is not seldom found before it.

Those men *both* love that woman. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 36.

My friends *both* saw it. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 3, a.

c) Less frequently is *both* found in back-position.

We were very merry *both*. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 17.

They were gentlemen *both*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

d) When *both* refers to a compound element of a sentence, it forms with *and* a kind of conjunctive adverb. In this application it practically gives up all its pronominal character when it belongs to words other than nouns or pronouns. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 1, Note; EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 182. For a discussion of the conjunctive adverbial *both... and* and its synonyms see Ch. X, 11.

*Both* either precedes or follows the members connected by *and*. In the latter case it is often practically equivalent to the adverbs *too* or *also*. According to MURRAY (s.v. *both*, B, 2), *both* always admits of being placed after the members connected by *and*, when the latter are two (pro)nouns and subjects of one and the same plural verb. In other cases this is now done only dialectally. It should, however, be added that in the case of nominal or complex predicates the back-position of *both* seems to be impossible or unusual also, the ordinary position of the word being in the body of the predicate.

i. \* It was then that *both* Scotland and Ireland became parts of the same empire with England. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 63.

*Both* the King and the Queen spoke. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 1.

*Both* John and I came. Ib., s.v. *both*, A, 5.

\*\* Lady Lufton... would say of Miss Dunstable that it was impossible to serve *both* God and Mammon. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XVII, 162. (Compare Bible, Matth., VI, 24.)

\*\*\* She is *both* dead and buried. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

\*\*\*\* He was *both* out of pocket and out of spirits by that catastrophe. THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. XXXII, 370.

*Both* juster and kinder; *both* by day and by night. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 1.

\*\*\*\*\* He *both* walks and runs. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 1.

ii. \* The House of Commons and the House of Lords *both* passed a vote of no-confidence.

\*\* The foul fiend take Malvoisin... and his keeper *both*. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. IV, 35.

I have seen your brother and your sister *both*. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 2.

\*\*\* He can sing and dance *both*. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, B, 2.

iii. \* The brother and sister are *both* dead. MURRAY, s.v. *both*, A, 5.

Mercury and Venus are *both* inferior planets. Ib., s.v. *both*, B, 1.

\*\* I would sooner that she and I should *both* beg. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XVIII, 226.

- c) Instances of *both* being placed between *to* and infinitive, as in the following quotation seem to be very rare.

In the afternoon, when ~~he~~ returned, it was evident that he purposed to *both* charm and astonish me by his appearance. MISS BURNBY, *Evelina*, Let. LI, (236).

34. Finally it may be observed that *both* is sometimes used redundantly.

They (sc. Sebastian and his sister Viola) were *both* born in one hour. LAMB, *Tales*, Twelfth Night, 248.

They (sc. the twins) were *both* so exactly alike, that it was impossible to distinguish the one from the other. *Ib.*, Com. of Er., 212.

You and my father were right when you *both* agreed that the mere book-life was not meant for me. LYTON, *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. VI, 321.

'Father' and 'farther' are *both* pronounced alike. SWEET, *The Sounds of English*, § 195.

We are *both* of one mind. REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 16.

They were *both* of a height. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. II, 179.

Note. *Two* as part of a redundant element added to *both* is found in: *Both of the two* cities reached a high pitch of prosperity. GROTE, *Greece*, II, XVIII.<sup>1)</sup>

*Both of the two* orators (sc. Lecky and Gladstone) carried into political questions a passion seldom found among statesmen. *Periodical*.<sup>2)</sup>

For instances of *two* being added to *both* for the sake of distinctness in Early Modern English and still older stages of the language see EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 181.

### EACH.

35. *Each*, like *every* and (*n*)*either*, is a distributive or separative numeral: i. e. it makes us think of a number of objects one by one, as opposed to *all*, *any*, *both*, *few*, *many* and *some* which are devoid of any such force and are, therefore, sometimes included under the general name of collective numerals. For illustration of the meaning of *each* see under *either* and *every*.

*Many* is more or less distributive when connected with the indefinite article, as in *many a boy* (88), and *several* may be said to be a distributive adjective in such a sentence as *They went to their several homes*. (= *each to his home*.) See 173 and compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 235.

36. *Each* is used:

- a) conjointly: *Each* night we die, | *Each* morn born anew. YOUNG, *Night Thoughts*, II, 286.

Note. The conjoint *each* hardly bears another modifier before it. The following is a very unusual construction:

What tongue can her perfections tell, | On *whose each* part all pens may dwell. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XX, 225.

Compare: There are 175,000 farms whose *individual* value often reaches over 50,000 dollars. *Graph.*, No. 2307, Sup. 8a.

1) MURRAY, *S. V. both*, II, 7. 2) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 228.

- b) absolutely: Tho' world on world in myriad myriads roll | Round us, *each* with different powers, | And other forms of life than ours, | What know we greater than the soul? TEN., Ode on the Death of the Duke of We. When the lad had fixed his eyes on *each* of us for a moment, ... we ceased to wonder. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 1.

Note a) The absolute *each* is often found after the name of the portion assigned in a distribution, the persons, animals or things concerned in it being mentioned in an earlier part of the sentence. This idiom is especially frequent in the language of money matters. *The boys received a penny each* = *Each boy received a penny*. *I will give the boys a penny each* = *I will give each boy a penny*.

It will be observed that in this application *each* more or less has the character of an adverb.

The lords of the bedchamber (had) a thousand a year *each*. MAC., Hist., I, 309.<sup>1)</sup>

They cost sixpence *each*. I paid sixpence *each* for them. MURRAY.

Copies may be had at a penny *each* from the publisher. Westm. Gaz., No. 5507, 3c.

Instead of *each* in this position we often find *apiece*.

These things cost a penny *apiece*. WEBST., Dict.

They were condemned to be fined a thousand pounds *apiece*. Ib.

And here was Peter capable five years ago of leaving only two hundred *apiece* to his own brothers and sisters, and only a hundred *apiece* to his own nephews and nieces. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXV, 247.

After much chaffering I got our stones at a thousand *apiece*. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., II, 231.

β) Note the idiom in: I have heard ... all the neighbours joining in for dear life, ... and *each* singing louder than *the other*. STEVENSON, Treas. Island, Ch. I, 17. (= Dutch ... de een zingende al luider dan de andere.)

- c) substantively: Oh blindness to the future! kindly given, | That *each* may fill the circle mark'd by Heav'n. POPE, Essay on Man, I, 86.

The career of William the Silent in some respects resembles that of Robert the Bruce. *Each* was brought up at the court of a foreign conqueror, *each* subsequently became identified with a rebellion against that conqueror or his son. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 11b.

For the use of *one* after *each*, either to replace a preceding or subsequent noun, or with no reference to any such noun, see Ch. XLIII.

37. a) *Each* is often found in connection with *other* to form with it a kind of unit. In this case *each* invariably stands in the subjective relation, while *other* represents a) a non-prepositional object, or b) a part of a prepositional object or of an adverbial adjunct, or c) an adnominal genitive.

These grammatical functions, however, are largely obscured, insomuch that another word is mostly made to fulfil the function of subject, while *each* and *other* are placed in immediate succession. The word-group *each other* is often called reciprocal pronoun.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



*Each other* may be declined for the genitive: *each other's*. This genitive does not admit of being replaced by periphrasis with a preposition.

- i. Folks were jostling *each other*. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XII. Changes in fundamental policy, disclaimers and withdrawals of vital principles follow *each other* fast and furiously on paper and in public speeches. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5478, 1b.
- ii. The three gentlemen looked *at each other* with blank faces, when these words were uttered. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. LX, 221b.  
I designed 'em *for each other*; they were made *for each other*, sent into the world *for each other*, born *for each other*. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 351. There were angry words between some dinner-carriers who had jostled *with each other*. Id., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 62.  
They tumbled up *against each other* at the door. Ib., 61.
- iii. The two women flung themselves into *each other's* arms, and irrigated *each other's* neck-handkerchiefs with tears. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXX, 850.  
Arabin, you and I were equal once, and we were friends, understanding *each other's* thoughts and sympathising with *each other's* sorrows. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 353.  
At the mention of that name the brother and sister clasped *each other's* hand. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 295.

Note a) In Older English prepositions were mostly placed between *each* and *other*, and this practice is still occasionally met with archaically. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 172; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 312; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 59.

And after that, with sharpe speres stronge | They foynen (= thrust) *ech at other* wonder longe. CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, A, 1654.

Pages blush'd at him and men of heart | Look'd wondering *each at other*. *Coriol.*, V, 6, 100.

For many a petty king, ere Arthur came, | Ruled in this isle, and ever waging war | *Each upon other* wasted all the land. TEN., *The Coming of Arthur*, 7.

β) In Early Modern English *each* and *other* are sometimes found to stand in immediate succession, although there is not another word to fulfil the function of subject.

With greedy force *each other* doth assail. SPENSER.<sup>1)</sup>

The following quotation contains some approach to the ancient construction:

Miss Cunningham and I are going to find out what *each other* are like. DOLF WYLLARDE, *The Story of Eden*, I, Ch. I, 26.

γ) Note the idioms in: i. Both parties in Opposition have been as bad as *each other* in this respect. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6089, 2a. (Compare: Each is worse than the one before. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*).

- ii. They died *within* a few days *of each other*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 46b.
- iii. Every one in this set is supposed to be acquainted with *each other*. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. II, 88.

b) When *each* and *other* are separated by other elements of the sentence, the latter resumes its full grammatical independence and, consequently, now requires the definite article. (165, Obs. V.)

<sup>1)</sup> MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 172.

Separation may take place not only when *each* itself is made to do duty as the subject, but also when another word than *each* performs this function. In the latter case *each* is sometimes followed by *of* + personal pronoun.

i. *Each* had imparted to *the other* full particulars of his history since their last meeting. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 564.

*Each* looked at *the other*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. I, 6b.

*Each* respected *the other's* silence. MAR. CRAWF., *Ad. Johnstone's Son*, Ch. IV.

For a moment neither spoke; *each* involuntarily looked at *the other* with new eyes and under changed conditions. *Each* had assumed a fresh standpoint in *the other's* thought. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. VI, 65.

ii. There is nothing in which you are not *each* the reverse of *the other*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 337.

She was deeply, sincerely devoted to her mother. Hitherto they had *each* understood *the other's* thoughts. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VIII, 140.

They looked *each* into *the other's* face. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 20.

iii. They will *each of them* (sc. Lucy and Lord Lufton) get wrong ideas about *the other*; and about themselves. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 126.

Note *a*) The grammatical functions of *each* and *the other* may be interchanged, but this construction is, apparently, rare.

In *each the other* saw himself. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. VI, 65.

*β*) The absence of the definite article before *other* survives only as a literary archaism. Compare 165, Obs. V.

That *each* from *other* differs, first confess; | Next, that he varies from himself no less. POPE, *Mor. Es.*, I, 19.

Their very coursers seem'd to know | That *each* was *other's* mortal foe. SCOTT, *Lay*, III, iv.

c) Also the conjoint *each* may be joined with the absolute *the other* to express the reciprocal idea.

*Each* good wife in the parish was saying to *the other*, "He turned Protestant? The devil turned monk." CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. IV, 28a.

### 38. The reciprocal idea may also be expressed by:

a) *one another*. For discussion and illustration see 156, c.

b) *neither... the other*, which is a not infrequent variant of *not... each other*, and can, of course, be used only when the reference is to two.

*Neither* knew *the other*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 33.  
(= They did not know each other.)

*Neither* saw *the other* for a while. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. VIII, 48b.

Thus *neither* having the clue to *the other's* secret, they were respectively puzzled at what each revealed, and awaited new knowledge of each other's character and moods without attempting to pry into each other's history. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XIX, 161.

There were subjects on which *neither* ever touched to *the other*. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. IV, 64.

Note. When the reference is to more than two, *none* takes the place of *neither*. Instances appear to be rare, however. In the following quotation the absence of the article before *other* seems to be unwarranted. (165, Obs. V.)

It is quite sure that no important remarks are made, for *none* seems to listen to *other*, but all (sc. the chaffinches) twitter the same things of no importance at the same time. HOR. HUTCHINSON (Westm. Gaz., No. 6089, 2c).

- c) the following pronouns and pronominal word-groups, all of them now obsolete or archaic in this function.

1) a) **either**. Treason and murder ever kept together, | As two yoke-devils sworn to *either's* purpose. HENRY V, I, 2, 107.

β) **other**. If Heaven a draught of heavenly pleasure spare, | One cordial in this melancholy vale, | 'Tis when a youthful, loving, modest pair, | In *other's* arms, breathe out the tender tale, | Beneath the milk-white thorn that scents the evening gale. BURNS, The Cotter's Sat. Night, IX. According to MURRAY (s.v. *other*, B, 8), now only in Scotch. For instances in the older stages of the language see EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 61.)

2) a) **both... either**. They are *both* in *either's* powers. Temp., I, 2, 449. (Perhaps *either* is to be understood as equivalent to *each other*. See EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 61, Anm. 3.)

β) **each... each**. The Duchess and her daughters fair, | And every gentle lady there, | *Each* after *each* in due degree, | Gave praises to his melody. SCOTT, Lay, I, xxxi.

Wondering they turn, abash'd, while *each* to *each* | Conjecture whispers in his muttering speech. BYRON, Corsair, I, vii.

Then *each*, dishorsed and drawing, lash'd at *each* | So often and with such blows that all the crowd | Wonder'd. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 563.

You two glare *each* at *each* like panthers now. BROWNING, In a Balcony, 902.

We were more precious *each* to *each* than anything on earth. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XL, 435.

Note the idiom in: The sides of these two triangles are equal *each to each*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

γ) **each... either**. For *each* had warded *either* in the fight. TEN., Coming of Arthur, 130.

They sleeping *each* by *either*. Id., Mar. of Ger., 70. (The Oxford edition has *other*.)

While they dance — | Or dream — of thee they dream'd not — nor of me | These — ay, but *each* of *either*. Id., Merl. and Viv., 114.

δ) **either... either**. While he spoke | Closed his death-drowsing eyes, and slept the sleep | With Balin, *either* lock'd in *either's* arms. TEN., Balin and Balan, 605.

ε) **either... the other**. The rights of *either* to disturb *the other*. MORLEY, Compromise, 102.1)

*Either* will serve *the other*. Periodical.2)

- d) certain adverbs and adjectives, as in:

i. We *mutually* embraced. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 42.

ii. Our *mutual* trust is sapped. BRIDGES, Hum. of the Court, II, 2, 2059.

1) MURRAY, s.v. *either* I, 2, d. 2) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 230.

- iii. The two brothers met as brothers who loved each other fondly, yet meet rarely *together*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XIV, 145. (See below, 39.)  
While the Prince and Earl | Yet spoke *together*. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 385. (See below, 39.)

Two or three men, conversing *together*, ceased as he approached. BRET HARTE, Outcasts.

There may be some place, "other side of nowhere," ... where  $2 + 2 = 5$ , and all bodies naturally repel one another, instead of gravitating *together*. HUXLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. XVII, 349.

### 39. The reciprocal notion is sometimes implied, so that it is not expressed by any special word.

In the following quotations the absence of illustration of the construction with a reciprocal pronoun does not mean that the latter is non-existent.

- i. Never were sisters so *attached*. FLORA MASSON, The Brontës, Ch. VI, 33.
- ii. \* I never flattered you, James, even when we were *engaged*. PETT RIDGE, The Eloquent Partner (Westm. Gaz., No. 6963, 13b).  
\*\* Before the autumn was at an end, my brother and Bertha were *engaged to each other*. G. ELIOT, The Lifted Veil, 310.
- iii. They could not talk to one another, because they had not been *introduced*. SWEET, A Story of Two Englishmen.  
She thus described their *introduction*. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. V, 71.
- iv. My design is ... that the two cousins may *fall in love*, and get married. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heigh'ts, Ch. XXI, 108a.
- v. \* The sisters-in-law kissed on *meeting*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XIX, 209.  
They used to nod to one another when they *met*. SWEET, A Story of Two Englishmen.  
\*\* Each morning the regular water-drinkers *met each other*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXVI, 331.  
The two had never *met each other* before. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXXVIII, 342.
- vi. The ridiculous and the sublime are *near*. SAM. BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. I, 13.
- vii. The consequence (sc. of the squabble) is that we haven't *spoken* for more than a week, and it looks as though we might never *speak* again. KEBLE HOWARD, One of the Family, I, Ch. I, 20. (See above under d.)  
They never, indeed, *spoke* during Byron's last year at school. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, I, Ch. VII, 114.
- viii. \* They had previously been on the most affectionate *terms*. Sir J. HANNEN in Law Rep.  
\*\* They were on excellent *terms with each other*. PETT RIDGE, The Eloquent Partner (Westm. Gaz., No. 6963, 13b).

### 40. *Each* forms a compound with *where*: *eachwhere*, which is now quite obsolete.

The nightingales thy coming *eachwhere* sing. W. DRUMMOND OF HAWTHORDEN, Summons to Love, (PALGRAVE, Gold. Treas., I, II.)

## EITHER.

### 41. *Either* is used *a*) as a distributive numeral (35), or *b*) as a conjunctive adverb.

For *either* as a conjunctive adverb see Ch. X, 10 and Ch. XI, 13.



42. As a distributive numeral it may be declined for the genitive. *either's*. Late Modern English instances are, however, rare.

Equalities are so weighed, that curiosity in neither can make choice of *either's* moiety. LEAR, I, I, 7.

At *either's* feet a trusty squire. SCOTT, *Marm.*, IV, *Introd.*, vi, 18.

But *either's* force was match'd till Yniol's cry, | 'Remember that great insult done the Queen', | Increased Geraint's. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 570.

Where *either's* fall determined both their fates. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 175.

43. The distributive numeral *either* is used in two shades of meaning: a) one and the other, b) one or (the) other, no matter which. Compare 155, b.

In the first application *either* sometimes implies *one in succession to the other*. In the second it figures as the substitute for *any* when the reference is to two persons or things. It is, however, devoid of the qualitative import which is mostly implied in the latter.

- i. \* Where they crucified him and two other men with him, on *either* side one, and Jesus in the midst. BIBLE, John, XIX, 18.

The houses on *either* side were high and large. DICK, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 13b.

They brought a chair on *either* side of me. Id., *Bleak House*, Ch. XIII, 109.

At *either* end was a lamp. *Either* view is tenable. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

\*\* With these joyful words they kissed Mr. Pecksniff on *either* cheek. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 6b.

Many a dreadful glance he cast on *either* side to see whether any knew or shunned him. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 52.

- ii. Few of *either* sex are ever united to their first love. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 485.

I don't think there's much harm done as yet on *either* side. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 131.

If an Englishman were to learn Dutch or Danish first, he would find *either* of them easier than German, as he could more often guess at the meaning of words. SKEAT, *Princ. of Etym.*, I, 87.

44. Obs. I. *Either* in the first meaning is getting more and more unusual. According to MURRAY (s. v. *either*) it is "felt to be somewhat archaic and must often be avoided on account of (its) ambiguity." SWEET (quoted in STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 1044) observes that it "is very common in writing in England, but I cannot imagine any one speaking it." Thus much seems to be certain that *each* is more common t'an *either*, also when the reference is to two persons, animals or things thought of separately, the latter being at all current only with certain nouns, such as *case*, *cheek*, *end*, *flank*, *half*, *respect*, *side*, *way*, which denote notions often thought of in pairs. Compare WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng. I*, 229. Here follow some quotations with *each* for comparison with those with *either* in 43, a.

Then might all people well discern The bottles he had slung, | A bottle swinging at *each* side, | As hath been said or sung. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XXVI.

In the centre of the upper table were placed two chairs more elevated than the rest... To *each* of these chairs was added a footstool. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 25.

Another steam-boat lay on *each* side of her. DICK., *Chuzzlewit*, Ch. XL, 315b.

- II. When the separative idea is not particularly prominent, both *either* and *each* mostly give place to *both*. In fact when it does not mean *one and the other together*, as in *I can lift this only with both hands*, *both*, as denoting the smallest possible aggregate, necessarily draws the attention to each member separately. Thus, according to MURRAY (s. v. *each*, 1, d), *on each side* is now less usual than *on both sides*.

And there he threw the wash about | On *both* sides of the way. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XXXIV.

In the twelfth chapter of IVANHOE, describing the famous tournament at Ashby-de-la-Zouche, *both*, however, appears but three times as a substitute for *either* or *each*. These latter are about equally divided, *either* occurring eight, *each* six times in the meaning of *one and the other*. *Both* seems objectionable when the distributive notion is strengthened by *the other* placed in correlation.

- i. Mrs. Gresham did think that *each* of these two was well inclined to love *the other*. TROL., *Framley Parsonage*, Ch. XXXVIII, 367.

And now it remained to them *each* to enjoy the assurance of *the other's* love. Id., *Barchinam*, Ch. XLIX, 435.

Ralston and Katharine walked away very slowly, both looking down, and *each* inwardly wondering whether *the other* would break the silence. MAR. CRAWF., *Katharine's Story*, I, Ch. XV, 284.

- ii. *Either* sex only exists in virtue of the existence of *the other*. *Westminster Gazette*, No. 5525, 4a.

Thus also *alternately* renders substitution of *both* for *either* or *each* impossible in:

The struggle between the two two fierce Tentonic breeds lasted during six generations. *Each* was *alternately* paramount. MAC., *History*, I, Ch. I, 10.

Here follow some sentences in which *either* and *each* seem to be used at variance with ordinary practice, which would have *both*.

- i. And one, in whom all evil fancies clung | Like serpent eggs together, laughingly | Would hint at worse in *either*. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 478.

Bright was that afternoon, | Sunny but chill; till drawn thro' *either* chasm, | Where *either* haven open'd on the deeps, | Roll'd a sea-haze and whelm'd the world in gray. *Ib.*, 666.

And Balin's horse | Was wearied to the death, and, when they clash'd, | Rolling back upon Balin, crush'd the man | Inward, and *either* fell, and swoon'd away. *Id.*, *Balin and Balan*, 539.

- ii. *Each* said yours is the finest tail | In the world, excepting mine.

C and g had *each* a back (guttural) and a front (palatal) pronunciation. SWEET, *Anglo-Saxon Primer*, 3.

In the following quotations *both* and *each* are used in succession in accordance with the different shades of meaning they convey.

*Both* these man's eyes followed George into the house, and *each* had a strong emotion they were bent on concealing. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 34.

*Both* parties are disappointed at the results of the election. *Each* party has an important card in its hand. *Spectator* (*Westminster Gazette*), No. 5490, 20c.

- III. *Either* in the second sense is occasionally used with regard to more than two. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *either*, 4, c; EINENKEL, *Anglia* XXVIII, 69; id., *Das Indefinitum*, § 229; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.731-2.

She was smaller in stature than *either* of her three sisters. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 95.

"Which of them do you like best, Mr. Warrington," asked the honest colonel. — "Which of whom, sir?" — "The Curate of Mendon or the Dean of St. Patrick's, or honest Tom, or Mr. Fielding?" — "And what were they, sir?" — "They! Why, they wrote books." — "Indeed, sir, I never heard of *either* one of 'em," said Harry, hanging down his head. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 231.

There are ten oranges, take *either* of them. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *either*.

Conversely we find instances of *any* used with reference to two in Middle English and in certain, especially Northern, dialects. For illustration see MURRAY, s. v. *any*, 5.

45. Irrespective of its particular shade of meaning, *either* may be used conjointly, absolutely and substantively.

- i. There was a huge fireplace at *either* end of the hall. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 23.

The tickets are good for the journey in *either* direction. J. G. WOOD, *Transatlantic Contrasts* (Good Words for 1884).

- ii. Though very fond of Mr. Slope herself, she had never conceived the idea that *either* of her daughters would become so. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. IV, 25.

I can hardly imagine anything more unfortunate than that he should become attached to *either* of your sisters. Miss YONGE, *The Heir of Redclyffe*, I, Ch. VII, 117.

- iii. How happy could I be with *either*, | Were t'other dear charmer away! GAY, *Beggar's Opera*.

I should think *either* (sc. "The Heart of Midlothian" and "The Fortunes of Nigel") would prove entralling to youths of both sexes. Westm. Gaz., No. 5490, 4b.

Note. The word-group *either of* + plural pronoun is sometimes placed after a (pro)noun, partly as an adverbial adjunct, partly as an apposition.

It is the first time we have *either of us* loved with our whole heart and soul. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XIV, 442.

"You don't stay up (sc. in town) very long, I believe." — "A good deal longer than we *either of us* like, I can assure you." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVII, 168.

#### ENOUGH.

46. *Enough* is used a) as an indefinite numeral, b) as an adverb of degree.

47. As an indefinite numeral *enough* is used of both number and quantity, and occurs:

- a) conjointly. Owing to its being partially adverbial in character the conjoint *enough* is often placed after the noun it modifies. Compare Ch. VIII, 100. According to WEBST. (*Dict.* s. v. *enough*, a) this position is the more usual and elegant one.

i. \* I've felt lately that we did'n't see *enough people*. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Ogländer, Ch. VII, 115.

\*\* He had just *enough recollection* of the face to desire to do that. DICK., Christm. Car<sup>5</sup>, I, 20.

ii. \* Now there are *candidates enough*, who will pretend that they are for reform. COBBETT, Pol. Reg. XXXIII, 108.<sup>1)</sup> (= candidates in sufficient numbers.)

\*\* We had not *resolution enough* to give any man pain by denial. GOLD-SMITH, Vic., Ch. III.

He (sc. Boswell) was... a man without delicacy, without shame, without *sense enough* to know when he was hurting the feelings of others, or when he was exposing himself to derision. MAC., Boswell's Life of Johnson, (176b).

Note. When modifying a predicative noun, *enough* practically becomes a pure adverb, the predicative noun assuming the character of an adjective. See also Ch. XXIII, 16, c.

He was not man *enough* to confess the truth. MURRAY, s. v. *enough*, B, 1, b.

b) absolutely: There were plenty of trees, but not *enough* to shelter the house at all hours of the day. He had some money, but not *enough* to extricate himself from his difficulties.

Note a) The absolute *enough* + partitive *of* sometimes has the value of the conjoint *enough*.

It seems, perhaps, difficult to conceive that any one should have had *enough of* impudence to lay down dogmatical rules in any art or science without the least foundation. FIELDING, Tom Jones, V, Ch. I, 63b.

The whole matter was enveloped in *enough of* doubt and mystery to leave them in endurance of the most intense suspense. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. LI, 473.

If I am young in arms, there are *enough of* brave men around me, whom I may imitate if I cannot equal. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIV, 359.

Is not this *enough of* humiliation? THACK., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. XIII, 444.

Indeed, if Harry Warrington had a passion for military pursuits and studies, there was *enough of* war stirring in Europe, and enough talk in all societies which he frequented in London, to excite and inflame him. Id., Virg., Ch. LXII, 636. (Observe the alternate use of *enough of* and *enough*.)

β) Note the idiom in: i. Mr. Bungay presently had *enough* of this talk. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXII, 346.

I think I have had *enough* of this now. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XVII, 171.

ii. He is not *enough* of a doctor to tell whether a man is drunk or sober. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 133.

c) substantively: She therefore took her grandfather aside, and telling him that she had still *enough* left to defray the cost of their lodging, proposed that they should stay there for the night. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XXX, 111b.

Note the idiom in: i. *Enough* is as good as a feast. Proverb.

ii. He had *enough* to do to take care of himself. WEBST., Dict.

I have *enough to do* to carry my share. Westm. Gaz., No. 5179, 11. (Older English has *enough ado*, as in: She would have *enough ado* to get home. Sir J. HOPE, Rep. Cond., 126.<sup>1)</sup> Compare 93, Obs. II.)

iii. That boy thou thought'st so goodly fair, | He might not brook the northern air. | More of his fate if thou wouldst learn, | I left him sick at Lindisfarne: *Enough* of him. SCOTT, Marmion, I, xvi.



- d) predicatively: His own heart laughed and that was quite *enough* for him. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, V, 111.

Note. The predicative *enough* is often used in a sense approaching to *quite capable of*.

You are *enough* to provoke a saint. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 896.

He would fix on them a gaze that was always *enough* to make them take to their legs in terror. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

It's *enough* to blow your head off. CHESTERTON, *Manalive*, I, Ch. I, 15.

She said it was *enough* to mike (= make) a cat larf (= laugh). *Punch*, No. 3748, 370a.

48. The adverbial *enough* is used to modify verbs, adjectives and adverbs.

It does not *freeze enough* (The frost is not *severe enough*, It does not freeze *severely enough*) for the ice to bear.

49. The adverbial *enough* is used in some interesting shades of meaning, which can hardly be expressed by the Dutch *genoeg*.

- a) As a modifier of adjectives or adverbs it often approximates to the down-toning *rather*.

The adjective may be either predicative or attributive. In the latter case *enough* may stand either after or before the noun. See Ch. VIII, 46, a. The adverb modified by *enough* often denotes an adverbial relation of attendant circumstances, and in this case mostly has front-position. Compare E. BORST, *Gradadverbien*, 54; STOF., *E. S.*, XXXV, 391; BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective attribute in Eng. Prose*, § 298—9.

- α) i. It (sc. the house) was old *enough* now, and dreary *enough*. *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 18.

That such a man should have written one of the best books in the world is strange *enough*. But this is not all. MAC., *Johnson*, (176a). I have been led to select this topic as the subject of our usual science article from a source which may strike some of my readers as peculiar *enough*. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3779, 478a.

- ii. \* The old gentleman wrote me a kind letter *enough*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

Doubtless at high noon... the garden was a trite trodden-down place *enough*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XII, 130.

\*\* The play itself is a simple *enough* story from the lives of a few Fell farmers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5525, 8d.

- β) i. Clark chatted cheerfully *enough* with the boy for a minute or two. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

- ii. \* *Singularly enough*, I hear that your brother is private secretary to the new Lord Petty Bag. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVIII, 172.

*Oddly enough*, the only optimism seemed to reign in official circles. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5549, 5a.

\*\* It (sc. the drawing-room) had lost one of its back corners *awkwardly enough*, apparently in a jostle with the neighbouring house. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVII, 163.

- b) As a modifier of a predicative adjective or an adverb, *enough* sometimes denotes that as high an intensity has been attained as might be expected. The same idea may be approximately expressed by *but* (or *only*) *too*.

He was glad *enough* to go. THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. III, 21,  
You know *well enough* that you might have taken action a little earlier.

Note especially the frequent *sure enough* finishing or opening a statement and indicating that it has to be accepted as founded on fact.

i. So Pen rode to the George, and the ostler told him that Mr. Foker was there, *sure enough*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 54.

Thou hast been amongst the swine, *sure enough*. Id., Virg., Ch. LIII, 549.  
It (sc. the gun) looks like his; ay, it's his, *sure enough*. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XIX, 208.

ii. To convince us that they (sc. the young peewits) were not really dead, he soon put them down again, and we went and stood some way off. *Sure enough*, they soon showed every sign of life, and began to make their escape. SWEET, The Old Chapel.

*Sure enough*, it was Carver's self, who stood bare-headed, and half undressed in the doorway. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVIII, 222.

*Enough* may have the same import when modifying the indefinite numeral *little*.

As for John he had *little enough* of enjoyment of the pretty spot. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XI, 112.

He saw *little enough* of his stepson. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, I, 220.

c) As a verb-modifier *enough* is sometimes found in a sense which corresponds to the secondary notion often expressed by the predicative *enough*. See 47, d, Note.

Her heart had been beating *enough* to burst her body. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., I, Ch. I, 5.

## ENOW.

50. *Enow* is a secondary form of *enough*, but is now only used archaically and in dialects.

In Early Modern English *enow* was regarded as a special plural form, although it was not rarely used as a singular also. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1035.

In Present Literary English (according to MURRAY), it is almost exclusively used by Scotchmen, chiefly as a plural. It is in high favour with TENNYSON, who appears to use it without distinction of number, as a more poetic word than *enough*. See FICKER, Bem. zu Sprache und Wordschatz in TENNYSON'S "Idylls of the King." According to JESPERSEN (Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 2.75), the distinction between *enough* as a singular and *enow* as a plural seems to be kept up by GEORGE ELIOT in her dialect dialogues.

For such-like need, my lord, I trow, | Norham can find you guides *enow*. SCOTT, Marm., I, xix.

"Has she no fear that her first husband lives?" | "Ay, ay, poor soul," said Miriam, "fear *enow*." TEN., En. Ard., 803.

Must our true man change like a leaf at last? | Nay—like *enow*. Id., Lanc. & El., 683.

There was I beaten down by little men, Mean knights, to whom the moving of my sword | And shadow of my spear had been *enow* | To scare them from me once. Id., Holy Grail, 788.

## EVERY.

51. *Every* is used only as a conjoint adnominal word.

For a discussion of the use of prop-words after *every* see Ch. XLIII.

Note. *Every* is used adverbially as a corruption of *ever* in those compounds in which it is followed by an adverb or adverbial word-group, such as *everywhere*, *every now and then*, etc. See 56, and compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 204. Thus also in:

It's come to a hard pass when a man would give ought in the world for work to keep his children from starving, and can't get a bit, if he's *every* so willing to labour. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 363.

52. a) Unlike the Dutch *ieder* (elk), *every* may be preceded by a genitive or a possessive pronoun. Compare Ch. XXXIII, 12, Obs. II.

- i. In *misery's every* refuge, he left his blessing. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, III, 83.

We shall have to go on quietly building ships — two to *Germany's every* one. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 682.

The *Medical Man's every* minute is of the utmost importance. II. Lond. News, No. 3906, 357.

'Tis a fact | That this detested pestilence invades | *Earth's every* nook. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, II, 2, 1574.

- ii. "Kind stranger," said the old man, *whose every* feature darkened as he spoke, "good Christian stranger, that is the main part of my trouble." DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 206.

Daily in life I watch men *whose every* smile is an artifice, and every wink is an hypocrisy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 901.

- iii. It engaged *his every* thought. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

*Our every* idea of sex has become tainted with this secret knowledge of our own falseness. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 268.

- b) *Every* may be followed not only by an adjective or an adnominal noun, either in the common case or the genitive, belonging to the same head-word, but also by a cardinal or ordinal numeral. These numerals are found especially when *every* expresses regular recurrence of phenomena at stated intervals of time or space. See 53. Occasionally we find the numeral *one* placed after *every* to express one-ness emphatically. See XLII, 9, Obs. V.

*Every* good book, *every* maiden speech, *every* woman's voice, *every* three weeks, *every* third week.

They (sc. the evils) were all like one another as half-pence are, *every* one fault seeming monstrous till his fellow-fault came to match it. As you like it, III, 2, 372.

- c) In older English we sometimes find the definite article placed between *every* and a superlative: *every the best* man. In modern practice *even* would be placed between *every* and the definite article: *every, even the best* man. A similar idiom may be observed in *any* (18 Obs. XIV), and *many* (86, Obs. I). Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 203.

*Every the least* remembrance. J. KING, Serm. XXVIII.<sup>1)</sup>

*Every the least* variation. LOCKE.<sup>2)</sup>

*Every, the most complex*, web of thought may be reduced to simple syllogisms. Sir W. HAMILTON, Logic, XV.<sup>1)</sup>

*Every the minutest* point. LYTTON.<sup>2)</sup>

53. a) *Every* is "used to express distributively the sense that is expressed collectively by *all*". MURRAY.

For a comparison of *every* with *any*, *all* and *each* see respectively 18, Obs. VIII, 54 and 55.

- b) A frequent secondary notion of *every*, which is never implied in either *all* or *any*, and only to a limited extent in *each*, is that of regular recurrence of a phenomenon at stated intervals of time or space.

- 1) Recurrence of a phenomenon at stated intervals of time is expressed in various ways, as may be seen in the following scheme: *He came to see us every day (week, fortnight, etc.); every two (three, etc.) days (weeks, etc.); every few days (weeks, etc.); every second (third etc.) day (week etc.); every other day (week, etc.); every alternate day (week, etc.); once (twice, etc.) [in] every two (three etc.) days (weeks, etc.)*. Compare also Ch. XXXI, 8, Note I.

A little illustration may suffice.

A parliament should be held *every three years*. MAC., Hist., I, 176.<sup>3)</sup>  
She was to write to him *every alternate day*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XIV, 112.

He was invited to dine at Framley Court... once *in every three months* TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 12.

She wrote me, pretty well *every second day*, a full budget of news about herself and her mother. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's. She has been ordered to administer brandy and Brand's essence alternate (= alternately) *every half-hour*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. V, 70.

- 2) There is little less variety of forms in stating recurrence of a phenomenon at stated intervals of space, as is shown by the following instances:

*Stations were erected (at) every mile (half-mile, two miles, etc.); every few miles; every second (third, etc.) mile; every other mile; every alternate mile*.

There are stations *every half mile*. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 335.  
In his hand was a siver-headed walking-stick, which he used as a veritable third leg, perseveringly dotting the ground with its point at *every few inches'* interval. HARDY, Return of the Nat., I, Ch. II, 9.

He climbed upstairs, weightily, laboriously, stopping *every few steps* to breathe. Eng. Rev., Aug., 1912, 27.

Note a) Recurrency at certain intervals of time is sometimes implied in a word-group which does not contain the name of a measure of time.

1) MURRAY, S. V. *every*, I, 1, c.

2) MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 80.

3) MURRAY, S. V. *every*, I, 1, e.



They were ready to presume *at every turn* on the generosity of the hard-pressed medical man. Daily Mail.

Mr. Asquith made another attempt (sc. to speak), but *at every other word* he was interrupted. Times, No. 1804, 593a.

β) In connection with comparatives combinations of *every* with a bare singular usually express little more than a gradual increase of some quality. Compare Ch. XXX, 39, Note III.

Handsome *every day*. Dick., Crick., I, 24.

Little Paul grew stouter and stronger *every day*. Id., Domb., Ch. V, 33.

*Every day* it is growing worse. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. VIII, 70.

γ) The notion of recurrency being one which is associated with an action, it is but natural that it should be mostly expressed by an adverbial adjunct, as in all the preceding quotations. Sometimes, however, we find it implied in a combination with *every* that is used in another grammatical function. This same starved justice hath done nothing but prate to me of the wildness of his youth, and the feats he hath done about Turnbull Street; and *every third word* a lie. Henry IV, B, III, 2, 329.

He touched his hat to everybody, and *every other man* he met was a lord. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 12.

*Almost every other word* he uttered was an oath. Id., The Four Georges, IV, 99.

δ) Before a bare singular, as in *every day*, *every mile*, etc., the secondary notion of recurrency stands out but feebly from the general meaning of *every*, viz. that no person, animal or thing is excepted from whatever is expressed by the predicate. Hence it is that not infrequently *each* is found in the same combinations, especially when a limited number is referred to. Compare 55. This use of *each* is by some grammarians regarded as Scotch or American, but in face of the fact that it is not particularly infrequent in literature that is otherwise innocent of Scotticisms or Americanisms, it cannot be said to be un-English. Compare STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 767, 912, 1038. The use of *each* before a singular preceded by an ordinal numeral is decidedly rare.

- i. In our village alone, three post-coaches thunder through the streets *each day*. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Lothian, Ch. I, 17.

*At each fall* there was a cheer; and everybody was anxious to have the honour of offering the conqueror a knee. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 45.

She comes *each night* now. JEROME, Woman of the Soeter, 124.

The brass band played *each evening* during the officers' mess. Graph.

*Each moment* I felt increasing upon me that dreadful doubt as to my own identity. SAM. BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. V, 4.

The method consists in taking milk, at first *every two hours*, then *each hour*, and finally *every half-hour*. Lit. World, 1911. (Note the varied practice.)

- ii. This trouble is accentuated by the system of adding an extra day to *each fourth year*. From these circumstances of the three hundred and sixty-five days and the odd one every fourth year all our troubles of the calendar spring. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup> (Note the varied practice.)

ε) In combinations with multiplicatives *every* is often dispensed with. Compare Ch. XXXI, 8, f, Note I, β.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 231.

The artificial comedy, or comedy of manners, is quite extinct on our stage. Congreve and Farquhar show their heads *once in seven years*, only to be exploded and put down instantly. CH. LAMB, Es. of El., On the Artificial Com. of the Last Cent., (272).

ζ) Alternate recurrence of a phenomenon at stated intervals may be expressed in various ways, as is shown by the following quotations:

- i. \* He and I go *on alternate days*. MURRAY, s. v. *alternate*, 3, a  
 \*\* The minister and the people read *alternate verses*. Ib.
- ii. \* Come, Tommy, *drink about*, the bottle stands with you. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. v. 55b.  
 They were sent *week about* to the parish school at Dalrymple. W. GUNNYON, Biogr. Sketch of Burns, 5.  
 \*\* "*Drink and drink about*," said the Baronet. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 71,  
 She next went *turn and turn about* to the Low Town Church and to the Abbey. Id., Pend., Ch. XIV.  
 The squire and John finally agreed to watch *turn and turn about*. MAR. CRAWF., A Tale of a Lonely Parish, Ch. XXI, 169.  
 \*\*\* The peasants *take turns* in receiving travellers. LONGFELLOW, Rural Life in Sweden.  
 A group of people were *waiting turns* at the telescope. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. IV.  
 \*\*\*\* They kept watch *by turns*. Folk Lore.  
 \*\*\*\*\* He had been sailor, smuggler, horse-dealer and farmer *in turns*. Mrs. GASK., Sylvia's Lovers, Ch. IV, 46.  
 \*\*\*\*\* The cards fell slowly, one by one, before each man *in turn*. CONAN DOYLE, The Siege of Sunda Gunge.

### *Every and all compared.*

54. I. The differences between *every* and *all* are chiefly of a grammatical character.

- a) *Every* is used only as a conjoint adnominal word, whereas *all* is also used absolutely and substantively and is not seldom partly or entirely adverbial. When occasion arises to employ *every* in the function of a substantive word, it requires a prop-word: mostly *body* or *one* when the reference is to persons, mostly *thing* when things are referred to. For details see Ch. XLIII.
- b) *All* is used to modify pronouns as well as nouns, *every* only to modify nouns. Thus we have both *all kings*, *all countries* and *every king*, *every country*. But *every* cannot be substituted for *all* in:

*All this* is distasteful to me. MURRAY, s. v. *all*, A, I, 1, c.

For further illustration see 11, Obs. I.

- c) *Every* can be attended by no other defining adjunct than a possessive pronoun or a genitive. See 52, a. *All*, on the other hand, may also be accompanied by a demonstrative or determinative pronoun or by the definite article. *Every* always follows, *all* always precedes the other modifier. See 8, a.

- d) *All* occasionally follows its head-word, *every* is always rigidly kept before it. See 8, a.
- e) *All*, owing the fact that it is often adverbial in character, not seldom leaves its head-word to be placed in the body of the predicate. See 3, Obs. I; 6; 11, Obs. I. This is never the case with *every*, which is always strictly adnominal. *Every one*, *every man of them* and similar word-groups are, however, sometimes used partly appositionally partly adverbially, to emphasize universality. See also Ch. VIII, 100, e.

They (sc. the houses) were *every one* inhabited. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. III, 15a.

He kissed them *every one*. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, IV, 137.

We meant to be sailors *every one of us*. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 74).

- f) *All* may be followed by partitive *of*, but *everything* is never found in such a construction. See 3, Obs. III.

William slept badly at best, and to-night must need *all* that he could get *of rest*. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. VI, 69.

- g) *All* is found as the formative of a great many compounds, such as *All-creator*, *All-giver*. See 4. *Everything* admits of no such use.

- h) The pronoun *all* can be used as a pure noun as in *He has lost his all*. Except for some nonce-uses, this is hardly possible with *everything*. For illustration see 5, a and Ch. XLIII, 38, Obs. III, b.

II. Considering that *every* is but weakly distributive and some distributive notion is sometimes implied in *all*, the difference in meaning between the two words is often only a slight one, so that not infrequently a substitution of one for the other would not materially alter the meaning of the sentence.

- a) Let it be stated at the outset that:

1) *all* is used with regard to both quantity and number, *every* only with regard to number. Compare: *All sail was taken* in with *Every sail was taken* in.

2) only *all* may imply a secondary notion of exclusiveness, ordinarily expressed by *only*. See 3, Obs. II and 11, Obs. III.

That was *all* the scolding that Mark Robarts got from his wife on the occasion of his great iniquity. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IX, 88.

For *all* reply, Mr. Bull slowly drew the handkerchief over his face again. DESMOND COKE, *The Cure*, Ch. IV, 43.

That's *all* the child needs to know. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 106.

*All* work and no play makes Jack a dull boy. *Proverb.*

3) *all* sometimes approximates to *any* or *whatever*, and in this application does not bear replacing by *every*. See 18, Obs. VIII.

He... (looked) exactly the same under *all* circumstances. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 9.

To loyal hearts the value of *all* gifts | Must vary as the giver's. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 1207.

*All* idea of capture by any raid was... *abandoned* on the ground that it would almost certainly lead to more loss of life. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5507, 1b.

- 4) *every* often implies a secondary notion of recurrency of a phenomenon at stated intervals of time or space. *All* is incapable of expressing any such idea. See 53, *b*.
- b*) For the rest the differences are more delicate or less defined. For an orderly discussion it seems advisable to compare successively:
- 1) *every* with the conjoint numeral *all*.
  - 2) *everybody* (-one, man, etc.) with the substantive numeral *all*.
  - 3) *everything* with the substantive pronoun *all*.
- 1) *a*) In its ordinary application *every*, from its distributive meaning, can be used to modify only common nouns denoting things thought of within limits, called *countables* by JESPERSEN in *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 5.2.
- But like the indefinite article (Ch. XXXI, 38) *every* is not seldom found before the names of materials, actions, qualities or states (i. e. of things thought of without limits) called *mass-words* or *uncountables* by JESPERSEN in *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 4.17 and 5.2. In this case these words are used out of their ordinary meaning, special varieties, instances or aspects being meant. *All* is not infrequently found before the same nouns similarly modified in meaning, that is to say in a weakly distributive sense. In this combination the difference between *every* and *all* is, accordingly, hardly appreciable, the former being, however, rarely used when an idea of exclusiveness or a kindred notion underlies the sentence. See 18, Obs. VIII, *ε*. For a discussion of the distributive *all* see also EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, §§ 147 and 168.
- i. His goblets brimm'd with *every* costly wine. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, XI.
- Mr. Wijnkoop has come from his long stay in India with *every* confidence in the operation of Christian missions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 8*a*.
- The Colonials have passed through a very trying ordeal indeed with *every* credit to themselves. *Ib.*, No. 6065, 19*c*.
- I feel *every* respect for him. They showed him *every* consideration. There is *every* prospect of success. MURRAY, s. v. *every*, 3. (MURRAY'S definition of *every* in this application is *all possible*. Compare also the quotations under 8, *a*, Note *a*.)
- ii. To go the way of *all* flesh. A maid-of-*all*-work.
- All beer* disagrees with me confoundedly. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 175.
- It is beyond *all* hope, against *all* chance, | That he who left you ten long years ago | Should still be living. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 400. (W. T. WEBB'S explanation (Macmillan's English Classics) of *against all chance* runs: *contrary to every probability*.)
- β*) Also when *every* stands before a noun denoting a thing thought of within limits, it frequently does not materially differ from *all*. Thus there does not appear to be much difference between *I have read every book in my father's library* and the same sentence with *all* substituted for *every*. Thus also *Every theory is open to objection* means practically the same as *All theories are open to objection*. Only *every*, by calling attention to the members of the



collection individually, may, perhaps, be considered to express universality with greater emphasis than *all*. This would explain why *every* is sometimes added by way of climax to *all*. See 11, Obs. V. The opposite practice, i. e. the use of *all* by way of climax after *every*, seems to be less natural.

- i. He had a natural taste for reading *every possible* kind of book which did not fall into his school course. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 33.  
*Every couple is not a pair.* Proverb.  
*Every monkey will have his gambols.* Id.  
*Every miller draws the water to his own mill.* Id.  
 She could commit even that indiscretion if she pleased — under penalty of losing *every penny* of her income. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (5).
- ii. He proved himself in *all* respects a highly desirable inmate. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXXVI, 133a.  
 The other was in *all* respects a splendid and remarkable individual. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 139.  
 The boy's advent is a great blessing to her in *all* ways. KINGSLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 321.  
*All doors open to courtesy.* Proverb.

When, however, the distributive notion indicated by *every* is attended by dissimilarity of circumstances in the individual members of the collection, the difference is distinctly perceptible. Thus a substitution of *all* for *every* would materially alter the meaning of the following sentences:

- i. England expects *every* man to do his duty. NELSON (MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 387).  
*Every word he said was true.* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIX, 723.  
 I dared commit no fault: I strove to fulfil *every* duty. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 11.  
*Every word of it is false.* FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

Conversely the absolute exclusion of any distributive notion would render *every* impossible as a substitute for *all* in the idiom commented on in 11, Obs. IV, with all its variations and variants.

A farmer of taxes is, of *all* creditors, proverbially the most rapacious. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 283.

- y) *All* is absolutely undistinguishable from *every* when such a 'countable' is kept in the singular and, accordingly, *all* is more or less distributive. Thus no perceptible modification would be involved by an exchange of *every* for *all* in the following sentences, although idiom would not always tolerate such substitution:

All is the fear and nothing is the love: | As little is the wisdom, where the flight |  
 So runs against *all* reason. MACB., IV, 2, 14.

But out, affection! *All* bond and privilege of nature break! Coriol., V, 3, 25.  
 I am sure we have *all occasion* to regret the want of these ready supplements to a failing invention. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Introd.*, 12.

Note especially *all manner of* + plural noun, as in: Mrs. Proudie made him quite one of the party, talking to him about *all manner of* church subjects. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 37.

They try *all manner of* schemes. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, On being idle.  
 He (sc. Disraeli) enlivened his travels with *all manner of* escapades and buffooneries. Westm. Gaz., No. 5448, 9c.

For illustration of *by all* (*manner of*) *means* see Ch. XXV, 20.

For a discussion of this phrase, and its Middle English analogon *alles cunnes*, see especially EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 158—163.

- 2) Comparing *everybody* and its variants with the substantive numeral *all*, we find that the former is distinctly preferred when it is not any special circle of persons that is spoken about, although the reference may be narrowed by a classifying adjunct. When a special circle of persons, whether or no indicated by a defining or specializing adjunct, is meant, *all* is the ordinary word, although *everybody*, or any of its variants, is by no means rare. *Everybody* etc. is, accordingly, the pronoun almost regularly met with in proverbs and sayings stating truths that apply to all manner of persons, while *all* is used, practically to the exclusion of *everybody*, in gathering up a number of persons.

- i. \* *Everybody* profits by the indiscretion of his neighbour. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLI, 322*b*.

Almost *every man* who lives in the world has the happiness... of counting a few such persons amongst his circle of acquaintance. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 22.

*Everybody* agrees that we shall have no superiority worth reckoning within three years from now. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5432, 1*c*.

*Every one* knows that some ships will be laid down. *lb*.

*Everybody* is going to read Commander Peary's account of how he reached the North Pole. *lb.*, 5454, 1*a*.

The young man possessed that sort of courage in abundance, as *every one* knew. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 121.

*Every one* is glad to see a knave caught in his own trap. *Proverb*.

*Every man* thinks his own geese swans. *Proverb*.

\*\* Young Martin sat at the head of the table and Tom Pinch at the foot; and if there was a genial face at that board, it was Tom's. They all took their tone from him. *Everybody* drank to him and *everybody* looked to him, *everybody* thought of him and *everybody* loved him. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LIII, 415*b*.

The doctor took snuff with *everybody*, chatted with *everybody*, laughed, danced, made jokes, played whist, did everything and was everywhere. *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 14.

Cuff's fight with Dobbin will long be remembered by *every man* who was educated at Dr. Swishtail's seminary. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 40.

"Beastly old hole," Mr. Foker remarked. Hate it. Hate the Doctor: hate Towzer, the second master: hate *everybody* there. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 41.

Mrs. Haller saw him and *everybody* else. *lb.*, I, Ch. IV, 47.

- ii. \* Our cousins, too, even of the fortieth remove, *all* remembered their affinity. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. I.

The morning came, the chaise was brought, | But yet was not allowed | To drive up to the door, lest *all* | Should say that she was proud. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, IX.

For Spain is compass'd by unyielding foes, | And *all* must yield their all, or share Subjection's woes. BYRON, *Childe Harold*, I, xxxi.

Amid the varied forms of the combat, the eyes of *all* endeavoured to discover the leaders of each band. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 124.

By love, by a brightness of wit and good-humour that charmed *all*... he won Harry's absolute fealty. THACK., *Henry Es.*, I, Ch. IV, 30

It was observed by *all* that the duke was especially attentive to young Mr. Frank Gresham. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 79.

Then fearing night and chill for Annie, rose | And sent his voice beneath him through the wood... | Up came the children laden with their spoil; | Then *all* descended to the port. TEN., EN. ARD., 443.

There is one fact which I earnestly commend to the attention of *all* here present. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5478, 1b.

\*\* John, George, William and Thomas, *all* came to wish him joy.

The King, the Queen, the Prince of Wales and the Duke of Connaught, *all* honoured him with their attentions.

\*\*\* Let us then, without repining, give up those splendours with which numbers are wretched, and seek in humbler circumstances that place with which *all* may be happy. GOLDSMITH, VIC., Ch. III, (246).

Commoner = One of the common people; a member of the commonalty. (Now applied to *all* below the rank of a peer.) MURRAY, s.v. *commoner*, 2.

We need not review here the course of the Election, still fresh in the minds of *all*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5501, 1c.

Here, then, is a prescription within the reach of *all*. 11. LOND. NEWS, No. 3831, 428c.

In the following quotation *every one who* and *all who* are used alternately in the same shade of meaning and in identical connections:

Having ruined *all whom* he should have loved, having burnt up *every one who* would trust him much, and scorched *all who* would trust him; a little, he is at last left to finish his life with such bread and water as these men get. TROL., FRAML. PARS., Ch. XII, 119.

Note. A rather frequent equivalent of *everybody* when entirely indefinite is *all men*, other word-groups with *all* of a similar universal import being sometimes used as variants.

- i. *All men* can't be masters. Proverb.

*All men* think their enemies ill men. Id.

Lord Boanerges ... was regarded by *all men* ... as an intellectual king. TROL., FRAML. PARS., Ch. VII, 69.

*All men* look'd upon him favourably. TEN., EN. ARD., 56.

That sort of thing (sc. getting drunk) has happened to almost *all men* at one time or another. MAR. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., II, Ch. V, 88.

- ii. The sun shines for everybody; the flowers smell sweet for *all noses*; and the nightingale and Lalage warble for *all ears*. THACK., VIRG., Ch. LIX, 735.
- Worry..., as *all observers* are agreed, kills more people than work. 11. LOND. NEWS, No. 3831, 428e.

- 3) The differentiation between *everything* and the pronoun *all* follows the same lines as that between *everybody* (and its variants) and the substantive numeral *all*.

*Everything* is the ordinary word when what is meant is not defined in any way, *all* varying with *everything* when the indefinite notion is narrowed by a defining adjunct, which may be implied in the context. *All* is, however, used to the exclusion of *everything* when it stands by way of head-word to an apposition of the third kind. See 3, Obs. I. In the first group of the following quotations substitution of *all* for *everything* would seem to be impossible.

Fadladeen was a judge of *everything*. MOORE, LALLA ROOKH, (331).

I'm used to it, and use is *everything*. DICK., COP., Ch. V, 34a.

He proved himself in all respects a highly desirable inmate, paying for *everything* beforehand. Id., OLD CUR. SHOP, Ch. XXXVI, 133a.

Kit cried "an-kor" at the end of *everything*, the three-act piece included. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 145*b*.

Lord Boanerges was there, an old man who would have his own way in *everything*. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 69.

The Lufton-Grantly alliance was in her mind the best; seeing that she did not regard money as *everything*. *Ib.*, Ch. XIII, 153.

He had a passion for birds, beasts and insects, and knew more of them and their habits than any one in Rugby; except perhaps the Doctor, who knew *everything*. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

Expediency, the rule of the practical man, is *everything*. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 553*a*.

\*\* He bought up *everything* around him that was to be purchased. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 13.

ii. \* *All's well that ends well*. *SHAKESPEARE*.

*All* is fish that comes to his net. *PROVERB*.

Her heart was so aching-full of other things that *all* besides seemed like a dream. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXI, 224.

The strange little figure there (sc. in the looking-glass) gazing at me, with... glittering eyes of fear moving where *all* else was still, had the effect of a real spirit. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 10.

For the first three months the Parliament Bill must come first and last and supersede *all* else until it is disposed of. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5519, 1*b*.

So laudable a motive covered *all* else. *E. F. BENSON*, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. I, 16.

\*\* *All* is soon ready in an orderly house. *PROVERB*. (= Everything in an orderly house is soon ready.)

Having listened while the boys made *all* secure,... (he) slunk down the street as quickly as he could. *DICK.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XIX, 179 (i. e. everything connected with the house.)

Till hard upon the cry of 'breakers' came | The crash of ruin and the loss of *all*. *TEN.*, *En. Ard.*, 545. (i. e. everything in and about the ship.)

From that hour *all* was lost. *GREEN*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § 4, 836. (i. e. everything that was at stake in the battle.)

To-morrow decides *all*. *Eng. Rev.*, Aug. 1912, 26.

Sometimes *all*, when the subject of the sentence, has approximately the value of the indefinite pronoun *it* + the semi-adverbial *all*. Thus *All is still* and *All goes well* do not materially differ in meaning from respectively *It is all* (or *everywhere*) *still* and *It goes all* (or *in all respects*) *well*. In this case the use of *everything* as a variant of *all* is, to all appearance, excluded.

Where'er thou wind'st, by dale or hill, | *All* is peaceful, *all* is still. *SCOTT*, *Lay*, IV, 1.

Yes! (I've) sigh'd o'er Delphi's long deserted shrine, | Where save the feeble fountain, *all* is still. *BYRON*, *Childe Har.*, I, 1.

*All* was silence in the cottage. *G. ELIOT*, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

The Veneering dinners are excellent dinners — or new people wouldn't come — and *all* goes well. *DICK.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 13.

The ostler... winked to the postilion ominously, as much as to say *all* was over. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

Then steps and voices faded into the distance, and *all* was safe. *Mrs. WARD*, *Marc.*, II, Ch. I, 129.

In the following quotations *everything* and *all* are used in succession without discrimination:



Some, finding *everything* august, *everything* right; others, finding *all* tawdry, *all* wrong. Mrs. CRAIK, *A Life's Lessons*, II, 203.<sup>1)</sup>

All this was the opposite of what had happened to my own dear mother, who having *everything* yet had nothing, while this good creature having nothing yet had *all*. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou gavest me*, Ch. VII, 23.

In certain idiomatic combinations *all* does not, of course, bear being replaced by *everything*. Such are *above all*, *after all*, *at all*, *for all* (*that*), *for good and all*, *in all*, *for all in all*; *for all he was worth*, *it is (was) all he can (could) do*, *when all is (said and) done*, *he knows (can tell me, etc.) all about it*, *he carried all before him*, *all but*. For illustration see 3, Obs. III and IV.

Conversely idiom seems to make substitution of *all* for *everything* impossible in:

You are *beyond everything* unhappy. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, V, Ch. V, 424.

Note a) In like manner as *all men* etc. is sometimes used as an equivalent of *everybody* etc., *all things* not infrequently has the value of *everything*, whether defined or not.

i. There is reason in *all things*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 92.

I cannot allow her to lead me in *all things*. TROL., *Framl. Pārs.*, Ch. XVI, 158.

Almost to *all things* could he turn his hand. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 56.

ii. There was something gloomy and disastrous in the general aspect of *all things* around. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXX, 848.

Fidus Achates ran over to me at the end of the first act to say that *all things* were going pretty well. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXX, 848.

β) In conclusion it may be observed that *everything* may often be preferred to *all*, because the latter is apt to be understood in the sense of *everybody* wherever the import of the sentence makes this at all plausible. Thus in Haml., III, 2, 5: *Use all gently* (= In everything act with a quiet dignity) *all* would be apprehended in the sense of *everybody* if it were detached from the context. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 137 and especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.56.

### *Every* and *each* compared.

55. Apart from the grammatical difference that *each*, unlike *every*, can also be used absolutely and substantively, these two words are also distinguished as to meaning.

*Every* denotes the distributive idea less emphatically than *each*. The former, accordingly, implies less intimate knowledge of the persons, animals or things spoken about than the latter. It follows that *each* is mostly a more suitable word than *every* in speaking about a numerically definite group. Thus "*Each theory is open to objection* relates to an understood enumeration of theories, but *Every theory is open to objection* refers to all theories that may exist." MURRAY.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *all*, II, 1, a.

It follows also that *every* is less frequently applied to small numbers than *each*; indeed, unlike the latter, it is now never used of the number denoting the smallest aggregate; further that *each* is the proper word when differences in the persons, animals or things spoken about are distinctly thought of, and also when mention is made of a given number of things being divided among the individuals making up a group.

Conversely *each*, as only vaguely denoting the notion of universality prominent in *every*, which is, etymologically, equivalent to *ever* + *each*, cannot properly be used in speaking of an indefinite large number. It could, therefore, hardly be used instead of *every* in such a sentence as *Every school-boy is acquainted with such exaggerated statements.*

Nor is *each* compatible with intensifying or down-toning modifiers, which are freely used with *every*, as in *Absolutely every boy was satisfied, I have read almost every book in my father's library.*

To conclude, it may, therefore, be said that in *every* the distributive notion is subservient to the idea of universality, whereas in *each* it is just the reverse. In some grammars we find it stated that *every* is said of an indefinite, *each* of a definite number. This is beside the mark. Also when a definite, even a small definite number is referred to, the principal underlying notion may be *without any exception*, so that the use of *every* in that case may be quite proper. Thus in: He had *five* sons *every one* of whom made himself more or less conspicuous as a practical reformer in one path or another. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 14.

- i. A spacious valley in the Kingdom of Amhara, surrounded on *every side* by mountains. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. I, 3.

From the mountains on *every side* rivulets descended that filled all the valley with verdure and fertility. *Ib.*, 4.

I do not know how it happens, but it always does happen, that everybody in *every* small town knows which is the brightest-witted in *every* family. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 96.

*Almost every* year one visit was paid to him in his Cornish curacy by a brother clergyman. *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 141.

In *every* parting there is an image of death. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. X, 68. *Every* part of Europe swarmed with exiles. MAC., *Burleigh and his Times*, (225a).

Whatever remained of the old feeling (Johnson's prejudice) had been effectually removed by the kind and respectful hospitality with which he had been received in *every* part of Scotland. *Id.*, SAM. JOHNS.

The volume of 1830 was probably condemned by *almost every* reader of the previous generation, who deigned to afford it a glance. ANDREW LANG, *Alfred Tennyson*, Ch. I, 14.

- ii. *Each* might his sev'ral province well command, | Would all but stoop to what they understand. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, I, 66. (Curious is the use of *all* as a variant of *each*.)

And he said: | Go and paint them all with figures, | *Each* one with its household symbol ... And they painted on the grave-posts | *Each* his own ancestral Totem, | *Each* the symbol of his household. LONGFELLOW, *Hia watha*.<sup>1)</sup>

The public business would assuredly have been better done if *each* department had been put under a man of talents and integrity, and if the King had contented himself with a general control. MAC., *Fred. the Great*, (672a).

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, IX.

There were already in the suburbs many white villas, *each* surrounded by its garden. *Id.*, Clive, (499a).

Only eight thousand copies were printed, much less than one to *each* parish in the Kingdom. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

We are daily, *each* of us, shedding abroad an influence for good and for evil, *each* upon *each*, and all upon all. Miss MONTGOMERY, *Thrown Together*. In this vast whole *each* is but a unit. *Ib.*<sup>2)</sup>

*Each* vowel has besides an inherent pitch of its own, due to the shape and size of the resonance chamber. SWEET, *Handbook of Phon.*, § 55.

He (sc. Disraeli) had stood four times for Parliament, and on *each* occasion had contrived to attract an enormous deal of attention to himself. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5448, 9c.

*Each* breach of the law must be judged on its own merits. *Ib.*, No. 6005, 1c.

The applause after *each* curtain was in a crescendo of enthusiasm. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3829, 338b.

The artisan (is able) to follow *each* his business. *Ib.*, 342a.

Note α) The following quotations may show that also *every* is not seldom used when differences are distinctly thought of:

The valued file | Distinguishes the swift, the slow, the subtle. | The housekeeper, the hunter, *every one* | According to the gift which bounteous Nature | Hath in him closed. Mac b., III, 1, 97.

And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to *every* man according to his several ability. Bible, Matthew, XXV, 15.

*Every* animal has his proper instincts and inclinations, appetites and habits. WEBST., s. v. *proper*.

*Every* land has its own manners and fashions. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 19.

I wish I could have a gown for *every* season. Mrs. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XIII, 241.

*Every* village has its idiosyncrasy, its constitution, often its own code of morality. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. X, 77.

β) Sometimes we find *every* and *each* in one and the same sentence or passage used alternately, often simply for the sake of variety, or to meet the requirements of the metre.

Auspicious Hope! in thy sweet garden grow | Wreaths for *each* toil, a charm for *every* woe. CAMPBELL, *Pleasures of Hope*, I, 46.

If *each* smooth tile had been a blank at first with power to shape some picture on its surface from the disjointed fragments of his thoughts, there would have been a copy of old Marley's head on *every* one. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 21—22.

Still boys are taught in flocks by shepherds, who know not their own sheep, except by name. To *each* master *every* boy is alike, punished alike. Academy.

In Germany there is one periodical for (sic) *every* 7500 inhabitants, while in the United Kingdom there is one to (sic) *each* 9000. *Ib.*

She heard *every* word Crowdie said, and *each* struck her with cruel precision in the same aching spot. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 92.

Potential recruits will not enter the teaching profession until the nation can assure an eventual salary of at least £ 200 per year to *each man*, and £ 160 to *every woman*. Reynolds's, 1914.

A student who has learnt by heart a few typical passages, as rendered by a good reader, so that *every* note of intonation, *every* stress, and *each* characteristic pronunciation can be accurately reproduced, will have acquired [etc.]. WYLD, *Teaching Reading in Training Colleges*, 75.

1) WILLIAMS, *Mod. Lang. Notes*, Vol. IX, 3.    2) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.* IX.

In the following quotation many instances of *each*, *every* and *all* are crowded together and used, apparently, without much, if any distinction.

The Spirit of the school gathered herself together in the darkness, musing and reckoning; sad for some things, but glad, it may be, for most things that had passed within her domain that day. Sad for *all* tempers, *all* selfishness and meanness shown, for *each* deed of unkindness done, for *each* bungling act whereby what was bad had been made worse, and what was good had been made less powerful. Sad for *each* piece of work slackly done, *each* misrepresented fact, *each* ill-tempered speech, *each* mutinous thought; and glad for *every* honest effort, *every* temptation pushed aside, *every* noble thought appreciated, *every* secret of nature unveiled; glad of the dawn of knowledge in *each* brain, and of all the merry and gallant life which makes a school the pleasantest place on earth. A. H. GILKES, *A Day at Dulwich College*, 112.

γ) *Each* and *every* are sometimes used in succession, especially in legal phraseology. See MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 173.

The vehicle... had something of *each and every* of these machines. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XL, 367.

The scope of this grammar is briefly indicated on the title-page, but those who consult it, must not expect to find *each and every* dialect treated with that minuteness which ought to be given to a grammar dealing with one single dialect. WRIGHT, *Eng. Dial. Gram.*, Pref.

He not only committed one, but *each and every* sin sufficient in itself for condemnation. SARAH GRAND, *Heavenly Twins*, I, 33.

56. *Every* is used as a constituent of the following compounds, some of which are not, however, written in combination:

**every bit** = *every whit*, the former chiefly colloquial, the latter literary:

- i. It will be *every bit* as convenient. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (188).

The girls are as bad as the boys *every bit*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. IV, 21a.

You're *every bit* as extravagant. MRS. GASK, *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 64.

- ii. I would have made *every whit* as good a monk as my little gossip at St. Martin's yonder. SCOTT, *Quent Durw.*, Ch. V, 78.

The present recruiting campaign has been *every whit* as successful as either Garibaldi's or Joan of Arc's. *The New Statesman*, No. 126, 512a.

**everybody** = *every one*. See Ch. XLIII.

**everyhow** (unusual) = *in every way*: In they all came, anyhow and *everyhow*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 45.

**every now and then** = *every now and again* = *every once in a while*; formed on the analogy of *everywhere*, in which *every* is a corruption of *ever*. See 51, Note. Of these three phrases the first is by far the most common, the last is given as an Americanism in BARTLETT, *Dict. of Amer.* See MURRAY, s.v. *every*, I, 1, f.

- i. There was *every now and then* something even in Lucy's look that was almost comic. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 254.

The psychology of Trafford and his wife seems to be rather muddled *every now and then*. *Bookman*, No. 253, 44a.

- ii. *Every now and again* the ear could catch the sudden splash of pike meeting pike. P. ROBINSON, *Fishes of Fancy*, 90.<sup>1)</sup>

1) MURRAY.



**everything.** See Ch. XLIII.

**everyway** (sometimes written apart) = *a*) *in every manner or way.*

*β*) *in every respect:* i. Turn it in your mind *every way* to-night. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXI, 307.

ii. You wrong me *every way*. JUL. CÆS., IV, 3, 55.

My fortunes *every way* as fairly rank'd, | If not with vantage, as Demetrius'. MIDS., I, 1, 101.

Then Philip put the boy and girl to school, | And bought them needful books and *everyway*, | Like one who does his duty by his own, | Made himself theirs. TEN., EN. ARD., 329.

He is *everyway* a lesser man than Charles. ID., QUEEN MARY, I, 5, (591a).

D'ye think folk could be led astray by one who was *every way* bad? MRS. GASK., MARY BARTON, Ch. XXIV, 261.

Note. Instead of *everyway* in the second sense modern writers mostly have *in every way*: The great are fortunate *in every way*. THACK., VIRG., Ch. LXXXII, 866.

It is the only fountain pen that is *in every way* satisfactory. Advertisement. This new position suited Newnes *in every way*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 482, 130.

**everywhen** (infrequent): Everywhere and *everywhen* a man has to "pay with his life." CARLYLE, Past and Pres., 211.<sup>1)</sup>

**everywhence** (rare): They all come at his summoning | *Everywhence*, both far and near. ROSSETTI, Wks., II, 458.<sup>1)</sup>

**everywhere.** "There's father coming," cried the two young Cratchits, who were *everywhere* at once. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., III, 65.

**every which way** (an Americanism) = *in every direction*: He put on the pack saddle... and then wound a rope all over and about it and under it *every which way*. MARK TWAIN, Roughing it.<sup>2)</sup>

There's another one that magnifies and turns *every which way*. E. ROBINS, The Florentine Frame, 117.

**everywhither** (infrequent): It was talk... spreading *everywhither* in inextricable currents. CARLYLE, Sterling, I, VIII, 48.<sup>1)</sup>

## FEW.

### 57. In Standard English *few* is now only used of number.

Note *a*) The combination *a few* was anciently also used with reference to quantity, a practice which survives in some dialects. It is a curious fact that the singular nouns modified by *a few* are treated as plurals in these dialects and referred to with plural nouns: *a few broth, gruel, porridge*. MURRAY, s. v. *few*, 4, *a*.

"Stay *a few while*", a Londoner says. S. PEGGE, Anecd. Eng. Lang., XVI, 181.<sup>3)</sup>

*β*) Older English also has *few* in connection with the collective nouns *number* and *company*, where Modern English has the adjectives *small* or *little*. Compare, however, Ch. XXVI, 8, Obs. II.

He... did ride to the Parties himself with a *few company*. Sir J. MELVIL, Mem., 13.<sup>4)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.    <sup>2)</sup> FARMER, Americanisms.    <sup>3)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *few*, 4, *a*.

<sup>4)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *few*, 3.

I being *few* in *number*, they shall gather themselves together against me and slay me. Bible, Gen., XXXIV, 30.

Their *number* assuredly has not been *few*. WORDSWORTH, Charles I, 133.<sup>1)</sup>

γ) That *few* is occasionally used instead of *those few* on the same principle which sometimes causes *this two years* etc. to be substituted for *these two years*, etc. See Ch. XXVI, 15.

That honest *few* | Who give the Fiend himself his due. TEN., to F. D. Maurice, 5.

## 58. *Few* is used:

a) conjointly: There were *few* country ladies who could show more breeding. GOLDSMITH, Vic.

Note a) Classifying adjuncts which stand together with *few* are placed immediately before the noun modified, individualizing or defining adjuncts take precedence of *few*.

i. *few good books, few history books, few boys' books.*

ii. *these (my, my brother's, which) few books.*

Also the definite article, and the indefinite numerals *every* (53) and *some* (62), may stand before the conjoint *few*.

In *the few* months they spent together at Castlewood, Mr. Holt obtained an entire mastery over the boy's intellect and affections. THACK., Henry Esq., I, Ch. IV, 30.

*Every few* hundred pounds he could scrape together he bought old houses with. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 34.

*Some few* friends she had whom she really loved. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXVII, 170.

β) After *last* (*past*), *next* and *first*, when preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative, *few* is more or less superfluous: *for the last (past, next, first) few years*. For illustration see Ch. XXX, 11, 12 and 14.

γ) Note: England has 34 *too few* members, Scotland 3 too many. Times.

b) absolutely: Gay instincts my nature had *few*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XII, 132.

A fact well known to those *few* of my readers who are well acquainted with their own country. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIV, 137.

Thus also the comparative: It is fortunate that only very *few* parents are capable of doing what they conceive their duty continuously or even at all, and that still *fewer* are tough enough to ride roughshod over their children at home. SHAW, Parents and Children, 22.

Note: i. A syllable *too few*. SAINTSBURY, A Hist. of Eng. Pros., I, 223.

There was one man *too few*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, What became of Pam, 132. (Compare 86, Ob. V.)

ii. There were *few* short of 300 members in attendance. Graph.

c) substantively, now only of persons: Many are called, but *few* are chosen. Bible, Matth., XXII, 14.

I believe there are but *few* that can confute me in argument. GOLDSMITH, Vicar.

And all obey, and *few* inquire his will. BYRON, Cors., I, II.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *few*, 3.

*Few* of either sex are ever united to their first love. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 485.

Thus also the comparative: But exactly as we were taken unprepared by the war which only the few foresaw, we are likely now to be taken unprepared by its industrial sequel in this country. *Fewer* even than those who foresaw the war now foresee what the industrial aftermath of it may be. *The New Age*, No. 1177, 577a.

Note especially: a) **the few** = *a specified company small in number*; often with a qualifying adjective. Now often = *the minority*; opposed to *the many*. MURRAY. Compare 85, c, Note.

i. I published some tracts upon the subject myself, which, as they never sold, I have the consolation of thinking are read only by *the happy few*. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. II, (241).

ii. \* Old Doctor Portman was one of *the few* who came from the venerable gate. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

\*\* The judgment of the many was overruled by that of *the few*. MACAULAY, *Hist.*

The many are taxed for the direct and peculiar benefit of *the few*. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. IV, 47.

β) **in few** (now obsolete) = *in few words, in short*; in which the substantive *few* is used with reference to things.

*In few*, Ophelia, | Do not believe his vows. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 126. (Thus also in *Temp.*, I, 2, 144; *Henry IV*, B, I, 1, 112.)

The firm resolve I here *in few* disclose. POPE, *Odyssey*, I, 476.

d) **predicatively**: If *few* their wants, their pleasures are but *few*. GOLDSMITH, *Trav.*, 212.

For the moon had gone down, and the stars were *few*. SCOTT, *Lay*, II, xxii.

*Few* are his words, but keen his eye and hand. BYRON, *Cors.*, I, ii.

His troops were *few*, when compared with the invaders. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 121.

Such men are all too *few*. MARK TWAIN (*Athen.*, No. 4433, 403c).

Thus also the comparative: The stallions are fourteen *fewer* than last year. *Graph.*, No. 2309, 352a.

Note especially the combination *few and far between*, after CAMPBELL'S echo of BLAIR'S phrase *short and far between*. MURRAY, s. v. *far-between*.

i. Its Visits Like those of Angels' *short, and far between*. BLAIR, *Grave*, 589. Goldsmith's interludes of play were in these days "*short and far between*." R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. XXI, 235.

ii. Like angel-visits, *few and far between*. CAMPBELL, *Pleas. of Hope*, II, 372. And these (sc. trees) were *few and far between*. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, XII. My glimpses of the sea are *few and far between*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. XVI.

Tea-parties were *few and far between*. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VI, 33.

The phrase *few and far between* is occasionally used attributively. Our *few and far-between* racing stables. OL. W. HOLMES, *Autocr. of the Breakf. Table*, 41.1)

59. *Few* assumes the character of a collective noun when preceded by the indefinite article. See Ch. IV, 6.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.98.

a) In its changed grammatical function *few* may furthermore be modified by an adjective. Except for the colloquial *a good few* and a *goodish few* it is, however, only the substantive and absolute *a few*, denoting persons, which may thus take an adjective. For a discussion of the genesis of the combination see EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 19 and § 269.

i. \* And they, *the wiser, friendlier few*, confess'd | They deem'd him better than his air express'd. BYRON, *Lara*, I, VII.

*A faithful few* remained. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

It is doubtful whether more than *a favoured few* will ever see it. 11 *London News*, No. 3914, 672a.

\*\* *A select few* of tried old friends. HARDWICK, *Trad. Lanc.*, 175.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* About these Docks are *a good few* houses, which, however, are not inhabited by many people permanently. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 75.

It must cost *a good few* shillings to deal at such a place. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, II, Ch. I, 129.

The Bar, of whom *a good few* attended. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 9a.

LADY. Hullo, Neil; you've started a golf course here, have you? -- NEIL. Yes, Mum, a fine new golf course. -- LADY. How many holes are there? -- NEIL (vague on the subject). Oh, there'll be *a good few*. *Punch*, No. 3672, 371.

\*\* I've bought *a goodish few* Farls in my time. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. IX, 204.

b) On the strength of its being partly adnominal *few* may be modified by an adverb, especially *very*.

Within but *a very few* years there had been an execution in the house of a late prebendary. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLV, 433.

The huge sums... are the creation of *a very few* rich men. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6459, 5a.

The Irish problem... has been fined down to *a comparatively few* simple points. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6565, 1b. (Compare: restraining her choice among *comparatively a few*. TROL., *Duke's Children*, I, 53<sup>2)</sup>, in which *comparatively* is used as a modifier of the whole word-group *a few*, whereas in the quotation from the *Westm. Gaz.* it modifies *few*.)

## 60. Also *a few* may be used:

a) conjointly: He and *a few domestics* were left as the only tenants of the great house. THACK., *Henry Esq.*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

b) absolutely: Of the new details he learned he could only retain *a few*, and those only by continual repetition. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, II, Ch. XXX, 238. Even among my own schoolmasters I can recollect *a few* whose classes interested me. SHAW, *Parents and Children*, 28.

c) substantively, only of persons: A level which had been reached only by *a few*. MORLEY, *Voltaire*, 2.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. In colloquial language and in slang *a few* is used ironically in the sense of *a good bit*. The expression may be applied adverbially in the sense of *a little*. Thus also *not a few* = considerably. MURRAY, s. v. *few*, 4, b.

i. If one man in a town has pluck and money, he may do it. It'll cost him *a few*. KINGSLEY, *Two Years ago*, III, VII.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 4.972.



ii. It's a horrid nuisance and I have sworn *a few*. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVII, 334.

iii. Your letter which diverted him *not a few*. SUSAN BURNEY.<sup>1)</sup>

61. Comparing *few* with *a few*, we find that the former denies that there many, while the latter denies that there are none. The latter is, accordingly, to a certain extent affirmative, the former is distinctly negative. There is an analogous difference between *little* and *a little*. See 70.

The difference is distinctly brought out by a comparison of such sentences as:

He has *few* friends, but fortunately he has *a little* money.

He has *a few* friends, but unfortunately he has *little* money.

He has *little* money, but fortunately he has *a few* friends.

He has *a little* money, but unfortunately he has *few* friends.

Note a) *A few* varies with *few* after *only* or *but*, without any perceptible distinction. Usage seems to be in favour of *a few*. *But* is more frequent in these combinations than *only*.

- i. \* Clive had been *only a few* months in the army when intelligence arrived that peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France. MAC., Clive, (501a).

A trading company... possessing in India *only a few* acres for purposes of commerce. *Id.*, (503b).

*Only a few* weeks after the coronation of the Queen a great Radical Meeting was held in Birmingham. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, 16.

*Only a few*... were able to obtain lifebelts. *Graph.*, No. 2323, 1026.

\*\* The gentlemen went to Ranelagh, where *but a few* of Mr. Harry's acquaintances chanced to be present. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIII, 550.

He has at this moment, or at any rate had *but a few* days since, an execution in his parsonage house at Framley. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLVII, 455.

He had *but a few* weeks returned to his native city. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

*But a few* recommend the quoting of hymns and poetry. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 228, 527.

He (sc. King Charles) has had able helpers, such as Catargi, Bratiano, and Sturdza, to name *but a few*. *Times*, No. 1072, 815a.

- ii. \* Among the hundreds who danced and laughed and supped till the small hours of yesterday morning, *only few* had come for other purposes than merry-making. *Times*, 6 Dec. 1912.

\*\* There are *but few* that can do that (sc. confute me in argument). GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. VI, (264).

There were as yet *but few* persons of fashion in London. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XL, 420.

It has been my lot to find *but few* friends. *Id.*, Ch. LIV, 539.

If we have *but few* young statesmen, it is because the old stagers are so fond of the rattle of their harness. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIII, 217.

Our language possesses *but few* dramas of the classical school. ARNOLD, *Lit.*

- β) Also after *in*, and perhaps other prepositions, *a few* and *few* seem to be used indiscriminately.

Immense sums were often accumulated *in a few* months. MAC., Clive, (527a).

The progress of Hyder was arrested; and *in a few* months the great victory of Porto Novo retrieved the honour of the English arms. *Id.*, *War. Hist.*, (626b).

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

\*\* A swift ship... brought the evil tidings *in few* days to Calcutta. *ib.*, (626a). I explained to them, *in few* words, that I had heard all which had happened since I left Thornfield. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 533.

γ) After *not* we regularly find *a few*, apparently contrary to the sense that is to be conveyed.

I have seen and conversed with *not a few* of the principal actors in these events. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5442, 3c.

Instead of *not a few* we also find *no few*. Instances seem to be rare, however. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.77.

Future years | Lacked not anticipations, tender dreams, | *No few* of which have since been realised. WORDSW., *Prel.*, VI, 46.

Conversely *few* seems to be erroneously used instead of *a few* in:

"If the reverend fathers," he said, "loved good cheer and soft lodging, *few* miles of riding would carry them to the Priory of Brinxworth". SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 16.

δ) *Quite a few* (= a considerable number) is an Americanism. MURRAY, *s. v. few*, 2, d.

There's *quite a few* about among the rocks. P. ROBINSON, *Harper's Mag.* 1883, Oct., 706/1.

62. A notion similar to that indicated by *a few* may also be expressed by *some few*, in which *few* is attached by way of apposition to *some*, i. e. *some few* may be understood to stand for *some*, *that is to say few*. (Ch. IV, 5.) *Some little* is an analogous combination. See 73.

*Some few* were keenly anxious to be off. BEATR. HARRADEN, *Ships*, I, Ch. XIX, 104.

*Some few* there may be who will care to know what Katharine's convictions ultimately became. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 284.

## IT.

63. *It* as an indefinite pronoun has already been discussed in detail in Ch. II, 2 ff; Ch. III, 19 ff; Ch. III, 38; Ch. V, 20.

a) The indefinite *its* is found only before gerunds. Instances are comparatively rare.

Do not run away the first moment of *its* holding up. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XXII, 213.

The clerk... went down a slide on Cornhill... in honour of *its* being Christmas-eve. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 18.

Business disposed of, Mr. Swiveller was inwardly reminded of *its* being nigh dinner-time. *ib.*, *The Old Cur. Shop.*, Ch. VIII, 29b.

The notion of *its* being Sunday was the strongest in young ladies like Miss Phipps. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. V, 218.

There is very little chance of *its* clearing up for us to shoot to-day. EL. GLYN, *The Refl. of Ambros.*, II, Ch. X, 207.

I won't hear of *its* raining on your birthday! OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Windermere's Fan*, I, I, (9).

Note. Also *its* as the genitive representative of the anticipating *it*, which, though, strictly speaking, a personal pronoun, is more or less understood as an indefinite pronoun, is found only before gerunds. The following is the only instance that has come to hand up to the moment of writing:

"Mademoiselle doubts," said the French gentleman in his own language "*its* being so easy to forgive." DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. II, 12b.

- b) Of stressed *it*, as in the following quotation, only one instance has been found.

Germany has not been shy about extolling her virtues. She believes she is *it*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 2341, 525.

### LITTLE.

64. *Little* is used a) as an adjective, b) as an indefinite numeral, c) as an adverb of degree.

For *little* as an adjective see the dictionary and also Ch. XXXVIII, 7, c and Ch. XXX, 8.

65. As an indefinite numeral *little* is only used of quantity. For those cases in which *little* and its degrees of comparison, *less* and *least*, may be used in connection with a plural noun see Ch. XXVI, 13, c and 16.

66. *Little* is used:

a) conjointly: He had *little money*, *little patronage*, no military establishment. MAC., *Hallam*, (70a).

Compare: Thou hast made *slight provision* for a long journey. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 8.

b) absolutely: Caterpillars take an enormous quantity of food, but butterflies seem to require but *little*.

c) substantively: *Little* he eats and long will wake. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, xxiv. They fled | With *little* save the jewels they had on. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 640.

*Little* had changed since my first visit. PERCY WHITE, *To-day*, Ch. III, 28.

d) predicatively: But *little* as all this was, it was sufficient to fill Lady Lufton's mind and heart. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 199.

A little learning is only dangerous when it does not know it is *little*. Bookman, 1912, Aug., 195a.

67. Obs. I. The conjoint *little* sometimes forms with its head-word a kind of unit denoting absence or scarcity of what is expressed by the latter. In this case there is always another adnominal adjunct modifying the whole group. According to MURRAY (s. v. *little*, A, II, 10, b), this application is now rare. Observe that *much* is used in an analogous way. See 93, Obs. I.

And now, God help me for my *little wit*! WORDSWORTH, *The Sailor's Mother*, 35.

Considering the *little wind*, the swell on the North Sea was tremendous. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VII, 91.

- II. When the meaning of the bare *little* is narrowed by a reference to a (pro)noun in a preceding or subsequent part of the sentence, as is the case when it is preceded or followed by partitive *of*, the distinction between the absolute and substantive use is often arbitrary. Thus *Little of his work remains* may be understood to stand either for *\*Little work of his work remains* or *A little*

*portion of his work remains.* Compare what has been said about *any*, 19, *b*, Note *a*, and observe the analogous uncertain grammatical character of *much* (93, Obs. III), *none* (142, Obs. I) and *some* (179, *b*).

He gives me *little* of his company. FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

He showed *little* of the amiability which was ascribed to him. MURRAY, s.v. *little*, B, 1, 3, *b*.

About the absolute or substantive *little* + *of* it may be observed that:

*a*) it is often equivalent to conjoint *little*, especially before an abstract noun. See also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*.

He has shown me very *little of* trust or friendship for the last few weeks. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 985.

As for John he had *little* enough *of* enjoyment of the pretty spot. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XI, 11.

The manner of these busy toilers is marked by *little of* superficial polish. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VI, 80.

When the noun is preceded by an adjective, the construction with partitive *of* sometimes seems to be the preferable one.

Regarding Arthur *little of real fact* has been ascertained. ROWE, Introd. to Tennyson's Lanc. and El., 31.

*β*) it is sometimes used to denote the fact that the essential qualities of what is expressed by the following noun are found only in a small degree in the person spoken about. Compare Ch. V, 17.

Burns was really *little of* a Jacobin at heart as he was of a Jacobite. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch of Burns, 37.

*γ*) it may express infrequent repetition of the act of seeing, the opposite notion being expressed by *much*. (93, Obs. V.) Compare also Ch. V, 18.

I saw *little* or nothing of her after you were gone. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XX, 198.

He saw very *little* of her. EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 138.

III. The absolute or substantive *little* may also have back-position, partitive *of* being placed at the head of the sentence.

*Of* political wisdom indeed in its larger and more generous sense Elizabeth had *little or none*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 372.

*Of* political sagacity he had very *little*. MURRAY, s.v. *little*, B, 1, 3, *b*.

Compare: Skill he had *little*. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. I, 14.

IV. The absolute or substantive *little* so far retains its adnominal character that it may be modified by an adverb of degree.

"Upon my life," said the hero of Plassy, "when I think of my opportunities, I am surprised I took *so little*". THACK., Virg., Ch. XLII, 437.

In the matter of learning he let him do just as much or *as little* as ever he pleased. Id., Pend., I, Ch. III, 35.

It seems hard that a man should work so hard and receive *so little*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIV, 142.

Conversely it may exhibit its substantival character by being preceded by a demonstrative or the definite article.

*i*. He did little; but *that little* he did in such a manner as to produce great effect. MAC., William Pitt, (306*a*).



- ii. With *the little* that remained, he purchased a commission in the army. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. III, 64.

*The little* of his work that remains. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

- V. The following idioms with absolute or substantive *little* deserve attention:

**to make little of:** Mr. Forrest *had made so little of* the whole transaction that he felt himself justified in *making little of* it also. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XII, 118.

He *made as little of* his real wound as he had made much the day before of his imaginary one. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 139a.

**to think little of:** Mrs. Grantly... was not at all disposed *to think little of* the importance of the present crisis. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIII, 224.

**by little and little** = *little by little*. The phrase *by little and little* is pronounced archaic by MURRAY, s. v. *by*, 25; no such qualification being added to it s. v. *little*, III, 7, a. However this may be, there can be no doubt that it is quite frequent in the latest English, apparently, even more frequent than its variant.

- i. *By little and little* they would have abated him of his train. LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 158.

And the gentleman does tap him presently, and with great discretion too; drawing off the evidence *by little and little*. DICK., *Old. Cur. Shop*, Ch. LXIII, 231a.

*By little and little* he removed the bedclothes from about his head. Id., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 9a.

*By little and little* the hill began to steepen and become strong under foot. STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, 259. (T.)

- ii. *Little by little*, the face of the country began to change. *Cornh. Mag.*, XI, 643. 1)

Then he got out from his sickness, *little by little*, and looked about him. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 15.

She had been yielding, *little by little*, to the suit which Will Underwood had pressed on her. Id., Ch. I, 17.

**in little** = *on a small scale*; formerly (especially with reference to painting) = *in miniature*. MURRAY. For illustrative quotations see Ch. XXIX, 24.

68. *Little* may be used as a pure noun and even take the mark of the plural.

Many *a little* makes a mickle. *Proverb.*

Every *little* helps. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 207, 237b.

A debt to pay off by *littles*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, II, xiv. 1)

69. *Little* as an adverb of degree mostly modifies a verb or an adverbial adjunct. According to MURRAY (s. v. *little*, C, 1), its use as a modifier of adjectives seems to be a Latinism or Gallicism and has never been common. The combination *little aware*, however, seems to be frequent enough. See Note β.

- i. He would show the world how *little* he feared France. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. VI, 236.

1) MURRAY.

The austerity of his manners frightens his old father, who can *little* comprehend the religionism of the new school. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. VII, 87. *Little-known* authors. I like him *little*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

- ii. He (sc. Cromwell) was *little* in the habit of counting his enemies. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch I, 121.

This is *little* more than a cento. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

- iii. But this is *little* material. GLADSTONE, *Homeric Synchr.*, 126.<sup>1)</sup>

Note a) When *little* is placed before the verb it modifies, and also when it has front-position, its meaning is altered, and it becomes an emphatic negative: *he little knows* = *little does he know* = *he is far from knowing*. This application of the adverb *little* "is confined to the verbs *to know*, *to think* and *to care* and synonyms of these." MURRAY. For instances of *little* in front-position see Ch. VIII, 7. Here we cite a few quotations in which front-position *little*, at variance with ordinary practice, does not cause inversion.

- i. He *little* dreamt, when he set out, | Of running such a rig. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XXV.

- ii. *Little* I dreamed when I had him in my arms, a baby, that I should be some day marrying him out of my own house! G. MEREDITH, *The Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXI, 258.

*Little* I foresaw how much at home and at my ease I should one day find myself in that great house! THOM. MOORE (STEPH. GWENN, *Thomas Moore*, Ch. I, 20).

- β) The same meaning may be observed in *little* when it modifies the adjective *aware*.

That honest lady . . . was *little aware* what storms were brewing in two bosoms upstairs in the study. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

70. Like *few* (59), the numeral *little* assumes the character of a collective noun when it is preceded by the indefinite article. Compare also Ch. IV, 6.

71. A *little* may be used:

- a) conjointly: I am taking her hand, which, after a *little ado*, she leaves in mine. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVI, 811.

Beyond . . . perhaps the want of a *little* more elbow-room, he was perfectly charmed with his accommodation. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXV, 248a.

- b) absolutely: I handed him a glass of wine and he drank a *little*.

- c) substantively: A *little* makes us laugh. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

- d) adverbially: My friend Moses is a very honest fellow, but a *little* slow at expression. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3, (399).

There speech and thought and nature fail'd a *little*, | And he lay tranced. TEN., *En. Arden*, 788.

Not for the first time the Chancellor of the Exchequer has been a *little* too clever and has consequently overshot the mark. *Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz.)*, No. 5394, 16c).

Compare: The mobile lips were a *thought* too sensitive. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 62, 274.

Queseda . . . was only a *degree* better than commanders of the type of Ojeda, Cortes, Pizarro . . . and the rest. *Athen.*, No. 4451, 183a.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

72. Obs. I. When followed or preceded by partitive *of*, the distinction between absolute and substantive *a little* is arbitrary. Compare 67, Obs. II. Let me recommend you *a little* of this pike. DISRAELI, *Viv. Grey*, V, Ch. XV.  
He knows *a little* of everything. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*
- II. The absolute or substantive *a little* may be used in an analogous way as *little* as described in 67, Obs. II, γ. Compare also Ch. V, 17. She was, withal, *a little* of a coquette. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*
- III. The substantive *a little* sometimes has the value of *a little way* or *a little while*, and as such is especially frequent after the prepositions *after*, *for* and *in*.
- i. Let us walk on *a little*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 351.  
And then he stood away *a little*. *Ib.*, Ch. XIV, 136.
- ii. Comrades leave me here *a little*, while as yet 't is early dawn. TEN., *Locksl. Hall*, I.
- iii. \* Also there came in these times to Father Holt many private visitors, whom, *after a little*, Henry Esmond had little difficulty in recognizing as ecclesiastics of the Father's persuasion. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 27.  
\*\* We have undertaken to discourse here *for a little* on Great Men. CARLYLE, *Hero-Worship*, I, 1.  
He was rather fond of me *for a little*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. II, 28.  
Good-bye *for a little*, then. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, III, 158.  
Compare: He talked to that gentleman *for a while*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 43.  
\*\*\* *In a little*, he and Froda left the inn. CARLYLE, *Germ. Rom.*, I, 293 <sup>1)</sup>
73. The difference between *a little* and *little* is analogous to that between *a few* and *few*. See 61.  
From this analogy it may be assumed that:
- a) after *only* and *but*, *a little* and *little* are used interchangeably. To all appearance this is not, however, in accordance with fact. Both *only a little* and *only little* seem to be practically non-existent, and *but a little* is now obsolete. See MURRAY, s.v. *little*, B, II, 6.
- i. Thou'dst thank me *but a little*. *Taming of the Shrew*, I, 2, 61.  
When his wrath is kindled *but a little*. Bible, Psalm, II, 12.  
The influence of Leicester House prevailed on Pitt to abate *a little*, and *but a little*, of his high demands. MAC., *William Pitt*, (307a).
- ii. Man wants *but little* here below, | Nor wants that little long. GOLD-SMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. VIII.  
The Princess . . . expected *but little* in this new exhibition to interest her. MOORE, *Lalla Rookh*, (339.)  
This old man's share of earthly happiness can be *but little*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 47.  
Adrian had *but little* noted the various passengers. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 30.  
Hitherto *but little* had fallen to Lucy to do in the way of woman's duties. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 95.

1) MURRAY.

The trivialities that provoke a London audience to facile laughter amuse them *but little* and charm them not at all. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5496, 3a.

The metre requires *a little*, and a transposing of *do* and *but* in:

You can *but do a little?* | That little's is something still. CH. MACKAY,  
There's work for all to do, I.

- b) after *not* also *a little* is used to the exclusion of *little*, contrary to the sense intended. This proves to be actually the case.

The page found this situation *not a little* embarrassing. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXIV, 269.

This information astonished the Major *not a little*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 351.

He was *not a little* pleased with the compliments which the governess continually paid him upon his proficiency. *Ib.*, I, Ch. X, 93.

She certainly, among her acquaintance, did quiz the new cabinet minister *not a little*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 195.

Note. According to the available evidence, *a little* is also regularly used instead of the, apparently, more correct *little* after exclamatory *what*.

What a tide there was pouring into the lad's own mind at the time, and *what a little* power had he to check it! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 54.

When a man's being shaved, *what a little* will make him laugh! D. JERROLD, *St. Giles*, XXIII, 236.<sup>1)</sup>

It's surprising *what a little* pluck you've got. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, C. 52.

- c) *no little* is used as an occasional variant of *not a little*. This is actually the case: *no little* being even more usual than *no few*, especially as a numeral. Of adverbial *no little* only one instance has come to hand. Compare 61, Note γ, and JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.77.

- i. Adam Woodcock had *no little* difficulty in prevailing on him to advance. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XVII, 162.

With *no little* pride Roland Græme accepted the gift. *Ib.*, Ch. XVII, 172.

This made *no little* noise in its time. CH. KINGSLEY, *Pref. to Alton Locke*, 10.

This provoked *no little* ill-feeling towards him. *Times*, 1808, 662d.

The publisher has had *no little* trouble in procuring a translation to his mind. H. G. B., *Cæsar's C. m. lit. transl.*, *Pref.*

- ii. Uncle Reuben was vexed *no little*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XV, 86.

74. A notion similar to that denoted by *a little* is expressed by *some little*. For the grammatical relation between *some* and *little* see 62. It was *some little* time before he heard of it. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 21.

They walked to the Bank together, where they did *some little* business. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIII, 452.

Mark, priest as he was, was quite wordly enough to be fond of a good horse; and for *some little* time allowed Lord Lufton to descant on the merit of his four-year-old filly. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IX, 90.

Ripton had heard *some little* of the colloquy. MEREDITH, *The Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVI, 333.

You told me *some little* of the story. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. XVI, 461.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



## LESS.

75. *Less* is used *a*) as an adjective, *b*) as an indefinite numeral, *c*) as an adverb of degree.

For *less* as an adjective see Ch. XXX, 8.

76. As an indefinite numeral *less* mostly denotes quantity. See, however Ch. XXVI, 16. It is used:

- a*) conjointly: I owe him little duty, and *less* love. Henry VI, A, IV, 4, 34.  
*b*) absolutely: No *less* than 360 cycles are manufactured daily. II. Lond. News.

Note *in less than no time* = *in no time*. i. Trust me for... destroying him *in less than no time*. MALKIN, Gil Blas, IV, viii, § 11.1)

ii. If he stays eating his heart out in London, he will go to the dogs *in no time*. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. X, 84.

- c*) substantively: Little he ate, and *less* he spoke. SCOTT, Lay, II, xxxii. The *less* said about her, the better. SPURGEON, Sermon XXIII, 588.1)  
*d*) predicatively: I am heartily thankful that my temptations are *less*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLI, 427.

77. Obs. I. Like many other indefinite numerals and pronouns, *less* is often followed by partitive *of*. Compare 67, Obs. II and see also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*.

Some feelings are to mortals given, | With *less of earth* in them than heaven. SCOTT, Lady, II, xxii.

Yet *less of sorrow* than of pride was there. BYRON, Lara, I, xxvi.

- II. *Less* is often used as a term of arithmetic, in the sense of *minus*.

Last June Mr. Lloyd George estimated that the revenue for 1910 11 (i. e. amount raised in that year *less* arrears of 1909—10) would be £ 169,745,000. Westm. Gaz., No. 5507, 1a.

Assuming that three-quarters of the plural voting is in England, this would make the Liberal majority in England in voters 124,893 (150,000 *less* 25,107). Ib., 3b.

Note the colloquial use of *minus* in such a sentence as: He came back *minus* an arm. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

- III. A frequent substitute for the predicative *less* + *than* is the adjective *short* + *of*.

I felt that any recognition *short of* ninepence would be mere brutality of heart. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 35a.

The daily mass of exchange and banking transactions which are carried through the Clearing House in London seldom falls *short of* £ 20,000 in the dullest time of the year. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VIII, 106.

Napoleon's sojourn in Elba... lasted *short of* ten months. Bookman, No. 272, 90a.

A line is composed of a certain number of feet from two to almost any number *short of* ten. TOM HOOD, Eng. Vers., 27.

The total of the Children's Country Holiday Fund for the year is £ 2000 *short of* last year's contributions. PUNCH.

Compare also: The funds of the Parnellites are *falling short*. Graph. The clerk was two pounds *short of* cash. MURRAY, s. v. *short*, 18, f.

- IV. The absolute *less* sometimes refers to repetition of the action expressed by *to see*. Compare the analogous use of *little* (67, Obs. II, γ), *much* (93, Obs. III, γ), and *more* (100, Obs. II, γ).

We have seen *less* of you lately than we used to.

78. As an adverb of degree *less* calls for little comment. Note, however, the combinations: *natheless*, *not the less*, *none the less* and *nevertheless* (Ch. XI, 8), *no (or not) less than* (131, *a* and 132), and *less and less*. (Ch XXX, 39).

Any one, | Regarding, well had deem'd he felt the tale | *Less* than the teller.  
TEN., En. Ard., 708.

Note a) A peculiar idiom is the use of *less* in the sense of *less frequently*.

Peggotty began to be *less* with us, of an evening, than she had always been.  
DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 21b.

Since that she had been *less* at Framley Court than usual. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XLI, 394.

β) *Less* followed by *than* is sometimes placed attributively before a noun. For *more than* used in an analogous way see 103, Obs. II.

Go — let thy *less than woman's hand* | Assume the distaff — not the brand.  
BYRON, Bride of Abydos, I, iv.

Compare: (He did not know) to what a degree the *worse than folly* was to injure him in later life. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, Ch. II, 28.

79. *Less*, either as an indefinite numeral or as an adverb of degree, is often modified by *far*, *much*, *little*, etc. See Ch. XXX, 43.

i. The estimate for the present year cannot, I fear, be expected to be *much less*, if at all *less*, than 530.000 l. GLADSTONE, Speech. 1)

ii. The rising generation in Scotland simply do not care for Scott, and *still less* for Burns. Westm. Gaz., No. 5484, 4c.

I do not even suggest that he is negligent, *still less* (or *much less*) that he is dishonest. MURRAY, s.v. *less*, B, 2.

## LEAST.

80. *Least* is used a) as an adjective, b) as an indefinite numeral, c) as an adverb of degree.

For *least* as an adjective see Ch. XXX, 8.

81. As an indefinite numeral *least*, like its positive *little*, is used only of quantity. Compare, however, Ch. XXVI, 16.

For the use of the definite article before *least* see Ch. XXXI, 19.

82. The indefinite numeral *least* is used:

a) conjointly: Of all people in the world the English have the *least* sense of the beauty of literature. OSCAR WILDE, The Pict. of Dor. Gray, Ch. IV, 62.

1) MURRAY.

- b) absolutely: Those who have most virtue in their mouths have *least* of it in their bosoms. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (190).  
 c) substantively: The very *least* I can do is to apologize for the mistake. MURRAY, s.v. *least*, II, 4.

Note the idiom in: i. *Least said soonest mended*. Proverb.

- ii. To live here, in this close room, the watcher of suffering, ... *to say the least*, not blissfully. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. IV, 40.

- d) predicatively: Those whose earnings are *least*, ought to be taxed least.

83. Obs. I. The absolute or substantive *least* + partitive *of* sometimes has the value of the conjoint *least*. Compare Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*.

At last it was the turn of the good old-fashioned dance which has the *least of* vanity and the most of merriment in it. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

- II. The substantive *least* enters into the following interesting combinations: *at least* or *at the least* (Ch. XXX, 38), *in the least* or *the least* (Ch. XXX, 35).

84. *Least* as an adverb does not require much comment.

- a) It may be emphasized by *of all*: The habitual drunkard... does not talk boisterously about his infirmity; *least of all* does he get drunk in ten minutes. Times.  
 b) It may modify the attributive *more*: I have never found pupils experience the *least more* difficulty over the new pronunciation than over the old. Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 4a.

#### MANY.

85. *Many* is used only with reference to number and occurs:

- a) conjointly: They were a wonderful pair as they stood together for a few moments, and *many people* watched them. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 81.

Note the idiom in: i. The very leaves of the trees are like *so many* ears. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 49.

I would not be understood to say that the prime minister had in *so many* words promised the bishopric to Dr. Grantly. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. I, 5.

We came home haggard, tattered, and degraded like *so many* prodigal sons. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

- ii. All sat staring at me like *as many* sheep. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 149. (Apparently unusual.)

- b) absolutely: Those little meetings, in the memory of *many* of us yet, are gone quite away into the past. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 279.

Katharine stopped short, unable to say the first word of the *many* that rushed to her lips. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 223.

Note the idiom in: Sometimes *as many as* five-and-twenty people attended divine service on a Sunday. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. VII, 59.

He often dines at home *as many as* three or four times a month. *Punch*, 1912, 4 Dec., 449.

- c) substantively, only to denote persons: A perilous practice *many* deem it. THACK., *Henry Esmond*.

She could feel that the eyes of *many* were on her. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 82.

*Many* think differently. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 193, *b*.

Note especially **the many** = *the great body of people, the multitude*; sometimes with a qualifying adjective. Compare the corresponding use of *the few*. (58, c, Note.) *The many* has probably been formed on the analogy of *the just, the unjust, the wise*, and similar combinations, in which the definite article stands before an adjective partially converted into a noun. (Ch. XXIX, 14.) The idiom seems to be of recent formation, no instances having been found before the Modern English period. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 258.

But *the many* will be too chill and tender. All's Well, IV, 5, 55.

For *the mutable, rank-scented many*, let them | Regard me as I do not flatter, and | Therein behold themselves. *Coriolanus*, III, 1, 66.

Such hath it been — shall be — beneath the sun. | *The many* still must labour for the one! *Byron, Cors.*, I, viii, 20.

There will always be a great temptation to Finance Ministers to bribe *the many* at the expense of the few. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5490, 1c.

d) predicatively. See 87.

86. Obs. I. In Early Modern English *many* is sometimes followed by a superlative. A similar practice may be observed with *any* (18, Obs. XIV) and *every* (52, b).

*Many the best and most things were* ost to them. H. LAWRENCE, *Comm. Angels*, 61.<sup>1)</sup>

- II. In poetry *many* is occasionally and archaically placed after its head-word.

Many a wistful boy, and *maidens many* desire it. R. ELLIS, tr. *Catullus*, LXII, 51.<sup>1)</sup>

- III. In the collocation *many fewer*, probably formed on the analogy of *many more*, the numeral *many* seems to be used improperly for the adverb *much*. The substitution may be due to the sense of incongruity which the use of a singular and a plural in immediate succession would occasion. *Much fewer*, however, occurs as an occasional variant. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 261.

- i. In 1894, when there were *many fewer* electors, the Unionist vote was nearly 1,200 more than it is now. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 1b. Which, after all, might have been expressed in *many fewer* words. *Academy*, 1905, 3 Nov., 425.

There are *many fewer* Germans, all told, in the whole of the German colonies than there are in London. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 561a.

- ii. He... has made *much fewer* blunders than most people anticipated 10 years ago. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1898, 15 July, 14a.

Regimental guards are *much fewer* in number (sc. than garrison guards). *Il. Lond. News*, No. 2332, 240a.

- IV. *So many* is sometimes used to denote a particular number that does not need specifying. Compare the analogous use of *such* and (or) *such* and *so-and-so*, for which see Ch. XXXVII, 14; and of *so much*, for which see 93, Obs. V.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



We read of some squabble for power, that it led to a pitched battle; that such and such were the names of the generals and the leading subordinates; that they had each *so many* thousand infantry and cavalry, and *so many* cannon [etc.]. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 27b.

- V. After *too* the absolute or substantive *many* seems to vary with *much*. The latter, however, appears to be the rarer form. Observe that *too little* is, apparently, never used instead of *too few*. See 58, b, Note, and compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 6.211.

i. What meals I had in silence and embarrassment, always feeling that there were a knife and fork *too many*, and that mine; an appetite *too many*, and that mine; a plate and chair *too many*, and those mine; a somebody *too many*, and that I! DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 60b.

Dunstan, however, took one fence *too many*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. IV, 29.

- ii. Wife, we scarce thought us blest | That God had lent us but this only child; | But now I see this one is one *too much*. ROM. & JUL., III, 5, 166.

This line has a foot *too much*. Note to *Merch. of Ven.* II, 7, 2, in *Clar. Press*.

Note also the combination *one too many* in the sense of *one not wanted*, *one in the way*.

Dost thou conjure for wenches, that thou call'st for such store, | When one is *one too many*? COM. OF ER., III, 1, 35.

He believes he has in me *one sister too many* for his interest. RICHARDSON, *Clarissa Harl.*, II, 5, 26.1)

The confession of a youth who in the Old World finds himself *one too many*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. VI, 321.

*One too many* is also jocularly used in the sense of *more than a match*.

He was *one too many* for us. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

In this latter application *one too many* is a variant of *too many*, which is "properly predicated of a plural subject, but in more or less jocular use is said also of a single person or thing." MURRAY. Compare especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 6.211.

On one occasion, however, the friends were nearly *too many* for the eternal toiler. HARDWICK, *Trad. Lanc.*, 189.1)

87. a) *Many*, like *few* (58, d), admits of being used predicatively, but this application is rather uncommon.

*Many* were the consultations that she held with Peter de Groot. WASH. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

Books of the Peerage were not so *many* in those days as they are in our blessed times. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 159.

The delays had been *many*. WICKHAM, *Loveday*, Ch. XVII.

But this time the faces are very *many*. JEROME, *Silhouettes*, 199.

Trade Union leaders, such as Mr. W., are only *too many*. *The New Age*, No. 1177, 579a.

Note. The predicative *many* is sometimes placed in front-position in connection with a singular subject preceded by the definite article. In this position it regularly causes inversion. According to MURRAY

(s. v. *many*, 1, e), the idiom is now confined to dialects. Compare XXVI, 5, c, and also EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 82; id., *Das Indefinitum*, § 250.

*Many* was the young fellow about town who looked with wonder at the number of these notes. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 12.

*Mony* (Scotch for *many*) was the year I looked for nought but my ain (Scotch for *own*) pleasure. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. VII, 84.

Note especially: He and I have swopped specimens *many's the time*. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 246. (= *very often*, Dutch *wie weet hoe vaak*.)

I've tried to instil it (sc. imagination) into him, *many and many's the time*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. X, 43a.

*Many's the time* he's beaten me. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VIII, 169.

88. *Many* is also used distributively, now only with the indefinite article. (35.) See especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 273.

*Many a colt* has turned out a noble steed. *Prov.*

Full *many a gem* of purest ray serene | The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear: | Full *many a flower* is born to blush unseen, | And waste its sweetness on the desert air. GRAY, *Elegy*, xiv.

*Many a husband and wife* only begin to value each other when death is at hand to separate them. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 13.

Note a) Sometimes *many* is reduplicated for emphasis: *many and many a*.

I have sat invisible beside you *many and many a day*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 28.

*Dolly* had played in every dull room and passage *many and many a time* when a child. Id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XX, 77b.

β) Note i. *many a one* (Ch. XLIII, 8): I know *many a one* who would be glad of the chance. MURRAY, s. v. *many*, A, 1, d.

Compare: This emperour hath sent anon | His senatour, with royal ordinance, | And othere lordes, got wot, *many oon*, | On Surriens to taken heigh vengeance. CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, B, 962.

ii. *many another*: "Ay," Pam answered softly, "trusting me with Earl Percy's head and *many another's*." HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 12. With these I studied the writings of Pusey, Liddon and Keble and *many another* smaller light. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiog.*, 56.

It (sc. the calling of a rent collector) is no worse than *many another*. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 34.

iii. *many such a one*: Who has not looked on *many such a one*? THACK., *Newc.*, 666. 1)

iv. *this many a day* (Ch. XXVI, 9, Obs. I, g): How does your honour for *this many a day*? Haml., III, 1, 91.

I have had but little pride *this many a day*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 352.

v. *many a time and oft*: Signior Antonio, *many a time and oft*, | In the Rialto you have rated me | About my moneys and my usances. Merch. of Ven., I, 3, 107.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 273.

Now the eyes of Mr. Pipkin had rested on the pretty face of Maria Lobbs *many a time and oft*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 150.

"I am sure dear, I have seen uglier things under a glass shade before now," said she. — So had I *many a time and oft*. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 261.

89. "On the analogy of *a few*, the indefinite article has from the 16th century been prefixed to *many* (MURRAY)", imparting to it the character of a collective noun. (Ch. IV, 6, *a*.) Compare also EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 257.

*A many* is not common in ordinary literary and spoken English, which prefers *a good many*, *a great many* or *very many*. The phrases *a good many* and *a great many*, however, seem to be comparatively recent, MURRAY'S earliest instance being dated 1690. *A many* is chiefly met with in homely language and in poetic diction, which affects homely phrases.

They say he is already in the forest of Arden, and *a many* merry men with him. As you like it, I, I, 106.

I beg leave to tell you as I'd a right to expect *a many* things as I don't find. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. XII, 112.

They have not shed *a many* tears, | Dear eyes, since first I knew them well. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XXIX.

Note *a*) Instead of *great* or *good*, other adjectives are occasionally met with before *many*.

This (sc. her company) was chiefly of the Catholic gentry, of whom there were *a pretty many* in the country. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 27.

β) Note the combinations *such a many* and *what a many*, respectively standing for the more usual *so many* and *what a large number* (*what a lot*, etc.) *of*.

Heaven bless us! it (sc. the cherub) was here but a month, and no one could have thought it could have done *such a many* things in that time. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 169.

Oh, dear me! *what a many* — *many* years we have been acquainted! Id., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. III, 49.

90. The phrases mentioned in the preceding paragraph are used conjointly, absolutely and substantively. The following illustration will be deemed sufficient:

i. And I do know | *A many* fools, that stand in better place, | Garnish'd like him. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 5, 51.

ii. I had an opportunity of turning over *a great many* of her books. ADDISON, *Spectator*, No. 37.

iii. "Ah, mim," sighed Miggs, "begging your pardon for the interruption, there an't *a many* like you." DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIII, 55a.

#### MUCH.

91. *Much* is used *a*) as an adjective, *b*) as an indefinite numeral, *c*) as an adverb of degree.

For *much* as an adjective see Ch. XXX, 9, *b*, 1.

92. As an indefinite numeral *much* is used only with reference to quantity (See, however, Ch. XXVI, 16), and occurs:

a) conjointly: *Much* cry and little wool. Proverb.

Note. Instances of *much* being placed after its head-word, as in the following quotation seem to be rare:

It's no mischief *much* while she's a little un. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 6.

b) absolutely: I am very fond of wine, but I never drink *much*.

c) substantively: *Much* remains to be done. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, 193, b.

d) predicatively: He gave £ 100, but that was not *much*, considering his wealth.

Note: It is scarcely *too much* to say that the entire plan... rests on the assumption that their line in the West cannot be broken. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 1b.

93. Obs. I. The conjoint *much* may be used to form a kind of unit with its head-word, the combination being modified by another adnominal adjunct. Compare Ch. XXX, 9, b, 1, Note, and MURRAY, s. v. *much*, A, 2, e. Observe that *little* sometimes enters into an analogous formation. See 67, Obs. I.

Thanks for *thy much* goodness. *Meas. for Meas.*, V, 534.

I am sorry for *thy much* misgovernment. *Much ado*, IV, 1, 100.

They think they shall be heard for *their much* speaking. Bible, *Matth.*, VI, 7.

Now talking of this woodland paradise, | The deer, the dews, the fern, the founts, the lawns; | Now mocking at *the much* ungainliness, | And craven shifts, and long crane legs of Mark. TEN., *The Last Tourn.*, 712.

A pale yellow sun shone through the sky-light and showed *the much* dirt of the place. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 38.

- II. In the combination *much ado* we now feel *much* as an adnominal modifier of the noun *ado*. But *ado* stands for *at do*, a northern (Scandinavian) dialect form for *to do*, so that *much* was originally substantive. See MURRAY, s. v. *ado*; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.72. Compare also 47, c, Note.

He had *much ado* to keep himself awake at these councils. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 28.

Compare: i. 'Faith, there has been *much to-do* on both sides. *Hamlet*, II, 2, 372.

He had *much to do* to forbear regarding him as a saint-like personage. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 48.

ii. Send them up for me to hang, without *more to-do* about them. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXVI, 151.

iii. It seemed to me very reasonable that Uncle Reuben should have first chance of recovering his stolen goods, about which he had made *such a sad to-do*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 239.

- III. What has been said about the grammatical character of *little* in connection with partitive *of* (67, Obs. II) also applies to *much*. Also the peculiar idiomatic applications of *little + of*, as described in 67, Obs. II, are represented by *much + of*, i. e.:



- a) The latter combination is sometimes equivalent to conjoint *much*, the choice between the two constructions being, perhaps, sometimes determined by considerations of metre or rhythm.

A fine sight, carrying in it *much of* majesty, was the procession as it passed through the streets. MRS. WOOD, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 1.

So with small food and *much of* Homer and the accordion, a week passed over the heads of the outcasts. BRET HARTE, *The Outcasts of Poker Flat*, 29.

*Much of* peril attends it (sc. the unravelling of plots). BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVI, 212.

A weight of care was off my mind; though *much of* trouble hung there still. *ib.*, Ch. XXXVII, 227.

And many a beast he offered up with prayer | Unto the gods, and *much of* wealth did spend. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Son of Croesus*, IX.

- β) It is often used, mostly in connection with *not*, in stating and especially in negating the fact that a person or thing is endowed in an eminent degree with the essential qualities referred to in the sentence.

i. Cruel Frederick is just as *much of* a mythical personage as the Giant Fee-fo-fum. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. III, 37.

ii. You don't look for *much of* a voice in a comic song. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*.

I am *not much of* a musician. *Il. Mag.*, 1898.

He is *not much of* a scholar. MURRAY, s. v. *much*, B, 2, h.

- γ) It is sometimes employed to express frequent repetition or long duration of the action expressed by *to see*. Compare Ch. V, 18.

I don't know whether Lord Lufton *sees much of* her now. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIII, 224.

- IV. *Much*, when placed in front-position either by itself or together with its head-word, is sometimes ironical in import. Compare 96, Obs. II and Ch. VIII, 37, Note.

i. *Much* you know about the matter! MURRAY, s. v. *much*, B, 3, i.

ii. *Much good* will a dead daub do us! LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 55.

*Much good* it may do the governed! CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 105a.

*Much right* he has to interfere with me! MURRAY, s. v. *much*, A, 2, f.

- V. In like manner as *so many* (86, Obs. IV), *so much* may be used to denote a particular quantity that does not require specifying.

He has been losing his money at play, and he has been selling out *so much*, and *so much*, and *so much*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIV, 453.

The truth was, a boy meant *so much* a year to the institution. BERN. SHAW, *Parents and Children*, 25.

- VI. A common substitute for *very much* is *a great (good) deal of*, in vulgar and colloquial language often replaced by *a deal of*. (Ch. IV, 7, Obs. III.)

A further variant of *a great deal of* is illustrated by:

Gratiano speaks *an infinite deal of* nothing. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 114.

- VII. Note also the following idioms: i. I do not think the evidence *amounts to very much*. MURRAY, s. v. *much*, B, 2, e.

Does all this *come to much*? No. *ib.*

ii. You are not *much to look at*. DICK., *Great Expectations*, Ch. V<sup>1</sup>) (= not of an attractive appearance.)

<sup>1</sup>) MURRAY.

iii. *Much will have more.* Proverb.

iv. I am not strong; and the removal of the late misunderstanding between Mr. Micawber and myself was at first *too much for me*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LII, 379b. The naïveté of this address was *too much for the worthy man*. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

v. \* What, *think you much* to pay two thousand crowns? HENRY VI, B, IV, 1, 17. (= to regard as onerous.)

(He) *thought not much* to clothe his enemies. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, X, 219.

\*\* This gracious act the ladies all approve, | Who *thought it much* a man should die for love. DRYDEN, *The Wife of Bath's Tale*, 78. (= to regard as a dreadful thing.)

\*\*\* Mr. Supplehouse had known Mr. Smith too closely *to think much of* his young blood. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 193. (= to rate high or highly.)

vi. \* Be comfortable to my mother and *make much of* her. ALL'S WELL, I, 1, 87. (to treat with marked courtesy and show of affection.)

I was not a little pleased... *to be made much of*. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 56.

His royal highness the duke *made much of* you at court. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XL, 625.

\*\* It would have been ungenerous to Lady Lufton *to make much of* Lucy's virtue at this present moment, but unjust to make nothing of it. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 396. (to treat as a significant affair.)

He made as little of his real wound as he *had made much* the day before of his imaginary one. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 139a.

Compare: The man who *makes least* of the favour he confers, *makes most* of the favour he receives. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. VII, 83.

vii. "After school," says he after a pause and a look, *as much as to say*: Make your will and communicate your best wishes to your friends between this time and that. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 45 (= as who should say. Compare Ch. XVII, 102, *d*, Note, and Ch. XXXIX, 23, *e*.)

He winked at one or two tradesmen's shops where, possibly, he owed a bill, *as much as to say*, "See the company I'm in — sure I'll pay you, my boy". Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 59.

viii. \* It was *as much as I could do* to keep pace with the donkey. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XII, 89a (= It was all I could etc. Compare 3, Obs. II.)

He's so wild that it's *as much as I can do* to manage him at all. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 309.

\*\* "There can be no doubt that Chaldicotes will be ample to pay all you owe the duke." — "It's *as much as it will*." Id., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXII, 317, (= It will hardly.)

\*\*\* I daresay it's *as much as this Mr. Lammeter's done* to keep it (sc. the fortune) whole. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. VI, 43.

\*\*\*\* If he acknowledged his existence when they met at the club by a patronising nod, it was *as much as had ever passed between them*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. VIII, 194.

ix. 'Tis *much* when sceptres are in children's hands. HENRY VI, A, IV, 1, 192. (= a sorry business.)

When holy and devout religious men are at their beads, 'tis *much* to draw them thence. RICH. III, III, 7, 93 (= a hard thing.)

x. The only objects about which he ever displayed *much* enthusiasm were silver and cattle. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 10 (= any. Compare 18, Obs. III, Note γ.)

xi. The sheer bulk of the matter is increased by more than *as much again*. ATHEN., No. 4422, 81a. (= as much more.)

VIII. For *as* (or *so*) *much* applied as a quasi-personal pronoun see Ch. XXXII, 43. For *this* and *that much* and their variants *thus much* and *so much* see Ch. XXXVI, 10, II, a.

94. *Much*, when preceded by the definite article or some other adnominal modifier, is practically a pure noun.

If I, or mine, can contribute our mite, or *our much*... we shall not omit to serve you. BURKE, *Cor.*, II, 247.<sup>1)</sup>

"By that word you mean something more than the customary feeling of acquaintance," — "Yes, something much more," said he with energy. — "Well, I will not define *the much* — something closer than that?" TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVI, 159

95. The adverbial *much*, often preceded by an intensive, is used to modify:

- a) verbs: i. For my part I don't *much* like it. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. VII.

"Do you expect to get paid for this mourning?" — "Why I do not *much* think I shall." Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. V, 43.

I don't love you, and I *much* fear that I never shall love you as much as a woman ought to love a husband. HARDY, *Far from the Mad-ding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 417.

They would *much* prefer that the first advances should come from the Opposition. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6465, 13a.

- ii. Who is there upon earth that I could *miss so much*? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LIII, 381b.

I know he *admires* you *very much*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 199.

Note: i. *Much* as he *had hurt* her, she held out her hand to bid him a friendly good night. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. X, 116.

- ii. They won't take their *much-trying* party over the precipice a third time. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6483, 12b.

- b) participial adjectives or equivalent phrases used predicatively:

- i. I am *much obliged* to you.

- ii. Ginger was not *much in request*, for the old women were all dead. *Meas. for Meas.*, IV, 3, 9.

That was on the day... when I told you *how much in love* I was. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LIII, 381a.

So said the Harold-Smithians, *much elated*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 192.

- c) predicative nouns. See also Ch. XXXI, 5 and 7.

I suppose you are *too much a gentleman* to assist in such mechanical drudgery. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 44.

They were *as much prisoners* as we were. SHAW, *Parents and Children*, 25.

His wife (is) a pleasant-looking lady, *much his junior*. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (20).

- d) adjectives or adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree.

In the case of a comparative or superlative standing attributively before a singular, *much* regularly takes precedence of the definite article: *This is much the better (best) plan*. The indefinite article, on the other hand, now regularly stands before *much* modifying an attributive comparative: *This is a much better plan*. In Early Modern

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

English it was sometimes placed between *much* and the comparative. See MURRAY, s. v. *much*, C, 1, b.

For illustration of the ordinary use of *much* before comparatives and superlatives see Ch. XXX, 43.

Euripides is *much* a graver writer. CLARENDON, Surv. Leviath., 255. <sup>1)</sup>

A grateful ... Receiver is *much* a greater Man than such a pretended Benefactor. COLLIER, Sev. Disc., XII, 385. <sup>1)</sup>

Note. In Older English *much* is also found as a modifier of the positive of an adjective. See MURRAY s. v. *much*, C, 1, c; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 51; ALEX. SCHMIDT, s. v. *much*, 3. The practice is now at all usual only before *like*.

i. I am *much* ill. Henry IV, B, IV, 4, 111.

I am *much* sorry. Cymb., II, 3, 109.

I am *much* forgetful. Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 255.

Mr. Harding ... thought the old reddish brown *much* preferable to the gaudy buff-coloured trumpery moreen. TROL., Barch. Tow. Ch. V, 32. (The positive has the value of a comparative.)

ii. It was *much like* an argument that fell out last night, where each of us fell in praise of our country mistresses. Cymb., I, 4, 60.

Now, by Saint Martin of Tours, the boy has some spirit! a right touch of the Leslie in him; *much like* myself, though always with a little more folly in it. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. V, 81.

e) the indefinite comparative numerals *more*, *less* and *fewer* (86, Obs. III): He has *much more* (*less*) wealth than his father.

The doctors have *much fewer* patients in summer than in winter. (Compare 86, Obs. III.)

f) the adverb *too*: In this respect Tudor was *much too* much for him. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. IX, 94.

96. Obs. I. The adverbial *much* is often used in the weakened sense of *nearly* or *approximately*, especially in stating approximate similarity. In this application it is often preceded by *very*, *pretty*, or a similar intensive or down-toner.

i. The idea which he left on my mind was *much the same* as that which I had entertained, when a boy, of a certain room in the castle of Udolpho. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXVII, 262.

My ancestors were country squires, who appear to have led *much the same* life as is natural to their class. CON. DOYLE, Mem. Sherl. Holm., II, C, 96.

\*\* My father was in *much such* a station. MRS. GASK, Mary Barton, Ch. XI, 130.

\*\*\* Her father and mother were brought up *much as* she has been brought up. CH. BRONTE, Villette, Ch. XX, 281.

Otherwise, the little family were going on *much as* usual. FLORA MASSON, The Brontës, Ch. VI, 32.

He began to climb up, *very much as* a fly climbs up a pane of glass. SWEET, Old Chapel.

ii. The Duke has it *pretty much* his own way there. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXII, 313.

There's reasons in things as nobody knows on — that's *pretty much* what I've made out. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. VI, 42.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



It was *pretty much* a sinecure. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 68.

This *much* is used pronominally in: She (sc. Elizabeth) played with grave cabinets as a cat plays with a mouse, and with *much* of the same feline delight in the mere embarrassment of her victims. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 372.

Note the colloquial *much of a muchness* = much of the same importance or value, very much the same or alike.

"The man is the head of the woman, you know". — "Yes, sometimes", said Adalesa, "and sometimes he isn't, because the woman is a long way ahead of him. But the rule is *much of a muchness*, I believe". SARAH GRAND, *Our Man. Nat.*, 22.

If you tested the sexes for folly by examination, you would find them *much of a muchness*. *lb.*, 86.

- II. The adverbial *much* in front position is sometimes ironical in meaning. Compare 93, Obs. IV and Ch. VIII, 47.

*Much* you care about my feelings! MURRAY, s.v. *much*, C, 2.

- III. *Much* sometimes denotes a relation of time, being almost equivalent to *a long time* or *repeatedly*.

I have not been *much* away from home of late. MURRAY, s.v. *much*, C, 4. She and Lord Lufton are getting into the way of being too *much* together. TROLL, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 126.

Mark thinks that, as he is so near, he need not be *much* absent from Framley. *lb.*, Ch. XXII, 212.

- IV. Note also the following idiomatic applications of adverbial *much*.

i. She only washed Harry's face the day he went away; nor ever *so much* as once boxed his ears. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 19.

ii. It was not *so much* the cold that made her shiver, as that horrible nameless dread [etc.]. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XIII, 65.

Compare: They often go into company, that they may return with the greater delight to one another; and sometimes live in town, *not to enjoy it so properly* as to grow weary of it, that they may renew in themselves the relish of a country life. *Spectator*, No. 15 (= properly speaking, not so much to enjoy it.)

iii. He is the best of brothers, but *so much* the more shame that I should live upon him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 626.

iv. To tell the truth, there was but one there who cared *much* about the moon's beauty. TROLL, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIX, 152 (= at all.)

- V. *Much* enters into certain conjunctive expressions: *forasmuch as* (Ch. XVII, 47); *inasmuch as* (Ch. XVII, 40, 47); *insomuch as* (Ch. XVII, 53); *so much as* (Ch. XI, 5; Ch. XVII, 126, Obs. V); *so much so that* (Ch. XVII, 53).

#### MORE.

97. *More*, like *much*, is used as a) an adjective, b) an indefinite numeral, c) an adverb of degree.

For *more* as an adjective see Ch. XXX, 9.

98. *More* as an indefinite numeral is used of both quantity and number.

He has not only *more* money but also *more* friends than his cousin.

In Early Modern English *mo(e)*, the descendant of the Old English *ma* (Ch. XXX, 9, *a*), is a frequent variant of *more*, when the reference is to number. It became obsolete by the beginning of the eighteenth century. Thus ROWE, who made the first attempt to really edit SHAKESPEARE (1709), changed *moe* into *more*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *moe*; *more*, A, 3; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 221; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 2.74; EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 279—280.

And thousands *moe* the like, that did the dongeon fill. SPENSER, Faery Queene, I, V, L.

Send out *moe* horses. Macb., V, 3, 34.

BRUT. Is he alone? — LUC. No, sir, there are *moe* with him. Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 72.

BYRON has *moe* archaically in: Here is one fytte of Harold's pilgrimage: 'Ye who of him may further seek to know, | Shall find some tidings in a future page, | If he that rhymeth now may scribble *moe*. BYRON, Childe Har., I, xciii.

99. The indefinite numeral *more* is used:

a) conjointly: *More things* are wrought by prayer | Than this world dreams of. TEN., Pas. of Arth., 415.

b) absolutely: "Here they are, here they are!" cried Ned exultingly, as he brought two young owls to the light... "Will you have any *more*?" he asked. SWEET, Old Chapel.

c) substantively, apparently only with reference to things: To be beautiful is enough. If a woman can do that well: who shall demand *more* from her? THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XXV, 278.

But there was *more* to come. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., I, Ch. VI, 43.

Note. In the phrase *the more the merrier*, *more* may, indeed, be understood as a substantive word, but it is better to consider it as absolute, the reference being to a particular number or special kind of people which the speaker does not regard it necessary to describe: *the more people such as you, they*, etc. In the following quotation the absolute character of *more* is indubitable: The *more* of them, the merrier we should be. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 49.

d) predicatively, either in a plural or in a singular meaning; in the latter case often with a distinctly qualitative connotation.

i. The people of the children of Israel are *more* and mightier than we. Bible, Exodus, I, 9

They that be with us are *more* than they that be with them. Id., Kings, B, VI, 16.

ii. \* His earnings were *more* than they used to be.

\*\* Honour and shame were scarcely *more* to him than light and darkness to the blind. MAC., Hist., Ch. II.

Kind hearts are *more* than coronets, | And simple faith than Norman blood. TEN., Lady Clara Vere de Vere, VII.

A son is *more* to his mother and a girl to her father. AMBER REEVES, The Reward of Virtue, Ch. I, 4.

100. Obs. I α) The conjoint *more* often has the value of the adjective *further* or *additional*. Compare MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 272; BIRGER PALM, The Place of the Adj. Attribute, § 300.

Harry... purchased *more* trinkets for his female cousins. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLIII, 447.

William wanted a wife and they were married without *more* ado. FREEMAN, Norman Conq., III, Ch. XII, 85.1)

In this application *more* often occurs together with a definite or indefinite numeral. Its ordinary Dutch equivalent is the adverb *nog*.

- i. Charles desired the attendants to pull aside the curtains, that he might have *one more* look at the day. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 12.
- ii. Deduct the plural votes, and in the Metropolis Liberalism would be in possession of... *several more* seats than are now marked liberal on the electoral map. Westm. Gaz., No. 5501, 3c.

Compare with the above: Having given *some further* directions,... he departed. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 17.

The absolute *more* may be used in a similar meaning:

- i. My father, and my two uncles..., and some *six more* of our people, were killed in defending the castle. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. V, 76.
- ii. Please, sir, I want *some more* (sc. gruel). DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 33.

There were no peerages, in spite of the legend that we were to have forty as a foretaste of the *many more* that might have to be created in certain emergencies. Westm. Gaz., No. 5507, 2b.

- β) *More* is, however, best understood as a kind of adverb in the sense of *in addition*, *further*, *yet*, when it stands after
- 1) a noun modified by a definite or indefinite numeral,
  - 2) a substantive definite or indefinite numeral,
  - 3) an indefinite pronoun,
  - 4) a relative or interrogative pronoun,
  - 5) an adverb.
- Observe that also in this application the ordinary Dutch equivalent of *more* is *nog*.

- i. After an interval of twelve years, we had *two sons more*. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. I.

I think I have not *three years more* to live. TEN., En. Ard., 847.  
Mrs. Bretton and her son pressed me to remain *one night more*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XXI, 285.

\*\* *A few minutes more* of silent exertion enabled him to proceed with composure. JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sensibility, Ch. XXXI, 203.

- ii. \* He and *a thousand more* never came back again. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 6.

\*\* I have *little more* to tell. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. V, 79.  
I devoured my bread and drank my coffee with relish: but I should have been glad of *as much more*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 57.

- iii. Only this and *nothing more*. POE, *The Raven*.  
Did you hear *anything more*? BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*,  
Ch. IV, 44.
  - iv. \* (She begged) him to reserve *what more* he had to say, for her hearing  
on the way home. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVI, 216a.  
\*\* *What more* was wanted in a student? WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*.  
(STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).
  - v. *How long more* are you going to stand there and countenance this  
lunacy? BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (239).
- With the above quotations compare: i. Mrs. Grantly then felt that there  
was *nothing further* to be said. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIII, 226.  
ii. *Yet three days*, and then I must go back to the pensionnat. CH. BRONTE,  
*Villette*, Ch. XXI, 284.  
iii. *Yet a few days more*, and my young friend of the railroad will be not  
a whit more eager. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 173.

II. a) Absolute or substantive *more* + *of* is sometimes equivalent to con-  
joint *more*, substitution being, apparently, often due to the desire  
of rhythm. Compare Ch. XXIX, 26, *b* and also Ch. XL, 67, Obs. II  
and 93, Obs. III.

She was ready to forget it all, and to bear far *more of* blame than she  
deserved. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 277.

Some may ask whether John Ralston's resolution held good against *more of*  
such temptations. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XV, 293.

Sybil had brought *more of* sunshine and colour into her monotonous life  
than it had ever known. MRS. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. VIII, 119.  
His eyes had *more of* gray and less of blue in them. EDNA LYALL,  
*A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. II, 15.

f) It is sometimes used in stating that the person(s) or thing(s) spoken  
about has (have) more the characteristics of one class of persons or  
things than of another. Compare 103, Obs. I and also Ch. V, 17.  
By disposition, perhaps, he was *more of the politician* than the lawyer.  
*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4919, 2b.

O Erny, don't be *more of a fool* than you can help. AGN. & EG. CASTLE,  
*Diamond cut Paste*, I, Ch. IV, 53.

Any one who is really *more of a workman* is generally *more of a man*.  
CHESTERTON (11. *Lond. News*, No. 3829, 340c).

Compare with this: I shall be... *more a man* and less a brute. GODWIN,  
*Enquirer*, I, II, 10.1)

γ) It may be applied to express greater frequency or longer duration  
of the action expressed by *to see*. Compare the analogous use of  
*less* to express the opposite idea, discussed in 77, Obs. IV.

I hope we shall see *more of* you this year than we did last year.

Analogously *no more* + *of* is sometimes used to express discon-  
tinuance of the action denoted by the verb *to see*.

I saw *no more of* Uriah Heep until the day when Agnes left town. DICK.,  
Ch. XXVI, Cop., 191a.

III. Also the following idiomatic applications deserve a passing mention:

- i. Here comes Lorenzo, *more of this* hereafter. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 6, 20.  
(Now somewhat archaic. MURRAY, s. v. *more*, B, 4, b.)

1) MURRAY, s. v. *much*, C, 1, a.



- ii. All this *and more* is known in the Balkans. The New Statesman, No. 123, 437*b* (Compare MURRAY, s. v. *more*, B, 4, *e*.)
- iii. We are betroth'd: *nay, more*, our marriage-hour, | With all the cunning manner of our flight, Determined of. Two Gentlemen II, 4, 179 (= *Nay what is more*. Now, according to MURRAY (s. v. *more*, C, 6), used only archaically, but, apparently, still frequent enough.)  
Coppo had permitted him to witness the miraculous operation of shaving. *Nay, more* — Coppo had said that even he, Wee Willie Winkie, would rise in time to the ownership of a box of shiny knives. RUDY. KIPLING, Wee Willie Winkie.
- iv. All this Jem swore he had seen, *more by token* that it was the very day he had been mole-catching on Squire Cass's land. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. I, 4. (= *still more, the more so*.)

101. *More* is a pure substantive in: He knows the depth to be so many fathoms, and more; but how much *that more* is, he hath no distinct notion at all. LOCKE, Hum. Und., II, XVII, § 15.<sup>1)</sup>

102. As an adverb *more* is used to modify:

- a) verbs: If thou *more* murmur'st, I will rend an oak | And peg thee in his knotty entrails. Temp., I, 2, 294.  
The fine arts are addressed *more* to the imagination; the sciences to the intellect. BUCKLE, Civilization, I, II, 112.<sup>1)</sup>
- b) adjectives and adverbs to form of these words what is termed the periphrastic comparative. See Ch. XXX, 2 and 28.
- c) words or word-groups that are equivalent to adjectives.  
For *more* modifying nouns see Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. II,  $\gamma$  and 16, Note III; for *more* modifying predicative *so* as the representative of a preceding adjective see Ch. XXXII, 28, *c*, 1.  
Every friend must be made still *more her friend* by them (sc. her sufferings). JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sens., Ch. XXXI, 206.  
I felt happier, easier, *more at home*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XVII, 234.
- d) adverbial word-groups: The notion must be followed much *more into detail* than he has done. WHEWELL.<sup>1)</sup>

103. Obs. I. When in such a sentence as *He was more of the politician than the lawyer* (100, Obs. II,  $\beta$ ), *of* is omitted, *more* becomes an adverb in the sense of *rather*. This appears to be the meaning of adverbial *more* in most sentences containing a comparison. He hath *more* the air of a butcher, than of a gay forester. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 47.  
She was *more* like a dark lantern than a lamp. Ib., Ch. VII, 110.  
Half a fellow's pangs at losing a woman result from vanity *more* than affection. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 145.  
The girl frowned as she spoke, the frown of mental intentness. It seemed *more* a withdrawing of her eyes under her brows than a movement of the brows themselves. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam., III, Ch. I, 111.  
Mr. Glover appears here *more* as a preacher than as a theologian or a historian. Westm. Gaz., No. 6276, 13*a*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Note *a*) This use of *more* is unusual when the second member of the comparison is understood, as is the case in:

"But then there's — culture!" ventured the friend. She hesitated before she found the word, and when it came, she was not pleased with it. "Perhaps I mean *more* good breeding. That is so very important with a girl." AMBER REEVES, *The Reward of Virtue*, Ch. I, 1.

*β*) Observe also that, unlike *rather*, *more* is strictly kept before what expresses the first subject of the comparison. Thus *more* could not stand in the place of *rather* in:

It is the misfortune *rather* than the fault of the Christian Balkan States to be inconvenient to the Great Powers of Europe. *The New Statesman*, No. 123, 437a. (= It is *rather* (or *more*) the misfortune than etc.)

- II. *More* followed by *than* is sometimes placed attributively before a noun to state that the latter is inadequate to express the speaker's feelings or thoughts. For *less than* used analogously to express the opposite sense see 78, Note *β*.

Oh, great Sciolto! Oh, my *more than father*! NICH. ROWE, *The Fair Penitent*, I, 1, (497b).

Motherless, am I to be bereft of my *more than mother*, at the sensitive age of fifteen? EATON STANNARD BARRETT, *The Heroine*, Let. I.

The placing of *more than* in a similar function between *to* and an infinitive seems to be rare. Compare Ch. VIII, 75.

All was not well, they deem'd — but where the wrong? | Some knew perchance — but 't were a tale too long; | And such besides were too discreetly wise, | *To more than hint* their knowledge in surmise. BYRON, *Lara*, I, ix.

- III. *More* often expresses a relation of time. In this application it is especially frequent in such combinations as *no more* or *not any more*, discussed in 143, *b*.

One bottle speedily yielded up the ghost, another shed more than half its blood before the toppers had been much *more* than half-an-hour together. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 163.

Note. The use of temporal *more* without *any* after a negative or after a noun modified by *no*, as in the following quotations, is archaic. Compare 20, *a*, Note.

- i. I have ordered my bachelor, Hans Glover, to wait for you at the eastern gate, and *never* to see my face *more*, unless he brings word that he has guided you safe from the territory. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXIII, 297. And their presentiment was quite prophetic | That they should *never more* each other see. BYRON, *Beppo*, XXVIII.

William sunk, and was *never* seen *more*. DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black-Ey'd Susan*, I, V, (21).

Perseus *never* saw them *more*. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, IV, 83.

Compare: She *never* came back *any more*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 7a.

\*\* Oh rest ye, brother mariners, we will *not* wander *more*. TEN., *Lot.-Eat.*, 173.

- ii. He (sc. his royal highness) would have *no interest* or authority *more*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 635.

- IV. *More* is sometimes divided from the word it modifies by the second member of the comparison.

It behoves us to be *more than ever careful* of our own expenses. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIII, 447.

- V. *More* may form a kind of prepositional word-group with *than*, in the sense of *except*, after a negative sentence.

Of the wine and the oil of our mountains I can say little, *more than* that our swords can compel these rich productions, as tribute from our wealthier neighbours. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVIII, 237.

He would ask no one to help him, *more than* to give him work and pay him for it. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. V, 205.

V. *Much more* sometimes has the value of *especially*.

Never mind about his being angry that his presents were returned — of course anybody would be angry, *much more* such a high-spirited lad as Harry. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LI, 525.

She would have come, as to a work of religion, to any sick couch, *much more* to this one, where he lay for whose life she would once gladly have given her own. *Id.*, *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLII, 442.

There have been certain men so great, that he who describes them in words — *much more* pretends to analyse their inmost feelings — must be a very great man himself or incur the accusation of presumption. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XXV, 104a.

This *much more* is often retained when a negative statement, or a statement implying a negative, precedes and, accordingly, *much less* would be expected, which latter word-group, indeed, occurs as a frequent variant. The Dutch has *veel min* or *nog daargelaten*.

i. He (sc. the Major) would never submit to any deceit — *much more* to deceive such a charming young woman as Miss Foth. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 132.

Fitz had hardly money to pay his circuit, *much more* to take Rosa to a watering-place, as he wished and promised. *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VII, (334).

I believe the rascal has never read my poems, *much more* my tragedies. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXII, 758.

What young lady cares for the puddings of to-day, *much more* for those which were eaten a hundred years ago? *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 89.

The man she loved... had been in a fight with a professional boxer, and had been incapable of getting home alone — *much more* of going to meet his wife at the Assembly ball. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XI, 196.

ii. For it is a gross piece of ignorance among us to conceive that, in those polite and learned ages, even persons of any tolerable education, *much less* the wisest philosophers, did acknowledge or worship any more than one almighty power. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Clergyman*, (468b).

He desires me to say that he cannot think of attending himself, *much less* of asking his Gracious Master to witness the performance. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIX, 842.

Nor could a human being, *much less* a pig, have lived there many days. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 58.

When I started again next morning, I found myself so stiff and footsore, that I could hardly put one leg before the other, *much less* walk upright. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. XII, 135.

VII. Also the following idioms deserve attention:

a) *more and more* (See also Ch. XXX, 39): And the widow's servants, whom the good soul began to pinch *more and more*, stole and cheated *more and more*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIII, 447.

β) *more or less* (See also Ch. XXVI, 16, d): i. The Torch of Science has now been brandished and borne about with *more or less effect*, for five-thousand years and upwards. CARLYLE, *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

She was for the rest of her days *more or less* of an invalid. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 11*b*. (Note the use of *of* which is like that described in 100, Obs. II,  $\beta$ ).

- ii. Consisting of 91 acres, *more or less*, of excellent land. *Times*. (= *approximately*.)
  - iii. Had the young man... submitted to the prescribed rigorous treatment for *more or less* two years from his first visit to the physician, in all probability no secondary symptoms would have appeared. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 246. (= *about*.)
  - iv. There is no discoverable law fixing precisely *the more or less* of these. *MORLEY, Compromise*, Ch. II, 64.<sup>1)</sup>  
The colouring of the phrase, *its more or less* of poetica and imaged quality. *PHILLIMORE, Sophocles, Introd.*, 183.<sup>1)</sup>
- moreover*. For illustration see Ch. X, 14.  
*no more*. For illustration see Ch. VIII, 7, *a* and *c*, 2; Ch. X, 10, Obs I.

### MOST.

104. *Most* is used *a*) as an adjective, *b*) as an indefinite numeral, *c*) as an adverb of degree.

For *most* as an adjective see Ch. XXX, 9.

105. *Most* as an indefinite numeral is used both of number and quantity and occurs conjointly, absolutely and substantively. For illustration see Ch. XXXI, 20. For the phrase *at (the) most* see Ch. XXX, 38.

Note *a*) The substantive *most* is used with reference to persons and things.

- i. Gandercleugh (is) a place frequented by *most* at one time or other in their lives. *Prolegom. to SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Lothian*.  
Some read the King's face, some the Queen's and all | Had marvel what the maid might be, but *most* predoom'd her as unworthy. *TEN., Lanc. & El.*, 723.  
I do not know that I am more stupid than *most*. *E. F. BENSON, Mrs. Ames*, Ch. I, 18.
- ii. The fat man complains most of the crush to which he contributes *most*. *R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. VII, 84.  
Literature hath gained *most* by those books by which the printers lost. *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 225.

$\beta$ ) Absolute or substantive *most + of* is sometimes equivalent to conjoint *most*.

In her daughter Lady Duff-Gordon there was perhaps *the most of* genius. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6065, 5*a*.

$\gamma$ ) Note the idiom in: If she knows her letters, *it's the most* she does. *DICK., Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 27. (= Dutch *dan zal het mooi zijn*. In approximately the same meaning: *it's all she does*, and *it's as much as she does*, for which see respectively 3, Obs. II and 93, Obs. VI, VIII.

1) MURRAY.



106. *Most* as an adverb modifies:

- a) verbs: For *most*, I know, thou lov'st retired ground. MATH. ARNOLD, Scholar-Gipsy, VIII.

Note. *Most* may have the sense of *most frequently*: One of the *most* sung of Oxford's many beauties: the tower of Magdalen College from the bridge. II. Lond. News, No. 3834, 111.

- b) adjectives or adverbs to form what is called their periphrastic superlative. See Ch. XXX, 2 and 28.

Note α) In this function *most* also appears occasionally before a noun. See Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. II, γ.

β) Of great frequency is the use of *most* to form the so-called absolute superlative. See Ch. XXX, 44, Note II.

107. a) *Most* in the sense of *mostly* or *for the most part* is now obsolete. MURRAY's latest instance is dated 1734.

He took *most* to silence, . . . yet, when he did speak, it was much to the purpose. NORTH, Lives, III, 388.1)

- b) Also *most* in the sense of *almost*, of which it is now felt as an aphetic form, is now obsolete, except in dialects.

We tap at a door in an old, old street in Soho: an old maid with a kind, comical face opens the door, and nods friendly, and says: "How do, sir? ain't seen you this ever so long. How do, Mr. Noocoom?" — "Who's here?" — "*Most* everybody's here." THACK., New c., I, Ch. XXV, 278.

I'm *most* droppin'. Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, Ch. I, 4.  
*Most* time that there physic came. W. SHERKEN, Two Girls and a Mannikin, 319.

I like *most* everything about it (sc. getting drunk), except the next morning. EDITH WHARTON, The Custom of the Country, 552.

He is a casual smoker and will smoke *'most* any brand. PUNCH, 1899, 6 Dec., 275b.

## NAUGHT (NOUGHT).

108. *Naught* has fallen into disuse in ordinary language. As an indefinite numeral or pronoun its place has been taken by *nothing*.

A frequent variant of *naught* is *nought*, the two words being now pronounced alike. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1147) observes that the spelling *naught* is still preferred in the sense of *nothing*, while the spelling *nought* is reserved to denote the *o* in arithmetic. So far as the first part of this observation is concerned, it may, however, be remarked that there does not seem to be any distinct predilection for the first spelling, *nought* appearing at least as frequently as *naught* in printed documents.

According to EINENKEL (Anglia, XXVII, 170 and Das Indefinitum, § 366), *nought* (— nothing) and *naught* (— bad, worthless, wicked) are graphically distinguished with great regularity in SHAKESPEARE. With *naught* in the meaning of *bad*, *worthless*, compare the adjective *naughty*.

1) MURRAY.

MURRAY does not pronounce upon the comparative frequency of *naught* or *nought* in the meaning of *nothing*, and confines himself to observing that as an adjective *naught* is the more usual form.

In the literary language *naught* (or *nought*) is still rather frequent in certain expressions, such as *to come to naught* (*nought*) and *to set at naught* (*nought*).

- i. \* A paramour is, God bless us, a thing of *naught*. *Mids.*, IV, 2, 13. (Compare: If British patience failed or British confidence wavered, the kind of power which Britain exerts in war would be *a thing of nought*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7017, 2b.)

As for her husband's family of Warrington, they were as *naught* in her eyes. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 36.

\*\* *Nought's* had, *ail's* spent. | When our desire is got without content. *MACB.*, III, 2, 6.

Commerce on other shores displayed her sail, | While *nought* remained of all that riches gave. *GOLDSM.*, *Trav.*, 141.

Away went Gilpin, neck or *nought*; | Away went hat and wig. | He little dreamt, when he set out, | of running such a rig. *COWPER*, *John Gilpin*, XXV.

A soldier on duty should say *nought* of what he sees. *SCOTT*, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. VII, 110.

*Nought* of life left, save a quivering | Where his limbs were slightly shivering. *BYRON*, *The Siege of Corinth*, XXVII, 37.

I am bound, in honour, to say nothing publicly against my University, even if I had aught to say. But I have *nought*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 90.

- ii. \* The plans of the Opposition... will... *come to naught*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5213, 1c.

His hopes for the liberation of the Serbs in Turkey without bloodshed *had come to naught*. *11. Lond. News*, No. 3835, Sup. I.

\*\* Bad is the world; and *will come to nought*. *Rich.* III, III, 6, 13.

I cannot but think their counsel *will come to nought*. *G. ELIOT*, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. VIII, 75.

- iii. \* Religion was a part of men's daily lives, but the principles of Christianity *were set at naught* at the first bidding of expediency. *BEERBOHM TREE*, *Henry VIII*, 12.

\*\* If the authority of the King's officers *is set at nought*, we must have the riot act read. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 216.

- iv. (The oath bound them) *to hold* the Court of Aldermen *at nought*. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 34b.

Note a) Like *all*, *enough*, *little*, *much* etc., *naught* or *nought* may be followed by partitive *of*.

You scarce would start to see a spirit there; | Secure that *nought of evil* could delight | To walk in such a scene, on such a night! *BYRON*, *Lara*, I, x.

β) Of the numerous now obsolete or archaic applications of *naught* (*nought*) the following deserve a passing mention:

1) as a noun, in the sense of *mischievous*: But John's disciples did *naught*, in that they envied Christ. *LATIMER*, *Sermons and Remains*, 70.1)

SHAKESPEARE plays upon the double meaning of *naught* (*nought*) in: *BRAC.* With this, my lord, myself have *nought* to do. *GLOUC.* *Naught* to do with Mistress Shore! I tell thee, fellow, | He that doth *naught* with her, excepting one. Were best he do it secretly, alone. *Rich.* III, I, 1, 97—100. (Note the varied spelling.)

1) MURRAY.

2) as a noun, in the sense of *worthless creature*: Sinful Macduff, | They were all struck for thee! *naught* that I am, | Not for their own demerits, but for mine, | Fell slaughter on their souls. *MACB.*, IV, 3, 225.

The law expenses would have been more than the hands themselves were worth — a set of ungrateful *naughts*! *Mrs. GASK.*, North and South, Ch. XVIII.

3) as an adjective in the sense of *improper, licentious*: You are *naught*, you are *naught*: I'll mark the play. *Haml.*, III, 2, 159.

4) as an adverb, in the sense of *in no way*: But she is nice and coy And *nought* esteems my aged eloquence. *Two Gentlemen*, III, 1, 83. Alas! he *nought* esteems that face of thine. *SHAK.*, *Ven.*, 631.

### NEITHER.

109. *Neither* is used *a*) as a distributive numeral, *b*) as a conjunctive adverb.

For *neither* as a conjunctive adverb see Ch. X, 9 ff.

110. *Neither* may be declined for the genitive, but instances appear to be far less common than with *either*.

*Neither's* friends have cause to be sorry. *BEN JONSON*, Every Man in Humour, V, 3, 102.

111. As a distributive numeral *neither* is used as the negative of *either* in both the first and the second meaning.

On either side of the road stood a row of stately mansions, but as the sun was right above it, there was shade on *neither*.

Did you give the book to either of my brothers? I gave it to *neither*.

112. *Neither* is used *a*) conjointly: Nothing, *neither* way. *Haml.*, V, 2, 312.

*b*) absolutely: One or both of them might appear at a later hour, though *neither* of them were men who danced. *MAR. CRAWF.*, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 79.

*c*) substantively: At the midday meal they exchanged commonplaces and *neither* looked at the other. *Id.*, Adam Johnstone's Son, Ch. VIII.

113. Obs. 1. Like *either* in the second meaning, *neither* is sometimes used of more than two. Compare *JESPERSEN*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.731—2.

Heat, light, electricity, magnetism, ... are all correlatives, ... *neither*, taken abstractly, can be said to be the essential cause of the others. *GROVE*, *Corr. Phys. Forces*, 15.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The use of *neither* in referring to more than two alternatives is common enough when it is followed by the conjunction *nor*. Compare Ch. X, 9 ff and see *JESPERSEN*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.732.

He has *neither* relations, nor friends, nor money. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 416.

About 'The Slave' our opinion is quite clear. *Neither* plot, nor style, nor feeling delight us. *Periodical*.<sup>2)</sup>

1) MURRAY. 2) EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 240.

- II. The word-group *neither of* + plural pronoun is sometimes used as an apposition of a noun or pronoun.

We had *neither of us* seen the sea. CH. LAMB, Last Es. of Elia, The Old Margate Hoy, (311).

## NO.

114. *No* is used *a*) as an adnominal word, *b*) as an adverb.

Note. In the former function it is the representative of the Old English  $n\bar{a}n = ne + \bar{a}n$ , in which  $\bar{a}n$  has partly the force of the numeral *one*, partly that of the indefinite article. See Ch. XXXI, 8, *a*. In the latter function it is descendant of the Old English  $n\bar{a} = ne + \bar{a}$ , in which  $\bar{a}$  represents an adverb in the sense of *at any time*, so that  $n\bar{a}$  originally had the meaning of *never*.

115. The adnominal *no* before a singular noun that is the name of a countable (JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 5.2), is the negative article understood as a weak *one* or a weak *some*; before a plural noun, or before a singular denoting an uncountable, it represents the negative of *some*.

According to the nature of the noun modified, *no*, therefore, bears some similarity to *not a* or *not any*, or to the bare negative *not*.

Sometimes it is practically a mere negativer of the whole sentence or clause, notwithstanding the fact that it attaches to a particular noun or substitute of a noun; sometimes it is more than a mere negativer and implies a peculiar notion which is never, or only exceptionally expressed by its variants. As a mere negativer *no* has weaker stress than the noun it modifies, except, of course, when a contrast with a preceding affirmation is intended.

116. *No* as a mere negativer has a very wide application. In the majority of connections substitution of any of its variants would be impossible, either for syntactical reasons, or because the latter would convey a different shade of meaning.

Instances being easily procurable, only a few are given.

*No*, as a mere negativer, before a singular denoting a countable: There is *no reader* of this little story who has not discernment enough to perceive that the Miss Eliza Styles . . . was no other than Captain Rawdon Crawley. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 162. (Observe that *not* does not belong to *discernment*, but to *enough*.)

He had *no idea* that John Bold could really prove that the income of the hospital was malappropriated. TROL., The Warden, Ch. II, 21.

My father made *no answer*. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XVI, 160.

*No*, as mere negativer, before a plural or a singular denoting an uncountable:

- i. There were as yet *no tidings* of Gurth and his charge. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. III, 26.

Her husband has *no relations*. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. LXXIII, 271a.

Hitherto Bold had taken *no steps* in the matter. TROL., The Warden, Ch. II, 22.



You have *no means* of keeping a wife. SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, II, (181).

- ii. There is *no want* of room, I assure you. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 79. Mr. Chadwick (alleged) that he had *no authority* for making public the concerns of a property in managing which he was only a paid servant. TROL., The Warden, Ch. II, 23.

The highest civilization has *no value* once it is doomed to destruction. Westm. Gaz., No. 5619, 8d.

I had *no taste* for what is called popular art, *no respect* for popular morality, *no belief* in popular religion, *no admiration* for popular heroics. SHAW, Plays Pleasant and Unpleasant, II, Pref.

Note a) The negative notion expressed by *no* may be emphasized by such adverbial adjuncts as *at all*, *in the world*, *on earth*, etc., or by such adjectives as *mortal*, *human*, *living*, etc.

- i. Major Pendennis told him... that young Arthur had *no fortune at all*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XII, 125.

I've *no objection on earth*. TROL., The Warden, Ch. III, 31.

- ii. He vowed... that he would love her as *no mortal woman* had been adored since the creation of womankind. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 82.

No mortal man or woman, *no human boy or girl*, can resist the fascination of Mr. and Mrs. Quilp, of Mr. and Miss Brass, of Mr. Swiveller and his Marchioness. SWINBURNE, Charles Dick., 19.

β) Sometimes *no* seems to be misplaced, i. e. it is not the word modified by *no* which ought to have been negated. For illustration see also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.74 and STOF., Stud., B, 103.

Oliver stopped to make *no reply*. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VI, 70. (Rewritten: Oliver did not stop to make a(ny) reply.)

Let the hands of *no honest man* touch mine to-night. Id., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VI, 24b. (Rewritten: Do not let the hands of an(y) honest man etc.).

You shall be asked to do *nothing* that is painful. TROL., The Warden, Ch. IX, 115. (Rewritten: You shall not be asked to do anything that is painful.)

He could... comfort himself by *no promises* of firmness. Ib., Ch. X, 120. (Rewritten: He could not comfort himself by etc.).

In the above quotations the misplacing of *no* cannot fail to strike the observant reader, owing to the fact that the noun modified by *no* is found in an element of the sentence which forms a kind of unit more or less divided from that part of the sentence to which the negative logically belongs. But also when there is no such individuality, *no* often appears misapplied. Thus in such frequent notices as *No dogs are admitted to this park*, *No smoking allowed in this compartment*, *Visitors are requested to leave no litter in these grounds*, etc., the word which ought to have been negated is not the noun modified by *no*, but the preceding verb, and such sentences do not, therefore, express accurately what they are intended to express. Sentences with illogical *no* are, however, exceedingly frequent, even in the best writers, and it would, therefore, be futile to inveigh against them. Besides, the use of the alternatives of *no* is often no less objectionable. Thus such a sentence as *Lessons are not given in the next room*, although more logical than *No lessons are given in the next room*, may be objected to on the ground that it gives too much prominence to *given*, which represents the weakest notion in the whole sentence. Nor would substitution of

*not any* owing to the sweeping negative implied in it, improve the above sentence if a simple negating is intended.

The last objection might also be raised against the following sentence: *No attempt had as yet been made to clear it (sc. the snow away)* (MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 145), while the use of *not an* instead of *no* would considerably modify its import, as *not an attempt* would be apprehended as a weakened equivalent of *not even an attempt* or *not so much as an attempt*. See 120.

From the reasoning set forth above it may be concluded that the frequency of the use of illogical *no*, apart from considerations of rhythm and metre, is often due to the fact that of the available forms of speech it is the least objectionable.

Considered in the light of the above discussion, many of the quotations given in 116 are exceptionable. Some few in which the logical inaccuracy of *no* is particularly prominent are subjoined.

Of course, I pretend to *no originality* in either the rhythm or metre of "the Raven". POE, Phil. of Comp., (377).

Waiting *no refusal*, Mrs. Jessop drove on. MRS. CRAIK, John. Hal., Ch. XVI, 158.

That woeful gaze of hers could be answered by *no words*. Ib., Ch. XIII, 133.

# 117. Especial attention should be paid to the practically regular use of *no* as a mere negativer:

a) when it forms part of the opening word-group of a sentence or clause, naturally in the function of subject in the majority of cases. The combination *no* + singular name of person often has the value of a qualified *nobody*.

i. \* Fear not, Macbeth; *no man* that's born of woman | Shall e'er have power upon thee. Macb., V, 3, 6.

*No lady* within the shire can be quicker in arraying herself than my mistress. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. III, 27.

*No poet* can afford to dispense with anything that may advance his design. POE, Phil. of Comp., (372).

He does his precentor's work as *no precentor* has done it before. TROL., The Warden, Ch. II, 12.

I saw Sir Derby Oaks fling a bouquet which *no actress* ever merited better. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 114.

*No officer* has disobeyed any actual order. Westm. Gaz., No. 6506, 1b.

\*\* *No Irish* need apply. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 108.

*No words* could conceal the fact that it (sc. the Army) had entered into politics on the Unionist side and destroyed a Liberal Government. Westm. Gaz., No. 6501, 12b.

The policemen were there to see that *no friends* of the murderers made any attempt at rescue. Ib., No. 5507, 1b.

\*\*\* *No smoking* here: this is my daughter's room. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, III, 55. (= No smoking is allowed here.)

ii. *No mate*, *no comrade* Lucy knew. WORDSWORTH, Lucy Gray, II.

iii. *In no country* that is called Roman Catholic has the Roman Catholic Church, during several generations, possessed so little authority as in France. MAC., Hor. Walp., I, Ch. I, 48.

*In no other land*, perhaps, is there found so commonly the love at first sight. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VII, 50.

*In no individual* perhaps was the moral sense ever more completely developed than in Shelley; *in no being* was the perception of right and wrong more acute. THOM. JEF. HOGG (SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II, 31).

- b) in certain idioms opening with *there is* (or *was*) or *it is* (or *was*). Compare Ch. XIX, 12.

- i. *There was no end* to the glorious golden dreams which this leader in the Jupiter produced in the soaring mind of Finney. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. VII, 91.

*There is no use* beating about the bush. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXXIV, 341.

- ii. *It is no good* talking about equality. Times.

*It is no use* talking about it now. RID. HAG., Mees. Will., Ch. IV, 39.

Note especially *there is no* + gerund denoting impossibility of the action referred to. Compare Ch. XIX, 7, c.

*There was no knowing* what steps the archdeacon might take for his apprehension. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XVI, 208.

- c) before nouns modified by *of* + possessive pronoun or genitive. For illustration see also Ch. XXXIII, 23, d.

*That's no fault* of mine. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (210).

With all his advantages, however, Dolf made little progress in his art. This was *no fault* of the doctor's, certainly, for he took unwearied pains with the lad. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, 109).

*It is no affair* of mine. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.

The warden declared that Bold was *no enemy* of his. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. X, 131.

*It may be said* that such matters are *no concern* of ours. Nineteenth Cent., No. 397, 536.

- d) in certain incomplete clauses of alternative hypothesis (Ch. XVII, 97). For illustration see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.824.

She protested that *love or no love*, it would make no difference in her resolve. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XI, 138.

If the matter is not to be regarded as settled, *family or no family, promise or no promise*, let us break it off here and now. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, I, (24).

You Liberals will have to take your part, and fire your shot some day, of course — *fathers or no fathers*. MRS. WARD, *The Case of Rich. Meynell*, I, Ch. I, 12.

- e) in certain sentences expressing an idle wish.

Oh! if only a girl could have *no father, no family*, just as I have no mother! SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, III, 59.

- f) in certain adverbial word-groups, such as:

*no doubt*, when inserted parenthetically into the body of the sentence. The Ulstermen, *no doubt*, greatly, dislike the idea of being compelled to submit to a Dublin Parliament. Westm. Gaz., No. 6506, 2a.

Compare: Every man who has a heart must wish that a better state of things was practicable. — I suppose not. — *Not a doubt* of it, my dear sir. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 46.

*no matter*. When people are very poor, you cannot help them, *no matter* how much you may sympathize with them. Ib., II, 45.

g) in certain locutions, such as are illustrated in:

He had left *no stone* unturned to arrange matters on the best and easiest footing. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XXI, 255.

The excitement knew *no bounds*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 26.

118. The peculiar notions which, apart from its negating function, *no* is often made to express are especially the following:

a) It distinctly denotes the fact that the person, animal or thing which is the subject of a person's desires or expectations, is not forthcoming or non-existent, mostly in contradistinction to others which press themselves upon his notice. The word-group with *no* is, consequently, often preceded by *but*, or some other adversative conjunctive. It will be observed that in this case *no* has strong stress, the following noun medium stress.

Wolf, too, had disappeared, but he might have strayed away after a squirrel or a partridge. He whistled after him and shouted his name, but all in vain; the echoes repeated his whistle and shout, but *no dog* was to be seen. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

"Where's Walter, I wonder!" said Solomon Gills, after he had carefully put up the chronometer again. "Here's dinner been ready half an hour, and *no Walter*". DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 27.

All day long | (He) sat often in the seaward-gazing gorge, | A shipwreck'd sailor, waiting for a sail: | *No sail* from day to day, but every day | The sunrise broken into scarlet shafts | Among the palms and ferns and precipices; | The blaze upon the waters to the east; | The blaze upon his island overhead; | The blaze upon the waters to the west; | Then the great stars that globed themselves in Heaven, | The hollower-bellowing ocean, and again | The scarlet shafts of sunrise — but *no sail*. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 584—695.

Note. Curiously enough *no* is never used when the matter that might have been expected is mentioned first.

He rode, *not a mule*, like his companion, but a strong hackney for the road. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 13.

When... men speak of Beauty, they mean, precisely, *not a quality*, as is supposed, but an effect. POE, *Phil. of Comp.*, (373).

"Pooh!" interrupted Uncle Jack; "science is *not a club*, it is an ocean." LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. III, 91.

For the rest none of the variants of *no* appears to be ever used to express the above notion.

b) Before nouns indicating some quality, *no* not only negatives, but distinctly hints at another quality, mostly one that is practically the reverse of that expressed by the noun; i.e. *no* often has the value of a weak *anything but*. Also in this case *no* has strong stress, while the following noun has medium stress.

i. He had remarked that she was *no conjuror*, and would hardly set the Thames on fire. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVI, 154.

I'm *no angel*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 10.

He's very well, in spite of his weight, now he's young, but he's *no conversation*. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

"After all," said Mr. Squills, "though I am *no flatterer*, Mr. Tibbits is not so far out." LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. III, 91.



I am *no genius*, but I am a practical man. *lb.*, IV, Ch. III, 93.

Henry was every inch a man, but he was *no gentleman*. *BEERB. TREE*, Henry VIII and his Court, 4.

- ii. I'm *in no hurry*. *SHAW*, Mrs. Warren's Prof., III, (209). (= I have plenty of time.)

The point is in one sense of *no importance*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6511, 2b. (= *unimportant*.)

Note a) The above notion is most clearly expressed when *no* is part of a word-group that is the nominal part of the predicate, as in all the above quotations, but may also be traced in other cases.

Rank is nothing — a cold, glittering mantle with *no soul* under. *Mrs. CRAIK*, John Hal., Ch. XVII, 166. (Underlying notion: a cold, glittering mantle, covering a thing without life.)

She wished to act *no comedy*, however. *MAR. CRAWF.*, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 137. (= She wished to act honestly.)

He (sc. George I) spoke *no English*. *M'CARTHY*, Hist. of the Four Georges, I, 69. 1)

β) To all appearance strong-stressed *not* + *a* may have the same connotation as the above *no*. *STOFFEL* (Stud., B, 3, 9) distinguishes between *He is not a gentleman* with strong-stressed *not* and the same sentence with weak-stressed *not*, in the printed and written language often represented by *n't* and coalescing with the finite verb, e. g.: *isn't*. The latter, to him, is a mere negativer without any of the pregnant meaning often conveyed by strong-stressed *not* and *no*. *JESPERSEN* (Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.73), calls this distinction 'somewhat fanciful', but it cannot be denied that *STOFFEL*'s view receives considerable support from the fact that in the numerous instances of indubitably pregnant *not* + *a* which have come to hand, there are none in which the negative is represented by *n't*.

As she is *not a heroine*, there is no need to describe her person. *THACK.*, Van Fair, I, Ch. I, 5.

What wonder . . . that Pocahontas should have turned out *not* to be *a victory*. *Id.*, Virg., Ch. LXXX, 846.

Never mind, Miles, though thou art *not a wit*, I love thee none the worse. *lb.*, Ch. LXXII, 758.

Tibbits is *not a scholar, a genius*. *LYTTON*, Caxtons, IV, Ch. III, 91.

He's a great, rough, good-natured, ill-mannered — no, he's *not a brute*. He's painfully kind. *MAR. CRAWF.*, Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 225.

"But can you give me the name of another doctor who understands your secret?" — "I have no secret: I am *not a quack*." *SHAW*, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 32.

*Not a* even appears to be used to the exclusion of *no* when another noun modified by the indefinite article precedes by way of contrast.

I'm a fiddler, *not a fighting man*. *THACK.*, Pend., I, Ch. XII, 125.

He (sc. Warren Hastings) was an unscrupulous, perhaps an unprincipled statesman; but still he was a statesman, and *not a freebooter*. *Mac.*, War. Hist., (599b).

"I don't pretend to be a good fellow," he said to himself, "but I am *not a scoundrel* — at least I'll stop somewhere." *G. ELIOT*, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. VII, 56.

γ) Also the bare negative *not* before a proper name may have the same force. Jack Tibbits is *not Augustine Caxton*. *LYTTON*, Caxtons, IV, Ch. III, 91.

1) *STOF.*, Stud., B, 87.

- c) Sometimes it is a prominent quality of the person indicated by the noun that is modified by *no*, which is suggested by the rest of the sentence: i. e. a description of his nature is given by denying him certain characteristic habits or qualities. *No* has strong stress, the following noun medium stress.

Vulgarity is pretence; *no American* pretends to be what he is not. FROUDE, *Oceanica*, Ch. XX, 335. (Underlying notion: It is a prominent trait in the national character of Americans that they hate pretence.)

Your conduct of last evening was of a description which *no gentleman* could endure. DICK., *Pickwick*, Ch. II, 16.

*No gentleman* in those good old days went to bed without a good share of liquor to set him sleeping. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 48.

*No gentleman* breaks his word, of course, when it has been freely given. Id., *Pendennis*, I, Ch. VIII, 93.

*No man, no gentleman* — and Sir Reginald knew himself to be both — would have betrayed such confidence and such sweetness. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, I, Ch. VI, 89.

He has behaved as *no gentleman* should. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXVII, 236.

Note α) The person or thing thus described is sometimes indicated by a noun with some adnominal adjunct or clause.

Oh, you know, Mr. Bumble, he must be mad... *No boy in half his senses* would venture to speak so to you. DICK., *Oliver Twist*, Ch. VII, 73.

These are tricks which *no boy of spirit* would be guilty of. G. MEREDITH, *Ordeal of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. III, 16.

Swanhild stole in, making the pretty little courtesy without which *no well-bred Norwegian child* enters or leaves the room. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XIII, 67.

The adnominal adjunct is sometimes implied.

*No commander* likes to send brave men on desperate ventures. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*. (Implied meaning: *no good commander*.)

β) The person or thing thus indirectly characterized is mostly that indicated by the subject, as in all the preceding quotations, but may also be that denoted by other elements of the sentence.

Thus the thing denoted by the object of the sentence is characterized in: It is up there that they invent the legends for the crackers, and the wonderful riddles and remarks on the 'bonbons'. *No mortal*, I am sure, could write them. THACK., *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V, (322).

- d) Sometimes *no* seems to give some emotional colouring to an utterance which none of its variants is capable of imparting to it.

He has *no children*. Macb., IV, 3, 206. (Emotional connotation: He has never tasted the blessings of fatherhood. Compare: Have you *not a daughter*, Mr. Harding, — an unmarried daughter? TROLL., *The Warden*, Ch. XVII, 225.)

I am an Englishman; and I will suffer *no priest* to interfere in my business. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, (29). (Emotional connotation: I will not suffer anybody, not at least such a despicable creature as a priest, to interfere in my business.)

She had *no hope* now. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VII, 131 (Emotional connotation: She was utterly despondent now.)

119. *Not* being the only pure negativer in the language, it stands to

reason that *not a(n)* mostly takes the place of *no* when mere negating is intended.

Thus the negative answer to such questions as *Have you a copy of this letter? Is that a specimen of his penmanship?*, if given in full, would rather be *No, I have not a copy of this letter. No, this is not a specimen of his penmanship* than *No, I have no copy of this letter. No, this is no specimen of his penmanship*.

Before plurals and before singulars denoting conceptions without limits *not*, of course, takes the place of *not a(n)* as a pure negativer. Ample illustration is hardly necessary.

Some of the above quotations might, perhaps, be included among those given in 118, *b*, Note  $\beta$ .

- i. The brisk fire of questioning to which he was exposed elicited from him that he was thinking of an animal... that... was *not a horse*, or an ass. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 82.

It was manifest that the giants had *not a majority* in Parliament. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXII, 311.

It is probably *not an accident* that the number of stanzas in the section is uniform. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten's In Memoriam*, 90.

- ii. \* They are *not parties* to the present measure. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6529, 2b.  
 \*\* He has *not courage* to make inquiries. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 53.  
 The recklessness which is *not cruelty* in the boy, but which prosperity may pamper into cruelty in the man. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 34.

Note *a*) The construction of the sentence often causes *not* to be divided from the noun.

- i. To tell lies has *not been a habit* in our family. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 120.

Dupleix had *not been bred a scholar*. MAC., *Clive*, (509*a*).

I have married you thus secretly and without witnesses... on the distinct understanding that your union is *not* to be kept *a secret* by you any longer than... necessary. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 283.

- ii. When we stopped for supper, I couldn't muster *courage* to take any. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35*b*.

My mind is *not in doubt*. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. VI, 75.

$\beta$ ) In a word-group in which the noun together with the indefinite article has the value of a determinative, *not a(n)* does not bear being replaced by *no*.

Scrooge was *not a man* to be frightened by echoes. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 20. He was *not a man* to make much of such a charge. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. X, 130.

Raveloe was *not a place* where moral censure was severe. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. III, 119.

Mr. Sartorius is *not a man* to act hastily or harshly. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 32.

120. Also *not a(n)* is sometimes more than a mere negativer, owing to the indefinite article, though stressless, having the value of the numeral *one*. In this case the following noun has strong stress, the preceding *not* weak stress. Compare Ch. XXXI, 8, *a*, 1.

*Not a man, woman or child* in the neighbourhood, but knew it by heart. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

There is *not a house* in which I enter, but I leave a prospectus of the West Diddlesex. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 59.

I haven't *a relation or an old friend* in the world that has not turned his back upon me. MRS. WARD, Marc., I, 270.

How is it, papa, that you, who are so clever with everybody else, are *not a bit* clever with me? SHAW, Widowers' Houses, III, 53.

One might have thought that... the private member would have been glad to facilitate Government business. *Not a bit of it.* Westm. Gaz., No. 6511, 7a.

We have *not a doubt* that they (sc. Sir Edward Carson and Mr. Redmond) would find it (sc. a solution, if they could be shut up together for a month). Ib., No. 6506, 2a.

Note α) The noun standing after *not a(n)* is often intended to be one of particular significance, so that *not* is almost equivalent to *not even* or *not so much as*.

*Not a dog* would bark at him throughout the neighbourhood. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Rip van Winkle.

*Not a drum* was heard, *not a funeral note*, | As his corpse to the rampart we hurried. WOLFE, Burial of Sir John Moore.

We carved *not a line* and we raised *not a stone*. Ib.

I sat listening for a while, but there was *not a sound*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 29b.

*Not a muscle* of his face moved. *Not a sigh* broke from him. MAC., War. Hist., (615b).

She has *not a word* to say for herself. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 79.

β) It may be observed that *not*, although negating the sentence as a whole, attaches intimately to a particular noun, causing *not a* + noun to form a kind of unit, which is sometimes practically equivalent to *nothing*. This may be an additional reason why sentences in which such a unit is the object, are constructed without *to do*. Compare Ch. I, 70, Obs. III.

John replied *not a syllable*. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XVI, 162.

The King answered *not a word*. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. IV.

Compare: Your wife didn't answer *a word*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 172.

γ) The last quotation shows that notwithstanding this close union, *not* may be divided from *a* + noun. The construction of the sentence, indeed, often makes the splitting-up practically necessary.

When he comes of age, he won't have *a shilling*. THACK., Pend., Ch. XI, 118.

Wouldn't listen to *a word*. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 33.

I wouldn't say *a word* to save your soul. Ib.

δ) Although in the above sentences *not a(n)* could hardly be replaced by *no* without destroying the idiomatic propriety of the sentence, it must be observed that also the latter is not infrequently found in a function which it would be hard to distinguish from that of *not a(n)* as just described.

Very much it astonished the people who were out walking, to see a charity-boy tearing through the streets pell-mell, with *no cap* on his head, and a clasp-knife at his eye. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VI, 70.

And o'er his countenance | *No shadow* past, nor motion. TEN., En. Ard., 706.

But Kit himself said *no word*. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. VIII, 117.

Goldsmith took the hand that he (Dr. Johnson) offered, but said *no word*. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XVIII, 157.

There is *no shadow* of foundation for the fear that the Unionist Party will make a compromise on Home Rule. Westm. Gaz., No. 6529, 2b.

ε) When one-ness has to be emphatically expressed, *not one* or *not a single* takes the place of *not a* (or *no*).



- i. He made a speech of which I understood *not one syllable*. SWIFT, Gul. I. (In Scott's character) there is *not one trace* of morbid, self-considering, envious or self-deceiving feeling. STOPFORD BROOKE, Stud. in Poetry, Ch. II, II, 80.
- ii. Among the officers who remained with Duplex there was *not a single* man of capacity. MAC., Clive, (309a).  
*Not a single* child was discovered in the condition described. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 47.

*Not* may, of course, be divided from *one* or *a single*.

I *cannot* touch *one penny* of the money they give me, until I have first paid you your £ 700 out of it. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 45.

121. In the word-group *not any*, it is *any* which is suggestive of some quality, *not* being a pure negativer. This accounts for the fact that *not* often attaches itself not to *any*, but to the finite verb of the predicate.

*Not*(.)*any* is more intensely negative than *no*, and apart from the frequency of the pregnant meanings in *no*, which it is not capable of expressing, this may be the reason why it is more colloquial. It must, however, be observed that *not... any* is rarely met with as the opening word(-group) of a sentence. Compare 117, *a*, and also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.72.

- i. I haven't *any great faith* in these young housekeepers. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 78.  
She had assuredly *not any intention* of seeking death. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XI, 204.
- ii. \* The waiter did *not* this time vouchsafe *any reply*. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XVI, 208.  
\*\* I have resolved *not* to take *any money* from your father. Ib., II, 38.

122. As an adverb *no* modifies:

- a) the positive of an attributive adjective or equivalent word;
- b) the comparative of: 1) an attributive adjective, 2) a predicative adjective;
- c) the comparative of an adverb;
- d) the indefinite pronouns *fewer*, *less* and *more*.

Note a) There are no instances of *no* modifying a predicative positive. Also in such a sentence as *This circumstance was no other than this* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIII, 237), *other* is not used predicatively, but absolutely, its head-word being understood.

β) Nor is *no* at all common as a modifier of the positive of an adverb: *not* being the ordinary negativer also when pregnant meanings are to be expressed.

The author... has placed the court of Arthur in a mental and moral atmosphere *not far remote* from that in which the poet's own contemporaries move. F. J. ROWE, Intr. to Ten's Lanc. and El., 40.

γ) *No*, indeed, occasionally stands before an attributive superlative, but in this case it modifies the following noun and is,

accordingly, an indefinite pronoun. The construction is rare and is on a par with the use of a superlative after *any* (18, Obs. XIV, a), *every* (52, c) and *many* (86, Obs. I), the definite article being, however, absent. See also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.153.

I cannot answer it all, ... I, at least have had *no remotest idea* of such a thing. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXI, 302.

When *no dimmest chance* of victory remained, the ancient Roman could hide his face within his toga, and die gracefully. Id., *The Warden*, Ch. XV, 189. And so we reach a situation which, having *no least* authority to complicate itself, must suffice us in its simplicity to the end. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. VI, 66.

123. a) *No*, when modifying the positive of an attributive adjective, not only negatives, but distinctly suggests a considerable degree of the quality indicated by the opposite of the adjective modified.

Thus *no small difference* is practically equivalent to *rather a large difference*, i. e. an affirmative is expressed by the negative of the contrary, a rhetorical figure which has been called *litotes*. It may further be observed that in this function *no* has strong stress and the following adjective medium stress. Compare 118, b. For illustration see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.751 ff.

A year's absence had made *no small difference* in that gentleman. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 40.

When Arthur went up to Oxbridge, the fund reached *no inconsiderable amount*. Ib., I, Ch. XVIII, 186.

Mr. Gawtrey had possessed *no common talents*. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 359.

It was *no light thing* to engage an army twenty times as numerous as his own. MAC., *Clive*, (578a).

It is *no uncommon sight* to see women of the district decking the graves with wreaths and flowers. GRAP.

The illustrations show him to be an artist of *no mean talent*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 18a.

Note a) The adjective may be accompanied by *very* or, perhaps, another intensive.

There was *no very great difference* in their ages. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XIV, 181.

Being faced with an estimated deficit of £ 5.330.000, Mr. Lloyd George had, at first sight, *no very easy task* before him when he produced his Budget in the House of Commons last Monday. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6529, 1a.

β) *No* in this position may be preceded by either article or a possessive pronoun.

To *the no small terror* of Partridge. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, III, 192.<sup>1)</sup>  
At *a no distant date*. PAYN, *Sunny Stories*, I.<sup>1)</sup>

To *my no small mortification*. FRANKLIN, *Autobiography*, 157.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.76.

- b) When *no* modifies the following word-group: adjective + noun, it is not adverbial, but adnominal, and may have the secondary meanings of *no* without an intervening adjective (118). In this function *no* has strong, the adjective weak stress.

*No useless coffin* enclosed his breast. WOLFE, Burial of Sir John Moore. The moving accident is not my trade; | To freeze the blood I have *no ready arts*. WORDSW., Hart-leap Well, 98.

There was *no little fellow* but had his jeer and joke at Dobbin. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 41.

*No cross-grained woman* ever had so sweet a mouth. MRS. ALEXANDER, For his Sake, I, Ch. VII, 109.

Note α) *No* may have the same function when the noun is modified by a classifying genitive. (Ch. XXIV, 7 and 40.)

*No father's kiss* for me! TEN., En. Ard., 786.

β) Before other adnominal modifiers *no* appears to be always adnominal. Thus before:

**such.** Let *no such man* be trusted. Merch. of Ven., V, 1, 88.

The Duke of Burgundy understands *no such doubling*. SCOTT, Quentin Durw., Ch. VII, 110.

Joseph is no rake, but is *no such saint* either. SHER., School for Scand. IV, 3, (418).

My readers must hope for *no such romance*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 53.

Thus also when the noun is, besides, modified by an adjective:

Backed by his tailor and his hairdresser, he presented *no such bad figure* at the altar. MERED., Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXV, 309.

*No such complete picture* has ever been given in English of that extraordinary state of things. Times.

**other.** They can be meek that have *no other cause*. Com. of Er., II, 1, 33. It was not agreeable to sit alone... with *no other diversion* than flying in a rage. MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 170.

The poor creatures... need fires, and often have *no other way* of getting them. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 45.

In *no otherwise* the grammatical function of *no* depends upon whether *wise* is understood as an independent word or not. In the latter case, i. e. when *otherwise* is an adverb, *no* is also an adverb. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.783.

We do *no otherwise* than we are will'd. Henry VI, A, I, 3, 10.

**a cardinal numeral.** *No two persons* pronounce exactly alike. JONES Pronunciation of Eng., § 1.

*No two houses* are quite alike. Graph., No. 2313, 538b.

When only the numeral is negatived, *not* takes the place of *no*.

The young lady... had walked out of the hotel *not two minutes before*. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, Ch. VI, 147.

**an ordinal numeral.** What, *no second club*? TROL., The Warden. Ch. VI, 79.

124. As in the case of *not a(n)* or *not* before a bare noun (118, b. Note β and γ), *not a(n)* or *not* when followed by an attributive adjective + noun is often more than a mere negative and practically equivalent to *no* in the same position modifying the adjective.

Thus *not an uncommon occurrence*, with strong stress on *not* and medium stress on the adjective, often differs not materially from *no uncommon occurrence*, also with strong stress on *no* and medium stress on the adjective.

- i. The Queen cast *not an ungratified glance* on a large mirror. SCOTT Abbot, Ch. XXX, 335.  
 "I have sat invisible beside you many and many a day." It was *not an agreeable idea*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 28.  
 What the bishop said had a sort of comfort in it, but it was *not a sustaining comfort*. TROL., The Warden, Ch. III, 38.  
 She was *not an unattractive young woman*. *Id.*, Ch. VI, 70.  
 The beautiful neighbourhood of Hampton Court... is generally alive... with a thronged multitude of men, women and children, and thus becomes *not an eligible resort* for lovers of privacy. *Id.*, Three Clerks, Ch. V, 48.  
 I'm *not a young man*, and I know it. SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, III, (208). (Compare: I'm quite aware that I'm *not a young lady's man*. *Id.*)
- ii. \* Names won't do — not known — very good names in their way, but *not great* ones — capital names for a small party. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 13.  
 Fiction, as Mr. Gosse truly says, is no longer the Cinderella of literature, nor perhaps would George Eliot declare nowadays that she wrote "*not mere novels*, but books." Athen., No. 4509, Sup., 465a.  
 \*\* Came the nine mile in two-and-forty minutes. *Not bad going*, sir. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 41.  
 He had communications with Madame de Montcontour's Anglican director, a man of *not powerful mind*. *Id.*, Newc., II, Ch. VIII, 89.  
 Sir William's work is *not great biography*, but it is well informed. *Id.* Lond. News.

Note α) Also in these connections the adjective may be modified by *very*. See 123, α, Note α.

They separated in *not very good humour*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XII, 122.

β) The negative may be divided from the noun with its modifiers.

The young rascal has *not made a bad choice*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. IX, 105.  
 The major began to comprehend that the young lady herself was *not of a particular genius*. *Id.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

"And so this is a conversatione, is it?" said that lady, speaking, as usual, *not in a suppressed voice*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XVII, 168.

γ) Instances of *not* being placed between the indefinite article and the adjective seem to be infrequent, but this arrangement is sometimes made unavoidable by the construction of the sentence, as in the second group of the following quotations.

- i. In English it is *a not uncommon trick of speech* to pronounce 'no' with in-breathing to express emphatic or earnest denial. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 139.

He laughed, putting that image to himself; yet really it was *a not exaggerated one*. BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. VI, 68.

- ii. "Dear friends," she said in *a clear but not loud voice*, "let us pray for a blessing." G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. III, 17.

Rosy or fiery, she (sc. the moon) mounted now above *a not distant bank*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XVII, 228.

125. It is almost exclusively terminational comparatives that can be modified by *no*. *No* is, indeed, frequent enough before a periphrastic



comparative, but in this case it belongs almost invariably to the following noun, not to the adverb, and is, accordingly a pronoun. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 291.

*No more terrible torment* can be devised than the memory of self-imposed ruin. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVII, 266.

There is *no more potent destroyer* of friendship than love. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXX, 273.

There is *no more potent divider* of friendship than marriage. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 294.

Thus also in such a sentence as *He is no more popular than you are*, it is not a periphrastic comparative which is modified by *no*, but the comparative *more* alone, the following adjective being in the positive. Compare the different functions of *no* in *He is no braver than a hare* and *He is no more courageous than a hare*.

Instances of *no* modifying a periphrastical comparative although very rare, are not, however, entirely wanting.

It may sometimes be disadvantageous in case of dangerous illness, to have *no more skilful an attendant* at hand than a gentleman whose services have been bought at the lowest price in the Medical Labour Market. *Punch*, 1876, Vol. I, 261b.<sup>1)</sup> (Rewritten: to have *anattendant that is in no way more skilful* at hand than etc.)

Many groups of birds are *no more adorned* in the tropical than in the temperate zones. WALLACE, *Trop. Nat.*<sup>2)</sup>

Any one looking over a collection of Malayan butterflies would scout the idea of their being *no more gaily covered* than the average of European series. *Ib.*<sup>2)</sup>

It may further be observed that the adverb *no* as a modifier of a comparative may sometimes be translated into Dutch by *niets* or *geenszins*, while the pronoun *no* can be rendered by no other word than *geen*. Compare *Her beauty claims no worse a husband*<sup>3)</sup> (= Dutch *Haar schoonheid heeft aanspraak op een niets (geenszins) slechter echtgenoot*) and *No worse dauber ever spoiled bad canvas*<sup>3)</sup> (= Dutch *Geen slechter kladschilder bedierf ooit goed doek*.)

**126.** When *no* modifies an attributive comparative, it hints at a notion opposite to that expressed by its head-word.

If the following noun is a singular and denotes a conception within limits, and is, consequently, preceded by the indefinite article, the latter divides the comparative from the noun. Compare Ch. VIII, 112, *b*. See also STOF., *Stud. B*, § 16 and JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.88.

i. I think the nightingale, if she could sing by day, | When every goose is cackling, would be thought | *No better a musician* than the wren. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, I, 106.

I'll have *no worse a name* than Jove's own page. As you like it, I, 3, 126.

It is incomprehensible... that Dickens should have returned *no better an answer* than he did. SWINBURNE, *Charles Dick.*, 37.

This individual is *no less a person* than the Duchess of Sutherland. *Daily Mail*.

1) STOF., *Stud.*, B, 97. 2) SATTLER, E. S., IV. 3) STOF., *Stud.*, B, 97.

- ii. \* Though Mr. Bunce... had *no greater emoluments* than they (sc. his inferior brethren), he had assumed, and well knew how to maintain, the dignity of his elevation. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. III, 28.

\*\* "Here's no place for you: pray, go to the door". — "I have deserved *no better entertainment*, | In being Coriolanus." Coriol., IV, 4, 10.

Note a) When *no*, before a comparative, modifies the following noun and is, accordingly, the negative of the indefinite article or the indefinite *some* (115), there is, of course, no occasion for the use of the former, even when its head-word is the name of a countable. Compare STOF., *Stud.*, B, § 16 and JESPERSEN. *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.88.

- i. For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay upon you *no greater burden* than these necessary things. BIBLE, Acts, XV, 28.

So she gave up her efforts and spoke *no further word* about Lord Lufton. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 248.

*No further bulletin* was expected. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6071, 4c.

- ii. I do know my route full well and need *no further guidance*. BYRON, *Manfred*, II, 1.

β) In the following quotations the absence of the indefinite article may be due to misunderstanding, *no* being distinctly adverbial.

Mine ance'try came from a king's belly, *no worse man*. BEN JONSON, *Every Man in his Humour*, I, 4, II.

"But perhaps you do not wish me to speak — killing may be all you mean?" — "Kill you! Do you expect it?" — "I do." — "Why?" — "*No less degree* of rage against me will match your grief for her. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, V, Ch. III, 406.

Conversely the indefinite article appears to be wrongly used in: *No more popular a nobleman* could be found to fill the office than Lord Zetland. *Judy*, 1889, 5 June, 273b. 1)

127. When *not a(n)* or *not any* or *not* takes the place of *no*, the negative does not belong to the comparative, but to the whole sentence, no secondary notions being expressed in this case.

i. There is *not a finer fellow* in the service. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

ii. We need *not have any further concern*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 269.

iii. There were *not cleaner windows*, or whiter floors... in the whole street put together. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. IV, 17b,

128. Before a predicative comparative *no* is sometimes merely negating. In the majority of cases, however, it is in this connection distinctly depreciative or appreciative.

Thus according to ordinary practice *He is not richer than your brother* simply means *His riches do not exceed your brother's*, while *He is no richer than your brother* is mostly understood to mean *His riches are as inconsiderable as your brother's*. With the above we may compare *He is not any richer than your brother*, which means *His riches do not in the least exceed your brother's*, and is, consequently, a more emphatic or absolute denial than the first sen-

1) STOF., *Stud.*, B, 96.

tence. It may be observed that *not* may be divided from the comparative or from *any*. For details see especially STOF., Stud., B, § 19 ff. **no**, as a mere negativer: Now could I. Casca, name to thee a man | Most like this dreadful night, | ... A man *no mightier* than thyself or me | In personal action, yet prodigious grown | And fearful, as these strange eruptions are. JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 76.

The eyebrows, of the same colour as the hair (sc. *paie* reddish), were perfectly horizontal and firmly pencilled; the eyelashes, though *no darker*, were long and abundant. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. II, 17.

Père Silas, with all his tact, ... is *no wiser* than you choose him to be. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XVII, 232.

I only hope it is *no worse* than an elopement. HARDY, Return of the Native, V, Ch. VIII, 450.

I'm *no older* than you, if you come to that. SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, I, (171).

**no**, with pregnant meaning: The boys think their mother *no better* than she should be. ADDISON, Spect., No. 128. (= *a great deal worse*. Now more or less archaic. For illustration see also Ch. I, 43, *a*, Note, and compare STOF., Stud., B, § 19.)

I daresay Marius was *no better* than he need be. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. VII, 57. (A variant of the preceding phrase.)

Sometimes he'll be half as tall as a church steeple, and sometimes *no bigger* than a dwarf. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VI, 25b.

The three girls in the beaver bonnets were *no handsomer* than the turnips that skirted the roadside. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 40.

He's *no better* than an impostor. *ib.*, I, Ch. XII, 124.

I am *no worse* than any of them — in fact, I am much better. MARIE CORELLI, The Murder of Delicia, Ch. XI, 259.

It (sc. the calling of a rent collector) is *no worse* than many another. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 34.

**not**: i. The sharpest needle ... was *not sharper* than Scrooge. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 81.

He had already discovered that learning is *not better* than house and land. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 85.

No impartial person can say ... that the hours in many grades are *not longer* than they should be. Westm. Gaz., No. 6541, 4b.

ii. I don't say he's the worst landlord in London, he couldn't be *worse* than some; but he's no better than the worst I ever had to do with. SHAW, Widowers' Houses, II, 33.

**not any**. I don't brag to have been *any better* than other sons, but I have *not been any worse*, I dare say. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIV, 198a.

I don't think I should be *any worse* than most mothers-in-law. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XII, 222.

129. The adverbial comparative which may be modified by *no*, in its turn modifies *a*) a verb or the whole sentence or clause, *b*) an adjective or adverb.

130. *a*) When *no* belongs to an adverbial comparative modifying a verb or the whole sentence or clause, it appears to be mostly suggestive of either depreciation or appreciation when the comparative is followed by *than*. In the case of *than* being absent this pregnant meaning seems to be usually wanting.

*Not* in the same function, whether or no followed by *than*, is mostly merely negating, while the addition of *any* only serves to make the negative more emphatic. Seeing that *not* also modifies the sentence or clause as a whole, it is mostly divided from the comparative or from *any* + comparative by some member of the predicate.

no. i. \* I liked him *no better than* at first. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11*b* (= *as little as*.)

Plants, *no less than* human beings, possess wonderful powers of adaptation. Westm. Gaz., No. 6517, 30*a*.

German political science has done *no better than* the rough Varsoviaan methods of the Muscovite. Graph., No. 2319, 790*b*.

\*\* For sure *no gladlier* does the stranded wreck | See thro' the gray skirts of a lifting squall | The boat that bears the hope of life approach | To save the life despair'd of, *than* he saw | Death dawning on him, and the close of all. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 824.

ii. My power extends *no further*. BYRON, *Manfred*, II, 4.

I crave your pardon. — that is, I crave the Lady Rowena's pardon. — for my humility will carry me *no lower*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. IV, 37.

The wedding subject was *no further* dwelt upon. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. IV, 41.

I shall trouble you *no further* to-day. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 36.

not. i. The coffee-man could *not* do *better than* to carry the paper to one of the secretaries. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 46.

Do you suppose highwaymen *don't* dress *handsomer than* that. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 4*a*.

You cannot go *further than* that. Westm. Gaz., No. 6511, 12*a*.

ii. You could *not* do *worse*. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, IV, Ch. 301.

She was so full of emotion that she dared *not* trust herself *further*. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. IV, 83.

I *don't* feel *better*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6147, 9*b*.

not any. I am sure I shall *not* tease you *any further*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, 1)

b) Some combinations call for some special comment.

**No later than** = *so (as) recently as* (= Dutch *nog*).

*Not... later than* is merely negating, but *not later than* is often equivalent to *at the latest* (= Dutch *op z i j n l a a t s t*).

*Not... any later than* = *not... later than*, with the negative notion emphasized.

i. It was *no later than* yesterday he paid three guineas to our beadle. GOLD-SMITH, 1)

ii. \* I hope you will *not* come *later than* eight o'clock.

\*\* Intending exhibitors are requested to send in their applications *not later than* the 20th instant. Advertisement.

Letters posted in London *not later than* the evening of the 20th instant will be forwarded by the Steam-ship Sorata. Times.

iii. Do *not* come *any later than* eight o'clock!

**No longer... than** *only so long... as*, but *no longer* without *than* merely states the discontinuance of an action or state.

1) SATTLER, E. S., IV.



*Not... longer than* is merely negating, but *not longer than* may be equivalent to *at the longest* (= Dutch *op zijn langst*).

*Not... any longer than* = *not... longer than* with the negative notion emphasized (= Dutch *geen oogenblik langer*); *not... any longer* without *than* = *no longer* with the negative notion emphasized.

- i. It should last *no longer than* is necessary for the preservation of the young ADDISON, *Spectator*, No. 120.
- ii. His music was *no longer* to their taste. TROL., *Warden*, Ch. III, 27.  
There was *no longer* any room for doubt. HALL CAINE, *Manxman*, III, Ch. XIX, 190.  
She thought she ought to talk *no longer* to this stranger. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. II, 24.
- iii. \* Drama which is not also literature cannot last *longer than* the age which it mirrors. Athen., No. 4512, 566b.  
\*\* I will wait for a day or two longer — *not longer than* two days certainly. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, V, Ch. VI, 431.
- iv. \* Your union is *not* to be kept a secret *any longer than* you shall deem secrecy absolutely necessary to your future happiness. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 283.  
\*\* William exhorted his friend to confess, and *not* to hide his sin *any longer*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 9.  
The solitude and the stillness of the long dormitory could *not* be borne *any longer*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XV, 199.  
I shall *not* intrude on you *any longer*. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, III, 69.

**No more ... than** =  $\alpha$ ) *only so far ... as*,  $\beta$ ) *as little ... as*; *no more* without *than* =  $\alpha$ ) *no longer*, often passing into *never again*,  $\beta$ ) *dead*, *defunct*. For *no more* as a kind of conjunctive see Ch. X, 10, Obs. I.

*Not more ... than* =  $\alpha$ ) *not in a higher degree than*,  $\beta$ ) *at (the) most* (Ch. XXX, 38), *hardly*.

*Not ... any more than* = *not in a higher degree ... than* with the negative emphasized, *any more than* often having the function of a kind of conjunctive (Ch. X, 10, Obs. I). *Not ... any more* without *than* = *no more* without *than*, the negative being more emphatic.

For illustration of these word-groups see also STOF., *Stud.*, B, § 12 ff.

- no more.** i. \* She (sc. the mole) need dig *no more than* will serve the mere thickness of her body. ADDISON, *Spectator*, No. 121, (439).  
\*\* I can *no more* write *than* I can fly. SCOTT, *Quent Durw.*, Ch. V, 79.  
He's *no more* a monster *than* you are. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII.  
Compare: He liked his plan *as little* as ever old Richard had done. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VI, 84.  
A German combine is *as little* able to become a dictator *as* was the great American combine of a few years ago. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6529, 4a.
- ii. \* He bid her speak *no more* of me. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 181.  
Alas for Macbeth! Now all is inward with him; he has *no more* prudential prospective reasonings. COLERIDGE (HUDSON; Macb., V, 5, 28).  
I knew the fire of that hearth burned before its Lares *no more*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVI, 208.  
He woke, he rose, he spread his arms abroad | Crying with a loud voice, 'A sail! a sail! | I am saved'; and so fell back and spoke *no more*. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 908.  
Compare: She fell back, and spoke word *never more*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 371.

**\*\*** You will find comfort in your other children, when I shall be *no more*. GOLD-SMITH, Vicar.<sup>1)</sup>

The South African Union Parliament is *no more*. The New Age, No. 1199, 420a.

**not more.** i. Mrs. Primmins, with ... a bird-cage containing a canary endeared to her *not more* by song *than* age. LYTON, Caxtons, IV, Ch. IV, 93.

ii. They were *not more than* beginning breakfast when Charles came in. JANE AUSTEN.<sup>1)</sup>

In some districts it (sc. the population) has multiplied more than tenfold, in some it has *not more than* doubled. MAC., Hist.<sup>1)</sup>

To a girl just returned from all the courts of Europe it (sc. the dream) might have seemed *not more than* interesting. HARDY, Return of the Native, II, Ch. III, 142.

**not... any more.** i. \* The evils of the foreign war did *not* make themselves felt *any more than* the continual labour unrest.

**\*\*** I am *not* obliged to tell everybody, *any more than* I am obliged to keep it a secret. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. IX, 21.

ii. Clara, my dear, ... You will *not* be made uncomfortable *any more*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 23b.

He felt that he could *not* go to the house *any more* as an open friend. TROL., The Warden, Ch. VI, 71.

You shall *not* experiment on me *any more*. SHAW, The Philanderer, IV, (146).

Note. It is particularly interesting to compare *no more* + positive of adjective or adverb with *not* + periphrastic comparative of adjective or adverb. We may distinguish two cases: a) two matters are compared as to the intensity of two qualities, or b) the intensities of two qualities are compared in one and the same matter, or in two (or more) matters. *No more (than)* = Dutch even min (als). It will be observed that *no more*, like *not*, is a sentence-modifier, *no* a word-modifier.

i. My third passion was equally luckless; my fourth *no more successful*. Miss BRADDON, Captain Thomas.

Alexander junior was *no more inclined* than usual to reach his office a moment before his accustomed time. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XIII, 245.

**\*\*** They were *no more inclined* than entitled to demand his money. JANE AUSTEN, North. Abbey.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* There are *not more useful* members in a commonwealth than merchants. ADDISON, Spect., No. 69, (117).

It's *not more disagreeable* to you than to us. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 19b.

On entering the dining-room, Rebecca found that apartment *not more cheerful* than such rooms usually are. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 69.

A child is *not more innocent* than you are in matters of business. TROL., Warden, Ch. IX, 112.

Such judgments are absurd, but *not more absurd* than that primarily plutocratic or editorial judgment that calls in such judges. CHESTERTON, (Il. Lond. News, No. 3816, 869b).

**\*\*** He had an opportunity of contemplating human nature in all the numerous phases it exhibits in that *not more populous* than popular thoroughfare. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XII, 99.

**\*\*\*** This speech was *not more* impertinent to me *than* surprising to Sir Clement. Miss BURNEY, Evelina, 229.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., IV.

<sup>2)</sup> STOF., Stud., B, 90.

**No sooner** is a purely negative expression, but *no sooner... than* (archaically *but* [Ch. XVII, page 446], catachrestically *when*) is an adverbial expression that has the value of *hardly* (or *scarcely*) *when*. *Not sooner* a) *no sooner, not earlier*, β) *not more readily*. *Not* is often divided from the comparative. See especially STOF., *Stud.*, B, 105.

**no sooner.** i. It'll clear at eleven o'clock. *No sooner* and no later. Not before and not afterwards. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 2b.

ii. \* The alarming intelligence was *no sooner* communicated by the bony apprentice with the thin legs, *than* the girls tripped up-stairs to Maria Lobb's bedroom. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 153.

\*\* His lordship had *no sooner* disappeared behind the trees, *but* Lady Randolph begins to explain to her 'confidante' the circumstances of her early life. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIX, 614.

*No sooner* does one bring out a book of travels, or poems, ... *but* the rival is in the field with something similar. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

\*\*\* The words were *no sooner* out of his mouth, *when* Lambourne again made at him. SCOTT, *Kenilworth*, Ch. XXIII, 337.

**not sooner.** i. \* You will please be back here at six o'clock, and *not sooner*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI.

In the late spring or summer, *but not sooner*, the war should finish *Times*, No. 1971, 792b.

\*\* We often lament that we did *not* marry *sooner*. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 89. I wonder you did *not* tell me *sooner*. HARDY *Return of the Nat.*, III, Ch. II, 214.

I couldn't have set about it *sooner*, unless our ten thousand pounds had been a hundred thousand. *Ib.*, V, Ch. VI, 433.

ii. "Graham, take notice! If you grow fat I disown you." — "As if you could *not sooner* disown your own personality!" CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVII, 233.

### 131. Almost the only comparative which, modified by *no*, may be used as an adjunct of an adjective or adverb is *less*.

*No less* and *not less* are, apparently, used indifferently, except before substitutive *but*, and in comparing the intensities of two qualities in one and the same matter, in which two latter cases only *not less* appears to be employed. *Not*, when a sentence-modifier, may, of course, be divided from *less*.

**no less.** When we two were left alone, he shut the door... and looking steadily into my eyes. I felt my own attracted *no less* steadily to his. DICK. *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23a.

Mr. Peggotty was *no less* pleased than his nephew. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 52b.

There my name will be *no less* unknown than here. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 9.

**not less.** i. Firkin, *not less* moved, dived down into the kitchen regions THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XV, 157.

I am *not less* anxious than another to retain it (sc. the stipend). TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. IX, 114.

William was *not less* fortunate in marriage than in friendship. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 11.

The poor boy's letters were *not less* considerate than her own. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 98.

- ii. Unluckily it is the nature of every man to feel himself *not less*, but more qualified than another to offer an opinion. A then.<sup>1)</sup>
- iii. She felt *not less* indignant than revengeful at the overthrow of her plans. LYTTON, Kenelm Chillingly.<sup>1)</sup>
- iv. They (sc. the bed-rooms) are *not rendered less* gloomy... by having the shutters down. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 79.  
The natives living under them (sc. the Boers) have *not* been *less* happy or less industrious. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III.

Note. *More* not being available in a function analogous to that of the above *less*, its place is supplied by *further*. Compare 125.

I know you wise, but yet *no further* wise. | Than Harry Percy's wife.  
Henry IV, A, II, 3, 110.

132. a) *No* when modifying the indefinite numerals *fewer* or *less*, varies with *not*. So far as appears from the available evidence, there is no perceptible difference between the respective combinations. For illustration see also Ch. XXXVI, 16, *d* and *e*, and compare STOF., B, § 18; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.85.

**no fewer.** The reader gets *no fewer* than 28 distinct poems in the 17<sup>e</sup> pages of the book. Lit. World, 1889, 515.

*No fewer* than 400 (sc. peers) attended fewer than ten times. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 161a.

*No fewer* than 30.000.000 Little Russians... have been forced to throw in their lot with the other subject nationalities. Graph., No. 2319, 790c.

**not fewer.** It is probable that of the 2.576.336 electors, *not fewer* than 300.000 are on the registers a second time. Westm. Gaz., No. 5501, 3b.

**no less.** If there be any in this assembly, any dear friend of Cæsar's, to him I say, that Brutus' love to Cæsar was *no less* than his. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 17.

Now he goes, | With *no less* presence, but with much more love, | Than young Alcides, when he did redeem | The virgin tribute paid by howling Troy | To the sea-monster. Merch. of Ven., III, 2, 54.

*No less* than five of the twelve (sc. bedesmen) soon believed that his views were just. TROL., The Warden, Ch. IV, 43.

**not less.** The estate was popularly estimated at *not less* than ten thousand pounds. Mac., Hist.<sup>1)</sup>

He owed *not less* than two thousand pounds. Dobson, Life of Goldsmith, Ch. XII, 189.

- b) *No* modifying the indefinite numeral *more* is either merely negating or depreciating when the comparative is followed by *than*. The depreciating *no more... than* is mostly practically equivalent to *as little as*; when consecutive, it sometimes has the value of an adverbial adjunct in the sense of *only*. *No more* without *than* is mostly merely negating: when followed by a noun, it is used in various shades of meaning. See below. The depreciating *no more* has the value of *only this* or *that* (*these* or *those*).  
*Not... more than* is merely negating, but *not more than* has

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., IV.



the value of *at (the) most*. (Ch. XXX, 38.) Also *not more*, when not followed by *than*, appears to be always merely negating. *More... not*, with or without *than*, i. e. a combination in which *not* is placed after *more* seems to occur only occasionally.

*Not... any more than* differs from *not... more than* in being more intensely negative. For detailed discussion see also STOF., Stud., B, § 11 ff, and compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram. II, 16.83 ff.

**no more (...) than**, merely negating: I have done *no more* to Cæsar *than* you shall do to Brutus. JUL. CÆS., III, 2, 48.

He has *no more than* what I say. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 110.

They lived together after marriage with *no more than* the average amount of quarrelling. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. LXXIII, 271a.

**no more... than**, depreciative: A tender young cork... would have had *no more* chance against a pair of corkscrews... *than* I had against Uriah and Mrs. Heep. DICK., Cop., Ch. XVII, 127b.

My mother had *no more* to do with them (sc. the keys) *than* I had. Ib., Ch. IV, 24b. I have *no more* influence over him *than* the furniture. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 226.

Alexander junior had *no more* claim upon his uncle's fortune *than* Mrs. Ralston. Ib., I, Ch. XI, 195.

**no more than**, used adverbially: The conference did *no more than* show that the idea appeals to the leaders of the various unions. Westm. Gaz., No. 6517, 3b. (= *only* showed.)

We do *no more than* note the significance of the fact. Ib., 4a.

**no more**, without *than*, merely negating: i. He wished to see *no more* that night. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. IX, 106.

Presently the doctor appeared... with the look of a man who could do *no more*. HARDY, Return of the Native, V, Ch. IX, 467.

As to the honor and conscience of doctors, they have as much as any other class of men, *no more* and no less. SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, Pref., XV.

We should listen to *no more* until Stella is here to defend herself. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, Ch. VI, 123.

ii. \* Bring me *no more reports*! Macb., V, 3, 1. (= *no longer any*.)

Now if I fight it out with her, *no more comfort* for months! SHAW, Widowers Houses, III, 54.

\*\* I'll ask *no more questions*. Id., Mrs. Warren's Profession, II, (186). (= *no further*.)

\*\*\* A second Shakespeare could have been welcomed with *no more éclat*. Academy, 1900, 16 June, 517. (= *no greater*.)

**no more**, without *than*, depreciative: I remember *no more*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XV, 204. (= *only this*.)

Compare: Had Bold addressed himself to the doorposts in Mount Olympus, they would have shown *as much* outward sign of assent or dissent. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XV, 194.

**not... more than**, merely negating: He knew very well that in such a place he should *not* take *more than* one glass. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XIII, 247.

**not more than**, in the meaning of *at (the) most*: He was a heavy young man, with *not more than* common sense. JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. IV, 38.

He is *not more than* ten years younger than you are. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XII, 126.

He was surrounded by *not more than* a dozen listeners. TROL., The Warden, Ch. XIX, 211.

When Dunstan Cass turned his back on the cottage, Silas Marner was *not more than* a hundred yards away from it. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. V, 33. (The clock is) guaranteed to vary *not more than* a few seconds a month. Westm. Gaz., No. 5519, 8c.

*Not more than* ten percent of the ordinary farm manures are of any real value. Spectator, No. 4478, 700a.

**not more**, without *than*: There was *not more* rubbing, scrubbing, burnishing, and polishing in the whole street put together. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. IV, 17b.

**more... not (than)**: For a woman no longer in youth the high spirits are remarkable; one only wonders that *more* did *not* escape into her novels *than* is actually the case. Academy, 1899, 4 Feb.; 152.1)

It must be a matter of thankfulness that *more* lives were *not* lost. Sat. Rev., 1903, 6 June, 706.1)

**not... any more than**: held out for civility's sake until the third day; and then I said, plump out, that I couldn't stand *any more* of it (sc. the music). SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, I, (165).

Ah, you *don't* want to hear *any more* of the story. Id., the Philanderer, I, (76).

**Note**. The substantive *no more*, whether purely negating or depreciative, is sometimes replaced by *nothing more*.

i. I have *nothing more* to say. SHAW, The Philanderer, IV, (150).

ii. Only this and *nothing more*. POE, The Raven.

Dryden produced a dramatic opera which he entitled King Arthur, but it was really *nothing more* than an allegory of the events of the reign of Charles II. F. J. ROWE, Introd. to Tennyson's Lanc. and El., 34.

133. *No*, in various shades of meaning, sometimes enters into combination with a substantive to form with it a kind of compound. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *no*, a, II, 5—7; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.79.

Spiritual blight comes with *no faith*. G. ELIOT, Letters (LESLIE STEPHEN, G. Eliot, Ch. V, 69).

As to the sadness, or, rather gravity, it was not at all the result of "*no faith*". MARY DEAKIN, The Early Life of George Eliot, Ch. VI, 51.

A vote of *no-confidence*. II. Lond. News.

It is the low prices which produce the *no-profit*. Westm. Gaz.

This particular *no-word* can apparently bear two widely different significations. Ib., No. 6594, 15a.

**Note a)** Sometimes a derivative is formed from such a compound.

The right of the Government to deal with *No-Renters* as with rebels. Pall Mall Gaz., 1886, 28 July, 3/1.2).

This discolored, *no-colored* gown. Outing, 1895, XXVI, 338.2)

β) Like other nouns, such a compound may be used adnominally.

I'm a *No-Popery* man. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXVIII, 147a.

It... formed the subject of talk at high-church, low-church, and *no-church* tables. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 151.

1) EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 373. 2) MURRAY.

;) A variant of *no*, as a constituent of a compound is *non*, which is of much more general use and is also found before other parts of speech: *non-accomplishment*, *non-acquaintance*, *non-adherence*; *non-abstainer*, *non-sympathizer*; *non-absorbable*, *non-venomous*; *non-tax revenue*, *non-recoil carriage*; *to non-act*, *to non-answer*; *non-articulated*, *non-budding*; *non-gold-producing strata*, *non-beer drinking countries*; *an excuse for non-visiting*, *his non-understanding of my dialect*; *non-seriously*, *non-officially*. For illustration see the Dictionary.

The *non-Catholic* reader will be less interested in the forceful *Mère Angélique* [etc.]. *Athen.*, 4437. 549a.

**134.** *No* is also found in the following compounds and phrases:

- a) **nobody** = *no one*. See Ch. XLIII, 11, d.
  - b) **no end**: There was no end to the sacrifices with the self-denying uncle made in the youth's behalf. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 174.  
Ned rose *no end* in our estimation. *SWEET*, *Old Chapel*.
  - c) **nohow**. Rare in standard English: They say she was a beauty once! That picture painted from her! I don't believe it *nohow*. *THACK.*, *Virg.* Ch. LXXIII, 776.  
"Guess," says she, "my lord and father don't pull well together. *nohow*." *ib.*, Ch. LXXXIII, 873.  
You don't take after your mother in this, Sir George, that you don't. *nohow*. *ib.*, Ch. LXXXIX, 948.
  - d) **noway** or **noways** = *in no way*, *not at all*, *by no means*. Often written separately. Rarely met with in ordinary Standard English, but not uncommon in literary and also in colloquial or vulgar language.
    - i. \* He is *no way* slack in taking offence. *SCOTT*, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 20.  
I have lived a virgin, and I *no way* doubt | But that with God's grace,  
I can live so still. *TEN.*, *Queen Mary*, II, 2.  
\*\* Nay, I'm not turnin' *no way*. *G. ELIOT*, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 4.
    - ii. "Shall we have the pleasure of setting you down anywhere, Mr. Titmarsh?" — "*No ways* particular, my lady," says I. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 28.  
She's *no ways* fit to go to Liverpool. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXV, 262.
- Note. *In no way* or *in no ways* is chiefly literary: i. Miss Dunstable ... was *in no way* inclined to ridicule religion. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 61.  
ii. He was *in no ways* remarkable either as a dunce or as a scholar. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 25.
- e) **nowhat**. Now only, and that rarely, used as an adverb, in the sense of *not at all*, *not in the least*: Many kisses, ... of which she had been *nowhat* ashamed. *TROL.*, *The Last Chron. of Barset* II, 99.<sup>1)</sup>
  - f) **nowhen** = *at no time*, *never*. Very rare: When was the beginning? *Nowhen* as regards universal existence. *Gosp. Divine Humanity*, III, 49.<sup>1)</sup>
  - g) **nowhence** = *from no place*. Rare: The homeless Universe falling ... for ever from *nowhence* toward nowhither. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Hypatia*, Ch. XXV.
  - h) **nowhere**: He was *nowhere* to be seen.

<sup>1)</sup> *MURRAY*.

Note α) As a noun *nowhere* is used in the sense of "a non-existent place or absence of all place". MURRAY.

News from *Nowhere*. W. MORRIS, Title of a Book.

It is now become as if all truth were gone out, and night and *nowhere* had the world. BUSHNELL, Sermon. Living Subj., 167.<sup>1)</sup>

β) Observe also the slang expression *to be nowhere* - 1) *to be badly beaten* (in a race, contest, etc.); *to be hopelessly distanced or out of the running*. In common use from c. 1850. MURRAY.

The other candidates were *nowhere*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 511a.

2) *to be at sea, to be utterly at a loss*. An Americanism.

When he began to ask me questions about surgery, I was just *nowhere*, and I can't tell, to save my life, what I said to him. DE VERE, Americanisms.<sup>1)</sup>

γ) **no whit**. Now obsolescent: Our youths and wildness shall *no whit* appear, But all be buried in his gravity. JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 148.

But *no whit* weary did he seem. SCOTT, Lay, III, iv.

With guineas jingling in every pocket, he was *no whit* richer. CARLYLE, Past and Pres., Ch. I, 5.

Coralie was *no whit* dashed by his want of sympathy. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. V, 61.

Note. Ordinary literary and colloquial English have *not a whit* or *not one whit*, besides, of course, the more usual *not a bit*. Literary English also has *in no whit*.

i. But yet his horse was *not a whit* | Inclined to tarry there. COWPER, John Gilpin, XXXVII.

"That looks awkward. Mr. Titmarsh." — "*Not a whit*, sir." THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 81.

Yet a few years more; and my young friend of the railroad will be *not a whit* more eager. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 173.

ii. Bracknell was *not one whit* less foolishly devoted to his boy than his father had been to him in days of yore. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. VIII, 57.

iii. And now thou knowest in how short a space | The God that made the world can unmake thee, | And though He alter *in no whit* thy face, | Can make all folk forget thee utterly. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Proud King, 95a.

j) **nowhither** — *to no place*. Sometimes printed separately and mostly replaced by *nowhere*: A social life which seemed... a walled-in maze of small paths that led *no whither*. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. III, 17.

k) **nowise** — *in no way or manner, or not at all*. The second seems to be the usual meaning. The word is sometimes found printed separately. Instead of *nowise* we also meet with *in no wise*, which latter is the more common expression. Neither are, however, at all common, save in the higher literary language.

i. This is *no wise* difficult to understand and acknowledge. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch of Burns, 38.

*Nowise* is it now attempted to be concealed that an author is Scottish. Ib., 48.

Whenever a catastrophe of this kind takes place, the believers are *no wise* dismayed by it. HUXLEY, Lect. and Es., 120a.

I'm *nowise* a man to speak out of my place. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I Ch. VI, 39.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- By whose hand guided he could *no wise* know. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par., The Son of Cræsus*; III.
- ii. Lord Lufton would *in no wise* help her. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 133.
- It seemed that... those day-dreams of hers would *in no wise* come to pass. *Ib.*, Ch. XLIII, 420.
- She *in no wise* objected to the fair exchange. MEREDITH, *Ordeal of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVI, 334.
- A student who is unacquainted with the older forms of English is *in no wise* qualified to give opinions upon the derivation of English words. SKEAT, *Princ.*, I, 2.

## NONE.

135. *None* may now be considered as the absolute form of *no*, in like manner as *mine*, *thine* etc. represent the absolute forms of *my*, *thy*, etc.

No American has been killed, and *none* has been wounded. *Westm. Gaz.* No. 6523, 2b.

Note a) It should be observed that the form *no* has developed from *none*. The latter is the representative of the Old English *nān* (= *ne ān*), which meant *not one*, and was used both conjointly and absolutely. It appears in Middle English in the form of *non*, *noon* or *none*. The *n* of *non* was often thrown off before words beginning with a consonant, except *h*. See also MURRAY, s. v. *none*, *a*, B, 1; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 1661.

Sche dothe *non* harm to *no* man. MAUNDEV.<sup>1)</sup>

He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen, | That seith, that hunters been *noon* holy men. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, *Prol.*, 178.

Men ought not to leue *none* euyll vnpuynysshed. CAXTON, *Fables of Aesop*, VI, xv.<sup>2)</sup>

In Early Modern English the conjoint *none* is still occasionally met with, especially before *effect* in the phrase *of none effect*, and before *other*. Instances of this practice are technically or archaically found even in the latest English. For illustration of *none other* see also 142, Obs. V.

- i. She was divorced, | And the late marriage made *of none effect*. HENRY VIII, IV, 1, 33.

Thus have ye made the commandment of God *of none effect*. BIBLE, *Matth.*, XV, 6.

It was enacted that every pardon granted by his Majesty, after the end of November 1689, to any of the many hundreds of persons who had been sentenced to death without a trial, should be absolutely void and *of none effect*. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, Ch. XII, 217.

His pacific intentions were *of none effect*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 167a.

The single lecture is *of none effect*, for it leaves no lasting impression. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3816, 904b.

- ii. For there is *none other* name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved. BIBLE, *Acts*, IV, 12.
- Leodogran, the King of Cameliard, | Had one fair daughter, and *none other* child. TEN., *The Coming of Arthur*, 2.

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, I, 332.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *one*, B, *a*, 1, *β*.

There is *none other* among all Dickens' friendly circle quite like him to me. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 488, 332b.

In certain dialects the *n* seems to have been preserved also before consonants.

It's *noane* loss o'time. Mrs. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. V, 69.

β) The conjoint *none* is now found together with no other adnominal modifier than *other*, as in two of the above quotations, but in Early Modern English it may also be attended by *so* <sup>1</sup> adjective. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.622.

This act (sc. the killing of Arthur) so evilly born shall cool the hearts | Of all his (sc. John's) people and freeze up their zeal, | That *none so small advantage* shall step forth | To check his reign, but they will cherish it. King John, III, 4, 151. (= so that no advantage, be it ever so small, shall step forth etc.) Your Italy contains *none so accomplished a courtier* to convince the honour of my mistress. *Cymb.*, I, 4, 103 (*to convince* = *to overpower, to overcome*. as in *Macb.*, I, 7, 64; IV, 3, 142; *Oth.*, IV, 1, 28.)

136. In Present English *none* is used a) as an indefinite pronoun or numeral, either absolutely or substantively, b) as an adverb.

137. As an absolute indefinite pronoun or numeral *none* is found in the sense of a) *not any* without any qualitative import (17, a), b) *not* + numeral *one*, c) *not* + indefinite pronoun *one*.

138. In the sense of *not any* the absolute *none* is used either of number or quantity.

i. *None* of them (sc. speakers in the two Houses) have attained much beyond a mediocrity in their art. HUME, *Es.* XIII, *Of Eloquence*, 100.

When some of us pulled out our private stores — our cold meat and salads — he produced *none*, and seemed to want *none*. CH. LAMB, *Last Es. of Elia*, *The Old Margate Hoy*, (313).

Don't make excuses for me, even in that way. There are *none* — I want *none* — I ask for *none*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 279. He has no books, I have *none* either. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 195.

ii. "Speak comfort to me Jacob." — "I have *none* to give." DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, I, 26.

"Have you any suspicion of who it might be (sc. who that girl's father might be)?" — "*None*." SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, I, (170).

"Has papa made any difficulty?" — "No, *none* at all." *Id.* *Widower's Houses*, II, 37.

Note a) Of especial interest is the use of *none* at the end of a sentence as a more emphatic negativer than *no*. The construction at the same time has the effect of throwing the head-word of *none* into prominence. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1863; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.632; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 5, and EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 508.

i. Of absolute money tenders Mr. Crawley would accept *none*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 142.

Bolts and bars we have *none*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1863

ii. But answer made it *none*. *Ham.*, I, 2, 216.

Money he had *none* to give. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. V, 67.

Hunger I had *none*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 294.

Money he had *none*. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. III, 24.

But direct communication between the Duke and his agents, or the Duke and his tenants, there is *none*. ESCOTT, *England*.

Grass there was *none*. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. V, 41.

β) Through ellipsis of some element of the sentence, or modification in the ordinary word-order, head-word and *none* sometimes come to stand in immediate succession.

Here have I few attendants! And subjects *none* abroad. Temp., V, 167.

Usurped upon far as the sight could reach (was the Atlantic by headlands, tongues and promontory shapes). Not so the ethereal vault; encroachment *none*! Was there, nor loss. WORDSWORTH, *Prel.*, XIV, 50.

139. *None* in the sense of *not* + numeral *one* is difficult to distinguish from *none* in the sense of *not* + *any*. Sometimes the distinction is brought out by the context, the former being construed as a singular, the latter as a plural. Compare Ch. XXVI, 20.

It is certain that *none* of his plays was acted till 1672. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (572a).

That town-wits, again, have always been rather a heartless class, is true. But *none* of them, we will answer for it, ever said to a young lady to whom *he* was making love [etc.]. *Ib.*, (578a).

*None* of us is able to say without fear of contradiction that such and such a thing is a positive evil. Westm. Gaz., No. 6963, 10b.

In many cases *none* may be understood either way. Thus in:

As he approached the village, he met a number of people, but *none* whom he knew. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 43.

There was a crowd of folks, but *none* that Rip recollected. *Ib.*, 44.

No clergyman of the Church of England . . . should have more than a thousand a year, and *none* less than two hundred and fifty. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. X, 125.

Note α) *None* in the meaning of *not one* is sometimes put in back-position, in like manner as *none* in the sense of *not any*.

Candle he had *none*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. III, 18.

Village there was *none*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 10.

Other village at Framley there was *none*. *Ib.*, 11.

β) When one-ness is distinctly meant, *not one* usually takes the place of *none*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.66.

The dogs, too, *not one* of which he recognized for an old acquaintance, barked at him. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 43.

Let *not one* of them escape! CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 184b.

The customers, waiting their turn, were all reading, . . . | *Not one* raised his head or e'en made a suggestion. J. FIELD, *The Owl Critic*.

γ) Sometimes *none* is followed by *not one* for emphasis or greater clearness.

Germany has *none* of these things: *not one*. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 320.

140. Indubitable instances of *none* representing the negative of the indefinite pronoun *one(s)* are somewhat rare. They seem to be confined to certain idiomatic turns of expression, as in:

a) That fault is *none* of yours. Rich. III, I, 4, 47.

If he chooses to do so silly a thing, the affair is *none* of mine. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 370.

- b) The invitation was *none* of her giving. BLACK. *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XVI.
- c) He was *none* of your hesitating half story-tellers. CH. LAMB. *Last Es. of Elia*, *The Old Margate Hoy*, (311).
- d) His understanding was *none* of the clearest. RID. HAGGARD. *Mr. Meeson's Will*, Ch. IX, 97.
- His ears were *none* of the shortest. STOF., *Handl.*, III, § 131.

Note a) But the negative of such a sentence as *I am a close observer: necessity has made me one* (STOF., *Handl.*, III, § 39, N.) is not . . . *necessity has made me none*, but . . . *necessity has not made me one*. In *His conscience played an important part in his life, though Robert Lauderdale secretly believed that he had none at all* (MAR. CRAWFORD, *Kath. Laud.* II, Ch. VIII, 141), the use of the phrase *at all* shows that *none* is felt in the sense of *not any*. (3, Obs. V.) Also in the following quotations *none* seems to have the meaning of *not any*, rather than that of *not one*:

"Who is your own director?" — "I have *none*." CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*. I have married you thus secretly and without witness, — *none* being indispensable. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 283.

"If you dissected me, you could not find my conscience. Do you think I have got *none*?" — "I have met people who had *none*." BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, V, 99.

β) In Early Modern English, *none* as the negative of the pronoun *one(s)* seems to have been more freely used.

HAML. Denmark's a prison. — ROS. Then is the world one. — HAML. A goodly one; in which there are many confines, wards and dungeons; Denmark being one o'the worst. — ROS. We think not so, my lord. — HAML. Why, then 'tis *none* to you. HAML., II, 2, 256.

The instances that second marriage move | Are base respects oi thrift, but *none* of love. *ib.*, III, 2, 195.

#### 41. The substantival *none* may denote either persons or things:

- a) When *none* denotes persons, it is practically equivalent to the more usual *nobody* or *no one*, from which, however, it differs in being usually thought of as a plural. Compare Ch. XXVI, 20, b.
- i. *None*, except his intimate friends, *know* he has a great deal of wit. ADDISON, *Spectator*, No. 2.
- None* are all evil. BYRON, *Cors.*, I, XII.
- None* *know* how they are born. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. II, 9.
- None* here *care* what becomes of him. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXX, 145a.
- ii. *None* but the brave *deserves* the fair. DRYDEN, *Alexander's Feast*. But *none* was near to mock my streaming eyes. SHELLEY, *Revolt. Ded.*, 29.
- None* *accuses* him of tergiversation. CH. LAMB, *Last Es. of Elia*. *The Convalescent*, (316).
- None* has written with such natural grace. GABRIEL SETOUN, *Rob. Burns*, 62.
- b) When *none* denotes things, it is equivalent to *nothing*, which almost regularly takes its place. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.67.



ORL. Forbear, and eat no more. — JAQ. Why, I have eat *none* yet. As you like it, II, 7, 88.

In the House of Lords he spoke on the Address and *none* afterwards. KINGSL., Leight. Court, 23.1)

142. Obs. I. When followed by partitive *of*, *none* may sometimes with equal justice be understood in the sense of *not anything* (i. e. *not the least particle or portion*) as in that of *not any*. (19, *b*, Note a.) Compare also 3, Obs. III; 67, Obs. II; 93, Obs. III; and 179, *b*.

Better some of a pudding than *none* of a pie. Proverb (FARM. and HENLEY, Dict., s.v. *pudding*).

She saw *none* of the old plate. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 20.

"How much do you know of your Latin Grammar Dombey?" said Miss Blimber. — "*None* of it," answered Paul. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 102.

The house had *none* of that beauty which is so common to the cozy houses of our spiritual pastors in the agricultural parts. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 351.

In figure he had *none* of that grace which marked the King. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 122.

- II. Apparently in a similar sense *none* appears in such phrases as *That is none of your business*, where *none of* has practically the value of *not at all*, *not in the least*. Compare also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.682.

It was *none* of my business. DEFOE, Rob. Crusoe, I, 236.2)

This is *none* of my affair. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. II, 113.

Thus even in: He shall be *none* of my husband. CONGREVE, Love for Love, III, 3, (245).

- III. In Early Modern English *none* in the sense of *not any(thing)* sometimes stands idiomatically with *will* in such phrases as *I will none of it* = I will have no dealing with it = Dutch *Ik wil er niets mee te maken hebben*, or colloquially *Ik moet er niets van hebben*. For this Present English has *I will have none of it*.

- i. Therefore, thou gaudy gold, | Hard food for Midas, I *will none* of thee. MERCHANT, III, 2, 103.

SIR AND. It's four to one she'll *none* of me: the count himself here hard by woos her. — SIR TOB. She'll *none* o'the count. Twelfth Night, I, 3, 113.

Israel *would none* of me. Bible, Psalm, LXXXI, 11.

I *will none* of Adolphus of Gueldres. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XII, 173.

- ii. Some stories against the gentlemen of the camp, Madam Esmond might have heard, but she *would have none of them*. THACK., Virg., Ch. VII, 69.

She *would have none of them*. BEATR. HARRADEN, Ships, Ch. II, 8.

The Germans speak with contempt of mounted infantry and *will have none* of it. Athen., 1891, 477b.

The principle is laid down, and it now remains for genuine refor-

1) EINENKEL, Anglia, XXVI, 519.

2) MURRAY.

mers to deduce the consequences which follow from it. Lord Landsdowne, it is clear, *will have none* of it. Westm. Gaz., No. 5266, 2b.

Compare: I despise you, and *will have nothing* to say to any of you! EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXX, 147b.

- IV. In the idiom instanced in the following quotations there appears to be an ellipsis of *I'll have*, in the sense of *I'll endure*:

*None* of your violence! SHER., Riv., II, 1.

*None* of your sneering, puppy! Ib., II, 1, (234).

*None* of your temper to me! SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 28.

Compare: *I want none* of your cheek. Id., Mrs. Warren's Profession, II, (182)

- V. In the collocation *none other*, when used substantively, i.e. without a noun either expressed or understood, *none* may be apprehended as a substantival word modified by the adnominal *other*, but also, vice versa, as an adnominal word modifying the substantival *other*. The latter view is the historically correct one. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *other*, B, 6, a, and JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.623. The substantival *none other* is but rarely used with regard to things. When the reference is to persons, it corresponds to the Dutch *niemand anders*, or *geen ander*, according as it is understood in the first or the second way.

- i. Because there is *none other* that fighteth for us, but only thou, (O God. Bk. of Com. Pray.

Mrs. Leigh was rewarded after a few months by a letter sent through Sir Richard from *none other* than Gloriana herself. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. II, 11b.

The singer was *none other* than Signor Donati. EDNA LYALL, Knight Errant, Ch. XVII, 148.

- ii. This is *none other*, but the house of God. Bible, Gen., XXVIII, 17.

"Here stand I; I can *none other*," Luther replied to the young Emperor, Charles the Fifth, as he pressed him to recant in the Diet of Worms. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § 5, 320.

Instead of the substantival *none other*, which is more or less archaic, Present English mostly has *no other*. Also *no other* is now but rarely used of things.

- i. The stout lady was *no other* than the quondam relict of the dead-and-gone Mr. Clarke. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXVII, 240.

I trust there is no reader of this little story who has not discernment enough to perceive that the Miss Eliza Styles... was *no other* than Captain Rawdon Crawley. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 163.

This new companion was *no other* than the Earl himself. MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 185.

- ii. We learn *no other* but the confident tyrant | Keeps still in Dunsinane, and will endure | Our sitting down before't. Macb., V, 4, 9.

He hopes it is *no other* | But for your health and your digestion's sake. An after-dinner's breath. Troil & Cres., II, 3, 120.

They could do *no other* than smile at the accident. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, 97.1)

1) JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.623.

The absolute *none other*, of course, admits of only one grammatical interpretation. It is as unusual as the substantival *none other*, but like its more common substitute *no other*, is used as frequently of things as persons.

i. "I hope my brother's friends will be so kind as to be mine." — "I wish he had *none other* but us, Mr. Warrington." THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIX, 506.

ii. Museau swore that letter should go, and *no other*. *Id.*, Ch. LI, 534

VI. The absolute *none* + *of* + personal pronoun is often used by way of apposition to a noun or pronoun.

The girls were *none of them* at hand. Mrs. Ward, *Rob. Elsm.*

143. The adverbial *none* is chiefly found:

a) before the adverbial *the* + comparative of an adjective or an adverb. Compare Ch. XXXI, 40, Note IV.

He seemed to be very fond of my mother. I am afraid I liked him *none the better* for it. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 23*b*.

I am *none the happier* for it. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 27.

All have lived, worked, hoped much, got a little, I suppose, and died. And the world *none the better*. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. V, 49.

He has a concealed intellectuality (about him), that is *none the less* effective in the long run. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, II, (21).

Note. Occasionally we find *none the* before a superlative. In this connection *the* is, however, the definite article, and *none* has the value of either *not any* (18, Obs. XIV,  $\alpha$ ; 122, *d*, Note  $\gamma$ ) or *not* + pronoun *one* (140, *d*).

i. I have *none the least* intention to offend. STEVENSON, *The Black Arrow*, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The old man's eyesight was *none the sharpest*. HAWTHORNE, *Tanglewood Tales*, 125.<sup>1)</sup>

b) before the adverb *so* + adjective or adverb.

Master Marner is *none so young*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 122. Nowadays people were *none so ready* to lend money without security. *Id.*, *Mill*, I, Ch. VIII, 65.

As it was, he was *none so glad* of it. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VI, 105.

She's *none so happy* in her ways. *Id.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 368.

He was far more eager than any of his companions, now that he was acquitting himself *none so ill*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

Note the colloquial *none so dusty* (= *not so dusty* = *not so bad* = Dutch *nog zoo kwaad niet*).

Your pretty girls and their dresses are *none so dusty*. PUNCH.<sup>2)</sup>

Company has come up very well, I said... They're *none so dusty* now are they? RUDY. KIPLING, *Many Invent.*, 148.<sup>3)</sup>

c) before the adverb *too* + an adjective or adverb, or the indefinite numerals *many* or *much*(?).

*None too many* cakes came in their way. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old. Pot.*

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16,693. 2) STOFF., *E. S.*, XXVIII. 3) MURRAY.

John, her kinsman, counted for a great deal in a life *none too rich*.  
W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. III, 34.

A little barbed wire is put across the opening to make escape *none too easy*  
Graph.

*None too soon* Sudermann has found its way to the English stage. To-  
Morrow.

Note. The use of the adverbial *none* in other connections is  
uncommon, and seems to be confined to the language of the illiterate.  
Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 16.691, 4.

I slept *none* that night. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 154.

He's *none* frightened at him. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 3.

"Nay, nay, she's *none* drowned," said Mr. Tulliver. *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 30.

He'll *none* go away. *ib.*, VII, Ch. I, 454.

We stopped *none* for dinner. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 100.

T' mother was in a peck o' troubles about thy *none* coming home i' t'  
dayleet. *Id.*, *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. IV, 49.

I'm *none* ashamed o' my words. *ib.*

It's *noane* fair to cotch 'em up and put 'em in a stifling hole. *ib.*, 51.

144. Obs. I. When in sentences with the adverbial *the* the negative is  
expressed by another word, *none* is replaced by *any* (20, *a*),  
or some such expression as *a bit*, *a (one) whit*.

i. I have (passed the Higher Standard), but I don't seem to be *any*  
*the wiser*. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Gadshys*, I, 12.

ii. Why man, you don't seem *one whit the happier* at this. SHER., *Riv*.  
We went away to Germany together, and *no one was a bit the*  
*wiser*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*.

- II. A weaker and less common form than *none the* + comparative  
is *not the* + comparative, *the* being sometimes suppressed for  
the sake of the metre. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng.*  
*Gram.*, II, 16.89.

i. This worthy man found himself *not the less attached* to Pendennis,  
because the latter disliked port wine at dinner. THACK., *Pend*.  
He was beyond all question very ill and suffered exceedingly: *not*  
*the less*, perhaps, because he was a strong and vigorous man.  
DICK., *Chuz*.

He had *not the less* regarded their plight as most miserable.  
TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. X, 122.

ii. In that still place she, hoarded in herself, | Grew, seldom seen:  
*not less* among us lived | Her fame from lip to lip. TEN., *Gard*.  
*Daught.*, 50.

- III. Early Modern English sometimes has *never* in the same position.  
In Present English the use of *never* in this function is confined  
to the adversative conjunctive *nevertheless*. Ch. XI, 8.

I like it *never the better* for that. *Merry Wives*, II, 1, 186.

When our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we *ne'er the*  
*wiser*. *Henry V*, IV, 1, 206.

- IV. Also *none the less* and *not the less* are sometimes used as  
adversative conjunctives. Compare Ch. XI, 8.

i. Their exit was hastened by their seeing old Mr. Featherstone pull  
his wig on each side and shut his eyes with his mouth-widening  
grimace, as if he were determined to be deaf and blind. *None the*



- less they came to Stone Court daily. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXII, 227. There's more in a week of life than in a lively weekly. *None the less* I'll slate him. RUDY KIPLING, *The Light that failed*. Ch. IV, 54.
- ii. Though the importance of a way through the Arctic Sea in the interests of commerce is comparatively small, he *not the less* deserves the honour of England as one of her best and greatest explorers. *Academy*.

## ODD.

145. *Odd* appears as an indefinite numeral when used to denote a remainder or numerical surplus over and above a "round number"

*Odd* is sometimes connected with the numeral by *and*, but this conjunction is mostly absent, especially after tens. The whole word-group, numeral + (*and*) *odd*, is now always placed before the noun modified; anciently the latter sometimes divided the numeral from *and odd*. In dates the numeral + (*and*) *odd* stands by way of apposition after *year(s)*. In denoting age the noun *years* is sometimes understood in colloquial language.

- i. I've finished now | *Two hundred and odd* stanzas as before. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, CCXVI.  
The debt is *five hundred and odd* pounds. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIX, 506.  
Every one of the *300 and odd* pages contains some interesting piece of information. *Athen.*, No. 4433, 20a.
- ii. *Eighty odd* years of sorrow have I seen, | And each hour's joy wreck'd with a week of teen. RICH. III, IV, 1, 96.  
Out of the *two thousand odd*... the dog and I had any pity. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXIII, 92b.  
In glancing over my notes of the *seventy odd* cases. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 48.  
It must be borne in mind that some *thirty odd* years ago the passage between Liverpool and Dublin was not, as at present, the rapid flight of a dozen hours from shore to shore. CH. LEVER, *Jack Hinton*, Ch. II, 10.  
They interred 65 dead Boers found lying on the field alone, so that with the *50 odd*, for which the Lancers were responsible, it will not be far wrong to estimate their losses in killed alone at 150. *Times*.  
They are *sixty odd* in number. *Ib.*
- iii. Full *one thousand six hundred years and odde*. ROGERS, *Naaman*, 20.<sup>1)</sup>
- iv. Will rows of our willow-pattern dinner plates be ranged above the chimney-pieces of the great in the years *2000 and odd*? JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. VI, 67.
- v. At *sixty odd*, love, most of the ladies of thy orient race have lost the bloom of youth. THACKERAY.<sup>1)</sup>  
A lone bachelor of *forty and odd* might easily take a fancy to a pretty woman who was his tenant. MAR. CRAWF., *Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. IV, 37.

146. *Odd* may also be placed after an ordinal numeral, but instances seem to be rare.

Take such a play as "The Woman in the Case," which is now in its *200th odd* night. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 7b.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

## ONE

147. *One* as an indefinite pronoun is used *a)* as an independent word, *b)* as the substitute for a noun.
148. As an independent word *one* is employed: *a)* as one of the equivalents of the Dutch *men*, German *man*, French *on*; *b)* as a kind of determinative; *c)* in the meaning of *some one* or *somebody*; *d)* as the correlative of *the other*, *another* or *other*, and also of another *one*; *e)* in the meaning of *a certain*.
149. Unlike its Dutch, German or French equivalent, the independent *one* in the first function is employed not only as the subject but as the object, or after a preposition; it may also be placed in the genitive and joined with *self* into a compound. For illustrative quotations with *one's* see Ch. XXVI, 32, *a)* and below; for *oneself* or *one's self* see Ch. XXXIV, 1.
150. *One* as an equivalent of the Dutch *men* is frequently employed in stating an action or state in the most general way, i. e. without any reference to any particular person or group of persons. Thus SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2098) aptly observes that exchanging *one* for *they* in such a sentence as *They say we shall have a hard winter* "would imply *people are in the habit of saying that...*", in other words, would make this statement one of universal application. Also the two following quotations distinctly suggest a habit without regard to any particular class of people. Observe that the first *one* could be replaced by *people*, in the sequel of the discourse to be referred to by *they*, etc.
- So at least argued Lucy — quite unconsciously, as *one* does argue in such matters. *One* forms half the conclusions of *one's* life without any distinct knowledge that the premises have even passed through *one's* mind. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXV, 335.
- As *one* grows up *one* seems to want to know more about the world and things outside just *one's* own life, and I suppose *one* must go to the towns for that. VICTORIA CROSS, Life's Shop Window, Ch. I.
- Sometimes the idea of universality is narrowed, the reference being to people brought into a certain relation to a particular fact. In this case substitution of *people* without any adjunct would be impossible. The buttonwood throws off its bark in large flakes, which *one* may find lying at its foot. HOLMES, Autocrat, Ch. VII, 65*a*. (i. e. people who go to places where the buttonwood throws off its bark.)
- There is too, in Germany a sad lack of individuality, the fear of making *oneself* ridiculous, even when *one* is entirely in the right. Westm. Gaz., No. 5525, 4*b*. (i. e. people in Germany who show individuality.)
- One* is employed to express unqualified universality especially in the language of definition, as in dictionaries, and in (proverbial) sayings purporting to convey a truth that holds good for all times and circumstances.

i. To ply *one* with flattery. ANNAND., Conc. Dict., s.v. *ply*.  
To concern *oneself* with what is none of *one's* business. MURRAY, s.v. *intermeddle*.

ii. To die for *one's* country is the most glorious death.

*One* may be confuted and yet not convinced.

As *one* has made *one's* bed, so *one* must lie in it. Proverb.

A quiet, conscience makes *one* so serene. BYRON, Don Juan, l, LXXXIII

There is no folly so great as keeping *one's* sorrows hidden. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXIII, 325.

151. But *one* is also frequently used to cover a reference to a particular person or group of persons, mostly the speaker himself, less frequently the speaker in conjunction with others, or the person(s) spoken to. Indeed in referring to himself, the speaker, apparently from motives of modesty, often exchanges the egoistic *I*, with which he opened the discourse, for the indefinite *one*. Thus also in making unpleasant remarks, courtesy often urges him to avoid the invidious *you* and employ the indefinite *one* instead. To put it more briefly *one* often stands for a veiled *I*, *we* or *you*. See also EARLE, Phil., § 476; A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. *one*, 4; De Drie Talen, XXVI, 134; MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 21.

1) *one*, etc., as a veiled *I*, etc.: I'd sooner leave my horse in a pound, than leave you when you smile upon *one* so. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, IV, (215).

I think I should like to have been with them — for it was very close in the room with that great Mrs. Roundhand squeezing up to *one* on the sofa. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 43.

I thought I should have died when I saw it (sc. the dreadful fall)! You needn't squeeze *one's* arm so. Id., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 277.

I always like to be prepared for work; *one* never knows when *one* may feel inclined for it. JEROME, Diary of a Pilgrimage, 20.

I am always uneasy when father is away. *One* hears so much now of the persecution of our poor brethren. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, Ch. I, 4.

I hate introducing people. They're apt to remember it against *one*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. IX, 153.

"Your sister," he said flushing, "will have *one* so very precise in all *one* says." Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 267.

It's not vain now, is it, to say *one* was pretty in *one's* youth? Id., The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. V, 112.

*one*, etc., as a veiled *we*, etc.: These officers are always in *one's* way in love affairs. SHER., Riv., IV, 3.

"My darling!", he said, half laughing, and in the tone of the apologist, "you know we have such a lot of things. And I am afraid my grandfather will want to give them all to you. Need *one* think so much about it? They go with pretty gowns, don't they, and other people like to see them." Mrs. WARD, Marcella.

*one*, etc., as a veiled *you*, etc.: It is always well, my boy, to know what a thing is worth, in case *one* wishes to part with it. LYTTON. Caxtons, I, Ch. IV, 21.

I hate a religion that teaches *one* to be so one-sided in *one's* charity. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVIII, 245.

Beware of miserly habits. Gilbert; they grow on *one*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. III, 33.

152. Also in the second function, when *one* is a kind of determinative, it is used only of persons and is always singular.

The determinative force is shown by comparing it with *those* which takes its place in the plural. Thus *Music-lessons are tiresome to one who has no talent for music* corresponds to *Music-lessons are tiresome to those who have no talent for music*. Compare Ch. XXIX, 14, *b*, Note I; 18, *c*, Note III; and Ch. XXXVI, 13, *c*, Note.

In the literary language this *one* is common enough, but it is hardly used in ordinary colloquial English, which prefers *a man*, *a person*, or some such word. Compare 195, *a*, 2. These equivalents are, however, rarely found in the language of definition employed in dictionaries, and are avoided before undeveloped clauses formed by a participle or an adjective. When indicating the Supreme Being, *one* is always written with a capital initial. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.241—10.26; BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute in Eng. Prose*, § 34.

- i. I am *one*, my liege | Whom the vile blows and buffets of the world | Have so incensed that I am reckless what I do, to spite the world. Macb., III, 1, 108.

John Pietry Pugliano: *one* that with great commendation had the place of an Esquire in his stable. SIDNEY, *An Apolog. for Poetry*.  
*One* mightier than I cometh. Bible Luke, III, 16.

It lost you the love of *one* who would have followed you in beggary through the world. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

She was *one* on whom such incidents were not lost. CH. BRONTË, *VII-lette*, Ch. III, 28.

Nobody dared to annoy *one* whom he honoured with his countenance. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 46a.

He bought them needful books, and every way | Like *one* who does his duty by his own, | Made himself theirs. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 330.

- ii. Veteran = *one* who has been long exercised in any service or art, particularly in war; *one* who has grown old in service, and has had much experience. WEBST., *Dict.*
- iii. \* The voice of *one*, crying in the wilderness. Bible, Matth., III, 3  
\*\* As *one disarm'd*, his anger all he lost. MILT., *Par. Lost*, X, 945.  
Thou appear'st | Like *one amazed and terrified*. ADDISON, *Cato*, III, 3.  
He sat as *one paralysed*. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, Ch. VII, 123.

Thus also *one* can hardly be replaced by *a man*, etc. before the adjective *dead*, which is equivalent to the participle *deceased*.

They rode on without him, mourning him as *one dead*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. X, 127.

\*\*\* To think of so much extravagance in *one so young*. THACK., *Virg.* Ch. L, 514.

The broad, dark eyebrows gave a look of power to the features, which was striking in *one so young*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 81.

- iv. Though, what could make her take up with a poor notomise of a parson.



as hasn't got enough to keep wife and children, there's *One above* knows — I don't. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 47.

Note. *One* is used as a quotation word (JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.21) and, accordingly, turned into a pure substantive in: She drew nearer the hearth the stuffed and cushioned chair — her own chair by right, but I saw there was one who might with impunity usurp it. And when that *one* came up the stairs [etc.]. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVI, 216.

- \* 153. *One* in the sense of *some one* or *somebody* is now chiefly met with as an archaism, but was common enough in Early Modern English.

Go *one*, and call the Jew into the court. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 14.

Hark! Hark! *one* knocks. *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 302.

Stand close awhile, for here comes *one* in haste. *Id.*, I, 3, 131.

Last week came *one* to the country-town, | To preach our poor little army down. TEN., *Maud.*, I, X, III.

And yester-eve, | While ye were talking sweetly with your Prince, | Came *one* with this and laid it in my hand. *Id.*, *Mar. of Ger.*, 699.

154. a) When *one* is used as the correlative of *other*, with or without an article, or of another *one*, we sometimes find it in the genitive. Instances seem to be rather rare however, the ordinary practice being to place *man* (or some other noun) after it to receive the mark of the genitive.

For the use of the definite article before *one* see Ch. XXXI, 21.

- i. The next morning complaints from all the attic residents; *one's* bed was wetted quite wet through with the water dropping through the ceiling — another had been obliged to put a basin on the floor to catch the leak. CAPT. MARRYAT, *Modern Town Houses*.

- ii. *One man's* breath is another man's poison. Proverb.

*One man's* fault is another man's lesson. *Id.*

155. When (*the*) *one* is followed by *the other*, the reference is distinctly to two persons, animals or things. In this combination *one* may be used conjointly, absolutely or substantively.

In the last-mentioned case the word-group is applied in two opposite ways, i.e. as a variant of either *the former... the latter*, or *the latter... the former*. The former application appears to be the earlier and natural one. It is also the one most frequently met with, and corresponds to the practice observed with the Dutch, German and French equivalents. The latter application is probably suggested by the use of the Latin *hic* and *ille*, or the English *this* and *that*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *one*, 18, b.

conjoint: You look at it, Arabin, from *one side* only; I can look at it from *the other*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 353.

Captain de Catinet had hardly vanished through *the one door*, before *the other* was thrown open by Mad<sup>lle</sup> Nanon. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 85.

*One half* the world knows not how *the other half* lives. Proverb.

*One hand* may wash *the other*, but both the face. *Id.*

**absolute:** Of the two rival claimants, *one* did homage to Philip and *the other* to Edward. GREEN, Short Hist.

There are two drawers to my table: in *one* I put my copy-books, in *the other* my letters. GÜNTHER, Leerb. der Eng. Taal.

Thus also when a pronoun takes the place of a noun.

The commissioner plumped down into the chair, and stared from *one* to *the other* of us. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., The Blue Carbuncle.

**substantive:** i. Mr. Bumble had a great idea of his oratorical powers and his importance. He had displayed *the one* and vindicated *the other*. DICK., Ol.

Twist, Ch. II, 24.

A words exists as truly for the eye as for the ear; and in a highly advanced state of society, where reading is almost as universal as speaking, quite as much for *the one* as for *the other*. TRENCH, Study of Words, 306.

The dates 1150 and 1500 have been chosen because *the one* is the middle and *the other* the end of a century of the common reckoning. BRADLEY, The Making of English, Ch. I, 8.

ii. Great as are the differences between the grammar of Old English and that of Modern English, *the one* has been developed gradually out of *the other*. *ib.*, Ch. II, 16.

Note a) *The first* sometimes appears as a variant of (*the*) *one*.

The figure which produced this effect on the Esculapius of the village, was that of a tall woman, who wore a high-crowned hat and muffler. *The first* of these habiliments added apparently to her stature, and *the other* served to conceal the lower part of her face. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXVI, 290.

β) (*The*) *one* and *the other* are sometimes used in reciprocal relation.

But for their different ribbons you would hardly have told *one from the other*. THACK., Virg., Ch. L. 520.

But when *the one the other* did behold | Alive and hideous there before her eyes, | Such anguish for the past time would arise | Within their hearts, that the lone hall would ring | With dreadful shrieks of many an impious thing. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Doom of King Acrisius, 73b.

We depend *one upon the other*. W. BESANT, All Sorts and Cond. of Men, Ch. XVI, 126.

γ) The combinations *one and the other* and (*the*) *one or the other* deserve separate discussion.

**One and the other.** 1) *One and the other* is sometimes equivalent to *either* in the first meaning (43, a) or to *each* or *both* (44, Obs. I and II).

When Laura appeared blushing and happy as she hung on Pen's arm, the Major gave a shaky hand to *one and the other*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 399.

She had taken unfair advantage of him, as her brother had at play. They were his own flesh and blood, and they ought to have spared him. Instead, *one and the other* had made a prey of him. *Id.*, Virg., Ch. XLVIII, 496.

2) *One way and the other* may have the value of *to and fro*.

To flounce = to throw the limbs and body *one way and the other*. WEBST., Dict. To wag = to move *one way and the other* with quick turns. *ib.*

3) *Six of one and half-a-dozen of the other* = it all comes to the same thing, there is not any real difference.

Mostly they come for skill — or idleness. *Six of one, and half-a-dozen of the other*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXIV, 211.

(*The*) *one or the other*. *The one or the other* differs from *either* in the second meaning (43, b) in that is devoid of the notion of *no matter which*.

The tide of battle seemed to flow now toward the southern, now toward the northern extremity of the lists, as *the one or the other* party prevailed. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 123.

My Lady Warrington ... had the faith and health of the servants' hall in keeping. Heaven can tell whether she knew how to doctor them rightly: but, was it pill or doctrine, she administered *one or the other* with equal belief in her own authority. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV, 465.

When the question is settled *one way or the other*, I don't believe Mr. Brough will take any further notice of me. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 81.

They want to eat their cake and have it — to escape conscription and cut down the Navy — It cannot be done gentlemen! It is *one or the other*, as Cobden saw fifty years ago. Rev. of Rev., CCXVIII, 127a.

In the following quotation the context imparts to *one or the other* the pregnant meaning of *either*.

But let me entreat you ... to go ... to the person in question and tell your story, *one or the other of you*, or both together. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 283.

156. When *one* is followed by *another*, the reference is to an indefinite number, which may be two. Also in this combination *one* may be used conjointly, absolutely and substantively.

conjoint: *One* man beats the bush, and *another* catcheth the bird. Proverb. *One* crow will not pick out *another* crow's eyes. Id.

*One* sheep follows *another*. Id.

absolute: *One after another*, as his thoughts rose in his hot eager brain, he clothed them in words. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 69.

He had parried all her objections *one after another* with that indignant good sense which is often the perfection of absurdity. Ib., I, Ch. VII, 80.

substantive: *One* doth the blame, *another* bears the shame. Proverb. They marched in Indian file, *one after another*. MURRAY, s. v. *another*, 6, c.

Note a) When the reference is to two definite persons or things, the use of *another* instead of *the other* seems to be rare and improper.

"Pray, miss, was your Mr. Harry, of Virginia, much wiser than Tom Claypool? You would have had him for the asking!" exclaims Flora." — "And so would you, miss, and have dropped Tom Claypool into the sea!" cries Dora. — "I wouldn't." — "You would." — "I wouldn't;" and da capo goes the conversation — the shuttlecock of wrath being briskly battled *from one sister to another*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. L, 518.

*In one way or another*, by Customs and Excise duty or licence fee, an additional impost ought to be placed on motor cars in private use. The New Statesman, No. 128, 560a.

β) Also *any other* is sometimes met with as the correlative of *one*.

Mrs. Gresham could not understand that any lady should permit herself to be more wordly at *one time* of the year than at *another* — or in *one place* than in *any other*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 364.

γ) The combinations *one and another*, *one or another*, *one with another*, and *one another* deserve special discussion.

**One and another.** 1) The substantive *one and another* is sometimes equivalent to *more than one*.

I have heard it from *one and another* during the week. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 17.

2) *One thing (sort, kind) and another* often stands for *various things (sorts, kinds)*.

If you knew what a fizz I am kept in with *one thing and another*. CARLYLE. (Acad., 1898, 17 Sept. 272).<sup>1)</sup>

Between two and three hundred thousand written papers of *one sort and another* passed through his hands. Lit. World.

3) *One way and another* may have the meaning of *taken together*.

I leave all my property, real and personal, to be divided in equal shares between my two partners, ... There, that's short and sweet, and, *one way and another*, it means a couple of millions. RID. HAGGARD, Mr. Meeson's Will<sup>2</sup>, Ch. II, 22.

I was very busy indeed, all day, and wrote notes for my guardian, and dusted his books and papers, and jingled my housekeeping keys a good deal, *one way and another*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XVII, 148. (In this quotation the meaning of *one way and another* seems to be the same as that in the preceding sentence, but is obscured by the phrase being placed at the end instead of the beginning of the sentence.)

**One ... or another.** *One ... or another* is sometimes equivalent to *some ... or another*. Compare 176, Obs. I.

He had five sons, every one of whom made himself more or less conspicuous as a practical reformer in *one path or another*. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 14. That sort of thing has happened to almost all men at *one time or another*. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 88.

Every man's nerve plays him false at *one time or another*. SHAW, Getting Married (223).

Sometimes *one or another* is found consecutively, the noun modified being placed after the whole combination.

We trust that the gentlemen for whom it (sc. this appeal) is made may succeed in obtaining relief in *one or another form*. Athen., No. 4539, 429b.

Note especially (*in*) *one way or another*, which often has the value of (*in*) *some way*. See 181.

All his thoughts were *in one way or another* connected with his grandson. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord, 183.

The House of Lords may have full opportunity to discuss it (sc. the Veto Bill) and dispose of it *in one way or another*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5543, 1b.

**One with another.** This phrase is used in the sense of *all alike*, or in that of *taken on an average, so that the excess of one supplies the deficiency of another*. (= Dutch *dooreikander*.) In the first meaning it seems to be now extinct.

i. He loves both young and old, *one with another*. Merry Wives, II, I, 118.

ii. They (sc. the horses) were valued, *one with another*, at not more than fifty shillings each. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 310.

I was told in the strictest confidence that the house, *one year with another*, divided a good seven thousand pounds. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 12.

He buys my drawings, *one with another*, at fourteen shillings apiece. Id., Newc., II, XXXVI, 384.

Taken *one with another*, they may fetch thirty shillings apiece. MURRAY, S. V. *another*, 7.

**One another.** 1) This word-group is often used by way of reciprocal pronoun. In this case the grammatical functions of *one* and *another* are

<sup>1)</sup> EINENKEL, Anglia, XXVI, 532.



severally the same as those of *each* and *other* in the reciprocal *each other*. (37.) Like *each other*, *one another* may be declined for the genitive. According to MURRAY (s. v. *another*, 7), *one another's* is less frequent than *each other's*.

Why the devil should we keep knives to cut *one another's* throats? HENRY V., II, 1, 96.

John used to say that the true test of friendship was to be able to sit or walk together for a whole hour in perfect silence, without wearying of *one another's* company. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. VIII, 95.

We drink *one another's* healths, and spoil our own. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XI, 189.

2) Some grammarians hold that *each other* and *one another* should be differentiated, i. e. that the former should be used when two persons, the latter when more than two persons are referred to. But this distinction is mostly disregarded even by the best writers, as the following quotations may show. See also MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 172; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 127 and § 210; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.751.3.

i. They (sc. the husband and the wife) both abound with good sense, consummate virtue, and a mutual esteem; and are a perpetual entertainment to *one another*. *Spectator*, No. 15. (In the same §: By this means they are happy in *each other*.)

The very act of separating themselves from the rest of the world, to have the fuller enjoyment of *each other's* society, implies that they (sc. married people) prefer *one another* to all the world. CH. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, A Bachelor's Complaint.

On the morning of the 18th of June the two armies faced *one another* on the field of Waterloo. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § 4, 835.

ii. The *three* gentlemen looked at *each other* with blank faces when these words were uttered. DICK, *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. LX, 221b.

3) When *one* is made to do duty as the subject, *another* is changed into *the other*. In this case the reference is always to two.

But that he is fair and you are brown, *one* might almost pass for *the other*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIV, 559.

4) As in the case of *each other*, prepositions are now mostly placed before the entire word-group. Originally the preposition was put between the two members, and this practice is sometimes affected by modern writers. When the reference is to two, *another* is in this case replaced by *the other*, and *one* is sometimes preceded by the definite article. Compare 155, Note β, and see FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 312; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 59.

i. They hear *from one another* daily. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 172.

The attendants vied *with one another* in wishing him good-bye. *Il. Lond. News*.

ii. \* What was to be done, asked the enraged boys *one of another*. MRS. WOOD, *Orville College*, Ch. VII, 98,

\*\* Nearer and nearer they drew *one to the other*. RID. HAGGARD, *Mr. Mees. Will*, 147.1)

\*\*\* Here the two bodies are inimical *the one to the other*. *Athen.*, No. 4447, 61c.

The definite article is suppressed before *other* for the sake of the metre in:

1) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 59.

As... two wild men supporters of a shield, | Painted, who stare at open space, | nor glance | *The one at other*, parted by the shield. TEN., Ger. and En., 269.

5) Of the curious construction illustrated by the following quotation no further instances have been found:

Twins, I might say, and so alike that you could not tell *l'other from which*. Punch, No. 3748, 368a.

157. Also when *one* is followed by *other*, the reference is to an indefinite number, which the context may show to be two, the connection being effected by *or* with a weakened alternative force.

The word-group forms a kind of unit which is practically equivalent to either the pronominal *some*, or to *either* in the second meaning without the secondary notion of *no matter which* (43), according as the reference is to a number larger than two or to two.

i. He tried to re-assure himself with an old and favourite maxim of his that *one way or other* all would turn out for the best. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., HANDL., I, 124). (Note the absence of the preposition *in*.) The longer it goes on, the nearer it must be to a settlement *one way or other*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XIV, 112.

I promise that *one way or other* you shall read the name of George Osborne in the Gazette. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

By *one means or other* she has wrought herself into a state of excitement, which, if not delirium, is akin to it. Id., Virg., Ch. XIII, 137.

Each man has, *one time or other*, a little Rubicon. MEREDITH, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. XXIX, 232. (Observe the absence of the preposition *at*.)

ii. Thus locked together in the deadly struggle, which swayed slowly to and fro, as *one or other* party gained the advantage, those who fell were trampled on alike by friends and foes. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XXXVII, 426. (She) could pursue the dialogue with very much difficulty, eyeing *one or other* interlocutor with an alarmed and suspicious look. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. IV.

The Chesterfield programme will go the way of the Newcastle programme, and of many another programme, authorised and unauthorised, that has been put forward on behalf of *one or other* political party. Graph.

But if the great Guillemand had not stopped to live up to this sporting reputation, he would assuredly have laid *one or other* of us by the heels, and either would have been tantamount to both. E. W. HORNUNG, Pall Mall Mag., 1905, May, 204. (Note the alternate use of *one or other* and *either*.)

As appears from the above illustration, the noun modified sometimes stands in immediate succession to *one*, sometimes the whole word-group is placed conjointly before the noun modified, or is divided from it (or a pronoun) by the preposition *of*. In this latter case *one or other* mostly has the value of *either*.

As the pronominal *some* does not admit of being used absolutely (179, b), *one or other* cannot, of course, be replaced by *some* before the preposition *of*.

Some special illustration of the last-mentioned application of *one or other* may be deemed acceptable.

i. I am fond of passing my vacations at *one or other* of the Universities. CH. LAMB, Last Es. of El., The Old Margate Hoy, (310).

*One or other* of these points at least is incontrovertible: the public wants a thing, therefore it is supplied with it, or the public is supplied with a thing, therefore wants it. THACK., *Snoobs*, Pref. Rem., 12.

Pendennis and his wife often blessed themselves, that their house of Fair Oaks was nearly a mile out of Clavering, or their premises would never have been free from the prying eyes and prattle of *one or other* of the male and female inhabitants there. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 21.

Since the repeal of the Corn Laws there has seldom been a time when *one or other* of the Great English parties has not had to rely on the support of allies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5525, 1c.

- ii. The pictures in the drawing-room, painted by *one or other* of themselves, had all something new and original about them. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 320.

The hospital is not big enough for you and me abreast. *One or other* of us must go. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. V, 158.

Almost all the inspectors in their report for 1883 complain of the way in which reading, writing and arithmetic, or *one or other* of them are being taught in the schools under their charge. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XVI, 279.

For illustration of *one or other* standing rather redundantly after conjoint or absolute *some*, see 176, Obs. II.

158. Obs. I. *Another* as the alternative of *one*, is sometimes, especially in the older writers, replaced by *one*. Compare MURRAY, s.v. *one*, 16.

- i. Sigh no more, ladies, sigh no more. | Men were deceivers ever, |  
*One* foot in sea, and *one* on shore, | To one thing constant never.  
 Much ado, II, 3, 66.

- ii. As shines the moon in clouded skies, | She in her poor attire was seen; |  
*One* praised her ankles, *one* her eyes, | *One* her dark hair and lovesome mien.  
 TEN., *Beggar Maid*.  
*One* said this, and *one* said that. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVI, 213.

*One* after *one* the men got up and bustled out. HALL, *Caine*, *Deemster*, Ch. XXV, 170.

Here mention may also be made of the phrase *between one and one*, used in an analogous way as *between man and man*.

The undoubted advantages of oral discussion on such questions are ... best realised if undertaken in the manner of the Socratic dialogue, *between one and one*; but less so in a mixed assembly. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 454. (Compare: He managed ... to have justice done *between man and man*. PARLEY, *Life of Ch. Gordon* (GÜNTHER, *Leerb.*<sup>8</sup>, 146).

- II. The Early Modern English use of *he* as the correlative of *one* seems to have become entirely extinct.

And, at our stamp, here o'er and o'er *one* falls: | *He* murder cries and help from Athens calls. *Mids.*, III, 2, 26.

- III. The words *one ... another* are often understood when the members are connected by a preposition, the repeated noun standing in the place of *another*. The idiom is especially frequent after *from*, the two nouns being connected by *to*. For such combinations as *from week's end to week's end* see Ch. XXIV, 16, d.

- i. He was sent *from school to school*. MAC., Clive, (498b).  
John Brimblecombe toddled about after him *from tavern to tavern*. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131a.  
I was driven *from home to home*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 12c.
- ii. \* I could not take my eyes off two boys of thirteen or fourteen, evidently brothers, who stood *side by side* in one of the upper classes. W. ARCHER (Westm. Gaz., No. 4867, 13b).  
\*\* So they went off *arm in arm*. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LII, 412a.  
\*\*\* We stand *shoulder to shoulder*, prepared, if need be, to defend the interests and the honour of the country. Times.

In the expression *neck and neck*, as used in the following quotation, the conjunction *and* stands, by way of hendiadys, for the preposition *to*: They usually ran '*neck and neck*'. as sportsmen say. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 76. (The expression may be used adnominally, as in: A *neck and neck* contest between my racer and that of the Prime Minister. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. IV, 48.)

For the rest the absence of the correlatives is confined to certain (proverbial) sayings.

*Brother* should love *brother*. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. II, 38.

159. a) In the meaning of *a certain* the pronoun *one* is frequently used before such words as *day*, *afternoon*, *morning*, *evening*, etc., almost regularly to denote an indefinite epoch of the past, the pronoun *on* being mostly understood.

- i. \* *On one sunshiny morning* in June, there drove up to the great iron gate of Miss Pinkerton's academy for young ladies... a large family coach. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 1.

\*\* *One fine morning*, people were amazed to see little lord Fauntleroy riding his pony with another companion. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord, 185.

*One misty June evening* Sir Michael... took an opportunity... of speaking upon the subject nearest to his heart. Miss BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 13.

- ii. *On one occasion* he pointed with his cane to a man who was about to be condemned. v. NECK, Prep. Eng. Prose, 59.

Note a) *One day* is used not only to indicate a certain day in the past, but also some indefinite time in the future with the notion of *day* greatly obscured, i. e. practically in the same meaning as *some day* or *some time*. Compare 176, Obs. III, and see MURRAY, s. v. *day*, 7, b and *one*, IV, 5.

- i. Just as the hour was drawing near for the sailing of the vessel, Robert Audley came in *one day* full of a great scheme. Miss BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. VI, 68.

- ii. Pray Heaven, all our hopes may be fulfilled *one day* ere long. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXX, 742.

Little I foresaw how much at home and at my ease I should *one day* find myself in that great house. THOM. MOORE (STEPH. GWENN, Thom. Moore, Ch. I, 20).

She reflected also that, if she had settled in any place where there was any sort of society, her story would *one day* have become known. MAR. CRAWF., A Tale of a Lonely Parish, Ch. III, 27.



β) In the combination *at one time*, as ordinarily applied, the meaning of *one* is obscured, the notion of *a certain, a particular*, being hardly perceptible in it. The phrase means little more than *some time ago* (or *before*) with the notion that the state of things referred to in the predicate has discontinued. *At one period* occurs as an occasional variant. Also *once* and the phrases *the time has* (or *had*) *been*, *there was a time* and *time was*, followed by *when*, often express practically the same idea. Observe that the meaning of the above phrases differs perceptibly from that denoted by *at some time* (*day*, etc.). See 176, Obs. III.

i. He *at one time* advised her to send the boy to sea. WASH. IRV., *Do!f Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

I went into that a good deal *at one time*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXIV, 243. They were doomed, one and all, to suffer death, but they were not, as *at one time* was believed in England, made to long for death as an escape from shame. MCCARTHY, *Short 'Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

The Duke, his father, was *at one time* Secretary for Foreign Affairs. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 145.

He was brother of admiral Canevaro, *at one time* Minister for Foreign Affairs in Italy. II. *Lond. News*.

ii. Harry owns that *at one period* he was very sweet upon Parson Broadbent's daughter. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 564.

Compare: i. You are still what I myself was *once*. STEELE, *Spectator*, No. 154.

ii. *There was a time* when Mr. Lovelace was thought reclaimable. RICHARDSON, *Clar. Harl.*, Ch. II, 25.

iii. *Time was*, when clothing sumptuous or for use, | Save their own painted skins, our sires had none. COWPER, *Task*, I, 8.

*Time was* when a few guineas would have been more useful to me than hundreds which might come to me when I had no need. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 901.

iv. *The time had been* — in the latter days of his father's life-time — when he was the greatest man of the close. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XL, 385.

γ) *One time* takes the place of *at one time* when the phrase is used adnominally or as a modifier of an adverb.

i. This building was originally erected and adorned with lavish splendour by the Empress Katherine for her *one-time* favourite, Count Potemkin. *Daily Mail*.

Here the old lady, a *one-time* housekeeper, could hardly read or write. *Tit Bits*, 1895, 15 Jan., 185c.

He now felt very differently towards his *one-time* favourite. BEFRBOHM, *TREE*, *Henry VIII*, Ch. II, 42.

From the same Institute are issued the studies in comparative ethnology by that great traveller and *one-time* Governor of East Africa, Franz von Stuhlmann. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5531.

Compare: When this ceremony was over, Mrs. Ebley found herself conversing with her *whilom* object of contempt. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View* Ch. IV, 79.

ii. *The one-time wealthy* authoress. *Lit. World*, 1908, 15 Feb.

Compare: His *once handsome* face had now a copper tinge. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 56.

b) When placed before other words than such as denote an epoch, *one* retains much of its original character of a numeral.

*One* old gentleman... went so far as to assure Vrouw Heilige that her son would, one day or other, come to the gallows. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., HANDL., I, 104).

Along the lane were sundry small houses of entertainment; and I remember at *one* place, where they sold cakes and beer [etc.]. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVI, 807.

For when the blood ran lustier in him again, | Full often the bright face of *one* face, | Making a treacherous quiet in his heart, | Dispersed his resolution like a cloud. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 877.

- c) Before proper names of persons the indefinite *one* denotes obscurity and insignificance.

She has since married *one Robinson*. MISS BRADDON, *Captain Thomas*. Note a) MURRAY (s. v. *one*, V, 20, b) considers this *one* as a substantive indefinite pronoun to which the following proper name is placed in apposition.

β) In the same function we also find the indefinite article, 'but only when the proper name is preceded by a title. For illustration see Ch. XXXI, 8, b, 2.

160. Obs. I. The independent *one* in the first function, i. e. as an equivalent of the Dutch men (148, a), is in the sequel of the discourse sometimes replaced by *he*, *his* etc., or by other equivalents of the Dutch men or their variations. The pronoun used in referring to *one* in the second function, i. e. as a kind of determinative (148, b), is *he*, *his*, etc. For illustration see Ch. XXVI, 32.

- II. Early Modern English sometimes has *he* or *him*, instead of *one*, in the second function.

This is *he* | That kiss'd his hand away in courtesy. LOVE'S LAB. LOST, V, 2, 323.

If I have ranged, | Like *him* that travels, I return again. SHAK., *Sonnet CIX*, 6.

He (sc. His Highness) will be here to-morrow, or I am deceived by *him* that in such intelligence hath seldom failed. ALL'S WELL, IV, 5, 87.

- III. Early Modern English also has occasional instances of *he* (*him*)... *the other* for *one*... *the other*; *he* (*him*)... *he* (*him*) for *one*... *another*; and *his*... *this other's* for *one's*... *the other's*. See A. SCHMIDT, s. v. *he*, 5; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 292.

- i. COM. Flower of warriors, | How is't with Titus Lartius? — MAR. As with a man busied about decrees: | Condemning some to death, and some to exile; | Ransoming *him*, or pitying, threatening *the other*. CORIOL., I, 6, 36.

- ii. As there is no firm reason to be render'd, | Why *he* cannot abide a gaping pig; | Why *he*, a harmless necessary cat; | Why *he*, a woollen bag-pipe;... | So can I give no reason, nor I will not, | More than a lodged hate and a certain loathing | I bear Antonio, that I follow thus | A losing suit against him. MERCHANT OF VENICE, IV, 1, 54.

- iii. I should cut off the nobles for their lands, | Desire *his* jewels, and *this other's* house. MACBETH, IV, 3, 80.

IV. The forms *one's* and *oneself* (or *one's self*) are comparatively recent formations. Compare Ch. XXVI, 32 and Ch. XXXIV, 1.

161. When used as the substitute for a noun, *one* stands by itself, or after an adnominal word. In the latter case it is a kind of prop-word. See Ch. LIII, in which prop-words are discussed in detail. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.141.

When standing by itself, *one* may be used:

- a) with some determinative force. In this case it is followed by either a full or an undeveloped clause.

- i. The match is *one* with which I and the archdeacon cannot but be contented: TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXX, 294.

It got away from a painful subject to *one* which Bretton thought must be particularly consoling. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*. After all, your stone fell to the ground; I'll throw *one* that won't come down at all. ANDREW LANG, *The Blue Fairy Book*, *The Brave Little Tailor*.

- ii. \* In parting with so old a friend, it is not extraordinary that I should recur to *one* still older and better. BYRON, *Letter to John Hobhouse*, (126).

They play'd me then a bitter prank; | At length I play'd them *one* as frank. Id., *Mazeppa*.

\*\* Now, a colloquy of five minutes, in such a situation, is worth *one* of as many ages, with your faces turned towards the street. STERNE, *Sent. Journ.*, I, IX, 18.

\*\*\* Considering the matter as *one* to be arranged between you and me. DICK., *Cop.*, 215.1)

\*\*\*\* Some say it was a just judgment on him for keeping his first marriage secret, and wanting to take another wife while he had *one* living. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 528.

This determinative *one* may be used in the plural, but only when it is followed by a classifying clause, i. e. when it has the value of *such*.

Are not the suggested improvements *ones* that would be accepted nowadays in any design. *Punch*, 1893, 165c.

Compare: My eye passed all other objects to rest on *those* most remote. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 99.

- b) without any determinative force. In this case it represents a preceding noun with all its modifiers, and may be considered as the absolute form of the indefinite article. See MURRAY, s. v. *one*, VI, 22. This *one* is, of course, used only in the singular. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.21.

A wet Sunday in a country inn. Whoever has had the luck to experience *one*, can alone judge of my situation. WASH. IRV., *Bracebridge Hall* (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 6).

I never had a mother, but I love this lady as *one*. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. XIII, 135.

"Can you play on the piano?" — "A little." There was *one* in the room. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 108.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.25.

She was a married woman, and she must behave as *one*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XI, 199.

I lose a neighbour and you gain *one*. He rents a house, but I own *one*. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, VI, 22.

Note. Before the preposition *of*, this *one* sometimes falls out. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 5.

I consider your expression of the least ceremonious. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. II, 15.

Hers was not of those impassive faces which have the beauty of a marble bust. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XI, 140.

Nor was he merely a Tory in disguise, or merely a frightened snob hiding in the corners of the Reform Club: these also existed, but he was not of these. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 396a).

## OTHER.

162. *Other* is used as a conjoint, absolute or substantive indefinite pronoun and as an adverb. As a substantive pronoun it is only used of persons.

163. a) When used substantively or absolutely, it is now ordinarily declined for the plural: *others*.

In Early Modern English the form without *s*, the descendant of the Old English (*ða*) *ððre* and the Middle English (*the*) *othere*, is still common enough, many writers using it by the side of *others*, apparently without discrimination. The ancient practice may be traced down to the latest English, the form without *s* being, apparently, still the prevailing form when the head-word follows, which is often the case before partitive *of* and the conjunction *than*. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 357; id., *E. S.* XVII, 297 ff; EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 521; id., *Das Indefinitum*, pag. 61; ALDIS WRIGHT, *Bible Word-Book*, s. v. *other*; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 12; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.75—6; LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crusoe*, 58—59.

*other*, used substantively: There's not a man I meet but doth salute me | As if I were their well-acquainted friend; | And every one doth call me by my name. Some tender money to me; some invite me; | Some *other* give me thanks for kindnesses. *Com. of Er.*, IV, 3, 5.

Where they crucified him and two *other* with him. *Bible*, John XIX, 18. used absolutely, i. not followed by *of* or *than*: GADS. As we were sharing, some six or seven fresh men set upon us. — FAL. And unbound the rest, and then come in the *other*. *Henry IV*, A, II, 4, 201. Nature hath framed strange fellows in her time: | Some that will evermore peep through their eyes | And laugh like parrots at a bag-piper, And *other* of such vinegar aspect | That they'll not show their teeth in way of smile. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 54. (POPE changed *other* into *others*.)

And some (sc. seeds) fell among thorns... | But *other* fell into good ground. *Bible*, Matth., XIII, 8.



- ii. \*\* followed by *of*: Among *other* of his conquests, this fellow had triumphed over the heart of Betty Seagrim. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. VI, 72*b*. The old woman buttered certain *other* of the rusks, which were to be eaten alone. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. III, 19.

The rest of the boys were accommodated at the houses of *other* of the masters. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 9.

He had more than his share of *other* of the chagrins of life. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 495, 546*c*.

*Other* of the Crown Prince's chapters are devoted to sporting experiences in Italy and in his native Germany. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6035, 13*a*.

*Other* of the leaders of Nonconformity are ageing; some are already past the allotted span. *Ib.*, No. 6535, 3*a*.

- iii. followed by *than*: The graces of tradesmen's daughters may be witnessed and admired by *other* than tradesmen. MEREDITH, *Evan Harrington*, 17. (JESPERSEN, in *Mod. Eng. Gram.* II, 17.76, explains: by those who are other than etc., but this explanation seems to be rather forced.)

I never heard a whisper to the effect of his having... made money by *other* than the most strictly honourable means. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. X, 106.

**others**, used substantively: Besides, I met Lord Bigot and Lord Salisbury, With eyes as red as new-enkindled fire, | And *others* more, going to seek the grave | Of Arthur. *King John*, IV, 2, 164.

And the Lord said unto him [etc.] | And to the *others* he said in mine hearing. *Bible*, *Ezek.*, IX, 5.

*Others* gorged themselves to the full, and then lay along the steps, supine as satisfied brutes. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. VIII, 87.

used absolutely, i. not followed by *of*: It is a time, of all *others*, when Want is keenly felt. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 14.

I grow more fond of them (sc. the pearls) and wear them every night in preference to any *others*. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. III, 59.

- ii. followed by *of*: Loans from the citizens of London and *others* of her subjects. HALLAM, *Const. Hist.*, I, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

In *others* of his sermons. MILMAN, *St. Paul's*, 344.<sup>1)</sup>

- b) The substantive *other* may also be declined for the genitive: singular *the other's* or *another's*; plural *the others'* or *others'*.

None of these forms are at all common, even in literary English: in colloquial language they are practically non-existent, periphrasis with a preposition, or the construction with a prop-word (Ch. XLIII), being mostly used instead.

An exception must be made regarding those combinations in which *other* or *another* stands in reciprocal relation to *each* or *one*. See 37, *a* and 156, Note *γ*.

The absolute *other* is now rarely, if ever, declined for the genitive, the noun to which *other* refers being repeated when there is occasion to use the genitive.

- i. \* They rode for miles in silence... each knowing what was passing in *the other's* mind. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VII, 72.

Lady Lufton... looked into *the other's* face in a manner which almost made Mrs. Robarts get up and throw herself on her old friend's neck. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 395.

1) MURRAY, *S. V.* *other*, B, 5, *b*.

John de Witt, encouraged by the quiet friendliness of *the other's* tone, continued with impulsive warmth [etc.]. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. V, 229.

\*\* He who seeks only for applause from without has all his happiness in *another's* keeping. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, V.

He had (if 't were not nature's boon) an art | Of fixing memory on *another's* heart. BYRON, Lara, I, xix.

We cannot judge him by *another's* sins. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. IV, 219.

\*\*\* Too high for common selfishness, he could | At times resign his own for *others'* good. BYRON, Lara, I, xviii.

They were only a week married, and here was George already suffering ennui, and eager for *others'* society. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 260.

Man is not given that god-like unselfishness that thinks only of *others'* good. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, IV, 62.

What understanding of *others'* pain she had! VICTORIA CROSS, Life's Shop Window, Ch. I, 35.

It is only convention which persuades us to submit to *others'* authority. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, Ch. II, 27.

- ii. To measure *other people's* corn by one's own bushel. MURRAY, s. v. *bushel*.

As for you, young people, ... you need not be detained for *other folks'* love-rhapsodies. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXVIII, 720.

"It — it is new to me", he said, "this business of keeping *other men's* secrets." HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. I, 13.

I always calculate the chances before I suggest *another person's* risking anything for me. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, Ch. II, 37.

- iii. One crow will not pick out *another crow's* eyes. Proverb.

What is one man's meat may be *another man's* poison. Id.

- c) In the following quotations *other's* stands for *the other's*, evidently as an expedient to save the metre.

Each day still better *other's* happiness. Rich. II, I, 1, 22.

With cheek unchanging from its fallow gloom, | However near his own or *other's* tomb; | ... Did Lara too his willing weapon bare. BYRON, Lara, II, iii, 30.

# 164. *Other*, like the Dutch *ander*, is used in various shades of meaning, which, however, require no comment in these pages.

It may be preceded by the definite or indefinite article; a genitive; a possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative or indefinite pronoun; a definite or indefinite numeral; and it may also stand without any preceding modifier. As has already been stated in 162, it is found in conjoint, absolute and substantive application. Detailed illustration is hardly necessary.

conjoint: i. This act of mercy, in itself highly commendable, added to the bad effect produced in Ireland by the executing of *the other* three men. M<sup>c</sup>CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

- ii. "If you are Master Murdstone," said the lady, "why do you go and give *another* name first?" DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 33a.

- iii. Looking at Lady Scatcherd, and looking also at *his other* near neighbour his friend the squire, there was little thereabouts to lead him on to matrimony. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXIX, 379.

- iv. You see *this other* page in red ink? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.*
- v. *What other* excuses can you give for your conduct?
- vi. The dying man, *whose other* so-called friends had carefully kept aloof at the approach of danger, told his faithful companion where the treasure was hidden.
- vii. *Little other* care hath she. TEN., *Lady of Shalott*, II, 1.  
In *some other* respects it (sc. Hagenbeck's Tierpark) outdistances *any other* establishment of the kind. Sir H. H. JOHNSTON, *Germany in 1910* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5531, 5b).
- viii. *Five other* prisoners were killed on the spot.
- ix. *Other* financial resources he had none.
- absolute: i. She sat down in *the other* of the two easy chairs. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 213.
- ii. One good turn deserves *another*. Proverb.  
This towel will not do; give me *another*. Ask him to give you *another* for it. MURRAY, s.v. *another*, 3, b.
- iii. This wool is too dark; have you *any other*? MURRAY, s.v. *other*, B, 5.  
Use —'s soap once, and you will use *no other*. Ib.  
The best result we can hope from the Royal libel action and *certain others* that have preceded it, is [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 5531, 1b.
- iv. *One other* of the five prisoners who were convicted together escaped the death-sentence. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 317.
- v. To the small farmers, not only on the Gatherum property, but on *others* also, he spoke of the Duke as a beneficent influence shedding prosperity on all around him. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVII, 358.
- substantive: i. He did not invite *the other* to walk with him. Ib., Ch. XXXVI, 350.  
He had undoubtedly been concerned in the attempt at rescue; but for some reason a distinction was made between him and *the others*. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 317.
- ii. There, where that day I crown'd myself as king, | There in my realm and even on my throne, | *Another*! TEN., *Lover's Tale*, 573.
- iii. "No mischief," she answered, as if *some other* than herself were speaking. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 13.
- iv. Eustacia was to add *one other* to the list of those who love too hotly to love long and well. HARDY, *Return of the Nat.*, III, Ch. V, 257.
- v. Chum: one who shares apartments with *another* or *others*. MURRAY.

165. Obs. I. Some applications of *other* deserve separate discussion.

- a) **The other** is sometimes practically equivalent to *the farther* (or *the further*), or the opposite of *the hither*. Compare Ch. XXX, 10, b.

He stood on *the other* side of the gulf impassable, haunting his parent with sad eyes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384.  
We left the school very quietly, till we had walked some way, and got on *the other* side of a barn. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

- b) **Another** often assumes the meaning of:

- 1) *a further, an additional*. In this meaning *another* may stand before a numeral + plural noun (Ch. XXVI, 17), and may be followed or preceded by *such* (Ch. XXXVII, 12, c).
- i. Make up the fire and buy *another* coal-scuttle before you dot *another* i. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 110.

Rebecca was saddled in *another half-hour*. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. V, 54.

I couldn't get *another word* out of him. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (226).

Compare: \* Thus, without *a word more*, they parted. Mrs. GASK. *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVII, 366.

\*\* She did bring herself... to confide in me: there was not *a soul else* that she might fashion into an adviser. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 36a. (= *another soul*.)

ii. I thought he was going to stay with you *another ten days* at least. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.* I, 209.

iii. \* I am in great hopes that she may grow up to be *such another woman* as her mother. (?) Mad. Leroux.

\*\* I'd walk twice as far to spend *another such evening*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VI.

Note a) In the following quotation there is a blending of *another word* and *a word or two*.

And then she started, having first said *another word or two* about the Crawley children. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXV, 337.

β) Besides *another* the language has *one other*, which conveys the notion that the addition is confined to one: i. e. *one other* = *one more*. For illustration see also 164. With these compare \**a second*, which implies that not more than one has preceded.

i. This clergyman had *one other*, and *only one* other pupil. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 1.

Remember *one other* point, which is a very valuable truth. LORD ROSEBERY. *Speech*.

And there's *one other* thing I don't want you to speak of. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XV, 279.

ii. After the first box I found some slight relief, which encouraged me to buy *a second one*. II. Lond. News, Advertisement.

*One other* is also used in another shade of meaning, as appears from the following quotation:

She knew... that Lord Dumbello had already jilted *one other* young lady. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLV, 434.

## 2) *also* + indefinite pronoun *one*.

My cousin's a fool, and thou art *another*. Much ado, III, 4, II.

Sir, you are a smoker, I am *another*. Punch 1850, April, 141.<sup>1)</sup>

## 3) *a man* (woman, etc., *animal*, *dog*, etc., *thing*, *town*, etc.) *like*, before a proper name. In this application *other* may be preceded by other modifiers than the indefinite article. *A second* is often employed in the same way.

Thais led the way, | To light him to his prey, | And, like *another* Helen, fired *another* Troy. DRYDEN, *Alexander's Feast*, VI.

So great a knight as we have seen to-day — | He seem'd to me *another* Lancelot. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 532.

That boy will be *another* Nelson some day. MURRAY, s. v. *another*, 2.

Compare: A beautiful young lady met one of the Lords of Ravenswood while hunting near this spot, and like *a second* Egeria, had captivated the affections of the feudal Numa. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. IV, 53.

The whole thing is *a second* Panama. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, I.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL.



- c) **Other(s)** is often used as the correlative of *some*.

*Some* men believe one thing, and *others* another. WEBST., Dict.

*Some* people find their gratification in storing it (sc. money) up, *others* theirs in parting with it. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 20a.

Note a) This *other(s)* is often replaced by *some*. Compare the use of *now... now* and *sometimes... sometimes* in copulative co-ordination, discussed in Ch. X, 23.

There are *some* women to whom I would be very unwilling to give pain, and there are *some* to whom I would give the best I have. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXII, 651.

The natives... were armed, *some* with swords and shields, *some* with bows and arrows. MAC., *Clive*, (499a).

β) In Early Modern English a second *some* may even be met with after *than* and, most probably, after *as*. Of *some* after *as* no instances are available at the moment of writing.

Behold the flowers are better, and *some* are better *than some*. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Progr.*, 187.1)

But *some* are better customers *than some*. VANBRUGH, *Confederacy*, I, 3, (48.1)

*Some* are wiser *than some*, that is one thing, and *some* are worse *than some*, that's another. SCOTT, *Kenilworth*, Ch. XLI, 456.

γ) *Some* as the correlative of *other(s)* is sometimes understood.

There are doctors who are naturally cruel; and there are *others* who get used to cruelty and are callous about it. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, V, 100.

δ) Early Modern English also has *other some* as the correlative of *some*. *Some* say he is with the Emperor of Russia; *other some*, he is at Rome. MEAS. for MEAS., III, 2, 94.

How happy *some* o'er *other some* can be! MIDS., I, 1, 226.

Then certain philosophers of the Epicureans, and of the Stoicks, encountered him. And *some* said, What will this babbler say? *other some*, He seemeth to be a setter-forth of strange gods. BIBLE, Acts, XVII, 18.

And there came much people unto him, whereof *some* were glad, *some* were sorry, *some* of them were bound, and *other some* brought of them (sc. of the things) that were offered. ID., Esdras, B, XIII, 13.

Compare: I think we know *some* things and shan't lose them, and we don't know *some others* and never shall. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 186.

- a) **The other(s)** is sometimes used as the correlative of *the latter* or *the former*. Compare Ch. XXX, 11, b, 3.

His hands and wristbands were beautifully long and white. On *the latter* he wore handsome gold buttons, given to him by his Royal Highness, the Duke of York, and on *the others* more than one elegant ring. THACK. *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

- e) **Other** appears more or less faded in meaning in:

1) *the other day* (apparently formed under the influence of the French *l'autre jour*), and its variations *the other evening*, *night*, *week*, etc. Originality is a very good thing, in its way; but it may be carried too far. *The other morning* at eleven o'clock the clock at the Law Courts marked twenty minutes to one and struck eight. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6123, 3a.

2) *every other day* (*week*, etc.). For illustration see 53, b.

II. **Other**, being a comparative form, may be followed by the conjunction

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

*than*. In this case it has the meaning of *different*, and through the influence of this adjective sometimes exchanges *than* for *from* or *to*. Compare 166 and Ch. XVII, 113. Obs. I. See also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 769; MURRAY, s. v. *another*, 5 and *other*, 6.

i. I hope to live to be *another man from* what I was. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, IV, 86.

Yet dress, habits, politics, other things, were still, as it were, of *another world from* ours. SAINTSBURY, Introduction to THACK. Virgin.

ii. He's grown quite *another creature to* what he was. MISS BURNEY, Evelina, Let. 44, 197.

He seemed to be of *another race to* them. CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone, I, Ch. II, 34.

Conversely *different* sometimes wrongly takes the construction of *other*: *different than*. For illustration see also HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 114.

She, too, had one day hoped for a *different lot than* to be wedded to a little gentleman who rapped his teeth. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.

III. Like other comparatives (Ch. XXX 3), *other* may be modified by *far*, *still* or *yet*.

i. *Far other* arms and *other* weapons must | Be those that quell the might of hellish charms. MILTON, Comus, 612.

ii. They're talking of *still another* theatre. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XXIV.

iii. Another contribution is sent from Jeffersonville, Indiana, and *yet another* from the Lotos Club, New York. Westm. Gaz., No. 5207, 3b.

IV. *Other* may stand together with *the like* modifying the same noun. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16.43.

"Many *other the like* merry jests," says his old biographer, "I have heard him tell, too long to be here noted." MAC., Burl. and his Times, (221b).

V. The second member of the reciprocal pronoun *each other* stands for *the other*: a survival of the ancient practice of using *other* instead of *the other* in connection with *each*, *either*, *neither*, *whether*. See MURRAY, s. v. *other*, B, 2, b. When *each* is separated from *other*, the definite article is now regularly placed before *other*, except occasionally in archaic language. Compare 37, b.

VI. The definite article is also left *out* before *other* in the word-groups *among(st) + others* or *among(st) + other + plural noun*. Here *other* appears in what may be called the inclusive meaning, i. e. it implies inclusion of the only person, animal or thing referred to.

i. That little scapegrace, George Osborne, *amongst others*,... came to the Stadthaus Ball in company of his uncle's courier. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVIII, 312

ii. It was her business, *among other duties*, to knock at Miss Sharp's door. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVI, 167.

Note. An analogous inclusive meaning may be seen in *the rest*.

The simplicity of his grief drew nur ers about him, and La Fleur *amongst the rest*. STERNE, Sent. Journ., XXVI, 45.

*Among the rest*, there overtook us a little elderly lady. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XVI, 153.

Compare also: But some persons, myself *among the number*, let the breath escape on one side only. MISS SOAMES, Introduction to Phon., 34.

VI. The absolute *other* often loses the indefinite article when used in connection with *one*, and very frequently when coupled with *some*. For illustration see respectively 157 and 176, Obs. I.

Also in other applications *other* sometimes loses the indefinite article, understood either as a weak *any* or a weak *some*.

- i. He knew not the meaning of the word in *other* than its parliamentary sense. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XVII, 221.

For days and days... he would stay within his cottage, never darkening the door or seeing *other* face than those of his own inmates. Id., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIV, 140.

- ii. I think it right to confess that I should not now be writing this letter to you, had I not been led to believe by *other* judgment than my own that the proposition I am going to make would be regarded with favour. Ib., Ch. XXXIX, 380.

VIII. *The other* sometimes stands for what, apparently, ought to be *another*. Who can say this is not greatness, or show *the other* Englishman who has achieved so much? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 989.

Conversely *another* stands for *the other* in the reciprocal word-group *one another*. See 156.

In Early Modern English *one the other* is sometimes used where Present English has *one another*.

Defraud ye not *one the other*. Bible, *Corinth.*, A, VII, 5.

IX. In Early Modern English *other* sometimes takes precedence of other modifiers, viz. the definite article, or a genitive (or possessive pronoun). See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 329.

- i. Gylippus and *other the* Lacedaemonian and Corinthian Capitaines. RALEIGH, *Hist. World*, V, 1, § 4, 332.<sup>1</sup>)

With *other the* great men of Scotland. BURTON, *Scot Abr.*, I, 1, 18.<sup>2</sup>)  
He preached at Rome, Venice... and in *others the cities* of Italy. GATAKER, *P. Martyr in Fuller's Abel Rediv.* I, 244.<sup>3</sup>)

- ii. Whether they be of the nobility, or else *other his grace's* subjects. LATIMER, *Serm.* 40.<sup>4</sup>)

Usage varies when the modifier is a numeral, the whole being preceded by the definite article or some other defining word. Thus we say either *the (my, etc.) two others*, or *the (my, etc.) other two*, the latter arrangement being, apparently, the least usual. See JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.13.

The pleased looks of *the three others*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, 199.<sup>5</sup>)  
When there is no other modifier, the numeral now almost regularly stands before *other*, the alternative arrangement being only met with archaically, as in:

A retreat for St. Bridget and *other nine* virgins. J. ROBERTSON, *Agric. Perth*, 564.<sup>2</sup>)

Captain Calfeild in his wherrie carried ten more, and in my barge *other ten*, which made up a hundred. RALEGH, *Guiana*, 45.<sup>4</sup>)

<sup>1</sup>) EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 535.

<sup>2</sup>) MURRAY, s.v. *other*, A, 5, d.

<sup>3</sup>) MURRAY, s.v. *other*, B, 5, b, β. <sup>4</sup>) ALDIS WRIGHT, *Bible Word-Book*, s.v. *other*. <sup>5</sup>) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.13.

I brought out *other two* able young missionaries, who are opening two new heathen centres, and I engaged *other two* to follow this year. *Times*, 1895, 30 Aug.

For the combination *other some*, used in Early Modern English instead of the Present English *some others*, see above 165, Obs. I, c, δ.

For *other(s) such*, which, according to MURRAY (s. v. *other*, A, 5, d), is now archaic for *such other(s)*, see Ch. XXXVII, 12, c, δ.

- X. In Older English *other* is sometimes used conjointly in a way which would now convey the notion that a certain thing is represented as of the same nature as something else, although, as a matter of fact, it is of an opposite, or at least different nature. Thus in *In the devotion of a subject's love | Tendering the precious safety of my prince, | And free from other misbegotten hate, | Come I appellant to this princely pretence* (Rich. II, I, 1, 33) love and hate are represented as alike in nature through the use of *other*. The meaning intended is of course... *from any misbegotten hate, so utterly at variance with a subject's love*, a meaning which might be expressed, although hardly in idiomatic English, by a predicative *other*: *so other than a subject's love*! For further particulars about this idiom see also MURRAY, s. v. *other*, A, 7; EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 527. Compare also STOETT, *Middelnederl. Spraakk.*, *Toevoegsels en Verbeteringen*.

All these (sc. all the particulars of vice, such as voluptuousness, avarice) are portable, | With *other* graces weigh'd. *Macb.*, IV, 3, 90.

If to preserve this vessel for my lord | From any *other* foul unlawful touch | Be not to be a strumpet, I am none. *Othello*, IV, 2, 84.

166. *Other* is sometimes used predicatively in the sense of *different*. In this case it is normally followed by *than*, but, through the influence of *different*, it is also found, catachrestically, constructed with the preposition *from* (or *to*). Compare 165, Obs. II, and also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.78.

- i. Now the fashionable sense of this word is *other*. *Not. and Quer.*, 1893, 25.
- ii. What if ... the prize had been *other than* she had expected. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLIII, 420.  
These precepts lighted her to conclusions quite *other than* those at which he had arrived himself. *SARAH GRAND*, *Heav. Twins*, I, 5.  
And yet it was something quite *other than* egoism which brought a grave look to Enrico's face. *EDNA LYALL*, *Knight Err.*, Ch. I, 12.  
'Meticulous' means something *other* than 'careful'. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 4b.
- iii. This Italian poetry is in a world far *other from* ours of to-day. *F. HARRISON*, *Choice Bks.*, 51.<sup>1)</sup>

Note a) *Other than* is sometimes equivalent to *beyond*, *except*. Compare the last quotation in 168.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *other*, A, 6.



We have only to repeat that, as a matter of fact, no indignities *other than* the compulsory corn-grinding were put upon the English ladies. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

β) *Other* without *than* may represent the comprehensive alternative of a preceding adjective.

Every one (sc. of the poems), it is believed, has some peculiar interest, historical or *other*. KELLETT, *A Book of Cambridge Verse*. Pref.

**167.** Some applications of the substantive *other* deserve special mention.

a) The singular *other* sometimes has the value of:

1) *another (person)*. Instances are rare in Late Modern English.

For in eating every one taketh before *other* his own supper: and one is hungry and another is drunken. *Bible*, *Cor.*, A, XI, 21.

When I bend the knee to *other* than God, it shall be at thy white and winged feet. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 289.

2) *other person*, especially after *any*, *some*, *no* or *none*. For instances of *no* (or *none*) *other* see 142, Obs. V. Instead of *any other* and *some other* ordinary English has respectively *anybody* (or *any one*) *else* and *somebody* (or *some one*) *else*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.73.

i. Morgan put together with greater minuteness than *any other* the historical critical difficulties. PUSEY, *Hist. Enquiry*, I, 126, Note. 1)

ii. It were good that Benedick knew of it by *some other*, if she will not discover it. *Much Ado*, II, 3, 161.

If I had not won his money, *some other* would. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLVI, 479.

If she does not catch him, *some other* will. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 36.

Compare: Forget there is *any one else* in the world for the moment but our two selves. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. III, 58.

b) The singular *other* may also be have the value of:

1) *another thing*. Instances would appear to be very rare, except in the combination *something or other*.

He had a black mouth that said *other* of him. *Henry VIII*, I, 3, 58.

Note. *Other* is *more* specialized in meaning in the following quotations:

I think it possible that the huge smoke and stour of that tumultuous Manchester... (may) produce quite *other* than a pleasant impression. Letter of Carlyle (*Acad.* 1898, 17 Sept., 272). (= quite another impression than a pleasant one.)<sup>2)</sup>

Sir Miles himself had agreed in George's view of pursuing quite *other* than a military career. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 633.

If you think *other*. *Oth.*, IV, 2, 13.

2) *any other thing* or *anything else*. Although archaic, instances are met with in the Latest English. *Other* in this function seems to occur especially after the verb *to do*. It will be observed that it may also be understood as an adverb (168). See also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.78.

1) MURRAY, S. V. *other*, B, 6, a.

2) EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVI, 531.

Far be it from me... to regard with *other* than respect and sympathy any unhappy soul seeking that refuge. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 885.

How could I have done *other* than accept him. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXV, 339.

I could not do *other* than ask Miss Robarts to my house. *ib.*, Ch. XLI, 399.  
She never imagined *other* than that her child would be a boy. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XIV, 94.

It seems to us extremely unlikely that the Peers will do *other* than reject the Government's scheme. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5466, 2a,  
We neither asked nor expected Russia to do *other* than she has done. No. 5525, 2a.

- 3) *other thing(s)*, after *all*, *any*, *no*, *some*(?) and the interrogative *what*. In this sense *other* is especially met with after *no*, instances being not infrequent even in the Latest English. Instead of these combinations, which are now archaic, ordinary English has *all* (or *anything*, *nothing*, *something*) *else*.

i. To this *all other* was to be sacrificed. ROBERTSON, *Sermons*, I 172.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Give me leave to tell you, you lie in your throat, if you say I am *any other* than an honest man. *Henry IV*, B, I, 2, 98.

iii. We learn *no other*, but the confident tyrant | Keeps still in Dunsinane. *Macb.*, V, 4, 8.

I think it be *no other* but e'en so. *Hamlet*, I, 1, 108.

"Nay, but it is not so." — "It is *no other*." *Meas. for Meas.*, IV, 3, 122.

If I was to be struck helpless, I must say it's hard — can think *no other*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 249.

We can only say, with Luther: "Here we stand, and we can *no other*." *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5213, 1c.

Sir Edward Grey... could... do *no other* than repeat that the formula agreed upon by the Powers before the outbreak of war was to maintain the status quo. *ib.*, No. 6065, 1c.

We are constrained to do the work by motives of honour and integrity and, whatever the cost, we can *no other*. *Times*, No. 1988, 117a.

iv. What *other* could they do? CARLYLE, *Past and Pres.*, Ch. III, 13.

168. *Other* as a pure adverb is now obsolete, but has maintained itself in the combination *somehow or other*. See 176, Obs. I.

He put it (sc. the crown) by thrice, every time gentler than *other*. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 229.

Who dares receive it *other*? *Macb.*, I, 7, 77.

To those baby eyes | That never saw the giant world enraged, | Nor met with fortune *other* than at feasts. *John*, V, 2, 57. (*other than* = *except*. Compare 166, Note a.)

169. *Other* is found in many compounds, of which the following are especially interesting:

a) *otherways* (an adverbial genitive) = *in another way*, *otherwise*. Now obsolete, except in dialects. MURRAY.

I couldn't take my rest in peace, nor fix my thoughts upon my prayers, *otherways* than that I knew mistress was comfortable in her bed this night. *Dick.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. VII, 29a. (*otherways than* = *unless*.)

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s. v. *all*, b.

Speak when you're spoke to on particular subjects. and not *otherways*. *Ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 71b.

I am sorry. my dear. you have such an objection to the Maypole and old John. for *otherways*. as it's a very fine morning, and Saturday's not a busy day with us. we might have all three gone to Chigwell in the chaise. *Ib.*, Ch. XIX, 74b.

- b) *otherwise* ("very common in the 16th and 17th centuries, rare or obsolete in the 18th, revived in the 19th." MURRAY) = *in (or to) another place*.

Then began his heart to soften a little. and he (sc. Edward III) said: "Lady. I would rather you had been *otherwise*." GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. V, § 1, 229.

The King has sent me *otherwise*. HENRY VIII, II, 2, 60.

But she saw not: her heart was *otherwise*. KEATS, *Eve of St. Agnes*, VII. *Otherwise* Pure sport: a herd of boys with clamour bowl'd | And stump'd the wicket. TEN., *Princ.*, *ProI.*, 80. (Thus also VI, 357.)

However they may crown him *otherwise*. *Id.*, *Holy Grail*, 898.

And Hall for Theo takes no care, | His thoughts and hopes are *otherwise*. *Il. Lond. News*, *Christm. Numb.*, 1897.

Note. Of practically the same meaning is the obsolete *some other where*.

How if your husband start *some other where*. *Com. of Er.*, II, 1, 30.

This is not Romeo, he's *some other where*. *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 1, 204.

- c) *otherwise*, which is used 1) as an adverb, 2) as a predicative adnominal word.

- 1) As an adverb *otherwise* is used in the meaning of:

- a) *in another way*, or *in other ways*. In this sense it may be found constructed with *than*, in Early Modern English with *but*. See Ch. XVII, 113. In Old and Middle English *wise* was used as an independent word, as in *on oðre wisan*, *on nane oðre wisan*, *non oþer wise*. Traces of this practice may be seen in the Modern English *any otherwise*, which is met with even in writers of the 19th century. See MURRAY.

- i. I am *otherwise* engaged. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 320a.

He turns out to be a gambler — or drinks, or *otherwise* plays the fool. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 188.

We could not do *otherwise* than obey her orders. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. VIII, 55.

"Pure cussedness," answered John, unable *otherwise* to give a satisfactory explanation. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. III, 37.

- ii. To be led *any otherwise* than blindly. BURKE, *French Rev.*, 60.1)

- β) *named in another way*, *alias*: Sister Martha, *otherwise* Mrs. Cranch. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXII, 226.

- γ) *for the rest*: "My dearest, best Harry!" she said (those were her words, I don't want *otherwise* to be praising myself), "you are a noble heart." THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LVI, 586.

It is nothing to me *otherwise*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 345.

The heavens seemed to be in close communion with the murmuring streams in these *otherwise* voiceless solitudes, W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. IX.

The Russians... are falling back to defend Warsaw and deprive the Ger-

1) MURRAY.

mans of their offensive. *Otherwise* Belgrade has been occupied by the Austrians. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3947, 797c.

We Germans fear God and *otherwise* nothing. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 71, 341.

- d) *in some more respects or ways, further*: She began to tie on a clean apron and *otherwise* prepare herself for going to the shop. *Mrs. GASK, Cranf., Ch. XIV*, 256.

Mr. Loftus had to move into a small house and *otherwise* reduce his expenses. *Mrs. Wood, Orv. College, Ch. III*, 51.

- e) *the reverse*. When standing after a nominal predicate this *otherwise* may also be regarded as a predicative adnominal word:

i. "The herd is safe, so please ye," said Gurth. — "But it does not please me, thou knave," said Cedric, "that I should be made to suppose *otherwise* for two hours." *SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. IV*, 34. I rather prefer scorpions than *otherwise*. *GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. XX*.

ii. I am afraid that her nose was rather short than *otherwise*. *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I*, 5.

They were rather glad of the thunderstorm than *otherwise*. *Id., I, Ch. XXII*, 231.

It was a matter of delicacy rather than *otherwise*. *Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI*, 61.

- ς) *if not, else*: i. e. as a kind of conjunctive adverb. Compare *Ch. XI*, 15: I went at once; *otherwise* I should have missed him. *MURRAY*.

- 2) As a predicative adnominal word, *otherwise* appears as nominal part of the predicate, or predicative adnominal adjunct, in the sense of *not so, different*. In this application it may be constructed with *than*.

i. \* He has no temptation to be *otherwise*. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. III*, 17b. Harry is cheerful, and I am *otherwise*. *THACK., Virg., Ch. LIV*, 559. It is *otherwise* with Mr. Herbert Gladstone. *Morning Leader*.

If such a heavy duty absolutely stops the purchase of new pleasure cars, American or *otherwise*, during the period of the war, public opinion will not be shocked. *The New Statesman*, No. 128, 560a. Note the quibble in: Some are wise and some are *otherwise*. *Proverb*.

\*\* Until he proves himself *otherwise* I must treat the Prince as an honourable man. *MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. V*, 221.

ii. Nowhere will they be *otherwise than* welcome. *Times*.

It was impossible to believe that she was *otherwise than* good. *FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XVI*, 133.

- 3) The following applications of *otherwise* seem to be rare:

i. The wise and *otherwise* things they did. *JEROME, Three Men in a Boat*. 1)

ii. The goodness or *otherwise* of a given thing can only be measured and determined in the light of its consequences. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 10b.

#### OUGHT.

170. a) *Ought* is a secondary form of *ought*. The latter spelling is now preferred to distinguish the indefinite pronoun from the verb *ought*. Compare 23—25.

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 11.98.



- b) *Ought* is also used as a vulgar corruption of *nought* in the sense of *cipher*. Thus 0.01 is often read (by boys): *decimal, ought, one*.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1147) observes: "This form probably arose from the frequent use of *nought* after numbers ending in *n* — *one, seven, nine, ten* — (*wen* not) being naturally shortened to (*wen* ot), the shortened form being then used after all the other numerals as well." According to MURRAY ("*ought* originated probably) in an erroneous division of *a nought* as *an ought*; but by many (it is) associated with the figure *O* of the cipher, which they take as the initial *O* of *Ought*."

Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure nineteen nineteen six, result happiness. Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure twenty pounds *ought* and six, result misery. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XII, 87b.

### SEVERAL.

171. *Several* is used a) as a collective numeral, b) as a distributive or separative adjective. Compare 35.
172. As a collective numeral it is used:
- a) conjointly: He has *several* children.
  - b) absolutely, both with reference to persons and things:
    - i. I had never harmed any of them (sc. the chaps) and done little kindnesses to *several*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 65.
    - ii. My belief is, and has always been, (that she ran away) without a solitary button on her gown. I picked up one, of *several*, that were rolling about, and treasured it as a keepsake for a long time. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 31b.
  - c) substantively, only with reference to persons: A sudden stir and agitation took place in the Hall. Trotty thought, at first, that *several* had risen to eject the man. Id., *Chimes*, III, 69.
173. *Several* may be called a distributive or separative adjective when, though in another grammatical function, it expresses the same notion as the pronoun *each*: *They went to their several homes* = *They went each to his home*, or *Each went to his home*.

In this application *several* is only used conjointly, and always modified by a genitive or possessive pronoun. The noun modified is mostly a plural, but may be a singular. See JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 2.22.

- i. The pages, lackeys, and porter, by imitating their master, become ministers of state in *their several* districts. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. VI, (201a). Old Joe told out *their several* gains. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, Ch. IV, 94.
  - ii. And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to *his several* ability. Bible, *Matth.*, XXV, 15.
- Compare: The sexton had *some* influence with the doctor, they having

had much dealing together in the way of *their separate* professions. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

Each went *her separate* way. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 109.

Note α) The above application of *several* is a particular development of its use in the sense of *different, separate*. In this latter meaning it may, of course, modify a singular as well as a plural noun, and be attended by the ordinary noun modifiers, including the indefinite article, a numeral, and the distributive *each* and *every*.

- i. For *several* virtues | Have I liked *several* women. Temp., III, 1, 42.
- ii. These (sc. diseases) have *their several* names. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. VI, (200b).
- iii. Go draw aside the curtains, and discover | *The several* caskets to this noble prince. Merch. of Ven., II, 7, 2.  
I answered that our horses were trained up, from three or four years old, to *the several* uses we intended them for. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. IV, (196a).  
*The joint and several* efforts of all three may be safely left to the contemptuous indifference of the nation. Times.
- iv. You have *a several* design for every scene. GEORGE VILLIERS, *Rehearsal*, 77.1)
- v. "Psha!" said I, with an air of carelessness *three several* times. STERNE, *Sent. Journ.*, V.  
Sir Walter found | *Three several* hoof-marks which the hunted beast | Had left imprinted on the grassy ground. WORDSWORTH, *Hart-Leap Well* 51. (Thus also in 67.)  
*Three several* times he heard suspicious sounds from the private office. JOHN OXENHAM, *A simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, *Sel. of Eng. Prose and Poetry*, II, 48).
- vi. To every Roman citizen he gives, | To *every several* man, seventy-five drachmas. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 247.  
This was... the eager, restless, energetic outlook on *each several* feature. FORSTER, *Life of Dick.*, II, Ch. I, 31b.

β) The notion of the separative *several* is expressed adverbially by *severally*, as is shown by the alternate use of this adverb and *each* in the following quotation:

They were *severally* examined and appraised by old Joe, who chalked the sum he was disposed to give for *each* upon the wall. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, IV, 92.

## SOME.

### 174. *Some* is used:

- a) as an indefinite pronoun: *Some* poet had dedicated *some* poem to him.
- b) as an indefinite numeral: I gave him *some* wine and *some* cigars.
- c) as an indefinite adverb: *Some* fifty people were drowned.

Note. Sometimes *some* is at once a pronoun and a numeral. In this case it answers to the Dutch *sommige*.

*Some* fathers set too great a value on books. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 9.

*Some* people think so. SWEET, *Spok. Eng.*, 31. (Id., *N. E. Gr.*, § 235.)

175. As an indefinite pronoun *some* is used to indicate the fact that the speaker is unwilling or unprepared, or considers it immaterial to give the particulars of what he is speaking about.

The fire-place was an old one, built by *some* Dutch merchant long ago. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 21.

I knew . . . you would do me good in *some* way, at *some* time. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XV, 182.

They went into the thing together and saw that *some* roguery was being played. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 50.

176. Obs. I. The indefiniteness expressed by *some* is often emphasized by the word-group *or other* placed after the word modified. In the same function we sometimes find *or the other* and *or another*, the former apparently but rarely. The phrases are also found after adverbial compounds of *some*. Compare 165, Obs. VII.

- i. \* (He was) determined to make him, in *some way or other*, either a hostage or a protector. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 284. She's anxious about him for *some reason or other*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 85.

She is depressed because she has been finding Elizabeth out in *some waste or other*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, Ch. I, 14.

\*\* I suppose they'll amuse themselves *somehow or other* afterwards. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 223.

In 200 years' time it is more than probable that that dog will be dug up from *somewhere or other*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. VI, 67.

- ii. \* Well, let me see if my wits cannot provide me with an honourable maintenance, and if *some day or the other* I cannot show Miss Amelia my real superiority over her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 92.

I suppose there is scarcely any man who reads this or any other novel, but has been balked in love *some time or the other*. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XV, 145.

\*\* Brighton is, *somehow or the other*, abominably dull. PHILIPS, *As in a Looking Glass*, 305.<sup>1)</sup>

- iii. Wrap yourself up in *something or another*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXIV, 131.

*Something or another's* the matter with the lock. Ib., Ch. IX, 38a. Who, in the course of his life, hath not been so bewitched, and worshipped *some idol or another*? THACK., *Henry Es m.*, III, Ch. VI, 369.

They were much isolated from *some cause or another*. *West m. Gaz.*, No. 5531, 5b.

\*\* They are all mixed up *somehow or another* with that unfort'nate Bloody Mary. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXV, 138a.

That chap, . . . though he has all his faculties about him, *somewheres or another*, bottled up and corked down, has no more imagination than Barnaby has. Ib., Ch. XI, 45a.

Not one on us as wasn't black and blue *somewheres or another*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 78.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X.

- II. Less commonly *some* is followed by *one or other* placed in immediate succession to it. With *some or other* compare *one or other* (157) and *some* + conjoint or absolute *one* (Ch. XLII, 9). From the former it differs in being more indefinite, from the latter in being purely pronominal.

conjoint: Obvious reason for most of the animals which are domesticated having become so exists in their being of *some one or other* definite use to man. Westm. Gaz., No. 5466, 18a.

absolute: He is considered as the rightful property of *some one or other* of their daughters. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. I, 1.

- III. Certain combinations with *some*, especially *some time* and *some day*, are mostly specialized in meaning, denoting only an indefinite epoch of the future when not preceded by any preposition. Observe that *one day* often has the same meaning as *some day (time)*. See 159, a, Note a. I always looked on her as to be my wife — *some time*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 264.

You will be sorry *some day* for the cruelty of your words. TROL.; *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXIII, 320.

To retrieve his losses, he hit upon the peopling of Florida, which thou and I will see done *some day*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 7b.

He will get all his uncle's money *some day*. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XII.

We shall all meet at Staines Court before long. Well perhaps not next autumn; but *some time*, you know, *some time*, NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. I, 9.

Our foes are men who are *some day* to become the subjects of the King. Times.

Compare with the above the combinations with *at* illustrated by the following quotations, which exhibit no such narrowing of meaning:

Men *at some time* are masters of their fates. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 139.

All (save one) touched the King's coin, and had, *at some period* of their lives, a happy quarter-day coming round for them. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Congreve and Addison, 55.

Most of us, *at some moment* in our young lives, would have welcomed a priest of that natural order in any sort of canonicals or uncanonicals. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. IX, 403.

We borrowed some military terms from Holland *at some time*. SKEAT, *Ety m. Dict.*, s.v. *furlough*.

Viscount Lumley died *at some date* towards 1670. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adonais*, Mem. of Shel., 2, N.

Bion may have died *at some date* not far from 250 B. C. *Ib.*, 70.

The distinction referred to above does not, however, always depend on the absence or use of the preposition *at*.

- i. She got the invitation *some time* last week. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land.*, II, Ch. XII, 223.

It (sc.) the 'Gioconda' was painted by Leonardo.... *some time* between the years 1501 and 1506. Times, No. 1808, 679a.

Patience, mother; the best horse may stumble *some day*. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, II, 115.

- ii. "Would you repair the old wrong to me by marrying me?" — "I cannot say. I shouldn't yet, at any rate." — "But you might at some future time of your life?" — "Oh yes, I might *at some time*." HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 415.



When any of the phrases mentioned in Obs. I are added, *some day* or *some time* are, apparently, never applied in the specialized meaning mentioned above.

She lived in a small house, in a small street, called Tuinstraat, very probably from a garden which may have flourished there *some time or other*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 102).

There's scarcely a pub. of any attractions within ten miles of London that she does not seem to have looked in at, or stopped at, or slept at, *some time or other*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. VI, 61.

Note. For *at some time* older and archaic English has *sometime*. Compare 181.

She remembers Dr. Johnson on a visit to Dr. Taylor, at Ashbourn, *sometime* between the end of the year 37, and the middle of the year 40. BOSW. *JOHNS.*, 16b.

- IV. In enumerations in which the successive parts open with *some*, the third or subsequent *some* is sometimes followed by *again*.

Any number of brooches, up and down everywhere (*some* with dog's eyes painted in them; *some* that were like small picture-frames...; *some, again*, with miniatures of ladies and gentlemen [etc.]. MRS. GASK, *Cranford*, Ch. VIII, 148.

- V. The pronoun *some* is sometimes equivalent to *a certain*. See 185, and compare FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

I do desire you | Not to deny this imposition, | The which my love and *some* necessity | Now lays upon you. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 4, 34.

His faithful lieutenant Tantia Topee had given orders, it seems, that when a trumpet sounded, *some* work for which he had arranged should begin. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 187.

This particular shade of meaning is especially common in the compounds *somebody* (or *some one*), *something* and *somewhere*. It is even the usual one in *something* when preceded by the definite or indefinite article or by a demonstrative. See Ch. XXXVI, 14, Obs. II.

- i. "Quinion" said Mr. Murdstone, "take care if you please, *somebody* is sharp." *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12a.

Into a ward of the white-wash'd halls, | Where the dead and dying lay, Wounded by bayonets, shells and balls, | *Somebody's Darling* was borne one day. MRS. LACOSTE, *Somebody's Darling*.

It would be flying in the face of love's providence to frustrate *somebody's* obvious purpose and design. BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil* Ch. IV, 46.

- ii. \* I mustn't say *something* else, because it might get back to Nevada and offend his constituents. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 226.

\*\* (It is) *the something* which the hand can suggest, but which nothing mechanical can ever reproduce. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 106.

\*\*\* But the person — you recognize him at once. By what? By *that something* which we can't catch in a picture. *Ib.*, I, Ch. X, 187.

\*\*\*\* I thought... of the washing-stand being rickety on its three legs, and having *a discontented something* about it. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22b.

*A something* had occurred in his life, which had cast a tinge of melancholy over all his existence. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. III, 28.

- iii. I will see him *somewhere* (sc. in hell, etc.) first! FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

Of occasional occurrence is the combination *a certain something*, in which *certain* strikes us as redundant. For illustration see Ch. XXXVI, 14, Obs. II, Note  $\delta$ .

VI. Rare is the use of *one* before *some*, as in:

We gaze at it with admiring curiosity, as *one some* gigantic implement of war which stands idle among the memorials of ancient days. DRAPER, *Hist. of the Intellectual Development of Europe*, 66.<sup>1)</sup>

177. As an indefinite numeral *some* indicates the fact that the speaker is unwilling or unprepared, or considers it immaterial, to specify the exact quantity or number of what he is speaking about, and even to intimate whether that quantity or number is large or small.

This latter point constitutes, accordingly, the main difference between *some* and *much* or *many* on the one side, and (*a*) *little* and (*a*) *few* on the other.

A sower went forth to sow, and when he sowed, *some* seeds fell by the way side... | *Some* fell upon stony places... | And *some* fell among thorns. Bible, Matth., XIII, 4—7.

The silence lasted *some* time. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 221.

The servant was at *some* distance. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 30.

This had gone on for *some* weeks when one afternoon Meadows started from his chair and said [etc.]. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

178. Obs. I. The numeral *some* is sometimes followed by *few* or *little*, placed by way of apposition to it. For illustration see 62 and 74. Also certain adjectives, such as *brief*, *small*, *considerable*, etc. are sometimes found after it to modify its meaning. For illustration see also 178, Obs. II, Note  $\beta$ .

Suppose him returning *some brief* time hence. SCOTT, *Betrothed*, Ch. XXVIII.<sup>2)</sup>

- II. Besides the ordinary meaning discussed above, the numeral *some* sometimes marks that whatever is spoken about is of considerable or, at least, appreciable significance. *Some* is found in this sense only in affirmative sentences and clauses, and always has strong stress. Compare the analogous use of *any* in interrogative, negative and conditional sentences or clauses, discussed in 18, Obs. III. See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1920.

Well, but you must allow her a little beauty. — Yes, you must allow her *some* beauty. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (195).

As he was a short, fat man, he took *some* time to mount into the saddle. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 110).

It was an irregular building of *some* magnitude. *Id.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, Christmas Eve, 196.

A mansion is a house of *some* size or pretension. WEBST., *Dict.*

It took me *some* time to decipher the letter. SWEET, *Spoken Eng.*, 31.

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, E. S., XX.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *some*, B, I, 4, d.

It was but a short walk, and yet it took us *some* time. CON. DOYLE, Rodney Stone, I, Ch. VII, 162.

Thus also in the following sentences, in which the adjunct containing *some* is only apparently negative:

Wickham will never marry a woman without *some* money. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. XLVII, 276. (= unless she has *at least some* money.)

It is manifestly impossible to bring a live bullock from a Texan prairie to a slaughter-house in Great Britain, without causing it *some* suffering. Graph.

Note *a*) A similar pregnant meaning is sometimes expressed by *some* in the pronominal compounds *somebody* and *something*. See also Ch. XLIII, 29, *c*.

i. For before these days rose up Theudas, boasting himself to be *somebody*. Bible, Acts, V, 36.

I wanted to be *somebody*, to have some influence in the world. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 227.

ii. The weakest living creature, by concentrating his powers on a single object, can accomplish *something*. CARL., Life of Schiller, II, 68.

*β*) This application of *some* is sometimes rendered more explicit by the addition of such a word as *considerable*.

When Christian had travelled in this disconsolate condition *some considerable* time, he thought he heard the voice of a man, going before him. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog., (191).

III. In Older English *some* or *something* is sometimes understood before partitive *of*. This practice is occasionally, archaically, met with in Present English. Compare ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 91.

He drank of the wine. Bible, Gen., IX, 21.

The priest that is anointed shall bring of the bullock's blood. Ib., Lev., IV, 16. She gave him of that fair enticing fruit. MILTON, Par. Lost, IX, 996.

And of his skill, as bards avow, | He taught that Ladye fair. SCOTT, Lay, I, XII. Opening the box she offered of its contents to the two men. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam., II, Ch. V, 108.

Compare: i. He has given *largely* of his time and energy... to national affairs. Westm. Gaz., No. 6441, 2c.

ii. It is a part of woman's innermost nature to give of herself to man. Eng. Rev., No. 28, 269. (*Largely*, or some such word, seems to be understood after *to give*.)

Note *a*) *Some* as a kind of determinative, equivalent to *those*, (Ch. XXXVI, 14, Obs. II, Note *ε*), seems to be understood in the archaic construction illustrated by:

If Mævius scribble in Apollo's spite, | There are, who judge still worse than he can write. POPE, Es. on Crit., I, 35.

There were who felt and acknowledged its (sc. the Rambler's) excellence. BOSW., Johnson, 53b.

There are who lord it o'er their fellow-men | With most prevailing tinsel. KEATS, Endym., III, 1.

Thus also in: There be of them that will themselves laugh. Hamlet, III, 2, 47.

*β*) There appears to be a suppression of *something* in:

I pray thee, if it stand with honesty, | Buy thou the cottage, pasture and the flock, | And thou shalt have to pay for it of us. As you like it, II, 4, 93.

(i. e. thou shalt have *something to pay* (or *the means of paying*) for it of us.) "It has nothing to do with that." — "It has to do with Miss Yeobright." HARDY, Return of the Native, II, Ch. VII, 182 (i. e. It has *something* to do with Miss Yeobright.)

Three of the Ministers have obviously to do with the daily conduct of the War. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7005, 2b.

To our linguistic instinct there is also suppression of *something* or some word-group with *some* in such expressions as *Here is for your pains* (Two Gentlemen, I, 1, 139), the act of presenting making the mention of the thing offered needless. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 355, Anm.

### 179. *Some* may be used:

a) conjointly, both as a pronoun and a numeral: He had lent me *some* book(s). Take *some* wine.

b) absolutely, chiefly as a numeral: He had many apples and was glad to give me *some*. He had much money and was glad to lend me *some*.

Note a) The pronoun *some* cannot now be used absolutely, not, at least, when only one person or thing is thought of. In the following quotations, indeed, *some* is used absolutely, but only in virtue of its marking number rather than quality. Compare 174, Note.

A sower went out to sow his seed: and as he sowed, *some* seeds fell by the way side, ... *some* fell upon stony places... And *some* fell among thorns [etc.]. Bible, Luke, VIII, 5—7.

She had read *some* of his books and had liked them. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 84.

An exception must be made with reference to the combination *some of these days* = *one of these days* (MURRAY, s. v. *day*, 7, b), in which *some* is distinctly a pronoun.

They'll be here before we know where we are *some of these days*. MRS. GASK., *Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. VIII, 107.

I have a mind *some of these days*, to serve him as he deserved. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 70.

For the rest the place of the absolute pronominal *some* is supplied by *one* or *other*. See 157 and 176, Obs. II.

β) When followed by a preposition, especially partitive *of*, + singular (pro)noun, the absolute character of *some* is often indistinct, with the result that we find it varying with *something*. See what has been said about *any* in 19, b, Note α, and *little* in 67, Obs. II, and compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.132.

It is open to doubt that a distinction is consciously observed between *some* and *something* in this connection. The difference, if difference there be, seems to be that in the case of *something* the speaker or writer does not so much think of a portion of what is expressed by the following (pro)noun, but rather of one of the elements constituting it, or perhaps, of some matter which partakes of the nature of it.

i. I lack *some* of thy instinct. HENRY IV, A, II, 4.

Let me impart to you *some* of my distress. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (216).

"Pray do not mention him (sc. Sir James Chettam) in that light again," said Dorothea, feeling *some* of her late irritation revive. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. IV, 26.

ii. \* Living in a mercantile town, she had caught *something* of the spirit. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 102).

It was a watch which seemed to have imbibed *something* of its master's character. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 6.



The first novel of a great novelist has an interest for all readers above the level of the dullard or the sluggard... *Something* of this interest may have been felt by the lovers of Pickwick when [etc.]. SWINBURNE, Charles Dickens, 3. *Something* of the Professor's marvellous instinct was on this occasion mine. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, Q, 28.

\*\* But the extreme austerity of Mr. Hallam takes away *something* from the pleasure of reading his learned, eloquent and judicious writings. MAC. *Revol.*, (313*b*).

Compare: To this the courteous Prince | Accorded with his wonted courtesy, | Courtesy with *a touch* of traitor in it. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 635.

Before the name of uncountables *something* is out of place.

Perhaps you would like to see *some* of my work. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men.*, Ch. VII, 66.

I'll send you *some* of my plumpudding. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

There is *some* of that excellent boiled rice of yours. You will feel better when you have had *some*. ETHEL M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 45.

Now it (sc. the Haarlemer Meer) is *some* of the most fertile country in Holland. *Graph.*, No. 2264, 618*a*.

Conversely *some* + *of* cannot be used before a noun which is not preceded by a defining adjunct: definite article, genitive, possessive or demonstrative pronoun. It could not, therefore, replace *something* + *of* in: He welcomed them with a salute, which had *something* in it *of* gallantry on the part of a prince to fine women, and something also of the holy affection of a pastor to the sisters of his flock. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVIII, 242. Yet even the Neapolitan preserved *something* *of* Eastern knowledge and refinement. MAC., *Mach.*, (30*b*).

While such combinations as *some of my distress* and *some of my plumpudding* can be severally explained as standing for \**some distress of my distress* and \**some plumpudding of my plumpudding*, i. e. as affording instances of absolute *some*, it is impossible to put a similar interpretation on combinations in which the noun is a countable: the expanding of *some of the year*, *some of the book*, etc. into \**some year of the year*, *some book of the book* yielding nonsense. In such combinations, therefore, *some* must be understood to be a substantive word, unless the noun is apprehended in a collective sense, i. e. as the name of a number of smaller units: *some of the twelve months*, *fifty-two weeks*, *three hundred and sixty-five days*, etc.

I wish to spend *some* of the year in London. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, III, 244. I will read you *some* of my story. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. IV, 59. It will have been observed that in many connections *some* is practically equivalent to *some part* or simply *part*. Compare Ch. XXXI, 58. It may have this meaning also before a plural, in which case it is, however, strictly absolute.

We consumed *some* of our provisions. WEBST., *Dict.*

It (sc. the election) has shown once more the soundness of Abraham Lincoln's great principle that, though you may fool *some* of the people all the time, and all the people *some* of the time, you cannot fool all the people all the time. *Spect.* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5213, 16*c*).

- c) substantively, 1) in the sense of *some persons* (*people, children*, etc.), i. e. as a plural pronoun: There are *some* upon this earth of yours... who lay claim to know us. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 63.

There are *some* who go to her house to be taught to sew. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 186.

A very large proportion of this, 50 per cent is non-British; *some* say half of it. *Daily Mail*.

Note. In Early Modern English the pronoun *some* is also used in a singular meaning, i. e. in the function of the Present English *somebody* (or *some one*). Compare 153, and see FRANZ, E. S. XVII; id. *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 354.

Go *some* of you, and fetch a looking-glass. *Rich.* II, IV, 1, 268.

I fear, said she, that they live in hope that *some* will come to relieve them. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, 108.<sup>1</sup>)

I thought I heard *some* stirring in her chamber. VANBRUGH, *False Friend*, V, 1, 411.<sup>1</sup>)

In Late Modern English the singular pronoun *some* sometimes appears as an archaism in the meanings illustrated by:

It must then be *some* of these flaunting silk-worm Sirs about the Court... *some* of those who think they carry it off through the height of their plumed bonnets and the jingle of their spurs. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VI, 67. Vivien... | Would fain have wrought upon his cloudy mood |... and at last | With dark sweet hints of *some* who prized him more | Than who should prize him most [etc.]. TEN., *Merl. and Viv.*, 157.

- 2) in the sense of *something*. In this application it is now found only before the numeral *more* in the sense of *additional*. For illustration see also 100, Obs. I.

i. You shall hear *some*. *Coriol.*, IV, 2, 14.

I will teach this rascal *some*. C. CIBBER, *The Provoked Husband*, Act. III.

ii. He had learned *some more* about the world. JACK LONDON, *White Fang*, 87.<sup>2</sup>)

## 180. As an adverb *some* is found:

### a) chiefly in the meaning of *about*.

In this sense it now mostly modifies a cardinal numeral, less frequently a noun denoting a definite number (*dozen*, *score*). *Some once* and *some twice* are also unusual. In Early Modern English *some* as the equivalent of *about* is met with before the names of measures of time (*hour*, *year*, *month* etc.), occasional instances being found also in the Latest English.

The indefinite notion expressed by *some* is sometimes emphasized by *or so* or *or thereabout(s)*. Also indefinite word-groups consisting of two successive numerals connected by *or*, such as *one or two*, *two or three*, etc., are sometimes made more indefinite by *some*. Compare Ch. XLII, 4, c. Early Modern English has *some day* (*month*, etc.) or *two*, corresponding to the current Late Modern English *a day* (*month* etc.) or *two*. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 21.

i. Cholera and dysentery set in among these unhappy sufferers and *some* eighteen women and seven children died. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

<sup>1</sup>) FRANZ, E. S., XVII.

<sup>2</sup>) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.14.

The following is now an unusual application: I think 't is now *some seven o'clock*. *Taming of the Shrew*, IV, 3, 189.

At *some ten o'clock* the clinking of a sabre might have been heard. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 341.

- ii. I stood with the key in my hand, exchanging a few words of special farewell with *some half-dozen* of my best scholars. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

The circumstances recorded in this story took place *some score* of years ago. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10.

Philip Henslowe's name, for example, is spelled by him and others *some score* of ways. CH. W. WALLACE, *Shakespeare's Signature* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5255, 5a).

There are now *some dozen* schools in London where clogs begin to be regarded as almost decent articles of clothing. *Id.*, No. 6141, 7b.

- iii. Only *some once* in the month she half-forcibly made her way thither. CARL. Sart. Res., Ch. III, 16.

*Some twice* a year. *Quart. Rev.*, July, 1895, 71.

- iv. *Some hour* before you took me from the breach of the sea was my sister drowned. *Twelfth Night*, II, 1, 22.

Meet me and Gratiano | At Gratiano's lodging *some hour* hence. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 4, 26.

After *some quarter of an hour's* delay, a small white hand was waved to him for an instant from this casement. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIII, 52b.

Built upon a dismal reef of sunken rocks, *some league* or so from shore, . . . there stood a solitary light-house. *Id.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 75.

The name of Don Pacifico was familiar to the world *some quarter of a century* ago as that of the man whose quarrel had nearly brought on a European war. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, 95.

- v. \* Undisturbed by my presence, the (flesh-fly) emits, one after the other, a certain number of grubs, *some ten or so*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 50, 208.

\*\* At length a party of *some twelve* men, or *thereabouts* landed with the bold object of attacking their assailants and driving them back. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

- vi. \* Is he within *some ten or twenty* leagues, | Or fifty? WALPOLE.<sup>1)</sup>

Each has in turn objected to *some one or two* articles. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *L'Envoy*, 377.

\*\* HENRY. And thy thoughts, thy fancies? — BECKET. Good dogs, my liege, well train'd and easily call'd | Off from the game. — HENRY. Save for *some once or twice*, | When they ran down the game and worried it. TEN., *Beck.*, I, 1, (695a).

\*\*\* I would detain you here *some month or two*. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 9.

If I may counsel you, *some day or two* | Your highness shall repose you at the Tower. *Rich. III*, III, 1, 64.

b) occasionally in the meaning of *somewhat*, *slightly*.

In this application it is especially met with in dialects and in American English. Compare STOF., E. S., XXXV, 390; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 21; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 354; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 899, 900, 902 and 913; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.17.

I am *some* tired; he is *some* better; it rains *some*. WEBST., *Dict.*

1) MÄRTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, I, 333.

"Ay, ay," said he (sc. the captain), "that's *some* better." STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 26.

I can help you *some*. A. K. GREEN, *The House of the Whispering Pines*, 94.

That helps *some*. RITA, *America—Seen through Eng. eyes*, Ch. IV, 94.

I guess we scared those beggars *some*. *Punch*, No. 3745, 293.

In your Houses of Parliament there is one door for peers to go in at, and one for ordinary people. Did I laugh *some* when I saw that? RUP. BROOKE, *America (Westm. Gaz., No. 6347, 5a)*.

If it isn't it (sc. that she cries), you scold her *some* more. FLOR. BARCLAY, *The Rosary*, Ch. IV, 24.

181. Among the numerous compounds of *some*, the following deserve special mention:

a) **somebody** — *some one*. For discussion and illustration see Ch. XLIII, 2, a; 11 and 29.

b) **somedead**, which is used substantively and adverbially, but is now but rarely met with, except in dialects.

i. You have had *somedead* of that too. CROCKETT, *Grey Man*, X. 1)

ii. We have not seen him since the onslaught of Curfew Street, and though we know he was *somedead* hurt in that matter, we cannot see why we should not do homage in leal and duteous sort. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XVII, 183.

c) **somehow**, which is found in at least two shades of meaning.

i. I must at any rate endeavour to manage this *somehow*. *Punch*, 1889, 257b. (= French *coûte que coûte*.)

Well, no one can say I'm not doing my best to keep the thing up *somehow*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5478.

ii. If a married couple come to settle in the town, *somehow* the gentleman disappears. Mrs. GASK, *Cranford*, Ch. I, 9. (= in some unexplained or inexplicable manner.)

*Somehow* the term seems to have begun ungraciously. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 46.

You're a truthful beggar, *somehow*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XIII, 230.

Firmly as he spoke, there was *somehow* a note of soothing in his voice. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. III, 36.

d) **sometime**, which is partly an adjective, partly an adverb.

1) It may be apprehended as either an adjective or an adverb, when standing without any preceding adnominal modifier before a noun, as in *James A. H. Murray... sometime President of the Philological Society*. This application of *sometime* is the only one current in ordinary English of the Present Day.

Major General Sir Owen Tudor Burke, *sometime* Military Secretary to the Commander-in-Chief in India. *Acad.*, 1891, 204.

The use of *sometime* with an adnominal modifier preceding, which stamps it as an adjective, is an archaism.

Our *sometime* sister, now our queen. *Hamlet*, I, 2, 8.

It was generally expected that the line would cross the river at Barkley West, the *sometime* capital of Griqualand West. *Daily Telegraph*.

1) MURRAY.



- 2) Also as a pure adverb, i. e. in the meaning of *formerly* or *at some time* (176, Obs. III), *sometime* is now used only archaically.

This was *sometime* a paradox, but now the time gives it proof. Haml., III, 1, 114. (For further instances see All is Well, III, 2, 87 and Mids., IV, 1, 52.)

Most noble lord, Sir Lancelot of the Lake, | I, *sometime* call'd the maid of Astolat | Come, for you left me taking no farewell, | Hither, to take my last farewell of you. TEN., Lanc. and El., 1265.

Note. The Early Modern English use of *sometime* in the sense of Present English *sometimes* seems to have become completely extinct.

The love that follows us *sometime* is our trouble. Macb., I, 6, 11.

- e) **sometimes**, an adverbial genitive: Bernardine dusted books and *sometimes* sold them. BEATR. HARRADEN, Ships, II, Ch. I, 115.

Note a) Early Modern English has *sometimes* also in the function of *sometime* (= *at some time*), both as an adverb and an adjective. According to the Clarendon Press Editors (s. v. Richard II, 1, 2, 54), SHAKESPEARE used *sometimes* and *sometime* indifferently. The earlier editors usually altered this *sometimes* into *sometime*.

- i. What art thou that usurp'st this time of night, | Together with that fair and warlike form | In which the Majesty of buried Denmark | Did *sometimes* march? Haml., I, 1, 49.

*Sometimes* from her eyes I did receive fair speechless messages. Merch. of Ven., I, 1, 164.

Ye who *sometimes* were far off. Bible, Ephes., II, 13.

- ii. Farewell, old Gaunt: thy *sometimes* brother's wife | With her companion grief must end her life. Rich. II, I, 2, 54.

With much ado at length (I) have gotten leave | To look upon my *sometimes* royal master's face. Ib., V, 5, 75.

β) *Sometimes* is often used in analysing copulative co-ordination (Ch. X, 21 and 23). In this case its component parts are sometimes thought of separately, *times* being felt as a plural, not as a genitive, inasmuch that *at others* is used as a correlative.

Sir Jasper, riding *sometimes* at the head of his men, *at others* near the Prince, had little time for backward thoughts during this surprising march. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. VIII, 138.

- f) **Someway** (= *in some way*) seems to be uncommon. A. SCHMIDT registers no instances from SHAKESPEARE.

And I thought, | That could I *someway* prove such force in her | Link'd with such love for me, that [etc.]. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 805.

Note a) *Someway* as used in the following quotation is usually, and more properly, written as two words: But then came the days of sadness, when Adam was *someway* on in his teens. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. IV, 39.

β) *Someways* is a vulgar variant of *someway*: The person's got to get his initiation *someways*. Atlantic Monthly. 1)

- g) **somewhat**, which is used both as a pronoun and as an adverb.

1) As a pronoun it is now archaic, *something* having taken its place. It is, however, still fairly common as nominal part of the predicate

in the phrase *to be somewhat of a* (= *to be more or less a*), followed by a noun, or adjective + noun, mostly expressing an undesirable thing. In like manner as *little of* and *much of* are sometimes equivalent to respectively *little* and *much* (67, Obs. II, a; 93, Obs. III, a), *somewhat of* may have the value of *some*. See also SATTLER, E. S., VI and JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.411-2.

i. Here is a letter will say *somewhat*. Merry Wives, IV, 5, 128.

And Jesus answering said unto him, Simon, I have *somewhat* to say unto thee. Bible, Luke, VII, 40.

Three days after my arrival, I observed, about half a league off in the sea, *somewhat* that looked like a boat overturned. SWIFT, GUL., I, Ch. VIII.

There was *somewhat* of a savour of senna softened by peppermint about the place. TROL., The Wardén, Ch. XX, 257.

Good fortune opens the hand as well as the heart wonderfully; and to give *somewhat* when we have largely received is but to afford a vent to the unusual ebullition of the sensations. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

They think that I am *somewhat*. TEN., St. Simeon Stylites, 125.

I saw you moving by me on the bridge, | Felt ye were *somewhat*. Id., Mar. of Ger., 430.

On this last question of what the master-cannibals had 'much better do', we have *somewhat* to say presently. CH. KINGSLEY, Cheap Clothes and Nasty, 73.

This boy has *somewhat* more than mortal. Id., The Heroes, I, Ch. I, 29.

ii. This mission is *somewhat of a* failure. Graph.

Mr. Rose seemed to have been *somewhat of a* disappointed man. II. Lond. News. <sup>1)</sup>

iii. For grief once told brings *somewhat* back of peace. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., Prol., 72.

Thus in all months we find *somewhat of* beauty. Graph. <sup>1)</sup>

2) As an adverb *somewhat* is quite common, at least in literary language. It is used to modify verbs as well as adjectives, adverbs or equivalent expressions. In the latter case it is often practically equivalent to *rather* and mostly stands before words or word-groups which express an undesirable state.

i. My joy at hearing of your health and arrival here by your neighbour Acres was *somewhat* damped by his dwelling much on the high spirits you had enjoyed in Devonshire. SHER., Riv., II, 2.

He waddled *somewhat* in his gait. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 122.

The dramatist has ventured to depart *somewhat* from the letter, though not the spirit of the original text. Punch 1890, 24a.

The moderation of this speech calmed her *somewhat*. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle, I, Ch. III, 36t

ii. Pen was *somewhat* older than many of his fellow-students. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 313.

Now all historians who have attempted to explain the opinions of the ancient thinkers have been *somewhat* in this condition. LEWES, Hist. Phil., Introd., 23.

A strict attention to chronology will often decide a question which might otherwise be *somewhat* obscure. SKEAT, Princ. Etym., I, § 5.

She (sc. Mrs. Huxley) lived, so to put it, in her own right, and accomplished work of her own *somewhat* more fully than it is given to the wives of great

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., VI.

men to do. She had a *somewhat* strenuous and adventurous youth. Athen., No. 4511, 531c.

Note. The mutilated form *summat* (or *sommat*) is frequently met with in vulgar language and in dialects, both as a pronoun and an adverb. A man must learn *summat* beside Gospel. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. I, 5. "I think we've got *sommat*," said one of the haulers-in. HARDY, Return of the Native, III, Ch. III, 223.

- g) **somewhen** (= *at some time or other*) is, apparently, very rare before the second half of the nineteenth century. No instances from SHAKESPEARE are registered by A. SCHMIDT. According to MURRAY "common in recent use, especially coupled with *somewhere*."

Yes, though nobody else should reproach me if we should stay together, yet *somewhen*, years hence, you might get angry with me for any ordinary matter. HARDY, Tess, V, Ch. XXXVI, 317.

Some folks can't help hoping... that they may have another chance, to make things fair and even, somewhere. *somewhen*, somehow. KINGSLEY, Water-Bab., 349.1)

- h) **somewhere** ( = *at (in or to) some place*) is occasionally used with reference to time, or other notions.

i. *Somewhere* and somehow God created the heavens and the earth. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 285.

There's a passage *somewhere* in one of Tolstoi's novels... about the impossibility of expressing all one thinks. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. X, 183. Shall we sit down *somewhere*? Ib., I, Ch. XIV, 251.

ii. All the clocks in the city were striking nine individually, and *somewhere* about nine hundred and ninety-nine collectively. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XL, 367.

They sat together in Ethel's room till *somewhere* between eight and nine o'clock. Miss YONGE, D. Chain, I, 39.2)

The price may be *somewhere* between eight and ten shillings.

Note a) *Somewhere* is sometimes used substantively and may even be preceded by an adnominal modifier.

I would fain think now, But that my Spirits, with my Blood, are posting To *their new some-where*. D'URVEY, Grecian Heroine, V, 1.1)

It was a *somewhere*, a home. Mrs. A. M. BENNETT, Juvenile Indiscr., I, 54.1)

The money must be obtained from *somewhere*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6529, 1b.

β) *Somewheres* is a vulgar variant: I know you've got that ship safe *somewheres*. STEV., Treas. Isl., VI, Ch. XXVIII, 152.

γ) For *some other where* see 167.

**Somewhile**, although now rare, still seems to have some currency as an adjective in the sense of *former*, *sometime*, and as an adverb in the sense of *sometimes*, *at times*.

i. Highly dangerous to the spiritual welfare of his *somewhile* flock. AINSWORTH, Ovingdean Grange, II.

ii. The 'beautiful vision' with which all lives worth living have been *somewhile* brightened. J. NICHOL, in Mem., III, 130.1)

Note. *Somewhiles*, a dialectal variety of the above, seems to be more common: Takes a deal of following *somewhiles*, that it do. A. J. DAVIES, Athlirt Downs, II, IV, 72.1)

1) MURRAY.

2) FLÜGEL.

- i) **Somewhither** (= *to some place*) appears to be rare, *somewhere* being generally used instead.

*Somewhither* would she have thee go with her. Tit. Andron., IV, 1, 11.  
Like ghosts waiting for Charon to take them *somewhither*. W. BLACK, Green Past, Ch. XXXIV.<sup>1)</sup>

- j) **some whit** (= *somewhat*) is but rarely met with.

Lord Cranstoun was *some whit* dismay'd. SCOTT, Lay, II, xxxi.

- k) **someise** is now only used with the preposition *in*.

The first love | I had — the father's, brother's love — was changed, | I think, *in someise*. ROSSETTI, A Last Confession, 203.

182. It may be considered useful to append some comment on the use of *some*, or compounds of *some*, in negative, interrogative and conditional sentences or clauses, which, as has been pointed out in 18, Obs. V and VI, are the peculiar province of *any*, the pronoun or numeral with which *some* is often compared.

The main difference between *some* and *any*, be it remembered, is that the former indicates an indefiniteness or vagueness due to the speaker's or writer's unwillingness or unpreparedness to give particulars of what he is speaking about, or to his regarding the giving of such particulars as immaterial (175 and 177); while the latter expresses a form of universality limited by the pleasure of the speaker or writer or some other person(s). (17, b.)

This difference is aptly illustrated by the following quotation:

"Take me up to one of the galleries, my dear friend," she said. "Take me *somewhere* — *some* place away from here — *any* place away from here." FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. VII, 61. (Observe that *somewhere* and *some* have weak or medium stress, while *any* has strong stress.)

- a) In negative sentences or clauses the distinction between *some* and *any* seldom causes any difficulty. Thus it is not necessary to point out the difference which substitution of *any* for *some* in the following quotations would involve:

He is perpetually telling us that he cannot understand *something* in the text which is as plain as language can make it, MAC., Boswell's Life of Johnson, (1716).

He would not join *some* crack-brained plan against the valley, which sheltered his beloved one. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXV, 208.

The following quotation seems to require some comment:

I hope that governess of yours is not in for *something* serious, AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. VI, 77. (= *I hope that what your governess is in for, is not a serious affair*, while the same sentence with *any* substituted for *some* would mean: *I hope that whatever your governess may be in for is not a serious affair*.)

- b) There is more difficulty in apprehending the difference between *some* and *any* in questions, owing to the fact that one is often as plausible as the other. The student will be assisted by beating in mind that when *some* is used in a question, the inquiry concerns

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



another matter than that indicated by *some* or *some* + another word, the existence of the latter being taken for granted.

It may be added that a question with *some* is often a more polite form of address than one with *any*. Thus such a sentence as *Would you like any more of this pudding?* is almost tantamount to *I think that you have had plenty of this pudding* (or *I do not think that you like this pudding*), so that *I should be surprised if you wanted another helping, however small*; while the same sentence with *some* substituted for *any* would imply: *As you have not had (nearly) enough of this pudding (or as you seem to like this pudding), I shall be pleased to give you another helping*. In other words, in using *any* we seem to hint that we expect a negative answer, while in using *some* we seem to elicit an affirmative answer.

Here follow some questions with *some*, a few with *any* being added for comparison.

- i. "She has consented to unite her lot with mine, and to accept my heart and my fortune." — "How much is that, my boy?" said the Major. "Has anybody left you *some* money? I don't know that you are worth a shilling in the world." THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 92. (Underlying notion: *Is there anybody who has been so considerate as to leave you a portion or the whole of his wealth?* If *any* is substituted for *some*, the underlying notion is: *Is there anybody who has left you the least money?*)

He wondered if he had said *something* witty, as all the company laughed so. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LX, 618. (Underlying notion: *Is what I have said so witty that all the company should laugh?* If *any* is substituted for *some*, the underlying notion is: *I have my doubts as to my words being at all witty*.)

Was it the matter Maggie? Has *something* happened? G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VII, 383. (Underlying notion: *I think I see by the expression of your countenance that something has happened. What is that?*)

Was there *something* wandering and imbecile in his face — *something* like what he felt in his mind? G. ELIOT, *Romola*, II, Ch. XXX, 232. (Underlying notion: *Is the expression which my face wears that of a wandering imbecile? Is it in harmony with what I feel in my mind?*)

Are you hurt? Have you seen *something*? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 14. (Underlying notion: *Have you seen the thing which is said to haunt this room, of which I have not, however, a distinct idea?*)

"I am unhappy, — very unhappy, for other things". — "What other things? Can you tell me *some* of them?" CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 22. (Underlying notion: *Are you in a position to inform me of (at least) part of the things which make you unhappy?*)

Can't we talk of *something* else? MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 183. (Underlying notion: *There are plenty of other things about which we could speak. Had not we better change the subject?*)

He (sc. General Booth) quaintly wondered if people asked the Pope in Rome or the Archbishops and Bishops in England whether they were going to do *something*. *new*. *Daily Mail*. (Underlying notion: *whether the thing they were going to do was new*.)

Can any of your readers give me *some* particulars of the life of Peter Payne? *Not. and Quer.*

- ii. "Here they are, here they are!" cried Ned exultingly, as he brought two young owls to the light... "Will you have *any* more?" he asked. SWEET, *Old Chapel*. (Underlying notion: *I do not suppose that you wish for any more owls*. If *some* is substituted for *any*, the underlying notion is: *If you wish for more owls I could give you some, there are plenty more in the nest*.)

"Has papa made *any* difficulty?" — "No, none at all." SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 37. (Underlying notion: *I can think of no difficulty that papa could have made. If some is substituted for any, the underlying notion is: Papa has made some difficulty, has not he?*)

"Blanche: are you fond of money?" — "Very. Are you going to give me *any*?" *Ib.*, II, 37. (Underlying notion: *I expect no liberality at your hands.*)

- c) The meaning of *some* in conditional clauses is so clearly distinct from that of *any* that it seems sufficient to give a few instances without any comment.

- i. Redistribution is only possible if Home Rule passes in *some* form. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6141, 3a.

LADY (to Messrs. Cook's official). "I have nothing to declare. What shall I say?" — OFFICIAL. "Say, Madam, that you have nothing to declare." — LADY. "Yes; but suppose they find *something*?" *Punch*, No. 3730, 5b.

The children would be very much pleased if you would tell them *some* story. *GÜNTHER, Manual.*

If any of his friends asked him for the loan of *some* money, he used to say, "Unfortunately the half-crown I keep for lending is out just now." *Ib.*

- ii. Of course he (sc. my husband) is alive — unless you've heard *anything*. *BERN. SHAW, Overruled (Eng. Rev., No. 54, 182).* (*Something* would have been expected. The use of *anything* can be explained by assuming some such subaudition as *a report or rumour of whatever description that would prove the contrary.*)

Note. It is interesting to observe the change of meaning which would be involved by the substitution of *some* for the pregnant depreciative *any* in certain sentences or clauses which, although not negative or conditional on the strength of any particular word, are more or less distinctly so in import. (18, Obs. III.)

I am glad you take *any* pleasure in my poor poem. KEATS, Letter to Shelley. (Subaudition: *little though it may be.*)

Only once during dinner was there *any* conversation that included the young gentlemen. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 106.* (Subaudition: *short though it was.*)

Wind = air naturally in motion with *any* degree of velocity. *ANNAND., Conc. Dict.*

I feel certain that every soldier with *any* experience will support me when I say [etc.]. *Rev. of Rev., No. CLXXXIX, 234a.*

### QUASI-INDEFINITE PRONOUNS OR NUMERALS.

183. Besides the words discussed above, whose only or primary function is that of indefinite pronouns or numerals, there are many others which, although not indefinite pronouns or numerals in their original and ordinary application, are sometimes used as such. This is the case with certain adjectives, nouns and pronouns.

184. The adjectives referred to in the preceding § have the value of:  
 a) indefinite pronouns: *certain, given.*  
 b) indefinite numerals: *ample, divers, numerous, sufficient, sundry.*

The latter group may be extended almost indefinitely, many adjectives being frequently applied in such a way that they approximate closely to indefinite numerals. Such, among many others, are *abundant*, *full*, *great*, *infinite*, *plentiful*, *remarkable*.

You have *remarkable* taste. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 125.

The mausoleum of Halicarnassus gave them both *infinite* pleasure to look at. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XV, 131.

These latter adjectives, however, present no further remarkable features, and are, therefore, passed over without any comment.

185. **Certain**, like the Dutch *zeker*, mostly denotes the fact that the matter spoken about might, but need not or should not be specified. The same notion may be expressed by *some*. See 176, Obs. V. As a singular, *certain* is preceded by the indefinite article, which shows that the word in its altered function preserves its adjectival character.

A *certain* man had a goose which laid him a golden egg.

She wiped the sweet tears from her eyes, as she remembered a *certain* day when a *certain* youth had come to her, claiming all kinds of privileges in a very determined manner. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 371.

Note α) Sometimes *certain* conveys the secondary idea that whatever is spoken about is of limited extent, amount or number, or the reverse. In the latter case a *certain* often stands euphemistically for a *considerable*. Thus a *certain* age is often said of elderly persons, especially women, whose exact age politeness forbids to specify.

- i. The ice is disintegrated to a *certain* depth. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, I, 123. 1)

The bank makes a *certain* profit out of the business. JEVONS, *Money*, 117. 1)

- ii. She was not old, nor young, nor at the years | Which *certain* people call a "*certain* age." BYRON, *Beppo*, xxii.

A very old house, perhaps as old as it claimed to be, and perhaps older, which will sometimes happen with houses of an uncertain, as with ladies of a *certain*, age. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 2a.

His feet are set rather wide apart in the fashion of gentlemen approaching a *certain* weight. HOWELLS, *Out of Question*. 1)

- β) Before proper names of persons a *certain* denotes some degree of obscurity and is, therefore, sometimes used by the speaker to mark his want of respect.

A *certain* Benjamin Franklin French writes to me from New Orleans. SOUTHEY, *Lett.*, IV, 348. 1)

- γ) In SHAKESPEARE the plural *certain* is sometimes preceded by an apparently redundant *some*.

Now know you, Casca, I have moved already | *Some certain* of the noblest-minded Romans, | To undergo with me an enterprise | Of honourable, dangerous consequence. JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 122. (Thus also in *Coriol.*, II, 3, 59.)

- δ) The use of *certain* without the indefinite article before a singular seems to be rare.

So highly inflammable is *certain* dust that. *Newsp.* 2)

1) MURRAY.

2) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 5212.

186. *Certain* is used:

- a) conjointly: There was an incredible frivolity about her sister at *certain* moments, which was almost revolting to the young girl. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 228.
- b) absolutely, almost exclusively as a plural, and always followed by partitive of: i. Into this mixture Mrs. Clennam dipped *certain* of the rusks and ate them; while the old woman buttered *certain* other of the rusks, which were to be eaten alone. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. III, 19b.  
*Certain* of the seniors who liked a cigar or pipe, seized on the opportunity in defiance of rules and etiquette. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 93.  
*Certain* of his fashionable acquaintance were still away at their country-seats. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.
- ii. Not that commercial fiction is likely to be influenced by the insistence ... but because *certain* of that product assumes with the utmost seriousness and composure that it is the real thing. Periodical. 1)

187. *Given* is used in the same sense as the Dutch *gegeven*, i. e. to represent a matter as granted as a basis of calculation or reasoning. It is preceded by either the definite or indefinite article, and is used only conjointly.

Since the *given* triangles are similar, the angles A and A' are equal. LARDNER, Geom., 118. 2)

A better means of accomplishing a *given* end. TYND., Glac., I, XXIV, 175. 2)

188. *Ample* = *large enough to satisfy all demands*. It is mostly used conjointly or predicatively, but is occasionally also found substantively.

- i. There is *ample* money in circulation. Westm. Gaz., No. 6606, 4a.
- ii. There can be no doubt that Chaldicotes will be *ample* to pay all you owe the duke. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXII, 317.
- iii. There was no immediate confiscation of lands from the English after Hastings. There was *ample* from which to reward William's Norman followers in the lands of those who had died for Harold. ELIZ. O'NEILL, England in the Middle Ages, Ch. I, 10.

189. *Divers* (with voiced s) denotes an indefinite number without committing the speaker to either many or few. The notion of diversity originally implied in it is mostly vague or entirely obliterated. The word is now "somewhat archaic, but well known in legal and scriptural phraseology." MURRAY. It is used only conjointly.

This heavenly earth is of *divers* colours. JOWETT, Plato<sup>2</sup>, I, 408. 2)

There are directions to be given to *divers* workmen before I start. Mrs. CARLYLE, Lett., III, 36. 2)

Note. *Diverse* (with voiceless s) now takes the place of *divers* when diversity is distinctly to be expressed and is, therefore, a pure adjective.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 228.

2) MURRAY.



Certainly no language was ever composed of such numerous and such *diverse* elements. SKEAT, *Princ. of Etym.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

Later still words have been introduced from many others (sc. languages), including various Indian languages and the *diverse* tongues scattered over the continents of Asia, Africa and America. *Ib.*, I, Ch. II, 11.

190. **Numerous** is practically equivalent to *many*, and like the latter, is used not only conjointly and predicatively, but also absolutely followed by partitive *of*.

- i. Deem life a blessing with its *numerous* woes. COWPER, *Hope*, 546.
- ii. These shafts... are very *numerous* in the Unteraar glacier. TYND., *Glac.*, II, Ch. XIV, 363.
- iii. Mr. Mick came to and fro from the regiment, and brought *numerous* of his comrades with him. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. I, 24.

191. **Sufficient** has the value of *enough*, and is found a) conjointly, in which application, like *enough*, it may stand after its head-word, b) predicatively, c) absolutely followed by partitive *of*, and d) substantively.

- i. He had not *sufficient* courage for it. Have you *sufficient* provisions? FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

We cannot hope to kill *sufficient* flies to reduce serious their total numbers. *Graph.*, No. 2323, 1022a.

\*\* Anybody who has curiosity *sufficient*, may refer to the published tragedy... and say whether the scene is without merit. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXX, 846.

The Navy League will find in his (sc. Prince von Bülow's) pages ammunition *sufficient* to last for a long campaign. *Athen.*, No. 4503, 223a.

- ii. This is *sufficient* to feed a hundred men. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*
- iii. It is of urgent importance that there should be at the disposal of the country not only *sufficient*, but more than *sufficient*, of good machines. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3830, 379.
- iv. On that day we saw *sufficient* to account for the noise. TYND., *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
Here was *sufficient* to tax the energies of any person. MOTTRAM, *The True Story of G. Eliot*, Ch. I, 10.  
It is extremely probable that, when the new Duma meets, it will have more than *sufficient* to occupy its attention in devising means to cope with the terrible famine. *Ib.*, *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 117b.

Note. When followed by partitive *of*, *sufficient* may be found in the same idiomatic applications as other numerals denoting an indefinite quantity: *enough* (47, b, Note β), *little*, etc. (67, Obs. II), *much*, etc. (93, Obs. III).

He is not even *sufficient of* an artist to risk a threepenny piece of his income for the propagation of new music. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 62, 249.

192. **Sundry** (= *divers*, *several*) is more or less archaic, but is sometimes used to produce a more or less humorous effect. It seems to be used only conjointly, except in the phrase *all and sundry*, for which see 11, Obs. V.

*Sundry* books were before her on the square table. Mrs. Wood, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 52.

**Note.** The plural form *sundries* is a pure noun, mostly corresponding to the Dutch *diversen*.

**Cost of *sundries*.** FLÜGEL.

A small grocer and dealer in *sundries*. *Id.* (= hardware.)

His profit on the sale of clubs (*sc.* for golf) and *sundries* is estimated at the same figure. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6147, 2c.

- 193.** The nouns which are often used by way of indefinite pronouns, are especially such as have a particularly general meaning (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 37), and, consequently, approach more or less to the indefinite pronouns *one* and *it*, or to the Dutch *iemand* and *iets*, mostly dissociated from the peculiar notions of either *some* or *any* found in the English *somebody* (or *something*) and *anybody* (or *anything*).

In their modified function they occur in the plural as well as in the singular form. In the former they drop the definite article, in the latter they stand with the indefinite article.

- 194.** The plurals may denote either persons or things.

Such as denote persons are especially *chaps*, *fellows*, *men* and *persons*. To these we may add the collective *people*, which, although singular in form, is in every way construed as a plural, and *folk*, which, though originally a collective like *people*, is often misapprehended as a single-unit noun and, accordingly, replaced by *folks*.

Such as denote things are especially *affairs*, *matters* and *things*. The altered application of all these nouns has already been illustrated in Ch. XXXI, 57, so that only a few words of additional comment is needed.

- a) The plurals denoting persons denote an indefinite number of indefinite persons, exclusive of the speaker or writer himself. They are mostly used as the subject, but may also be met with in other grammatical functions. In meaning they correspond to *one* as described in 148, *a*, but always without the secondary meaning described in 151.

*Chaps* and *fellows* are only used in colloquial language, and appear to be comparatively rare. *Men* and *persons*, on the other hand, are chiefly literary. *People* is by far the commonest of these nouns, partly, no doubt, owing to the fact that it contains no indication as to sex. This, of course, applies also to *persons*; and to a certain extent to *men*, which is only dimly suggestive of the male sex. I want to give him an eddication as he'll be even wi' the lawyers and *folks*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 61.

I am always looking at *people's* faces and trying to see how I could paint them best. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 112.

**Note.** Also such collective nouns as *mankind*, always without the definite article, and *public*, *town*, *world* etc., always with the definite article, may be applied in a similar function as the above nouns.

- b) The plurals denoting things are sometimes practically interchangeable

with *it*, but they are more frequently appropriated when the use of this pronoun would for some reason or other be impracticable or impossible. Compare Ch. II, 4, Obs. IV. They are used in all the functions of ordinary nouns denoting things. As to their comparative frequency *things* stands first, *affairs* last.

NOTE. A peculiar application, especially common in colloquial language, of *things* is its use after a singular or plural noun to denote a dimly-apprehended number of objects.

Your hat and *things* are in the next room. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, IV, (218).

I will come to your cell each day, Papa, and bring you strawberries and *things*. PUNCH, No. 3651, 498a.

Compare the disdainful use of *folks* (see the instance on page 1209) and *stuff* in a similar function.

We shall never get to Monkshaven this day... for to sell our eggs and *stuff*. MRS. GASK., *Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. II, 20.

She talks philosophy and *stuff*. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. V, 101.

She went on talking 'Raphaels, Corregios, and *stuff*'. *Id.*, I, Ch. V, 115.

## 195. The singulars also may denote either persons or things.

a) Those denoting persons are chiefly *a body*, *a fellow*, *a gentleman*, *a man*, *a party* and *a person*, these nouns partaking in a manner of the nature of prop-words. Compare Ch. XLIII, 33, *b*.

As to *a body* it may be observed that it was anciently in general, also literary, use; it is now common only in dialects and the language of the illiterate. Compare XLIII, 30, Obs. III. Of the others *a man* is by far the commonest. *A fellow* and *a party* are colloquial, while *a gentleman* and *a person* are unusual.

Only *a body*, *a party* and *a person* are without any indication of sex. In the case of *a man* sex is, however, but dimly thought of. The above words are capable of being used in any grammatical function, and are applied in two ways:

1) without any determinative force. In this case they correspond in meaning to *one* as described in 148, *a*, often with the peculiar connotation referred to 151, or to the Dutch *iemand*, dissociated from the peculiar notions conveyed by either *some* or *any*.

**a body.** Ah, sirrah, *a body* would think this was well counterfeited. As you like it, IV, 3; 162.

We have had no extreme hot weather this fortnight, but a great deal of rain at times, and *a body* can live and breathe. SWIFT, *Journ. to Stella*, XXV.

It was all his own courage, and *a body* may say, his kindness, in a way, ma'am. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 528.

"He said she was just such a sharp, stirring sort of *a body*". — "Lady", said Miss Pole. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 145.

I never knew *a body* stop insensible so long after it. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 26.

The fire is too hot for *a body* to kneel over. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. II, 10.

Men be such a terrible class of society to look at *a body*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XII, 105.

Life was indeed a strange thing; and would *a body* comprehend it, then must *a body* sit staring into the fire, thinking very hard, unheeding of all idle chatter. JEROME, Paul Kever, I, Ch. I, 15a.

**a fellow.** Half *a fellow's* pangs at losing a woman result from vanity more than affection. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 145.

Do you know, in our country *a fellow's* ears would not be safe. Id., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 317.

I suppose there is an hotel where *a fellow* could put up. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. I, 15.

**a gentleman.** Confound me, Sampson, why is *a gentleman's* character to be blackened so? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 321.

**a man.** Wine does but draw forth *a man's* natural qualities. SHERIDAN, School for Scand., III, 3, (398).

*A man's* religion is the chief fact about him. CARLYLE, Hero Worship, I, 12. Gift bread chokes in *a man's* throat and poisons his blood. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 353.

There was the weight *a man's* sayings carry when he is a real master of one thing. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. X, 188.

Health is *a man's* best asset in this world. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 253.

**a party.** There's *a party* wants to see Falder. JOHN GALSWORTHY, Justice I, (2).

**a person.** *A person* is never known till *a person* is proved. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XV, 131.

If *a person* is too poor to keep a servant, ... he must sweep his own rooms. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Note  $\alpha$ ) In such an application as is illustrated in the following quotations, *a man* may almost be considered as equivalent to *somebody*.

Let *a man* go down with the proper messages, let a servant carry a note. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 18.

A little before I left home, three brothers shot down *a man* for having spoken ill of their sister. Id., Ch. XXXI, 317.

$\beta$ ) *Person*, without the indefinite article, in the sense of *somebody*, seems to be a vulgarism.

"*Person's* a-waitin'," said Sam epigrammatically. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 127. *Person* here waiting for you. CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. XI, III.

Compare: "*Gentleman* in the coffee-room, sir," replied the Boots, ... "*gentleman* says he'll not detain you a moment, sir, but he can take no denial." DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

Note. Also *man*, whether denoting the human species or the male human species, and *woman* when indicating the female human species, partake largely of the character of indefinite pronouns. See Ch. XXXI, 31, *b*. In the following quotation *man* has the value of *a man*.

Live you? or are you aught | That *man* may question? Macb., I, 3, 43.

- 2) with determinative force. In this application they are equivalent to *one* in the second function (148, *b* and 152), or to the Dutch *iemand*, also without any of the connotation indicated by the English *some* or *any*. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.473; BIRGER PALM, The Place of the Adj. Attribute, § 34.



**a chap.** I have known him do many a good turn to *a chap* in misfortune. THACK., New c., I, Ch. XXV, 284.

**a man.** A *man* of words and not of deeds | Is like a garden full of weeds. Proverb.

Scrooge was not *a man* to be frightened by echoes. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 20.

Alexander Lauderdale junior was *a man* of regular ways. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XI, 193.

Lord Kimberley is *a man* whom neither the Liberal party nor the nation can afford to lose. Daily News.

Note. When applied with determinative force, these nouns may also be used in the plural.

*Men* apt to promise are apt to forget. Proverb.

*People* who live in glass houses should never throw stones. Id.

- b) The singulars that denote things are chiefly *a matter* and *a thing*, the latter being the most common. They are capable of being used in all the grammatical functions of ordinary nouns denoting things and, like *a body*, etc., are applied in two ways:

- 1) without any determinative force. In this case they may, or may not, have the peculiar connotation conveyed by *some* or *any*. Of *a matter* in this application no instances have, however, been found.

I shall discover *a thing* to you. Merry Wives, II, 2, 190.

It's all the baroness's doing, and if she says *a thing*, it must be done. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 17.

- 2) with determinative force. In this case they are always without the connotation conveyed by *something* or *anything*.

**a matter.** I have detected (him) in *a matter* little short of forgery. SHER., School for Scand., III, 1, (388).

It soon became *a matter* of course that she should accompany him on all his expeditions. ETHEL M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle, I, Ch. III, 30.

Note the peculiar application of *a matter* in: I asked him how far it was to Thornfield. "*A matter* of six mi s." CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XI, 111. He made a long rambling harangue, about having been there, man and boy, and his forbears before him, for *a matter* of two hundred years. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXXIV, 319.

Compare: He had not drank above a quart or two, or *such a matter* of liquor at the time. FIELDING, Tom Jones, VIII, Ch. XI, 155a.

**a thing.** If I do lose thee, I do lose *a thing* | That none but fools would keep. Meas. for Meas., III, 1, 8.

He had always regarded an obligation as *a thing* of which one should take no advantage. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

It is to be admitted on all sides that military efficiency is not to be left to chance, but is *a thing* that governments must attend to. Macmillan's Mag., 1892, 221a.

Note a) These forms when used in the second function, may be pluralized. *Things* out of hope are compass'd oft with venturing. SHAK., Ven. and Ad., 567.

You do yet taste | Some subtilties o' the Isle, that will not let you | Believe *things* certain. Tempest, V, 1, 125.

β) Also when preceded by the definite article, *matter* may have the value of an indefinite pronoun. Thus in:

To introduce them (sc. the toothbrushes) into schools, . . . we could consult the member of your own staff who is having such marked success in the *matter of clogs*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6147, 4c.

γ) Observe the idiom in: i. A paramour is, God bless us, *a thing of naught*. Mids., IV, 2, 14. (= *a naughty thing*.)

*A thing of beauty* is a joy for ever. KEATS, Endym., I, 1.

ii. \* It becomes *a matter of singular importance* that we should understand the causes of the movement. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 294. (= *singularly important*.)

\*\* Whether he addressed his observations to any supposed person below, or merely threw them off as a general remark is *matter of uncertainty*. Dick., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXV, 29b. (= *uncertain*.)

It became *matter of no small difficulty* to restrain the boy within reasonable bounds. Id., Ol. Twist, Ch. LI, 474. (= *not a little difficult*.)

196. The pronouns which are sometimes made to duty as indefinite persons are:

- a) personal pronouns; 1) without any determinative force: especially *we*, *you* and *they* (Ch. XXXV, 1 ff) and in Earlier English *he* (Ch. XXXV, 3, *b* and Ch. XL, 158, Obs. II); 2) with determinative force: especially those of the third person. (Ch. XXXII, 18—19.)
- b) possessive pronouns, always with determinative force, unless the reference is to a preceding indefinite pronoun. (Ch. XXXII, 13 and Ch. XXXIX, 6.)
- c) determinative pronouns. (Ch. XXXVI, 15.)
- d) the determinative *such*. (Ch. XXXVII, 14.)

In the following quotation a great many indefinite pronouns, or words used in an indefinite meaning, are crowded together.

We read of some squabble for power, that it led to a pitched battle; that *such and such* were the names of the generals and their leading subordinates; that they had each *so many* thousand infantry and cavalry, and *so many* cannon; that they arranged their forces in *this and that* order; that they manœuvred, attacked and fell back in *certain* ways; that at this part of the day *such* disasters were sustained, and at that *such* advantages gained; that in one particular movement *some* leading officer fell, while in *another a certain* regiment was decimated; that after all the changing fortunes of the fight, the victory was gained by *this or that* army; and that *so many* were killed and wounded on each side, and *so many* captured by the conquerors. SPENCER, Educ., Ch. I, 27—28.

197. The nouns which may assume the character of indefinite numerals are chiefly *abundance*, *legion*, *multitude*, *number*, *part*, *plenty*, *store* and *half*. They have already been discussed in Ch. XXXI, 58 and 59.

For the use of *abound* in the sense of *abundance*, not registered in MURRAY, no further instances have been found than the following:

I have all things and *abound* at Snowfield. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, V Ch. LI, 442.

## CHAPTER XLI.

### PRONOMINAL AND ADVERBIAL COMPOUNDS OF *SO*, *SOEVER*, AND *EVER*.

1. a) In Old English *swā*, the Present English *so*, was employed to make interrogative pronouns and adverbs more general or indefinite in meaning. It was mostly accompanied by another *swā*, which was placed before the interrogative word: *swā-hwā-swā*, *swā-hwæt-swā*, *swā-hwelc-swā*.

- i. *Hwa swa hit tobrecēð þa wurde he amansumed. Ch. n. of 675, Man. ε.*  
(= *Whoever* breaks it (sc. this statute) may he be excommunicated.)

*Hwa swa braves ðisses, braue Christ, hine þisses liues hele. Herring's Archiv, No. CXI, 283. (Northumbrian.)* (= *Whoever* despoils (or robs) any one [understood] of this, may Christ despoil him of this life's health (or well-being).

When þai er born, *what-swa* ai be, | þai say outhur "a, a," or "e, e."  
RICH. ROLLE DE HAMPOLE, *Pricke of Conscience*, 493.<sup>1)</sup> (= When they are born, *whatever* they be, they say either "a, a" or "e, e.")

- ii. *Swā hwā swā selþ ānum þurstigum mēnnum cēald wāter on mīnum naman, ne forlīest hē his mēde. SWEET, A. S. Primer, 58, 99.* (= *Whoever* gives a thirsty man cold water in my name, he loses not his reward.)

*ðā cwæð þæs Hælendes mōdor tō þām ēnum, Dōð swā hwæt swā he ēow secge. Bible John, II, 5.<sup>2)</sup>* (= Then the Redeemer's mother said to the disciples, *Do whatever* he tells you.)

*Swā hwær swā hold byð | æder beoþ earnas. Bible Matth., XXIV, 28.<sup>3)</sup>* (= *Wheresoever* the carcass is, there will be the eagles.)

- b) The Middle English representatives of these forms are *whō sō*, *what sō*, *hwich sō*, etc., the first *swā* having disappeared. Instead of *whō sō*, etc., we also meet with frequent instances of *who se*, *hwat se*, *hwich se*, etc.

- i. "Nay," quod the Somnour, "lat him seye to me | *What so* him list."  
CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, D, 1291.

But evermo *wher so* I go or ryde, | I is thyn awen clerk, swa have I seel.  
Ib., A, 4238. (seel = bliss.)

For in the sterres, clerer than is glas | Is writen, got wot, *who-so* coude it rede, | The deeth of every man, withouten drede. Ib., B, 195.

<sup>1)</sup> MORRIS & SKEAT, *Spec. of Early Eng.*

<sup>2)</sup> *Belles-Lettres Series.* <sup>3)</sup> *Lindisfarne Gosp.*

- ii. Vorþi ancre, *hwatsē hēo bēo*, alsē mūchel ase hēo ever con and mei, hōlde hire stille. The Ancren Riwe. <sup>1)</sup> (= Therefore an anchorite, *whatever* she be, as much as she ever knows and can, keeps herself quiet.)

*Hwo se wule hire inwit witen clene and feir, heo mot fleon ðe vorrideles.* Rel. Ant., I, 68 (WRIGHT and HALLIW.) <sup>2)</sup> (= *Whoever* wants to know her conscience clean and fair, she must fly the beginnings (sc. of the evil.) Compare the Latin *principiis obsta*. *Vorridel* is a southern form, corresponding to the Old English *forridel* = one who rides before.)

- c) In Late Old English also *æfre*, Modern English *ever*, was often used to render *eall*, *hwæt*, *ælc* and other pronouns indefinite. It did not, however, form compounds with these words, but stood by itself, often separated from its head-word by other elements of the sentence.

*Hwæt ðis æfre bēon scyle.* AELFRIC'S Metr. Lives of Saints, No. 23, 532. (= *Whatever* this shall be.)

Het ce cyning bannan ū here, ægðer ge be suðan Temese ge be norðan *ealþ æfre* betst wæs. Chron. of 1048. (þ = [æt]) (= The king ordered the militia to be called out, both to the south and the north of the Thames, *according as (ever)* it was best.)

- d) In Early Middle English these combinations with *ever* seem to be rare, but they are frequent in WYCLIF.

Therefore all thingis, *what euer* thingis ȝee wolen that men don to ȝou [etc.] WYCLIF, Matth., VII, 12.

*Who ewre* hath not, also this... schal be taken away fro him. Id., Luke VIII, 18.

- e) Already in Early Middle English these forms with *so* (*se*) and *ever* coalesced into combinations with *so* (or *se*) *ever*, the Modern English *soever*.

*Hwilke time se eure mon of þinchþ his mis-dede* | Oþer raþer oðer later milce he scal imeten. Moral Ode, 130. <sup>3)</sup> (= At *whatsoever* time a man remembers his misdeeds, he shall meet with mercy.)

Luve ðine nexte al swa ðe selven, *hwat manne swo* he *æure* bie. Vices and Virtues, 67, 5. (= Love thy neighbour as thyself, *whatsoever* man he be.)

- f) Besides the above forms with *so*, *soever* and *ever*, the language has compounds with *somewer* or *sumewer*, i. e. with the conjunction *som* or *sum*, instead of *so*. These forms may be traced to Middle English but survive now only in dialects. In the Southern dialects they appear with a pasasitic *d*: *somdever* or *sumdever*. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *howsomever*. and *somewer*; MASON, Eng. Gram. <sup>34</sup>, § 157, Note; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram. <sup>2</sup>, III, 449 and 555.

- i. *How somewer* the game gooth. CAXTON, Sonnes of Aymon, X, 270. 4) All men's faces are true, *whatsome'er* their hands are. Ant. & Cleop., II, 6, 102.

*Howsomever*, it was soon seen as we'd got a new parish'ner as know'd the rights and custom o'things. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. VI, 42.

- ii. There are as good (sc. fellows) here as any of them... *howsomdever*, I object nothing to Captain Cleveland. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. XXXIV, 372.

<sup>1)</sup> EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Read., 198, 19.

<sup>2)</sup> MÄTZN., Eng. Gram. <sup>2</sup>, III, 555.

<sup>3)</sup> Lamb M., S., A.

<sup>4)</sup> MURRAY.



2. a) *Whosoever* is declined for case: genitive *whossoever*, objective *whomsoever*.

i. But *whossoever* the fault, the Port Yarrock started home even more short-handed than she went out. *Times*, 1894, 296.

ii. And *whomsoe'er* along the path you meet | Bears in his cap the badge of crimson hue. *BYRON, Child of Har., I, L.*

His magic sword... kills *whomsoever* it strikes. *KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. III, 29a.*

*Whomsoever* I may honour becomes by that very fact honourable. *CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 123.*

All "peace talk," from whatever quarter it may come, and by *whomsoever* it may be countenanced, which does not accept these terms, is futile. *Times, No. 1988, 115b.*

b) Also *whoever* is declined for case: genitive *whose ever*, *whosever* or *whoever's*; objective *whomever*. The oblique cases are now, however, rarely met with, the corresponding forms with *soever* being usually substituted. Compare *JESPERSEN, Progress, § 233.*

i. \* I would not hurt a hair of her head, *whose ever* daughter she may be. *GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, V, (155).*

\*\* *Whosever* heart is set upon escape. *E. ROBINS, The Florentine Frame, 330.*

\*\*\* The lovely creatures in my imagination took the form of the Matilda, Julia, Fanny or *whoever's* image at that moment filled my breast. *Mrs. PARR Peter Trotman. 1)*

ii. I will teach *whomever* I speak with to speak civilly to me in return. *SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XVIII, 181.*

c) The ordinary genitive forms of *whoever else* and *whossoever else* seem to be, respectively, *whoever else's* and *whossoever's else*. Compare *Ch. XXXVIII, 2, Obs I.*

i. His love will never fail, *whoever else's* may. *JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 88.*

ii. I'll throw you... a good sirloin of beef, for the sake of your smile. That's honest, at least, I'll warrant, *whossoever's else* is not. *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XI, 95b.*

d) *Whoso* seems to occur only in the nominative.

e) As in the case of the interrogative and relative *who* (*Ch. XXXVIII, 2, Obs. II; Ch. XXXIV, 2, Obs. II*) there is sometimes confusion in case-forms.

1) In front position the uninflected form seems to be almost regularly used instead of the objective required by analysis. This also appears to be the regular practice in *SHAKESPEARE*, in which the objective forms *whomever* or *whome'er* have not been found. Compare *FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 334, Anm. 1.*

*Whoever* I woo, myself would be his wife. *Twelfth Night, I, 4, 42.*  
I shouldn't forget you, *whoever* I was among. *MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 67.*

*Whoever* she prays to, she is a precious saint. *EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXII, 193.*

Well, *whoever* she takes after, she's not like you, Gertrude. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, I, Ch. VI, 76.*

1) *JESPERSEN, Progress, § 233.*

- 2) The objective is apt to be used erroneously for the nominative after a preposition which does not belong to the pronoun, but to the entire clause following.

He was... resolved to defend himself to the last against *whomsoever* should assail him. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXIX, 375.

Madam, it is well known that your Grace could in those days make fools of *whomever* approached you. Id., *Abbot*, Ch. XXII, 241.

The gates and bridges of the State should be under the control of *whomsoever* should be elected Chief Magistrate. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. VI, 111.

In the ashpit was a heap of potatoes roasting, and a boiling pipkin of charred bread, called 'coffee', for the benefit of *whomsoever* should call. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XV, 117.

(Our) leaders have no higher conception of their rôle than the satisfaction of *whomsoever* makes the most noise. *The Nation*, XVIII, 18, 627a.

3. The pronominal compounds may be found in interrogative sentences, and in substantive and concessive adverbial clauses. They are, accordingly, interrogative, condensed relative, or indefinite pronouns. Those containing *what* or *which* are used not only substantively, but also conjointly. *Whatever* and *whatsoever* are sometimes equivalent to and interchangeable with *any*. See Ch. XL, 18, Obs. IV.

The adverbial compounds are only met with in interrogative sentences and adverbial clauses. In the former they are, of course, pure adverbs; in the latter they may be either conjunctions or adverbs. They are conjunctions, when the adverbial clauses they introduce denote a relation of place or time; they are adverbs, when it is a relation of concession that is expressed by the clause. For illustration see respectively Ch. XVII, 11, 20, 90 and 93, and also below.

Note α) Some clauses allow of two interpretations. Thus *I will follow you wherever you go* may be understood as equivalent to either *I will follow you to any place you may go to*, or *I will follow you, whatever may be the place you go to*. If the clause is understood in the first way, it is local, and *wherever* must be apprehended as a conjunction; if the second interpretation is put upon it, it is concessive, while *wherever* is an adverb.

It may be added that also a conditional relation is sometimes implied, i. e. *whenever* may have the value of *if at any time*.

ACRES. I shall have your good wishes, however, Jack. — ABS. *Whenever* he meets you, believe me. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 1, (258).

*Whenever* you grow tired of your box, you have my leave to sell it. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 21.

β) The relative clauses that open with *so*, *soever* or *ever* are either conditional or concessive in import, according as the uncertainty which attaches to them concerns the action or state denoted by the predicate or the person or thing indicated by the pronoun to which these words are appended.

- i. \* Let *whoso* thinketh he standeth, take heed lest he fall. BROWNING, *A Soul's Trag.*, II. (Underlying notion: If any one thinketh etc.)  
*Whoever* revolts against social laws does so at his peril. Graph., 1891, 552a.  
 \*\* *Whatever* harm was in some of them (sc. the books) was not there for me. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 28a.
  - ii. \* I beg your pardon, Mr. Long, but I think *whoever* has carried this story to you, might have been better occupied in minding his own business. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 96. (Underlying notion: the person *whoever* he may be that has carried this story to you etc.)  
*Whoever* was in that house kept deadly still. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. II, (198).  
 \*\* *Whatever* made the sound was invisible. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 117).
4. In Modern English the compounds of *so* belong exclusively to the higher literary language and are, apparently, never used in questions. The most frequent of them is *whoso*. No instances have been found of *whichso*, and of the adverbial compounds only *whereso* may now have any currency.
- whoso**, i. as a condensed relative: *Whoso* diggeth a pit shall fall therein. Bible, *Proverbs*, XXVI, 27.  
*Whoso* sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed. Id., *Gen.*, IX, 6.  
 There is danger for him who taketh the tiger cub, and danger also for *whoso* snatches a delusion from a woman. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*, I, 138.
- ii. as an indefinite pronoun: But *whoso* wandered, they would stay behind. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 19a.
- whatso**, i. used substantively: I love thee, *whatso* time or men may say | Of the poor singer of an empty day. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*
- ii. used conjointly: His fleet held *whatso* keel could swim | From Jutland to Land's End. *Ib.*, *Prol.*, 7a.
- adverbial compounds: We scarce can think that ye will try again... To seek your own land, *whereso* that may be. *Ib.*, *Prol.*, 4a.  
 Woe betide a liar, *whenso* I get hold of him. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXVI, 151.
5. Compounds of *soever* are now much more common than those of *so*, but also belong, in the main, rather to the literary than the colloquial language. They also seem to be excluded from interrogative sentences.
- whomsoever**, i. as a condensed relative: I leave it to be settled by *whomsoever* it may concern, whether the tendency of this work be altogether to reward parental tyranny or reward filial disobedience. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXXI, 245.  
 You will submit it to Mr. Gifford, and to *whomsoever* you please, besides. BYRON, *Let. to Mr. Murray*.  
 There was a law in the city of Athens which gave to its citizens the power of compelling their daughters to marry *whomsoever* they pleased. LAMB, *Tales*, *Mids.*, 26.
- ii. as an indefinite pronoun: But yet you look not well upon him; for, *whosoever* you take him to be, he is Ajax. *Troil. & Cres.*, II, 1, 70.  
 By *whomsoever* majesty is beheld for the first time, there will always be

experienced a vague surprise bordering on disappointment. Ch. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XX, 266.

For good she was and true, | But loved me with a love beyond all love | in women, *whomsoever* I have known. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 1285.

**whatsoever**, i. as a condensed relative, \*used substantively: *Whatsoever* comes athwart his affection ranges evenly with mine. Much ado, II, 2, 6.

\*\* used conjointly: And *whatsoever* cunning fiend it was | That wrought upon thee so preposterously | Hath got the voice in hell for excellence. Henry V, II, 2, III.

Such a pothor | As if that *whatsoever* god who leads him | Were slyly crept into his human powers | And gave him graceful posture. Coriol., II, 1, 235. (Thus also Son. XXXVI, 9.)

ii. as an indefinite pronoun: And *whatsoever* you will employ me in, | Were it to call king Edward's widow sister, | I will perform it to enfranchise you. Rich. III, I, 1, 108.

And *whatsoever* else shall hap to-night, | Give it an understanding, but no tongue. Hamlet., I, 2, 249.

adverbial compounds: *Wheresoever* the strong tide met with an impediment, his gaze paused for an instant. Dick., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. I, 3.

I was determined ... to call him to account *whensoever* we met. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 965.

However Will had changed his air, or *whithersoever* he transported his carcass, he carried a rascal in his skin. Ib., Ch. XC, 965.

John never smiled at any one's religious beliefs, *howsoever* foolish. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXVI, 283.

Welcome, sir, *whencesoe'er*. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, I, 225.

6. Obs. I. In concessive clauses the compounds of *soever* are sometimes split up into their component parts by the word(s) modified.

O spirit of love! how quick and fresh art thou, | That, notwithstanding thy capacity | Receiveth as the sea, nought enters there, | Of *what validity and pitch soe'er*, | But falls into abatement and low price. Twelfth Night, I, 1, 12.

He shows that the follies of the stage and court had never been accounted too sacred for ridicule, *how great soever* the persons might be that patronised them. Spectator, No. XXXIV.

She ordered him to be excluded from her house, by *whomsoever* he might be introduced, and *what reason soever* he might give for entering it. JOHNSON, *Savage*, (306).

*How falr, how young, how soft soe'er* he (sc. Love) seem, | Full from the fount of Joy's delicious springs | Some bitter o'er the flowers its bubbling venom flings. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, LXXXII.

II. *Soever* is sometimes attached to a word-group whose first element is an interrogative.

And *what man of themsoever* of that sweet thing did eat | Had no will to bear back tidings or to get him back again. W. MORRIS, *Odyssey*, IX, 94.

III. The bare *soever* with the value of the concessive *what(so)ever* is sometimes found after *all* or *any*. Compare I, c and Obs. IV, below.

i. The Lord Chancellor of that Court has died the death of all Lord Chancellors in all Courts, and of all authorities in all places under *all names soever*, where false pretences are made, and where injustice is done. Dick., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXII, 280.



- By which law *all things soe'er* | Are held. BRIDGES, *Eros & Psyche*.<sup>1)</sup>  
 ii. To all who are perplexed in *any way soever*. NEWMAN, I, Par. Sermon, I, 267.<sup>1)</sup>

The crown summoned to its councils men in *any way soever illustrious*.  
 Bookman 1892, 44a.

The application of the bare *soever* illustrated by the following quotations seems to be very rare:

I conceive it far below the Dignity... of human Nature... to be engaged in *any Party, the most plausible soever*, upon such servile Conditions. SWIFT, *Contests Nobles & Comm.*, V. 1) (Compare Ch. XL, 18, Obs. XIV, a.) At last I got to my spy-hill (as I had begun to call it), although I never should have known it but for what it looked on. And even to know this last again required *all the eyes of love, soever sharp and vigilant*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XLIII, 267. (*Soever* has the value of *however*.)

IV. The concessive *whatsoever*, like *whatever* (8 Obs. III), is often used to emphasize a negative, or the universal notion expressed by *any*.

- i. It is certain that he formed *no criminal connexion whatsoever*. BOSWELL, *Life of Johns.*, 19b.

Dr. Grantly has *no sort of jurisdiction* over me *whatsoever*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXX, 263.

- ii. I must likewise warn you strictly against the least degree of fondness to your husband before *any witness whatsoever*. SWIFT, *Let. to a Young Lady on her Marriage*, (472a).

On *any terms whatsoever*, you will not grudge to wander in such a neighbourhood for a while. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, I, 2.

He would refuse to do *anything whatsoever*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 120.

Didn't I tell you I wasn't to be disturbed by *anybody whatsoever*. PUNCH, No. 3673, 387.

Sometimes also we find *whatsoever* emphasizing the universal idea expressed by *all*. Compare 1, c.

That hee take the like notice of *all whatsoever els* belongeth to husbandry or grazing. THOMAS KYD, *The Hovsholders Philosophie*. (Boas's ed. of Kyd's Works, 269, 7.)

Therefore a good Huswife should so provide that *all things whatsoever*... may be sparingly disposed. *Ib.*, 272, 9.

If a known scoundrel or blockhead but chance to be touched upon, a whole legion is up in arms, and it becomes the common cause of *all scribblers, booksellers and printers whatsoever*! (?), Pref. to POPE, *The Dunciad*. *All things whatsoever* that we look upon, are emblems to us of the highest God. CARLYLE, *Hero-Worship*, I, 9.

I would advise our rulers to give up *all land adventures whatsoever*. *The New Age*, No. 215, 176b.

Observe also the following unusual combinations:

But *such things whatsoever* as are brought into the house. KYD, *Works*, 271, 10.  
 By *some mischance or hynderaunce whatsoever*. *Ib.*, 271, 33.

- V. *Whatsoever*, like *whatever* (8, Obs. IV), either as a relative or an indefinite pronoun, may be followed by partitive *of*. For illustration see Ch. XXIX, 26, b.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

VI. SHAKESPEARE sometimes has *whatsoever* or *whatsoe'er* where *who(so)ever* would be expected. Compare A. SCHMIDT, s.v. *whatsoe'er* and *whatsoever*.

Why, rude companion, *whatsoe'er* thou be, | I know thee not. HENRY VI, B, IV, 10, 33.

7. *Ever* is now the ordinary word which is appended to interrogative words to make them more general or indefinite in meaning.

The pronominal compound *whichever* is rarely found in questions, but is frequent enough in either substantive or concessive clauses. In both it implies an analogous notion as is expressed by the interrogative *which*. Compare Ch. XXXVIII, 6 and Ch. XXXIX, 26, Obs. VI. In passing it may here be observed that of *whichso* or *whichever*, in one or other of these functions, no instances have been found.

Of the adverbial compounds of *ever* only *however* is at all common in questions, the others being practically confined to concessive clauses.

Finally it may be observed that according to MURRAY (s.v. *ever*, 8, *d* and *e*), the interrogative combinations are "sometimes (improperly) written as single words", while the relative and adverbial combinations "are now always written as single words".

**whoever**, i. as an interrogative pronoun: *Who ever* believes his own dear intimate companion to be fit for the highest promotion. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XX, 43.

*Whoever* would have thought of seeing you here? HALL CAINE, Christian, II, 268.

*Whoever* thought otherwise of a clever opponent? MRS. WARD, Marc., I, 197.

ii. as a condensed relative: *Whoever* dips too deep will find death in the pot. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *dip*.

The maxim was that *whoever* possessed the coast had a right to all the territory inland as far as the Pacific. THACK., Virg., Ch. VI, 62.

He let blood to *whoever* wished for that refreshment. WALT. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I.

iii. as an indefinite pronoun: *Whoever* said so, it is false. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 439.

**whatever**, i. as an interrogative pronoun: *Whatever* is going to happen to the girl when the grandfather is gone? HALL CAINE, Christian, I, 22.

*What ever* do you mean? MRS. WARD, Dav. Grieve, II, 47.

ii. as a condensed relative, \*used substantively: *Whatever* is, is right. POPE, Essay on Man, I, 294.

Cedric darted at the forward damsel a glance of hasty resentment: but Rowena and *whatever* belonged to her, were privileged and secure from his anger. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. III, 31.

*Whatever* belonging to Madame's work-table or toilet she could lay her hands on, she stole and hid. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. X, 113.

*Whatever* we do, we should do openly and fearlessly. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 15.

\*\*used conjointly: *Whatever money* the schoolmaster possessed, he must have had about his person at the time of his disappearance. WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 374.

In every age the wealthy will surround themselves with *whatever comforts* can be procured. BESANT, London, I, Ch. I, 5.

*Whatever thought* was in his mind, he appears to have spoken it out generously. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXVII, 701.

You may take *whatever* books you choose. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 51.

- iii. as an indefinite pronoun, \* used substantively: *Whatever* was to happen during the day, she must at any cost have control over her outward actions. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VI, 116.

\*\* used conjointly: The art of communicating instruction, of *whatever kind*, is much to be valued. BOSWELL, *Life of Johns.*, 21b.

*Whatever other objection* may be urged to that most unamiable personage. TOZER, *Byron's Child Harold's Pilgr.*, 51.

Observe the pregnant meaning of *whatever* in: He was obliged to submit himself wholly to the players, and admit, with *whatever reluctance*, the emendations of Mr. Cibber. JOHNSON, *Savage*, (310).

Mr. Savage had now no hopes of life, but from the mercy of the crown, which was very earnestly solicited by his friends, and which, with *whatever difficulty* the story may obtain belief, was obstructed by his mother. *Ib.*, (304).

**whichever**, i. as an interrogative pronoun: *Which ever Brown* do you mean? FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*, s.v. *ever*.

- ii. as a condensed relative pronoun: Rip Van Winkle... was one of those happy mortals... who take the world easy, eat white bread or brown, *whichever* can be got with least thought or trouble. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 35. (The substantive clause introduced by *whichever* stands by way of apposition to the object — *white bread or brown* — of the preceding clause.)

The writing stated... that... the gold and the crucifix belonged to *whichever* of his descendants should find it. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXVII, 230.

You can thank *whichever* of your stars has brought you to this conclusion. *Ib.*, Ch. XIX, 160.

- iii. as an indefinite pronoun, \* used substantively or absolutely: The latest improvement or innovation, *whichever* you wish to call it. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 8.

*Whichever* of these two things happens, the controlling authority will no longer be either House of Parliament. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5555, 2a.

*Whichever* of them (sc. the newspapers) he gives his faith to, he will before long find himself bound to it as though it were his religion or his belief in the bank of England. *The New Statesman*, Vol. VI, No. 145, 344a.

\*\* used conjointly: The Spectator thinks, *whichever* way the situation is looked at, it must be admitted that the Turks are in an exceedingly difficult position. *Ib.*, No. 5424, 16c.

They (sc. the Turks) must make up their minds to be on one side or the other, and if they do not, they will fall between two stools, and will be sure to be injured, if not destroyed, *whichever side* wins. *Spectator (Westm. Gaz.)*, No. 5424, 16c).

- adverbial compounds, i. in questions: *However* do you manage that? MURRAY, s.v. *however*, 5. (For instances see also FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*, s.v. *ever*.)

But *whyever* did you go and marry such a cad as "Beauty" Carlyon? MARIE CORELLI, *Murder of Delicia*, Ch. IX, 225.

- ii. in adverbial clauses: She has been the belle and spirit of the company *wherever* she went. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

*Wherever* my back was, there I imagined somebody always to be. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 39b.

They encountered the enemy *wherever* he showed himself, and defeated him. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 55.

*Whenever* a regular attack was made, the assailants invariably came to grief. *Ib.*, Ch. XIII, 185.

I can leave *whenever* you want to get rid of me. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XXXIX, 366. (= *as soon as*.)

8. Obs. I. It will have been observed that the interrogative compounds of *ever* are distinctly emotional, so that the questions in which they occur are often tantamount to emphatic statements.

Of approximately the same force as the emotional *ever* are the phrases used in the following quotations, the majority of which, however, impart to the sentence a colloquial or vulgar colouring.

- i. *What the devil* business has he to stop up so late? DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VII, 306.

To *what the devil* does this tend? THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 34.

\*\* *Who the deuce* was she? id., Virg., Ch. VII, 70.

When *the deuce* was that? ib., Ch. XCII, 1001.

\*\*\* *Where the dickens* is she? Ch. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 4.

\*\*\*\* *What the foul friend* can detain the master so long? SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. V, 64.

\*\*\*\*\* *What a plague* means my niece, to take the death of her brother thus? Twelfth Night, I, 3, 1.

*What a pox* does this Foresight mean by this civility? CONGREVE, Love for Love, II, 2, (236).

\*\*\*\*\* And *whom a mercy's name* have we here? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXII, 328.

- ii. \* *Why, what on earth* did you do that for? DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 165.

*Who on earth* is this? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXII, 328.

*Where on earth* can the bullets have gone? MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. XVII, 232.

\*\* I wondered *what in the world* Miss Matty could do. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 257.

\*\*\* *What in the name of wonder's* this? SWEET, Old Chapel.

- iii. Do have the kindness to think with yourself in *what earthly* way I have injured you. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 119.

*What earthly* difference could it make to the working men, whether Tory Squire or Liberal capitalist ruled over them? JEROME, The Master of Mrs. Chilvers, I, (11).

- II. The interrogative compounds of *ever* are sometimes split up into their component parts by other elements of the sentence.

"*What has ever* got your precious father then?" said Mrs. Cratchit. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 65.

*What have I ever* done that you should treat me thus? G. ELIOT, Middlemarch.

- III. The concessive *whatever*, like *whatsoever* (6 Obs. IV), is often used to emphasize a negative, or the universal notion implied by *any*.

- i. Marley was dead: to begin with. There is *no doubt whatever* about that. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 5.

Each grain will go straight to its intended place, and *nowhere else whatever*. HARDY, The Mayor of Casterbridge, Ch. XXIV, 202. (Apparently an unusual combination.)

- ii. I will support my claim against *any man whatever*. SHER., Riv., V, 3. All the spectator saw before him was several thousand pair of optics, staring straight forward, wholly divested of *any expression whatever*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 31.



Sometimes also we find it emphasizing the universal idea expressed by *all*.

He had regarded it (sc. the press) as the great arranger and distributor of *all future British terrestrial affairs whatever*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLIII, 387. A curious application of *whatever*, apparently a very rare one, is that instanced in:

It sets me ill to be complaining *whatever*, and me but new out of yon de'il's haystack. STEVENSON, *Catriona*, Ch. XII, 122. (T.)

- IV. The relative or indefinite *whatever* may be followed by partitive *of*, which sometimes appears to be redundant, but is indispensable when the noun(s) to which *whatever* belongs is (are) separated from it by other elements of the sentence.

- i. \* *Whatever of guilt, crime...* can be found to chequer life, my Last Speech of the Tolbooth should illustrate. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 25.

*Whatever of merit* it may have possessed, we are unable to judge. G. G. S., *Life of Sheridan*, 10.

\*\* *Whate'er*, in docile childhood or in youth, | He had imbibed *of fear or darker thought* | Was melted all away. WORDSW., *Excursion*, I, 406.

- ii. *Whatever of warmth and love* the deceased man might have had, .. he had shut them up within himself. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

- V. *Whatever*, like the compounds of *thing* (Ch. IV, 17, c) and some other indefinite pronouns or numerals and the interrogative *what* (Ch. XXIX, 27, Obs. II), may also be accompanied by an adjective without partitive *of*. (She) sees *whatever fair and splendid* | Lay betwixt his home and hers. TEN., *Lord of Burl.*, vii.

## CHAPTER XLII.

### NUMERALS.

#### CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. The cardinal numerals are *one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen, twenty, twenty-one, etc., thirty, etc., forty, etc., fifty, etc., one (or a) hundred, one (or a) hundred and one, etc., two hundred, etc., three hundred, etc., one (or a) thousand, one (or a) thousand and one, etc., ten thousand, etc., one (or a) hundred thousand, etc., one (or a) million, one (or a) million and one, etc., one million nine hundred and ninety-nine thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine, one (or a) billion, etc.*

Who'd think the moon was *two hundred and thirty-six thousand eight hundred and forty-seven* miles off? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 260.

2. Obs. I. The hyphen is placed only between the tens and the units, and the hundreds and the thousands are connected with either the tens or the units by *and*.

- II. The numerals in *teen* have shifting stress, i. e.:

- a) they have even stress when not followed by a noun: *How old are you? Thirteen, etc. How many were you? We were thirteen, etc.;*

except in continuous counting, when the accent is thrown on the first syllable: *Thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, etc.*

- b) they have the accent on the first syllable when followed by a stressed syllable: *Thirteen days, fourteen years, etc.*  
Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 922 and § 1890.

- III. Before *hundred, thousand* and *million* the numeral *one* is placed when one-ness is to be expressed more or less emphatically. This is, accordingly, done a) when a higher number precedes; b) in the language of numeration; c) in continuous counting; d) in stating the number of a series, such as a date, the page or paragraph of a book, etc.; and e) usually in statutory style. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 3.

When the notion of one-ness is not a prominent one in the speaker's or writer's mind, the indefinite article takes the place of *one*.

Neither the indefinite article nor *one* is used after another modifier.

- i. The number of prisoners was *one hundred and forty-six*. MAC., Clive.  
How many times does *one hundred* go into three thousand? RIDER HAGGARD,  
JESS, Ch. X, 86.
- ii. A pestilence... swept away, in six months, more than *a hundred thousand*  
beings. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. II, 190.  
The dead bodies, *a hundred and twenty-three* in number, were flung into  
the pit promiscuously. Id., Clive, (514a).  
In the Transvaal *a million* natives lived peaceably in the midst of them.  
FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 46.
- iii. \* *King Lear's hundred knights*. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch.  
III, 41.  
\*\* How they cringe and bow to that Creole, because of *her hundred*  
*thousand pounds*! THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 14.  
\*\*\* I have only got these fifty pounds towards *the hundred and sixty*.  
G. ELIOT, Mid., III, Ch. XXIV, 181.  
\*\*\*\* Of all those *those thousand* subtle passions... he had no conception.  
VICTORIA CROSS, Life's Shop Window, Ch. I, 20.

IV. *Million* is used partly as a numeral, partly as a collective noun.

- a) It is used as a numeral, 1) when it is part of a complex numeral,  
i.e. when connected with (an)other numeral(s); 2) when, not con-  
nected with any other numeral, it is immediately followed by its  
head-word.
- b) It is used as a collective noun, 1) when it is not connected with  
any other numeral and not followed by a noun; 2) when it is not con-  
nected with any other numeral and is followed by partitive *of* + noun.  
The construction mentioned under b, 2) varies with that mentioned  
under a, 2), but is less frequent.
- i. \* His opinion was that at the close of the seventeenth century the  
population of England was a little under *five million two hundred*  
*thousand souls*. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 279.  
\*\* In the Transvaal *a million natives* lived peaceably in the midst of  
them. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 46.  
There are *fifteen hundred million human beings* alive to-day. MAR.  
CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. I, 7.
- ii. \* In 1889, the last year of the heavy postage, the number of letters  
delivered in Great Britain and Ireland was *eighty-two millions*.  
McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 16.  
We repented and voted over *twenty millions* to clear ourselves of the  
reproach. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 43.  
Baron Hirsch is said to have left *twenty millions* sterling, apart from  
his real estate. II. Lond. News.  
The total German losses to date may be reckoned at about *two and a*  
*quarter millions*. Times.  
\*\* Was a people not justified in rising against authority when all their  
laws had been trodden under foot, "not once only, but *a million of*  
*times*?" MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. IV, 835b.  
There were only *two millions of human beings* in England, Scotland  
and Ireland taken together. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 278.  
The mere contributions levied by the invaders amounted, it was said  
to more than *a hundred millions of dollars*. Id., Fred.

Note a) When understood as a numeral, as in the case mentioned  
under a), *million* does not, of course, take the mark of the plural. But  
the singular form may also be retained when *million* is understood

as a noun. See Ch. XXV, 29. The arbitrariness of practice which the language exhibits in this respect appears from comparing the quotations in Ch. IV, 6, c; Ch. XXV, 29, and those cited above, with the following:

- i. \* She saw the Royal Gardens blaze before her with *a hundred million of lamps*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 102.  
 \*\* In the first week of operation of the Act *sixteen and a half million of stamps* were bought, and presumably licked. PUNCH, No. 3709, 129a.
- ii. *Ten millions and a half insured persons* have become members of Approved Societies. *Id.*, No. 3709, 129a.

β) Usage also seems to vary in mentioning the different parts of a complex numeral separately.

- i. 42.706.835. Forty-two *millions*, seven hundred and six thousand, eight hundred and thirty-five. YOUNG, *Arithmetic*.
- ii. 123.765.215. One hundred and twenty-three *million*, seven hundred and sixty-five thousand, two hundred and fifteen. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*. (Thus throughout the book.)

γ) Of *a thousand thousand*, as an equivalent of *a million*, only the following instance has come to hand:

The *thousand thousand* imitations. CARLYLE, *Goethe*, 26. (Cassell.)

Also the counting by thousands in the case of numbers exceeding a million seems to be unusual.

The inhabitants (sc. of London), who are now at least *nineteen hundred thousand*, were then probably little more than half a million. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 340.

V. The Dutch and Old English method of mentioning the units before the tens, connecting them by *and*, is not seldom followed with numerals containing *twenty*. The practice may also be fairly common with those containing *thirty*, but beyond this it is rare. The unusual arrangement mostly imparts some emotional colouring to the sentence.

- i. A young lady of *six-and-twenty*, whose eyes were perfectly wide open, and a luckless boy of eighteen, blind with love and infatuation, were in that chamber together. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 75.  
 Eight miles an hour, for twenty or *five-and-twenty* hours... who has not borne these evils in the jolly old times? *Ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 79.  
 He was in no hurry, and could afford to wait any time—till he was *one-and-twenty*. *Ib.*, 82.

Does a man sleep the better who has *four-and-twenty* hours to doze in? *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 907.

- ii. This office... paid her no less than *six-and-thirty* pounds a-year, when no other company in London would give her more than twenty-four. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10. (Note the varied practice.)  
 Fancy *four-and-thirty* boys glaring at you all the time you are preaching and *four-and-thirty* pencils scribbling down your words almost before they drop out of your mouth. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 66).
- iii. Dombey was *eight-and-forty* years of age, son about *eight-and-forty* minutes. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I.
- iv. Do you think that I will disorder my health by eating *three-and-seventy* fish in this fashion? CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 305.

VI. The placing of the noun modified in the body of a complex numeral is confined to poetry.

They were *three hundred spears and three*. SCOTT, *Lay*, II, xxxiii.



- VII. In speaking the English generally count by hundreds up to 1900, especially in dates. Thus 1891 is read *eighteen hundred and ninety-one*. But dates from 1000 to 1099 are generally read with *thousand*. SWEET'S observation (in N. E. Gr., § 1166) that in mentioning these dates we also, as a rule, count by hundreds, is not borne out by the evidence that has come to hand.

The Duke of Normandy landed in Sussex in the year *one thousand and sixty-six*. SCOTT, *Tales Grandf.*, 10b.

In the middle of the month of October, in the year *one thousand and sixty-six*, the Normans and the English came front to front. DICKENS.

It was the year of Our Lord *one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five*. Id., *Tale of Two Cities*, I, Ch. I, 15.

Sometimes the other dates are also read with *thousand*, especially in the language of the law.

The first part of the following poem was written in the year *one thousand seven hundred and ninety-seven*. COLERIDGE, Pref. to Christ.

On the morning of the thirteenth of May, *one thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 4.

In the year of Our Lord, *one thousand, eight hundred, and ninety-nine*. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 3, a. (Statutory dating.)

In mentioning dates *hundred and* is often suppressed: *nineteen-sixteen* (1916). Thus also *ten-sixty-six* (1066), etc.

- VIII. While SHAKESPEARE'S practice of stating numbers is practically the same as that in use in Present English, we find frequent deviations in the Authorized Version (1611), especially as to the use of *and*. See SATTLER, E. S. XVII.

a) Thus we find *and* also:

- 1) frequently when the tens precede the units: What man of you, having an hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, doth not leave the *ninety and nine* in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost, until he find it? LUKE, XV, 4.

In the *twenty and sixth* year of Asa king of Judah began Elah the son of Baasha to reign over Israel in Tirzah, two years. KINGS, I, XVI, 8.

In the following quotations this practice is imitated: In Germany as elsewhere, the *ninety-and-nine* Public Men can for the most part be but train-bearers to the hundredth. CARL., *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. III, 16. There are always hard cases under every law, and a British characteristic is to be more concerned about these than about the smooth working of the legislation in regard to the *ninety and nine* cases that are not hard. WESTM. GAZ., No. 4913, 1c.

*And* is regularly used in stating multiples of *thousand*: So that all which fell that day of Benjamin were *twenty and five thousand* men that drew the sword: all these were men of valour. JUDGES, XXI, 16.

- 2) as a connecting word between hundreds and thousands: Those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Reuben, were *forty and six thousand and five hundred*. NUMB., I, 21.

On the other hand *and* is not used to connect hundreds with tens. And the years of the life of Kohath were *an hundred thirty and three* years. EXOD., VI, 18.

- b) In numbers containing hundreds of thousands the multiples of the thousands were stated separately and connected by *and*.

And the booty ... was *six hundred thousand and seventy thousand and five thousand* sheep. Num b., XXXI, 32.

- IX. a) Secondary forms of *two* are *twain* and *tway*, the latter formed by apocope from the former, representing the nominative and accusative Old English *twēgen*, *two* being the descendant of the feminine and neuter nominative and accusative *twā*. *Twain* is frequent in SHAKESPEARE and in the Authorized Version. In Present English it is almost obsolete, being confined to quasi-biblical language. It is used conjointly, absolutely, substantively and predicatively. When conjoint, the noun always precedes. *Tway* is now rarely employed, even as an archaism.

- i. It (sc. the nag) bore his wife and children *twain*. SCOTT, Lay, IV, v, 6.  
 ii. I must become a borrower of the night, | For a dark hour or *twain*. Mac b., III, 1, 28.

If, for my sake, | Thou wilt o'ertake us, hence a mile or *twain*. Lear, IV, 1, 44.

- iii. O Hamlet, thou hast cleft my heart in *twain*. Ham l., III, 4, 154.  
 Whether of the *twain* will ye that I release unto you? Bible, Matth., XXVII, 21.

One elbow at each end, | And in the midst an elbow, it (sc. the settee) received, | United yet divided, *twain* at once. COWPER, Task, I, 77.  
 Whilst you are true to me, nothing but death shall part us *twain*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. III, 45.

It is a noble sight to see an honest man cleave his own heart in *twain* and fling away the baser part of it. Ib., Ch. III, 47.

Meantime Tess had hastily dressed herself; and the *twain*, lighting a lantern, went out to the stable. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. IV, 33.

- iv They were but *twain* and purpos'd quick return. MILTON, Comus, 284.  
 Observe that *twain* sometimes stands redundantly after *both*. Compare Ch. XL, 34, Note.

*Both twain* shall come forth out of one land. Bible, Ezek., XXI, 19.

- b) In the language of certain games occur *ace*, *deuce*, *trey*, *quatre*, *cinq* (*cing*) and *six* (*size*).

*Cinq* is also found in the *Cinque Ports*.

- c) The collective nouns *dozen* (*half-a-dozen*), *half-dozen*, *score* (*half-a-score*) and *half-score* are on a par with such numerals as *hundred*, *thousand* and *million*, when they stand without partitive *of*. Compare Ch. IV, 6, b.

- dozen.** i. \* Rawdon related a dozen amusing *anecdotes*. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XXII, 232.

\*\* On making a roll-call of the glass, it was calculated that at least a dozen or so tumblers, *four or five dozen* wines, eight water-bottles, and a proper quantity of ice-plates were requisite. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. III, 314.

\*\*\* Drive these *dozen* sheep into the barn-porch. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. II, 10b.

- ii. He had not read *half-a-dozen* lines, when the expression of his face began to change. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXVIII, 300b.

*Half-a-dozen* men in swift succession propose for her hand. Rev. of Rev., No. 189, 252b.

iii. The officers' house, or room, was of logs, like the *half-dozen* others within the fort. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LII, 543.

Maria brings a few twopenny trinkets and a *half-dozen* guineas to Mr. Esmond. *Ib.*, Ch. LIV, 562.

**score.** i. \* My servant has seen them together a *score* times. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. VII, 36.

The Percies, you said — and Westmoreland — and a *score* names as good. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 13.

\*\* Across *two score* towns I saw the great metropolis itself. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 68.

\*\*\* He turns me at *three-score* years and *ten* adrift upon the earth. READE, it is never too late to mend, I, Ch. IX, 97.

\*\*\*\* Napoleon's militant progress through the *first score* years of the nineteenth century. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 411.

ii. She had been engaged to be married a *half-score* times in Ireland. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

d) In colloquial language we sometimes find *duck's egg* (also *duck-egg*) and a *century* for respectively 0 and 100.

i. Their captain was out for the dreaded *duck's egg*. *Standard*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The special jury... valued the character of a Privy Councillor... at a *miserable "century"*, or just £ 100 sterling. *Sat. Rev.*, 1896, 7 March.

The saviour of a "*century*" of lives. *Punch*, 1896, 5 Sept.

Mr. G... had the honour of scoring the only "*centuries*" of the match. *Times*, 1896, 26 June.

A man who had knocked up a *fine century* in the Varsity match. AUSTEN PHILIPS, *An Errantry* (*Strand Mag.*, 1912, May).

X. The cardinal numerals have no declension for the genitive, except for such combinations as a *day* (*year*, etc.) or *two*.

A *day* or *two's* shooting in September. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, II, 112.<sup>2)</sup>

### 3. The cardinal numerals are used:

a) conjointly: *ten* boys, a *hundred* years.

b) absolutely: At length a generation more refined | Improved the simple plan; made three legs *four*. COWPER, *Task*, I, 29.

Of the eight officers who commanded this little force under him, only *two* had ever been in action, and *four* of the *eight* were factors of the company, whom Clive's example had induced to offer their services. MAC., *Clive*, (506a).

There was the Lord Mayor's own daughters; Alderman Dobbin's gals; Sir Charles Hopper's *three*, who have the great house in Baker Street; and your humble servant. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

c) Substantively; only of persons. In this case we may also assume some noun (*person*, *man*, etc.) to be understood. Compare 4, b.

The many fail, the *one* succeeds. *Proverb*.

*Two* of a trade never agree. *Proverb*.

Such hath it been — shall be — beneath the sun | The many still must labour for the *one*! BYRON, *Cors.*, I, VIII.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> FLÜGEL, s. v. *two*.

There *two* stood arm'd, and kept the door. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1239.

d) predicatively, either as nominal part of the predicate, or as predicative adnominal adjunct, in a variety of applications.

1) as nominal part of the predicate: i. The tasks that lay before the Ministerialists were obviously *two* in number. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 1b.

Our interests in this matter are *two*, and *two* only. *ib.*, No. 5573, 2a. The answers to these questions are *two*. *ib.*, No. 6059, 3a.

We were alone in forecasting its failure (sc. of the Coalition Ministry). Our grounds were *two*. *The New Age*, No. 1207, 1a.

The cases are *six*. *Pub. School Latin Prim.*, § 14.

ii. \* We are *seven*. WORDSWORTH.

\*\* We were *two of us*, and I think there was only one mind between us. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVIII, 833.

iii. \* The garrison is not *two hundred* strong. COLERIDGE.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The economists have had their say pretty firmly, and they mustered some *fifty* strong. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 1b. (*To muster* assumes the character of a copula through the loss of the reflective pronoun.)

iv. That which promised happiness when we were *one* in heart, is fraught with misery now that we are *two*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 50.

In all things that are purely social, we can be as separate as fingers, yet *one* as the hand in all things essential to mutual progress. BOOKER WASH. (*The New Statesman*, No. 137, 151a).

v. Stand-under and under-stand is all *one*. *Two Gent.*, II, 5, 34.

It is all *one* what course you take. WEBST., *Dict.*

vi. Her veins are *million* but her heart is *one*. W. WATSON, *Poems*, 106.<sup>2)</sup>

2) as predicative adnominal adjunct: i. \* We went a *hundred*, mother, and came home *forty-four*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XXVIII, 212a.

\*\* Can you lie *three* in a bed? GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XXI, (363).

Jeames slept *two* in a bed, *four* in a room, and that room a cellar very likely. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXV, 255.

There were two turn-up beds in the room, and we slept *three* in a bed. CH. KINGSLEY, *Cheap Clothes and Nasty*, 67.

\*\*\* If they (sc. children) were young phoenixes, indeed, that were born but *one* in a year, there might be a pretext (sc. for pride). CH. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, *A Bachelor's Complaint*.

e) abstractly, i. e. without any association with any particular persons, animals or things.

*One* from *twenty* leaves nineteen. The quotient of *one* divided by *nought* is infinity. *Twelve* is to *four* as *three* is to *one*. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 5.

"Stay'd it long?" — "While one with moderate haste might tell a *hundred*." *Hamlet*, I, 2, 237.

He looked absently towards Rainbarrow while one might have counted *twenty*. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. VI, 75.

4. Some idiomatic applications of numerals, irrespective of their grammatical function, deserve special mention.

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 178.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.



- a) For want of distributive numerals, such as Latin *singuli*, *bini*, etc., English mostly uses phrases consisting of two identical cardinal numerals, connected by the preposition *by*: *one by one*, *two by two*, etc.  
 As the sun got higher, ... they gradually *one by one* awoke. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36a.

He drew the words out *one by one* through his grinded teeth. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 198.

Note a) Instead of *one by one*, *two by two*, etc., we also find *one and one*, *two and two*, etc., especially in the older writers. See MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 16, b. For such phrases as *by (in) twos and threes*, which are of much the same value, see 6, a, 2, Note a.

They raised brave Musgrave from the field, | And laid him on his bloody shield; | On levell'd lances, *four and four*, | By turns, the noble burden bore. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, xxx, 5.

The knights come riding *two and two*. TEN., *The Lady of Shal.*, II, III.

And with her shall there go | Fair maidens bearing torches *two and two*. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Story of Cupid and Psyche*, 100a.

Five hundred innocent burghers were tied *two and two*, back to back, and drowned like dogs in the river IJssel. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. VIII, 497a.

The nuns were obliged to walk *three and three*. FL. MARRYAT, *Blood of the Vampire*, 27. (T.)

β) A similar notion may also be expressed by a plural numeral preceded by the preposition *by* or *in* (6, a), and by the adjective *single* or the adverb *singly*, the latter being, apparently, the usual form.

i. Misfortunes never come *single*. *Spectator*, No. VII.

ii. Misfortunes, saith the adage, never come *singly*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXII, 123b.

Misfortunes never come *singly* in this world to any one. JEROME, *Paul Kelter*, I, Ch. I, 12a.

- b) To denote the ratio of frequency of a number with regard to a larger number we use the numerals indicating those numbers, connecting them by the prepositions *among*, *in* or *out of*.

In the case of a high ratio the two numerals are almost regularly two successive ones. When, on the other hand, the ratio is a low one, as is usually the case in negative sentences and in questions, the first numeral is mostly *one* or, at least, a small number.

The ordinary preposition in these phrases is *in*; *among* appears but occasionally, while *out of* may be frequent enough, and generally takes the place of *in* when another *in* precedes. *Out of* seems to be used to the exclusion of either *among* or *in*, when it is not a ratio of frequency, but a certain part of a specified number that is referred to.

*among*. I have been curious enough to take a list of several hundred words, in a sermon of a new beginner, which not *one of his hearers among a hundred* could possibly understand. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Clergyman*, (465b).

*in*. i. I will appeal to any man whether at least *ninety in twenty* of those perplexing words might not be changed into easy ones. *Ib.*, (466a).

The faults are *nine in ten* owing to affectation. *Ib.*, (466b).

ii. \* Could the England of 1685 be, by some magical process, set before our eyes, we should not know *one landscape in a hundred* or *one building in ten thousand*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. III, 277.

We doubt whether *one in ten*, even among English gentlemen of highly cultivated minds, can tell who won the battle of Buxar. *Id.*, *Clive*, (497a).

Not *one* novelist in a thousand ever does tell us the real story of their hero. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 59.

\*\* If your respectable family cry out because you marry the curate's daughter, *one in them*, let us say, of his charming children... fancy the feelings of Lady Maria Hagan's friends... on the announcement of this marriage. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXX, 740.

It made the chance *one in a thousand*. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXVII, 228. *out of*. i. To be honest, as this world goes, is to be *one man picked out of ten thousand*. Haml., II, 2, 179.

I hold it as a rule, that *nine men out of ten* are unfortunate in their first attachments. Miss BRADDON, *Captain Thomas*.

ii. There have six of them gone in these few last years. *Six out of twelve*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. VIII, 56.

"Did she come in a carriage?" — "*Twice out of four times*." Times, 1898, 20a. *Out of a population of 37 millions* in France seven millions owned the land. *ib.*, 1898, 7c.

In this edition *eighteen out of twenty-five* tales have been slightly simplified in spelling and vocabulary. Every Man's Library. Advert.

c) An approximate number is often expressed by two successive numerals connected by *or*. It is especially the numerals indicating the smaller numbers which are thus applied. Compare 21, Obs. III.

i. Butterflies are coming out: I have seen *one or two* to-day. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 2, c.

It was even said that *one or two* distinguished geniuses had condescended to borrow money of him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 661.

ii. *Two or three* officers of the Guards enter from St. James's. *ib.*, Ch. LXII, 657. He will bring *two or three* of his friends with him from Cambridge. *ib.*, Ch. LXXV, 797.

iii. After keeping Hagan *three or four* hours waiting in an ante-room... "Mr. Hagan", says the other..., "I am too busy to listen to speeches". *ib.*, Ch. XC, 958.

Note α) Instead of *one or two* + noun we often find *a* + noun + *two*. These improvements, though here told in *a paragraph or two*, were the affairs of months and years at Castlewood. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXII, 764.

We have *an idle hour or two* between the lights. Mrs. CRAIK., *A Hero*, *Introd.*

John Bull knows *a thing or two*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5573, 3b.

This idiom is seldom extended to other combinations.

His Majesty discharged *an expletive or three*. *Queer Stories from Truth*, 1st Series, 75.

β) Approximateness may also be expressed by the phrase *or so* placed after the numeral or the noun modified by it, and, of course, by *about* and the adverbial *some*. Also the indefinite article, on the strength of its being a weak *one*, and the collective *dozen* and *score*, are frequently modified by the phrase *or so*. Sometimes *some* modifies a group of two numerals connected by *or*. Compare Ch. XL, 180, a.

i. Out of the *thirty or so* theatres at present presenting and representing the drama in England one has a choice between eight average musical comedies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6371, 4a.

ii. I drank *a pint or so*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 150.

Among the letters which awaited my appearance... *a morning or so* ago was one which entirely pleased me. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6234, 1a.

- iii. There sat *two dozen or so* men. HAM. GIBBS, *The Compleat Oxford Man*, Ch. III, 18.  
*A dozen or so* men attempted to turn it (sc. the car) over. II. Lond. News, No. 3800, 234.
- iv. You could, for a need, study a speech of *some dozen or sixteen* lines? *Hamlet*, II, 2, 576.  
 In a niche... were ranged *some thirty or forty* volumes. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 38.  
 The directors... were persuaded to agree to allow you... the power to sell foreign rights in *some one or two* of the inventions worked out by you.  
 UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 14.

γ) Also the following combinations, taken from the language of a negro (Mr. Gumbo, in THACKERAY'S *The Virginians*), seem to be intended to indicate an approximate number.

At Castlewood in Virginia they had six times as many (sc. horses) and... *fourteen eighteen* grooms to look after them. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 165.

In the house were *twenty forty* gentlemen in livery. *Id.*

Of course, Master Harry was the richest man in all Virginia, and might have *twenty sixty* servants. *Id.*

Tink, Madam Esmond have *twenty thirty* thousand guineas a year. *Id.*

- d) Like *no* (Ch. XL, 122, Note γ), a numeral is sometimes used to modify a word-group consisting of a superlative + noun. The practice was formerly more common than it is now. Compare 9, a, Note γ, and see MURRAY, s.v. *one*, 26; KELLNER, *Hist. Outlines of Eng. Synt.*, § 175-6.  
 Had he not taken *twenty-one finest* brass cannon? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIV, 682.

- e) An indefinite large number is sometimes indicated by (a) *hundred and one* or (a) *thousand and one*.

A great space is occupied with an elaborate classification of the *hundred and one* existing modes of dealing with the unemployed. *Acad.*, 1895, 273a.

I have many recollections of delightful conversations on *a thousand and one* subjects. *Times*, No. 1808, 881c.

- f) Also the following idioms deserve a passing mention:

- 1) Lady Bungay weighs *two of Blanche*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. I, 306. (= *two of such persons as Blanche*. For a discussion of the idiom see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 558.)

She's worth *ten of her daughter*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXI, 232.

Miss Georgiana would make *two of you* in breadth. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 106.

- 2) i. *Twenty-nine of us* had a dancing-master on purpose and practised waltzing in a room over the Egyptian Hall at the Mansion House. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

- ii. He came down to the office, where we all were, *four-and-twenty of us*, and made one of the most beautiful speeches I have ever heard. *Id.*, Ch. II, 13.

- iii. There are *four of us*... and each of us has the fourth of a clerk. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 28.

There were *four of us* — George, and William Samuel Harris, and myself, and Montmorency. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. I, 1.

- iv. *Six of you!* — and you can't find a coat that I put down not five minutes ago! *Id.*, Ch. III, 25.

- v. *The three of us* can't dress for nothing, you know. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIX, 148.

The four ruffians who once attacked him in the street... were surprised to find him more than a match for *the four of them*. JOHN BAILEY, Dr. JOHNSON and his Circle, Ch. IV, 115.

We employ three girls to wait on *the two of us*. II. Lond. News, No. 3902, 190a.

- 3) i. An attentive observer will... find in the parlours of old-fashioned inns and in the portfolios of printsellers *twenty portraits of Frederic for one of George II. Mac., Fred., (694a)*.  
 ii. He (sc. Dr. Woodrow Wilson) is in a considerable minority of the total votes polled, getting *6.192.000 to Mr. Roosevelt's 4.194.000 and Mr. Taft's 3.537.000*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6071, 2a.  
 iii. Since October 28 the fossa has consumed over 192 lb. of food, compared with *the glutton's 114 lb.* II. Lond. News, No. 3891, 165.  
 Compare Ch. XXIV, 14, b and Ch. XXXIII, 14, c.
- 4) He came down the kitchen stairs *two at a time*. JEROME, Paul Kever, I, Ch. II, 22a.  
 Smith went up the stairs *four at a time*. CHESTERTON, Manalive, I, Ch. II, 43.
- 5) They are *fifteen thousand Britons*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXIV, 682.

5. a) In some connections the numeral only seems to be used substantively, the reference being to a definite noun, which is left out simply for the sake of brevity and as being readily understood. The nouns understood are especially the following:

**pound(s)**, very frequently in stating a person's yearly income:

- i. She is pretty well off. *Four hundred-a-year* jointure. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 58.

A gentleman cannot purchase all these enjoyments with the *five hundred-a-year* which I allow him. Id., Virg., Ch. XCII, 979.

- ii. *Three thousand, two hundred* loose cash at the banker's. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 58.

And here was Peter capable five years ago of leaving only *two hundred* apiece to his own brothers and sisters, and only a *hundred* apiece to his own nephews and nieces. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 247.

Altogether, reckoning hastily, here were about *three thousand* disposed of. Ib.

- Compare: i. My young friend, I make no doubt, is heir to *two thousand pounds* a year. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 118.

This new act of parliament... settles my income at *four hundred and fifty pounds* per annum. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. VIII, 56.

- ii. I couldn't have set about it sooner, unless our *ten thousand pounds* had been a *hundred thousand*. HARDY, Return of the Nat., III, Ch. II, 214.

**shilling(s)** and **pence** (or **penny**), only when used in connection with the name of another money value: Bolder's father was *two pound ten* short. DICK., Nich. Nickl., Ch. VIII, 47b.

Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure *nineteen, nineteen, six*, result happiness. Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure *twenty pounds ought and six*, result misery. Id., Cop., Ch. XII, 87b.

Did you not see me — me, John Brough, whose name is good for millions — step out of my coach-and-four into my office, with *four pounds nineteen*, which I paid in to Mr. Roundhand as the price of half a share for the porter at my lodge-gate? THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 60.



I found myself indebted to our friend... for the sum of *forty-one, ten, eleven and a half*. Westm. Gaz., No. 7093, 13a.

**real(s)**, in the combination *piece of eight*, the name of the Spanish dollar of the value of about 4 s. 6 d.: Dere (negro's English for there) were fifty women-servants, — all Madam Esmond's property, and worth ever so many *pieces of eight* apiece. How much was a *piece of eight*? Bigger than a guinea, a *piece of eight* was. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 165.

**inch(es)**, only when a measure expressed in feet precedes: He was as fine a seaman as ever stept — stood *six feet two*. DOUGLAS JERROLD, Black-Ey'd Susan, I, 4.

He is somewhat below middle height, being about *five feet four*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. III, 22.

**pound**, only when a measure expressed in stone precedes: I have known a twelve-stone man go down to *nine stone five* under a disappointed passion. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 145.

**degree(s)**, i. The old fool was leaning over the chair at an angle of *forty-five*. JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. III, 27.

ii. Thermometers sunk down to *ten*, | Or *five*, or *one*, or *zero*. BYRON, Don Juan, X, xxxiii.

**year(s)**, especially in stating a person's age; practically regularly, unless the adjective *old* or the phrase *of age* follows: a) when the numeral is nominal part of the predicate: i. My brother was still a young man, being little more than *fifty*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 991.

His wife in *sixty* if she is a day. Ib., Ch. XCI, 977.

In February, 1829, when he was not as yet *eighteen*. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 5.

Note: Sir Montagu is a *good fifty*. TRUTH, 1902, 4 Sept.

ii. So Tom went on even to the fifth year — till he was *turned fifteen* — at King's Lorton. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. VII, 168.

She was only just *turned forty*. W. H. CRAIG, Dr. Johnson and the Fair Sex, 67.

Instead of this phrase also occasionally *turned of* + numeral: I'm *turned of sixty* now. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXII, 312.

He was but just *turned of thirty*. MOTLEY, Rise.

b) after certain prepositions, i. e. after:

*about*. After a life innocently spent in the gaieties of the town, (they) begin, *about fifty*, to attend twice per diem at the polite churches and chapels. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 16.

The Professor's sister was quite a young girl—probably *about nineteen or twenty*. DOLF WYLLARDE, The Story of Eden, I, Ch. I, 9.

*at*. Only son — property all his own *at twenty-one*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 70. *At twenty* who is afraid of being poor? Id., Virg., Ch. LXXVIII, 829.

*At fourteen* he was first in the examination for the foundation. MAC., War. Hast., (597b).

*between*. He was a man who might have been *between fifty and sixty*. DOLF WYLLARDE, The Story of Eden, I, Ch. I, 5.

*in*. I'm only going *in fourteen*. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. III, 148.

I'm only going *in thirty-five*. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XXXI, 276.

*of*. i. Congress... offers its highest commands to boys *of twenty*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 986.

ii. If *at the age of eighteen* she marries, she becomes little more than the chattel of her husband. ESCOTT, England, Ch. X, 137.

He died *at the advanced age of 80*. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 305.

Few reach *the great age of 98*. Times. (= Dutch *hooge leeftijd*.)

He died *at the great age of 92*. Westm. Gaz.

iii. A man *on the shady side of forty*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

*On the green side of fifty*. II. Lond. News,

*over*. Bunce was one of the surviving recipients of Hiram's charity; an old man, now *over ninety*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. VIII, 57.

*to*. I might live *to a hundred*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3, (400).

She is likely to live *to eighty*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 110.

*under*. He is now something *under fifteen*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XX, 168.

Compare: i. \* Clive was now *twenty-five years old*. Mac., *Clive*, (505*b*).

By the time, however, when the Rev. Francis Bell, was *twenty-six years of age*, it happened that Miss Coacher was thirty-four. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 88.

I am *three-and-twenty years old* again. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXV, 796.

\*\* A boy turning *four years of age*. Titbits, 1895, 23 Nov., 31*a*.

ii. \* I might have sentenced Master Miles Warrington, *at five years old*, to a whipping. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVI, 925.

\*\* And he said unto him, Take me an heifer *of three years old*, and a she-goat *of three years old*. BIBLE, Gen., XV, 9.

Her cheeks, ordinarily pale, now flushed up, until they were as red as they used to be when she was a child *of twelve years old*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. III, 29.

It was whilst under Mr. Coacher's roof, indeed, and when only a boy *of seventeen or eighteen years of age*, that the impetuous young Bell had flung himself at the feet of Miss Martha Coacher. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.

\*\*\* He died in 1756, and the sovereignty descended to his grandson, a youth *under twenty years of age*. Mac., *Clive*, (512*b*.)

Compare also: i. Elizabeth Stevenson lost her mother *at thirteen months*. THOMAS SECCOMBE, *Introd. to Mrs. Gaskell, Mary Barton*.

ii. Her age at passing was *nineteen years*. GILB. PARKER, *The Weavers*, I, Ch. I, 77.

Note. The bare numeral is also used to denote a person of the age indicated by this numeral. Thus *sixteen* may have the value of *a person of sixteen*.

She decided, with the authority that *seventeen* has over *sixteen*, that he was not at all nice, although his eyes were lovely. As usual *sixteen* implicitly acceded to the dictum of *seventeen* in such a matter. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XX, 162.

**hour(s)**, regularly in expressions stating the time of day. Such expressions often contain the phrase *o'clock* (= *of the clock*), but also quite frequently stand without it. The phrase is almost regularly dispensed with in expressions not denoting a full hour.

i. Punctual to *five o'clock* came the stranger. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 10.

Note the idiom in: It's *going on to ten o'clock*. CONAN DOYLE, *Trag. of the Korosko*, Ch. I, 35.

It is *getting on for ten o'clock*. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 136.

ii. \* "Let us see," replied Mr. Pickwick, referring to his watch, "it is now nearly *three*." Shall we say *five*? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 9.

\*\* Soon as the matin-bell *proclaimeth nine*, | Thy saint-adorers count the rosary. BYRON, *Child Harold*, I, LXXI.

The bell of the cathedral *tolling nine*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 76.

It's just *rung twelve*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, 25.

\*\*\* Count on me to be on your hospitable doorstep *at the stroke of eight*. PUNCH (SWAEN, *Selection*, III, 117).

\*\*\*\* It *hasn't gone eight*. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 139.

*It is only gone three.* JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XI, 131.

*It has just gone six.* C. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 10.

\*\*\*\*\* *The hour was turned of six.* G. GISSING, *Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. IX.

\*\*\*\*\* *Twenty minutes wanting five.* HALL CAINE, *The Manxman*.

*It was now only a few minutes short of twelve.* HALL CAINE, *The Deemster*, Ch. XVI, 115.

- iii. People were to arrive at ten, supper was to last from twelve to one, and at *half past one* everybody was to be gone. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. X, 76. *It was nigh upon half-past eight.* G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IX, 242.

Note the phrase *like one o'clock* = vigorously, quickly. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 1, c.

Mr. Guppy and Mr. Jobling ... find Krook still sleeping *like one o'clock* ... quite insensible to any external sounds or even to gentle shaking. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XX, 174.

**horse(s)**, in certain expressions denoting a vehicle with horses harnessed to it: I have known a man drink his claret, and drive his *coach-and-four* on five hundred a year. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 118.

Order a *chaise-and-four* for Portsmouth immediately. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. LXVIII, 719. You may talk vaguely about driving a *coach-and-six* up a good old flight of stairs. DICK., *Cristm. Car.*, I, 20.

Thus also *carriage-and-pair*: There was a *carriage-and-pair* standing at the gate. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 60.

The combination illustrated by the following quotation appears to be a nonce-formation: So sit two kings of Brentford on one throne; | And so two citizens who take the air, | Close-pack'd and smiling, in a *chaise-and-one*. COWPER, *Task*, I, 80.

Compare also: Here they were received by Lord and Lady Derby ... and in a *four-horsed-carriage* with postilions they drove ... to the Town Hall. Graph, No. 2276, 55.

These combinations express a kind of unit, and as such may be preceded by the indefinite article and put into the plural. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 6512.

There was an open carriage-and-four, for the honourable Samuel Slumkey; and there were four *carriages-and-pair*, for his friends and supporters. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 111.

Wallenstein arrived in Karlsbad with no less than fifty *coaches-and-six*, forty *coaches-and-four*, ten family omnibuses, fifty grooms leading 100 spare horses, 300 pack-horses, and 300 hacks. Il. Lond. News, No. 3815, Sup., VIII, e.

Of the same character is *four-in-hand*, as in: For all practical purposes a 'bus is as good as a *four-in-hand*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. VIII, 61.

Note. It may be assumed that the dropping of some special noun after a numeral is frequent in the language of certain trades. The following illustration must suffice:

"A large farm?... —" No; not large. About a *hundred*." (In speaking of farms the word 'acres' is omitted by the natives, by analogy to such old expressions as 'a *stag of ten*'). HARDY. Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. III, 20.

- c) In the following quotations the conjoint character of the numeral is less certain, its application approaching closely to that of adnominal words used substantively. Compare 3, c.

- i. The mob, which might have been *two hundred* strong, joined in a general shout. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XLIII, 169a.  
While Dr. Rae's party was small, and Mr. Stefánsson's never exceeded *eight* or *ten* (of whom all but *two* were Eskimo, etc.) Athen., No. 4498, 57c.  
Since then no Christmas season has passed without his thrice-welcome party of *three* being present. Westm. Gaz., No. 6435, 5b.
- ii. It is to be feared her crew of *thirty-six* were all drowned. Il. Lond. News, No. 3844, 942.  
The Atlantic liner left New York for Liverpool on the 3rd inst., with close on 300 passengers of various grades, a crew of *146* and a cargo consisting mainly of 2000 bales of cotton. Graph.
- iii. Mrs. Bunny's in an interesting situation... — and has given the Lieutenant *seven* already. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVII, 289.  
She... is the only woman I know who is mother of a real old-fashioned family of *six*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6435, 4b.

d) There are also frequent instances of a vaguely apprehended noun being understood after a numeral, so that the latter with some show of reason may also be regarded as abstract. We may distinguish two cases:

- a) The practice is independent of any particular numeral. The noun understood may be assumed to be:

**beats:** Do you remember how hot it (sc. the little hand) was, the little thing, how it trembled, and how it throbbed and jumped *a hundred and twenty* in a minute. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXVI, 811.

**parts,** in such expressions as *to cut (fold, tear, etc.) in(to) two three, four*, etc.): The elephant turned his trunk round his upper part and *tore him in two*. RIDER HAGGARD, King Sol's Mines, 60.

For *in(to) two* in these combinations we also find *in(to) half*: Ellis *tore the sheet of paper in half* and then *in half* again. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, I, 64.

**votes:** The Upper House... has defeated the latter (sc. M. Stolypin's proposal) by *ninety-two to sixty-eight*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5573, 2b.

In such expressions as are illustrated by the following quotation we may assume the name of some money value to be understood. It is hardly necessary to add that the reference of the numeral before *per cent* may be to other matters and depends on the subject discussed.

The stocks are *at ninety*, and Mrs. Hogarty can get *three per cent* for her money. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 62.

It is difficult to think of any plausible noun that might be supplied after the numeral in the expressions illustrated by:

- i. The girl was dancing away *thirteen to the dozen*. HAROLD FREDERIC, Illumination, I, 75. (T.)  
Sparkling *sixteen to the dozen*. Punch 1903, 6 May, 312a.
- ii. Had he discovered his weak point? Water wheels, inventors, steam-engines, and the lumpish lad all in a glow, *talking away nineteen to the dozen*. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 54.  
The table was covered with invitations and envelopes, and we all three *talked nineteen to the dozen* as we addressed the latter. SARAH GRAND, Our Man. Nature, 55.



b) The practice concerns special numerals, particularly: *one*, in many peculiar expressions, in most of which it is not any particular noun that is readily suggested by the connections.

1) I have *owed him one* for many years — now I have paid it. Mrs. WARD, Marcella, II, 276<sup>1)</sup>.

I *owe you one* for this exhilarating news. STEVENSON, The Dynamiter, 145. (Munro.)

He was a wag and moreover *owed one to Billy*. MAC., 't Was in Dhroll Donegal, 136.

2) i. \* Carson *has gone one better than* Mrs. Pankhurst, and someone may yet arise to beat both of them. Westm. Gaz., No. 6401, 5a.

It has been reserved for President Taft to "*go one better*" than Thomas Carlyle. Rev. of Rev., No. 256, 321b.

Hullo, Ragtime (the name of some play) is said to *have gone one better than* the Electric. Eng. Rev., No. 53, 156.

\*\* All the above are published at the price of sixpence, but Cassell's (sc. magazine) *goes one better* by offering a gigantic fiction number for the sum of fivepence. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 496, 590c.

Maisonneuve *went one better* (sc. than Bouillon, a great heart specialist) by his truly diabolic method of removing limbs by 'diaclassis' or rupture. TRUTH, No. 1802, 102b.

Out of this probably the habit has grown of always *going one better* to avoid unpleasantness. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 343.

ii. The attempt to *go one more on* these institutions has led to the cafés devoted to horrors. WHITEING, The Life of Paris, 233. (T.)

The man who wishes to curry favour always *goes one better on* the title. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 342.

iii. Having *gone to the mammals* like this, he went for the dear girls themselves *one better*. HALL CAINE, The Christian, 63.

3) The bachelor girl *knows one better*, and she prefers a salary to herself rather than the prospect of having to help a needy young man fight the brokers. Pick-me-up, 1901, 8 June.

4) The British public liked "John Bull's Other Island," because they thought England was made to *get one back on* the Irish. Eng. Rev., No. 69, 137.

5) If we can slip the collar and do so much less without being caught, that's *one to us*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. VII, 314.

That's *one to you*. STEVENSON, Treas. Isl., 254. (T.)

He's forty, and I'm thirty — which is *one to me*. Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, I, Ch. X, 265.

6) I venture to prophesy that, between us, we shall be *one too many* for the Colonel. W. E. NORRIS, St. Ann's, II, 237. 1)

7) i. The maiden, in her sweet... content, was *at one* with Nature. BUCHANAN, God and Man, I, 171. 1) (= *in harmony*. Now archaic, according to MURRAY, s. v. *at one*, 1.)

ii. I am quite *at one* with you, father. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Horseman, Ch. XXXII, 280. (= *of the same opinion, agreed*.)

iii. And this strength of Johnson's was proof also and above all against the souring of his mind by the ill-usage of the world, and here he and Goldsmith were *at one*. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XII, 137. (= *of the same nature, disposition or character*.)

iv. We differ widely enough in our nobler qualities. It is in our follies that we are *at one*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, Ch. 46. (= *alike*.)

1) MURRAY.

v. But when this was worked through, and this difficulty managed, it was still much *at one*, for I could no more stir the canoe than I could the other boat. DEFOE, *Rob. Crus.*, 127. (= *in the same predicament or circumstances*.)

8) i. \* Steele ... said that the conversation of Addison ... was Terence and Catullus *in one*. MAC., Addison, (751a).

Pilgrim was to her father, mother and friends *all in one*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, What became of Pam, I, Ch. XII, 86.

The 'Teaetta' combines kettle, teapot, slopbasin, etc., *all in one*. II. Lond. News, No. 3832, Advert.

\*\* Every mother's son of them wishes to be considered Samson and Solomon *rolled into one*. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 190.

ii. (You have) guessed it *in one*! PUNCH, No. 3721, 354.

9) It would be *a thousand to one*, but he would repent his choice. DEFOE, *Rob Crusoe*, II, vii.<sup>1)</sup>

*two*, in the phrase *to put two and two together* (= to make inferences from data), in which also no particular noun presents itself to the mind.

You may have your ideas, and I may *put two and two together* and have mine. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXV, 278.

That's what we call *putting two and two together*. Or in other words... Lenny Fairfield has shown himself capable of inductive ratiocination. LYTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. IV, 20.

Compare: They may have read, and they may be *putting things together* already. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XIX, 177.

6. Some of the simple numerals, i. e. such as are made up of only one word, are frequently used as pure nouns. In this case they *a*) are converted into collective nouns of the first kind (Ch. XXVI, 7), and, accordingly preserve their numerical character; or *b*) are employed, for the sake of brevity, as names of things whose full name is a word-group containing a numeral; or *c*) denote things that have a real or fancied association with numerals; or *d*) are the names of figures or digits.

In most of their applications these converted numerals are freely used in the plural; in not a few of them they occur only as plurals.

*a*) In the first function we find:

1) frequently *hundred*, *thousand* and *million*, especially to denote a group or groups of persons or of pounds (sterling.) For illustration of other meanings see 2, Obs. IV; also Ch. IV, 6, *c* and Ch. XXV, 29. As the following quotations show, there is a great deal of syntactical variety.

i. \* When there, you can't think what *hundreds* of gents on horseback came to the carriage and talked to the ladies. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 29.

\*\* Many thousands are in want of common necessities; *hundreds of thousands* are in want of common comforts. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 14.

The lives of *tens of thousands* trembled in the scale. STEVENSON.

\*\*\* The lists are oped, the spacious area clear'd, | *Thousands on thousands* piled are seated round. BYRON, *Childe Harold*, I, LXXII.

*Millions upon millions* burning for ever for Adam's fall. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. I, 2b.

*Thousands upon thousands* of dead people and not one of the whole host remembered. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. V, 49.

\*\*\*\* Ten years ago no German woman caring for her reputation, hoping for a husband, would have dared to ride a bicycle: to-day they spin about the country *in their thousands*. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. XIV, 275

Take a walk in town, and they (sc. Little People) flit by you *in their forties of thousands*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 14.

Let the holiday-maker, then, cross St. George's Channel *in his thousands*. IL. LOND. NEWS, No. 3923, 11116a.

\*\*\*\*\* The two-and-sixpenny edition for *the million*. K. GRAHAME, *Pagan P.*, 29, 1)

- ii. \* Brough was a great man among the Dissenting connexion, and you saw his name for *hundreds* at the head of every charitable society patronised by those good people. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 11.

\*\* We should have to live... on a war footing, with naval estimates running into *the hundred millions sterling*. Eng. Rev., No. 72, 484.

The damage in Barbados alone amounts to a quarter of *a million sterling*. Times.

- 2) Occasionally other numerals, in various applications, of which only a few can be mentioned in these pages.

**two.** But of such things the married *two* recked not at all. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIV, 301.

**twain.** The path thro' which *that lovely twain* | Have past... | Is curtained out from Heaven's wide blue. SHELLEY, *Prom. Unbound*, II, 2, 1.

**four.** Three knights | Defend the passings, brethren, and a fourth, | And of *that four* the mightiest, holds her stay'd | In her own castle TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 601.

**eight.** He... could not be persuaded to be one of the University *eight*. M. COLLINS. 1) (= *crew of a rowing boat, consisting of eight oarsmen.*)

**nine.** Nor mote my shell awake the weary *Nine*. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, 1. (= *the nine Muses.*)

**ten.** Am I any worse for breaking the third of *that Terrible Ten* than you for breaking the ninth? HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXVI, 200. (= *those terrible Ten Commandments.*)

**eleven.** The sons of first-rate families are in the two *elevens*. MEREDITH, *Evan Har.*, 148. 2) (= *cricket-teams.*)

Note a) Two applications deserve special mention. Converted numerals may denote:

- i. units used as the basis of a numerical system.

The reason of our own decimal notation, why we reckon by *tens* instead of the more convenient *twelves*, appears to be that our forefathers got from their own fingers the habit of counting by *tens*. TYLOR, *Anthropology*, Ch. I, 18. Dostn't wish th' wast three *sixes* again? HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 20.

- ii. portions of a number of persons or things thought of distributively. In this case they mostly occur in groups, often of two, and are preceded

1) MURRAY. 2) JESPERSEN *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 5.131.

by either the preposition *by* or *in*, which is not, as a rule, repeated before the second or following numeral. Altogether there is a great deal of syntactical variety. In the same meaning the numeral is sometimes used absolutely, i. e. without the mark of the plural. These idioms to a large extent vary with phrases consisting of two identical numerals, connected by the preposition *by* or the conjunction *and*. See 4, *a*.

- i. *By twos and twos and threes and threes* the crowd follows. TROL., In the Hunting Field (Good-Words for 1879).

The party walked *by twos and threes* among trim gardens and pleasaunces and clipped yew-walks. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XII, 105a.

\*\* *By twenties, by hundreds, by thousands* the force gathered. FREEMAN, Norm. Conq., III, XII, 1461).

- ii. \* Thorn-trees grew *in twos and threes* about the hillsides. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, Ch. V, 67.

The Prince's gentlemen and the knights and nobles of Zeeland were gathered in the council chamber of the Abbey, talking together *in twos and threes*. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. VII, 79.

Most of the party had wandered off *in twos and threes*. FLOR. BARCLAY, The Rosary, Ch. IV, 31.

\*\* Magazines which are now sold in *ones* where they used to be sold in *hundreds*. Pall Mall Gaz. 2)

Now and again they (sc. the birds) fly off *in singles* or *in pairs* or *threes* to a broken field. HORACE HUTCHINSON, Autumn Sessions (Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 3a).

There were many people around, some *in groups of twos and threes*, others *singly* as she was herself. (?) The Australian Millionaire, 12.

- iii. A Set of Wags ... appear generally *by Two and Two*. STEELE, Tatler, No. 225, § 2.

*By one, and one*, the bolts full easy slide. KEATS, The Eve of St. Agnes, XLI.

Hand in hand | The murderers stand, | *By one, by two, by three*. BARHAM, Ingol. Leg., Nurse's Story. 1)

- β) The converted numeral admits of being modified by *the whole*. Compare Ch. XL, 11, Obs. II, β.

Old Wardle opened the door; and *the whole three* walked into the room just as Mr. Jingle ... had produced the licence to the spinster aunt. DICK., Pickw., Ch. X, 84. (Compare: Mr. Jingle assented, and the *quartette* walked into an empty apartment. Ib.)

- b) In the second function we find:

- 1) numerals in *ty* as a brief denomination of either a series of dates or a series of years of a person's age.

- i. \* The increase in the number of suicides in Austria, which is stated to have been very marked in *the sixties* and *seventies*, fell off in the ten years 1880—1890. Times, 1894, 247.

Those who knew nothing of Leeds in *the seventies* and *eighties* can have little conception of the influence which "young Kitson" wielded in the political affairs of that city. Westm. Gaz., No. 5567, 2a.

\*\* To many a young man of to-day ... the phrase "*the eighteen-nineties*" calls up visions of a golden age. Bookman, No. 292, 115a.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *by*, 25. 2) MURRAY.



- ii. \* His age was *well within the twenties*. WALT. BESANT, *The Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. II, 35.  
 An old man *well on in the sixties*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 12c.  
 \*\* His wife was a slender, sweet-voiced woman *in the early thirties*. Ib., No. 5607, 7b.  
 Yord Yeoland was *in the early fifties* then. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam., Ch. IX, 47.  
 \*\*\* The Viscount ... had been a friend of his lordship's *in their twenties*. Ib., Ch. IX, 46.  
 Even when I was *in my twenties*, I could not help envying this land of eternal youth. T. P's Weekly, No. 496, 577c.  
 \*\*\*\* Although he *had reached the middle 'eighties'* he was still good in health. Westm. Gaz., No. 7069, 4b.

Note α) Also numerals containing *hundred* are sometimes met with to denote a series of dates.

In the *fifteen hundreds* there were published several works on education. QUICK, Es. on Educational Reformers, 91.

β) In this connection mention may be made of the phrases *in or out of one's teens* and *to enter one's teens*, mostly applied to girls; in which teens is generally understood as the age between thirteen and nineteen, some few contending that a girl enters her teens as soon as she has completed her ninth year.

Still *in her teens*, and like a lovely tree | She grew to womanhood. BYRON, Don Juan II, cxxviii.

He had certainly not *entered his teens* by more than two years. DISRAELI, Coningsby, Ch. I.

- 2) the smaller numerals to denote sizes of articles of wearing apparel, such as collars, gloves, etc.; kinds of banknotes; kinds of stocks; and probably many other things.

i. What size gloves does she take? *Fives*. MURRAY, s.v. *five*, 4, b.

ii. Leave you to pay for the brandy and water, — want change for a *five*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 7.

To their intense disgust, they only got about £200 in notes (chiefly *tens*). A. ROBERTSON, *Nuggets*, 190<sup>1</sup>).

iii. I'm told she has six hundred thousand pounds in the *Threes*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXVI, 386.

Look ... what the French *fives* were when I bought for the account. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XX.

- 3) many others, chiefly in the language of certain trades. The following instances may suffice:

They ... could knock the *thirty-twos* about in the style characteristic, of British sailors. Routledge's Ev. Boy's Ann., 1870, Feb. 1) (= *thirty-two-pound guns*.)

What are you opening your month for like the main hold of a *seventy-four*? DOUGLAS JERROLD, Black-Ey'd Susan, I, V, (23). (= *a ship carrying seventy-four guns*.)

Goll, as the Admiral, looked like the figure-head of a *seventy-four*. THACK., Pend., Ch. VI, 74.

1) MURRAY.

- c) In the third function we find certain of the smaller numerals, often in an obscure meaning.

**two.** With one touch of my forepaws I could smash him in half a minute *like two twos*. PUNCH, 1890, 17b.

**four.** i. It is astonishing how much more plump a female becomes when she is *on all fours*. LYTON, Caxtons, III, Ch. IV, 67. [Formerly *all four* (sc. extremities). The *s* has been added probably during the nineteenth century. MURRAY, s.v. *all-fours*. I made a shift to creep *on all four*. SWIFT, Gull., I, Ch. V, (150a.)]

- ii. \* He endured without impatience many different shades of Anglo-church conservatism; but with the Slopes and Proudies he could not go *on all fours*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVIII, 240.

\*\* A question of very general interest — whether we must pay for a portrait that is not like — came before a law-court the other day. It is very much *on all fours* with the writing of a story or a play to order. II. Lond. News, 1890, 13 Dec.

The case of the Member for Bodmin is not, of course, *on all fours* with that of Sir Edward Clarke. Daily Chronicle.

\*\*\* it is not easy to make a simile go *on all fours*. MAC., Pilgr. Progr., (136a).

What was it Brabantio said to Othello after the council scene: "She has deceived her father, and may thee." The quotation isn't *on all fours*, but it's near enough. ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. III, 64.

- iii. Ham ... had been giving me my first lesson in *all-fours*. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 16b.

The usual games are *alt-fours*, *all fives*, and cribbage. MAYHEW, Lond. Lab., I, 13.1)

**five.** Smart chap that cabman—handled his *fives* well. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 7.

**six, seven.** i. I left several of my books and all of my papers *at sixes and sevens*. SCOTT, Journ., II, 317.<sup>1)</sup> (= *in confusion*. For a discussion of the origin of the phrase see MURRAY, s.v. *six*, 5. We subjoin a quotation from SHAKESPEARE, showing the original singular form of the numerals in this phrase: All is uneven, | And every thing is left *at six and seven*. Rich. II, II, 2, 122.)

- ii. \* I told you, when I saw him, before he was struck down, how he seemed to be all *at sixes and sevens* with himself — everything wrong — worried, harassed and sick of life. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XXIV. (= *at odds*. Apparently a late sense-development.)

A Cabinet, such as the present is likely to become, is... a worse evil than a General Election. All the Ministers *at sixes and sevens*, each contradicting the other, everybody resigning, or threatening to resign, in turn. The New Age, No. 1207, 1b.

\*\* With her departure everything went *to sixes and sevens*. MRS. CARLYLE, New Let., I, 219.<sup>1)</sup> (= Dutch *liep in 't honderd*.)

**nine.** She's *dressed up to the nines* for some grand party. HARDY, the Hand of Ethelberta, I, 9. (= Dutch *in de puntjes*.)

Dick Buttonshaw was *dressed up to the nines*, with a half-guinea orchid in the lapel of his coat. Truth, No. 1801, 38b.

He was dressed and curled and generally *tittivated up to the nines*. Ib., 1902, 19 June.

**eleven.** By the *elevens*! my place is gone quite out of my head. GOLDSM., She Stoops, II, (179). (Now, apparently, obsolete.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- d) The following will be deemed sufficient illustration of the use of the names of figures or digits as pure nouns:

Mr. Copperfield objected to my *threes* and *fives* being too much like each other, or to my putting curly tails to my *sevens* and *nines*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 5a. Your *ones* are too like *sevens*. MURRAY, s.v. *one*, 6, c.

Note. Finally mention may be made of quasi agent-nouns in *er* formed from numerals, used in a variety of meanings, mostly only in colloquial or vulgar language. For detailed discussion see the Dictionary under the respective words.

- i. She is such a *oner* at eating. THACK., *Philips*, 531.

Also in a variety of other spellings, as is shown by the following quotations: 'E was always a *wunner* for pork-pie. *Punch*, No. 3853, 370b.

He struck me a bewildering *wunner* in the eye. *Pick-me-up*, 1901, 28 Sept.

\*\* Uncle, you should have seen! I caught him such a *one-er* on his boko (= nose). *Ib.*, 1898, 1 Oct. 155a.

\*\*\* Young Tom Puller, you're a *wonner*, | And at study quite a *stunner*. *Ib.*, 1897, 6 Feb.

- ii. I'll lay you a *fiveer* ... that... you will never hear from him again. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, 62.<sup>1)</sup>

- iii. \* Never before in an Eton and Harrow match have two '*sixers*' been hit in succession. VACHELL, *Hill*, XII.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The prisoner... said, "It don't matter whether I get a *sixer* or a stretch." *Daily News*, 1900, 6 Nov. 9/1 (1).

\*\*\* The '*sixers*' of old... had become eight-ounce loaves for men. *Westm. Gaz.*, 1899, 29 Nov., 3/1.<sup>1)</sup>

- iv. The '*teeners*' of this generation owe an immense debt of gratitude to E. Nesbit. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 475, 761c.

7. Numerals may be used as pure adjectives, and as such express not a quality, but a relation. Compare Ch. XXVIII, 2.

- i. "Which train shall we go by to-morrow? There is one at nine, and another at half past twelve". — "We had better take the *nine one*". SWEET.

- ii. The 1908 totals are, as we have said, less than the 1907. *Westm. Gaz.* There is undoubtedly a strong, though not well-organised, opinion against any more adventures on the 1909 lines. *Ib.*, No. 6483, 12b.

Note. In this function they are sometimes component parts of compounds: The boys found themselves joint tenants of a *two-room*. VACHELL, *Brothers*. I send you a *fifty-box* (sc. of cigars). PHILIPS, *Marriage*, 155. (T.)

8. a) Cardinal numerals sometimes take the place of ordinal numerals when the head-word precedes.

This is regularly done in stating the year of an event, and is also the rule in giving the number of the chapter of a book, the stanza of a poem, etc. Thus while *Chapter the first, second, tenth, twelfth, twentieth, thirtieth, hundredth* sound more familiar than *Chapter one, etc.*; *Chapter the twenty-first, the eighty-ninth* etc. are less common than *Chapter twenty-one, eighty-nine*, etc.; such a collocation as *Chapter the two hundred and fifty-second* being, apparently, rare.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

In the year *four* I didn't know no more what the world was like than the commonest man among ye. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 26.

You ought to have seen me in *four*. *ib.*, II, Ch. VI, 171.

- ii. \* Isaiah, chapter *fifty-one*; Psalm *ninety-one*; the *Æneid*, book *one*. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 4.

\*\* In act *the second*, Carpezan has married Sybilla. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIII, 665.

Note a) In the year *one* = a long while ago, time out of mind = Dutch in het jaar nul. MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 4.

Paved with rude cobble-stones after the fashion of *the year 1*. RUDY. Kipl., *American Notes*.

The only genuine sport in all the fair ... Established in *the year one*, gentlemen, and been flourishing ever since! JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 66.

β) Number *one* = one's self, one's own person and interests.

Let people go their own way and mind *number one*. HOCHING, *All Men are Liars*, 46.

With no thought for any one on earth but *number one*. MRS. HUNGERFORD, *Molly Bawn*, 7.

γ) Observe also the practice illustrated by:

"The expression  $10^4$  is read as 10 raised to *the power 4*, or 10 to *the fourth*; and  $10^8$  as ten to *the eighth*. The expressions  $10^2$  and  $10^3$ , however, instead of being read as 10 to *the second* and 10 to *the third*, are more commonly spoken of as 10 *squared* and 10 *cubed* respectively. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 25.

- b) In analysing copulative co-ordination (Ch. X, 21) the expressions *for one thing... for another* may be followed by *for a third*, etc., which shows that *one* and *another* are, at least vaguely, felt as ordinal numerals. Compare the Dutch equivalents in *de eerste plaats... in de tweede plaats*.

Though Tariff Reformers would doubtless... dispute the fact, we have no sort of doubt that the cause of Tariff Reform has received a serious set-back in 1910. *For one thing*, the party pledged to Tariff Reform has twice been beaten at the polls... *For another* we have had a good year's trade... *For a third*, every reader of every newspaper, of whatever politics, has read as part of the news of the day what the countries which have got Protective tariffs think of their working. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 1c.

## 9. Some idiomatic applications of *one* deserve special mention:

- a) The numeral *one* is sometimes more or less tinged with the function of the pronoun *one* in the sense of *some* or *a certain*. Compare Ch. XL, 159.

This is especially the case before partitive *of* in constructions like the following: *One* of my fellows had the speed of him. *Macb.*, I, 5, 33. Mr. Supple, the curate of Mr. Allworthy's parish, made *one* of the company. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 55a.

Scrooge's niece was not *one* of the blindman's buff party. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 81.

"Oh! Mr. Arabin, I do not condemn you." — "Pardon me, you do, Mrs. Bold — you as *one* of the world." TROL., *Barch. Tow*, Ch. XXI, 173.



He was apprenticed as a sailor to *one* of the great ship-owners. *Mrs. GASK, Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. I, 8.

We ought to have you *one* of us. *THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII*, 998.

I should be very glad if you would make *one* of my guests. *CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone*, I, Ch. VI, 148.

Note *a*) *Of* + plural (pro)noun or collective noun is sometimes understood: I must be fed if I make *one*. *DICK., Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 88.

*β*) *One* is sometimes dispensed with: She was of the tallest of women. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 48.

He (sc. Walter Scott) was of those gallant souls who never despair of the fatherland. *Times, Lit. Sup.*, No. 697, 89c.

*γ*) In the older stages of the language this *one* was sometimes followed by a superlative. Compare 4, *d*, and see *MURRAY, s.v. one*, 26.

For he is *one the truest* knight alive. *SPENSER, The Faery Queene*, I, III, 37.  
 Ferdinand, | My father, King of Spain, was reckon'd *one* | *The wisest* prince that there had reign'd by many | A year before. *Henry VIII*, II, 4, 48.

*b*) *One* not infrequently conveys the secondary notion of sameness besides that of one-ness. See also Ch. XXXI, 8, *a*, Note I.

i. *One plague* was on you all. *Bible, Samuel*, A, VI, 4.

ii. There is *but one mind* in all these men. *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 3, 6.

There was *but one voice* in her praise there. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 73.

iii. Those who enjoyed the privilege of hearing his familiar conversation, declared *with one voice* that it was superior even to his writings. *MAC., Addison*, (751a).

iv. She wondered by what gift he could be sleepless and saddlesore, serene and temperately gay, *all at the one time*. *HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure*, Ch. II, 36.

v. It is *all one* what course you take. *WESST., Dict.*

vi. She need not know that the magnificent Lord Loveland and the miserable P. Gordon are *one*. *WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXV, 316.

Note. Sometimes *one* occurs together with *the same*. Compare Ch. XXXVII, 2, Note *β*.

The universe is *one and the same* throughout. *HUXLEY, Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 314.

Even at *one and the same* period different writers did not always use the letters with the same value. *HENRY BRADLEY, Eng. Place-Names*, 9.

*c*) *One* is sometimes used after adnominal words to mark one-ness emphatically. For a discussion of this *one* see also *STOF., Stud.*, I, 107; *ELLINGER, Eng. Stud.*, XX and XXII; id., *Verm. Beitr.*, 50 and 56; and especially *JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.22.

In this application we find *one*:

1) after superlatives. Instances seem to be rare.

I will never mend my pace along the Couvrefeu Street, for the *best one man* that ever trode it. *SCOTT, Fair Maid*, Ch. II, 25. (This sentence may be interpreted: ... not for one (i.e. any) *man although he were the best*...)

The future historian is to pronounce a world's court for the settlement of International disputes by Arbitration, the *greatest one step* forward ever taken by man in his long and checkered march upward from barbarism. *CARNEGIE, Speech*.

Note a) With this construction compare that in which a superlative preceded by the definite article stands after *one*, now, apparently, quite obsolete. See 9, a, Note γ.

β) In the following quotation, in which *one* as the correlative of *another* is a pure pronoun (Ch. XL, 148 and 156), the construction *one* + adnominal superlative is of the same nature as that of *no* + adnominal superlative, described in Ch. XL, 122, d, Note γ. Instances appear to be very rare. He who flutters from *one sweetest* flower of the garden to another. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVII, 355.

- 2) after *only*. Instances would seem to be common enough.

"Because you fell in love!" said Scrooge, "as if that were *the only one thing* in the world more ridiculous than a merry Christmas." DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 12.

Note a) In Older English *only* is sometimes found after *one* to emphasize the notion of exclusiveness which may be implied in the latter. See MURRAY, s. v. *only*, 1, b.

Now is it Rome indeed and room enough, | When there is in it but *one only man*. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 157. (Observe the accumulation of words denoting exclusiveness.)

Cursed condition! | To live a burden to *one only friend*. GEORGE LILLO, Fatal Curiosity, I, 1.

*One only passion* unreveal'd, | With maiden pride the maid conceal'd. SCOTT, Lady, I, xix.

Observe also that *only* may be added to the adnominal *the one*. See below.

And a single small cottage, a nest like a dove's | *The one only dwelling* on earth that she loves. WORDSWORTH, The Reverie of Poor Susan, 12. But he felt... that he was engaged in *the one only passion* of his life, and that D. E. A. T. H. alone could close it. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 82.

β) In the latest English *one and only* seems to be usually employed, by way of hendiadys, for *one only*.

If we took them (sc. these resolutions) as agreed ground between parties, *the one and only security* for anything following from them would be to return a strong Liberal majority to the House of Commons. Westm. Gaz., No. 5472, 1b. Mr. Asquith's *one and only course* is to go straight forward regardless of all these threats. Ib., No. 6477, 2a.

- 3) after the definite article, where it expresses exclusiveness, mostly blended with a variety of other secondary notions.

- i. She was *the one soul* in her realm whom the news of St. Bartholomew stirred to no thirst for vengeance. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 375.

There had been three white frosts at night since one of Richard's son's rode south, and *the one daughter* took his place. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 53.

On board *the one boat* which had floated with the stream were more than a hundred persons. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 188. (*The one* may also be understood in the sense of the determinative *that*.)

- ii. \* The cult of pretty faces was *the one thing* in her colourless life which at all approached to passion. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. II. (secondary notion: *ruling, dominant*.)

*The one chief obstacle* to a peaceful settlement... is the fact that [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 6506, 1b. (the same secondary notion, rendered more explicit by the addition of *chief*.)

\*\* Such a blast of opposition was a new thing to a man whose will had been *the one law* in the land. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 128. (secondary notion: *supreme*.)

\*\*\* Everything, in brief, is done but *the one thing necessary*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. III, 47. (secondary notion: *all-important*.)

*The one important step* in a man's life is his marriage. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys, I, 1, (10). (the same secondary notion, rendered more explicit by the addition of *important*.)

The Parliament Bill is *the one practical line of advance*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5573, 2a.

\*\*\* *The one cry of bitterness* which burst from Elizabeth revealed her terrible sense of the loneliness of her life. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 375. (secondary notion: *constantly recurring*.)

- 4) after the indefinite article, where it has the value of the adjective *single*. Instances seem to be uncommon. The following has been copied from WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., I, 189:

I may indulge in *a one last comparison*. Periodical.

- 5) after a genitive or a possessive pronoun, where it expresses practically the same shades of meaning as after the definite article.

- i. *His one standing force* was his body of hus-carls. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 4, 78.

*His one very intimate friend* in Oxford was Thomas Jefferson Hogg. W. M. ROSSETTI, Shelley's Ad., Mem. of Shel., 4.

If there was any news of an accident, Sarah Porrit, *the professor's one female servant*, would have heard it. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XX, 174.

- ii. \* He had no hobbies and no children: his wife had grown into *his one obsession*. DESMOND COKE, The Cure, Apologia, 3. (secondary notion: *ruling, dominant*.)

\*\* The people who change most must get the nicest boys, and that's *my one reason* for choosing Mr. Grey. PUNCH. (secondary notion: *all-important*.)

\*\*\* *Napoleon's one fear* had been that of a continued retreat. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, § 4, 835. (secondary notion: *besetting or constantly recurring*.)

\*\*\*\* He regarded her at this moment as a sort of odious Canidia *whose one function* had been to lure Louis to misfortune. MRS. WARD, Marc., III, 177. (secondary notion: *constantly kept in mind*.)

\*\*\*\*\* That's *my one little pet joke*. SHAW, Overruled (Eng. Rev., No. 54, 188). (secondary notion: *constantly practised*.)

- 6) after a singular demonstrative pronoun.

The expenditure on dress in Cranford was principally in *that one article* referred to. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. VIII, 148.

*This one action* has been the cause of all the troubles which have since befallen South Africa. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 51.

Nature of course has been unkind to the lords and ladies of creation in *this one matter of voice*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, I, Ch. III, 18.

By the end of the debate the whole question seemed to have been fined down to *this one point*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 1a.

When the "wild peers" blocked *that one path* to safety, he (Mr. Balfour) had to choose between a reversion to Toryism proper and a plunge into the unknown. Nation (Westm. Gaz., No. 5484, 20c).

- 7) after the indefinite pronouns *any, no* and *some*.

a) After *any* the numerical *one* seems to be particularly frequent in sentences or clauses that are of a negative or conditional import.

i. I am ignorant of *any one quality* that is amiable in a man which is not equally so in a woman. SWIFT, Letter to a Young Lady on her Marriage, (474b).

She is an awkward gawky, without *any one good point* under heaven. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (381).

It is but seldom that *any one overt act* produces hostilities between two nations. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Eng. Writ. on Am.

It didn't contain *any one garment* made precisely after the fashion of any age or time. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 131.

Perhaps, indeed, so singular a mixture of defiance and obsequiousness, of fear and hardihood, ... never was expressed in *any one human figure* as in that of Jonas Chuzzlewit. Id., Chuz., Ch. XXIV, 198a.

He may not have been really profound in *any one branch*. But he had what may be termed good working knowledge for practical purposes. A cad.

She had not the art of sustaining interest in *any one subject*. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., I, Ch. XII, 165.

The Bible of 1611 is saturated not with *any one man's* mind and gifts, but with all humanity's. Westm. Gaz., No. 5573, 9c.

ii. If *any one Power* had tried, in the teeth of the others, to settle the Eastern problem, the only result would have been a decimated Europe. Times.

An incessant comparison with and reference to the divergent forms of other allied languages is positively injurious to the student who is beginning the practical study of *any one language*. SWEET, A. S. Read., Pref., 13.

They make it more or less their business to inflict their company upon the most beautiful young girl present at *any one time*. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. V, 79.

With the above quotations compare the following:

i. It may be doubted, whether such a mind as his was not more enriched by roaming at large in the fields of literature, than if it had been confined to *any single spot*. BOSWELL, Life of Johnson, 10b.

From that year down to this, the Sovereign on the English throne has never rejected *any single measure* that had passed both Houses of Parliament. JOHN BRIGHT, Speech (Westm. Gaz., No. 5478, 7a).

ii. We doubt whether *any two members* of the Cabinet could be found to agree upon the reasons for the taxes at all. The New Age, No. 1204, 537a.

β) When *no* is followed by the numeral *one*, its grammatical character is uncertain. If it is apprehended as an adnominal word, the negative implied in which is emphasized by *one*, it is an indefinite pronoun or numeral. But it may also be understood as an adverb of practically the same meaning as *not*. See also Ch. XL, 114, and compare ELLINGER, E. S., XXII, 155. *No one* in this application mostly has the value of *not a single*, sometimes that of *not one particular* (= Dutch een bepaald(e)).

i. He's a most notable coward, an infinite and endless liar, an hourly promise-breaker, the owner of *no one good quality* worthy your lordship's entertainment. All's Well, III, 6, 10.

*No one poet* can write verses with such spirit and elegance as Mr. Pope. HUME, Es. XIII, Of Eloquence, 100.

It is my design to render it manifest that *no one point* in its composition (sc. of the Raven) is referable either to accident or intuition. POE, Phil. of Comp., (372).



He begged me to express his opinion that your conduct of last evening was of a description which no gentleman could endure: and (he added) which *no one gentleman* would pursue towards another. DICK., PICKW., Ch. II, 16.

*No one window* matched the other. Id., BARN. RUDGE, Ch. IV, 17a.

The window was so begrimed and coated with a century's mud that *no one pane of glass* could possibly fall out, though all were cracked and broken twenty times. Id., CHUZ., Ch. IX, 68a.

The fact probably is that *no one person* can possibly combine all the elements supposed to make up what every one means by friendship. MAR. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., I, Ch. I, 9.

- ii. He's poor in *no one fault*, but stored with all. COR., II, 1, 21.

Readers frequently ask about the purchase of second-hand apparatus — whether it is a real economy, and whether such apparatus can be relied upon. There is *no one answer* to such a question. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6987, 20a. Difficulties of this kind arise because there is *no one supreme authority*. Ib., No. 6975, 4a.

Sometimes *other* is found between *no* and *one*.

It is at least certain that *no other one province* of the country contributes even half the revenue which hard-working Catalonia supplies to the national exchequer. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5066, 3a.

*No other one religious organization* has more influence than the Church of England. TIMES, No. 1814, 801a.

In the Blickensdorfer visible-writing typewriter you will find these desirable qualities combined as in *no other one machine*. REV. OF REV., CCXX, Advertisements.

Compare: The autorial vanity has had more to do with the omission than *any one other cause*. POE, Phil. of Comp., (371).

In the following quotation *no one* may also be understood as equivalent to *nobody*:

Since Mr. Balfour's resignation there is *no one leader* of the Unionist party. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6129, 1c.

- γ) After the conjoint *some* the numerical character of *one* is not always clear. Thus in the first of the following quotations it may be understood in the meaning of *a certain* or *some*, (Ch. XL, 159), to which the preceding *some* is, rather redundantly, added. Compare Ch. XL, 176, Obs. II. It is also clearly proved by the oral traditions of the Family, that there existed at *some one period* of its history a matron of such destructive principles. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. I, 26.

It is a truth often overlooked, but not unimportant, that every addition to the resources of a language must in the first instance have been due to an act (though not necessarily a voluntary or conscious act) of *some one person*. BRADLEY, The Making of English, Ch. V, 215.

It is essential that there should be *some one body* responsible for the control of the Metropolitan street traffic. LL. LOND. NEWS, No. 3879, 310a.

The average man takes his stand by *some one paper*, and regards the rest as no better than literature. THE NEW STATESMAN, Vol. VI, No. 145, 344a.

Note. *One* is extremely rare after *every*: MURRAY (s. v. *every*, 10, a) gives but one instance, dated 1548. Nor is its function in this connection precisely the same as after *any*, *no* and *some*, but rather to emphasize the distributive notion which is but weak in the bare *every*. The adnominal *every one* may, accordingly, be apprehended as equivalent to *every several* or *each several*, both very rare also, illustrated in Ch. XL, 173, Note a. Compare also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 7.815 and 10.22.

ORL. Can you remember any of the principal evils that he laid to the charge of women? — Ros. There were none principal; they were all like one another as half-pence are, *every one fault* seeming monstrous till his fellow-fault came to match it. As you like it, III, 2, 372.

10. Also the absolute *one* when preceded by certain adnominal modifiers sometimes appears to have the force of expressing oneness. In the spoken language this force would be evident from its strong stress, the prop-word *one* having weak-stress. (Ch. XLIII.) The written or printed language naturally has no such evidence, and in many cases the exact nature of *one* is, accordingly, uncertain. In some also it may have a twofold force, i. e. that of the numeral and the prop-word or pronoun *one* at the same time. This absolute *one* may be met with after:

- a) the indefinite article especially when preceded by *never* (or *ne'er*), *ever* (or *e'er*). In other connections it is rare. The combination *never* (or *ne'er*) *a one* is still frequent enough in colloquial language; *ever* (or *e'er*) *a one* is now less common and more or less vulgar. The character of *one* is sometimes rather uncertain, i. e. it sometimes may be stressless and, accordingly, rather a prop-word than a numeral. For illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 68, a, Note IV.

- i. Letter nor line know I *never a one*. SCOTT, Lay, I, xxiv.

My lady seldom drank wine; but on certain days of the year, such as birthdays (poor Harry had *never a one*) and anniversaries, she took a little. THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. XII, 112.

I never spoke for my part to a fairy princess, or heard as much from any unenchanted or enchanting maiden. *Ne'er a one* of them has ever whispered her pretty little secrets to me. Id., Virg., Ch. XXII, 232.

I have sung many songs, | But *never a one* so gay. TEN., The Poet's Song, 14.

- ii. He told a mysterious story of a lady in Ireland who died of grief for the loss of her husband before she got *e're a one*. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 88.

Afore that I mind her looking as fresh and likely a girl as *e'er a one* in Manchester. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. VIII, 83.

- iii. There's *not a one* of them but in his house | I keep a servant fee'd. Macb., III, 4, 131.

But however unfruitful Rosamond's conquests might prove, they formed romances of Dorothy's life, and made up for the fact that she had never had a suspicion of *a one* in her life. Mrs. HUGH ADAMS, The Town Twins (Pall Mall Mag., Sept., 1903).

They are all unreasonable — all except here and there *a one*. NORRIS, The Perjurer, 8. (T.)

- b) a singular demonstrative. Instances may be quite frequent.

Purify thine own heart and try to make it worthy of theirs (sc. of faithful women). All the prizes of life are nothing compared to *that one*. THACK. (Truth, No. 1802, 82a).

Mr. Loftus had several children, Mr. Trace only *this one*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. II, 24.

- c) the indefinite pronouns *any*, (*n*)*either*, *no* and *some*. The *one* which may appear after *each* and *every* in similar positions can hardly be

regarded as numerical in character the plurality implied in these words excluding any such notion. The following quotations show that the partly numerical, partly pronominal *one* is especially frequent before partitive *of*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.22.

- 1) After *any* absolute *one*, mostly in an unmistakably numerical meaning is found quite frequently, not only in sentences or clauses of a negative, but of an affirmative import.
  - i. I am afraid that you will become so afraid of men's motives as to doubt that *any one* can be honest. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 366.  
He did not know yet the name of *any one* of the boys surrounding him. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 16.  
Age had not yet dimmed *any one* of his senses. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 35.
  - ii. I have thought of half a dozen plans, *any one* of which would make you happy at once. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 486.  
Every trifling ailment that *any one* of you has had, has scared her so that I protest I have never been tranquil. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXV, 791.  
He begged her to walk towards Hanover Gate alone between two and four on *any one* of the three following days. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. I, 7.  
What has happened at the Théâtre Français may easily be repeated at *any one* of the theatres. *Daily Chronicle*.
- 2) After *either* and *neither* the absolute *one* is less frequent. Compare EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 69.  
"Which of them do you like best, Mr. Warrington?" asked the honest colonel. — "Which of whom, sir?" — "The Curate of Mendon, or the Dean of St. Patrick's, or honest Tom, or Mr. Fielding?" — "And what were they, sir?" — "They! why, they wrote books." — "Indeed, sir, I never heard of *either one* of 'em," said Harry, hanging down his head. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 231. (In this quotation *either* is used improperly for *any*. Compare Ch. XL, 44, Obs. III. Thus also in the following.)  
"Now," said the great man, "just copy the few first sentences of that leading article — *either one* will do." TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. II, 13.  
We weren't in a hurry to get to town. *Neither one* of us was particularly eager about rushing into that near smoking Babylon. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 179.  
There was an unpractical vagueness in their movements throughout the day; *neither one* of them seemed to consider any question of effectual escape, disguise or long concealment. HARDY, *Tess*, Ch. LVII, 507.
- 3) *No* + absolute *one* is decidedly unusual, *not one* or *none* being mostly used instead. Compare Ch. XL, 139.  
*No one* of Mr. Hardy's novels contains more of the facts of his own life than *A Laodicean*. PHELPS, *Es. on Mod. Nov.*, II, 35.  
Of *no one* of these qualities is there so much as a trace. *Literature*.
- 4) The absolute *one* which is found after *some* seems to be, as a rule, rather pronominal than numerical. Thus at least in the second of the two following instances, the only ones which are at hand at the moment of writing: Compare 9, c, and also Ch. XL, 176, Obs. II.  
In speaking once of a wide-spread race, . . . *some one* of whose members had been in almost every cabinet, . . . Mr. Thorne had called them all "dirt." TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXII, 179.  
If you're not satisfied that I'm enough of a doctor to tell whether a man is drunk or sober, send for *some one* in whom you've more confidence. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VII, 133.

## ORDINAL NUMERALS.

11. The ordinal numerals are *first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, etc., twentieth, twenty-first, etc., thirtieth, etc., hundredth, hundred and first, etc., two hundredth, two hundred and first, etc., thousandth, thousand and first, millionth, etc.*

Note a) Before *hundredth* and the following ordinals the indefinite article, naturally, is never found, and the numeral *one* only when one-ness is distinctly present to the speaker's or writer's mind.

- i. "And who," quoth Mrs. Snagsby, for the *thousand and first time*," is that boy? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXV, 219.

He wished himself dead and buried for at least *the thousand and first time*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 80.

That rascal... who had taken him in already a hundred times, could take him in for the *hundred and first* with his preposterous tale. R. ASHE KING, O. I. Goldsmith, Ch. XVI, 187.

In reply to this effusion we can only assure Mr. Reitz for about *the hundredth* time that the interests of the British Empire do not imply the destruction of the Republics. *Times*.

- ii. Such 'weighty sentences' are not light reading; one tires before *the one hundred and ninety-ninth* word is reached. HODGSON, *Errors in the Use of Eng.*, IV, 185.

It would scarcely surprise us to receive from him a supplementary volume on the day he celebrates *the one hundredth* anniversary of his birth. *The Nation*, Vol. XVIII, No. 21, 738b.

β) Also the forms *one-and-twenty*, etc., in which the ones precede the tens and are connected with them by *and* (2, Obs. V), have ordinal numerals formed from them.

Mr. Joseph Andrews was now in *the one-and-twentieth* year of his age. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. VIII, 16.

Dolf Heyliger had now nearly attained *his one-and-twentieth* year. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.* I, 111).

γ) In colloquial language we not seldom find such formations as *dozenth* and *half-dozenth*, the result of the collective nouns *dozen* and *half-dozen* being sometimes used in a way which makes them practically ordinary numerals. See 2, Obs. IX, c.

I am to-day just out of bed after another, about *the dozenth*, severe fit of spasms. THACK., *Letter to Mr. Reed.* (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 39.)

A sallow prisoner has come up, in custody for the *half-dozenth* time, to make a personal application to purge himself of his contempt. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. I, 3.

δ) The indefinite ordinal numerals instanced in the following quotations are as yet only met with in colloquial and vulgar language: They would have a jolly night, and cry as they talked about old times, and the dear old Castle What-d'ye-call-'em, where they were born, and the fighting *Onety-oneth* being quartered there. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 393.

Captain Peddle of the *Onety-oneth*. *Graph.*, 1897, 25 Dec., 816.

Compare: i. Mr. and Mrs. T. request the honour of Admiral L's company at dinner on Thursday the so-and-so. THACK., *Philip*, 184.

ii. After the *twenty-somethingth* attempt (sc. to slumber) I decided to lie where I fell. *Rev. of Rev.* (BEST, *Extracts*<sup>3</sup>, No. 91).



## 12. Ordinal numerals may be used:

- a) conjointly: He had scarcely told his *ninth* year. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, Ch. II, 22.
- b) absolutely: You may read Thackeray fifty times and find something fresh at the *fiftieth*. SAINTSBURY, *Introd. to Sam. Titm.*, 14.  
Germany can never accept the first alternative, and Great Britain must always endeavour to prevent the *second*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 2a.
- c) substantively, to denote either persons or things. In many cases the numeral thus used may also be apprehended either as conjoint, its head-word being understood (13), or as a pure noun. It is especially the smaller numbers that are met with in the function here referred to. They are found in a variety of meanings, for which the student should consult the dictionary. Only a few can be illustrated here:
  - 1) ordinals denoting persons: i. 'Tis all very well to have... my lady wife taken down the *second* or the *third* to dinner. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 907.
  - ii. Montmorency had a fight with the kettle during tea-time, and came off a poor *second*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XIV, 180.
  - iii. His *second in command* was a far stronger and abler man. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 48.  
His appointment to *second in command*. *Times*.
  - iv. You were all along "the shadowy *third*" in my short life with her. HARDY, *Jude the Obscure*, II, 42. (T.)
  - 2) ordinals denoting things: i. Becoming... the only young woman in the drawing-room, the only occupier of that interesting division of a family in which she had held so humble a *third*, it was impossible for her not to be more looked at, more thought of and attended to, than she had ever been before. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XXII, 210.
  - ii. He can play a *second* on the piano with the daughters of the principal. THACK., *Pend.* I, Ch. XXXI, 331.
  - iii. This was the *first* I had heard of it. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 160b.  
That's the *first* I ever saw of B. J. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I.

## 13. In not a few cases an ordinal numeral is used with its head-word suppressed, because the latter can be easily inferred from the context.

- a) An interesting instance of this practice is the suppression of the noun *day* in dates: I have hardly taken out a gun since the *3rd*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIX, 186.  
Compare: We set sail from Portsmouth upon the *7th day* of September 1910. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. I, (188a).  
This is to certify that there has been deposited with me a Floating Policy for £ , dated the *twenty-eighth day* of January 1906. Lloyd's Certificate. (Thus regularly in legal documents.)  
As to dates the following observations may be acceptable:
  - 1) The usual way of writing dates is to place the ordinal numeral followed by *of* before the name of the month, and to place (*up*)*on* before the whole combination when it is used adverbially, i. e. when it denotes an epoch.
    - i. So wrote the general... from his head-quarters at Montmorenci Falls on the *2nd of September*: and on the *14th of October* following the

Rodney cutter arrived with the sad news in England. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXIV, 788.

At length, as I am coming back through Tottenham Road, *on the 25th of May*... I see a landau before me. Ib., Ch. LXXVI, 807.

ii. It is the *thirteenth of April*. Ib., Ch. LXXV, 797.

- 2) But this practice is not unfrequently departed from, i.e. *of* is sometimes dispensed with, and the ordinal numeral is often placed after the name of the month. Also (*up*)*on* is far from being regularly placed before dates denoting an epoch.

i. \* They met *on the 9th June* 1291. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*. Then, *on the 25th October*, comes the news that his Majesty has fallen dead at Kensington, and that George III reigned over us. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXVIII, 830

\*\* David the Second died *22nd February* 1370. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*.

The last Victorian Parliament met *3rd December* 1900. The first Edwardian Parliament meets *on the 19th February*, 1906. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 111a. (Observe the varied practice.)

ii. The body of the guide lost on Snowdon *on March 26th* has only just been found. Graph.

The elected him President *on January 17th*. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 120b.

iii. A codicil to this latter will, bearing date *March the first* 1828. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXV, 247.

- 3) Thus there is also varied practice as to the use of (*up*)*on* before the name of a day preceding a date.

i. *On Friday, June 12th*, the Duke and Duchess of Teck celebrated their silver wedding-day. Graph.

ii. *Saturday, October 13th*, married, at his seat, Castlewood, Hants, the Right Honourable Eugene Earl of Castlewood to the beautiful Miss Van den Bosch, of Virginia. 70.000 l. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXI, 754.

- 4) The use of the cardinal instead of the ordinal numeral is uncommon, except in the dating of letters.

i. He was crowned *on 29 March* 1306. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*.

ii. He died *on May 19*, 1795. JOHN BAILEY, Dr. JOHNSON and his Circle, Ch. III, 86.

- 5) The dating of letters is done in four different ways, as is shown by the following instances, the first of which seems to represent the most usual practice: *Liverpool, May 4th*; *Liverpool, 4th May*; *Liverpool, May 4*; *Liverpool, 4 May*. For a detailed discussion of the various ways in which dates are represented in print see SATTLER, E. S., II.

- b) Also the following nouns among, no doubt, many others, are sometimes suppressed when they can be readily inferred from the context:

**child.** We think of... that father's immortally infamous reflection on the advent of his *ninth*. SWINBURNE, Charles Dickens, 28.

**husband.** You would hardly suppose that I am Mrs. Bayham Badger's *third*.

**regiment.** Doctor Slammer, surgeon to the *97th*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 14. Among the company was Harry's new colonel of the *67th*, Major-General Wolfe. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXVII, 712.

14. Many ordinal numerals, especially the simpler ones, are also used as pure nouns.

- a) An important application of the ordinal numerals as pure nouns is their use to denote the denominator of a fraction. The ordinal numeral corresponding to *two* is not, *however*, used in this function; *fourth* is often replaced by *quarter*, and *a tithe* sometimes takes the place of *a tenth (part)*.

It is impossible for me to notice more than *a tithe* of the volumes received. Rev. of Rev., No. 204, 644a.

These are only *a tithe* of the happenings and incidents of the year. Westm. Gaz., No. 5195, 15b.

*Third, fourth, fifth*, etc. are understood as equivalent to *third-part, fourth-part, fifth-part*, etc., and are, therefore, mostly followed by partitive *of*, when the thing to which the fraction refers is expressed. The dropping of *of* affects the grammatical character of the fractional number, making it more or less adverbial. See Ch. V, 16. Obs. VII. For the varied practice as to the use of *half* see also Ch. XXXI, 59. For the form of ordinal numerals used as denominators of fractions, singular or plural, see Ch. XXV, 29, a, 2.

Mrs. Pott... had... permanently retired with the faithful body-guard upon one moiety or *half-part* of the annual income and profits arising from the editorship and sale of the Eatonswill Gazette. Dick., Pickw., Ch. LI, 473.

If we take 2 parts (sc. 4 pennies) together, there will be 8 pennies, and their relation to the whole shilling is described as *2 third-parts*, or briefly as *two thirds*. PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 100.

$13\frac{1}{4}$  represents 13 *fourth-parts* of a unit. Ib., § 116.

It may further be observed that:

- 1) fractions which are not preceded by an integer are mostly followed by partitive *of*. Before the name of a measure *of* is, to all appearance, never dispensed with.

- i. \* Its transverse diameter must be diminished *one fourteenth... of an inch*. YOUNG (Phil. Trans., XCI, 59). 1).

Their difference was exactly *one fifth of an inch*. Ib.

*A quarter of a mile* further on the road to Auch dipped into the valley. STANLEY WEYMAN.<sup>2)</sup>

A gives away  $\frac{2}{11}$  of a guinea. He gives  $\frac{1}{12}$  of this to B,  $\frac{3}{7}$  of it to C, and the remainder to D. How much does each get? PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 139.

\*\* Her mind (was) fixed... upon a house in Park Lane, a country house at Wimbledon,... and *a fourth of the annual profits* of the eminent firm of Huller & Bullock. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 119.

Not *one fourth of provincial tradesmen* or farmers ever take stock; nor, in fact, does one half of them ever keep account-books deserving the name. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 32.

*Three fourths of the Upper House* walked in solemn order from their usual place of assembling to the tribunal. MAC., War. Hist., (648b).

*Nine-tenths of my customers* have been English gentlefolk. Times. Some *three-fourths of the food* we consume is thus imported, and the great bulk of it is carried in British ships. Ib.

- ii. Our effects, sold at *a fourth their value*, will fetch 150 napoleons. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 229.

1) MURRAY.

2) GÜNTHER, Man.; § 454.

They would not give the House *one-tenth the trouble* which is given by a certain clique. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 105.

There is not *one-quarter the amount* of drunkenness. MARY KINGSLEY, *W. Africa*, 663.<sup>1)</sup>

They are better in design and only half to *two thirds the cost*. Times.

- 2) fractions which are preceded by an integer stand without partitive *of*. Note that the noun which is modified by such a mixed number takes the mark of the plural: *one and a half years*. Observe also that *quarter*, unlike other denominators, in this position does not take the mark of the plural.

i. There is no change made in the number of hours in which women, young persons, and children may be employed. In textile factories it remains at *fifty-six and a half* hours a week. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. X, 140.

He found that he wanted half *thirty-one and three-eighths* inches from the corner. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. III, 27.

It was a dodgy sum, and the right answer was *one and seven-eighths* donkeys, which, of course, looks as if it must be wrong. BARRY PAIN, *A Change of Role*, Ch. I.

This railway which will be *four and a half* miles long is intended to start from Bayswater. Graph.

ii. He received the arrears of *two and three-quarter* years of sipping in one attack of delirium tremens. RUDY. KIPL., *Plain Tales*, XXIII, 177. The case centres round a child of *five and three-quarter* years. TRUTH, No. 1801, 106.

- 3) the noun indicating the thing to be divided is often placed between the integer and the fraction, especially in the case of *half* and *quarter*.

At Newcastle in New South Wales there fell on March 16, 1871, more than ten and a half inches of rain in *two hours and a half*. CHAMBERLAIN, *Journ.*<sup>2)</sup>

The firm employed more than two thousand hands; and its works... cover *two acres and a quarter* of land. RID. HAGGARD, *Mr. Meeson's Will*, Ch. I, 1.

- b) For further instances of ordinals converted into pure nouns see the dictionary. The following will be deemed sufficient in these pages: The two *seconds* adjusted the cases. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 21.

He was not a double *first*, nor even a first class man; but he revenged himself on the university by putting *firsts* and *double firsts* out of fashion for the year. TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XX, 158.

His Majesty won two *firsts* and a *second* for Devons; a *second* and two *thirds* for Herefords; three *seconds* for Shorthorns. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3843, 881. (= *first prize*, etc. Compare the use of *empties* for *empty bottles*, *packing-cases* etc., discussed in Ch. XXIX, 2).

## 15. Fractions are used by way of adverbs chiefly to modify the adverbial *as*.

- i. You would give me your feast to eat, though I were not clad a *tithe* as well as the menial behind your chair. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 353.
- ii. The month is a *third* gone. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. X, 260.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., II.



*Half*, of course, admits of more varied adverbial application. See the Dictionary.

16. Some idiomatic applications of ordinal numerals deserve special mention.

- a) Approximate position in a series may be expressed by two ordinals connected by *or*. Compare 4, c.

I remember at one place... a decent woman smiling at me on *the third or fourth* day, and curtsying in her clean apron, as she says [etc.]. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVI, 807.

Instead of *the first or second* + noun we sometimes find *the first* + noun *or two*. Compare 4, c, Note.

The quarrel with Will took place yesterday, very soon after I had written *the first sentence or two* of my letter. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXX, 747.

This stratagem answered, and procured me respect enough at *the first visit or two*. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXXI, 863

- b) *The first... the second* are sometimes used in the same function as *the former... the latter*.

Thus it was that Laura Bell became Mrs. Pendennis's daughter. Neither her husband, nor that gentleman's brother, the Major, viewed her with very favourable eyes. She reminded *the first* of circumstances in his wife's life which he was forced to accept, but would have forgotten much more willingly: and as for *the second*, how could he regard her? She was neither related to his own family of Pendennis, nor to any nobleman in this empire, and she had but a couple of thousand pounds for her fortune. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90—91.

- c) Successive ordinals are used to denote decreasing degrees of affinity in cousins.

The children of brothers or sisters are *first cousins* to each other; the children of *first cousins* are *second cousins* to each other; and so on. The term *second cousin* is also loosely applied to the son or daughter of a *first cousin*, more exactly called a ~~(first)~~ *cousin once removed*. MURRAY, *S. V. cousin*, 3.

Two cousins were present to hear the will, and a *second cousin* besides Mr. Trumbull. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXV, 244.

- d) *The first thing* or *first thing* often has the value of an adverb. Compare Ch. VI, 8, a.

i. He might mention my case *the first thing*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 35.

He must go there *the first thing* the next day. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. X, 83.

Go down *the first thing* to-morrow, by the six-o'-clock train. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXI, 251.

ii. You must pay him *first thing*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IV, 203.

You can order a fly *first thing*, and bring me my breakfast early. MRS. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, Ch. II, 14a.

Similarly: I'll be revenged *the very first opportunity*. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 1, (43).

Villeneuve received orders to put to sea *the first opportunity*. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 246.

- e) *First* sometimes approximates to *any*. Compare the Dutch *de eerste de beste*.

If a man were to accost *the first* homely-featured or plain-dressed young woman of his acquaintance, and tell her bluntly that she was not handsome or rich enough for him, and he could not marry her, he would deserve to be kicked for his ill-manners. CH. LAMB, *Es. of El., A Bachelor's Complaint*.

Can't you believe that in this critical time of our affairs, there are reasons why special favours should be shown to *the first* Frenchman of distinction who comes amongst us? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 986.

I'll demolish *the first* who puts me out of temper. EM. BRONTE, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. III, 13b.

That wench'll be troth-plight to *th' first* man as'll wed her and keep her i' plenty. MRS. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. X, 137.

f) Also the following idioms may be recorded here:

- i. \* He was displeased though, *on second thoughts*, to have been taken for an ill-conditioned country-fellow. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. XLVII, 365a. But no, *on second thoughts*, you may as well go to my tailor's. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 68.

*On second thoughts* I remained within. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

\*\* Do you write, Garnet; and, *upon second thought*, it will be better from you. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, IV, (142).

"I'd better go myself and prepare her," he added *on second thought*. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 86.

*On second thought* I did not feel sure that I could quarrel with her estimate. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, 16.

On the analogy of the above also, occasionally, *on first thoughts*: *On first thoughts* it occurs to us that a tax on losings would rope in a larger amount (sc. than a tax on winnings). *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5001, 3b.

- ii. There's a party, Walter is going and Blunt is going. I'm the *fifth wheel*. GEORGE MOORE, *Celibates*, 44. (T.)
- iii. If she repented, though *at the eleventh hour*, it was not too late. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 910. (See *Bible*, *Matth.*, XX.)

17. From the ordinal numerals are derived the adverbs *firstly*, *secondly*, etc., which are used in enumerations. *First* mostly throws off the adverbial suffix (Ch. X, 18), and this is occasionally done also by *second*.

Our interests in this matter are two, and two only — *first*, that there is not established on the Persian Gulf a fortified position which might be used on the flank of our communications with India; *second* to see that differential rates are not imposed on British goods. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5573, 2a.

#### NUMERALS OF REPETITION.

18. English has but three special numerals of repetition: *once*, *twice*, and *thrice*. The other numerals have the noun *times* placed after them to denote repetition: *four times*, *five times*, etc.
19. Obs. I. The forms *once*, *twice* and *thrice* are adverbial genitives, the final *ce* being a mere orthographical device for representing the fact that the breath-sound of the genitival suffix was retained. See Ch. XXV, 11, s. v. *dice*.

- II. *One time* and *two times* seem to occur especially after a demonstrative, as more emphatic forms than *once* and *twice*.

For *this once*, as a variant of *this one time*, see Ch. XXXVI, 10, 1, f. Of *this twice* no instances have been found up to the time of writing. Will you forgive me for *this one time*? CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. III, 36. And he said, Is not he rightly named Jacob? for he hath supplanted me *these two times*. Bible, Gen., XXVII, 36.

The notion of repetition is but faintly discernible in the phrase *at one time*, as used in:

Batch: 1) the quantity of bread baked *at one time*. 2) any work or business dispatched *at once*. WEBST., Dict., s.v. *batch* (Observe the identical application of the phrases *at one time* and *at once*.)

Settee: a large sofa-shaped seat for several persons to sit in *at one time*. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict., s.v. *settee*.

If you watch intently... each caterpillar, or as many as you can keep in view *at one time*, you will then perceive that something peculiar has happened to each of them. Westm. Gaz., No. 7069, 10a.

- III. *Thrice* is far less common than *three times*. The former is chiefly met with in literary language in various shades of meaning, i.e. in that of:

a) *on three successive occasions*: You all did see that on the Lupercal | I *thrice* presented him a kingly crown, | Which he did *thrice* refuse. JUL. CÆS., III, 2, 93.

"I know the evils of premature engagements," sighed out Helen: and as she has made this allusion no less than *thrice* in the course of the above conversation [etc.]. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 86.

*Thrice* before had she snipt off one of her auburn ringlets and given them away. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.

Note *thrice-told* = hackneyed (= Dutch *afgezaagd*): The critics who dismiss Mr. George's speech as a *thrice-told* tale [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 6359, 1b.

b) *three times* (as much in number, amount or value). Often hyperbolically: *many times* (as much). In this case usually preceding a numeral or followed by the adverb *as*.

i. \* To Cattraeth's vale in glitt'ring row | *Thrice two hundred* warriors go. GRAY, *The Death of Hoel*, 12.

\*\* A sum more than *thrice as great* as the whole income of the English crown in 1685. MAC., *Hist.*, I, III, 344.<sup>1)</sup>

The knight | With some surprise and *thrice as much* disdain | Turn'd. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 557.

ii. And you yourself will smile at your own self | Hereafter, when you yield your flower of life | To one more fitly yours, not *thrice your age*. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 948.

c) *very*, *highly*, etc., before adjectives or participles that have the value of adjectives. Compare the Latin *ter*, as in *o terque quaterque beati!*, and the Dutch *driewerf*, which are similarly employed. *Thrice-blessed* they that master so their blood. MIDS., I, 1, 74.

*Thrice-happy* bird! I too have seen, | Much of the vanities of men; | And sick of having seem 'em, | Would cheerfully these limbs resign | For such a pair of limbs as thine | And such a head between 'em. COWPER, *Jackdaw*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

So extraordinary has been the popularity of this more than *thrice-fortunate* book, that the wildest legends have grown up as to the history of its origin. WARD, DICK., Ch. II, 21.

Since then no Christmas season has passed without his *thrice-welcome* party of three being present Westm. Gaz., No. 6435, 5b.

We went to bid him *thrice-welcome*. Ib., No. 6111, 7a.

Note. In ordinary prose *thrice* occurs frequently enough after *twice*, especially in the phrase *twice or thrice*, which denotes indefinite, but limited, repetition and is used practically interchangeably with *once or twice*. See 21, Obs. III.

i. He has contradicted me *once, twice, thrice*, in the presence of the family. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXX, 743.

*Twice, thrice* I went back and told my sufferings to him. Ib., Ch. LXXV, 798. I have heard discomfited officers in after-days prove infallibly... how *once, twice, thrice*, but for nightfall, Mr. Washington and his army were in our power. Ib., Ch. XCI, 972.

ii. The wandering attention of the mistress of the Blue Dragon roved to these things but *twice or thrice*. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. III, 15b.

Your famous Mr. P—, . . . , I have been to hear in the House of Commons *twice or thrice*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXVIII, 718.

He comes in his cab but *twice or thrice* in a week. Id., Pend., II, Ch. V, 51.

Compare: They comes out about *twice or three times* a week, and spirits a mile alongside of us. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 81.

20. The numerals and phrases of repetition are essentially adverbial in grammatical function, although they often modify a noun. See Note α, below. We find them before:

a) cardinal numerals: We know that 10 is *twice five*. Hence, if we multiply by 10, the result is twice as much as it should be. PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 36.

We know that 100 is *4 times 25*. Therefore, if we multiply the number by 100, we take it 4 times as often as we should. Ib.

b) verbs: In short, so provoking a devil was Dick, | That we *wished* him full *ten times* a day at Old Nick. GOLDSMITH, Retaliation.

He *had been taken in three times* before in precisely a similar manner. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VIII, 88.

*Twice* the old man *lifted* his staff to strike; *twice* he *laid* it down again. CH. KINGSLEY, Hypatia, Ch. I, 4a.

Note the idiom in: Clive told him... that he would do well *to think twice* before he sent such poltroons into a breach defended by English soldiers. MAC., Clive, (507a).

Let officers take warning, and *think twice* ere they visit poor fellows with the cane. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 98.

c) the positive of an adjective (or adverb?). Except for such applications as are illustrated in 19 Obs. III, c, instances seem to be rare.

Once bitten *twice shy*. Rev. of Rev., No. 194, 135a.

d) the comparative of an adjective, adverb or indefinite numeral.

When he heard it was you, sir, he was *ten times more furious*. THOM. HOLCROFT, Road to Ruin, I, 3, (11).

She was *ten thousand times more charming* and irresistible than she had been before. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. LIII, 413a.



She is asked to bear a strain calculated at *four times greater* than that which her grandmother had to bear. PUNCH, No. 3705, 22b.

The figures were *six or seven times larger* than life. SAM. BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. V, 43.

Men who had *ten or twenty times less* to remember. GLADSTONE, Glean., II, 289.<sup>1)</sup>

When the comparative of the adjective is used adnominally, it is divided from the numeral by the other modifiers of the noun.

Have you not *twice a better-bed*? TROL., The Warden, Ch. V, 65.

- e) the adverbs *as* or *too* modifying the positive of an adjective, adverb or indefinite numeral.

- i. Our new house which we have took is *twenty times as big*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXI, 858.

The people of India, when we subdued them, were *ten times as numerous* as the Americans whom the Spaniards vanquished. MAC., Clive, (497b).

We have *five times as many* as we can use. MURRAY, s.v. *time*, 19, b.

- ii. To desert an angel — yes, an angel *ten thousand times too good* for you... is what you call honour. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXVI, 802.

To multiply by 9. We know that  $9 = 10 - 1$ . Hence if we multiply the number by 10, we take it *once too often*. PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 36.

Note a) Sometimes the numeral stands before a noun modified by a genitive, or equivalent expression, which together with its modifier has the value of a cardinal numeral + the name of a measure. Thus when a person is twenty years of age, another person who is twice as old may be said to be twice his age, or twice twenty years.

It's *twice the size of Tiny Tim*. DICK., Christm. Car., V, 106.

That great Maryland man was *twice your size*. THACK., Virg., Ch. VIII, 80.

It's worth *twice the money*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. VIII, 56.

M. Fagel was *twice the Prince's age*. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. III, 186.

He will demand, and probably receive, *twice the editor's salary*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5573, 15b.

β) Sometimes also the noun standing after a numeral or phrase of repetition may be apprehended to be short for this noun preceded by *as* + adjective + *as*. Thus *He is twice the man he was* may be understood to stand for *He is twice as important (rich, etc.) as the man he was*.

The beadle's *ten times the man* he was. BERN. SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 25.

γ) A numeral or phrase of repetition may also be used predicatively in the sense of *the second (third, etc.) time*.

This is *twice* they have treated you so. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXV, 209.

21. Obs. I. A notion similar to that denoted by *twice as* + *much* or adjective or adverb may be expressed by the idioms illustrated in the following quotations:

- i. Some, to whom Heav'n in wit has been profuse, | Want *as much more* to turn it to its use. POPE, Es. on Crit., I, 81.

I should have been glad of *as much more*. CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 57.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. The Lent shall be *as long again* as it is. HENRY VI, B, IV, 3, 7.

Compare: \*The consumption per head is *half as much again* as in England. TIMES. (= *one-and-a-half times as much*.)

The Railway capital of the United Kingdom is *half as great again* as the whole National Debt. TITBITS.

\*\*He lived in a spacious house in Golden Square, which in addition to a brass plate upon the street-door, had another brass plate *two sizes and a half smaller* upon the left-hand door-post. DICK., NICH. NICK., Ch. II, 4a.

- II. The notion of repetition is sometimes emphasized by *over*. See MURRAY, s. v. *over*, 13.

What horrors, when it flashed over him that he had made this fine speech, word for word, *twice over*! OL. WENDELL HOLMES, Autocrat, Ch. I, 11b.

Deprive the lad of his education; of the means by which he'll have to make his bread? No, *a hundred times over*, no! MRS. WOOD, ORV. COL., Ch. III, 47.

I intend giving you what is worth the twelve guineas *ten times over*. THOM. CROFTON CROKER, The Three Advices.

Let us take the product of  $5763 \times 154$ . This means that we take the first number *154 times over*. PENDLEBURY, Arithmetic, § 31.

If the hardness of their cases could have saved them, they would have been saved *ten times over*. BERN. SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 32.

In the following quotations *over* belongs to the verb, not to the numeral: I read it *twice over*. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. XIV.

He never wrote any of his works that were printed *twice over*. BOSWELL, Life of Johnson, 14a, foot-note. (*Over* belongs to *to write*).

- III. An approximate small number of repetitions may be expressed by *once or twice*, *twice or thrice*, etc. Compare 4, c. For illustration of *twice or thrice* see also 19, Obs. III, c, Note.

For *twice or thrice* we also find *two or three times*. The phrases *a few times* or *some few times* seem to be rare.

- i. *Once or twice* he took us for a row. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 21a.

Perhaps I have *once or twice* made him angry. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXX, 743. Miss Pole had a cousin, *once or twice* removed, who had offered to Miss Matty long ago. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. III, 60.

- ii. So ran the tale like fire about the court, | ... Till ev'n the knights at banquet *twice or thrice* | Forgot to drink to Lancelot and the Queen. TEN., Lanc. and El., 731.

- iii. John saw him do it *two or three times*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XV, 268.

- iv. I heard my name *three or four times* mentioned by my brawling kinsman. THACK., Virg., Ch. XC, 966.

- v. Whenever Mrs. Gummidge was overcome in a similar manner during the remainder of our stay (which happened *some few times*), he always said the same thing in extenuation of the circumstance. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 21a.

- IV. *Once* (and perhaps *twice* and *thrice*), on the strength of implying the noun *time*, is sometimes preceded by an adnominal modifier.

- i. It (had) been arranged that Bob Sawyer and Ben Allen should be considered at liberty to fill twice to Mr. Winkle's *once*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXVIII, 352.

- ii. Zara had never smiled, but *the once* in the drawing-room. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XII, 104.

- iii. Both his uncles tipped him *that once*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. VII, 51. Do forgive us *this once*! SWEET, Old Chap.

- V. Also indefinite numerals may be followed by *times* to denote repetition.

I saw a circle of gigantic forms, *many times* higher than myself. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. V, 42.

Observe also *times out of number* = innumerable times: He had entrusted her to Hammersley's keeping *times out of number*. W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. IV, 55.

2. Certain idiomatic applications of *once* deserve special mention. For some of these see also Ch. VIII, 70 and Ch. XVII, 26.

a) *once* = so often as once, ever: How say you, then; would heart of man *once* think it? *Hamlet*, I, 5, 121.

It (sc. Scotland) cannot | Be call'd our mother, but our grave; where nothing,  
But who knows nothing, is *once* seen to smile. *Macbeth*, IV, 3, 167.

Did I *once* say | That I repented? BROWNING, *Pippa Passes*, Morn., 46.  
No beast like him had *once* been seen. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*,  
*The Son of Cræsus*, XXI.

b) *once* = only once: Where is this perfidious villain! could I *once* plunge this dagger into his false heart, I should then die satisfied. SMOLLETT, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 152.

c) *not once* = *never once* — not even once: i. Direness, familiar to my slaughterous thoughts | *Cannot once* start me. *Macbeth*, V, 5, 15.

ii. And *never once* he has had cause to scold. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXLVII.

She had *never once* uttered a syllable of unkindness to Harry Esmond. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

I walk away with Hetty to Soho, and *never once* thought of arranging a new meeting with her. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVI, 804.

d) *once again* = once more: Meeson's *once again*. RIDER HAGGARD, *Mr. Meeson's Will*, Ch. XXIII.

*Once again* he had to summon Roy. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXVIII, 253.

e) *once and again* — more than once, twice or oftener: *Once and again*, in two or three years, Mr. Hobson Newcome would meet me. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 50.

I have tried it (sc. attacked the style of literary man) *once and again* myself and found it infallible. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5573, 9a.

f) (*for*) *once in a way* = as a solitary or exceptional instance; rarely, exceptionally: "And whenever I catches hold o' that there melan-cholly chap with the black hair", said Sam, "if I don't bring some real water into his eyes, *for once in a way*, my name an't Weller". DICK., *Pickwick*, Ch. XVI, 149.

I may have done it *once in a way*. MURRAY.

*For once in a way* we were not inclined to eat. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 109.  
Less frequently, in the same meaning, *once and away*, *once in a while*:

i. Fretting at corruptions, yet *once and away* helping to patch up one himself. LEIGH HUNT, *Men, Women and B.*, II, XI, 272.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Hadst thou gone into the royal presence *once in a while* to intercede for some special cases. SPURGEON, *Serm.*, XXIII, 653.<sup>1)</sup>

g) *once for all* = *once and for all* = once as a final act, once and done with. For illustration see also Ch. XL, 11, Obs. VI, a:

i. The half-formed hope must be abandoned *once for all*. *Rev. of Rev.*

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. The virtual adoption last week of the national guild in the engineering industry has put an end *once and for all* to both these objections. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 553*b*.
- h) *at once* = 1) at one sitting, stroke, breath, etc. My son's account was too long to be delivered *at once*. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. XXI, (380). Poetry is a gift conferred *at once*. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. X, 60. It doesn't do for her to see too many people *at once*. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 10*a*.
- 2) at the same time: Don't all speak *at once*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*
- 3) immediately: Do it *at once*, please. *Ib*.
- 4) *suddenly*; a rare application, *all at once* being the ordinary phrase: From the moment you lose sight of the land you have left, all is vacancy until you step on the opposite shore, and are launched *at once* into the bustle and novelties of another world. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, I, 10.
- 5) *alike*, followed by *and* and forming with it a kind of co-ordinative conjunctive. See Ch. X, 11: Of all the enemies of liberty whom Britain has produced, James I was *at once* the most harmless and the most provoking. MAC., *Hamperden*, (195*a*).
- i) *for once* = by way of exception. For illustration of this phrase and (*for*) *this* (or *that*) *once* see Ch. XXXVI, 10, I, f.

## NUMERALS OF MULTIPLICATION.

23. There are two groups of multiplicatives or numerals of multiplication:

- a) those of native origin, which are compounds of *fold*: *twofold*, *threefold*, *a hundredfold*, etc.
- b) those of foreign origin: *double*, *treble* (or *triple*), *quadruple*, *quintuple*, *sextuple*, *octuple*, *decuple*, etc. Among these only *double* and *treble* are in common use. *Quadruple* is uncommon, and the others are found but rarely. *Manifold* and *multiple* are multiplicatives formed from indefinite numerals.

Note. The use of such forms as *four double* instead of *fourfold* is now obsolete.

A hundred and fifty of their beds, sown together, made up the breadth and length; and these were *four double*, which however, kept me but very indifferently from the hardness of the floor. SWIFT, *Gul.*, I, Ch. II, 119*b*.

24. The multiplicatives, both those of native and foreign origin, may be understood as adjectives that have been converted into nouns. Their substantival character is clearly evident when they are preceded by the definite article and followed by partitive *of*, as in *ten is the double of five*. It is less evident when the article is dispensed with, as in *I offered him double of what he asked*, and is almost entirely lost when also partitive *of* is absent, as in *I offered him double the money*. In this last case they are, to all intents and purposes, adverbial in grammatical function. See MURRAY, s. v. *fold*, and compare Ch. V, 16, Obs. VIII and XXXI, 60.



25. a) So far as the available evidence goes, the native multiplicatives are not used with the article.

Such a sentence as *honderd is een vijfvoud van twintig* would run in English: *a (one) hundred is five times twenty*.

We know that *100 is 4 times 25*. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 36.

Also instances with partitive *of* appear to be rare.

The loss had been *tenfold of* what was there stated. SOUTHEY, *Pen. War*, III, XXXVIII, 219. 1)

They are, however, frequent enough before nouns, without either article or partitive *of*, where they are often practically equivalent to the corresponding numerals of repetition (27, Obs. III), and are applied in either a purely numerical or in a figurative (hyperbolic) sense.

- i. They amount to at least *fourfold that quantity*. SCRIVENER, *Lect. Text New Test.*, 7. 1)

He now restores *twofold*, and even *fourfold the amount* of tribute unjustly levied. LIT. WORLD, 1891, 251c.

- ii. Were he *tenfold* our enemy, ... his wounds must be looked to. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 131.

Note a) A substantive clause is sometimes found in the place of the noun.

The fee was at least *tenfold* what I should have asked, had I set a price upon my own services. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 116.

β) Not infrequently some such noun as *quantity* or *amount*, preceded by a defining modifier, is understood.

But other fell into good ground, and brought forth fruit, some *an hundred-fold*, some *sixtyfold*, some *thirtyfold*. Bible, *Matth.*, XIII, 8.

Durra yields a crop of *140-fold*. Athen., No. 4560, 261c. (Compare: Wheat yields *50 fold* in the highlands of Yamen. Ib.)

He has repaid me *tenfold*. MURRAY, s.v. *fold*.

- b) A rather frequent application of native multiplicatives is their use as pure adverbs.

As such we find them with:

- 1) verbs, especially such as express an increasing, not infrequently with a hyperbolic colouring.

In Lancashire the number of inhabitants appears *to have increased ninefold*. Mac., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 282.

The sum raised in England *has*, in a time not exceeding two long lives, *been multiplied thirty-fold*. Ib., I, Ch. III, 306.

The spread and growth of libraries *have increased* our means of illustrating and understanding the text *a hundredfold*, if we only use them. Not. and Quer., 1891, 263b.

Our gun-boats do what they can, but they would require *to be multiplied tenfold* to exercise close surveillance over such a long stretch of coast. Graph., 1891, 126c.

*This has increased* the traffic on our roads at least *fourfold*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5007, 7a.

Note that *to multiply threefold, fourfold* etc. = *to triple, to quadruple*, etc.

- i. The population of Bristol has *quadrupled*. The population of Norwich has more than *doubled*. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 330.
- ii. The population of every one of these places has, since the Revolution, much more than doubled. The population of some has *multiplied sevenfold*. Ib., I, Ch. III, 334.

2) comparatives of adjectives, adverbs or indefinite numerals, mostly hyperbolically, instead of the intensives *far, much*, etc.

- i. If a man was great while living, he becomes *tenfold greater* when dead. CARLYLE, Hero Worship, Lect. I, 23.  
That is a *thousandfold worse*. MURRAY, s. v. *fold*.
- ii. The cautious old gentleman knit his brows *tenfold closer* after this explanation. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Leg. of Sleepy Hol., Postscript.
- iii. I was in *tenfold more* horror of mind upon account of my former convictions. DEFOE, Rob. Crus., 10.

c) As adjectives the native multiplicatives are mostly, hyperbolically, applied in a sense which is practically the same as that of *very great*.

- i. His mind reacted with *tenfold force* on the spirit of the age. MAC., Hist., III, I, 412.<sup>1)</sup>  
He is, according to his showing, guilty of a *twenty-thousand-fold act of treason*. Rev. of Rev., No. 200, 161b.
- ii. Highways, bridges, and military defence, constituted the *threefold conditions* (*trinoda necessitas*) always ... attached to the tenure of land. TOULMIN SMITH, Parish, 104.<sup>1)</sup> (= *triple*.)

d) Finally we record their use as predicative words.

- i. The glottis is *twofold*. SWEET, Prim. Phon., § 17.
- ii. If you really think you owe me ever so little, you can return it a *hundred-fold* if you will. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, I, 212.

26. a) Also the foreign multiplicatives are seldom found preceded by the article.

The *quadruple* of the pryce of the inch of the best sort of schoes. Kirkcudbr. War-Comm. Min. Bk., 149.<sup>1)</sup>

Ten, which is the *double* of five. JOWETT, Plato<sup>2</sup>, I, 485.

Constructions with partitive *of* also are infrequent.

She enclosed *double of* what I had asked. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 13.  
The value of silver was more than *quadruple of* what it is now. MAC., Machiavelli, (32b).

The ordinary construction appears to be that without either article or partitive *of*.

- i. \* Mrs. Porter was *double the age of Johnson*. BOSWELL, Life of Johnson, 20b.

He was *double my mother's age* when he married. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 2b.

\*\* The chances of success of a young farmer assisted by a woman in the house are more than *double those of the farmer* who endeavours to start in solitary discomfort. Times.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

\*\*\* The salary would be *double what I now received*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 104.

ii. I received *quadruple the amount*. WEBST. Dict.

Note a) Some such noun as *amount* or *quantity*, preceded by a defining modifier, is often understood after *double*.

If the thief be found, let him pay *doubt*. Bible, Exod., XXII, 7.

β) For the use of *double* and *treble* in transferred meanings, as pure nouns, see the dictionary.

b) As a pure adverb, *double* varies with *doubly*, the latter being, apparently, more common than the former.

**double.** i. Not *double distilled*, but *double milled*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 11.

ii. Bright eyes were *double bright*. KEATS, Lamia, 611.

iii. She asked him... if Miss Nell was as handsome as the lady who jumped over the ribbons. "As handsome as her?" said Kit. "*Double as handsome*". DICK., The Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XXXIX, 146a.

**doubly.** i. How many men of rank and honour, having lost their fortunes, have *doubly recovered* them. THOM. HOLCROFT, Road to Ruin, I, 3, (12).

ii. Osborne shook him heartily by the hand with a cordiality that made poor George's ambassador feel *doubly guilty*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 241. She was always saying that George Warrington was a coward for ever sneering at Mr. Will, and the latter *doubly a poltroon* for not taking notice of his kinsman's taunts. Id., Virg., Ch. LXXIII, 767.

He could no more resist the perfect harmony which pervaded every charm and made all *doubly charming* in this woman, than he could resist his destiny. Miss BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 9.

Note. The other foreign multiplicatives are rarely used as pure adverbs: the instances given by MURRAY, s. v. *treble* and *triple*, may all be set down as applications of nouns which, through the dropping of the article or partitive *of*, have assumed an adverbial character. As pure adverbs the forms *trebly*, *triply*, *quadruply*, etc. are almost regularly used instead.

i. Places of distrust and cruelty, and restraint, they would have left *quadruple-locked* for ever. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XLI, 158a.

ii. \* Out of his goods or lands the innocent person is *quadruply recompensed* for the loss of his time. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., I, Ch. VI, (129b).

We are told in Mr. William O'Brien's Introduction that the Land League has been *triply reproached*. Lit. World.

\*\* Let the gates of the town be *trebly guarded*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXVII, 356.

We, who had been active in the guilty scene of the morning, felt *trebly guilty* when we saw the effect which our conduct had produced upon him. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXIX, 835.

This immovability of face, and the habit of taking a pinch of snuff before he gave an answer, made him *trebly oracular* to Mr. Tulliver. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. III, 9.

c) The applications of the foreign multiplicatives as pure adjectives, especially those of *double*, *treble* and *triple* are very numerous. In many of these the multiplicative force is obscured. For details see the dictionary.

A *double blessing* is a *double grace*. Haml., I, 3, 54.

Haidée was Passion's child, born where the sun | Showers *triple* light.  
BYRON, Don Juan, II, CCII.

d) This also applies to their use as predicative words.

No recollection, I suppose, when you were content *to ride double*, behind the butler, on a docked coach-horse SHER., School for Scand., II, 1, (376).

I can't tell why she should take all this trouble | To prove her mistress had been *sleeping double*. BYRON, Don Juan, I, CXL.

It is worth fifty times the sixteen pence which I stole, and which I *repaid double*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 89a.

27. Obs I. As compared with the foreign multiplicatives, those which are of native origin often "express rather a plurality of things more or less different, than mere quantitative multiplication: cf. *a double charm* with *a two-fold charm*". MURRAY. Thus also no exchange for the alternative multiplicative would be possible, not, at least, without a distinct change of meaning, in:

The Government propose to satisfy the *threefold* call for industrial, military, and financial aid to the war. The Nation, XVIII, 18, 624b.

- II. In the following quotations the multiplicatives may have been requisitioned to satisfy the demands of the metre, their value being possibly that of ordinary numerals.

And some I see | That *twofold* balls and *treble* sceptres carry. Macb., IV, 1, 121.

Is it fit | The *threefold* world divided, he should stand | One of the three to share it? Jul. Cæs., IV, 1, 14.

- III. In some of their applications the multiplicatives vary with the numerals of repetition. Compare the following combinations, all of them illustrated in the preceding pages:

*twice the size* with *fourfold that quantity* and *double the number*;

*ten times the man he was* with *tenfold our enemy*;

*once bitten twice shy* with *not double distilled but double milled, double bright* and *doubly guilty*;

*twice as big* with *double as handsome*;

*ten times more furious* with *tenfold greater*.

The following quotation aptly illustrates this identity of meaning

All our service | In every point *twice done*, and then *done double*  
Were poor and single business. Macb., I, 6, 15.



## CHAPTER XLIII.

### PROP-WORDS.

#### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. Prop-words are words that are placed after adnominal words or word-groups to make them capable of performing the grammatical functions of nouns.

There are two kinds of prop-words, viz. *a*) such as have no reference to any preceding or subsequent noun, *b*) such as refer to a noun to be found in a preceding or subsequent part of the discourse.

The words used as prop-words are certain nouns of a general and, therefore, indefinite meaning, and the indefinite pronoun *one*. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., 37—39.

Note. When a prop-word is dispensed with after an adjective, the latter is converted into a noun, either with all or only a part of the grammatical possibilities of an ordinary substantive. For a detailed discussion of this change of grammatical function in adjectives see Ch. XXIX.

2. *a*) Word-groups or compounds containing a prop-word that indicates a person may be declined for the genitive.

- i. This might be my lord *such a one*, that praised my lord *such a one's* horse. HAMLET, V, 1, 92.

Why was it useless to try to win *any one's* favour? CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 10.

I should like to feel that there is a chance of *some one's* knowing the truth when I come into the room this evening. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIII, 243.

- ii. The lady's wealth was the subject of *everybody's* talk. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXII, 763.

I came back as soon as I could to hinder *anybody's* telling you but me. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar. n., II, Ch. XVIII, 141.

The use of the genitive of word-groups in which *one* does not denote a person is uncommon.

A comparatively large bird permits itself to be chased from the vicinity of a *smaller one's* nest by the energy of the latter's attack. Westm. Gaz., No. 6463, 14a.

b) Word-groups consisting of a compound of *one* or *body* and the adverb *else* now have the mark of the genitive attached to *else*. These group-genitives are especially common in colloquial language. See MURRAY, s. v. *else*, 1, d.

i. Don't tell me that your husband is pleased with your face, and you want *no one else's* admiration. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXIII, 876.

His life is as valuable as *any one else's*. BERN. SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, III, 75.

ii. Everybody stood up in the carriage and looked over *somebody else's* shoulder at the evolutions of the military. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 34.

Indeed, who ever accused women of being just? They are always sacrificing themselves or somebody for *somebody else's* sake. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 39.

The salads were as good as *everybody else's*. DU MAURIER, Trilby, I, 52. Everything he had... seemed to be also *everybody else's* who chose. Id., The Martin, Ch. I.

Note a) Anciently it was the pronoun itself which received the mark of the genitive. Traces of this practice are met with in Late Modern English. Compare JESPERSEN, Progress, § 233.

It is not ours but *somebodies else*. TILLOTSON, Works, III, 173.

While I am my own, or *anybody's else*, that will never happen. CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 2, (210).

They were more in Pendennis's way than in *anybody's else*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 276.

β) The placing of both the pronoun and the adverb *else* in the genitive seems to be met with only in vulgar language.

As if it was easy for any one to find their own needle, let alone *any one's elses*. SKETCHLEY, Cleop. Needle, 27.<sup>1)</sup>

### THE PROP-WORD *ONE*.

3. The most characteristic and most important prop-word is the indefinite pronoun *one*, which, itself devoid of any particular meaning, has no further function than that of substantiving the adnominal word to which it is attached. From its original meaning, which is that of the numeral *one*, it can be used only with reference to countables, i. e. things thought of within limits. For the rise of the use of *one* as a prop-word see GERBER, Substantivierung des Adjektivs (Göttingen, 1895); EINENKEL, Das englische Indefinitum, 25 ff; id., Anglia, XXVI, 469 ff; XXXVI, 539; LUICK, Anglia, XXIX, 339; XXXVII, 4. For a survey of the various theories propounded see JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.11 ff.

Note a) *One* is used as a prop-word of the first and the second kind. (1). JESPERSEN (Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.20) proposes to call *one* when used in the second function anaphoric: from *ava* (back)

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, Progress, § 233.

† φέρειν (to carry). As the function of the word is to carry back to the mind the notion expressed by a preceding noun, this seems to be a very appropriate term and deserves, therefore, universal adoption.

β) The prop-word *one* always has weak stress. This may be the reason why in colloquial and vulgar language it has preserved the older pronunciation without the initial lip-back consonant. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *one*, VI, 23 Note, and JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.7.

She's been thinking of the old 'un! DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 20b.

In less than a week after that three of his young 'uns was down with the measles. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft.*, F., 107.

γ) The use of the prop-word *one* may serve the secondary purpose of obviating misunderstanding as to number. Thus *which* may be understood as a singular or a plural in *Which do you choose?* the addition of either *one* or *ones* removing at once all ambiguity. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *one*, VI, 23, Note; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.82.

After an adjective preceded by the definite article it may show that it is not a whole class of persons, but a single individual or a specialized number of individuals, that is meant. Thus in *I'm acting for the innocent and good and not for my own self* (Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 245), in which only the context shows that one individual is referred to, all uncertainty would at once have been removed by the addition of *one*. Compare Ch. XXIX, 14, b.

δ) To meet the want of adaptability of *one* to denote things thought of without limits, recourse is sometimes had to *ditto*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.91.

The books comprised a little English and a deal of Latin... a glance at ancient history, a wink or two at modern *ditto*. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 109.

But *ditto* is also frequent enough when the reference is to a countable, especially in connections where *one* would be impossible or more or less incongruous.

On the table... I saw as follows: — 1. A basket of red peaches, looking like the cheeks of my dear Mary Smith. 2. A *ditto* of large fat, luscious, heavy-looking grapes. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 38.

My regulation saddle-holsters and housings; my Laurie *ditto*. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXX, 320.

For the rest *ditto* sometimes seems to be employed for the sake of humorous effect.

He sent me home two of the finest coats ever seen, a dress-coat and a frock, a velvet waistcoat, a silk *ditto*, and three pairs of pantaloons. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 69.

#### ONE AS A PROP-WORD OF THE FIRST KIND.

4. In the first application *one* almost exclusively denotes persons. The only indubitable exception is furnished by the word-group *young one(s)*, which often denotes the offspring of animals. See Ch. XXIX, 14, f.

An eagle that had *young ones*, looking out for something to feed them, happened to spy a fox's cub. *Æsop's Fables*, X.

NOTE. In such a turn of expression as is illustrated by the following quotations the reference of *one* is to *jest* or some such noun, implied in the demonstrative *that*:

Well, that is a *good one*, too! DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 214.

Not dead! That is a *good one*! MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 77).

5. In its first application *one* is found after a) adjectives or equivalent participles, b) the definite article, c) the indefinite article, d) the singular demonstrative pronouns, e) the determinative *such*, f) the indefinite pronouns *any*, *each*, *every*, *no*, *other* and *some*.

NOTE. The use of non-anaphoric *one* after an adnominal noun seems to be very rare. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

Oh! Halcyone, my *darling one*, you would pity me. . . if you knew. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXI, 272.

Good-night, my *darling one*. VICTORIA CROSS, *Life's Shop Window*, Ch. XXIII, 283.

6. After adjectives or equivalent participles non-anaphoric *one* is used in the plural as well as in the singular.

Occasionally we find the adjective followed by non-anaphoric *one* forming a kind of compound with a preceding adverb: *the yet-living one*, *the once-loved one*. Sometimes also a combination of two adjectives connected by *and* is followed by *one*: *crafty and perfidious one*.

The combination adjective + non-anaphoric *one* is especially found:

- a) after the definite article or a possessive pronoun, irrespective of grammatical function: *the (his) beloved one*.
- b) after the indefinite article, as the nominal part of the predicate: *He is a queer one*.
- c) as a vocative, sometimes modified by a possessive pronoun: *Listen to me, (my) sweet one!*

Sometimes also it stands by way of apposition after a vocative *thou* or *you*: *Leave my presence, thou (you) perverse one!*

For the rest the use of adjective + non-anaphoric *one* is decidedly uncommon. Thus we meet but rarely with such constructions as *this tall one*, *some tall one*, *three tall ones*, *a tall one* (except as nominal part of the predicate), *tall ones*, etc.

It should be added that altogether the construction is not a favourite one. In fact, except for certain combinations such as *the Holy One*, *the Evil One*, *the Sea-born One*, *the Fleet-foot One*, etc.; and *my (your, etc.) dear (or little) ones*, and a few others, the meaning intended is mostly expressed by the aid of some suitable noun: *man*, *woman*, *person*, *people*, etc., unless, indeed, any prop-word is dispensed with, as in the case of some participial adjectives, for which see Ch. XXIX, 17—20.



The adjective followed by non-anaphoric *one* is rarely applied to denote a class of persons in a generalizing sense. For instances see Ch. XXIX, 14, *b*, Note I.

In the following illustrations the three combinations or constructions referred to above are distinguished by the letters *a*), *b*), and *c*), respectively, the rarer ones being marked *d*).

**adored.** *a*) Silence seemed . . . best for *her adored one's* happiness. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXI, 251.

**beloved.** *a*) You, too, have woke out of dreams, mayhap, in which *the beloved one* was smiling on you. THACK., *Lov. the Wid.*, Ch. II, 28.

He would not join some crack-brained plan against the valley, which sheltered *his beloved one*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXV, 208.

**bereaved.** *a*) Coralie noted . . . the large mourning ring of black enamel . . . that flashed upon the *bereaved one's* finger. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. VII, 185.

**best.** *a*) "Oh, Sir, surely Mr. Boswell is *the best one* in the world to pronounce an opinion as to what is said in sport, and what in earnest." said Goldsmith. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. I, 10.

**big.** *b*) He was *a big one*, to be sure. (?), Jack and the Bean-stalk.

**brave.** *b*) Joseph Willet is *a brave one*, DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXII, 87*a*.

**dangerous.** *b*) She was *a sharp one, a dangerous one*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 150.

**dear.** *d*) i. Sir Miles Warrington, no violence of language before *these dear ones!* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. L, 520.

Jem's innocence might be proved, without involving any suspicion of that other — *that dear one*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 239.

ii. Those who had more than *three dear ones* in the Army should be made to double those qualifications. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7045, 7*a*.

iii. Black may be said to be the common wear — there are so many well-known families mourning for *dear ones* killed in South Africa. *Daily Chron.*

**dearest.** *a*) But now, *thy youngest, dearest one*, has perished. SHELLEY, *Adonais*, vi.

**devoted.** *a*) "Fiddle-de-dee!" said lady Enniscorthy, and snapped the card of *the devoted one's* hand. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. I, 240.

**disappointed.** *a*) Then *the disappointed one* is relegated to the condition of life which he would otherwise have filled a little earlier. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 12.

**doomed.** *d*) It was an unlucky thing for *this doomed one* (sc. George the Third), . . . that . . . he should have a beautiful voice. THACK., *The Four Georges*, IV, 95.

**fair.** *a*) It should be mentioned that *the fair one* had told her lover of her father's mania for terseness of diction. *Titbits*, No. 1291, 391*b*.

*d*) I got a promise of *this fair one* here, | To have her love. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 2, 208.

Who is *this fair one*? SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 283.

**faithless.** *a*) The jury gave a verdict for *the faithless one* without leaving their seats. *Titbits*, No. 1291, 388*c*.

**forlorn.** *a*) Norah's arms were about *the forlorn one*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. XI, 225.

**foolish.** *a*) But help *thy foolish ones* to bear; | Help thy vain worlds to bear thy light. TEN., *In Mem.*, *Prol.*, viii.

**gifted.** *a*) How is a man to know that he is not *the lucky one* or *the gifted one*? TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 12.

**great.** *d*) Madness in *great ones* must not unwatch'd go. *Hamlet*, III, 1, 196.

**good.** d) Topper could growl away in the bass like a *good one*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 79.

**helpless.** a) Her wild brother . . . strove to . . . show tenderness to *the helpless one*. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. II, 111.

**infinite.** a) *The Infinite One* is not to be conceived of as though such similitudes were literal facts. SPURGEON (LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 78).

**innocent.** c) "Did I leave thee with an impostor, *my innocent one*?" the matron cries, fondling her son. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. L, 520.

**kind.** b) Thank you, Margaret; you're a *kind one*, at any rate. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXII, 247.

**living.** a) Their eyes were all fixed on *the yet-living one*, whose moments of life were passing so rapidly away. *Ib.*, Ch. VI, 65.

**lone.** c) I'll not leave thee, *thou lone one!* | To pine on the stem. THOM. MOORE, *The Last Rose*.

**lonely.** a) *The poor lonely one* had not loved in vain. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. IV, 121.

**lost.** a) i. He fancied that *the lost one* was ever present to his side. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. VII, 136.

ii. I proceeded to prepare my family for the reception of *our lost one*. GOLD-SMITH, *Vic.*

**loved.** a) i. All the *loved ones* were there. MRS. GASK., *Mary Bart.*, Ch. VI, 65. Every hour spent with *the loved one* became a priceless treasure. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXIX, 362.

ii. They could part from *their loved ones*, and they did. ANTH. HOPE, *Comedies of Courtship*, I, Ch. I, 8.

d) i. He pondered on what he had seen and heard touching *that still-loved one* of his. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. IX, 103.

ii. It was the sickening feeling which . . . accompanies the sudden sight of a *once-loved one* who is beloved no more. *Ib.*, II, Ch. VII, 184.

**mourning.** a) Who would keep *the poor mourning ones* from their rest? MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. VII, 136.

**occult.** a) The den of *the occult one* in Bond Street was dim. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 120.

**own.** c) God bless you, *my own one*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

"Musn't 'oo go wis me, *my own one*?" she said as she put her playfellow down. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 304.

**perfidious.** c) "*Crafty and perfidious one*," he began. *Punch*, No. 3729, 512b.

**precious.** c) Dearest — *precious one* — darling! . . . For God's sake, wake up! WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XL, 368.

**pretty.** c) Look not down, *pretty one*! LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 33.

Why not, then, *pretty one*? CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 62a.

**solitary.** a) When *the solitary one* had kissed them all, . . . he would stretch his arms out in the darkness. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. VIII, 137.

**sweet.** c) i. But, *sweet one*, you seem to forget that I cannot go against my principles. MRS. GASK., *Wives and Daught.*, Ch. XV, 157.

To-morrow, *sweet one*, thou shalt go home with a basket of florins. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 33.

ii. Make him just a little . . . a little jealous, *my sweet one*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. III, 252.

**unlucky.** a) There was such a long line waiting always, and *the unlucky ones* went away into the night looking so disappointed. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XVI, 146.

**weary.** a) *The weary ones* . . . pressed near to Loveland's soul and waked some feeling in it which he had never known. *Id.*, Ch. XVII, 148.

**young.** a) i. Give *the young one* a glass, R., and score it up to yours truly.

THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

"*The young one* is making the money spin, I can tell you," Mr. Foker said. *Id.*, I, Ch. X, 108.

The mother's heart yearned towards *the absent young ones*. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XCI, 974.

But *the young uns* they all stand by one another, and says all or none must go. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 79.

ii. Indeed I don't know that I have yet forgiven myself for the pains and terrors that I must have caused my poor wife, by keeping her separate from *her young ones*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 968.

Ah me; sweetmeats have lost their savour for me, however they may rejoice *my young ones* from the nursery. *Id.*, Ch. XCI, 973.

d) i. Should you have any particular objection, Doctor, to my taking *those three young ones* home with me? Miss BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.*

ii. The style ought to be taking to *young ones*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 59.

7. With the definite article *one* forms a kind of determinative pronoun. In this combination it is chiefly found in the singular, instances of *the ones* being, apparently, uncommon. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.53.

i. Don't be *the one* to stir up the past against the boy. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 64.

They could see she was never *the one* to be sighing. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. I, 20.

Priscilla was scarcely *the one* to whom I wished to confide the adventures of the night. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 26.

Mr. Hobson is not *the one* to say a thing rashly. MORN. LEAD.

ii. I forgot everything save the wish to do a man's duty in saving life and succouring *the ones* in peril. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. I, 16.

"I'm ever so much obliged to you about Bridget and the apple-woman, and Dick!" — "Bridget!" exclaimed the Earl, "Dick! The apple-woman!" —

"Yes," explained Cedric; "*the ones* you gave me all that money for." Miss BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. V, 79. (Gruno Series.)

8. After the indefinite article *one* appears chiefly in the phrases *many a one* and *such a one*. For illustration of the latter see 10.

I know *many a one* who would be glad of the chance. MURRAY, s. v. *many*, A, 1, d.

I pray she soon may die | Whose lovely youth has slain so *many a one*. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *Atalanta's Race*, XXII.

The older *many one* has survived only in Scotch. See MURRAY, s. v. *many*, A, 1, c.

There's *mony ane* wad hae thought themselves affronted. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. V, 57.

For the rest *a one* is infrequent, and seems to occur only in colloquial language.

"Well," said Miss Price, . . . speaking with some degree of contempt — "you are *a one* to keep company." — "What do you mean?" said Nicholas. "I am not *a one* to keep company at all — here at all events. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. IX, 56b.

9. a) Non-anaphoric *one* is unusual after pure demonstratives, being, apparently, never found after the plurals. After the singulars *man*, or some other noun, is mostly used instead. Compare 31—35. The combination seems to belong especially to colloquial and vulgar diction.

Her pocket was found empty, and turned inside out. And so was *this one's*. And so was *that one's*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 31.

See how beautiful *that here un* holds hisself together. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 82.

"Why is he to hold his tongue, Mr. Hodges?" said the chaplain quietly; "how is he to answer my question if he holds his tongue? You forget yourself." — "Ugh! beg your pardon, sir, but *this one* has always got some excuse or other." READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. XI, 130. While he (sc. Bismarck) was taking sips from the glass, she (sc. the mother of the wood-cutter) asked him whether he was the head-forester. "No," he said, "I am the master himself; I am Bismarck." "I don't know anything about *that one*," was the answer, "but I own I should have liked to see the head-forester just once." *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 8b.

- b) The prop-word is, however, common enough after the singular *this* when, together with *that*, *the other* or *another*, it is used as a kind of indefinite pronoun. The prop-word is not, as a rule, repeated after *that*, and is always absent after *the other* or *another*. For illustration see also Ch. XXXVI, 15.

- i. \* Cuff, the unquestioned king of the school, ruled over his subjects and bullied them with splendid superiority. *This one* blacked his shoes, *that* toasted his bread, others would fag out and give him balls at cricket. THACK., *Van, Fair*, I, Ch. V, 71. (*One* may also be understood to be anaphoric.)

\*\* Dora slipped in among them, smiling at *this one* and *that*, till she came to the stout cook. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 295.

\*\*\* People moved about ceaselessly and restless, like caged animals in a menagerie. Men were playing at fives. Others pacing and tramping: *this one* in colloquy with his lawyer in dingy black — *that one* walking sadly, with his wife by his side, and a child on his arm. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

- ii. \* The innocent dancing youth who pressed round her, attracted by her beauty, were rather afraid, after a while, of engaging her. *This one* felt dimly that she despised him; *another* that his simpering common-places only occasioned Miss Newcome's laughter. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 270.

\*\* This gentleman knew intimately, as it appeared, all the leading men of letters of his day, and talked about Tom Campbell, and Tom Hood, and Sydney Smith, and *this* and *the other*, as if he had been their most intimate friend. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

10. Also after *such* the prop-word *one* appears only in the singular, while the indefinite article invariably intervenes between the two words. *Such a one* is sometimes indefinite in meaning. See Ch. XXXVII, 14. For illustration of *such* used substantively, i. e. without the prop-word, whether as a singular or a plural, see Ch. XXXVII, 9, c.



- i. Better Macbeth | Than *such an one* to reign. Mac b., IV, 3, 66.  
But an actress — a mature woman, who had long ceased blushing except with rouge... Oh! it was hard that *such a one* should be chosen. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 81.  
The Lord Petty Bag of the present minister was not *such a one* as Harold Smith. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXII, 312.  
Why had he thus filed his mind and made himself a disgrace to his cloth? In order that he might befriend *such a one* as Mr. Sowerby. Ib., Ch. XXXIII, 322.  
I think he tells us traveller's tales, by way o' seeing how much we can swallow. But the master and Sylvia think that there never was *such a one*. Mrs. GASK., Sylvia's Lovers, Ch. X, 132.
- ii. You have a foolish saying, that *such a one* knows no more than the man in the moon. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, IV, 3, (315).  
Lady Lufton herself was a woman who thought much on religious matters, and would by no means have been disposed to place any one in a living, merely because *such a one* had been her son's friend. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 2.

11. After the indefinite pronouns mentioned in 5, the non-anaphoric *one* is used only in the singular, the combination varying with the bare pronoun. In many cases the prop-word is tinged with the notion expressed by the numeral *one*. *One* is sometimes written in combination with *any*, *every*, *no* and *some*. The forms *any one*, *every one*, *no one* and *some one* vary with *anybody*, *everybody*, *nobody* and *somebody*, mostly without any perceptible difference. Compare 29.

- a) After *any* the prop-word is sometimes dispensed with, but indubitable instances are now rare. Compare Ch. XL, 19, c.
  - i. He had the power of cutting out what he meant in a few clear words, beyond *any one* I have ever met. CH. KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Pref., 11.  
It was not easy for her to sympathise with *any one* so totally unlike herself. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 227.
  - ii. Does *any* here know me? Lear., I, 4, 247.  
Does *any* hear a runner's foot? BROWN., Blot in the Scut., I, 1, 2.
- b) After *each* the prop-word is infrequent, the pronoun admitting of being used substantively. *One* seems to have the special function of emphasizing the separative notion implied in *each*: i. e. *each one* seems to have the value of *each individual*. For illustration see also Ch. XL, 36, c.
  - i. So thanks to all at once and to *each one*, | Whom we invite to see us crown'd at Scone. Mac b., V, 8, 74.  
Take him up gently and to bed with him; | And *each one* to his office when he wakes. Taming of the Shrew, Ind., 73.  
I shall only mention a few points which it is very easy for *each one* to find out for himself with a little careful observation. WYLD, Growth of Eng., Ch. II, 19.
  - ii. Like a school broke up, *each* hurries toward his home. Henry IV, B, IV, 2, 105.  
And all shall hear what *each* may wish to learn. BYRON, Cors., I, vi.
- c) *One* cannot be dispensed with after *every*.

A man's own dinner is to himself so important that he cannot bring himself to believe that it is a matter utterly indifferent to *every one* else. TROL. Framl. Pars., Ch. X, 100.

d) This also applies to *no*.

I felt sure — certain — that we should meet the Brithwoods and *no one* else. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XVI, 160.

Let us talk in that language; we shall horrify *no one* then. Ib., Ch. XVII, 166.

e) After *other* non-anaphoric *one* is unusual, the ordinary practice being to dispense with the prop-word, except in the genitive. See Ch. XL, 163, b.

i. Mr. Rouncy is an uncommon pretty hand, whereas *the other one* makes dreadful work of the writing and spelling when Bows ain't by. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 109.

Pomeroy was taking her and *the other one* all over the ship. Graph. Though I'd had such a crack from Shelton, and *the other one*, when I tumbled in the dark, I had pretty nearly an hour's sleep in the horse-car as a set-off. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIV, 266.

ii. \* Harry had risen, and uttered a half-exclamation to call the lawyer back. But he was proud, and *the other* offended. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLVIII, 495.

\*\* There, where I hoped myself to reign... | There, in my realm... | *Another*. TEN., Lover's Tale, 41.

f) After *some* the prop-word is now indispensable. In Early Modern English it was sometimes omitted. Compare XL, 179, c, Note.

I know *some one* from whose gentle lips there only fall pure pearls and diamonds. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXX, 743.

If one is told that the best portrait of *some one* whom one knows is a portrait of *some one* else instead, one isn't much surprised. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., Ch. X, 187.

## ONE AS A PROP-WORD OF THE SECOND KIND.

12. a) The anaphoric *one* is used of things as well as persons, indeed, more frequently of the former than the latter. The fact is that *one* in its second application has a somewhat familiar ring about it, and this is more frequently inappropriate when the reference is to persons than to things. Names of persons are, accordingly, more frequently repeated than names of things. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2069; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 3.

It's as easy to marry a rich woman as *a poor woman*. THACK., Pend., I, XXVIII, 305.

An Oxford man will differ all his life from *a Cambridge man*. The New Statesman, No. 152, 512a.

Also in the language of science the use of *one* would often be improper. Thus it could hardly replace the repeated noun in:

The glottis is, therefore, twofold, consisting of the chord glottis and *the cartilage glottis*. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 36.

b) The application of the prop-word is only usual when the head-word of the adnominal word precedes: when the latter follows,

the want of it is not felt, the context or the inflection of the voice clearly indicating that the head-word is yet to come. The only positions in which the prop-word with forward reference is at all common, is after the interrogative *which* (22) and the indefinite *each* and *every* (23). Thus there is no occasion for it after a superlative or comparative followed by partitive *of*, as in:

- i. She reproached herself for *the cruellest of women*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XI, 91b.  
Portugal is *the oldest of our allies*. *Times*, No. 1311, 743c.
- ii. Eve seemed to be *the elder of the two girls*. GISSING, *Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. V.

Nor would *one* be tolerated in sentences like: *The present* is a convenient occasion for raising this discussion. BALFOUR, *Speech*.  
Never do by *foul*, what can be accomplished by *fair means*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2068.

They have devoted their whole lives to *this or that among the questions* I discuss. WELLS, *First and Last Things*, *Intro'd.*, 10.

- c) The anaphoric *one* is found after practically every kind of adnominal word, i. e. after *a)* adnominal nouns, *b)* adjectives, *c)* the definite article, *d)* the indefinite article, *e)* possessive pronouns, *f)* the singular demonstrative pronouns, *g)* the determinative pronouns *same* and *such*, *h)* the interrogative pronouns *what* and *which*, *i)* the indefinite pronouns *each*, *every* and *other*, *j)* cardinal numerals, *k)* ordinal numerals.

13. *a)* Adnominal nouns in the common case can hardly dispense with the prop-word. It is, indeed, chiefly through this prop-word that their adnominal character is distinctly shown, and its omission would, therefore, lead to obscurity. Many illustrations are given by JESPERSEN in *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 13.4.

Perhaps you may sell them (sc. the discourses) by advertising the manuscript sermons of a clergyman lately deceased; ... and now I think of it, I should be obliged to you if there be *a funeral one* among them. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XVI, 46.

The son had no watch. The father had *a handsome gold one*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XIV, 120.

(Their) simplicity and sweet rural purity show the advantage of a country life over *a town one*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 98.

The new designs for the gold and bronze coins are settled, though there seems to be some delay about *the silver ones*. *Times*.

They already have sea communications, which will always remain cheaper than *land ones*. *Ib.*

Scheveningen's season is *a record one*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 13b.

Note. When the prop-word is absent, the noun or substantival word-group is felt to have absorbed the head-word. Thus *a straw* may be equivalent to *a straw hat*, *a clay* to *a clay pipe*.

It's my hat ... it isn't new. I can't afford new things. It's *and old straw* had dyed. PETT RIDGE, *Lost Property*, 176.<sup>1)</sup>

The two long *clays* soon filled the chamber with slow, fragrant smoke.

MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. II, 16.

A similar interpretation may be put on the italicized words in:

His own picture — *a full-length; a very full-length*. DICK., *Christm. Stor.*, 104.<sup>2)</sup>

A young fellow may be good-looking and yet not be *a six-foot*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, 296.<sup>2)</sup> (Compare: He greatly relieved my mind by putting a chair for me at the table and saying very affably, "Now, *six-foot!* come on!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 34a.)

β) Such a construction as is illustrated by the following sentences, in which the head-word of the adnominal noun is to be found in a subsequent part of the sentence, seems to be an unusual one:

My whole fortune (consisted) of one suit of clothes, half a dozen ruffled shirts, as many plain, two pairs of *worsted*, and a like number of thread *stockings*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. VII, 42.

Letters from a *Town* to a *Country Woman*. Eng. Rev., No. 51.

- b) What has been observed about nouns in the common case does not apply to nouns in the genitive, so that the prop-word can be safely dispensed with without any detriment to the clearness of the discourse. Instances of the prop-word being used after a genitive are, indeed, extremely rare.

After a classifying genitive the noun is mostly repeated, but this is not usually done after an individualizing genitive. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.65.

i. The festival is originally *a children's one*. MAARTEN MAARTENS, *Joost Aveling*, 19.

ii. \* We found larks' eggs, *wood-pigeons' eggs*, and a hundred other kinds of eggs. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

The big blackbird's nest was soon filled, and *a thrush's nest* besides. Ib.

\*\* We found all kinds of eggs: *missel-thrushes' eggs*, *wood-pigeons'*, *redstarts'*, *red-linnets'*, and many other kinds as well. Ib.

14. Also adjectives hardly brook the absence of the prop-word in the majority of cases, possibly owing to the absence of any grammatical feature to distinguish them from nouns. The use of *one* is, apparently, independent of the modifiers which may precede the adjective.

i. I fear there is no more rest for Hetty on this night than on *the previous one*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXII, 652.

No one had any time to spare for comparing a Norwegian plough with *the wooden one* used by his own great-grandfather. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XII.

Orange peel serves for other useful purposes beyond *the common one* of making marmalade. Westm. Gaz., No. 5555, 16b.

ii. The fire-place was *an old one*, built by some Dutch merchant long ago. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 21.

Our contract is *an old one*. Ib., II, 42.

His future is *a dismal one*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LVI, 582.

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 8.91.

<sup>2)</sup> Ib., II, 13.61.



And herein ended the expedition, *a perilous and a great one*, against the Doones of Bagworthy. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XIV, 85.

No man, even *a spoiled one*, could help wanting to know a girl with eyes like those. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. V, 32.

- iii. He ordered that she should be called by her own mother's name; and not by *that first one* which her father had given her. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

- iv. "Ah, leave that to us!" said Miss Marvell, in another voice, which was *her usual one*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. VIII, 203.

Governess after governess have I had, and none of them could do anything with her. *My present one*, however, she seems to have taken to. ANSTEY, *In brief Authority*, Ch. I, 7.

- v. What we term a long poem is, in fact, merely *a succession of brief ones*. POE, *Phil. of Comp.*, (372).

Mr. Polonius was standing close by, as it happened, serving three ladies, — a very old one, and *two young ones*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 22.

The woman with the eight children had been moved into a spacious new cottage made out of *two old ones*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower* II, Ch. XIV, 103.

- vi. He went through many occasions, *often very trying ones*, without losing his equanimity. RHYs, *Rabindranath Tagore*, Ch. I, 7.

There are Lang's pheasants calling! — *wild ones*, I suppose — for he's given up preserving. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. X, 261.

The following quotations have an unidiomatic ring about them owing to the absence of *one*:

It is only a dance in honour of my birthday. *A small and early*. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Windermere's Fan*, I, (14).

Afterwards, when I came to mix with tailors, I found that people were right about them. They were a hard and vicious company, with *a few good* among them, but not many. JOHN MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. II, 11.

## 15. In some cases the prop-word is more or less regularly dispensed with.

- a) *One* is, apparently, regularly absent when the adjective is the second of a group of two modifying one and the same noun, the latter being placed between the two adjectives to bring them into distinct prominence. Thus *a good and true man* becomes *a good man and (a) true*. This latter construction, which is now archaic or literary, is most common when the head-word is also preceded by the indefinite article, or in the case of a plural, by no modifier at all. The indefinite article is occasionally omitted before the second adjective. After other adnominal words the construction is comparatively rare, the modifier being only repeated in the case of the definite article. Separate mention may here be made of the combination *good men and true*, still a common style of jurymen.

See also Ch. VIII, 88, c; and compare. ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 2; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10,961—10,97.

- i. \* Now Mr. Bumble was *a fat man, and a choleric*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 24.

She is *a good girl*, God help me! *and a dutiful*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXV, 796.

He is *a bold man and a pious*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 45.

You doubtless recognize in him Rodolf of Saxony, *a brave man and a true*, where he is properly paid for his services. Ib., I, Ch. IV, 36.

I am *a sad man and a serious*. TEN., Queen Mary, III, 1, (604b).

*A gray old wolf and a lean*. Id., Maud, I, XIII, III. (Old forms a kind of unit with wolf.)

For where is he | Who dares foreshadow for an only son | *A lovelier life, a more unstain'd*, than his? Id., Ded. Idylls of the King.

*A pleasant place, and a rich*, is Bourne now. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. I, 8a.

\*\* He met with some bitter disappointment when he was *a young man and merry*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XII, 106.

Years ago, when I used to wander of an evening from the fireside to the pleasant land of fairy tales, I met *a doughty knight and true*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, XIV, 240.

- ii. Call me an inquest of these together, they are all *good men and true*. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIII, 342.

*Cheap clothes and nasty*. KINGSLEY, Title of a Pamphlet.

And now poured into Bourne from every side *brave men and true*. Id., Hereward, Ch. XXIII, 97b.

*High hearts and brave* are gather'd to thy breast. MRS. HEMANS, Treas. of the Deep.

For, sunk in vague sweet longing, did he go | Betwixt the trees with *doubtful steps and slow*. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., Atal. Race, III.

- iii. He is *the most dreadful gambler and the most successful* of all the nobility. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 279.

He took *the straight way and the ready* with a maid and kissed her. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. III, 42.

- iv. In my glittering text | I read that he who shall sit next | On *this thine ancient throne and high* | Shall be no better born than I, | Whose grandsire none remembereth. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 41a.

- v. She hath *no loyal knight and true*, | The Lady of Shalott. TEN., The Lady of Shal., II, III.

I will seek thee out | *Some comfortable bride and fair*. Id., Gar. & Lyn., 94.

Note a) An adjective without the prop-word may be similarly placed after its head-word when co-ordinated with an indefinite numeral standing before the noun.

Presently *more boys and bigger* came out. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. V, 94.

*Many changes and momentous* have taken place... in the constitutions of the self-governing Colonies. Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 9c.

β) It seems to be unusual to repeat the head-word after the second adjective or to replace it by *one*, because these constructions would have the effect of suggesting to the mind different persons or things.

- i. It is *an ingenious idea and a bold idea*. W. COLLINS, After Dark, 14.1)

- ii. It was *a wet night and a stormy one*. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. V, 92.

γ) But the prop-word is, apparently, indispensable after an adjective that is part of a phrase intended to specialize the meaning of a preceding noun without an adjective. Compare Ch. XXXVI, 10, II, b.

And yet it is a chapter, and *a very important one too*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 53.

1) ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 3.

I am certain I heard a laugh, *and a strange one*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 186.

Thus also in such a phrase as is illustrated in: No man, *even a spoiled one*, could help wanting to know a girl with eyes like those. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. V, 32.

- b) 1) *One* is mostly dispensed with after a superlative, possibly owing to the form safeguarding the word from being apprehended as a noun. It is a general complaint, and *the justest* in the world. SWIFT, *Let. to a Young Clerg.*, (466a).  
The good dog may run, but it's *the best* that takes the hare. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. IV, 36b.  
She never even spoke to a man from one month's end to *the next*. ARN. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, I, Ch. I, II, 11.  
But during the following winter — *Sir Robert's last* — ...things had gone from bad to worse. Mrs. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. IV, 96.  
Delia never saw the steps, till her foot slipped on *the topmost*. *Id.*, II, Ch. XI, 18.

The absence is, apparently, regular:

- a) when the superlative is preceded by partitive *of* + definite article, the whole phrase having the value of an absolute superlative. Compare Ch. XXX, 43, Note III.

Her face was rather *of the homeliest*. Mrs. GASK., *Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. II, 29.

They showed spear-heads *of the finest*, swords *of the stoutest*. WALT. BESANT, *London*, I, 46.

- β) when the superlative is the nominal part of the predicate of an incomplete conditional clause, and identical with a superlative in the head-sentence.

Mr. Meek claims that the insect is one of the largest butterflies in the world, *if not the largest*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3815, 847.

- γ) in the construction illustrated by the following quotation:

The Government majority was thirteen below *its highest possible*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 1c.

- 2) *One* is not, however, regularly wanting after a superlative. Thus we find it rather frequently after *first*, *foremost*, *last* and *next*, in which the superlative idea is obscured.

**best.** Let us see what are the occupations man graciously permits to woman... In the first place he is chiefly willing to see her on the stage. And he generally prefers the music-hall stage as *the best one* fitted for her 'poor' abilities. MARIE CORELLI, *The Murder of Delicia*, *Introd. Note*.

Her boys were *the best ones* in the world. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, Ch. I, 9.

**first.** His future life was most noticeably affected by two men older than himself. *The first one*, Edward Langham, was Robert's tutor. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 90.

Then I have at last a welcome visitor, and it is *the first one* to-day. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 132.

I therefore touch only on three points, and these but very succinctly. *The first one* is this. LORD ROSEBURY, *Speech*.

**foremost.** He led in two palsied women, who shook and tottered as they walked. "You shut the door the night old Sally died," said *the foremost one*, raising her shrivelled hand. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 480.

**last.** Put these letters away, Louvois. *The last one* has made up for all the rest. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 187.

He doesn't know exactly how many (sc. cocktails) he takes; and there's a limit of course — and *the last one* does the trick. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 95.

"What is the use?" asked Katherine, repeating the words in astonishment and emphasizing *the last one*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 134.

**lowest.** At one side there were drawers. She drew out *the lowest one*. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 141.

**nearest.** The best thing he could do was to call to-night at one of the houses where he had alighted in the afternoon. He would walk to *the nearest one*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XIV, 124.

**next.** That made me think there was not such another good corner in the room; until I looked at *the next one*, and found it equal to it. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XV, 111a.

The Liberals had a bad defeat at the last election but *the next one* must be fought on very different lines. MORN. LEAD.

**oldest.** A very old resident of Fulham, *the oldest one* whose memory is worth aught, tells me that he very well remembers the time when body-snatching from the parish church-yard was a matter of not infrequent occurrence. NOT. and QUER.

**youngest.** She busied herself with sprinkling the linen dried during the day-time, in company with her nine-year-old brother Abraham, and her sister Eliza-Louisa of twelve and a half, the *youngest ones* being put to bed. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 25.

- c) 1) Although a comparative, by its form, reveals itself as an adnominal word as readily as a superlative, it seems to call in the aid of the prop-word more frequently than the latter.

I am sent to break the marriage off, if I can; and *a more unhappy one* I can't imagine. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 572.

He had a short interview with his son, and rather *a longer one* with Summers-Howson. BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point*.

Sometimes he actually found himself wishing that his own past life had been *a better one*. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 184.

As the two hands go round, they point to the numbers on the face of the clock. *The longer one* shows the minutes and *the shorter one* the hours. GÜNTL., *Leerb.*, 33.

He himself had not been long in the company, but had come from *a better one*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXI, 279.

- 2) In the following quotations the prop-word might be placed after the comparative without prejudicing idiomatic propriety:

**better.** Go and order another (sc. watch) like it, or *a better* if you can get it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XI, 115.

"He will be as good a rider as your honour one of these days". — "He ought to be *a better*". LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 36.

"Ah, a beautiful book (sc. the *Pilgrim's Progress*), said Mr. Riley;" "you can't read *a better*." G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 12.

Leave well alone is a good rule, but leave ill alone is *a better*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 119a.

**bigger.** (Petrucio said) the cap was no bigger than a cockle or walnut shell, desiring the haberdasher to take it away and make *a bigger*. LAMB, *Tales*, 204.

**finer.** I was just looking with admiration at those apple-trees of yours. I never saw *finer*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. III, 42.



**more innocent.** She held an idea that men in general were inclined to neglect this duty (sc. marriage) for their own selfish gratification, that the wicked ones encouraged *the more innocent* in this neglect. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 12.

**slower.** There's another train, *a slower*, at eleven o'clock. CROKER, *Pour Prendre Congé*, Ch. I.

**worse.** The storm continued with such fury that the seamen themselves acknowledged that they had never seen *a worse*. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 10.

This was but a bad omen of the reception which he was to expect; but *a worse* followed. LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 156.

- 3) *One* is found wanting with especial frequency after certain comparatives that are mostly connected, or naturally associated with their alternatives. See also below, under *d*.

**elder, younger.** i. I almost felt as if it were an unkindness to *the younger man* not to be able to believe implicitly in *the elder*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XIV, 120.

He never mentioned his son's name to his daughters, but ordered *the elder* to place all the females of the establishment in mourning. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384.

The old lady dismissed her two nephews, giving to *the elder* a couple of fingers and a very stately curtsy; but to Harry two hands and a kindly pat on the cheek. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. LIII, 549.

Mr. Will rejoiced that *the younger brother* had gone to the deuce, and he rejoiced to think that *the elder* was following him. Ib., Ch. LXI, 629.

*The elder artist* glared at *the younger* across his sketch-book. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIX.

The mind of *the elder woman* bitterly accused *the younger*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, II, Ch. XIV, 79.

- ii. *The smaller girls* managed to be in everybody's way...; and *the elder ones* dressed, and tied, and flattered, and envied one another, as earnestly and sincerely as if they had actually come out. DICK., *Sketches, Tales*, Ch. III, 155b.

*The elder boys* are expected to take care of *the younger ones*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2098.

**earlier, later.** *The early works* of Dickens have been made use of to depreciate *his later*. SWINBURNE, *Charles Dick.*, 16.

*Cowley's earlier poems* belong to the Elizabethan phantasies, but *the later* were cold and exact enough for the praise of the new school. STOPP. BROOKE, *Eng. Lit.*, Ch. VI, § 108.

**former, latter.** i. Alfieri thought Italy and England the only countries worth living in: *the former* because there nature vindicates her rights, and triumphs over the evils inflicted by the governments; *the latter* because art conquers nature, and transforms a rude, ungenial land into a paradise of comfort and plenty. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, 83a.

- ii. Let us with eyes wide open see the godly man of four centuries since; let us see how he does his godlike work, and, again, how the godly man of these latter days does his. Shall we say that *the former one* is walking painfully through the world, regarding, as a prudent man, his wordly work. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. V, 190.

No one guessed that this eruption would so far exceed *the former ones* in violence. TIMES.

The lifting power of the new dock will be about 8,500 tons, as compared with 4,500 tons of *the former one*. Ib.

New senses seemed to have been given her, quicker and keener than *her former ones*. VICTORIA CROSS, *Life's Shop Window*, Ch. II, 45.

**inner, outer.** There are two circles (sc. of railway), *an outer* and *an inner*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 335.

**lessor.** As the *more important schemes* could not be commenced at a moment's notice, she would begin with *the lesser*. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. VI, 39.

**lower, upper.** i. There are four lines in fencing; two *upper* and two *lower*. POLLOCK, *Fencing*, Ch. II, 43.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. *The lower windows* were shuttered, in *the upper ones* the blinds were pulled closely down. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 106.

d) 1) The prop-word is apt to be dispensed with when the adjective is syntactically connected with its contrast or alternative, especially in literary diction. The omission seems to be most frequent after the definite article.

i. You see that scandal flourishes at the borders of the wilderness, and in *the New World* as well as *the Old*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIV, 558.

Her acquisitions in *the New World* have more than compensated her for what she has lost in *the Old*. MAC., *Popes*, (542a).

*Good actions* have mended *the bad*. LYTTON, *The Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 21. (Compare: *Good actions* mend *bad actions*. *Ib.*, 19.)

You desire *new things* because you don't understand *the old*. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. XXVIII, 197.

How were *the false keys* to be exchanged for *the real*? Black's Sir W. Scott Readers, *The Story of the Abbot*, 38.

ii. *My right hand* was in *my mother's left*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 10a.

He was armed with a rapier and a dagger, the rapier he held in *his right hand*, and the dagger in *his left*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 126.

The right lobe of his liver is on *the left side*, the left on *his right*. WELLS, *The Plattner Story and others*, I, 11.

iii. On the whole I should be inclined to classify myself as *a bad man* rather than *a good*. WELLS, *First and Last Things*, *Introd.*, 11.

iv. We have dwindled to *four white men* among *a host of dark*. ETHEL M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. I, 19.

v. There reigned such a stillness (to compare *small things* with *great*) as broods... among the lonely sweeps of Exmoor. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 170b.

When you can be free by *fair means*, will you try *foul*? *Id.*, *Alt. Locke*, *Pref. Mem.*, 17.

Taking *good farms* with *bad*, the average is a little over 18 bushels an acre. *Times*.

*False adventures* are palmed off upon us as *true*. *Ib.*

Our Government finds itself in a somewhat delicate position between *old friends* and *new*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6159, 1b.

2) Some quotations are subjoined to show the irregularity of the practice.

i. Mr. Pitt found *the old lady and the young one*, when he came down-stairs with his pamphlet in his hand. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 369. I am a man who has all his life tried *the crooked road* first, and found *the straight one* safer after all. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 120b.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

You'll lose *the good tenants* and you'll keep *the bad ones*. ARN. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, I, Ch. II, II, 20.

They've got *the old lady* safe, I think *the young one's* hurt. Mrs. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, II, Ch. XVIII, 211.

- ii. It was not her way to wear *her new things* out before *her old ones*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 44.

He made as little of *his real wound* as he had made much of *his imaginary one*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 139a.

- iii. He prefers to leave his money to *direct heirs* rather than to *indirect ones*. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Woman*, Ch. XXVI.

Though it is a little undignified to be greatly afraid of *large animals*, it is thought quite creditable to be insanely afraid of *small ones*. CHESTERTON, *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3851, 164.

- 3) Sometimes the two adjectives understood as contrasts or alternatives are both placed after the head-word. In this case *one* is mostly dispensed with after both.

- i. There were two governments, *the real and the ostensible*. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (601b).

There are two freedoms — *the false* where a man is free to do what he likes; *and the true* where a man is free to do what he ought. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref. Mem., 33.

I don't think now that people can be divided into *the good and the bad*, as though they were two separate races or creations. OSCAR WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan*, IV, (130).

- ii. It is absurd to divide people into *good and bad*. *Ib.*, I, 1, (10).

Some men are born to be hanged and some are not, and there are *good and bad* in both classes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 9b.

- 4) In such sentences as the following the adjectives are best understood as predicative words forming part of an undeveloped clause:

- i. We cannot do without fundamental beliefs, *explicit or implicit*. WELLS, *First and Last Things*, Introd., 11.

- ii. The condition of the blessed immediately after this life appears to me to be so happy that I cannot imagine any *higher and happier*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7134, 7a.

- e) With some adjectives in the positive degree the use of the prop-word seems to be more or less discordant. Thus *one* is dispensed with:

- 1) regularly after *own*. For illustration see Ch. XXIV, 39 and Ch. XXXIII, 19.

- 2) usually after adjectives denoting a nationality.

- i. The English ship was much shorter than *the Spanish*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 15a.

(Richard Grenville's face is) of a Spanish type, perhaps (or more truly speaking, *a Cornish*), rather than *an English*. *Ib.*, Ch. I, 5b.

You had better bring an English maid out with you, or *a German*. SARAH GRAND, *The Heavenly Twins*, I, 146.

At the Hague Conference he fought strenuously for German points of view which conflicted with *British*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6038, 1b.

The Swiss system may very well suit the Swiss people, . . . but the British people are not *the Swiss*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5555, 2a.

These two factors . . . definitely necessitate our being more, not less Slav than the Russians in such questions as *the Southern Slav, the Polish*, and *the Bohemian*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 87, 150.

- ii. The other book before us... calls them (sc. people who hide under seats and travel without ticket) "blind passengers": a name which recalls *the French one*. Athen., No. 4461, 453c.

If I had to marry... and could afford to choose, I'd take an English girl of the right sort. But Americans are a lot better than *English ones* of the wrong sort. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland discovers America, Ch. I, 9.

Note a) When the adjective is one that admits of being converted into a pure noun, there is no occasion for assuming the absence of the prop-word *one*. Compare Ch. XXIX, 10, Note I.

The paper of the room was a *dingy grey*. Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, I, Ch. IV, 87.

β) For reasons of euphony *one* is dispensed with if it is to be found after another adnominal word in the sequel.

Did you see that cousin George had one of cousin Harry's suits of clothes on, *the brown and gold* — *that one* he wore when he went with you to the oratorio? THACK., Virg., Ch. L, 524.

16. *One* is often placed after the definite article to form with it a kind of determinative. Instead of the plural *the ones* we mostly find *those*, except when another *those* immediately precedes. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.521, 10.56 and 16.321.

- i. Of all my nephews and nieces you are *the one* whose conduct in life has most pleased me. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 4.

He was surprised to find... that he had come out upon quite a different Clark from *the one* to which he was accustomed. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

- ii. \* He laughed, for the words were such a curious contradiction to *the ones* which lurked in his own mind. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. IV, 38.

Tell me a story, mamma — won't you? Like *the ones* you used to tell me when I was quite a little girl. MAR. CRAWF., Tale of a Lonely Par., Ch. XII, 96.

\*\* The few who are wealthy, particularly those who have enriched themselves by discreditable means are *the ones* who have least to fear. Lit. World, 1892, 377a.

Compare: Besides his literary and historical pursuits, which were *those* he most especially loved, Mr. Warrington studied the laws of his country. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXI, 634.

Note. When the adnominal clause is represented by a single adjective or participle, this construction may be understood as a variant of that in which an adjective or participle is followed by *one*.

Many of these rooms had doors which led to *the one adjacent*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2069. (= *the adjacent one*.)

*The one* may similarly stand before a bare adverb.

"I don't see how you are going to catch this train". — "Neither do I", said John. "I shall go by *the one after*." W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. IV, 43.

β) *The one* appears to be sometimes suppressed.

The elder of the Edinburgh gentlemen, and whom I understood to be a barrister, insisted that I should remain and take part of their dinner. SCOTT,



Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. I, 23 (= The elder of the Edinburgh gentlemen, and *the one* whom I understood to be a barrister, etc.).

Conversely also the adnominal adjunct is sometimes to be understood from the context. Thus in the following quotation, in which *the* has strong stress See Ch. XXXI, 5, *c*.

They (sc. these American girls) were all dressed perfectly, and groomed perfectly... So how was a man to judge which were *the ones*, and which the other ones? WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. IV, 32.

17. *a*) When *one* is made to stand after the indefinite article, this is mostly owing to a transposition of adnominal modifiers.

Such is the case when it is found together:

- 1) with an adjective modified by *as*, *how*, *however*, *so* or *too*. Compare Ch. VIII, 112, and see also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.332.

The street was not *as desolate a one* as I could have wished it to be. DICK., Cop., 373.<sup>1)</sup>

Not so great a duke certainly was that first-named prince as his party esteemed him, and surely not *so bad a one* as his enemies have painted him. THACK., Virg., Ch. VII, 68.

The chance was *too good a one* to be lost. CONWAY, Called Back, 106. (T.)<sup>1)</sup>

- 2) with a comparative modified by *far* or *much*.

Are you not a piper, and *far more wonderful a one* than he? LEWES, Hist. of Phil., IV, Ch. I, 131.

- 3) with the determinative *such*, or the interrogative (or exclamatory) *what*. For illustration of *such a one* see 21, *b*. Instances of *what a one* are very rare.

But *what a one* he was! MEREDITH, Evan Harrington, 3.<sup>1)</sup>

You know *what a one* he is. PETT RIDGE, A Son of the State, 90.<sup>1)</sup>

- b*) But *one* is also met with after the indefinite article in the following idioms:

- 1) *not much of a one*, quite common in colloquial language, but hardly tolerated in the higher literary style.

"You have a large establishment, too, I am told?" said Mr. Jarndyce. — "*Not much of a one*, sir." DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXIV, 210. I keep a shooting-gallery, and *not much of a one*. Ib.

The one extenuating circumstance that I might plead — and Heaven knows it is *not much of a one* — is that I loved Jack from the very first without being aware of it. Pall Mall Mag., 1894, May, 51.

- 2) *never* (or *ne'er*) *a one*, and *ever* (or *e'er*) *a one*, in which *one*, however, retains most of its original numerical character and is, accordingly, rather a numeral than a prop-word. See Ch. XLII, 9, *c*.

- 3) *half a one*. Compare Ch. V, 16, Obs. VII and Ch. XXXI, 59.

Then all the Cratchit family drew round the hearth in what Bob Cratchit called a circle, meaning *half a one*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 60.

- 4) *many a one*. Compare Ch. XL, 88.

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.332.

"I don't believe there's a woman in all England that can bring anybody's spirit down as quick as you can, my love" ... It is but due to her character to say that, in conjunction with her estimable husband, she had broken *many and many a one*. DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. IX, 52a.

18. After possessive pronouns *one* appears but very rarely. According to JESPERSEN (Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.64), it is beginning to be used in this combination.

I ought to give you my name. It's Rattray, of one of the many Kirby Halls in this country. *My one's* down in Lancashire. HORNUNG, Dead Men tell no Tales, 40.

19. a) After the singular demonstratives the anaphoric *one* is frequent enough, its application not being strictly determined, however, by any principles of syntax.

- 1) There is a marked tendency to use *one* when the demonstrative has a distinctly antithetic force.

- i. The mantel-piece cast up a great black shadow ... over two little family pictures of young lads, one in a college gown, and the other in a red jacket like a soldier. When she went to sleep, Rebecca chose *that one* to dream about. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 72. Of all his gifts I admire *that one* in the great Marlborough. id., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XI, 248.

He was a fine young man; the very picture of *this one*. id., Virg., Ch. I, 6.

Boer reports from that direction have a habit of being unduly optimistic and we may suspect that *this one* is not an exception to the rule. Daily Chron.

Eleanor hated boys, and she would have liked to have whipped *this one* long and often. SAKI, The Jestings of Arlington Stringham (Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 9b).

No such friend was ever false by design. Nor was *this one*. BERN. CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. VI, 67.

- ii. Cuff goes home every Saturday, but can't *this*, because he has 2 Black Eyes. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 47.

"Trouble me with no more secrets, I'll not promise to keep them". — "You'll keep *that*?" she asked eagerly. EM. BRONTE, Wuth. Heights, Ch. IX, 43b.

Reluctant as he was to leave home at ordinary calls, he flew to answer *this*. lb., Ch. XVIII, 97a.

Notwithstanding its distinctly antithetic force the demonstrative however, mostly stands without *one*, probably owing to its being apprehended as a substantive word (Ch. XXXVI, 7, c, 2, Note δ):

- a) when it is the subject of a nominal predicate.

What a day *this* would be for the old chapel! SWEET, Old Chapel.

- β) when it stands after *as*, *like* or *than* in incomplete clauses of comparison.

- i. He feels he is not fit for such a mate *as that*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 296.

Of such a tragedy *as this* they had not the remotest preconception. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 48.

One may be excused for doubting whether such a policy as *this* can have its root in a desire for the public welfare. EARLE, Phil., § 476.

\*\* Tell me honestly, have you ever had as bad a dinner as *this one*? Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 86.

- ii. \* Can a man *like that* comprehend me? THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 44. Can any of you show me a woman *like that*? Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 24. I wonder what possesses her to come to a place *like this*. PUNCH, 1893, 209. After September she would never have a chance *like this*. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, II, 30.

\*\* It would be well if such people, before indulging in denunciation, could see a camp *like this one*. Times.

- iii. He is rich enough to live in a finer house *than this*. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. IV, 20a.

Had she been any other girl *than this*, my heart would not have sunk as it did. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, Ch. II, 15.

- 2) *One* is mostly dispensed with when the antithetic force of the demonstrative is weak, i. e. when it approximates to a personal pronoun. Compare Ch. XXXVI, 5, a.

- i. From here they went up a wide staircase that groaned and creaked as they trod. *This* led to another hall on the second story. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 116).

Miss Matty's idea was to take a single room, and retain as much of her furniture as would be necessary to fit up *this*. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 257.

- ii. There was but one obstacle to be mentioned, but till *that one* was removed, it must be impossible for them to sanction the engagement. JANE AUSTEN, North. Abbey, Ch. XXXI, 241.

Our honest friend had but one idea in his head, and *that one* did not in the least resemble Miss Glorvina O'Dowd in pink satin. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 85.

- 3) After *that* used by way of determinative pronoun, *one* is mostly dispensed with. For illustration see also Ch. XXXVI, 13, b.

- i. Mr. Tupman's mode of proceeding evinced far more of prudence than *that* adopted by Mr. Winkle. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 106.

George... knew the letter to be *that* of which he had been the bearer from home. THACK., Virg., Ch. LIV, 553.

What horse was *that* which galloped out of the inn-yard? Ib., Ch. XL, 414. It was a large and lofty room very different from *that* from which he had just come. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 103.

- ii. (He talked) as if his own unvarying purpose in life had been *that one* which now held possession of him. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XVII, 144.

The letter was in George's well-known, bold hand-writing. It was *that one* which he had written before day-break on the 16th of June. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 385.

Where the standard dialect admits a variety of pronunciations, it is not only allowable but desirable to select *that one* which is preferable either in itself or through its associations. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 226.

Note. The determinative *that* seems to require *one* before partitive *of* and to dispense with it before appositional *of*.

- i. *That one of us* who is first called away, knows the survivor will follow ere long. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXV, 793.

- ii. We have all our faults my lord *That of play* hath been condoned over and over again in gentlemen of our rank. Ib., Ch. LVI, 581.

Colonel French has been promoted to the substantive rank of Major General, and lieutenant Kekewich to *that of Colonel*. Daily Chron.

- 4) When the demonstratives have an indefinite meaning, in which case they are always used together (Ch. XXXVI, 15), practice depends on the place of the pronouns in the sentence.

When they both stand after the head-word, *one* seems to be regularly placed after *this* and to be mostly dispensed with after *that*.

When the head-word is placed after *this*, it is sometimes represented by *one* after *that*, but the ordinary practice seems to be to dispense with the prop-word.

- i. \* The history of the daughters (sc. of George the Third), as little Miss Burney has painted them to us, is delightful... They had many accomplishments of their own. *This one* drew; *that one* played the piano; they all worked most prodigiously. THACK., The Four Georges, III, 78.

\*\* Miss Jemina was made to fetch the drawing-master's letters and receipts. *This one* was from a spunging-house: *that* entreated an advance. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 199.

- ii. \* They owed so many shillings this year and so many nobles *that one*. CON. DOYLE, Sir Nigel, 75. (T.).

\*\* The crowd cheered and booed them as they passed, swaying to this side and *that*. MRS. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, II, Ch. XVIII, 209.

- b) The plural demonstratives are but rarely found with anaphoric *one*. For illustration see also Ch. XXXVI, 8, *b*.

- i. On all the floors were piles of books to the amount, perhaps, of some thousands of volumes: *these*, still in bales: *those*, wrapped in paper, as they had been purchased: others scattered singly or in heaps: not one upon the shelves which lined the walls. To *these* Mr. Fips called Tom's attention. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIX, 310b.

- ii. You must get some other clothes — *those ones* aren't fit to be seen. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, 237.1)

Note. In vulgar language *ones* (or *uns*) may be more common after the plural demonstratives.

"Oh, a surgeon, eh?" said Mr. Pickwick, with a smile. — "Just that, sir," replied Sam. "*These here ones* as is below, though, ain't reg'lar thoroughbred Sawbones; they're only in trainin'!" DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 266.

Look 'ere, Henery, just you see what *these uns* have been up to. Punch, No. 3853, 370b.

A curious construction is the vulgarism of placing what represents the plural of the prop-word after a singular demonstrative, as in: Chad Bess ... wondered "why the folks war a-makin' faces a *that'ns*". G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. II, 14. (= *faces such as those*, or better *such faces*.)

20. *One* is found after both the determinative pronouns, (*the*) *same* and *such*.

- a) After (*the*) *same* it is used in the plural as well as the singular, but instances are infrequent. Thus in all the following quotations *one* or *ones* could be omitted without detriment to idiomatic propriety.

1) JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 10.61



- i. Instead of getting into separate beds, as they thought they were doing, they both climbed into *the same one*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. X, 123.

"Miss Wood!" repeated Mrs. Grant. "Have you got a Miss Wood too?" — "Why, it's *the same one*!" exclaimed Edith. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XXII.

But if the carpet was *the same one*, it was of a dark red hue and kept its secret well. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. VIII, 97.

He always caught the same train up in the morning and *the same one* home in the evening. GEORGE A. B. DEWAR, *The Foreign Expert* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5167, 7a).

O here's the cake. I believe it's *the same one* we had for Florence's wedding. BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, I, (196).

- ii. Certain curious individuals, always *the same ones*, walk up and down the hall to see who is there and who is not. Westm. Gaz., No. 5143, 15b.

The same individuals ... who in 1888 read Robert Elsmere with dismay ... are *the same ones* who now worship what they once denounced. W. L. PHELPS, *Es. on Mod. Novel.*, X, 194.

Note. The prop-word cannot, apparently, be dispensed with after *very* when used as an emphatic *same*. Compare Ch. XXXVII, 6, a, 3.

The changes which we are ourselves helping to bring about are *the very ones* which we are most likely to fail in observing. CARLYLE, *Past and Pres.*, 8.

These boys are *the very ones* I saw yesterday in the act of robbing a pheasant's nest. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

- b) 1) The singular *such* hardly brooks the absence of the prop-word, unless preceded by *another* or *any*, when it appears to be almost regularly absent.

- i. "What a dressing up in old clothes!" says the critic. (I think I see *such a one* — a Solomon that sits in judgment over us authors and chops up our children). THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

The cell was *such a one* as a convict would now disdain to inhabit. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 27b.

With *such an one* (sc. sail) | Could I from town to town of France have run. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, ProI., 7a.

It was a new idea ... that a shabby waif ... could be "a good fellow", with the heart of a man. But here was *such a one*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XX, 184.

- ii. \* Ah fool, and made myself a Queen of farce! | When comes *another such*? TEN., *Princ.*, VII, 229.

\*\* I perceive my lord, you are about to enter upon an unpleasant subject. I am sorry *any such* should have occurred at this time. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 223.

- iii. First, a separate peace with Turkey, then another *such* peace with Bulgaria, then still *another such one* with Austria. *The Nation*, Vol. XIX, No. 3, 75a.

Note. Instead of *such a one* we also meet with *one such*, in which, however, *one* is mostly more or less numerical in meaning. See also EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 10.

"Good Heavens!" "Is there *such a man* in the world?" — — But recollecting herself, she said, "Indeed I know *one such*; but can there be another?" FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, III, 354.1)

1) EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 10.

In the following quotation *one* is not a prop-word, but is employed in the function described in Ch. XL, 160, *a*:

You will have but a poor meal, Mr. Pendennis; and *one such* as I am not accustomed to give my guests. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XLI, 430.

- 2) The plural *such* seems to take the prop-word only when it has a distinctly antithetic force. When a numeral, or the equivalent of a numeral, precedes, it is, apparently, always dispensed with.

i. What are little persons? — Those that are not clever enough or good enough to be bishops and vicars, and so forth; not *such ones* as you. READE, *Never too late to mend*, I, Ch. IX, 94.

ii. \* I know nothing so likely to effect this object, Miss Crumpton, as her mixing constantly in the society of girls of her own age; and as I know that in your establishment she will meet *such* as are not likely to contaminate her young mind, I propose to send her to you. DICK., *Sketches, Tales*, Ch. III, 154*b*.

What a dignity it gives an old lady, that balance at the banker's! How tenderly we look at her faults if she is a relative (and may every reader have a score of *such*.) THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. IX, 90.

Who does not know of eyes, lighted by love once, where the flame shines no more? — of lamps extinguished, once properly trimmed and tended? Every man has *such* in his house. Id., *Henry Es m.*, I, Ch. XI, 105.

\*\* If he (sc. that man) goes to strange countries, as *many such* do, I know not but this may be as adventurous a service as that of those Guards of Louis. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. V, 87.

There may be scoundrels and ruffians amongst the enemy's troops; I dare say we could find *some such* amongst our own. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVIII, 943.

Do you mean with your company of Wolfe's you would hesitate to attack *five hundred such* (sc. people)? Id., 944.

21. *a*) Of the two interrogative pronouns that may be used adnominally it is only *which* that is with any frequency found with *one*.

If there was two birds sitting on a fence, he would bet you *which one* would fly first. MARK TWAIN, *The Celebrated Jumping Frog*, 7.

*Which one* of all Mr. Rhodes' joint heirs and executors and trustees in South Africa has done one single thing to give effect to his wishes? STEAD, *Rev. of Rev.*

They may be honest men as financiers go, but *which one* of them who is British-born, counts for anything excepting in his counting-house? Id.

HE. "You'll be glad to hear my brother has distinguished himself at the front" — SHE. "*Which one?* The clever one?" — HE. "Oh — er — we're all clever." PUNCH, No. 3064.

I think they (sc. the shells) are very pretty. I'll give you one if you like. *Which one* will you choose? Id., No. 3666, 256*a*.

Compare the following quotation representing the more usual practice:

He would walk to the nearest one (sc. house); but — now he came to think of it, *which* was the nearest, and of *which* was he certain that he could remember the street and number? WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XIV, 124.

- b) Instances of *one* being placed after *what* are uncommon, and are chiefly found in American English. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.824 and 10.63.

Of the innumerable effects, or impressions, of which the heart, the intellect, or (more generally) the soul is susceptible, *what one* shall I, on the present occasion, select? POE, *Phil. of Comp.*, (371).

About the middle of the eighteenth century it (sc. the Academy in France) altered the spelling of five thousand words. Perhaps it would be juster to say that it indicated, in the case of a number of these, *what one* should be adopted of several forms which were then in use. LOUNSBURY, *Eng. Spelling and Spelling Reform*, Ch. I, 51.

"Good idea, if we had a play... but we — No, by Jinks, we have got one" — "*What one?*" asked Lillie de Lisle. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Note. In the following quotation the *one* after *what* repeats the preceding *one*, which has the meaning of *somebody*. (Ch. XL, 153.) It is, accordingly, a kind of quotation-word and is not to be considered as a prop-word.

GLOUC. Naught to do with Mistress Shore! I tell thee, fellow, | He that doth naught with her, excepting one, | Were best he do it secretly, alone.  
BRAC. *What one*, my lord? GLOUC. Her husband, knave: wouldst thou betray us? Rich. III, I, 1, 101.

22. The indefinite pronouns or numerals after which *one* as the representative of a preceding or subsequent noun is found, are *each*, *every*, and *other*. In the majority of cases these combinations are followed by partitive *of*.

*One* is, indeed, also met with after *any*, (*n*)*either* and *no*, but in these positions it is either a prop-word of the first kind (11), or its pronominal character is so strongly tinged with the meaning of the numeral *one*, that it is better apprehended as a numeral. Compare Ch. XLII, 10.

- a) *One* does not stand frequently after *each*, apparently only when the reference is to persons. The ordinary practice is to dispense with the prop-word. As in the case of the non-anaphoric *one*, it seems to have the special function of emphasizing the separative notion implied in *each*; i. e. *each one* may be understood as *each individually*. Compare. ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 57; MURRAY, s.v. *each*, B, I, 1, c; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 10.22 and 17.64.

- i. The clock struck ten, and clerks poured in faster than ever, *each one* in a greater perspiration than his predecessor. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIII, 486. Think of the condition of Europe for twenty years before, where people were fighting, not by thousands, but by millions; *each one* of whom as he struck his enemy wounded horribly some other innocent heart far away. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 383.

I see new developments in art and life, *each one* of which is a fresh mode of perfection. WILDE, *De Profundis*, 49.

You know how *each one* of us, men and women alike, is chained down by custom and tradition. BEATR. HARRADAN, *The Fowler*, II, Ch. VI, 119.

- ii. Even the critics... he has found to be a singularly gentle and good-natured race; it is true that *each* has in turn objected to some one or two articles..., but then [etc.]. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXIII, 377.

The air of the sleeping-chamber seemed to palpitate with the hopeless passion of the girls... The differences which distinguished them as individuals were abstracted by this passion, and *each* was but portion of one organism called sex. There was so much frankness and so little jealousy, because there was no hope. *Each one* was a girl of fair common-sense, and she did not delude herself with any vain conceits, or deny her love, or give herself airs, in the idea of outshining the others. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XXIII, 189. (Note the varied practice.)

- b) In Present English *every* cannot stand by itself, *one* being regularly used to replace the preceding or following head-word, whether indicating a person or a thing.

If each smooth tile had been a blank at first with power to shape some picture on its surface from the disjointed fragments of his thoughts, there would have been a copy of old Marley's head on *every one*. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, I, 22. During *every one* of those forty-eight hours which he had passed in Mr. Smirke's, society, (he) had done nothing but talk to his tutor about Miss Fotheringay. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 80.

He thought of going to some dissenting minister quite unknown to him... But he knew very well that *every one* of them would tell him to do the thing openly. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 133.

He kissed them *every one*. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, iv, 137.

Note. In Early Modern English *one* is sometimes dispensed with after *every*, especially before partitive *of*. See FRANZ, E. S., XVII; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 7.815 and 10.22; MURRAY, s.v. *every*, 7.

*Every* of this happy number | That have endured shrewd days and nights with us | Shall share the good of our returned fortune. As you like it, V, 4, 164. CHARMIAN. Prithee, how many boys and wenches must I have? — SOOTHSAYER. If *every* of your wishes had a womb, | And fertile *every* wish, a million. *Ant. and Cleop.*, I, 2, 38.

- c) *One* is infrequent after *other*. A mere glance at the numerous quotations in Ch. XL, §§ 155—157 and 163—166 will bring this fact home to the observant reader. For the rest *one* may stand for the names of persons or things. When the modifier preceding *other* is a demonstrative, the prop-word is, apparently, used regularly; but this construction is an unusual one.

- i. \* Two men used to stoop over his baby crib, the one with the dark coat and the star upon his breast, whom he had been taught to call father, *the other one* with the long red gown and the twinkling eyes. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 178.

One day, when they (sc. the two Englishmen) were out hunting, one of them overheard *the other* talking to himself and wondering what had become of his old school-fellows, Brown, and Jones, and little Robinson, and the rest. When *the other one* heard the name Robinson, he was very much pleased. SWEET, *Story of Two Englishmen*. (Note the varied practice.)

"There is your hat, then, and there your bird," said he. "By the way, would it bore you to tell me where you got *the other one* from?" CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

Two sons he had and one was dumb from birth; | *The other one*, that Atys had to name, | Grew up a fair youth, and of might and worth. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Son of Cræs.*, II.



\*\* "Do you think this man Horner is innocent?" — "I cannot tell." — "Well, then, do you imagine *this other one*, Henry Baker, had anything to do with the matter?" CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

- ii. \* There were two quite excellent though low-ceiled rooms, of which this was one, in the basement; *the other* was to be used as a private parlour by the managers of the house. ARN. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways* III, Ch. IV, I, 237.

\*\* First one of the men sang a song and then *another*. RHYS., *Rabindranath Tagore*, Ch. I, 4.

23. a) *One* as the substitute for a preceding noun is rarely, if ever, found after cardinal numerals, unless they are used to denote the time of day. Compare Ch. XLII, 3, *b*.

"Which train shall we go by to-morrow? There is one at nine and another at half past twelve" — "We had better take *the nine one*." SWEET.

Possibly *one* may also be used after a date. But of this practice no evidence has come to hand up to the moment of writing.

The 1908 totals are, as we have said, less than the 1907. *Westm. Gaz.*

- b) After ordinal numerals *one* is not infrequent, but it is mostly dispensed with. It may indicate persons as well as things. Compare Ch. XLII, 12, *b*.

"This woman's first husband is in that cottage." — "Why do you think so?" — "How else can we explain her frenzied anxiety that *her second one* should not enter it?" CON. DOYLE, *Mem. Sherl. Holm.*, I, B, 96.

The little lady stole away. After a moment the tall one followed her, and from fear of being left behind *the third one* also. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 58.

We shouted when we came opposite the first island, but there was no response; so we went to *the second*, and tried there, and obtained the same result. "Oh! I remember now," said George; "it was *the third one*." JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XIV, 187. (Note the varied practice.) After that we proceeded with great caution, but they (sc. the oars) were a wretched pair, and *the second one* cracked almost easier than *the first*. *Ib.*, Ch. XV, 208. (Note the varied practice.)

That letter ought never to have been printed. If he prints *a second one*, I shall treat him as a personal enemy. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. II, 30.

The first two varieties (sc. of bacilli) are found in the human being, and *the third one* belongs to cattle. *Athen.*, No. 4425, 167a.

24. Of the adverbs that may be used adnominally, some reject *one*, while others require it.

- i. There is a divinity student lately come among us to whom I commonly address remarks like *the above*. HOLMES, *Autocrat*, Ch. I, 9a.

- ii. There's Turpin in the curl of your lip — Jack Shepperd in *the under one*. DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black-Ey'd Susan*, I, 2, 12.

He took out of his pocket a little case of leather, with *an under one* of black silk. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 14.

The hitherto unpublished letters of Henry Fielding, some eight or nine in number, are of little interest; indeed *the only ones* worthy of mention are the two of the duke of Newcastle... *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5027, 10c.

25. Finally mention is made of the occasional use of *one* after phrases used adnominally.

"They must have supper, of course. The question is whether it should be only a *stand-up one*." — "Why, they can't have a *lie-down one*, surely, like the Romans, as Jack would say". JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, Ch. II, 142.

26. The nouns that are employed as prop-words denote either persons or things.

27. The chief of those of the first description are *body* and *man*.

*Body* has the characteristics of a pure prop-word in almost as marked a degree as *one*, inasmuch as it conveys no more distinct notion than that of a person in general without any the least regard to sex, age, size, etc.

*Man* is distinguished from *body* in being at least dimly suggestive of some notion of male sex and adult size. It is also of a more independent character than the latter, in that it may be divided from an indefinite pronoun by another modifier. Thus there is nothing unusual in such combinations as *any* (*every, no*) *other man*, while \**any* (*every, no*) *other body* are now practically impossible, *any* (*every, no*) *body else* being used instead. See, however, 29, Obs. II.

It is questionable whether any man quite relishes being mistaken for *any other man*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 12.

Note. The use of *else* after word-groups consisting of indefinite pronoun + prop-word *man* seems to be rare.

He visits us but seldom, but when he does, it adds to *every man else* a new enjoyment of himself. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 2, (8).

28. *Body* is used only as a prop-word of the first kind. (1.) In Standard English it is now found only after the indefinite pronouns *any, every, no* and *some*, with which it forms a kind of compound that is almost regularly written in combination. In the case of *nobody* and *somebody* this close connection frequently causes a shifting of stress from the first to the second syllable of *body*, *anybody* and *everybody* being preserved from this change from rhythmical causes. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 9.223 and II, 17.26.

Compounds of *body* mostly differ in no way from the corresponding compounds of *one* (11), which are mostly written separately. In some applications, however, a distinct preference may be observed in some compounds of *body* over those of *one*, and and vice versa. See below under *b*) and *c*).

- a) In the following quotations a change of *body* for *one* would leave the meaning of the sentence unaltered:

**anybody.** Scrooge could not have told *anybody* why, if *anybody* could have asked him. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 35.

I'll offer to go if *anybody* else will. *Ib. Ib.*, IV, 85.

**everybody.** Young Martin sat at the head of the table and Tom Pinch at the foot, and if there were a genial face at that board, it was Tom's. *Everybody* drank to him and *everybody* looked to him, *everybody* thought of him and *everybody* loved him. *Id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. LIII, 415b.

**nobody.** *Nobody*, however, dared to climb to the mast-head and get rid of this terrible hat. *WASH. IRV. The Storm-Ship* (Stof., *Handl.*, I, 88).

**somebody.** He wanted *somebody* to look after him. *DICK., Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 42.

Suppose *somebody* should have got over the wall of the back-yard. *Id.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup> III, 68.

Sometimes compounds of *body* and *one* are used in close proximity, apparently for the sake of variety.

She vowed that it was a delightful ball; that there was *everybody* that *every one* knew, and only a very few nobodies in the whole room. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIX, 311.

*Everybody* admired her there: *everybody* danced with her: but *no one* proposed who was worth the marrying. *Id.*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

*Everyone* looked towards her; *everybody* listened for what she would say. *Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. VIII, 200.

- b) According to JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.22—4) *body* is regularly used in the proverb *What's everybody's business is nobody's business*; but hardly ever in such a combination as *No one in the room spoke for some time*. "The form *one* is always used in the phrase *no one better*, and generally before a post adjunct: *every one present*, *no one concerned in that affair*."

i. The curate dropped calling, and *nobody decent* came near us. *EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 35a.

ii. She looked up with... a look of pleading — as of *someone*'at a disadvantage. *Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. VII, 164.

When, however, the great English scholar observes that "the compounds with *body* are hardly ever used before *partive of*", he seems to overlook the fact that in this position *one* is a substitute for a preceding or subsequent noun (often implied in a pronoun), i. e. as a prop-word of the second kind, a function in which *body* is never employed.

- c) *Nobody* and *somebody* sometimes appear in the pregnant meaning, respectively, of a person of no consequence and a person of (some considerable) consequence. The corresponding compounds with *one* are, apparently, never used in this sense. Compare Ch. XL, 178, Obs. II, and JESPERSEN. *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 8.441. *Nobody* appears to have this pregnant meaning regularly when converted into a pure noun. For illustration see 29, Obs. I.

i. Anything was good for him, Harry said; he was a younger son, and prepared to rough it; but George in a gown, and dining in a mess with three *nobody's* sons off dirty pewter platters! Harry could never relish this condescension on his brother's part. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 634.

I was a discord in Gateshead Hall: I was like *nobody* there. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 11.

ii. Before these days rose up Theudas, boasting himself to be *somebody*. *Bible, Acts*, V, 36.

I wanted to be *somebody*, to have some influence in the world. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 227.

In the following quotation, however, which, unfortunately, cannot be located at the moment of writing, *some one* has the same pregnant meaning as *somebody* in the two preceding:

They are beginning to find out that Pitt Crawley is *some one* at last. THACK., Van. Fair.

29. Obs. I. The compounds *nobody* and *somebody* are not infrequently found converted into pure nouns and may, accordingly, then be used in the plural or preceded by some adnominal modifier, especially the indefinite article. *Anybody* and *everybody* seem to occur but rarely in this altered function.

i. Two or three *anybodies* (= ordinary people). FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

ii. She seemed to know everybody in Europe, and about those *everybodies* the wickedest stories. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 19.

iii. In such invitations a bachelor or two more or less are always spoken of as *nobodies*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XIX, 151.

Four hundred *nobodies* were ruined. DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. I, 3b.

The House of Lords is the home of rich *nobodies*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6541, 12a.

The people whom we don't know are usually *nobodies* — until we come to know them. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. VII, 60.

iv. She was the only girl in company for you to notice, and you must have a *somebody*. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XXIV, 236. You treated somebody. Now, was *that somebody* brother to the prisoner at the bar? DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. LXIII, 231b. On those truly British occasions... this *somebody* pretended to do his something. Id., Little Dorrit, Ch. VI, 29b.

I went merely as a spectator, and looked at the people who read papers as if they were *somebodies*. KINGSLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. VII, 128.

Somebody must be responsible for accepting these worthless recruits and sending them to South Africa and to India. Who is *this somebody*? Times.

The way they patch it up is to decide that somebody misunderstood what somebody else said, and flew into a passion, which everybody — including the two *somebodies* — recognizes to have been a mistake. Westm. Gaz., No. 6547, 12a.

Note. a) *Anybody* and *somebody* are sometimes employed facetiously after titles as quasi-proper names.

i. A *Lord Anybody* sounded like a practical joke to him. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XIII, 121.

ii. "I hope young Hilton will come early", said another lady to *Miss Somebody else*, in a fever of expectation. DICK., Sketches, Tales, Ch. III, 155.

I can remember to have gone about my region of our house... the perfect realisation of *Captain Somebody*, of the Royal British Navy. Id., Cop., Ch. IV, 28b.



ρ) It may here observed that the compounds with *one* (*any one*, etc.) are but rarely found converted into nouns.

As for me I look forward to a quiet life: a quite little home, a quiet little library full of books and a little *Some one* dulce ridentem dulce loquentem. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXVIII, 719.

- II. In Earlier English *body* was of a wider application as a prop-word than it is now. It was also found after the indefinite article (Ch. XL, 195, *a*), and *other*, in fact after any adjective, and could be placed in the plural. It was then, however, less faded in meaning, and we find it, accordingly, mostly separated from the word with which it was connected. According to A. SCHMIDT (*Shak. Lex.*), SHAKESPEARE always has *any body* in two words, while this is his ordinary practice with *no body*. Even in works of a comparatively recent date compounds of *body* may be found printed separately.

Traces of the old practice of using *body* vaguely in the sense of *person* in other combinations than with the above pronouns survive to this day, chiefly in the language of the illiterate, and in Scotch. According to MURRAY (s. v. *body*, 13), it occurs in ordinary English "now only as a term of familiarity with a tinge of compassion, and generally with adjectives implying this", i. e. in a sense which may be rendered by the Dutch *persoontje*. See also WENDT, E. S., XVII; FRANZ, E. S., XVII; id., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 350; W. ALDIS WRIGHT, Note to *As you like it*, IV, 3, 164; A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *body*, 4; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 60.

- i. Hath *any body* inquired for me here to-day? *Meas. for Meas.*, IV, 1, 16. I would out-night you, did *no body* come. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 23.

"Would *any body* believe," continued the cab-driver, appealing to the crowd, would *any body* believe as an informer 'ud go about in a man's cab, not only takin' down his number, but ev'ry word he says into the bargain. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 6.

- ii. Most holy and religious fear it is | To keep *those many many bodies* safe That live and feed upon your majesty. *Hamlet*, III, 3, 10. *The foolish body* hath said in his heart, There is no God. *Bible*, Psalm LIII, 1. (Prayer-Book version. The Authorised Version has: *The fool* hath said etc.)

I am resolved to perish rather than apply to my companion or *any other body* for relief. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XV, 92.

Spitfire seemed to be in the main a *good-natured little body*. *Dick.*, *Dom. B.*, Ch. III, 22.

And we that were fools enough to bring up *another body's* child, too. *Mrs. CRAIK*, *Dom. Stor.*, B, 73.

In his absence she was a still personage, but with him *the most officious, fidgetty, little body* possible. *CH. BRONTË*, *Villette*, Ch. III, 25. (Observe that *body* here appears as a variant of *personage*.)

*Mrs. Proudie*, who was an *early body*, would not hear of her guest going out to the inn for his breakfast on a Sunday morning. *TROL.*, *Frامل. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 62.

She is a *kind, jolly sort of body*. *HARDY*, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXV, 209.

Never should have thought she'd have growed up *such a handsome body* as she is. *Id.*, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 71.

Anne was a *wise young body* of fourteen. *D. H. LAWRENCE*, *Second Best* (*Eng. Rev.*, Feb. 1912).

She looked a *lonely-ish, independent sort of body*. Mrs. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. I, 13.

- III. In SHAKESPEARE *my body* etc. may have the value of a reflective pronoun. See Ch. XXXIV, 2, Obs. V. Thus also he has *my body*, etc., and *my body's*, etc. as representatives of, respectively, *me*, etc. and *my*, etc. Compare EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 397.

I'll make more of *thy old body* than I have done. Merry Wives, II, 2, 145.

Nothing but *my body's* bane would cure thee. Ven. & Ad., 372.

30. *Man* is used as a prop-word of the first and second kind. (1)

31. As a prop-word of the first kind it is often found after the indefinite pronouns *any*, *each*, *every* and *no*; not, apparently, after *some*. After *each* it is as unusual as *one*, the ordinary practice being to use this pronoun without any prop-word.

In the following quotations *one* or *body* could be substituted for *man* without appreciable change of meaning:

**any man.** He knew how to keep Christmas well, if *any man* alive possessed the knowledge. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, V, 111.

If ever I hear *any man* speak against my character, I'll punish him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 318.

Thus they become ripe for enterprises which would at once be pronounced hopeless by *any man* whose passions have not deprived him of the power of calculating chances. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 95.

What the future may bring forth for either Great Britain or Germany is not for *any man* living to foresee. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5567, 2a.

**each man.** Give every man thy ear, but few thy voice; | Take *each man's* censure, but reserve thy judgement. HAMLET, I, 3, 69. (*Each man* is, apparently, used as a metrical variant of the preceding *every man*.)

*Each man* asked his neighbour for news. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 338. Once at least in his life *each man* walks with Christ to Emmaus. WILDE, *De Profundis*, 118.

**every man.** What is *every man's* business is no man's business. Proverb. *Everyman's Library*, edited by Ernest Rhys.

For abandoning him when it seemed as though *every man's* hand were turned against him — he could not help despising her. It was cowardly. Had it been ten times true, she should have stood by him when every one was abusing him. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XIII, 239. (Observe the use of *every one* as a variant of *every man*.)

**no man.** It is always noticeable at the table of the Veneerings, that *no man* troubles himself much about the Veneerings themselves. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 19.

I will live on *no man's* charity. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 352.

He was answerable to *no man* for his acts. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XI, 195.

Note. *Man* as a prop-word is, of course, also frequent enough after *one* when used as the alternative of *other*. After the latter it is chiefly met with when a genitive is to be expressed. Compare Ch. XL, 154 ff.

*One man's* breath is *another man's* death. Proverb.

32. For the rest *man* as a kind of prop-word of the first kind is found after practically every other kind of adnominal word, i. e.:
- a) after the definite article, with which it forms a kind of determinative. In this combination it is often undistinguishable from *one*. (7)  
 If you'd wanted a bout at boxing, quarter-staff, or short-staff, I should never be *the man* to bid you cry off. SHER., RIV., IV, 1, (255).  
 I was not *the man* who would influence her in any way in the disposal of it (sc. her money). THACK., SAM. TITM., CH. IX, 108.  
 Now the great Robert was not *the man* to call a sum of several hundred thousands a nothing, because he had so much more himself. MAR. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., I, CH. XI, 200.
  - b) after the indefinite article, with which it forms a kind of indefinite pronoun. For illustration see CH. XL, 195, b.
  - c) after an adjective preceded by another modifier.
    - i. The Bible is *the poor man's* comfort and *the rich man's* warning. CH. KINGSLEY.  
*The poor man* does not envy the rich so much as *the rich man* envies the richer. R. ASHE KING, OL. GOLDSMITH, CH. V, 61.
    - ii. Who's the worse for the loss of a few things like these? Not *a dead man*, I suppose. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., IV, 92.  
 Have I not always had my shoulder to the collar, and is it right that I should now be contented with the scraps from *a rich man's* kitchen? TROL., FRAML. PARS., CH. XXXVI, 353.  
 Marner's eyes were set like *a dead man's*. G. ELIOT, SIL. MARN., I, CH. I, 4.
  - d) after a demonstrative, or an interrogative pronoun.
    - i. Mrs. Lambert knew little of what was passing in *this man's* mind. THACK., VIRG., CH. LXIX, 723.
    - ii. *What man* of you, having an hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, doth not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost until he find it? Bible, LUKE, XV, 4.
33. *Man* may be apprehended as a kind of prop word of the second kind when, as a variant of *one*, it stands before partitive *of* + pronoun. O, Sir Lucius! I have had ancestors too! — *every man* of 'em colonel or captain in the militia! SHER., RIV., III, 4.  
 It is an enchanted wealth; *no man* of us can yet touch it. CARLYLE, PAST and PRES., CH. I, 5.  
 He and a thousand more never came back again. *Every man* of them was murdered as he fell. THACK., VIRG., CH. I, 6.  
 In the following quotation *man* and *one* are used in close proximity, apparently for the sake of variety.  
 BRUT. Know I these men that come along with you? — CAS. Yes, *every man* of them; and *no man* here | But honours you; and *every one* doth wish | You had but that opinion of yourself | Which every noble Roman bears of you. JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 90.
34. The other person-indicating nouns that may have the character of prop-words require no comment beyond the observation that in this function they appear less faded in meaning than those discussed above. The following list would, of course, admit of some extension.

**fellow.** Why on earth she did not mother it (sc. the letter), when it appeared in the Times, is one of the things "*no fellah* can understand". Rev. of Rev., No. 256, 327a.

**folk(s).** *Some folk* like *some folk*, and others don't. Mrs. GASK., Sylvia's Lovers, Ch. X, 132.

So was the pageant ended, and *all folk* | ... In little groups from that sad concourse broke. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., Atalanta's Race, XX.

**people.** *The unobtrusive people* are not by any means to be confounded with the unimportant. WHITEING, Little People, Ch. I, 13.

**person.** *Every person* has a right to take care of themselves. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, IV, 91.

It must in candour be admitted that he (sc. Addison) contracted some of the faults which can scarcely be avoided by *any person* who is so unfortunate as to be the oracle of a small literary coterie. MAC., Addison, (752a).

A *person* who has not done one half his day's work by ten o'clock runs a chance of leaving the other half undone. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VII, 33a.

No *person* ever had a better knack at hoping than I. GOLDSMITH (RICH. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. V, 61).

**soul.** Go to bed, *every soul* of you, instantly. THOM. HOLCROFT, Road to Ruin, I, 2, (10).

Note. In Colloquial English *everybody* (or *every one*) is sometimes replaced by *every man Jack*, or *every mother's son*, both of which mark the notion of individuality more emphatically than *everybody*. The former is also used with regard to things.

- i. \* "You don't mean to say (they) are all dead, I hope?" ... — "Every one of 'em", replied Dennis. "*Every man Jack!*" DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXIX, 153a.

"And when the wedding was over, we'd have it put in the newspaper list of marriages." — "Dearly I should like that." — "And the babies in the births — *every man jack* of 'em!" HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. IV, 33.

We are of the opinion that less in this country than anywhere in the world is Compulsion necessary to induce *every man Jack* of us to defend himself and the commonwealth. The New Statesman, No. 1204, 538b.

\*\* Sir Pitt had numbered *every 'Man Jack'* of them (sc. bunches of hot-house grapes). THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 82.

- ii. That would hang us, *every mother's son*. MIDS., I, 2, 71.

*Every mother's son* of them wishes to be considered Samson and Solomon rolled into one. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. X, 190.

Little People, Little People, *every mother's son* of them; all honour to the breed! WHITEING, Little People, Ch. I, 13.

35. Of the *thing*-denoting nouns that may do duty as prop-words, *thing* is by far the most widely used. It never has any reference to any preceding or subsequent noun. (1)

36. *Thing* is especially frequent after the indefinite pronouns *any*, *every*, *no* and *some*, with which it forms a kind of compound, which is now always written in combination. Much illustration is hardly required in this place.

**anything.** Now being prepared for almost *anything*, he was not by any means prepared for nothing. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 55.



They are unlikely to get *anything* to do for another six months or so. Westm. Gaz., No. 4195, 4c.

Note the idiom in: i. O my dear father and mother, I fear your girl will grow *as proud as anything*. JOSEPH RUFFINI, *The Paragreens*, II, 57.<sup>1)</sup> His bosom throb'd with agony, he cried *like anything*. Ingoldsby Leg.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Mr. Lloyd George will have to face an estimated deficit of *anything between* £10,000,000 and £15,000,000. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 6a.

iii. I should be delighted *beyond anything*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 17.

iv. *For anything I can tell* he may be a decayed nobleman. *Punch*, 1891, 208a. (See also Ch. XVII, 150).

**everything.** Fadladeen was a judge of *everything*. MOORE, *Lalla Rookh*, (331). (For further illustration see Ch. XL, 54, II, b, 3.)

Note the idiom in: i. Pace is *everything*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.* (= *of the first importance*, Dutch *Het komt in de eerste plaats aan op snelheid*.)

Since the beginning of this war we have heard successively that men were *everything*, that munitions were *everything*, that finance was *everything*, that the blockade was *everything*, that flying is *everything*. Westm. Gaz., No. 7105, 6b.

ii. *Everything* has an end. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XX, 78b. (= Dutch *Aan alles komt een einde*.)

**nothing.** DESD. What wouldst thou write of me, if thou shouldst praise me? — IAGO. O gentle lady, do not put me to 't; | For I am *nothing*, if not critical. *Othello*, II, 1, 120.

There was *nothing* more which could be said to be intended for ornament. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 221.

Note the idiom in: i. Gratiano speaks an infinite deal of *nothing*. *Merch.*, I, 1, 114.

ii. Take a word of advice, even from three foot *nothing*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXII, 231a.

iii. He thinks *nothing* of drinking six cups of tea straight off. SWEET.

**something.** *Something* attempted, *something* done, | Hath earned a night's repose. LONGFELLOW, *The Village Blacksmith*, VII.

I'll bring you *something* to eat and *something* hot to drink. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VII, 137.

Note the idiom in: I heard twenty-five years ago that he'd gone into service with a certain Priam Faril, a painter *or something*. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VII, 171. (= Dutch *of zoo iets*.)

I must get you into bed at once — instantly or I shall have you down with pneumonia *or something* to-morrow. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 183.

Compare: If you went to New York — *or somewhere* — you'd see enough girls to feel you were picking out the best. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland discovers America*, Ch. I, 10.

37. Obs. I. These compounds of *thing*, especially *anything*, *nothing* and *something* are sometimes used in connection with partitive *of* to denote:

a) a certain degree of the quality expressed by the following adjective, or suggested by the following noun;

<sup>1)</sup> HOPPE, *Suppl. Lexic.*, s. v. *any*.

β) a certain frequency of the action of seeing. See Ch. V, 17 and 18; Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*; and compare what has been observed about the indefinite numerals (*a*)*little (less, least), much (more, most)* in Ch. XL, 67, Obs. II; 72, Obs. II; 77, Obs. I; 83, Obs. I; 93, Obs. III; 100, Obs. II; 105.

i. Have you seen *anything* of Miss *H.* lately? MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 144.

ii. Enemy you call it, Sir? You call that which gives *everything* there is of *beauty* — *everything* there is of *sweetness* — to the life of man — you call it our enemy? FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XVIII, 154.

iii. There is *nothing* of *tragedy* about her. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 140

iv. (He) was *something* of a *humorist* and dry joker. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid.-Loth.*, Ch. V, 58.

He was *something* of a *dangerous character*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXV, 132a.

She had *something* of an *estranged mien*. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 37.

She had *something* of a *gift for housekeeping*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, II, Ch. XIX, 229.

His speeches are always *something* of an *event*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 7a.

There was *something* of *Puck* in his composition; *something* of *Apollo*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 62, 275.

Compare: I am a *piece* of a *philosopher*. STERNE, *Sent. Journ.*, II, III, 37.

II. *Something* of is sometimes equivalent to the conjoint *some*. Compare Ch. XL, 179, *b*, Note β.

Let me not think that I discovered *something* of *coldness* in your first salutation. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (242).

There was *something* of *coarse, bold admiration* in his look which terrified her very much. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXI, 81a.

*Something* of *womanly caution and timidity* perhaps backed the passionless indifference with which she set aside the larger schemes of ambition which were ever opening before her eyes. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

III. *Something* and *anything* sometimes denote rather persons than things.

By the pricking of my thumbs, | *Something* wicked this way comes. Mac b., IV, 1, 45.

You have been as God's good angel in our house. | God bless you for it, God reward you for it, | Philip, with *something* happier than myself. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 422.

We have no special prejudice against Jesuits, but since they chose to identify themselves so strongly with the former regime, and to support it with all their force, they can hardly expect to be treated as *anything* else but enemies by those who have destroyed the Monarchy. *Spectator* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5436, 16c).

IV. In older texts the above compounds are often written separately; in Late Modern English this seems to be done to indicate a shifting of stress.

i. For she is *no-thing* of swich patience | As was this Melibeus wyf Prudence. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B, 3087.

The apathy of his companion served... to defend him against *every thing* save the inconvenience of the present moment. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXI, 201.

- ii. My greatest grief is that I leave | *No thing* that claims a tear. BYRON, *Childe Harold*, I, 181.

Separation is also usual enough when *any*, etc. also modifies another noun with which it does not form a compound.

In that far-off time superstition clung easily round *every person or thing* that was at all unwonted. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marne*, I, Ch. I, 1.

Observe, however, that Late Modern English does not tolerate such a combination as *everybody and everything* to be contracted into *\*everybody and thing*.

(It) is an example of the evil results that accrued from the state of atrocious terror of *everybody and everything* in which he lived as a boy at school. Athen., No. 4512, 552a.

38. In Literary English *anything*, *nothing* and *something* are sometimes used, archaically, in functions which partake more or less of those of adverbs.

For a discussion of the ambiguous nature of some of these functions see 40.

- a) The quasi-adverbial *anything* is especially found in sentences or clauses of a negative import, where, either by itself or in conjunction with its head-word, it has approximately the value of *at all*. See Ch. XL, 3, Obs. V. It is now chiefly met with as a modifier of:
- 1) the partly adjectival, partly adverbial *like*. See Ch. III, 14.

No; not so well done; or *anything like* so well done. RUSKIN, *For's Clav.*, XLVII, 253.<sup>1)</sup>

Hunt had to a certain extent started this (sc. the new note), but he had not succeeded in giving it *anything like* the distinct character which it took in Keats's hands. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 89.

He is not *anything like* the equal of Burns or Shelley. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 98.

The larger species of gorse... does not flower in *anything like* real earnest until April and May. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 18b.

They do not approach Mr. Belloc with *anything like* the air of discriminating, though sympathetic, equals. *The New Statesman*, Vol. VI, No. 147, 401a.

- 2) the indefinite numeral *much*.

It must also be remembered that wealth was better distributed in those days. Nor was the general condition of the nation *anything much* to envy. *The New Age*, No. 1200, 1b.

The applications illustrated by the following quotations seem to be obsolete now:

And will the ladies be *anything familiar* with me, think you? BEN JONSON, *Poet.*, IV, 1, 119.<sup>2)</sup>

Not *furious anything*, either for good or evil, no enthusiasts. GEN. P. THOMPSON, *Audi Alt. Part.*, III, CLXX, 196.<sup>3)</sup>

1) MURRAY, *s. v. like*, 2, f.

2) FRANZ, *E. S.*, XVIII.

3) MURRAY.

b) *Nothing* as a quasi-adverb is used in a sense approximating to *not at all*, *in no way*, either by itself or in conjunction with its head-word. It is found as a modifier of:

1) certain verbs, especially:

- a) *to ail*, *to avail*, *to care*, *to concern*, *to differ*, *to help*, and perhaps, a few others, where *nothing* is more or less felt as an object.
  - i. They often infect those who *ailed nothing*. LANDOR, *Imag. Conv.* <sup>1)</sup>
  - ii. All this *availeth me nothing*, so long as I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the King's gate. Bible, *Esther*, V, 13. (Compare: Thy death *avails me nought*. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Son of Cræs.*, LXI.)
  - iii. He *cares nothing* for me. PHILIPS, *One never knows*, I, 59. <sup>2)</sup>
  - iv. That *concerns thee nothing*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXI, 197.
  - v. An aristocracy however *differs nothing* from a despotism. PRIESTLY, *Lect. Hist.*, V, LXII, 307. <sup>3)</sup>
  - vi. Yet, though I distrust, | *Discomfort* you, my lord, it *nothing* must. *Hamlet*, III, 2, 178.
  - vii. It *helps us nothing*, in such a difficulty, to say that [etc.]. DK. ARGYLL, *Reign of Law*, II, 58. <sup>3)</sup>

β) *to doubt*, where it appears archaically, perhaps as a conscious or unconscious imitation of SHAKESPEARE'S (*I doubt it nothing* (*Hamlet*, I, 2, 41; *Macbeth*, V, 4, 3).

She, Heaven bless her, felt none of the shame which oppressed me, or said she felt none, and went away, *nothing doubting*, on her errand. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 162.

The seals of office, or war to the knife, was the alternative which he offered to a much-belaboured Head of Affairs — *nothing doubting* that the Head of Affairs would recognize the claimant's value. TROL., *Främl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 15.

2) the participial adjective *daunted* and the adjective *lo(a)th*, in the latter combination, perhaps as a reminiscence of MILTON, *Par. Lost*, IX, 1039: *Her hand he seized and to a shady bank | Thick over-head with verdant roof embowered, | He led her nothing loth*. See JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.388.

- i. The hag, *nothing daunted*, and, perhaps, even pleased at the effect of her words, would have continued, but at that moment the Uhlan came forward. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IX, 83.  
*Nothing daunted*, Raumer first called into existence a scientific union, and organised lectures in the Singing Academy. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1894, 15 Aug., 166a.
- ii. To this house... my lord insisted upon going, not only himself, but on taking his little daughter and son, to play with the children there. The children were *nothing loth*, for the house was splendid, and the welcome kind enough. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, I, Ch. XI, 113.  
She even made George Osborne contribute, and *nothing loth*... he went to Bond Street and bought her the best hat and spencer that money could buy. *Id.*, *Van Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

3) the partly adjectival, partly adverbial *like* and *near*, often followed by *so*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 59.

<sup>3)</sup> MURRAY.



She sits her horse *nothing like* so well as you used to do. ELIZ. BLOWER, G. Bateman, III, III.<sup>1)</sup>

She was *nothing like* that good old funny Miss Honeyman at Brighton. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XX, 220.

Sherry to start with, then hock, then claret and champagne (*nothing like* so dry as we have to drink it now). PUNCH.

To awaken the unconscious victims of the ceaseless hum and buzz of our great cities will ... be *nothing like* the easy task he asserts it will be. Westm. Gaz., No. 7134, 18a.

Scorching is *nothing like* so prevalent as it was. CYCLING.

Compare: Charles says that Hurd is *not a bit like* he was. MRS. WARD, Marc., II, Ch. V.

Capell reads 'wells', which, to my sense, is *nothing near* so good (sc. as 'swells'). HUDSON, Note to Macb., I, 2, 25.

- 4) the indefinite numeral *much*: I dare say there's *nothing much* the matter. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., II, Ch. XVII, 139.

Had a single prodigy been seen, *nothing much* might have been thought of it. DEIGHTON, Note to Jul. Cæs., I, 3, 29.

There is *nothing much* to say about London. Pall Mall Mag., 1899, Aug., 588b.

If I have *nothing much* to say, I may at least justify my title. Ib., 1900, Oct., 285a.

The applications illustrated by the following quotations seem to be obsolete or rare:

- i. I am *nothing slow*. Rom. and Jul., IV, 1, 3.

That you love me I am *nothing jealous*. Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 162.

He loved to see her maids obey, | Yet *nothing stern* was she. SCOTT, Marm., II, iv.

She is *nothing related* to me. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XI, 122.

- ii. You were *nothing* so strong and fortunate as I. Henry IV, A, V, 1, 38.

The insight which was given to Daniel... was *nothing so* minute and particular as that which was given to the apostle John. E. IRVING, Babylon, III, I, 169.<sup>1)</sup>

Our social monotone of level days, | Might make our best seem banishment, | But it was *nothing so*. LOWELL, Agassiz, IV, 11.<sup>1)</sup>

- iii. The bird was *nothing the worse* for what it had undergone. SOUTHEY, Sir T. More, II, 18.<sup>1)</sup>

- iv. It was *nothing bigger* at twenty-seven than at twenty-two. WELLS, The New Macchiavelli.<sup>2)</sup>

- c) The quasi-adverbial *something* has the value of *somewhat* (Ch. XL, 181, g), by which it has been largely superseded. Compare SATTTLER, E. S., VI; FRANZ, E. S., XVIII; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.385 ff.

It is still met with as a modifier of:

- 1) a verb, or an entire sentence or clause.

'Tis not *unknown* to you, Antonio, | How much I have disabled mine estate, | By *something showing* a more swelling port | Than my faint means would grant continuance. Merch. of Ven., I, 1, 124.

But Marmion stopp'd to bid adieu: — | "Though *something* I might *plain*", he said, | "Of cold respect to stranger guest, | Sent hither by your King's behest [etc.]", SCOTT, Marmion, VI, XIII, 13.

1) MURRAY.

2) JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.39.

All we gaol-birds are to breakfast together in *something approaching* to a Christian style again. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. II, 9b.

Altogether he *had something the look* of a tipstaff, or a bailiff's follower. ID., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. LXIX, 268b.

But suppose the incumbent has only a vested wrong, and that the poor of the town have a vested right, if they only knew how to get at it! Is not that *something the case* here? TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XV, 185.

The action... will enable the younger pressed men to be trained alongside the volunteers of *something approaching* like age. WESTM. GAZ., No. 7075, 3a.

- 2) a predicative adjective. According to MURRAY (s. v. *something*, B, 2, a) "frequent in the 17th and 18th centuries. Now rare or dial. Also in dial. and colloq. use as an intensive with such adj. as *cruel*, *frightful*, etc."

i. She is *something blind*. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (260).

'T is pity her temper is *something particular*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXIII, 293.

My sense of touch is *something coarse*. TEN., *Talking Oak*, XLI.

He was *something embarrassed* by the sudden appearance under his roof of the man who was both his adversary and his rival. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. VII, 248.

- 3) an adverb. Being *something gently* considered, I'll bring you where he is aboard. *Winter's Tale*, IV, 4, 825.

"Oh!" said I, *something snappishly*. DICK., *Christm. Stor.*, *Haunted House*, Ch. I.

They (sc. the boa-constrictors) swell *something awful*. ALG. BLACKWOOD, *The Snake* (Westm. Gaz., No. 7105, 14a).

Especial mention may be made of the combinations *something + the* (before a comparative), and *something + too*.

i. He was *something the worse for liquor*.

ii. *Something too* much of this. HAML., III, 2, 82.

But I prattle | *Something too* wildly and my father's precepts | I therein do forget. TEMP., III, 1, 58.

I got *something too* deep into his secrets. SCOTT, *Kenilworth*, Ch. XII, 148.

- 4) a comparative, whether of a predicative adjective, an adverb or an indefinite numeral.

i. Mrs. Williams, though she is *something better*, is likely to endure her malady for life. BOSWELL, *Johnson*.<sup>1)</sup>

Soon again I heard a tapping | *Something louder* than before. POE, *Raven*, VI.

His lordship turned to another gentleman, *something older*, *something stouter*, and *something redder* in his face. DICK., *Pickw.*

ii. My thoughts came slower, may be, and *something duller*, than those of other folk. SCOTT, *Anne of Geierstein*, Ch. XV.

iii. Now this song which he made (both words and music) in the hour of our victory, is *something less* than just to me. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. X, (217).

The play extends over a period of *something more* than two years and a half. DEIGHTON, *Intro. to Jul. Cæs.*, 31.

The behaviour of the Bosnian police was *something more* than strange. ENG. REV., No. 87, 150.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., VI.

Note. Instances of *something* modifying an attributive adjective, whether in the positive or comparative degree, as in the following quotations, appear to be very rare:

A white head and *something a round belly*. Henry IV, B, I, 2, 212.

Will you... increase your sister's fortune to make her *something a more suitable match*. R. BAGE, Barhan Downs, I, 26.<sup>1)</sup>

5) the partly adjectival, partly adverbial *like* or *near*.

i. He writes *something like* you. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 68.

He said a mighty good thing about mathematics that sounds *something like* it. OL. WEND. HOLMES, Autocrat, Ch. I, 9a.

She treated her *something like* a paid companion. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, I, Ch. I, 13.

This (sc. loan) will be used *something like* the Anglo-French loan raised in the United States of America. Rev. of Rev., No. 315, 178b.

ii. "Did you actually carry me ten miles?" she asked. — "*Something very near it*", said Nick. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of the Eagle, I, Ch. V, 52.

Note. Before a word stating a number or a quantity *something like* has the value of *about*.

His epoch-making work was ignored for *something like five and thirty years*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 13a.

Even in the case of America the excess (sc. of letters sent over letters received) is *something like 80.000*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3897, 1099.

6) prepositional expressions, whether they have the value of adjectives or adverbs.

For 't must be done to-night, | And *something from the palace*. Macb., III, 1, 132.

I am, I must confess, *something of his opinion*. WYCHERLEY, Plain Dealer, II, 1.

It was built *something in the Moorish taste*. BORROW, Bible in Spain, Ch. XXXVI.

They put it *something after this form*. WELLS, First and Last Things, I, § 5, 29.

Her thoughts ran *something in this line*. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XIV, 123.

Especial mention may be made of the rather frequent use of *something* before *over* or *under* followed by a number.

He is now *something under fifteen*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XX, 168.

The gentleman wanted a large sum of money instantly, *something under two thousand pounds*. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 60.

All the postal packets in the United Kingdom in a year number *something over 5.000.000.000*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3897, 1099.

Buildings were set up, ... with accommodation for a hundred resident students and *something under four hundred day students*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3901, 141.

Compare: It (sc. the college) had then *rather under 200 students*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3901, 140.

39. Obs. I. In many connections the adverbial character of *anything*, *nothing* and *something* as exhibited in 39 is uncertain. Thus in *Is he anything like a politician? He is nothing like a politician*, and *He is something like a politician*, they may, indeed, be apprehended

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

as adverbs, respectively in the meanings of *at all*, *not at all*, and *more or less*, but also as pronouns modified by an undeveloped nominal clause (Ch. XXI): *anything that is like a politician*, etc.

Also such a sentence as *That is nothing much* may be understood to mean either *That is not particularly much* or *That is nothing (or not anything) that is particularly much*. If apprehended in the first way, *nothing* is, of course, an adverb; if understood in the second way, *nothing* is a pronoun modified by an undeveloped nominal clause (Ch. XXI). The phrase also bears some resemblance to *That is nothing else*, and its comparative frequency may to a certain be owing to this analogy. Compare STOF., E. S., XXIX, 87; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 17.33.

In the connections illustrated in 38, *b*, 1 and 2, on the other hand, *nothing* can hardly be regarded otherwise than as an adverb. Thus also in the following quotation, although at first blush it seems to be pronominal:

This is a case in which I will *trust nothing* to your conscience. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXI, 197.

- II. The combination *nothing less (than)* may have two quite opposite meanings: *a) quite equal to, the same thing as*, *b) far from being, anything rather than*. In both meanings it is now rare.

i. Thy grave admonishments prevail with me: | But yet, methinks, my father's execution | Was *nothing less than* bloody tyranny. Henry VI, A, II, 5, 100.

ii. "How'er it be, | I cannot but be sad; so heavy sad | As, though on thinking on no thought I think, | Makes me with heavy nothing faint and shrink". — "'Tis nothing but conceit, my gracious lady". — "'Tis *nothing less*: conceit is still derived | From some forefather grief; mine is not so, | For nothing hath begot my something grief". Rich. II, II, 2, 34.  
Who, trusting to the laws ..., expected *nothing less than* an attack. SCOTT, *Napoleon*, XXVII, 1).

40. All the compounds of *thing* with an indefinite pronoun are sometimes used as pure nouns. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 8.442; EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 382.

- a) Instances of *anything* converted into a pure noun are rare.

She is my house... | My horse, my ox, my ass, my *anything*. Taming of the Shrew, III, 2, 234.

Have you not... some brooch? Some pin? Some *anything*? SH. KNOWLES, Hunchb., III, 2. 2)

- b) Also *everything* is but rarely found turned into a pure noun.

The two friends... inquired... whether he believed there was anything that really looked bad here. The Abbot replied with reticence, couldn't say... Had seen scores of people come to identify, and never saw one person struck in that particular way. Might, however, have been Stomach and not Mind. If so, rum stomach. But to be sure there were rum *everything*s. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. III, 38.

1) MURRAY.

2) EINENKEL, Das Indefinitum, § 882.



We have read... volume after volume about German views, German thought, German preparations, German *everything*. Athen., No. 4537, 347a.

- c) *Nothing* as a pure noun occurs frequently enough, in various shades of meaning, i. e. in that of:

1) empty space (Dutch *het niet*): An emissary of the primeval *Nothing*. CARLYLE, *Misc.*, I, 120.<sup>1)</sup>

2) a non-existent thing: 'T is we, who ... strike with our spirit's knife! Invulnerable *nothings*. SHELLEY, *Adonais*, XXXIX.

There is nothing of a story and all that *nothing* (to borrow a phrase from Martial) is bad. SWINBURNE, Charles Dickens, 31.

Note to dance on *nothing* = to be hanged.

3) an insignificant or worthless thing, event, observation, etc.:

She then proceeded... to relate the little *nothings* that had passed since the winter. Miss BURNEY, *Cecilia*, VII, ix.

It is a *nothing* of a part, a mere *nothing*, not above half-a-dozen speeches altogether. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XV, 152.

The cottage... has a pretty situation, and as for the rent, why, as one may say, it's a mere *nothing*. DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black-Eyed Susan*, I, 3, (16). Scrooge's niece played well upon the harp; and played among other tunes a simple little air (a mere *nothing*: you might learn to whistle it in two minutes). DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 79.

The great Robert was not the man to call a sum of several hundred thousands a *nothing*, because he had so much more himself. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XI, 200.

4) a person of no note, a nobody, a nonentity (= Dutch *een nul*): It is a relief, indeed, to find genius in a crowd of *nothings*. LYTTON, *Maltr.*, 235.<sup>2)</sup>

Metellus and ... Afranius, who had been chosen consuls for the year 60, were mere *nothings*. FROUDE, *Cæsar*, XII, 163.<sup>1)</sup>

I feel what a *nothing* I am. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XIX, 162.

5) nonsense: Prithee, no more: thou dost talk *nothing* to me. Temp., II, 1, 165.

Gratiano speaks an infinite deal of *nothing*. Merch., I, 1, 114.

Talking an indefinite deal of merry fond *nothing*. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night*, 41.<sup>2)</sup>

- d) Also *something* is often used as a pure noun. Of particular interest is the rather frequent combination *a* + adjective + *something*. See Ch. IV, 17. The following quotations are classified according to the modifier by which *something* is preceded.

i. (It is) *the something* which the hand can suggest, but which nothing mechanical can ever reproduce. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 106. She (resented) *the something* offensive yet mysterious to her in the Dowager's expression and voice. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. I, 236.

ii. \* There was in Mr. W's tragedy a *something* which reminded him both of Coriolanus and Othello. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 661.

To be laughed at by Miss Mayton was a *something* the mere thought of which tormented me in a manner that made me fairly ashamed of myself. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 71.

1) MURRAY.

2) EINENKEL, *Das Indefinitum*, § 382.

But you see, miss, there's always *a something* that you'd like to alter, go where you will. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. XXI, 188.

\*\* I thought ... of the washing-stand being rickety on its three legs, and having *a discontented something* about it. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22a.

The conversation of Addison was Terence and Catullus in one, heightened by *an exquisite something* which was neither Terence nor Catullus, but Addison alone. MAC., *Addison*, (751a).

- iii. But the person — you recognize him at once. By what? By *that something* we can't catch in a picture. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 187.
- iv. There is such confusion in my powers, | As, after some oration fairly spoke | By a beloved prince, there doth appear | Among the buzzing pleased multitude; | Where *every something*, being blent together, . Turns to a wild of nothing, save of joy, | Express'd and not express'd. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 183.

Note a) Also word-groups consisting of a compound of *thing* and the adverb *else* are sometimes used as pure nouns.

There is yet *a something else*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 367a.

He was no more a confirmed gambler than he was *a confirmed anything else*. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. V, 58.

Your true cook's born, not made, same as *your true anything else*. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 33.

Of an analogous character is the function of the word-group in:

And none of us thought of *a something beyond*. TEN., *Maud.*, I, XIX, v.

β) The word-group *something or other* is sometimes made to do duty for a name the speaker cannot think of on the spur of the moment.

This was the Honourable *Something or Other*. CARLYLE, *Reminiscences*, I, 182. 1)

*Something* may in like manner be met with as part of a name.

Persuade Mamma to write to *Sir Something Crawley* for leave of absence for poor dear Rebecca. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 27.

He wondered if that *something crane* could stand the strain. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6660, 13a.

41. Obs. I. *Everything* is sometimes found in the grammatical function of a predicative adjective preceded by an intensive adverb. Of an analogous application of the other compounds of *thing* no instances have come to hand.

Miss Walsingham was ... the most accomplished, the most sensible, *the most everything* woman could be. MRS. A. H. BENNETT, *Beggar Girl*, Ch. V. 2)

How many young ladies had publicly professed ... that for their tastes she (sc. Dolly Varden) was much too short, too tall, too bold, too cold, too stout, too thin, too fair, too dark — *too everything* but handsome! DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLI, 159a.

- II. Mention may in this connection be made of the curious *something-ean* used in the function of an attributive adjective.

The grand secret seemed to be, that three of the *something-ean* singers should grunt, while the fourth howled. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 134. \*

1) JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 17.314.

2) MURRAY.

42. For the rest we find *thing* applied as a prop-word of the first kind after practically every other kind of adnominal word, i. e.:

- a) after the definite article, *the thing* being equivalent to the determinative *that*.

Sweet, bid me hold my tongue, | For in this rapture I shall surely speak  
*The thing* I shall repent. Troil. and Cres., III, 2, 139.

It was his intention to do *the thing* which was right according to his point of view. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 140.

*The thing* that strikes one is in the Saturday's view that probably they (sc. these elections) would not be possible anywhere in the kingdom except in certain parts of London. Westm. Gaz., No. 5213, 16c.

- b) after the indefinite article, *a thing* having the function of an indefinite pronoun. For illustration see Ch. XL, 195, b.

- c) after an adjective or ordinal numeral preceded by another modifier.

- i. *The very thing* I proposed to you. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 21.

*The first thing* they ask... is that their idols should believe in them in spite of every one and everything. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 136. (Observe that unlike the Dutch *het eerste*, *the first* in this application could not dispense with the prop-word.)

Presumably *the first thing* that will be done will be to suspend the Standing Orders and pass the Budget verbatim and literatim. Spectator (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 16c).

- ii. It is *a fearful thing* to see the human soul take wing. BYRON, Pris. of Chillon. (= Dutch *iets vreeselijks*.)

I resisted all the way: *a new thing* for me. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 7.

Deaths were by no means uncommon in Roaring Camp, but a birth was *a new thing*. BRET HARTE, Luck of Roaring Camp, 4.

- iii. *What new thing* are you going to do? Daily Mail.

- iv. O, much I fear *some ill unlucky thing*. Rom. & Jul., V, 3, 136.

She excels *each mortal thing* upon the dull earth dwelling. Two Gentlemen, IV, 2, 51.

Can there *any good thing* come out of Nazareth? Bible, John, I, 46.  
Nothing, *no wordly thing* under the sun is so dear to me as the love and good-will of my subjects. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § III, 375.

Note a) The majority of adjectives do not tolerate the omission of the prop-word, when required to perform the function of a noun. Those that do have been discussed in Ch. XXIX, dealing with the conversion of adjectives into nouns.

β) When *thing* is modified by *only*, or the numeral *one*, together with an adjective, and perhaps also in other combinations, the last-mentioned modifier is sometimes placed after its head-word. Compare Ch. XLII, c, 3.

It's *the only thing good* you can give. DOUGLAS JERROLD, Black-Ey'd Susan, I, 1.

Everything, in brief, is done but *the one thing necessary*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. III, 47.

γ) When preceded by an adjective *thing* is often used, disparagingly, to denote a person. See also Ch. XXIX, 14, d.

This is your doing, Peggotty, you *cruel thing*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 22b.

Oh! she was, indeed, *a "gushing thing"*,... was the youngest Miss Pecksniff. *Id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 7a.

He had closed with *a desperate thing*. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I. 6. She's *an underhand little thing*. *Id.*, Ch. II, 8.

I don't want your money, you *silly thing*. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 26. Tom, indeed, was of opinion that Maggie was *a silly little thing*. *Id.*, I, Ch. V, 32.

She felt as if she were *a guilty thing*. *HALL CAINE*, *The Woman thou gavest me*, Ch. II, 10.

Compare: And none serve with him but *constrained things*. | Whose hearts are absent too. *Macb.*, V, 4, 13.

- d) a demonstrative pronoun: Mother — please — I entreat you not to do *this thing*! *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 221.

Note. *Thing* is often dispensed with. Compare Ch. XXXVI, 7, c.

- e) after the determinative *same*: *CHAS. SURF.* Let me throw on a bottle of champagne, and I never lose. — *ALL.* Hey, what? — *CARE.* At least I never feel my losses, which is exactly *the same thing*. *SHER.*, *School for Scand.*, III, 2, (396).

"Princes do not love to have their favours refused, and I don't wonder that his royal highness was offended". — "General Lambert said *the same thing*". *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 630.

Note. *Thing* is often dispensed with. Compare Ch. XXXVII, 3, c.

- f) after the determinative *such*, either preceded by an indefinite pronoun or followed by the indefinite article.

i. Do you know what made me give you your place?" — "Why, my aunt's money, to be sure", said I. — "*No such thing*. Do you fancy I cared for those paltry three thousand pounds?" *THACK.*, *Sam. Tim.*, Ch. VII, 84.

"There is *no such thing*", he (sc. Addison) used to say, "as real conversation, but between two persons". *MAC.*, *Addison*, (751b).

ii. They would like to see him dare to think of marrying any of them; they would like to see the faintest approach to *such a thing*. *DICK.*, *Old. Cur. Shop*, Ch. IV, 15b.

Note a) For *any* (*no*, *some*) *such thing* colloquial English mostly has *anything* (*nothing*, *something*) *of the kind*.

I never said *anything of the kind*. No member of the Government said *anything of the kind*. *The Nation*, Vol. XIX, No. 3, 63a.

β) In the majority of cases *thing* or *a thing* can hardly be dispensed with. In the first of the two quotations given on page 936 under ii \*, *such* stands after *for*, which has the value of *as*, so that *such* is more or less felt as predicative adnominal adjunct.

- g) after the cardinal numeral *one*: His primitive theories about women..., for *one thing*,... formed a constant mental stimulus, to which her busy brain was greatly indebted. *SARAH GRAND*, *The Heav. Twins*, I, 11.

#### 43. Occasional variants of *thing* are *affair* and *matter*, the latter being more common than the former.

- i. It (sc. the poem) is *a very slight affair*. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 48.

Had it (sc. the castle) been in repair, it might have made the escape of your mother and father *a very much easier affair*. *CON. DOYLE*, *Uncle Bernac*, Ch. VII, 65.



- ii. *The whole matter* was enveloped in enough of doubt and mystery. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 473.

She looked about for some member of the family who might enlighten her and of whom she might ask questions without exciting curiosity. It was not *an easy matter*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 78.

It's rather *a serious matter* to doubt my word of honour. *Id.*, II, Ch. VIII, 126.

Note. Also *object* may be little more than a prop-word. Thus in:

Beautiful (was) the appearance of *every object* around, as Mr. Pickwick leant over the balustrades of Rochester Bridge. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 38. (= *everything*.)

44. In conclusion it may be observed that also the plurals of most of the nouns described in the preceding §§ may be used as prop-words, *body* being the only exception. The collective *people* is a very frequent variant of the nouns denoting persons, having the advantage of containing no indication of sex. *All things* is a convenient metrical variant of *everything*.

- i. \* Thousands upon thousands of *dead people*, and not one of the whole host remembered. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. V, 4h.

*The unobtrusive people* are not by any means to be confounded with the unimportant. WHITEING, *Little People*, I, 13.

\*\* Fools are not supposed to show temper. It is only *wise men* who're allowed to ride their humours on a loose rein. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 11.

- ii. Consider that *external things* are naturally variable. SAM. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. XVIII, 109.

*Such things* happen every day. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. I, 3b.

Eager eyes, that still | Took joyful note of *all things* joyful, beam'd | Beneath a manelike mass of rolling gold. TEN., *Aylmer's Field*, 67.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

### REPETITION OF ADNOMINAL MODIFIERS.

1. As in Dutch the repetition of adnominal modifiers is mostly rather a matter of taste, convenience, rhythm or even pure chance, than of meaning. In verse it is, more often than not, dependent on the metre.

The influence of metre is clearly shown in:

There, in *the rich, the honour'd, fam'd and great*, | See the false scale of happiness complete! POPE, *Es. on Man*, IV, 287.

Note. It stands to reason that the longer modifiers are not repeated, unless there are urgent reasons for doing so. Thus we seldom meet with repetition of genitives or adnominal phrases or word-groups.

*Pitt's childhood and early life* are little known. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5607, 9c. Traces of *these almost-forgotten customs and beliefs* may yet be met with in *certain out-of-the way hamlets and villages*.

The parlour... was appalling in its bravery of old gold-plush and portraits of *defunct Hebrew ladies and gentlemen*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXVIII, 250.

2. a) Non-repetition of articles, adjectives and pronouns appears to be the rule when the nouns modified are the names of things that are naturally thought of together.

The populace of *the Scottish towns and villages*... resumed the work of destruction and exercised it upon *some sequestered church, chapel or cell*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 76.

He took some time to have *the saddle and stirrups* properly adjusted. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 110)

He was the personal friend of *the landlord and landlady*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

We turn for a short time from the topics of the day to commemorate, in *all love and reverence, the genius and virtue* of John Milton. MAC., *Milton*, (2b). *The life and labours* of Orange had established the emancipated commonwealth upon a secure foundation. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 897b.

*My father and mother* want you to go and see them for a whole day. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

- b) But also when there is no such apparent mental association, there is nothing unusual in the adjunct not being repeated.

The solidity of ancient mason-work had proved too great for *the time or patience* of the assailants. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 76.

Since I was a wanderer with thee on the hills, I have been *a hunter, and fisher, and fowler*. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 8.

The consequence was that whenever *the Buffs and Blues* met together . . . , disputes and high words arose between them. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 104.

Beyond the church, but close to it, were *the boys' school and girls' school*, two distinct buildings, which owed their existence to Lady Lufton's energy. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 10.

*The gentry and clergy* of that part of England were indeed, with few exceptions, Tories. *MAC., Hist.*, V, Ch. V, 144.

He behaved with *a propriety and fortitude* which moved even the stern and resentful king. *Ib.*, II, Ch. V, 190.

- c) Repetition of the adjunct is, in the majority of cases, excluded, when, although more than one noun is used, it is practically only one notion which is meant.

This is the case:

- 1) when a thing is denominated by the names of its component parts, as in such word-groups as *cup and saucer, needle and thread*. See also Ch. XXVI, 21, *b*.

*Pounding the pestle and mortar*. *WASH. IRV.*, Dolf Heyl. (*STOF., Handl.*, I, 108).

*The bread and cheese* was presently brought in. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 52.

It is on the same principle that we may explain the non-repetition of the adnominal adjunct in:

Let it be nothing . . . against the Lady of Avenel . . . , as *thy look and words* seem to imply. *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 80. (= *thy manner*.)

She is *the head and shoulders* taller than you are. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 106. (= *the length of the head and shoulders*.)

- 2) when a notion is denoted by two synonymous terms or two words denoting different aspects of one and the same notion: a mode of expression which is frequently practised for the sake of the balance of the sentence. See also Ch. XXVI, 21, *a*.

You have some sick offence within your mind, | Which, by *the right and virtue* of my place, | I ought to know of. *JUL. CÆS.*, II, 1, 269.

He immediately resolved to adopt certain proceedings tending to *that end and object*. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

The selling of goods by retail is a shameful and infamous practice, meriting *the contempt and scorn* of all real gentlemen. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

Here he passed a half-holiday in *the bitterest sadness and woe*. *Ib.*

To the best of *his means and ability* he comments on all the actions and passions of life almost. *Id., Eng. Hum., Swift*, 2.

Something of *womanly caution and timidity* perhaps backed the passionless indifference with which she set aside the larger schemes of ambition. *GREEN, Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

Thus also there is not, as a rule, repetition of the adjunct, when the second noun is intended as an explanation or correction of the first, and is, accordingly, connected with it by *or*.

*What patience or endurance* can you require of which he is not capable? *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 79.

Having concluded *her prayer or obtestation* . . . , she again addressed her grandson. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 80.

(Not) for *any favour or earthly affection* will I withdraw my hand from the plough when it shall pass through the devoted furrow. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 80.  
Of *womanly reserve or self-restraint* she knew nothing. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

- 3) when two nouns are connected by *and* by way of hendiadys, one of them denoting a quality of what is expressed by the other. See also Ch. XXVI, 21, *b*.

I am glad to dwell upon *the earnestness and love* with which she lifted up her face to mine. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14a. (= *the earnest love*.)

The gloom-stricken old father was still more borne down by *his fate and sorrow*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384. (= *his sorrowful fate*.)

This was all he had in return for *his passion and flames*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 98. (= *his flaming passion*.)

Descend, and proffer these, | The brethren of our blood and cause, that there | Lie bruised and maim'd, the tender ministries | Of *female hands and hospitality*. TEN., *Princ.*, VI, 57. (= *female hospitable hands*.)

In this case the indefinite article appears, however, to be usually repeated.

'Twould be *a sin and a shame* if we let her go dirty now she's ill. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XIX, 202. (= *a sinful shame* or *a shameful sin*.)

It is not consistent with the honour of *an officer and a gentleman* to have an unauthorised peep at his adversary's cards at play. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 76, 475. (= *a gentlemanly officer*.)

- 4) when the nouns denote different capacities, functions, etc. ascribed to one and the same person or group of persons. Compare *the clerk and sexton* with *the clerk and the sexton*, the former denoting one person, the latter two. See also Ch. XXVI, 21, *a*.

Peel (*the orator and statesman* ...) was my form-fellow. BYRON (LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 12b).

Many were the consultations that she held with Peter de Groot, *the clerk and sexton*, who was her prime counsellor. WASH. IRV. *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

Alderman Dobbin was Colonel of the City Light Horse ..., *the colonel and alderman* had been knighted. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 50.

There were two small pieces of ordnance which Mr. Lambert and *his kinsman and commander*, Lord Wrotham, had brought into Harwich in one of their voyages home from Flanders. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXII, 229.

This Mr. Chaworth had left *a daughter and heiress*. LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 14a.

The commonwealth which William had liberated for ever from Spanish tyranny continued to exist as a great and flourishing republic during more than two centuries, under the successive stadholderates of *his sons and descendants*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898a.

Sometimes we find the adjunct repeated.

Few days had passed ere Louis had received, with a smile of gratified vengeance, the intelligence, that *his favourite and his councillor*, the Cardinal Balue, was groaning within a cage of iron. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXXVI, 446.

Conversely, when the capacities, functions, etc. denoted by the nouns are held by different persons, repetition is by no means regular, any more than in the cases referred to above under *a* and *b*.

Towards the evening *the mate and boatswain* begged the master of our ship to let them cut away the foremast. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 9.



Will told her that *his mother and sister* had been having a fight, because Fanny wanted to marry their cousin, the wild Indian, and my lady countess would not let her. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVII, 173.

(She) returned straightway to the continent to rejoice *her husband and son*. Id., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. I, 10.

- 5) when a group of adjectives partially converted into nouns denote *one* class of persons, or are intended to indicate different aspects of *one* quality.

- i. Small pity had he for *the young and fair*. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CLX. (= *the persons who are both young and fair*.)

He was the soul of honour, and might be trusted with a regiment of *the fairest and purest*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 177.

- ii. Their scope was to awaken mankind to aspirations for what he considered *the true and good*. MRS. SHELLEY, Pref. to first collected Ed., 1839. (= *that which is both true and good*.)

He admires *the great and heroic* in life and novels. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 6. (= *that which is both great and heroic*.)

*The grave, close, compact* was the order of the toilette. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XV, 191. (*The order of the toilette* is a variation of *the order of the day*.)

3. a) Repetition of the adjunct has the effect of bringing all the conceptions indicated in the enumeration distinctly and separately and, therefore, emphatically before our minds.

Thou art a happy woman... that, lifted so high above *human affection and human feeling*, thou canst bind such a victim to the horns of the altar. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. X, 94.

Between *the doctor and the housekeeper* it may easily be supposed that Dolf had a busy life of it. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.* I, 108). He lost favour in the eyes both of *the doctor and the housekeeper*. Ib., 109. At (this) speech Miss Amelia only made *a smile and a blush*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

Jacobus was *a tyrant and a bully*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXI, 279.

They want to keep themselves to themselves, to narrow the circle of their interests by making it conterminous with that of *their friendships and their loves*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 10.

- b) Repetition of the adjunct is especially frequent in the case of asyndetic connection. See Ch. IX, 12.

Husband your strength, my child — *your sovereign, your religion, your country* require it. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 82.

Who remains behind possessing *his far-fetched experience, his self-devoted zeal, his consummate wisdom, and his undaunted courage?* Ib., Ch. X, 95.

The humorous writer professes to awaken and direct *your love, your pity, your kindness*. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Swift, 2.

We turn for a short time from the topics of the day to commemorate, in all love and reverence, the genius and virtue of John Milton, *the poet, the statesman, the philosopher, the glory of English literature, the champion and the martyr of English liberty*. MAC., *Milton*, (2b).

They will scarcely be able to conceive the effect which poetry produced on their ruder ancestors, *the agony, the ecstasy, the plenitude of belief*. Ib., 4b. James was declared *a mortal and bloody enemy, a tyrant, a murderer, an usurper*. Id., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 143.

*Her levity, her frivolous laughter, her unwomanly jests* gave colour to a thousand scandals. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

- c). Before adjectives partially converted into nouns repetition is practically regular when different classes of persons or separate qualities are meant.

i. He frequented *the voluptuous and the frugal, the idle and the busy*, the merchants and the men of learning. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XVI, 96.

Where *the good and the bad and the worst and the best* | Have gone to their eternal rest. POE, *The City in the Sea*.

The humorous writer professes to awaken and direct... your tenderness for *the weak, the poor, the oppressed, the unhappy*. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Swift, 2.

ii. In the buildings good sense and good taste combine to produce a happy union of *the comfortable and the graceful*. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 314.

4. a) When a noun is modified by more adjectives than one, and only one person, animal or thing (or group of persons, animals or things) is meant, the other modifiers are, as a rule, placed only before the first.

If parts allure thee, think how Bacon shin'd, | *The wisest, brightest, meanest* of mankind. POPE, *Es. on Man*, IV, 282.

She appeared to retain towards Roland Græme ... *that affectionate and sedulous love* which women bear to their nurslings. SCOTT, *Abbot* Ch. VIII, 81.

The front (sc. of the cell) looked up *a wild but pleasant valley*. *Id.*, Ch. VIII, 75. He was completely under the way of his housekeeper: *a spare, busy, fretting housewife in a little, round, quilted German cap*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 108).

On account of *those villainous and unnatural crimes*, but chiefly of that execrable fact, *the late horrible and barbarous parricide*, ... James was declared *a mortal and bloody enemy*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 143.

The preface is evidently the work of *a sensible and candid man*. *Id.*, Milton, (1b).

He had *the exact, practical, and combining qualities* which make the great commander. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 899b.

- b) It may here be observed that in like manner as in the case of nouns (2, c, 2), it is a frequent practice in English to place two synonymous adjectives in juxtaposition, chiefly for the sake of the balance of the sentence. It stands to reason that in this case repetition of the preceding modifier is unusual.

They rightly considered that the selling of goods by retail is *a shameful and infamous practice*, meriting the contempt and scorn of all real gentlemen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

5. a) As in the case referred to under 3, a, repetition of the modifier before the several adjectives has the effect of emphasizing the notions expressed by the latter, and is mostly attended by asyndetic connection. See Ch. IX, 12.

He had told her *the most extraordinary, the most inconceivable, the most unwelcome news*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. XVI, 163.

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against *the sweetest, the purest, the tenderest, the most angelical* of young women. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 188.

It is for their good, my dear young sir! for their *temporal and their spiritual good!* Id., Virg., Ch. I, 5.

He heard *his dear and his doted-on Mary Anne* say...: "Do you think I could care anything for that lame boy?" LYTTON, Life of Lord Byron, 14a. Happening to glance round... I saw, quite near, *the ubiquitous, the inevitable* M. Paul. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XX, 278.

- b) Sometimes of a series of modifiers only some, mostly those standing first, have the article, the others dropping it.

It is affecting to note, through Pope's correspondence, the marked way in which his friends, *the greatest, the most famous, and wittiest men of the time*... all have a kind word and a kind thought for the good, simple old mother. THACK., Eng. Hum., Prior, Gay and Pope, 103.

Versification in a dead language is *an exotic, a far-fetched, costly, sickly imitation* of that which elsewhere may be found in healthful and spontaneous perfection. MAC., Milton, (5a).

- c) The adjunct cannot be dispensed with, when a word-group is repeated with an adjective added to it.

*My grief, my swelling grief*, had betrayed me to these heretics. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. VIII, 79.

6. a) When a noun is modified by more than one adjective, each referring to a separate specimen of the class of persons, animals or things indicated by the noun, the ordinary practice is to repeat the other modifiers before each adjective when the noun is placed in the singular, and to put them only before the first when the noun is placed in the plural. Thus *the French and the German army* = *the French and German armies*. Compare Ch. XXV, 34 and Ch. XXIV, 23, b. See also HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, II, 69.

i. She liked *the English and the Hebrew tongue*. BYRON, Don Juan, I, xv.

ii. *The Danish and Saxon tongues*, both dialects of one wide-spread language, were blended together. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 10.

- b) But also in this case regularity is sadly to seek.

i. Taking leave of *the elder and younger lady*, (he) was presently heard riding out of the stable-court. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. IV, 52.

*The civil and ecclesiastical administration* had, through a period of near twelve years, been so oppressive and unconstitutional that [etc.]. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 95.

ii. She possessed in equal perfection *the Greek, the Syriac and the Ægyptian languages*. GIBBON, Decl., VII.<sup>1)</sup>

The following quotation exhibits varied practice:

The reader is requested to note a seeming contradiction in the two views which have been given of Graham Bretton — *the public and private — the outdoor and the indoor view*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XIX, 247

1) MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 184.

- c) When the noun is kept in the singular, repetition of the modifiers before the successive adjectives sometimes represents a plural, non-repetition a singular notion. Thus *the Dutch and the English army* indicates two armies, *the Dutch and English army* one army. There is an analogous difference between *the black and the white kitten* and *the black and white kitten*; *a blue and a white flower-pot* and *a blue and white flower-pot*.



## CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

Page	5, line	20	from top:	read <i>a snip of a face</i> .
"	15,	" 2	" bottom:	<i>insert of after dark</i> .
"	40,	" 11	" top:	<i>change down into down</i> .
"	97,	" 21	" "	<i>change 8a into 9, a</i> .
"	106,	" 10	" bottom:	<i>change 14, a into 14, a Note III</i> .
"	109,	" 2	" "	<i>insert the definite article after clas-</i> <i>sifying</i> .
"	110,	" 22	" top:	<i>change brave into prave and bridge</i> <i>into pridge</i> .
"	119,	" 4	" bottom:	<i>change gentleman into gentlemen</i> .
"	184,	" 26	" "	<i>change et into get</i> .
"	192,	" 25	" top:	<i>change Mans into Man's</i> .
"	"	" 2	" bottom:	<i>strike out the full stop after Pied</i> .
"	282,	" 22	" "	<i>change 62, e into 57, Note <math>\beta</math></i> .
"	299,	" 8	" "	<i>change shanks into thanks</i> .
"	301,	" 9	" top:	<i>change 482 into 497</i> .
"	304,	" 6	" "	<i>change Mis into Miss</i> .
"	306,	" 26	" "	<i>change muncommon into uncommon</i> .
"	315,	" 14	" "	<i>read in some way</i> .
"	330,	" 6	" bottom:	<i>change goldfinch into goldfish</i> .
"	344,	" 22	" "	<i>change administrix into administratrix</i> .
"	352,	" 25	" "	<i>change Mrs. Iver McKay into Mr. Iver</i> <i>McKay</i> .
"	386,	" 13	" top:	<i>change check into cheek</i> .
"	390,	" 19	" "	<i>change 12 into 13, c</i> .
"	396,	" 16	" bottom:	<i>change preceded into modified</i> .
"	419,	" 7	" top:	<i>change 41 into 38</i> .
"	422,	" 13	" bottom:	<i>change 10, Obs. I into 6, Obs. IV</i> .
"	431,	" 11	" "	<i>strike out the second been</i> .
"	433,	" 11	" top:	<i>change little into littler</i> .
"	439,	" 2	" "	<i>change Ch. XL, 165, a into Ch. XL,</i> <i>165, Obs, I, a</i> .
"	445,	" 13	" bottom:	<i>change SWINBURE into SWINBURNE</i> .
"	447,	" 19	" "	<i>change rhytmical into rhythmical</i> .
"	451,	" 18	" "	<i>place a bracket after ergst</i> .
"	452,	" 25	" "	<i>change Andley into Audley</i> .
"	460,	" 18	" "	<i>read tie of companionship</i> .
"	474,	" 6 and 4	" "	<i>change inflectional into periphrastical</i> .

Page 493, line 20	from	bottom:	<i>change he into be.</i>
" 504, " 17	"	top:	<i>place a bracket after hurricane's.</i>
" 512, " 7	"	bottom:	<i>change word-group into word.</i>
" 516, " 10	"	"	<i>change pronunciation into pronunciation.</i>
" 520, " 11	"	top:	<i>change he earth into the earth.</i>
" 523, " 9	"	bottom:	<i>strike out the full stop after between.</i>
" 525, " 7	"	top:	<i>change 119, Obs. I into 120.</i>
" 571, " 12	"	bottom:	<i>change of into at.</i>
" 573, " 12	"	"	<i>change Catler into Cutler.</i>
" 633, " 7	"	"	<i>strike out ff.</i>
" 636, " 22	"	top:	<i>place this quotation under office.</i>
" 661, " 2	"	"	<i>change II into β.</i>
" 667, " 11	"	"	<i>insert 16 after Ch. XXXIII.</i>
" 688, " 13	"	"	<i>change the second ever into never.</i>
" 692, " 23	"	"	<i>change be into been.</i>
" 706, " 5	"	"	<i>place a comma after throughout and remove it after and.</i>
" 708, " 11	"	bottom:	<i>change question into questions.</i>
" 710, " 15	"	top:	<i>divide apprehend-ed.</i>
" " " 9	"	bottom:	<i>change equally into as.</i>
" 713, " 15	"	"	<i>change is into -as.</i>
" 717, " 19	"	top:	<i>strike out the.</i>
" 718, " 13	"	bottom:	<i>read Present Vulgar English.</i>
" 719, " 8	"	"	<i>change Ho into How.</i>
" 721, " 11	"	top:	<i>change substituted into substituted.</i>
" 722, " 13	"	bottom:	<i>change vulgar into careless.</i>
" " " 2	"	"	<i>change remnants into survivals.</i>
" 730, " 10	"	"	<i>change und into and.</i>
" " " 6	"	"	<i>read part of the prepositional object.</i>
" 732, " 12	"	"	<i>change Mr. into Mrs.</i>
" " " 3	"	"	<i>change sometthing into something.</i>
" 734, " 1	"	top:	<i>change indentifying into identifying.</i>
" 737, " 6	"	"	<i>insert a comma after This.</i>
" 738, " 3	"	"	<i>place a comma after gutters, and remove it after when.</i>
" " " 17	"	"	<i>change Mr. into Mrs.</i>
" 739, " 26	"	"	<i>strike out the comma after and.</i>
" 741, " 19	"	"	<i>place this quotation under to hear.</i>
" 747, " 14	"	bottom:	<i>divide American-ism.</i>
" 749, " 9	"	"	<i>place inverted commas before He.</i>
" 756, " 4	"	top:	<i>strike out it.</i>
" " " 18	"	bottom:	<i>divide represent-ing.</i>
" 757, " 15	"	"	<i>read Book of Common Prayer.</i>
" 758, " 9	"	"	<i>strike out the *.</i>
" 759, " 14	"	"	<i>read Tiny Tim.</i>
" 761, " 18	"	top:	<i>read clauses.</i>
" 780, " 24	"	"	<i>place however between commas.</i>
" 788, " 2	"	"	<i>change diposal into disposal.</i>
" 799, " 18	"	bottom:	<i>divide an-swer'd.</i>

Page 802, line 8	from	bottom:	<i>change you into yon.</i>
" 810, " 22	"	top:	<i>change hare into have.</i>
" 811, " 14	"	"	<i>change Northumerland into Northumberland.</i>
" 812, " 6	"	bottom:	<i>place a comma after is.</i>
" 817, " 19	"	"	<i>strike out the parentheses.</i>
" 821, " 12	"	top:	<i>read Note β.</i>
" 823, " 21	"	"	<i>place a bracket after Prison".</i>
" 826, " 7	"	"	<i>change seed into seem.</i>
" 828, " 4	"	bottom:	<i>change GRAV into GRAY.</i>
" 830, " 11	"	top:	<i>place a comma before nor.</i>
" 835, " 20	"	bottom:	<i>change 30, Obs. II into 29, Obs. III.</i>
" " " 11	"	"	<i>read one's own.</i>
" 837, " 16	"	"	<i>read pronouns.</i>
" 840, last line:			<i>strike out the second to.</i>
" 843, line 5	from	bottom:	<i>read op z zijn hoede zijn.</i>
" 847, " 25	"	top:	<i>change meaning into pronoun.</i>
" 848, " 23	"	"	<i>change Whe into We.</i>
" 849, " 15	"	"	<i>change I into It.</i>
" 851, " 4	"	bottom:	<i>change that into those.</i>
" 853, " 17	"	"	<i>change cleanlines into cleanliness.</i>
" " " 5	"	"	<i>change ingenously into ingenuously.</i>
" 854, " 15	"	"	<i>strike out Mrs. before Cranford.</i>
" 857, " 18	"	top:	<i>change hersetf into herself.</i>
" " " 4	"	bottom:	<i>change wordly into worldly.</i>
" 858, " 21	"	"	<i>change to purpose into to propose.</i>
			<i>change be into he.</i>
" 859,			<i>strike out the footnote.</i>
" 860, line 11	from	bottom;	<i>place b) before to repent.</i>
" 867, " 8	"	top:	<i>change It into I.</i>
" " " 19	"	"	<i>place a hyphen between looking and glass.</i>
" 885, " 6	"	"	<i>change nouns into pronouns.</i>
" 889, " 2	"	"	<i>change deliquent into delinquent.</i>
" 902, " 17	"	bottom:	<i>place noun after the.</i>
" " " 7	"	"	<i>change created into creaked.</i>
" 908, " 19	"	"	<i>change nine into nice.</i>
" 912, " 19	"	top:	<i>change collections into collocations.</i>
" " " 17	"	bottom:	<i>after moment insert or a certain moment of the past.</i>
" 913, " 4—7	"	top:	<i>Strike out this quotation.</i>
" 923, " 27	"	bottom:	<i>strike out had.</i>
" 924, " 17	"	"	<i>strike out into.</i>
" 926, " 4	"	top:	<i>change (de)zelde into (de)zelfde.</i>
" 930, " 7	"	bottom:	<i>change might into night.</i>
" 931, " 11	"	top:	<i>change indentical into identical.</i>
" 932, " 18	"	"	<i>change plura into plural.</i>
" " " 21	"	bottom:	<i>change thon into thou.</i>
" 941, " 10	"	top:	<i>change af into of.</i>
" 949, " 11	"	bottom:	<i>change wordly into worldly.</i>
" " " 3	"	top:	<i>strike out the second the.</i>

Page	954,	line	1	from top:	<i>change to into of.</i>
"	960,	"	18	" bottom:	<i>read in two of the three preceding quotations.</i>
"	"	"	3	" "	<i>change wordly into worldly.</i>
"	961,	"	13	" "	<i>change the into to.</i>
"	964,	"	14	" top:	<i>change roun into noun.</i>
"	"	"	15	" "	<i>read by way of.</i>
"	968,	"	15	" "	<i>read he had been accustomed.</i>
"	"	"	20	" "	<i>read The one true lover.</i>
"	975,	"	24	" bottom:	<i>read In the majority of cases.</i>
"	982,	"	21	" top:	<i>change outrageous into out ageous.</i>
"	986,	"	4	" bottom:	<i>change an into a.</i>
"	993,	"	2	" top:	<i>read instead of.</i>
"	994,	"	20	" "	<i>change battles into bottles.</i>
"	995,	"	18	" "	<i>read nominal part of the predicate.</i>
"	1002,	"	2	" bottom:	<i>change all into ill.</i>
"	1003,	"	24	" "	<i>change of into for.</i>
"	1018,	"	18	" top:	<i>change Obs. III into Obs. VIII.</i>
"	1019,	"	27	" "	<i>place <math>\beta</math> before before.</i>
"	1020,	"	13	" "	<i>change wordly into worldly.</i>
"	1023,	"	20	" "	<i>change though into through.</i>
"	1034,	"	8	" bottom:	<i>change mach into much.</i>
"	"	"	7	" "	<i>change e) into c).</i>
"	1038,	"	18	" "	<i>change 149 into 178.</i>
"	1040,	"	25	" "	<i>change 7 into 3.</i>
"	1045,	"	17	" "	<i>place a comma after disclaim.</i>
"	1047,	"	5	" "	<i>change too into two.</i>
"	1049,	"	2	" top:	<i>change 70 into 71.</i>
"	1050,	"	20	" "	<i>read found to be absent.</i>
"	1050,	"	12	" bottom:	<i>place vulgar in italics.</i>
"	1055,	"	18	" top:	<i>change otherwere into elsewhere.</i>
"	1086,	"	4	" "	<i>strike out the second a.</i>
"	1088,	"	11	" "	<i>change Obs. III and IV into Obs. V and VI.</i>
"	1097,	"	24	" "	<i>change 73 into 74.</i>
"	1105,	"	7	" "	<i>change 131, a and 132 into 131 and 132, a.</i>
"	1107,	"	20	" "	<i>change ost into lost.</i>
"	1136,	"	14	" bottom:	<i>change pronouns into numerals.</i>
"	1140,	"	2	" top:	<i>place a comma after accordingly.</i>
"	1153,	"	19	" bottom:	<i>place a comma after me.</i>
"	1164,	"	19	" top:	<i>strike out a).</i>
"	1176,	"	1	" "	<i>strike out **.</i>
"	1184,	"	14	" bottom:	<i>place more in ordinary type.</i>
"	1202,	"	11	" "	<i>change 167 into 169, b.</i>
"	1210,	"	24	" "	<i>change 30, Obs. III into 29, Obs. II.</i>
"	1212,	"	7	" "	<i>change funtion into function.</i>
"	1213,	"	16	" top:	<i>change persons into pronouns.</i>
"	"	"	25	" bottom:	<i>change XXXII into XXXIII.</i>
"	"	"	6	" "	<i>strike out half.</i>
"	1221,	"	21	" top:	<i>Place a note of interrogation after the sentence.</i>



- Page 1223, line 15 from top: *change friend into fiend.*  
 „ 1232, top of the page: *change 3—4 into 4.*  
 „ „ , line 8 from bottom: *change ninety into nineteen.*  
 „ 1233, „ 21 „ „ *read a + noun + or two.*  
 „ 1236, „ 21 „ top: *change a) into a).*  
 „ „ „ 18 „ bottom: *change b) into β).*  
 „ 1238, „ 3 „ „ *change c) into b).*  
 „ 1239, „ 16 „ top: *change d) into c).*  
 „ „ „ 20 „ „ *change a) into a).*  
 „ 1240, „ 1 „ „ *change b) into β).*  
 „ 1241, „ 7 „ „ *change hink into think.*  
 „ 1247, „ 23 „ „ *place for in italics.*  
 „ 1248, „ 23 „ „ *change WESST into WEBST.*  
 „ 1255, top of the page: *change UMERALS into NUMERALS.*  
 „ 1301, *between line 6 and 7 place in capitals the heading: NOUNS USED AS PROP-WORDS.*  
 „ 1305, line 2 from bottom: *change 154 into 163.*

Page 2. Further illustration of comparatives or superlatives of nouns:

- i. Piercie Shafton was... accepted amongst the *choicer* spirits of the age. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 291.  
 The rascal might have found you something *choicer* than that. E. T. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 52.
- ii. I wish troubles would come in the daytime, for then a man could show his courage, and hardly beg for mercy of the *most broomstick* old woman he should see. HARDY, *Return of the Nat.*, IV, Ch. VII, 366.  
 He (sc. Abbas Hilmi) has been an extraordinary contrast to his famous grandfather, Ismail, one of the *most spendthrift* rulers in history. *Times*, No. 1982, 1014a.  
 "I 'guess' they can take care of themselves," said Jim, putting on his *Yankiest* accent. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. II, 15.  
 (He) was the *darlingest* person, and had permitted her to steer the vessel. *Punch*, 1912, 17 July, 56b.

Page 16, § 9. With the *Empress Queen* (Mac., Fred., 695a) compare: *the King Emperor and the Queen Empress*. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3794.

Page 17, § 12. An interesting instance of the frequent use of a noun in the common-case form to express a genitival relation is afforded by *enemy*. We find it thus applied chiefly when no other modifier precedes: *enemy craft*, *enemy aliens*, *enemy purpose*, *enemy territory*, *enemy airships*, etc. all of them frequent in the war literature of the present day. After the indefinite article the common-case form varies with the genitive. Compare the following quotation with those given on page 91: A dozen men... flying over *an enemy town* will assuredly see a great deal more than one man. *Times*, No. 1985, 55a.

When the definite article precedes, the genitive is the ordinary form: Six hundred sepoys, who had served in *the enemy's army*, came over to Clive's quarters. MAC., *Clive*, (508a).

There may be scoundrels and ruffians amongst *the enemy's troops*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVIII, 943.

We firmly vindicate our right to interfere with trade in contraband destined for *the enemy's country*. *Times*, No. 1985, 54d.

Sometimes the common-case form is, however, required by the circum-

stances of the case described. Thus in: Of all *the enemy countries*, Bulgaria is the one with which it would be easiest to arrange a separate peace. The Nation, Vol. XIX, No. 9, 260a. (*The enemy's countries* would call forth the notion of a single enemy owning more than one country; while *the enemies' countries* would represent the enemies as joint owners of a plurality of countries.)

Here mention may also be made of the frequent use in a similar function of adjectives partially converted into nouns, as may be seen in such combinations as *the Allied cause*, *Allied vessels*, *the Allied effort*, etc., also frequent in the periodicals describing the events of the Great War. Compare Ch. XXIX, 14, Note III.

Page 18, § 12, c. Compare: At first sight the analogy between a *land war* and a war at sea appears to be complete. (Westm. Gaz., No. 6282, 11b) with: It is maintained that war at sea is analogous to *war on land* (ib.).

Page 35, § 4, b, 1. Further illustration of both head-word and apposition being placed in the genitive: I have all *my grandmother's*, *Lady Kew's*, property. THACK., New c., II, Ch. XLI, 419.

She had naturally begun by looking at him with *her father's*, *the old Mutiny veteran's*, eyes. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. IV, 63.

As she grew older, . . . she had moved some way from *her father's* — *the simple-minded soldier's* — position. Ib.

Page 36, § 4, b, 3, β. When the head-word is modified by a demonstrative, the apposition following seems to take the mark of the genitive also when it is a proper name without a title: Years after this *this man's* — *Edward Leeford's* — mother came to me. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. LI, 478.

Page 37, § 5. Further illustration: Her feet had sandals of the same fashion with the *peasants*. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. III, 25.

"Touch me not, Sir," said Nina, waving her arm with angry majesty, while her eyes sparkled as a *lioness*. LYTON, Rienzi, X, Ch. XIX, 363.

Page 38, § 6, Obs. II. Also the use of *her* as a substitute for genitive inflection has not yet, apparently, become quite extinct in dialects: Catherine Earnshaw *her* book. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. III, 13a.

Page 39, § 6, Obs. IV. A Late Modern English instance of the ending of the genitive having the value of a syllable, although no sibilant precedes, is afforded by: My eyes for beauty pine, | My soul for *Goddës* grace. BRIDGES, Hum. of the Court, II, 1, 1143.

Page 63, § 22. A genitive of measure may also be used in denoting a rate of speed: A splendid new steamer of 15850 tons and *21 knots' speed*. Westm. Gaz.

Page 66, top. The preposition *for* is sometimes dispensed with: There was silence *a moment*. Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. V, 101. (Thus also passim in *Delia Blanchflower* by the same writer, e.g.: I, Ch. III, 65; 81.)

Page 68, § 23, Obs. IV, b and d. Further illustration: They will be subjected to a process of intensive nutrition by which *a stone weight* can be put on in a fortnight. PUNCH, No. 3765, 206b.

As a variant of such a combination as *five pounds money* we also find *five pounds of money*: A *good many millions of money* now spent would be in *he* pockets of the tax-payers. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 41.

Mr. Borden tells us that his Government... can best help by providing three ships at a cost of £ 7.000.000 of money. Westm. Gaz., No. 6095, 1b.

Page 77. Further illustration of the genitive and the corresponding of-construction expressing different ideas: The superintendent... exhibited a warrant empowering him to seize *the body of Jem Wilson*. Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton, Ch. XIX, 207. (= *the person of Jem Wilson*, in which *of* is appositional. Compare: It was thought advisable that an English agent should be near *the person of Eugene* in Italy. Mac., Addison, (744b).

With *the world's end* and *the end of the world* compare severally: i. He had faced the loss of a wife, who, from *the world's beginning*, had been made for him. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. II, 32.

ii. With what longing eyes would I gaze after their lessening sails and waft myself in imagination to *the ends of the earth*! WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.

Page 97, § 44. A construction analogous to that illustrated in Ch. XXXIII, 9, *b* is also found with genitives: And yet, would you take *either of those men's creeds*? THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVI, 381. (= *the creed of either of those men*.) To take a single example of *each of those three playwrights' efforts*, these are works which the most advanced repertory theatre need have no shame in reviving. Athen., No. 4429, 283a. (= *the efforts of each of these three playwrights*.)

Page 100, § 50, Obs. III. A substantive genitive denoting a firm is sometimes construed as a singular: By the way, is *Palliser's* in trouble? VACHELL. Jelf's, I, (44). [Compare: *Palliser's* are in some trouble. Ib., I, (2).] *Lloyd's* occupies extensive premises. It has a commodious chamber with two subsidiaries of smaller size. II. Lond. News, No. 3810, 618. (Compare also Ch. XXVI, 9, s. v. *firm*.)

Page 100, § 50, Obs. V. Further illustration: i. The journey of the pilgrims is interrupted, to the prejudice of their own souls, and the diminution of the revenues of *Saint Mary*. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. VI, 94.

ii. \* A young gentleman... orders diamonds and watches and takes 'em to a *pawnbroker*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLVII, 492.

On an ordinary cool day it is about half-a-mile to the *fishmonger*. PUNCH, No. 3810, 62a.

\*\* I forbid you to go to *Holroyd and Rossiter* for it. AGN. AND EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. VIII, 96.

Page 107, § 55, *b*. The arbitrariness of practice in the use of the common-case form of an adnominal noun as opposed to the genitive, is strikingly exhibited by the following quotations: i. I have always said she has *hawk's eyes*. EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine, I, Ch. III, 41.

He has... *cat's eyes*. Ib., I, Ch. IV, 60.

His *hawk's eyes* were shadowed, as though she sat up very late at night. Id., Halcyone, Ch. X, 99.

ii. Those who approached him could perceive an unusual kindling of his *falcon eye*. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 367.

Nothing escapes her *hawk eye*. EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine, I, Ch. II, 16.

The tendency to prefer the common-case form to the genitive in the case of adnominal nouns ending in a sibilant is illustrated by: You see an *ass-head* of your own. Mids., III, 1, 119.

She heard the muffled clink of *horse-hoofs*. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fidler, Ch. III, 47.

Page 110, 56, Obs. III, *b*, 1. By the side of *in a summer's day* we also meet with *on a summer's day*: She's growing up into as fine a lass as one can see *on a summer's day*. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. I, 8.

Page 122. A further instance of *deer* being used in the sense of a wild animal in general is afforded by: More birds than is generally recognized live almost completely on rats and mice and such small *deer*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6660, 18a.

Page 123. Unless the *of*-construction is preferred, the use of *Chinaman* instead of *Chinese* is practically obligatory in the genitive: It never entered a *Chinaman's* head to criticise the system of 'Squeeze'. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 6b.

Page 126, s. v. *chrysalis*. Besides the classical plural we also find *chrysalises* and *chrysalids*. The former of these is probably the form most commonly used in ordinary spoken language, the latter is the plural of *chrysalid*, a secondary form of *chrysalis*, and may owe some of its currency to the analogy of *orchids*.

Page 137. Further illustration of *eave*: Thence back to the *eave* here, where for forty years he and his ancestors built in safety. RICH. JEFFERIES, *Meadow Thoughts* (PEACOCK, Sel. Es., 526).

There were two storeys above the ground-floor and above them a projecting *eave* of carven stone. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. IX, 199.

They (sc. the swifts) gain the entrance to their nesting place in some hole under the *eave* of a cottage. Westm. Gaz., No. 6576, 28b.

Page 143, 16, b. Also compounds consisting of a noun + *and* + numeral have the mark of the plural attached to the noun: *coaches-and-six*. Thus also: *carriages-and-pair*.

Wallenstein arrived in Karlsbad with no less than fifty *coaches-and-six*, forty *coaches-and-four* [etc.]. II. Lond. News, No. 3815, Sup. 8c.

There was an open carriage-and-four for the honourable Samuel Slumkey, and there were four *carriages-and-pair* for his friends and supporters. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII.

Page 148 ff. Further illustration:

**bellow.** Zillah urging flakes of flame up the chimney with a *colossal bellow*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. III, 18a.

**breeks.** Cecil, since the day he first wore *breeks*, was never man enough to give an open blow. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. XII, 199.

**lorgnettes.** Lady Medwin raised her *lorgnettes* coldly. DESMOND COKE, *The Cure*, I, Ch. VI, 75.

**pincers.** P. volunteered to pull it out with a smith's *pincers*. Sat. Rev., 1898.

**scissors.** He realized how absently Lady Gertrude had been wielding her *scissors*—clusters of infantile buds and scarcely-fledged blossoms, whole branches of promise had fallen to *its* blades. AGNES AND EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. VIII, 225.

**shears.** I got a *shears*. HICHENS, *The Garden of Allah*, II, 226. (T.)

**trouser.** Your *trouser's* burning. Punch, No. 3785, 48c.

Page 153. *Measles* is construed either as a plural or a singular, and this may fairly be assumed to be the case with all plural names of physical or mental derangements: i. *Measles have* broken out. Westm. Gaz., No. 6506, 17a.

This is so early to start *measles*; nobody expects *them* till well on in this Easter term. Ib.

*Measles are* expressly excluded by the Act. Punch, No. 3753, 470b.

ii. *Measles causes* deafness. The New Statesman, No. 131, 14a.

*Measles* killed no end of kids. Why shouldn't *it* carry off the little Ellices for my benefit. PERCY WHITE, *To-day*, Ch. III, 19.



Page 183, s. v. *thanks*. Further illustration: i. I owe you *much thanks* for many kindnesses RUDY. KIPLING, *Plain Tales*, 286 (Seaside Lib.).

The comparison with a passage of Parmenides is a thing for which we owe Miss Sinclair *much thanks*. II. Lond. News, No. 3834, 544c.

ii. *It is thanks* to pretty Fanny Burney... that we know King George and Queen Charlotte as well as we do Ib., No. 3841a, 800b.

iii. As you would take no other fee but *thanks* let me record *them* here in behalf of me and mine. THACK., *Pend.*, To Doctor John Elliotson.

iv. *Ever so thanks* for reminding me. SHAW, Mrs. War. Prof., II, (188).

Page 205, s. v. *heavens*. Further illustration: i. The *heaven* being spread with this pallid screen and the earth with the darkest vegetation, their meeting-line at the horizon was clearly marked. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. I, 3.

ii. Just as men might follow into *another heavens* a star that had set in their own, so I, old as I am, eagerly desire to gain new experiences of life such as no human being has even yet attained. ROWE AND WEBB, *Paraphrase of Ten, Ulysses*, 31 ff.

Page, 223, s. v. *shambles*. Further illustration: The round-house was like *a shambles*. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. X, (246).

England was *a gigantic shambles*. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XXX, 275.

There was a tale... that British wounded were arriving at Grimsby and the town was like *a shambles*. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 354.

Page 226, s. v. *states*. Further illustration: The new Protective Tariff is left to be discussed by *a new States General*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6199, 2c.

Page 267, § 31. The area of incidence of the use of the plural here referred to requires some extension, so as to include such combinations as the following: A small *House-of-Commons* majority (Westm. Gaz.), the *House of Lords* debate. (Ib.) [compare the *Lords* debate. (Ib.)], the *Problems* Editor. (Ib.), the *Honours* Examination (Athen.), the *Modern Languages* Master (WELLS, *The Plattner Story* I, 10), *The Falkland Islands* victory (Times), *The high-seas* fleet (Westm. Gaz.), *The Two-Elections* plan. (Ib.), his *pence*-pocket, (W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. V, 73).

Page 275, s. v. *round*. Further illustration: The Prince was received with *rounds of cheers*. Times, No. 1981, 995d.

There was a *round of applause* from the audience. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXII, 289.

Page 279, § 5, b. Further illustration: *What are wanted are* immigrants of British origin. Westm. Gaz., No. 6294, 5a.

*What chiefly count* at the election *are*... the shibboleths of party. Graph., No. 2240, 8b.

Page 295, s. v. *folk(s)* and *fry*. Further illustration: Could I make it so, this should be the prose liad of *that folk*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 14. Small fish in shallow water do not come amiss, but *these fry form* quite a small portion of the bird's diet. Westm. Gaz., No. 7151, 18b.

Page 300, § 13, e. Further illustration: Give the lads *a bagpipes* instead of a rattle. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, III, Ch. XXIII, 226.

Page 300, § 14, a. With the quotations here given compare the following: Every one of these states will pay thumping damages for their present folly before *another ten years are over*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6282, 7a. *A fortnight and more have elapsed* since the important announcement was made. Graph., No. 2310, 394a.

Page 301, § 14, *c*. Further illustration: Power rules the world, and *mere numbers is not power*. Eng. Rev., No. 71, 385.

Page 304, § 16, *e*. About *less* it may further be observed that it could not possibly be exchanged for *few* when it is preceded by *a few*, as in: We fancy that we have a few more hours of summer and *a few less* of winter. Guardian. (Westm. Gaz., No. 6165, 16c.)

Page 306, § 17, *c*. Further illustration: You become the sole inheritor of the wealth of *this rich old hunks*. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, I, Ch. VII, 28b. (= *close-fisted man*.)

I am sure he is *a cross old hunks*. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. III, 31.

Page 306, § 18, *a*. Further illustration: So far as the *look of things go*, it is the likeness surprises me. WELLS, II. Lond. News, No. 3906, 346a.

Page 312, § 19, *d*. A Late Modern English of the finite verb being placed in the plural which has *everybody* for its subject is afforded by: *Everybody were* at their prayers or *were* confessing themselves. Note to Byron, Don Juan, II, XLIV.

Page 321, § 28, *b*. In the Humours of the Court, by BRIDGES, pronouns of the third person are regularly used where ordinary practice would have pronouns of the second person. Thus: *Your ladyship* knows not the great desire | I have to serve *her*. II, 2, 1998.

Page 339, § 3. THACKERAY has *slattern* in the sense of an untidy man in: He (sc. Foker) was now... as great a dandy as he before had been a *slattern*. Pend., I, Ch. V, 56.

Page 345, § 9. In vulgar language *widow man* is sometimes used instead of *widower*: Tommy the Mate... was a "*widow man*", living alone. HALL CAINE, The Woman thou gavest me, Ch. IX, 31.

Page 347, § 11, Obs. III. With *chairwoman* compare *forewoman* as used in: We students all assemble in the office to get our orders from our *forewoman*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6630, 7b.

Page 377, § 7. Further illustration: The Delilahs *seduce my wisers* and my *betters*. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. I, 26.

"Well, Master Godfrey, what do you want with me?" said Dunsey in a mocking tone. "You're *my elders and betters*, you know; I was obliged to come when you sent for me." G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. III, 20.

Young folks are always the better for *an elder's* overlooking. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. XXX, 146b.

And in my pleasance would I walk | To hearken *this grave elder's* talk. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 41a.

I don't want to bring any charges against my "*betters*" or even against my "*lowers*". Westm. Gaz., No. 6389, 4a.

The elder (sc. stag) instead of going off in the company of *his coevals* has clung, as it were, to his mother's apron-strings. *Ib.*, No. 6246, 4c.

Page 389, § 14, *a*. Note III. A curious instance of a noun having the value of an adjective that is used to denote a class of persons is afforded by: Thy (sc. Lincoln's) task is done; *the bond* are free. BRYANT, Death of Lincoln, III.

Page 392, line 8 from bottom. This quotation is misplaced, *beloved* not being a vocative.

Page 398, § 16. Further illustration: i. I must go and *do the civil* to Griselda Grantly. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XI, 87.

I got up and *did "the neat and appropriate"* in style. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. VII, 131.

"Wy, Ginger," I says, "let's help 'em *do the heroic!*" Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 1b.

ii. Thou canst *play the rational* if thou wilt. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. I, 10.

I'll *play the polite* to her. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, (5).

iii. "You see, sir, I am coming, according to promise!" I exclaimed *assuming the cheerful*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. II, 9b.

Page 405, line 23 from top. The words "spoken of in a preceding part of the discourse" apply only to *former* and *latter*.

Page 412, § 22, Obs. VI, *a*. Further illustration: The *long and the short* of it is, that he has asked my permission to make you an offer of marriage. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. IV, 26.

The *short and the long* of the whole story is about here. STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, VI, Ch. XXVIII, 147.

Page 413, Obs. VI, *γ*. Further illustration: He felt a faint electric shock of interest every time they passed and repassed each other; though *after the first*, she did not look at him. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. IV, 31.

He was always in the *foremost of the attack*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 13b.

All rose as I entered; but my poor father, who was always slow in his movements, *had the last of me*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. I, 54.

Pendennis would not be leaving that (sc. letter) *to the last*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 13.

Page 426, Note I. Further illustration: Mrs. Blundel is now *on her own*. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, II, (72).

He decided to go back, though he had been tempted to start *on his own*. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 95.

Page 427, § 2, Note II. The foreign comparatives in *ior* differ from ordinary comparatives in that they are not followed by the conjunction *than*, but by the preposition *to*: He was a good deal *junior to* me. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. III, 59.

Her husband... is sixteen or seventeen years *senior to* his wife. (?), *What I found out*, Ch. V, 74.

Page 429, § 5, *c*, Note. Further illustration: Now is the sun upon the *highmost* hill. Rom. and Jul., II, 5, 9.

The great slope of the decks and of the stairs... made it impossible for many passengers to reach the *higher-most* points and caused many to slip back. Il. Lond. News, Summer Numb., 1914, 1003.

They (sc. the thrushes) cower down into the *lowermost* of the nest. Westm. Gaz., No. 6465, 15a.

Page 431, 7, *b*, 2. Further illustration: It is not one of her *bettermost* parlour-parties. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, II, Ch. V, 161.

Page 441, § 11. Further illustration of *late* — *later*, *latter* — *last*:

i. \* He was in France *for these late days*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXIV, 383.

\*\* With an active and officious diligence, which strangely contrasted with her *late abstracted and high tone* of Catholic devotion, she set about her domestic arrangements for the evening. *lb.*, Ch. VIII, 81. (*Late* modifies the following adjectives adverbially.)

ii. In Germany a slight fall (sc. in the birth-rate) occurred in *the later years of the last century*. *The New Statesman*, No. 103, 612a.

\*\* This is one of the lamentable aspects of our *later-day civilisation*. *Graph.* No. 239, 439c.

All needless matters have been eliminated so that a history almost at variance with the possible ties of *later-day belief* may stand forth as simple fact. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Advertisement.

- iii. \* *In latter years* it (sc. the nose) had spread itself out in soft, porous, red excrescences. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. IV, 37.

*Of latter years* the opinion has gained ground that the fishes are not quite so much affected, in their appetites, by the exact quarter of the wind. Westm. Gaz., No. 6552, 124

\*\* What will be their *latter end* I know not. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, II, 35.

\*\*\* Mr. Arnold White, if he could have his way, would... enable our *latter-day Cleon* to substantiate his talk about "plots". Spect. (Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 16c).

- iv. \* His argument naturally suggested a quotation from the psalm he had read *the last Sunday afternoon*. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 14.

\*\* The money was taken in the night *last past*. Id., *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

\*\*\* They are not content to let the Archbishop of Canterbury have *the last say*... in this matter. Westm. Gaz., No. 7075, 19a. (= Dutch *het laatste woord*.)

\*\*\*\* His sister... perceived... that happiness and splendour were not the same; and she did not hesitate to forego *the last* for the attainment of the former. Mrs. RADCLIFFE, *Myst. of Udolpho*, Ch. I, 9b. (= *the latter*. Note the use of *the former* as its alternative.)

He and the Squire were very thick and friendly, but I soon observed that things were not the same between Mr. Trelawney and the captain. *This last* was a sharp-looking man who [etc.] STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IX, 55.

Page 454, § 13. Further illustration of *elder*, *eldest* and *oldest*.

- i. \* Charles had *one elder sister*. FRANK T. MARZIALS, *Life of Ch. Dick.*, Ch. I, 12.

\*\* He turned and stood face to face with two lovely laughing girls and a handsome *elder lady*, who was pretending to look scandalised. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. VI, 56.

\*\*\* I wish to say a few words of one or two writers in our own time who have imbibed the spirit and imitated the language of *our elder dramatists*. HAZLITT, *Lect. on the Age of Eliz.*, Ch. VII, 239.

The claim of Balliol as representative of *the elder branch* was finally preferred to that of his rivals. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, § 3, 189.

\*\*\*\* This battle terminated almost to a certainty in the victory of *the elder bird*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 13a.

University plays, in Latin or in English, form an important group of *our elder drama*. DOWDEN, *Note to Haml.*, III, 2, 109.

The plot... resembles *that elder story* so closely in its incidents of abduction that [etc.]. Eng. Rev., No. 63, 383.

- ii. \* There are twelve years between me and the *next eldest*. SHAW, *Misalliance*, I, (3).

\*\* Mr. Jerome and Mr. Landor were the *eldest pall-bearers*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. XXVIII.

- iii. \* You are the *oldest* friend she has. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XX, 79b.

\*\* He did business with the farmers at the Clavering Arms, as well as the *oldest frequenter* of that house of call. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 20.

Page 461, § 14. Further illustration of *former* and *first*. i. \* Connecting two adjectives of which the *former* logically stands in (or approaches to) an adverbial relation to the latter. MURRAY, s.v. *and*, 4.



Humane with the accent on the *former* syllable was in Shakespeare's day the spelling of the word, whether used in the sense of 'pertaining to man', or in that of 'gentle', 'kind'. DEIGHTON, Note to Macb., III, 4, 76.

\*\* Wildevve meanwhile had arrived on the *former* side. Clym... crossed to the other side of the river. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, V, Ch. IX, 461.

- ii. \* In the *first half* of the century the country lay quiescent after prolonged political and religious conflicts. ROSCOE, *Eng. Scene*, I, Ch. I, 4.

\*\* You, worthy uncle, | Shall, with my cousin, your right noble son, | Lead our *first battle*. Macb., V, 6, 4 (= *van*.)

Page 468, § 19. *Utter* and *utterly* are especially used in connection with words denoting an undesirable state. We find them, however, also as modifiers of words of the opposite character. Several instances of *utterly* before words denoting a desirable state are given by SWAEN, *Herrig's Archiv*, Bd. CXXXIV, 51—52.

And reverencing the custom of the house | Geraint, from *utter courtesy*, forbore. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 381.

Yet if of Death thou hast not any fear, | Yea, rather, if thou *love'st* him *utterly*, Thou still may'st woo her ere thou com'st to die. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *Atalanta's Race*, XXVI.

Observe also: I know you can feel only *the most utter* contempt for me. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, III, (189).

Page 478, line 5 from top. *Liker* and *likest*, although rare in ordinary language, are not unfrequently employed by poets to meet the requirements of metre, and may be common enough in dialects. Some instances are given in Ch. III, § 14, Note. Here are two more: The wish that of the living whole | No life may fail beyond the grave, | Derives it not from what we have | The *likest* God within the soul. TEN., *In Mem.*, LV, I.

It was not long I tried to live Gospel-wise, but it was *liker* heaven than any other bit of earth has been. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXV, 350.

Page 480, s. v. *just*. It appears that *just* in practically all its current senses admits of terminational comparison. Thus MURRAY registers instances under each of the meanings marked, 1, 2, 3b, 4 and 6. Periphrastic comparison is not illustrated by any of his quotations. From a rather large number of quotations that have come to hand it appears that terminational comparison is quite common in the senses *equitable* (*fair*, *justifiable*) and *correct*.

The persons of the Church of England have had 300 years of the most splendid opportunity with the freest and *justest* Government. KINGSLEY, *Let. and Mem.*, 302. Nature is *juster* than we. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 317.

Beside the spirit looking out of those wrinkled eyes, his own hot youth, its *justest* resentments, its most righteous anger seemed crude, harsh, inexcusable. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, Ch. XXI.

Throughout his corps men became unconsciously gentler, *juster*, with a finer sense of right and wrong. OUIDA, *Under Two Flags*, I, 381 (Tauchn.).

What reason is there that their punishment is any *juster* than Mr. Larkins's was? *Nation Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6389, 16c.

Those writings (sc. about Byron) were only in a very restricted sense biographical. Pathological would be their *juster* description. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, *Introd.*, I.

The *justest* comment that has been made on the Falaba incident is made this week in Mr. Raven Hill's drawing. *The New Statesman*, No. 105, 10b.

Page 510, § 44. Interesting constructions; bearing some resemblance to absolute superlatives, are the following: i. His son began to supersede Mrs. Bangham, and to execute commissions in a knowing manner, and to be *of the prison prisonous and of the street streety*. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 33*b*.

Enrico was *of the Germans, German*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. Miss Lawless was *Irish of the Irish*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6636, 15*a*.

iii. They were all hero-worshippers, and their heroes for the most part were *Toriest of the Tory*. Miss FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. IV, 27.

iv. I have been obliged to content myself through life with saying what I mean in the *plainest of plain language*, than which, I suppose, there is no habit more ruinous to a man's prospect of advancement. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

v. The lawn was *as smooth as smooth*. Westm. Gaz., No. 7075, 8*b*.

vi. The crisp slices came off the gridiron *hot and hot*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXVIII, 206*a*.

The first and the last of the above constructions are copiously illustrated by FIJN VAN DRAAT in E. S., XLIII, 302. According to the above scholar the first has arisen from a perverted application of the following passage in the Authorized Version, Cor. A, XV, 47: *The first man (sc. Adam) is of the earth, earthy: the second man (sc. Christ) is the Lord from heaven*. In this passage *of the earth*, on the analogy of the Greek original, is added by way of explanation to *earthy*, but it came afterwards to be understood as an intensive of the preceding adjective, on the principle that repetition makes for emphasis. In the following quotation the combination *of the earth, earthy* (with the comma retained) is used in its original meaning: This was why the man and woman whom Mrs. Kaye... regarded as merely *of the earth, earthy*, were keenly aware of the last act of the tragi-comedy being played before their eyes. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. II, 24 (Tauchn.).

With the constructions commented on in this paragraph compare also that described in Ch. XXXI, 33 *b* and further illustrated below (see next page), which also has the value of an absolute superlative.

Page 528, § 8, *d*, 1. In the sentence quoted from DICKENS it is not, of course, the word-group *a man* which is a kind of prop-word, but the noun *man*. The word-group is more or less determinative in function.

Page 549, § 16, *a*. Further illustration: Especially when *Boy* came, his old eyes lighted up with simple happiness. THACK., *Newc.*, Ch. XLII, 442. (Thus practically regularly in the latter part of this novel.)

I were (vulgæ for was) well fed by *chambermaid* before we left. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 123.

More nor that came up again, wetting a' th' nice dry clothes *landlady* had put on. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 121.

*Doctor* said if we were to move un (vulgar for him) now, it ud (vulgar for would) be manslaughter. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IV, 81.

HUXLEY, in referring to his wife in his letters, sometimes places the definite article before *wife*: *The wife* desires her best remembrances. *Life and Let.*, II, Ch. I, 23.

I shall ask *the wife* to fill up the next half-sheet. *Ib.*, II, Ch. I, 9. (Compare: *My wife* does not know I am writing to you. *Ib.*, II, Ch. I, 18.)

Page 556, § 19, *b*. In adverbial adjuncts containing a preposition the

definite article is sometimes retained: Nothing, decisive is likely to happen *in the next fortnight*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 2a.

Page 576, § 28, Note VI. *Said* not uncommonly drops the article: *Said rooms* were situated on the outskirts of the town. UNA L. SILBERRAD, Success, Ch. I, 10.

They all have sons or brothers with the army, and if *said sons and brothers* are anything like the old stock, they should put up a good show. Times, No. 1980, 977d.

Page 577, § 30, Note II. Maarten Maarten's eighteen-year old daughter was presented at *White House*. Bookman, No. 268, 209a.

Page 589, § 31, Note I. Further illustration: I should uncommonly like to know how you know either that *the ape* has not one (sc. a soul) or that *the man* has. HUXLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. XVII, 351.

Page 596, § 33, b. The plural is sometimes modified by the positive of the adjective represented by the preceding superlative: Mrs. Baddeley and I are *the best of good friends*. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XXIV, 214.

*The very weirdest of weird tales*. Punch.

When the noun modified stands as the symbol of a certain quality, it is sometimes placed after the superlative: "Now, regarding your respected father", said Lightfoot, bringing him to a subject they had expressly appointed to discuss: always *the most slippery eel of eels* of subjects to lay hold of. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. XII, 221.

Here follows also some further illustration of what has been observed in Notes II and III: i. No bad news, I hope — *The worst of news*. SHAW, The Philanderer, III, (119).

He (sc. Dr. Johnson) considered himself *the best of company*. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. II, 14.

To starve and stint your own soldiers... is *the worst of policy*. Eng. Rev., No. 74, 185.

These shell-horns emit *the most mournful of music*. II. Lond. News, No. 3905, 291.

ii. My old chief Richardson is *a man of men*. HUXLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. VII, 137. Cornwallis thought himself *a general of generals*. FRANKF. MOORE, The Jessamy Bride, Ch. XXIV, 212.

Before a plural proper name the definite article seems to be usually retained: Without question he was *a Puritan of the Puritans*. ALDEN SAMPSON, Stud. in Milton, I, Ch. VII, 56.

*A Whig of the Whigs*, he (sc. Lord John Russell) proved typical of a period which bridges over the gulf between the late Georgian eddies and the mid-Victorian backwater. The Bookman, No. 262, 162a.

Anatole France... is *a Parisian of the Parisians*. Ib., No. 269, 249a.

Observe also: *This Goldsmith of Goldsmith* himself is far indeed from being the poor irreflective, irresponsible creature of Boswell, Garrick, Mrs. Thrale or Horace Walpole. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. I, 3.

Page 602, s. v. *law*. Note the difference between: He had a taste for *law*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IX, 89. (= *litigation*) and: He had a taste for *the law*. (= *the study of the law*).

Page 604, s. v. *peace*, γ. By the side of *the Commission of the Peace* we also find *the Commission of Peace*: The King had determined to revise *the Commission of Peace* and Lieutenancy. MAC., Hist., Ch. III, viii, 138.

Page 623. Observe the varied practice in: i. I had *a pain* about my eyes a few months ago. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 364.

- ii. D'ye think he had *great pain* when 'a died. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, III, Ch. VI, 260.

Page 648, § 53, *a*. Further illustration: i. She took leave of us that Sunday night in a very loving way, kissing both *wife Mary*, and *daughter Mary* (if I must not call her little), and shaking hands with me. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. I, 9.

- ii. The old doctor's eye caught the up-turned straining gaze of *the father Darley*. Mrs. GASK., *Sylvia's Lov.*, Ch. VI, 82.  
William, *the aunt Roberta* added, was really growing a little old for so many duties. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIV, 297.

The very sight of him appeared to exasperate *the aunt Caroline* more and more. Id., *The Point of View*, Ch. II, 32.

Page 650, § 54, *a*. Further illustration: *The Mesdames Clapp* looked out from the casement of the ornamented kitchen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXIV, 263. (*Mesdames* is used to supply the want of an English plural of 'Mrs.' MURRAY.)

Page 650, § 54, *b*. Further illustration:

**Chevalier.** Mademoiselle has not heard of *the Chevalier Tiretta*? BERNARD CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. V, 55.

**Dame.** Poor as she was, there was no one in Surrey whose guidance would be more readily sought upon a question of precedence or of conduct than *the Dame Ermytrude Loring*. CON. DOYLE, *Sir Nigel*, 55 (Tauchn.).

**Emperor.** Maria Theresa, daughter of *Emperor Charles VI.* FLUX, *Note to Mac.*, *Fred. the Great*, 97.

**Fräulein.** It was here that he first saw *the Fräulein Lengefeld*. CARLYLE, *Schiller*, II, 112.

**Gentleman.** At the end of the week *Gentleman Smith*, who had been cast for Young Marlow, threw up the part. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. IX, 75.

(Ex-)Governor. *Ex-Governor Eyre* seized the man. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XX, 407.

Page 660, § 58. Further illustration:

**galore.** 30,000 peasants have been induced with free railway tickets and entertainment *galore* to go to Stockholm. Graph., No. 2307, 272c.

**legion.** Their name is *Legion of Legion*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 8. Compare: There were not many who could have kept up with him in his rambles, had there been *a legion*. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLV, 172b.

Also *portion* sometimes loses the indefinite article: Immobility being the chief characteristic of that whole which the person formed *portion* of, the discontinuance of immobility in any quarter suggested confusion. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. II, 15.

Page 665, § 59, 3. Further illustration: You have not done *the half* what you boasted you would do. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XI, 87.

Note. The dropping of the indefinite article before *quarter* in expressions denoting the time of day appears to be quite common in the latest English: We should have been here *quarter of an hour* ago for this nonsense. SHAW, *Phil.*, IV (143).

"What time'll you dress, sir?" — "*Quarter to seven.*" PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, IV, (228).



It was *quarter after six* before Miss Rawson descended the stairs to the hall again. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. II, 33.

Page 667, § 63. Further illustration:

**blush.** i. *At first blush*, this passage looks vague enough. Eng. Rev., No. 78, 239.

ii. *On the first blush* it would appear that biography by syndicate is likely to be very successful. Acad., No. 1763, 157a.

**bottom.** i. He is a good-natured creature *at bottom*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops* 1, (172).

ii. Ned Thornhill was *at the bottom* a very good-natured fellow. Id., *Vicar*, Ch. XX, (367).

**bulk.** These are only samples *out of bulk*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 1c.

**channel.** A great steamer was visible steaming *up Channel*. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. IV, 39.

**country.** We were told it was but forty miles *across the country*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, 1, (174).

**front.** His feet had sandals of the same fashion with the peasants, but of finer materials, and secured *in the front* with golden clasps. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 25.

**head.** I'd as lief knock them *at head* as any other men. DICK, *Barn. Rudge*. Ch. XXI, 83b.

**letter.** The pledge has been repeatedly ignored, not merely *in spirit*, but *in letter*. Eng. Rev., No. 87, 147.

**press.** I have been informed since the present edition *went to the press* that [etc.]. BYRON, *Postscript* to 2nd ed. of *Eng. Bards and Scotch Rev.*

**refuge.** The discontented fled over sea *to seek refuge* in lands as far as Constantinople. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 5, 82.

Scotland where Edgar the Aetheling *had taken refuge*. Ib., Ch. II, § 5, 83.

**shop.** It's not good manners at table: he should *shut up the shop* sometimes. SHAW, *Phil.*, III, (119). (the opposite of *to talk shop*.)

**sight.** She continued to do so (sc. to kiss her hand to me), until we swirled round some trees and I *lost the sight of her*. HAL. CAINE, *The Woman Thou Gavest me*, Ch. XI, 44.

There is apparently little difference between *at sight* and *on sight*, as a comparison of the following quotations with those given on page 676 and 677 will show: i. Any one — even if it be a woman — who does anything to which the Huns object is shot *at sight*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6648, 4a.

ii. He accepted Brandis a subaltern of the 195th *on sight*. RUDY. KIPL., *Wee Willie Winkie*.

For *at first sight* we also find *at first view*: This upper robe concealed what *at first view* seemed rather inconsistent with its form. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 13.

Page 685. With the quotations illustrating *in characteristic fashion*, etc. compare: He had insisted upon having his long yellow locks cut short *in the military fashion*. RUDY. KIPL., *Wee Willie Winkie*.

Page 686. Further illustration of the phrase *of sorts*: She felt vaguely that Arabella had told her of some classical or mythological personage of some such sounding name, a *boatman of sorts*, but she dare not risk a statement. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XIII, 116.

The woman gets... what she wanted..., a *husband of sorts*. Athen., No. 4542, 502b. They succeeded, with some difficulty and interruption, in addressing a *meeting of sorts* at Manchester. *The New Age*, No. 1178, 604a.

Page 688, § 68, *a*. With the quotations here given compare: Mrs. Varden expressed her belief that *never was any woman* so beset as she. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXII, 86*a*.

Page 690, § 68, *c*. Also *heart* when used figuratively in the sense of *person* may lose the article in similar connections as *mortal*: The little Infanta was, in truth, at seventeen, most that *heart* could desire. BERN. CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. II, 14.

Page 694, *s. v. chance*. Either article is sometimes absent: We will give him *chance* to do it. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXIX, 239.

Page 695, *s. v. condition*. Also without the article: The case is by no means common in which an author is at all *in condition* to retrace the steps by which his conclusions have been attained. POE, Phil. of Comp., (371).

Page 697, *s. v. pretence*. Also without the article: For centuries it was the custom for the speaker-elect to make *pretence* of desiring to refuse the high honour offered him. ATHEN., No. 4507, 369*a*.

Page 698. With *to be* (or *become*) *a prey to*, mentioned by MURRAY, compare: On the continent it (sc. the robin) *falls the prey to* many professional bird-catchers. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6453, 32*b*.

Page 705, line 3 from bottom. The genitive of personal pronouns after numerals, as in *een* (twee, etc.) *uwer* (*onzer*, *hunner*) is also rare in Present Dutch; after the interrogative *wie* it is usual only in rhetorical questions.

Page 710–715. Further illustration: What then were God to such *as I*. TEN., In Mem., XXX, IV, 3.

Rome has no firmer friend *than he* who, ordained to preserve order, finds himself impotent against aggression. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 44.

The sting remained that she should have asked any one else *than he* to help her. MRS. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, II, Ch. XIX, 265.

God pardon him! I do, with all my heart. | And yet no man *like he* doth grieve my heart. ROM. & JUL., III, 5, 83.

Page 722, Note. The phrase *between you and I* is not, apparently, confined to vulgar English. If I could contrive to stop here, *between you and I*, I would prefer it to half-a-dozen Edinburgh chairs. HUXLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. VIII, 170. Observe also: I see nothing for it but *for you and I* to constitute ourselves into a permanent "Committee of Public Safety". *Ib.*, I, Ch. X, 192.

Page 725, § 14, *b*. Some further illustration: It was *the other Me*, who hadn't the sense to see what a beastly, caddish thing it would be to marry a girl just because she was rich. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XL, 370.

That's *the new You*. And *what a very new You* it is when one comes to think of it! *Ib.*, 374.

What is *a poor me* to do? WHITEING, Little People, Ch. IX, 87.

Page 726, Note. Further illustration: I have champed up all that chaff about the *ego* and the *non-ego*. HUXLEY, Life and Let., I, Ch. XVI, 315.

Page 749, *s. v. think*. Mention might here be made of the phrase *I don't think*, used in vulgar and colloquial English after an ironical statement, to indicate that the reverse is intended (See MURRAY, *s. v. think*, 9, *b*): 'You're a amiably-disposed young man, sir, *I don't think*', resumed Mr. Weller, in a tone of moral reproof. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXVIII.

Observe also the absence of *so* in such sentences as: She hasn't a dime to bless herself with, *I shouldn't think*. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XXXIII, 300.

Page 776, § 41, Obs. III. There are, of course, several more phrases by which astonishment or disbelief may be expressed. Thus one often hears *Really so! You don't mean to say so!* etc.

Page 798. MURRAY's statement s. v. *both*, A, 4, *b*, has been misunderstood, importing as it does that it is the use of the plural form of the head-word which must be branded as vulgar when the analytical equivalent would require the singular. Thus in *It is both your faults* (= the fault of both of you), *She is both their mothers* (= the mother of both of them). In the light of the quotations given on page 799 it is, however, open to doubt whether the statement as it stands can be upheld.

Page 800, § 10, *a*, Note *δ*. Change this into: Also the combination *our* (*your, their*) + numeral may represent the genitive of *we* (*you, they*) + numeral.

We are here for the settling of a matter which concerns the happiness of *our three lives*. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. V, 9.

Page 800, *b*. Further illustration: I would have given my life for one kind word, even to see *one of your faces*. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXX, 147*b*.

Page 809. Observe the use of the definite article in: Then laying his left hand on my head, while *with the right* he held up Erasmus rebukingly to Uncle Jack, he said [etc.]. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. III, 43.

She was carrying a bundle of books *under the arm*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. VI, 143.

Page 810, § 15, *d*, 1. The statement, as it stands, cannot be upheld, the possessive pronoun being common enough in descriptions of the habit of animals, except, apparently, in the construction with *to have* as instanced in the quotation from SWEET.

What is a shrew? A little animal very like the mouse with a long snout; *its body* is covered with soft fur. *Things Out-of Doors*, 116. (Every Boy's Library.)

What is a bison? A savage-looking animal of the ox tribe, with a hump between *its shoulders*. *Ib.*, 119. (Thus *passim* in this book.)

Page 834. Further illustration: He looked at the pale black-browed image in the water till he identified it with *that self* from which his revenge seemed to be a thing apart. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, II, Ch. XXX, 235.

As for his voice, it's occurred to me that, may be, it expresses something in his real self — *the hidden self* that he and nobody else knows anything about — *the self* he's never had a chance to develop or find out. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. II, 16.

Val could have laughed aloud as he imagined *the old self* of a few weeks since. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXII, 290.

He could not take up the old life or *the old self* where he had dropped both. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 361.

Before we could fancy ourselves Shelley or Keats, *the self* we know would have to be not developed, but destroyed. But in Johnson we see *our own magnified and glorified selves*. JOHN BAILEY, *Dr. Johnson and his Circle*, Ch. I, 10.

Page 846, s. v. *to apply*. Further illustration: Had he afterwards *applied* to dramatic poetry, he would perhaps not have had many superiors. JOHNSON, *Savage*, (318).

He seemed *to apply* to study. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. VII, 79.

I found my pupil sufficiently docile, though disinclined *to apply*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 123.

Page 847, s. v. *to dress*, Note. The observation is not justified by MURRAY's definition of *to dress* in 7, b, *spec.* standing for *specifically* not *especially*.

Page 854, s. v. *to worry*. The suppression of the reflective pronoun is attended by a change of meaning: *to worry oneself* = to take needless trouble, *to worry* = to give way to anxiety, to let the mind dwell on troubles, to fret. See the Concise Oxford Dictionary. The following illustration of the latter may be acceptable: I don't go till you're out of the wood (= out of danger), so go to sleep — and *don't worry*. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, II, Ch. XII, 30.

Page 857, s. v. *to spare*. A comparison of the two quotations shows that the reflective pronoun is indispensable in the first, while it could not be used in the second, the meaning of the verb not being the same. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *spare*, 7, b.

Page 860, § 21, a. The reflective pronoun is not redundant after *to sit*, there being a distinct difference between *He sat on a couch* and *He sat himself on a couch*.

Page 871, § 29, Note β. Further illustration: (They) just want *to keep themselves to themselves*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 8. Just tell Anne, will you, *to keep herself to herself* for an hour and not to disturb me. MRS. WARD, *The Case of Rich. Meynell*, I, Ch. I, 19. (= Dutch *zich zelf bezig houden*.)

Page 874, s. v. *within*. Observe that *to think to oneself* is a frequent variant of *to think within oneself*: He *thought to-himself* how delightful it would be to hear such songs as those after Cutcherry. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 37. A rare fuss over an address, *thought I to myself*. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. V, 102.

Page 898. Further illustration of *that* with forward reference: Lay not *that* flattering unction to your soul, | That not your trespass, but my madness speaks. *Hamlet*, III, 4, 145.

Page 906. Further illustration of adverbial *that* and *this*: People don't come in *this early*. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XVIII, 163. Folks are *that interfering* they're always fishing you out of the water. *Id.*, Ch. XXI, 203.

Page 911. Further illustration of *to-night* indicating an epoch of the past: Shē dreamt *to-night* she saw my statue, | Which, like a fountain with an hundred spouts, | Did run pure blood. *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 2, 76.

Page 913, Note. Read: In the idioms under b—h, *that* and *those* take the place of *this* and *these* in referring to the future or past.

Page 913, Note γ. Before the preposition *for* the use of *this (that) much* would be unidiomatic.

Page 926, § 2, Note β. The use of *one and the same* is also common enough in the case of a simple subject: The universe is *one and the same* throughout. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 314.

Page 931, line 9 from top. The occasion of the use *identical* in this and similar quotations before an adjective may be to prevent the preceding *very* being apprehended as an intensive of this adjective.

Page 939, s. v. *none*. Further illustration: There was *none such* in the army. *Much ado*, I, 1, 33.



The new edition of A. H.'s 'Art of Dining' will not come a-miss. To the best of my knowledge we have had *none such* since 1883. A.c.d. 1898, 26 Nov., 320.

Page 942. The indefinite *such and such* is used substantively in the following quotation: The longer I live, the more obvious it is to me that the most sacred act of a man's life is to say and to feel, "I believe *such and such* to be true". KINGSLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVI, 314.

About *such-a-one* it might have been added that the substantive use of this phrase has not become quite obsolete in the latest English.

Page 950, § 8. The interrogative *what* sometimes has a quantitative secondary meaning: What garrison was captured with it (sc. Erzerum) is not yet known. *The Nation*, Vol. XVII, No. 21, 713b. (= Dutch Hoe groot het garnizoen was enz.)

Page 954, § 11, *a*), Note. In face of the fact that in almost all the sentences given above the form of the predicate depends on the real subject, this statement had better be withdrawn. The construction without *to do* may be regarded as an archaism.

Page 960, § 4, *b*. Further illustration of absolute *whose*: And so did Monica Thorne, his maiden sister, than *whose* no kinder heart glowed through all Barsetshire. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XLVII, 837.

Page 969, § 11, Obs. III. If the last of the quotations here given is split up into two co-ordinate sentences, it will be found that the second opens with *it*, i. e. with a pronoun representing a substantive clause implied in the context. See Ch. XXXII, § 21, *b*. It is not improbable that in sentences of this type *which* is the normal relative. Compare *De Drie Talen*, XXIV, 16.

Page 970, § 11, Obs. IV, Note *a*. This quotation may also be given as an instance of *which his* instead of *whose*. See page 959.

Page 970, 11, Obs. IV, Note *β*. The quotation from FIELDING is out of place here, the relative being the object of *to relate*.

Page 971, § 13. It might have been observed that the use of *what* to refer to a sentence or clause following appears to be always possible when *and* or another conjunctive precedes. Thus we could say: He practises his music incessantly, *and what* I am glad to hear, he is fond of music.

Page 973, § 14, *a*. In the quotation with *all what*, the clause introduced by *what* is a substantive clause, so that the preceding *all* is not the antecedent of *what*. In the following quotations, however, *what* introduces an adnominal clause, *that* being its antecedent. Sentences of this type seem to be on the increase in the latest English.

"Falsely true!" was *that what* the woman was who looked to the outside world as a mere pattern of all domestic virtues. Mrs. OLIPHANT, *Neighbours on the Green*. Mrs. Merridew's *Fortune*, Ch. III.

With terror in her heart Delia brought the fragment (sc. of the plan of a house) to the lamp and examined every word and line of it... *That what* she held was part of a general plan of the Monk Lawrence ground-floor. Mrs. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, II, Ch. XIV, 108.

Page 991, § 26, Obs. I. Also in other constructions the demonstrative *that* may cause *what* to be used instead of the condensed *that*: It isn't the

knowing of *that what* makes me at the present moment all of a tremble. PETT RIDGE, *The Eloquent Partner* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6963, 14a).

Page 993, § 26, Obs. VI. In the quotation here given some readers will, perhaps, consider *party* as the antecedent of *which*. If this view is taken, the sentence would afford an instance of an adnominal clause preceding the noun modified, a construction of which it would be difficult to find a parallel. Compare also: They had not travelled many miles before night overtook them, or met them, *which* you please. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, III, Ch. II, 134. The true interest of the time is ethical, or religious, — use *which word* you will. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

WENDT apprehends *which* as used in these two last quotations as an interrogative pronoun, but it seems difficult to assent to this view.

Page 1000, § 30, a) 2). Change this into: that the purely introductory *it is* (or *was*) could be struck out when the sentence is affirmative declarative, and the relative omitted is the subject. Thus the first of the sentences given above as types is practically equivalent to *Your brother told me this*. In the others the introductory phrases could, indeed, hardly be dispensed with, but we feel that the omission of the relative is justifiable, because it is usual in the first. This also applies to negative declarative sentences, such as *It is not the fine coat makes the fine gentleman*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2124.

Also the statement given under b) 2) wants rehandling. Read: that the word-group *is* (or *was*) *it* (*this* or *that*) may be dropped when the relative omitted is the subject, the omission being warranted by the laws of analogy when the relative is the object.

Page 1003, § 33. The quotations here given differ as to the grammatical relation of the relative to the predicates in the adnominal and the adverbial clause. In two of them, viz. that from SCOTT and that from TENNYSON, the relative belongs only to the adverbial clause, and it is, therefore, wrong to assume that in them a personal pronoun is omitted.

Page 1014. The repeated *at all* is not confined to Irish English. This appears from the numerous instances given by FIJN VAN DRAAT, in E. S., XLIII, 302.

Page 1015. The following idiomatic application of the pronoun *all* deserves recording: But her hair won't curl, *all* I can do with it. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 7.

Page 1044, § 18, Obs. VIII, β. Further illustration of *everything* being followed by *anything*: He does *everything and anything* he pleases. EL. GLYN; *The Point of View*, Ch. IV, 78.

Page 1050, § 18, Obs. XIV, a. Further illustration: He does not believe *any the most Comick* Genius can censure him for talking upon such a Subject. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 23, § 2.

Page 1054, § 20. Further illustration of adverbial *any* before *too*: The triumphant people haven't *any too* much food. Westm. Gaz., No. 7069, 6a.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 22.

Page 1066, § 34. Further illustration of redundant *both*: They *both* agreed in calling him an old screw. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 77.  
When it (sc. the fight) is over, you will see that we shall *both* be perfect friends. Id., Virg., Ch. LXXIII, 781.

Observe also: *Both* deceived one another. Rev. of Rev., No. 86, 80.  
*Both twain* shall come forth out of one land. Bible, Ezek., XXI, 19.

Page 1087. An instance of *everything* was *still* instead of the more usual *all* was *still* is afforded by: Towards evening, when *everything* was *still*, the same sound echoed through the empty halls. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 120).

Page 1097. Further illustration of *no few*: Not ignorant was the youth that still *no few* | Of his adventurous countrymen were led | By perseverance in this track of life | To competence and ease. WORDSWORTH, Excursion, I, 333.

Page 1101, Note a. The *little* here commented on is sometimes, although rarely, preceded by the intensive *very*: I suppose the learned author *very little* thinks that the facts... might be so arranged as to form a sort of appendix. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. I, 28.

Page 1102, § 72, Obs. III. Further illustration: There was silence *a little*. MRS. WARD, The Coryston Family, I, Ch. I, 11. (= *for a little*.)

Page 1106. The substantive *many* is used in the genitive in: That book in *many's* eyes doth share the glory. ROM. & JUL., I, 3, 91.

Page 1107, § 86, Obs. III. With the quotations here given compare the following: The Jahoos were the only animals in this country subject to any diseases, which, however, were *much fewer* than horses have among us. SWIFT, Gul., IV, Ch. VII, (203b).

There are about 228,000 coloured workers on the mines now. In 1903 there were *many less*. Daily News & Lead., No. 21003, 10e.

Page 1109, § 88. The distributive *many a* may be preceded by the exclamatory *how*: *How many a father*... admits with surprising frankness, "I have not the courage to educate my boy differently to his contemporaries"! The Nation, Vol. XVIII, No. 21, 729a.

Page 1109, § 88, s. v. *many a time and oft*. Instead of this also occasionally *oft and many a time*. Thus passim in STERNE, Sent. Journ., e. g.: Much grief of heart has it *oft and many a time* cost me. I, vii, 14.  
In truth, I seldom go abroad without it (sc. the snuff-box); and *oft and many a time* have I called up by it the courteous spirit of its owner to regulate my own, in the justlings of the world. I, xii, 23.

Compare also: That the poetic stimulus is the most powerful of all, is a truth that has been remarked *times and oft*. SMEATON, Tob. Smol., Ch. I, 9. (Famous Scots Series.)

Page 1116, § 96, Obs. IV. Further illustration of *much* in the sense of *at all*: Every one who is *much* read in Johnson will recall for himself other and perhaps better instances than these of his rare faculty of gathering together in one sentence some piece of the common stock of wisdom or observation. JOHN BAILEY, Johnson and his Circle, I, 35.

Page 1120, § 100, Obs. III. Further illustration: ii. All these facts *and more* I have read in history. FIELDING, Tom Jones, VIII, Ch. XIV, 162a.  
iii. From the standpoint of international law we are justified in doing this. *More*, it is our obvious duty to do so. The New Age, No. 1207, 612b.

Page 1124, § 107, b. Further illustration of *most* = *almost*: She's a widow lady, quite old *most* forty-five. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XIX, 181.



Before *like* the adverbial *most* may have the meaning of *in every way*. Thus in: Now could I, Casca, name to thee a man | *Most like* this dreadful night. *JUL. CÆS.*, I. 3. 73.

Within my tent his bones to-night shall lie, | *Most like* a soldier. *Id.*, V. 5. 79.

Page 1153. Of the application of conjoint *none* illustrated in the following quotation no further instances have come to hand: The Earl Rivers... left *none* any reason to doubt of the sincerity of her declaration. *JOHNSON, Savage.* (304).

Page 1165. Further illustration of *the one... the other* = the latter... the former: Poetry makes life what light and music do the stage — strip *the one* of the false embellishments and *the other* of its illusions, and what is there in either to live or to care for? *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. II, 23.

Page 1168. Further illustration of a preposition dividing *one* from *the other*: They stabbed *one* at *the other* desperately. *THACK., Henry Esq.*, III, Ch. VI, 343.

Page 1174. Before a relative the determinative *one* is sometimes omitted: The second (sc. assertion) imputes the evil to a cause in itself inevitable, and *which* has only incidentally and partially operated in producing it. *SOUTHEY, Es. Mor. and Pol.*, I, 331.

For ample illustration of this alleged misuse of language see *HODGSON, Errors.* 125—6.

Page 1182. Further illustration of *other* standing before a numeral: They were joined by *other two* officers. *SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. XVII, 190.

Page 1194, § 178, Obs. III, Note a. It is not necessary to assume the ellipsis of *some* or determinative *those* in the quotations from *POPE, BOSWELL* and *KEATS*, it being, at least, as plausible to understand the clauses introduced by *who* as substantive, i. e. to regard *who* as a condensed relative. Compare also the quotations given in Ch. XXXVI, 14, Obs. II, Note f, and the two first given in Ch. XL, 179, c, 1.

Page 1197, § 179, c, 1, Note. *Some* in the quotation from *SCOTT* differs from *some* in that from *TENNYSON*. In the former it is absolute and on a par with *some* in *some of these days*, referred to on page 1195; in the latter it is used substantively.

Page 1207. Further illustration of predicative *ample*: You gave me what you thought was *ample*. *Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower.* II Ch. XII, 44.

Page 1208. *Enough* and *sufficient* are sometimes used together, the combination having very much the same sense as *enough and to spare*: Of matter in these volumes there is *enough and sufficient* for hours of what the sage used to call "idleness". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7145, 15a.

Page 1213. An orderly arrangement would require the nouns mentioned in § 197 to be discussed before the pronouns mentioned in § 196.

Page 1225, bottom. It is not improbable that the numeral *one* is frequent enough before *hundred*, *thousand* and *million*, when another modifier precedes. The following is, however, the only instance that has come to hand at the moment of writing: *This one hundred and fifty pounds*, or whatever it may be — take it in round numbers — is nothing to you. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XLVII, 433.



Page 1227. Further illustration of *thousand thousand* as a variant of *million*: Of the *thousand thousand* other books... there will be nothing said here. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. V, 47.

Page 1230. Further illustration of *duck's egg* in the sense of *o*: The candidates of examinations who take the *duck's egg*. WHITEING, *Little People*, Ch. I, 8.

Page 1247, § 9, *a*. The pronominal character of *one* is sometimes rendered more explicit by *some* placed before it: Unless some one in a destroyer or a patrol-vessel takes up the task (sc. of describing a storm as seen on the high seas), *some one* of the hundreds of young officers who have had a daily battle with the elements ever since the first day of the war [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 7105, 10*a*.

Page 1311, § 38, *b*. Further illustration of adverbial *nothing*: The merry King, *nothing heeding* his dignity, any more than his company, laughed, quaffed and jested among the jolly band. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XLI, 436.

Page 1318, § 42, *a*. Sometimes also *the thing* is equivalent to the pers. pron. *it*. For illustration see page 780.

## INDEX.

---

In the notes the articles, whether definite or indefinite, have mostly been omitted.

The following list shows the expansion of the words abbreviated :

abs olute.	correl ation.	imper ative.
abs olutely.	correl ative(s).	incompl ete.
adj ective(s).	corresp onding.	indef inite.
abstr act.	corrob orative.	indic ate.
adnom inal(ly).	def inite.	indiv idual(s).
adv erb.	den oted.	individ ualizing.
adv erbial(ly).	den oting.	interrog ative.
affect ing.	deprec iative.	lang uage.
antec edent.	determ inative.	loc ution(s).
applic ation.	dial ect(s).	mas culine.
apprec iative.	dif ferent(ly).	mean ing(s).
approx imate(ly).	disp ensed.	mod ified.
approx imateness.	disp ensing.	mod ifier(s).
approx imating.	distrib utive(ly).	mod ifying.
art icle(s).	div ided.	neut er.
attrib utive(ly).	div iding.	not ion(s).
card inal.	drop ping.	num eral(s).
circumst ances.	elem ent(s).	obj ective.
clas sifying.	emph asis.	obs olete.
cl ause.	emphas ized.	occas ioning.
colloc ation(s).	emphas izing.	oppos ite.
col lective.	emph atic.	ord inal.
comb ination(s).	Eng lish.	part ially.
com mon.	equiv alent(s).	partic iple(s).
compar ative(s).	expr essed.	part itive.
comp ared.	expr essing.	per son(s).
comp ound.	expr ession(s).	per sonal.
conj oint(ly).	fem inine.	periphr astic.
con nection(s).	fol lowed.	plur al.
constr ucted.	form ing.	plur ale tant um.
constr uction(s).	funct ion(s).	pos ition(s).
constr ued.	gend er	pos itive.
cont aining.	gen eralizing.	pos sessive.
contr acted.	gen itive(s).	prec eded.
cop ula(s).	ger und(s).	prec eding.

pred icate.	reg ular.	superl ative.
pred icatively.	rep etition.	suppr essed.
pref ix(es).	repres entative(s).	termin ational.
pregn ant.	sent ence(s).	tot ally.
prep osition(s)	sim ilar.	ungram matical.
pron oun(s).	sing ular.	var iant(s).
pron ominal.	spec ial.	var iety.
prop er.	stat ement(s).	var ious.
qual ity.	subj ective.	var ying.
quest ion(s).	subord inate.	verb al.
ref erence(s).	subst antive(ly).	voc ative.
ref erred.	substit ute.	vulg ar.
ref erring.	substit uted.	
refl ective.	suf fix(es).	

- a** as pref. to form pred. adj. 361 *f*;  
 as worn-down form of Old Eng.  
 prep. *an* or *on*, 529 *f*;  
 instead of *he*, *she*, *it* or *I*, 707 *f*.  
**abandon** fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**abandonment** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**ab(b)at(t)is** unaltered for plur., 124.  
**abbess** anglicized foreign fem., 343.  
**Abbey** instead of *Abbey's*, 103.  
**abbot** prec. by def. art. and fol. by  
 prop. name, 650.  
**aborigines** as plur. tant., 170 *f*.  
**abound** in the sense of *abundance*, 1213.  
**about** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863;  
 in phrases den. regular recurrence  
 of phenomenon, 1081;  
 as var. of adv. *some*, 1197, 1233 *f*.  
**(ab)ove** how comp., 470.  
**absent** fol. by refl. pron., 840.  
**absolute use** of gen., 35, 97 *ff*;  
 of adj. and adnom. words generally;  
 364;  
 of superl., 510 *f*;  
 of compar., 511;  
 of def. art., 520.  
**abstract nouns** in plur., 240 *ff*;  
 taking the place of adj. den. class  
 of pers. in gen. way, 389;  
 taking the place of adj. den. qual.  
 in gen. way, 410 *ff*, 588;  
 in gen. sense rejecting def. art.,  
 410 *f*, 597 *ff*;  
 id. prec. by def. art., 599;  
 prec. by pos. pron. of 2nd or 3rd  
 pers., the comb. equiv. to pers.  
 pron., 780.  
**absurdity** prec. by def. art. instead  
 of *the absurd*, 412.  
**abundance** disp. with gen. art., 598;  
 partaking of the funct. of indef.  
 num., 660, 1213.  
**abuse** in col. sense, 244.  
**accents** as plur. tant. 186.  
**accept** drop. *it*, 739.  
**acclamations** as plur. tant., 175, 178.  
**accommodation** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**accomplishments** as plur. tant., 186.  
**accord** in *of one's own accord*, 818.  
**account** with or without art., 610, 667.  
**accounts** as plur. tant., 186.  
**accustomed** fol. by noun + *with* +  
 (pro)noun, 824.  
**accused** den. single indiv., 400.  
**ace** equiv. to *one*, 1299.  
**ache** in comp. with or without gen.  
 def. art., 600;  
 prec. by indef. art., 632.  
**acknowledge** not fol. by pron. *so*, 747  
 fol. by pron. *so much*, 779.  
**acquaintance** in var. applic., 265 *f*;  
 with or without def. art., 610 *f*.  
**acquire** fol. by *for* + refl. pron., 857.  
**acquirements** as plur. tant., 186.  
**acres** understood after num., 1238.  
**act** (*noun*) in adn. comp., 267.  
**act** (*verb*) fol. by gen. art. + noun, 398.

- actor and managers** disp. with art., 683.  
**actress**, 340.  
**Addison** used pred., 24.  
**address** fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**addresses** as plur. tant., 187.  
**adieu** two plur., 126.  
**adjectives** den. substances, 6, 360;  
 den. class of pers. used attrib.,  
 106, 389;  
 conv. into subst. used as plur. tant.,  
 159 *f*.  
 equiv. to specializing *of* + noun,  
 355 *f*.  
 equiv. to prep. + noun, 356;  
 equiv. to noun used as pred. adn.  
 adjunct 357;  
 used in obscure mean., 358;  
 form. comp. with partic., 358 *f*,  
 corresp. to noun in Dutch comp.,  
 359;  
 used attrib. or pred., 359 ff;  
 form. unit with its head-word or  
 not, 364;  
 used abs., conj. or subst., 364;  
 tot. or part. conv. into noun,  
 365 ff, 519;  
 equiv. to abstr. nouns, 386;  
 den. class of pers. in gen. way,  
 387 ff, 587, 1324 *f*,  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 389 *f*,  
 1275 ff, 1281, 1283 ff;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 390 ff,  
 1284 ff;  
 as voc., 392;  
 prec. by *the* after *to commit*, *to do*  
 or *to play*, 398, 588;  
 den. qual in gen. way, 406 ff, 587,  
 1324 *f*.  
 in pairs of opposites without any  
 mod., 421 ff;  
 after part. *of*, 422 *f*.  
 equiv. to gen., 536;  
 in groups of two divided by com-  
 mon head-word, 1284 *f*.  
 placed after prop-word *thing*, 1318;  
 in groups mod. one and the same  
 noun, 1325.  
**admiral** with or without def. art. and  
 fol. by prop. name, 649.  
**admiralty** constr. as sing or plur., 284.  
**admit** drop. it, 739.  
**adnominal modifiers** repeated or not  
 repeated, 1321 ff.  
**adnominal nouns** in com. case 1 ff,  
 1332;  
 fol. by *one*, 1275.  
**adnominal word-groups** before adj.  
 part. conv. into nouns, 388.  
**ado** in *much ado*, 111.  
**adored** den. single indiv., 400;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 403, 1276.  
**adulterant** tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
**adust** used attrib., 362.  
**advance** in col. sense, 244.  
**advances** as plur. tant., 187.  
**adventure** in col. sense, 246;  
 equiv. to *the adventurous*, 410.  
**adverbs** mod. pred. noun, 25;  
 mod. adj. part. conv. into noun, 389.  
 expr. qualified or emphasized assent  
 or dissent, 766 *f*.  
**adverbial word-groups** mod. adj. part.  
 conv. into nouns, 389.  
**advices** as plur. tant., 187.  
**æfre** Old Eng. repres. of *ever*, 1215.  
**æsthetics** as plur. tant., 161.  
**a few** in which *a* denotes an approxi-  
 mate value, 529;  
 den. quant., 1092;  
 in con. with *number* or *quantity*, 1092;  
 mod. by adj. 1095;  
 in *a good(ish) few*, 1095;  
 in *a very few*, 1095;  
 in *a comparatively few* = *compara-*  
*tively a few*, 1095;  
 used conj., abs. or subst., 1095;  
 equiv. to *a good bit* or *a little*,  
 1095 *f*.  
 in *not a few* (= *considerably*), 1095;  
 comp. with *few*, 1096 *f*.  
 in *not a few* = *no few*, 1097, 1350;  
 var. with *some few*, 1097;  
 comp. with *some*, 1193.  
 fol. by *less*, 1337.  
**affair** as prop-word, 1319.  
**affairs** as plur. tant., 187;  
 equiv. to indef. pron., 658, 1210.  
**aforsaid** not throwing out art., 564, 576.



- afford** with or without refl. pron., 856.  
**afraid** in *to be afraid so*, 743.  
**aft** as oppos. of *fore*, 461;  
 as pos. of *aftermost*, 467.  
**after** as compar. of *off*, 467 *f*;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863;  
 in *after a little*, 1102.  
**aftermost** superl. of *aft(er)*, 428, 467 *f*.  
**afternoon** in clas. gen., 92.  
**again** in *as long again* and sim. phrases,  
 1265;  
 in *once (and) again*, 1266;  
**against** in the sense of *as compared*  
*with*, 48 *f*, 808.  
**age** how stated, 94, 108.  
**age** den. personified abstraction, 294;  
 ref. to by neut. pron., 337.  
**agenda** as plur. tant., 171, 300.  
**agent-nouns** mod. by gen., 60;  
 mostly fem. as well as masc., 347;  
 of three kinds, 352.  
**agent** also fem., 347.  
**aggressive** tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
**ail** mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
**airs** as plur. tant., 187 *f*.  
**alarm** with or without art., 667 *f*.  
**alien** tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
**a little** comp. with *little*, 1096, 1102;  
 used conj., abs., subst. or adv., 1101;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1102;  
 equiv. to *a little way* (or *while*), 1102,  
 1350;  
 in *not a little* = *no little*, 1097;  
 var. with *some little*, 1103;  
 comp. with *some*, 1193.  
**alive** emphas. *any*, 1037.  
**all** (*indef. pron.*) + rel. *that* taking  
 plur. pred., 313;  
 antec. of *what*, 973;  
 antec. of *that* or *which*, 981, 1011;  
 comp. with *everything*, 1011, 1081 ff,  
 1350;  
 partly adv., 1011 *f*;  
 approxim. to *only*, 1011, 1082;  
 approxim. to *the only thing*, 1012,  
 1082;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1012, 1082;  
 den. pers., 1012;  
 in *above all*, 1012, 1021, 1088;  
 in *after all*, 1012, 1088;  
 in *at all*, 1013 *f*, 1037, 1043, 1061,  
 1088, 1106, 1128, 1310, 1315;  
 in *at all at all*, 1014, 1349;  
 in *for good (and all)*, 367, 1014, 1088;  
 in *in all*, 1014, 1088;  
 in *all in all*, 1014, 1088;  
 in *for all in all*, 1015, 1088;  
 in *for all he was worth*, 1015, 1088;  
 in *it was all he* (etc.) *could do + to +*  
*inf.*, 1012, 1015, 1088, 1122;  
 in *when all is done* (or *said*), 1015 *f*,  
 1088;  
 in *(after) all (is) said and done*, 1016;  
 in *and all* prec. by noun, 1016;  
 in *all that was + some adj.*, 1016;  
 in *all but* as comp. with *anything*  
*but* and *everything but*, 1016, 1088;  
 in *all to nothing*, 1017;  
 in *all to one*, 1017;  
 in comp., 1017;  
 used as noun, 1017, 1082;  
 approx. to *whatever*, 1349.  
**all** (*indef. num.*) before gen., 97;  
 in *at all costs*, 196, 1045;  
 in *by all (manner of) means*, 212,  
 1031, 1085;  
 mod. *manner*, 310, 1084;  
 used in gathering up, 316, 1085 *f*;  
 fol. by part. *of + adj. part. conv.*  
 into noun, 422;  
 fol. by adj., 424;  
 in *of all* prec. superl., 496;  
 in the construction called inclu-  
 sive superlative, 512, 1028.  
 in *of all other + noun, of all*  
*others, of all + noun + else*, 512;  
 occas. def. art. to be disp. with, 554 *f*;  
 fol. by cl. with art. suppr., 690;  
 as symbol of plur. after *you*, 718;  
 in con. with *so* in sent. expr.  
 identity of circumst., 770;  
 prec. pos. pron. before noun, 798 *f*,  
 803;  
 fol. pos. pron. before ger., 799 *f*;  
 div. from pos. pron., 800;  
 prec. by *of + pers. pron.*, 800;  
 fol. by *of + conj. pos. pron. + plur.*  
 noun, 800 *f*;

- fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron. 821;  
 fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825;  
 in *and all that*, 914;  
 in *for* (or *with*) *all that* (or *this*),  
 915, 1088;  
 before *such*, 939;  
 antec. of *who* or *that*, 981;  
 mod. subst. cl., 991;  
 after or before rel. pron., 1004 *f*,  
 1021;  
 fol. by *of* + conj. rel. pron., 1005;  
 fol. by *of* + subst. rel. pron., 1006;  
 comp. with *any*, 1018, 1045, 1082;  
 comp. with *every*, 1018, 1081 *ff*;  
 comp. with pron. *all*, 1019;  
 placed before or after noun with  
 all its mod., 1019 *f*;  
 equiv. to *all possible*, 1019;  
 div. from noun by pers. pron., 1020;  
 in *to pass all description*, 1020;  
 in *all the good in life*, 1020;  
 in *in* (or *of*) *all (reasonable)*  
*conscience*, 1020;  
 in *for all time*, 1020;  
 in *all the difference in the world*,  
 1020;  
 in *all the time* (= *however*), 1021;  
 in *all the way*, 1021;  
 in *all one day*, 1021;  
 in *all an April day*, 1021;  
 in *before* (or *above*) *all things*, 1021;  
 in *at all times*, 1021;  
 in *on all hands*, 1021;  
 in *all ways*, 1021;  
 placed after pers. pron., 1021;  
 placed before or after dem. pron.,  
 1021 *f*;  
 placed after interrog. *what*, 1021;  
 in *with it all* (= Dutch *met dat*  
*a*), 1021;  
 equiv. to *all of*, 1022;  
 in *all told*, 1022;  
 comp. with *everybody*, 1022, 1081 *ff*;  
 prec. by def. art., 1023;  
 more or less adv. in funct., 1023 *ff*,  
 1081;  
 in var. pos., 1023 *ff*, 1082;  
 before adv. adjunct cont. prep., 1023;  
 between cop. and nom. pred., 1023;  
 in the body of complex pred., 1023 *f*;  
 div. from *it*, 1023;  
 comp. with *whole*, 1024 *ff*;  
 implying exclusiveness, 1026, 1082;  
 in *of all* with superl., 1026 *f*;  
 in *of* (or *above*) *all things* (or *men*,  
 etc.) without superl., 1027 *f*;  
 in *of* (or *above* or *beyond*) *all others*  
 or *of all other* + plur. noun,  
 1028 *f*;  
 in *all and* (or *or*) *any*, 1029;  
 in *all and each*, 1029;  
 in *all and every*, 1029;  
 in *all and some*, 1030;  
 in *all and sundry*, 1030;  
 in *any and* (or *or*) *all*, 1030;  
 in *each and all*, 1030;  
 in *every one and all*, 1030;  
 in *one and all*, 1030;  
 in *(for) once (and) for all*, 1030 *f*;  
 in *for* (= notwithstanding) *all*, 1031;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1032;  
 in comp., 1032, 1082;  
 comp. with *any*, 1044 *ff*;  
 in *beyond all question, doubt*,  
*controversy*, etc., 1045;  
 in con. with *to deny, disclaim*,  
*renounce*, etc., 1045;  
 in *at all hazards*, 1045 *f*;  
 in *at* (or *until*) *all hours*, 1045 *f*;  
 in *in all places*, 1045 *f*;  
 in *in all weathers*, 1045 *f*;  
 weakly distrib., 1082 *f*;  
 before uncountables, 1033;  
 before countables, 1084;  
 in *all men* (= *everybody*), 1086;  
 in *all was still* and sim. phrases,  
 1087;  
 in *knows all about it* and sim.  
 phrases, 1088;  
 in *he carried all before him*, 1088;  
 mod. by *what(so)ever*, 1219 *f*;  
 in *all things* (= *everything*), 1320.  
**all** (*adv.*) mod. *the same*, 928, 1034;  
 in var. loc., 1032 *ff*;  
 in *all one*, 1033, 1248;  
 in *all other*, 1033;  
 in *all... as* (= *however*), 1033;  
 in *all at once*, 1033;

- in *all along*, 1033;  
 in *all over*, 1033;  
 in *all round*, 1033 *f*;  
 mod. adv. *as*, 1034;  
 mod. adv. *the*, 1034;  
 mod. intensive *too*, 1034;  
 in the mean. of *only*, 1034;  
 in the mean. of *quite*, 1034;  
 in the mean. of *as much as*;  
 as stop-gap, 1035;  
 in *all so*, 1035;  
 in *all soon*, 1035;  
 before verbal pref. *to*, 1035 *f*;  
 in comp., 1036.  
**all fours** as plur. tant., 154;  
**All-Hallows** id., 178.  
**alliance** mod. by gen., 63;  
 mod. by pos. pron., 790;  
 prec. by adj., 790;  
 fol. by *with* + (pro)noun, 790;  
**allow** drop. *it*, 739 *f*;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 855;  
**Almighty God (or Power)** with or  
 without art., 567;  
**almost** con. with neg., 1049 *f*;  
**alms** mistaken for plur., 136 *f*;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 136 *f*, 299 *f*.  
**all other** before gen., 97.  
**along** in *all along*, 1033.  
**Alp(s)** sometimes used in sing., 174;  
 sometimes constr. as sing., 174, 299 *f*.  
**also** in sent. expr. identity of circumst.  
 769.  
**alternate** in phrases den. reg. recur-  
 rence of phenomenon, 1079, 1081.  
**a man** as kind of indef. pron. with  
 or without determ. force, 325, 528,  
 729, 941, 1163, 1341.  
**a many** in which a den. approxim.  
 value, 529, 1110;  
 in *a good (or great) many*, 1110;  
 in *a pretty many*, 1110;  
 in *what a many*, 1110.  
 in *such a many*, 1110;  
 used conj., absol. or subst., 1110.  
**ambassadors** 340.  
**ambition** prec. by indef. art., 611.  
**amends** constr. as sing, 175, 178,  
 299 *f*.  
**American** form. comp. with partic.,  
 359.  
**among(st)** fol. by refl. pron., 860 *f*;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863;  
 fol. by refl. pron. or refl. pers.  
 pron., 864 *f*;  
 after *who*, 949;  
 fol. by *others* or *other* + plur. noun,  
 1181;  
 fol. by *the rest* or *the number*, 1181;  
 between two dif. card. num., 1232.  
**ample** in the funct. of indef. num.,  
 1205, 1207, 1351.  
**amusement** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**anaphoric**, 1273 *f*.  
**ancestress**, 340.  
**anchor** disp. with def. art., 531, 668.  
**ancients** as plur. tant., 164 *f*.  
**and** in specializing phrases, 914, 1285 *f*.  
 in *and (all) that* (= *etc.*), 914;  
 between units and tens, 1227;  
 between tens and units, 1228;  
 between hundreds and thousands,  
 1228;  
 disp. with. between hundreds and  
 tens, 1228;  
 in distrib. expr., 1232, 1243.  
**aneath** northern form for *beneath*, 466.  
**anecdote** in col. sense, 246 *f*.  
**angel** used pred., 23;  
 instead of *angel's*, 104 *f*;  
 ref. to by neut. pron., 328.  
**angling** used attrib., 18.  
*Anglo-Irish idioms*, 867.  
**Anglomane** used pred., 25.  
**animal** instead of *animal's*, 107;  
 ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**animals** thought of as pers. and their  
 names used in gen., 49.  
**annals** as plur. tant., 176, 178 *f*.  
**annates** id., 179.  
**annual** tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
**anointed** den. single indiv., 400.  
**another** con. with indef. *this*, 922, 1279;  
 before *such*, 939, 1179, 1295;  
 after *such*, 940, 1179;  
 after *many*, 1109;  
 in the mean. of *a further* or *an*  
*additional*, 1178 *f*;

- before num. + plur. noun, 1179 *f*;  
 in *another word or two*, 1179;  
 comp. with *one other* or *one more*,  
 1179;  
 in the mean. of *a second*, 1179;  
 in the mean. of *also* + pron. *one*,  
 1179;  
 replaced by *the other*, 1182;  
 in the sense of *another thing*, 1184;  
 in *or another*, 1167, 1184, 1190;  
 in *for one thing... for another...  
 for a third*, 1247;  
 disp. with. prop-word *one*, 1281;  
 in *another such one*, 1295.
- antelope** as unchanged plur., 251.
- anterior** equiv. to compar., 427.
- anthropophagi** as plur. tant., 171 *f*.
- antipathy** prec. by indef. art., 611.
- antipodes** as plur. tant., 172 *f*, 300.
- antlers** id., 188.
- anxious** in obj. or subj. mean., 363.
- any** var. with indef. art., 523, 1042;  
 fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur.  
 noun, 800 *f*;  
 before *the same*, 928, 1051;  
 before *such*, 939;  
 in *in any way*, 1014;  
 in *in any degree*, 1014;  
 in *all and (or or) any*, 1029;  
 in *any and (or or) all*, 1030;  
 as indef. pron. 1036 ff, 1203;  
 mod. by *what(so)ever*, 1036, 1219 *f*;  
 as indef. adv. 1036, 1054, 1203;  
 fol. by superl., 1037, 1050, 1349;  
 apprec. or deprec., 1037 ff, 1058,  
 1059;  
 in *any amount (or number)*, 1038,  
 1059 *f*;  
 in *any time* 1038, 1059 *f*;  
 in *any length (of time)* 1038;  
 fol. by intensive adj. 1039;  
 equiv. to *what, what(so)ever, the  
 least, the faintest, the slightest,  
 the smallest, ever a(n), e're a(n),  
 a blessed, created, (an) earthly,  
 living, mortal*, 1040 *f*;  
 used to make a sweeping neg., 1041;  
 after superl. 1042;  
 after *only* or *all*, 1042;
- after *as* or *than*, 1042;  
 implying contingency or doubt,  
 1043, 1044 *f*;  
 in questions, 1043;  
 in cond. or conc. cl., 1043;  
 con. with *not*, the comb. var. with  
*no*, 1044, 1059;  
 comp. with *every* and *all*, 1044 ff;  
 in *any and every*, 1047 *f*;  
 used catachrestically instead of *all*  
 after a superl., 1048;  
 in *of any* + sing. noun (+ *else*) =  
*of all* + plur. noun (+ *else*), 1029,  
 1048;  
 disp. with *other*, 1049;  
 con. with *hardly* or *scarcely*, 1049;  
 suppr. in Early Mod. Eng., 1050;  
 used conj., 1051, 1057 ff;  
 div. from its head-word, 1051;  
 fol. by num. *one*, 1051, 1298;  
 used abs., 1051 *f*, 1058, 1059;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1051 *f*, 1059;  
 var. with num. *one*, 1052, 1059;  
 used subst., 1052 ff, 1058;  
 when fol. by *more* var. with *anything*,  
 1054;  
 mod. compar., 1054, 1060;  
 mod. adv. *the*, 1054, 1060, 1159;  
 in *(any) more than*, 1054, 1121;  
 mod. *too*, 1055, 1349;  
 mod. *otherwise*, 1055;  
 used with ref. to two, 1074;  
 mod. *otherwise*, 1186;  
 comp. with *some*, 1203 ff;  
 fol. by num. *one*, 1251, 1253 *f*;  
 fol. by *single*, 1251;  
 fol. by *two*, 1251;  
 in *any one other* + noun, 1252;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1280,  
 1298.
- anybody** ref. to by plur. pron.  
 310 ff.  
 var. with *whom(so)ever*, 1040;  
 equiv. to *mortal*, 1041;  
 equiv. to *heart*, 1041, 1345;  
 var. with *any one*, 1055, 1301 *f*;  
 in gen., 1272;  
 conv. into pure noun, 1303;  
 as quasi-prop. name, 1303.



- anyhow** comp. with *at all events*, 1046, 1056;  
 in var. mean., 1055;  
 deprec., 1055.
- any one** ref. to by plur. pron., 310 ff;  
 var. with subst. *any*, 1052 ff, 1280;  
 var. with *anybody*, 1055, 1301 f;  
 in gen., 1272.
- anything** fol. by cl. with art. suppr., 690;  
 fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825;  
 antec. of *that* or *which*, 981 f;  
 in *anything but* as comp. with *all but*, 1016;  
 in *before anything* (= *above all (things)*), 1021;  
 in *more than anything else* (= *above all (things)*), 1021;  
 comp. with *what* or *what(so)ever*, 1040;  
 comp. with *everything*, 1044, 1349;  
 var. with *ought* (or *ought*), 1060;  
 as comp. of the prop-word *thing*, 1307;  
 in *as* + adj. + *as anything*, 1308;  
 in *like anything*, 1368;  
 in *anything between*, 1308;  
 in *for anything I can tell* and var., 1308;  
 in *beyond anything*, 1308;  
 fol. by *of*, 1308;  
 den. pers., 1309;  
 as adv., 1310;  
 equiv. to *at all*, 1310;  
 mod. *like*, 1310;  
 mod. *much*, 1310;  
 conv. into noun, 1315;  
 in *anything else* as subst. word-group, 1317;  
 in *anything of the kind*, 1319.
- any way** comp. with *at all events*, 1046, 1056;  
 in var. mean., 1056;  
 var. with *in any way*, 1056.
- any ways** vulgar equiv. of *any way*, 1056.
- anywhen** = *at any time*, 1057.
- anywhere** = *in (to or into) any place*, 1057;  
 used in stating approx. value, 1057.
- anywhither** = *in any direction whatever*, 1057.
- any wise** var. of *any way(s)*, 1057;  
 var. with *in any wise*, 1057.
- ἀπὸ κοινού*, 993.
- apparition** ref. to by neut. or masc. pron., 328.
- appearance** prec. by indef. art., 611;  
 in *to make (one's) appearance*, 811.
- appearances** as plur. tant., 188;  
 partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 659.
- appendix** two plur., 126.
- a person** equiv. to indef. pron. with or without determ. force, 325, 1163.
- appetite** with or without indef. art.,
- apply** with or without refl. pron., 845 f, 1346.
- appointment** mod. by obj. gen., 61;  
 with spec. mean. in plur., 188.
- appropriate** with or without *to* + refl. pron., 858.
- April(s)** used attrib., 110.
- aptitude** with or without indef. art., 611.
- aptness** id., 611.
- aquiline** part. conv. into noun, 409.
- arbitress**, 351.
- arcana** as plur. tant., 171 f, 300.
- Archduke** with or without art. before prop. name, 651.
- archives** as plur. tant., 176, 179.
- aristocracy** constr. as plur., 284;  
 prec. by gen. art., 590, 592.
- arm** in gen., 54, 69.
- arms** as plur. tant., 176, 179;  
 without art., 668.
- army** constr. as sing. or plur., 284;  
 constr. partly as sing. partly as plur., 297.
- arrears** as plur. tant., 176, 179 f.
- arrogate** with or without *to* + refl. pron., 858.
- Art** disp. with gen. art., 598.
- article** as individualizer, 274.
- articles** as plur. tant., 188.
- artillery** constr. as plur., 284.
- artist** also fem., 347.
- as** (*conj.*) before pred. adn. adjuncts with or without indef. art., 644 ff;

- in certain loc., 646;  
 as var. of pred. rel. *that*, 647, 964;  
 as var. of pred. rel. *which*, 963 *f*,  
 976;  
 fol. by noun disp. with art., 690;  
 fol. by nom. or obj., 712 *ff*;  
 instead of rel. pron., 729;  
 in *as he said this (it)*, 745;  
 fol. by dem. pron., 905;  
 fol. by *such*, 936 *f*.  
**as** (*adv.*) as var. of *like* before pred.  
 noun fol. by conj. *as*, 964 *f*;  
 mod. by *all*, 1034;  
 mod. by num. of repet., 1264;  
 fol. by adj. + *a one*, 1292.  
**as** (*rel. pron.*) now used only in  
 dial. and vulg. lang., 984 *f*.  
**as for** in *as for me* (or *us*), 817.  
**ash** in comp., 268.  
**ashamed** used attrib., 362;  
 in *to be ashamed*, 843.  
**ashen** used attrib., 8, 9, 11;  
 used pred., 360.  
**ashes** as plur. tant., 154 *f*.  
**ashy** equiv. to *ashen*, 12.  
**ask** drop. *it*, 735, 740;  
 fol. by *it*, 740;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 856.  
**as much** equiv. to pers. pron., 778 *ff*,  
 1114;  
 equiv. to *the same*, 931.  
**assassination** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**assembly** constr. as sing. or plur., 284.  
**assets** as plur. tant., 138 *f*.  
**assizes** as plur. tant., 188 *f*.  
**associate** fol. by refl. pron., 843;  
 equiv. to *to be associated*, 856.  
**association** constr. as sing., 284.  
**assume** fol. by *the* + adj. part conv.  
 into noun, 1338;  
 fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857.  
**assure** in *to be assured*, 843.  
**astrigent** tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
**as well as** in contr. sent. with pred.  
 in sing. or plur., 318.  
**asyndetic connection** furthering  
 repet. of adn. mod., 1324, 1325.  
**at** before subst. gen., 36 *f*;  
 as subst. for gen., 83;  
 before cert. adj. part. conv. into  
 nouns, 417 *f*;  
 before superl. whether or not. prec.  
 by *the* or pos. pron., 497 *ff*;  
 in var. expr. in which it is fol. by  
 indef. art. or num. *one*, + noun,  
 525 *f*;  
 repres. Mid. Eng. *atte*, Old Eng.  
*at þe*, 679;  
 in *at these (late) years*, 912;  
 in *at that*, 914 *f*;  
 in *at some time (day, period, moment*  
*or date) (or other)*, 1191 *f*.  
**attach** drop. refl. pron., 844.  
**attached** implying recipr. not., 1071.  
**attachment** prec. by indef. art., 611.  
**attainments** as plur. tant., 189.  
**attorney general** plur. of, 142.  
**attraction** causing ungrammatical  
 const., 306 *f*, 312, 709 *f*.  
**attributive adj.**, 359 *f*.  
**attributive nouns**, 1 *ff*;  
 in the degrees of comp., 2;  
 mod. by adv., 2;  
 standing adnom. after comp. of  
*thing*, 2.  
**auction** disp. with art., 539.  
**audience** constr. as sing. or plur., 284;  
 with or without indef. art., 612.  
**ought** fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*, 1061;  
 var. with *anything*, 1160;  
 in the mean. of *anybody* or *somebody*,  
 1060;  
 in *for ought I know* (or *care*, etc.),  
 1061;  
 as adv., 1061.  
**aunt** fol. by prop. name prec. by def.  
 art., 1343.  
**auspices** as plur. tant., 176, 180.  
**Australian** in *Australian-born*, 412.  
**author** also fem., 352;  
 in *the author* indic. first pers., 881.  
**authoress**, 341.  
**authority** in *on his own* (etc.) *authority*,  
 866.  
**auxiliaries** as plur. tant., 189.  
**automaton** two plur., 126.  
**autumn(s)** used attrib., 109 *f*;  
 disp. with art., 547 *f*, 605 *f*.

- avail** fol. by refl. pron., 838;  
 mod. by *what*, 954;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
**average** in *on (at) an (the average)*, 698.  
**aversion** prec. by indef. art., 612.  
**avow** fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**awe** with or without indef. art., 612.  
**azurn** as material adj., 10.  
  
**baby** in periphr. compar., 2;  
 used attrib., 18;  
 instead of *baby's*, 105;  
 ref. to by pron. of dif. gen., 326 *f*;  
 disp. with def. art., 552;  
 antec. of var. rel. pron., 974.  
**bachelor** insted of *bachelor's* 105.  
**back** (*noun*) fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795.  
**back** (*adv.*) in phrases den. a period, 910.  
**backbone** comp. with *back bone*, 22.  
**bad** part. conv. into noun, 407, 424;  
 how comp., 430.  
**baddeſt** obs. comparat. of *bad*, 430.  
**baddeſt** obs. superlat. of *bad*, 430.  
**badly** how comp., 430.  
**badger** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**badly** used as pred. adj., 362.  
**bad manners** used pred., 24.  
**bag and baggage** disp. with art., 682.  
**bagpipes** prec. by indef. art., 1336.  
**Bahama** var. with *the Bahamas*, 570.  
**baize** originally plur., 140.  
**bald** tot. conv. into noun, 368, 383.  
**Balkans** as plur. tant., 174.  
**ball** in col. sense, 247.  
**ballet** disp. with def. art., 666.  
**balusters** as plur. tant., 189.  
**bandit** two plur., 129 *ff*;  
 in subst. comp., 145.  
**bands** as plur. tant., 189.  
**banishment** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**Bank** in gen., 51.  
**bank** (*mound*) disp. with art., 668.  
**bankrupt** with or without indef. art., 642.  
**ban(n)isters** as plur. tant., 189 *f*.  
**banns** id., 108.  
**banquet** disp. with def. art., 543 *f*.  
**bar** in col. sense prec. by gen. art., 590.  
  
**Barbado(e)s** with or without art., 570.  
**barbarian** tot. conv. into noun, 369;  
 disp. with gen. art., 592.  
**barky** equiv. to material adj., 12.  
**barnacles** as plur. tant., 149.  
**Baron** with or without art. before  
 prop. name, 651.  
**Baroness** id., 651 *f*.  
**barracks** as plur. tant., 178, 181, 300.  
**base-born** tot. conv. into noun, 403.  
**basin** prec. by prop. name retaining  
 art., 584.  
**bathe** in *to be bathed*, 843.  
**battle** disp. with def. art., 668 *f*.  
**battle royal** plur. of, 142.  
**Bavarian** den. qual., 357.  
**bay** prec. by prop. name disp. with  
 art., 584.  
**bays** as plur. tant., 190.  
**be** with or without pron. *so*, 752 *ff*, 762;  
 after *can*, *may*, etc., 762;  
 in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;  
 in sent. expr. identity of circumst.,  
 768 *ff*;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirm. or  
 denial, 771 *ff*;  
 understood together with rel. pron.,  
 1002.  
**be afraid** fol. by pron. *so*, 743.  
**beads** as plur. tant., 190.  
**bear** (*noun*) as unchanged plur., 751.  
**bear** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**bearings** as plur. tant., 157 *f*.  
**beats** understood after num., 1239.  
**beau** two plur., 126.  
**beaver** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**because** after *the* + compar., 505 *f*.  
**bed** in gen., 54 *f*;  
 instead of *bed's*, 103;  
 disp. with art., 539.  
**beech** in col. sense, 246.  
**beechen** used attrib., 11.  
**beef** plur. of, 116 *f*.  
**bees** in var. loc., 810.  
**before** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863.  
**before-mentioned** not throwing out  
 the art., 564, 576.  
**beggar** used attrib., 5, 16.  
**beginnings** as plur. tant., 190.

- Begum** with def. art. before prop. name, 652.
- behave** with or without refl. pron., 846.
- behind** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863.
- believe** fol. by pron. *so*, 743;  
prec. by pron. *so*, 745;  
fol. by *it* (or *that*), 745;  
fol. by incomp. cl., 748.
- belle** as half-naturalized alien, 345.
- bellow** in sing., 1335.
- bellows** as plur. tant., 148 *f*, 299 *f*;  
in comp., 267.
- belongings** as plur. tant., 158.
- belonged** den. single indiv., 392, 403, 1337;  
tot. conv. into noun, 403;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 403, 1276;
- below** fol. by refl. pron., 872.
- bemean** fol. by refl. pron., 840
- (be)neath** how comp., 466 *f*;  
fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863.
- benefactress**, 341.
- Bengal** used attrib., 6.
- bereaved** den. single indiv., 400;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 403, 1276.
- Bermuda** var. with *the Bermudas*, 570.
- beside** fol. by emph. refl. pron., 872.
- best** part. conv. into noun, 410, 413 *f*, 419 *f*;  
as superl. of *good* or *well*, 430 *f*;  
in *the best* (= *greatest*) part, 431;  
in *best abused* (= *most abused*), 432;  
as part. of comp. superl., 487 *f*;  
in *the best part*, 492 *f*;  
in *at (the) best*, 498, 679;  
with or without prop-word *one*, 1276, 1286.
- bestir** fol. by refl. pron., 840.
- bet** obs. comp. of *good* or *well*, 430 *f*.
- betake** fol. by refl. pron., 840 *f*.
- bethink** fol. by refl. pron., 841;  
fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.
- better** part. conv. into noun, 407, 424;  
as compar. of *good* or *well*, 430 *f*;  
in the sense of *more*, *longer* or *greater*, 431.  
in cert. loc., 431;  
as part of comp. compar., 487 *f*;  
in *the better part* (or *end*), 492;  
in *no better than he* (or *she*) *should be*, 1142;  
disp. with prop-word *one*, 1287.
- better** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 838.
- bettermost** as col. superl., 431, 1338.
- better(s)** as plur. tant., 165, 300;  
as adj. tot. conv. into noun, 365, 377, 1337.
- between** in *between you and I*, 722, 1345;  
fol. by refl. pron., 860 *f*.  
fol. by refl. pron. or refl. pers. pron., 864 *f*.
- beware** equiv. to Dutch refl. verb, 843.
- beyond** in *beyond (a) doubt* (or *question*), 691.
- Bible** disp. with art., 568.
- big** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.
- bigger** disp. with prop-word *one*, 1287.
- bilboes** as plur. tant., 149.
- bill** prec. by prop. name disp. with def. art., 585.
- billiard** in comp., 268.
- billiards** as plur. tant., 154.
- billy-goat**, 351.
- birchen**, 6, 11.
- bird** ref. to by masc. pron., 330;  
in *like one bird*, 527.
- birdie** disp. with art., 552.
- bishop** in clas. gen., 92.
- bishopess** as sportive formation, 342.
- bison** as unchanged plur., 251.
- bit** as individualizer, 274;  
in *a bit* prec. by neg., 1151, 1159.
- bitch** used to indic. sex, 350.
- bite** prec. by indef. art., 608.
- bitter** tot. conv. into noun, 379, 424.
- bitters** as plur. tant., 165, 167.
- black** tot. conv. into noun, 379 *f*.
- blacks** as plur. tant., 165, 167.
- blackbird** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.
- blaze** prec. by indef. art., 612.
- blessed** prec. by indef. art. equiv. to *any*, 1041.
- blind** part. conv. into noun, 365, 406.
- blindman's buff**, 48.
- blindman's holiday**, 48.
- bloater** not an unchanged plur., 255.
- block** with or without def. art., 669.



- blockhead** used pred., 25.  
**blossom** unaltered for plur., 264.  
**blow** in *at one blow*, 525 *f*.  
**blowing-up** plur. of, 143.  
**blues** as plur. tant., 152, 165, 167;  
     tot. conv. into noun, 379 *f*.  
**blue-devils** as plur. tant., 152.  
**blush** in *at (or on) (the) first blush*,  
     669, 1334.  
**boar** as unchanged plur., 251;  
     used to indic. sec., 350.  
**board** constr. as sing. or plur., 284 *f*;  
     constr., first as sing. then as plur.,  
     298.  
**board** (*shipboard*) disp. with art., 669.  
**boards** as plur. tant., 190.  
**boast** in *to make a boast of + ger.*, 647.  
**boat** in gen., 54 *f*;  
     instead of *boat's*, 103.  
**bodice** originally a plur., 140.  
**body** as individualizer, 274;  
     in *in a body*, 525;  
     in *body and bones* and sim. colloc.,  
     682 *f*;  
     fol. by *of + pers. pron.*, 781;  
     in *a body* in the funct. of indef.  
     pron., 1210;  
     as prop-word, 1272, 1301 *ff*;  
     var. with prop-word *one*, 1301 *f*.  
**Boer** used attrib., 17.  
**boiled** in the sense of *boiled beef*, 365.  
**bond** equiv. to adj. tot. conv. into  
     noun, 1337.  
**bonds** as plur. tant., 190.  
**bones** in *to make bones about (of)*,  
     223.  
**booby** used attrib., 13.  
**book** ref. to by masc. pron., 338;  
     disp. with def. art., 669.  
**Book** in the meaning of *Bible*, 565.  
**books** in *to be (keep) in (on) a man's*  
     (*good*) *books*, 233.  
**book-price** current plur. of, 142.  
**Boots** as plur. tant., 190 *f*;  
     disp. with art., 551 *f*.  
**boot** (*good, advantage*) with or with-  
     out def. art., 669.  
**bore** (*to weary*) fol. by refl. pron.,  
     842.  
**bore** (*to make a hole*) fol. by refl.  
     pron., 856.  
**bosomest** as superl. of a noun, 2.  
**both** before gen., 97;  
     occasioning def. art. to be disp.  
     with, 555;  
     as var. of (*the*) *one and the other*,  
     562, 1165;  
     in connection with *so* in sent. expr.  
     identity of circumstances, 770;  
     before pos. pron., 798 *f*, 803, 1346;  
     after pos. pron., 799 *f*;  
     divided from pos. pron., 800;  
     fol. by *of + pers. pron.*, 800;  
     fol. by rel. pron., 1004;  
     fol. by *of + conj. rel. pron.*, 1005;  
     fol. by *of + subst. rel. pron.*, 1006;  
     in gen., 1061;  
     comp. with (*the*) *two*, 1061;  
     as conjunctive, 1061, 1065;  
     used conjointly, 1062;  
     more or less adv. in function, 1062,  
     1064;  
     in var. pos. 1062 *f*, 1064 *f*;  
     in *both ways*, 1063;  
     in *to make both end meet*, 1063;  
     in *both they* (= *they together*), 1063;  
     used absolutely, 1063;  
     fol. by part. *of*, 1064;  
     used substantively, 1064;  
     placed between *to* and infin., 1066;  
     redundant, 1066, 1350;  
     in *both of the two*, 1066;  
     con. with *either* in recipr. comb.,  
     1070;  
     comp. with *each* and *either*, 1073.  
**bottom** disp. with def. art., 669, 1344.  
**boun** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.  
**bound** in *at a (or one) bound*, 525 *f*.  
**bounds** in cert. loc., 178, 180, 1131.  
**bout** as individualizer, 264.  
**bowels** as plur. tant., 151.  
**boy** used attrib., 13;  
     in clas. gen., 90;  
     instead of *boy's*, 105;  
     used to indic. sex, 349.  
     disp. with def. art., 1341.  
**boy's** equiv. to *boyish*, 89.  
**brace** unaltered for plur., 257 *f*;

- brain** comp. with *brains*, 191 *ff*;  
     in *to have on the brain*, 810.  
**brave** tot. conv. into noun, 383 *f*;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**brazen** used attrib., 8, 9, 11;  
     used pred., 360.  
**Brazil** used attrib., 17;  
     now used instead of *the Brazils*, 569.  
**Brazils** as plur. tant., 174.  
**break** in imper. fol. by *thee*, 864;  
**breakers** as plur. tant., 193;  
**breakfast** disp. with def. art., 543 *ff*.  
**breaking-up** plur. of, 143.  
**break of day** disp. with def. art.,  
     546.  
**break-stress**, 984.  
**breath** in *in a breath*, 525;  
     in *in the same (or selfsame) breath*,  
     527;  
     with or without indef. art., 612.  
**breathe** fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**breeches** as plur. tant., 148 *f*.  
**breeks** instead of *breeches*, 1335.  
**brethren** comp. with *brothers*, 132 *ff*.  
**bridal** constr. as plur., 285.  
**bridals** as plur. tant., 160,  
**bridegroom** formed from *bride*, 345.  
**bridesmaid**, **bridesman** with unhisto-  
     rics, 104.  
**brief** in *in brief*, 417.  
**brilliant** tot. conv. into noun, 365.  
**broomstick** mod. by *most*, 1332.  
**brother** used attrib., 16;  
     plur. of 120, 132 *ff*;  
     after prop. name, 147;  
     disp. with def. art., or pos. pron., 815.  
**brother's son (or daughter)** equiv. to  
     *nephew (or niece)*, 48.  
**brow and crown** disp. with def. art.,  
     683.  
**brows** as plur. tant., 193.  
**Bruce** prec. by def. art., 570 *f*.  
**brute** prec. by def. art. in col. sense,  
     243.  
**bubble** used attrib., 14.  
**buck** as unchanged plur., 251 *f*;  
     used to indic. sex, 350.  
**buckram** used attrib., 14.  
**budget** used pred., 23.  
**Buenos Ayres** with or without art.,  
     569.  
**buffalo** as unchanged plur., 251 *f*.  
**bugbear** used attrib., 14.  
**bulk** constr. as sing. or plur., 285;  
     disp. with def. art., 669, 1344.  
**bull** used attrib., 17;  
     used to indic. sex, 350.  
**bullfinch** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**burial** from a supposed plur., 138.  
**business** in periphr. compar., 2;  
     in col. sense, 244 *f*;  
     fol. by *of* + noun with indef. art.,  
     635;  
     in *that is none of your (or his etc.)*  
     *business*, 1156.  
**bust** fol. by *of*, 81.  
**busy (verb)** fol. by refl. pron., 841.  
**but** fol. by nom. or obj., 710 *f*;  
     in *but what*, 989;  
     in *but (a) few*, 1096;  
     in *but (a) little*, 1102;  
     after *otherwise*, 1186.  
**butterfly** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**Buttons** disp. with art., 551.  
**buzz** prec. by indef. art., 612.  
**by** as subst. for gen., 83;  
     in expres. den. the measure of excess  
     or inferiority, 507;  
     in *by far, by a long chalk, by*  
     *(long) chalks, by all odds*, 508 *f*.  
     before nouns den. means of trans-  
     mission or conveyance, 684 *f*;  
     fol. by emph. refl. pron. 872;  
     in *by this time*, 912;  
     in distrib., expres., 1232, 1243.  
**bygones** as plur. tant., 167.  
**cabby** disp. with art., 550.  
**cabinet** constr., as sing. or a plur.,  
     285.  
**calends** as plur. tant., 172.  
**calif** with def. art. before prop. name,  
     652.  
**call** in *at (or within) call*, 811.  
**calling-over** plur. of, 143.  
**Camaroons** as plur. tant., 174.  
**camp** constr. as sing., 285;  
     disp. with def. art., 539.

- can** with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 760 ff;  
 with or without *do* or *be*, 762 f;  
 in corrob. sent., 764 ff;  
 in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 ff;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial etc., 771 ff;  
 in sent. or cl. with *any*, 1043 f;  
 in *it is all* (or *as much*) *as I* (etc.) *can*, 1012, 1113.
- Canadian** form. comp. with part., 359.
- Canaries** as plur. tant., 174.
- cannon** as unchanged plur., 256, 282.
- canonicals** as plur. tant., 161.
- capacity** with or without indef. art., 612 f;  
 fol. by *of* + noun with indef. art., 635.
- Cape** before prop. name disp. with def. art., 586.
- Cape Colony** with or without def. art., 580.
- capital company** used pred., 24.
- capital** id., 28;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- Carrac(e)as** with or without def. art., 569.
- cardinal** with or without def. art. and fol. by prop. name, 649.
- cardinal numeral** mod. by num. of repet. constr. as sing. or plur., 301;  
 fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur. noun, 801 f;  
 used conj., absol., subst., pred. or abstractly, 1230 ff;  
 in distr. comb., 1232, 1242 f;  
 in comb. den. ratio of frequency, 1232 f;  
 in comb. den. approximateness, 1233 f;  
 fol. by *of* in var. idioms, 1234 f;  
 with head-word understood, 1235 ff;  
 den. pers. of certain age, 1237;  
 as pure nouns, 1241 ff;  
 as basis of numeric system, 1242;  
 as name of digit or figure, 1246;  
 as pure adj., 1246;  
 instead of ord. num., 1246 f.
- cards** as plur. tant., 154, 193.
- care** (*noun*) with or without indef. art., 613.
- care** (*verb*) mod. by *what*, 954;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1311.
- careful** in obj. and subj. mean., 363.
- careless** id., 363.
- caressed** den. single indiv., 400.
- Carnival** disp. with def. art., 547 f.
- carriage** in *carriage-and-pair* and sim. comb., 1238, 1335.
- carry** fol. by refl. pron., 839;  
 in *to carry all before one*, 1088.
- cartridge** in col. sense, 247.
- case** in *in any case*, 1046.
- caste** in *to lose (renounce) (one's) caste*, 811.
- cast-off** tot. conv. into noun, 385.
- casual** id., 369.
- cat** in clas. gen., 90, 1334;  
 ref. to by neut. or fem. pron., 329 f.
- cat-and-dog** used attrib., 107.
- cates** as plur. tant., 180.
- Catholic** used pred., 28.
- Catholicism** disp. with gen. art., 592.
- cattle** prec. by num., 281.  
 constr. as sing. or num., 295.
- cavalry** prec. by num., 282;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 285.
- cedarn** as attrib. adj., 11.
- centre** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795.
- centremost** as superl. of noun, 2.
- century** equiv. to *100*, 1230.
- ceremonial** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- ceremony** in col. sense.
- certain** comp. with determ. *that* (or *those*), 919;  
 var. with *some*, 1192;  
 in the funct. of indef. pron. 1205 f, 1213.
- certainty** prec. by indef. art., 613.
- Ceylon** used attrib., 6, 17.
- chains** as plur. tant., 149, 194.
- chairwoman** var. with *chairman*, 347.
- Chamberlain** used attrib., 17.
- chambermaid** disp. with def. art. 1341.
- chambers** prec. by indef. art., 300.
- chamois** unaltered for plur., 124.

- chance** used attrib., 1, 3, 18;  
 in *the chances are*, 233;  
 disp. with gen. art. when den.  
 personified abstraction, 598.  
 with or without indef. art., 613;  
 with def. or indef. art., 694 *f*, 1345.
- change** with or without indef. art., 613;  
 in *for a change*, 698.
- Channel** with or without def. art., 565,  
 1344.  
 prec. by prop. name retaining art.,  
 584.
- channel** disp. with def. art., 669.
- chap** in *a chap* partaking of funct.  
 of indef. pron., 1212.
- chapel** used pred., 23;  
 disp. with art., 539.
- chaps** equiv. to indef. pron., 657, 1209.
- chapter and verse** disp. with art., 693.
- character** fol. by *of* + noun with or  
 without indef. art., 635;  
 in *in* (or *out of*) *character*, 669 *f*.
- charge** in *at a charge of*, 694.
- charges** as plur. tant., 194.
- chase** with or without gen. art., 601.
- chattels** as plur. tant., 194;  
 in comp., 268.
- cheers** as plur. tant., 194.
- cherub** plur. of, 129 *f*.
- chess** originally a plur., 140.
- chestnut** used attrib., 15;  
 instead of *chestnut's*, 103.
- chevalier** with def. art. before prop.  
 name, 1343.
- chicken** felt as plur., 139.
- chick** in var. applications, 139.
- chick** (*name of a fish*) not an un-  
 changed plur., 255.
- chief** understood as pure adj., 3, 27;  
 as adj. part. conv. into noun, 415;  
 in *the chief part*, 493;  
 disp. with art., 561.
- chiefest** as superl. of noun, 3, 26;  
 with redundant suf., 491.
- child** in clas. gen., 91 *f*;  
 plur. of, 120;  
 ref. to by pron. of dif. gend., 326 *f*;  
 equiv. to adj. den. qual. in gen.  
 way, 410;  
 with def. art. before prop. name, 657;  
 antec. of var. rel. pron., 974;  
 understood after ord. num., 1257.
- Childe** before prop. name, 650.
- childhood** constr. as sing., 285;  
 disp. with gen. art., 592.
- childish** admitting of two interpreta-  
 tions, 357.
- children** in clas. gen., 92;  
 understood after num., 1239.
- chill** prec. by indef. art., 613.
- chills** as plur. tant., 152.
- China** used attrib., 1, 17, 18.
- Chinaman** instead of *Chinese*, 123, 1335.
- Chinee** new-formed sing., 123, 140.
- choice** understood as pure adj., 3, 27;  
 used pred., 23, 25;  
 in *from one's own choice*, 818.
- choicer** as comp. of subst., 1332.
- choicest** as superl. of subst., 3, 27.
- choose** with or without *to do so* (or  
*it*), or *to be so*, 761 *f*;  
 prec. by pron. *so*, 762.
- chops** as plur. tant., 194.
- chosen** den. single indiv., 400 *f*;  
 fol. by prop-word, 403.
- Christ** with or without art., 566.
- Christendom** disp. with gen., art., 592
- christening** mod. by obj. gen., 61.
- Christian** used pred., 27, 28;  
 as noun of com. gend., 347.
- Christianity** disp. with gen. art., 592,
- Christmas** disp. with art., 548.
- chronicle** in col. sense, 247.
- chrysalis** plur. of, 126, 1335.
- church** disp. with art., 539, 605.
- Church** used pred., 23;  
 in gen., 51;  
 ref. to by fem. or neut. pron. 325,  
 333 *f*;  
 constr. as plur., 334;  
 in *to go into the Church* and sim.  
 expr. 539;  
 prec. by gen. art., 590;  
 in *Church and State*, 683.
- Church of England** used attrib., 20;  
 used pred., 23;  
 not exchangeable for *England's*  
*Church*, 51.



- Church of Rome** not exchangeable for *Rome's Church*.
- churl** used pred., 25.
- circuit** disp. with def. art., 670.
- circumstances** as plur. tant., 194;  
partaking of funct. of indef. pron., 659.
- citizen** also fem., 346.
- citizeness** a sportive formation, 342.
- city** in gen., 51;  
instead of *city's*, 103;  
prec. by prop. name disp. with def. art., 584.
- claim** with or without indef. art., 613.
- clam** as unchanged plur., 256.
- class** used attrib., 3;  
constr. as plur., 285;  
disp. with def. art., 540.
- classic** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- classical proper names** in gen., 31 *f*.
- classifying adjectives**, 354;  
before adj. part. conv. into nouns, 388;  
before *man* or *woman*, 589.
- classifying adjuncts** of no influence as to the use of def. art., 518.
- classifying nouns** before adj. part. conv. into nouns, 388.
- clay** equiv. to *clay pipe*, 1282 *f*.
- clergy** prec. by num., 281;  
constr. as plur., 285;  
prec. by gen. art., 590 *f*.
- clergyman** used attrib., 5, 16.
- cleric(al)** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- cliff** in col. sense, 247;  
prec. by prop. name disp. with def. art., 585.
- clippings** as plur. tant., 158.
- clique** constr. first as sing. then as plur., 298.
- close** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795.
- close of day** disp. with def. art., 547.
- clothes** comp. with *cloths*, 113;  
as plur. tant., 178;  
in comp., 267.
- club** constr. as sing., 285;  
constr. first as sing. then as plur., 298.
- clump** as individualizer, 274.
- coach** in *coach-and four* and sim. expr., 1238, 1335.
- coachman** disp. with art., 550.
- coals** as plur. tant., 155 *f*.
- cock** used attrib., 17;  
used to indic. sex, 350.
- cock-crow(ing)** disp. with def. art., 546 *f*.
- cockneyess** a playful formation, 342.
- cod** as unchanged plur., 255.
- coeval** tot. conv. into noun, 378, 1337.
- coin** in col. sense, 247.
- cold** tot. conv. into noun, 381;  
with or without indef. art., 613 *f*.
- collect** fol. by refl. pron., 839.
- collective nouns** in gen., 44;  
of two kinds, 281;  
dif. constr., 283;  
constr. partly as sing. partly as plur., 297 ff;  
ref. to by var. rel. pron., 975.
- collective** as comp. with distributive or separative, 1066.
- collective** den. qual. in gen. way, 407.
- college** disp. with def. art., 540, 605;  
in comp. prop. names disp. with art., 579 *f*, 581 *f*.
- colony** used attrib., 4.
- colour** in comp., 268;  
in var. loc., 811.
- colours** as plur. tant., 195, 300.
- come** in *to come to much*, 1112.
- comédienne** as unnaturalized fem., 345.
- comfortable** as transferred epithet, 363.
- commander-in-chief** plur. of, 143.
- commend** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.
- commerce** ref. to by fem. pron., 336.
- commission** constr. as plur., 285;  
fol. by *of* + noun with indef. art., 636.
- commit** fol. by *the* + adj. part. conv. into noun, 398;  
fol. by refl. pron., 839.
- committee** constr. as sing. or plur., 285 *f*.
- common** in *out of the common*, 407;  
in *in common*, 417, 679.
- commonalty** prec. by gen. art., 591.

- common case** used adn., 1 ff;  
 instead of gen., 67 f, 69, 100;  
 comp. with gen., 101 ff;  
 var. with gen. in comp. and in ad-  
 nom. word-groups, 94, 108, 269 f.
- common gender**, 325 f.
- common knowledge** used pred., 24.
- common nouns** prec. prop. names,  
 648 ff.
- common-place** used attrib., 14;  
 used pred., 24.
- commons** as plur. tant., 165, 167, 299 f;  
 in comp., 267;  
 in *the House of Commons*, 637, 1336.
- community** constr. as sing., 286;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591.
- companion** as noun of com. gend.,  
 347.
- company** prec. by *much* etc. or *little*  
 etc., 282;
- comparative** tot. conv. into noun,  
 377 f, 391 f;  
 equiv. to *too* + pos. degree, 511;  
 with or without pron. *so*, 752 f;  
 mod. by num. of multiplication,  
 1269;  
 with or without prop-word *one*,  
 1287.
- comparatively** in *a comparatively*  
*few* or *comparatively a few*, 1095.
- comparison** prec. by indef. art., 614.
- comport** fol. by refl. pron., 841.
- compose** id., 841.
- compound adj.** in degrees of comp.,  
 487 ff.
- compound nouns** comp. with word-  
 groups consisting of adnom. noun +  
 noun, 22;  
 in gen., 33 f;  
 in plur., 141 ff, 267 ff, 1336.
- compounds of ful(l)** plur. of, 141 f.
- compasses** as plur. tant., 49.
- compassion** with or without indef.  
 art., 614;  
 in *Have (Take) compassion (up)on*  
*me*, 705.
- compliment** disp. with indef. art., 666.
- composer** of com. gend., 347.
- conceal** fol. by *from* + refl. pron., 857.
- conceit** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 791.
- concern** mod. by *nothing*, 1311.
- conclusions** in *to try* (or *challenge*)  
*conclusions*, 233 f.
- condemned** den. single indiv., 401, 403.
- condensed relative pronouns**, 965.
- condition** in *in (a) condition*, 695, 1345.
- conditions** as plur. tant., 195.
- conduct** fol. by refl. pron., 839;  
 in *to be conducted*, 843.
- conductress**, 341.
- conference** constr. as sing., 286..
- confess** not fol. by *so*, 747;  
 fol. by *as much* or *so much*, 779.
- confessional** disp. with art., 540.
- confines** as plur. tant., 180.
- congregation** constr. as sing., 286.
- Congregation** disp. with def. art., 552.
- Congress** constr. as sing., 286;  
 disp. with def. art., 552.
- conjoint use** of gen. of nouns, 35, 97;  
 of adj. and adnom. word generally,  
 364.
- connection** in col. sense, 247 f.
- conqueror** in clas. gen., 91.
- conscience** in *in (or of) all (reasonable)*  
*conscience*, 1020.
- console** fol. by refl. pron., 843.
- consort** with or without refl. pron.,  
 846.
- constantly** in sent. den. a gradual  
 increase of some quality, 503 f.
- constituency** constr. as plur., 286.
- constituent** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- Consul** with def. art. before prop.  
 name, 652.
- consumptive** tot. conv. into noun,  
 369.
- contain** with or without refl. pron., 646.
- contemporary** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- contempt** prec. by indef. art., 614.
- contents** as plur. tant., 196, 299.
- continuative adjectives**, 354;  
 mod. adj. part. conv. into nouns,  
 389;  
 before *man* or *woman* used in gen.  
 way, 589;  
 before certain col. nouns used in  
 gen. way, 593.

- continuative adjuncts** whether or no occasioning the use of def. art. before prop. names, 573 ff;
- continuative adnominal clauses**, 126, 976.
- convey** fol. by refl. pron., 842.
- Convocation** disp. with def. art., 552 f.
- Cook** in clas. gen., 94.
- cook** disp. with art., 550 f.
- cool** tot. conv. into noun, 381.
- cordial** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- corner** used attrib., 19.
- corps** unaltered for plur., 124.
- corrective** tot. conv. into noun, 369.
- cost** in *at any cost*, 196, 1037.
- costs** as plur. tant., 196 f;  
in *at all cost(s)*, 196 f, 1045.
- cottage** instead of *cottage's*, 103.
- council** constr. as sing., 286;  
disp. with def. art., 540.
- Council** disp. with def. art., 553;  
in *by Order of Council*, 540.
- counsel** (*legal adviser*) unaltered for plur., 264 f.
- counsel** in *to keep (one's own) counsel*, 817.
- counsels** in *to leave (abandon) to one's own counsels*, 234.
- Count** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 652.
- countables**, 1083, 1273.
- countenance** disp. with def. art. or pos. pron., 531, 811.
- Countess** with or without def. art. when fol. by prop. name, 652.
- country** in *across (the) country*, 670, 1344;  
in *this (or that) country*, 894.
- county** used pred., 23.
- couple** unaltered for plur., 258 f;  
constr. as plur., 286.
- courage** with or without indef. art., 614;  
with or without pos. pron., 811.
- course** in *in due course (of time)*, 537 f.
- courses** as plur. tant., 197.
- court** used attrib., 17;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 286;  
disp. with art. or pos. pron., 540, 911 f.
- court-martial** plur. of, 142.
- cousin** disp. with def. art. or pos. pron., 549, 815;  
mod. by ord. num., 1260.
- cousin german** plur. of, 142.
- cover** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795.
- cow** used attrib., 17;  
used to indic. sex, 350.
- coward** used attrib., 4;  
in clas. gen., 91.
- coxcomb** corrupted from *cock's comb*, 95.
- crackers** as plur. tant., 197.
- craft** (*ship*) unaltered for plur., 122.
- craft** (*trade*) fol. by *of* + noun without indef. art., 636.
- created** equiv. to *any*, 1041.
- creation** with or without gen. art., 593 f.
- credentials** as plur. tant., 161.
- creeps** id., 143.
- crew** constr. as plur., 286.
- crime** in col. sense, 248.
- cripple** used attrib., 19.
- crowd** constr. as sing. or plur., 286;  
constr. first as sing., then as plur., 298.
- crowning** mod. by obj. gen., 61.
- crow's feet** instead of *crows' feet*, 143.
- cudgels** in *to take up the cudgels in (or on) behalf of*, 234.
- cuisses** as plur. tant., 149.
- cupboard** used attrib., 15.
- curds** as plur. tant., 155.
- custom(s)** id., 197;  
in adnom. comp., 268.
- cuttings** as plur. tant., 158.
- cyclop(s)** plur. of, 131.
- Czar** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 652.
- dace** as unchanged plur., 255.
- daggers** in *at daggers drawn* and its var., 670.
- daily** not used pred., 351;  
in sent. den. gradual increase of some qual., 1503.
- dainty** understood as pure adj., 3.
- damages** as plur. tant., 197 f, 299.

- dame** instead of *dame's*, 105;  
with or without def. art. before prop.  
name, 652, 1343.
- damsel-errant** plur. of, 132.
- Dan** before prop. name, 650.
- dance** in *to dance on nothing* (= *to be hanged*), 1316.
- dangerous** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.
- dark** tot. conv. into noun, 381;  
in *after* (or *at*) *dark*, 381, 679.
- darling** used attrib., 13.
- darlingest** as superl. of noun, 3, 1332.
- data** as plur. tant., 171 *f*.
- date** comp. with *datum*, 171;  
in *under date*, 670;  
in *at some date*, 1190;  
how expr., 1256 *f*.
- daunted** mod. by *nothing*, 1311.
- dawn(ing)** disp. with art., 546 *f*.
- day** in gen., 69, 93 *f*;  
in *day by day*, 503;  
in *for the day*, 521;  
in *(up)on a day*, 527 *f*;  
in *the old days*, 538;  
disp. with def. art., 670;  
in *one day*, 1171;  
in *the other day*, 1180;  
in *some day*, 1191;  
suppr. in dates, 1256.
- day-break** disp. with def. art., 546.
- dead** part. conv. into noun, 404, 406.
- deadlock** prec. by indef. art., 614.
- dead of night** (or *winter*) with *dead*  
as adj. part. conv. into noun, 413;  
disp. with def. art., 546 *f*.
- deal** in *a deal of*, 1112;  
in *a good* (*great* or *infinite*) *deal*  
of, 1112.
- dear** part. or tot. conv. into noun,  
392 *f*;  
as emotional adj. occas. def. art. to  
be disp. with before prop. names,  
575;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275 *f*.
- dearest** part. or tot. conv. into noun,  
392 *f*;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.
- death** in gen., 54 *f*;  
ref. to by masc. pron., 336;  
in *to die the death*, 520;  
disp. with gen. art. when den.  
personified abstraction, 598;  
in *to the death*, 601 *f*;  
fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 791.
- death-throes** as plur. tant., 177, 183 *f*.
- declare** fol. by refl. pron., 839;  
with or without refl. pron., 847.
- declarative word-order** in sent. expr.  
identity of circumst., 770.
- deep** tot. conv. into noun, 365, 381.
- deep midnight** disp. with art., 547.
- deer** unaltered for plur., 122, 1335.
- defeat** with or without indef. art., 614.
- defensive** den. qual. in gen. way, 407.
- definite art.** disp. with by pred.  
nouns, 25;  
before names of languages, 376 *f*;  
before adj. den. class of persons in  
gen. way, 387 *ff*;  
before nouns used in gen. way,  
587 *ff*;  
before partic. den. single indiv. 400 *ff*;  
before adj. den. qual. in gen. way,  
406 *ff*;  
disp. with before adjuncts of time  
containing *last*, 443, 449;  
id. before adjuncts of time containing  
*next*, 451;  
id. before plur. or abstract noun  
prec. by superl. or equiv. (or iden-  
tical) noun, 511, 521, 596 *f*, 1341 *f*;  
before certain (ancient) family  
names, 570 *f*;  
almost equiv. to demonstr. or determ.  
pron., 518, 521 *f*, 895, 916, 941.  
used absol., 520;  
the descendant of Old Eng. æ t,  
521;  
equiv. to demonstr., 521 *f*;  
var. with indef. art., 522 *f*, 529;  
used distrib., 529;  
disp. with from var. causes, 530 *ff*;  
instead of *its*, 785, 787;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 918, 1275,  
1278, 1291 *f*;  
mod. subst. *all*, 1017 *f*;  
fol. by num. *one*, 1249.



- degenerate tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
 degree fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 636;  
   *in any degree*, 1014;  
   understood after num., 1236.  
*degrees of comparison* of nouns, 2, 3, 26, 27, 427;  
   of word-groups composed of prep. + noun, 427.  
 delay prec. by indef. art., 614.  
 delight (*noun*) with or without indef. art. 614.  
 deliver (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
 deliver (up) fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
 demean id., 841.  
 demerits as plur. tant., 213.  
 democracy constr. as plur., 287;  
   prec. by gen. art., 591.  
 demon instead of *demon's*, 105;  
   ref. to by neut. pron., 328.  
 demonstrative pronoun fol. by pos. pron., 805 *f*;  
   with emotional colouring, 821, 892 *f*;  
   mod. subst. *all*, 1017 *f*;  
   fol. by num. *one*, 1260, 1253;  
   fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275.  
*denominators of fractions* unaltered for plur., 261 *f*.  
 deny drop. *it*, 740;  
   not fol. by pron. *so*, 747.  
 departed den. single indiv., 401.  
 departure prec. by indef. art., 615.  
 dependant tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
 deport fol. by refl. pron. 841.  
 Deputies in *the Chamber of Deputies*, 637.  
 deputy as first part of comp. noun, 141.  
 derbies as plur. tant., 149.  
 description in *to pass all description*, 1020.  
*descriptive adjectives* occas. def. art.  
   to be used before prop. names, 573;  
*descriptive noun predicate* comp.  
   with identifying, 730 *ff*.  
 deserts as plur. tant., 193.  
 desire (*noun*) prec. by def. or indef. art., 695.  
 desire (*verb*) prec. by pron. *so*, 751, 762.  
 despoil fol. by refl. pron., 842.  
 despot constr. as sing., 287.  
 detrimental tot. conv. into noun, 369.  
 deuce (*noun*) disp. with def. art. in imprecations, 566;  
   prec. by def. art. in emotional quest., 566, 1223.  
 deuce (*num.*) equiv. to *two*, 1229.  
 develop with or without refl. pron., 844.  
 device in *to leave (or abandon) to one's own devices*, 234.  
 devil in *a devil of a* + noun, 5;  
   used pred., 23;  
   also fem., 346;  
   equiv. to abstr. noun, 410;  
   with or without art. in imprecations, 565 *f*;  
   prec., by def. art. in emotional quest., 566, 1223;  
   in *between (the) devil and (the) deep sea*, 683.  
 Devonshire used attrib., 19.  
 devoted its head-word understood, 405;  
   fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
 devotions as plur. tant., 198.  
 diamond used attrib., 11.  
 dice as mutation plur., 119, 135 *f*.  
 Dickens in clas. gen., 94.  
 dickens in emotional quest., 1223.  
 dictator also fem., 352.  
 die two plur., 119, 135 *f*.  
 differ mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
 difference prec. by indef. art., 615;  
   in *all the difference in the world*, 1020.  
 different fol. by *than*, 1181.  
 difficulty with or without indef. art., 615.  
 diggings as plur. tant., 158, 300.  
 dignity fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 636.  
 dilettante two plur., 127.  
 dinner disp. with def. art., 531, 543 *ff*, 605.  
 directress, 341.  
 disadvantage prec. by indef. art., 615.  
 disagreeables as plur. tant., 161.

- disappointed** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**discomfort** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**discomfort** mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
**discover** fol. by refl. pron., 843.  
**disgust** prec. by indef. art., 615.  
**disinclination** id., 619.  
**dislike** with and without indef. art., 608, 615.  
**dislikes** as plur. tant., 177, 181.  
**disliking** comp. with *dislike*, 182.  
**dismals** as plur. tant., 153.  
**disorderly** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**display** as individualizer, 274.  
**disport** with or without refl. pron., 847.  
**disposal** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 788.  
**disposition** prec. by indef. art., 615.  
**disputable** in the sense of *disputatious*, 363.  
**disrespect** with or without indef. art., 627.  
**dissuade** drop. thing-object, 740.  
**dissuasive** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**distance** mod. by gen., 63;  
     prec. by adj. mostly with indef. art., 632.  
**distant** var. of *far*, 438.  
**distributive** as comp. with collective, 1066.  
**district** prec. by prop. name retaining def. art., 584.  
**ditto** as substit. for prop-word *one*, 1274.  
**divan** disp. with art., 540.  
**divers** as indef. num., 1205, 1207;  
     comp. with *diverse*, 1207.  
**diverse** comp. with *divers*, 1207.  
**divinity** used attrib., 18.  
**do** (*verb*) fol. by *the* + adj. part. conv. into noun, 398, 1337;  
     with or without pron. *so*, 756 *ff*, 762;  
     after *can*, *may*, etc., 762;  
     in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;  
     in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 *ff*;  
     in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial etc., 771 *ff*;  
     fol. by pron. *as much*, 779;  
     fol. by refl. pron., 856;  
     in *much* (or *more*) *to do*, 1110.  
     fol. by *other*, 1184 *f*.  
**dock** disp. with art., 540.  
**doctor** in clas. gen., 92;  
     fol. by prop. name in plur., 146;  
     before prop. name equiv. to adj., 147.  
     disp. with def. art., 1341.  
**doctress**, 341.  
**Dodson** used attrib., 17.  
**dog** in *to go to the dogs* and *to throw to the dogs*, 234;  
     ref. to by neut. pron., 330.  
     used to den. sex, 350.  
**Doge** with def. art. before prop. name, 652.  
**dog's flesh** (or *meat*) comp. with *horse-flesh*.  
**Dom** without def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
**domestic** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**domino(es)** as plur. taking *es*;  
     in compounds, 268.  
**Don** without def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
**donkey** ref. to by neut. pron., 330.  
**Donna** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
**do-nothing** used attrib., 20.  
**doomed** den. single indiv., 401;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**doors** as plur. tant., 198 *f*.  
**door(s)** in adn. comp., 268.  
**double** disp. with art., 665 *f*, 1267;  
     losing prep. *of*, 665 *f*, 1267;  
     before pos. pron., 803;  
     in *four double*, 1067;  
     conv. into verb, 1269;  
     prec. by def. art., 1269;  
     with or without part. *of*, 1269 *f*;  
     with its head-word understood, 1270;  
     used as pure adv., 1270;  
     var. with *doubly*, 1270;  
     used as pure adj., 1270 *f*;  
     comp. with *twofold*, 1270.  
**doubly** var. with *double*, 1270.  
**doubt** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 615;  
     in *beyond* (*a*) *doubt*, 691;

- in *no doubt*, 1130.  
**doubt** (*verb*) not fol. by pron. *so*, 747;  
 drop. *it*, 748;  
 fol. by redundant *me*, 831;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
**Douglas** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**Downs** as plur. tant., 174.  
**dozen** unaltered for plur., 258 *f*, 1229;  
 understood as num., 1229;  
 prec. by *some* and (or) fol. by *or so*, 1233 *f*;  
 in *thirteen* (or some other num.)  
*to the dozen*, 1239.  
**dozenth** as colloquial ord. num., 1255.  
**drabs** as plur. tant., 149.  
**drains** id., 199.  
**drainings** id., 158.  
**draught** in comp., 268;  
 in *at a draught*, 525.  
**draughts** as plur. tant., 154, 199.  
**draw** drop. refl. pron., 844;  
 fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857;  
 fol. by *upon* + refl. pron., 859;  
 in *to draw oneself into oneself*, 871.  
**draw up** drop. refl. pron., 844;  
 with or without refl. pron., 847.  
**drawers** as plur. tant., 148, 199.  
**dread** (*noun*) mod. by obj. gen., 61;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 787.  
**dread** (*verb*) fol. by redundant *me*, 831.  
**dreadful** tot. conv. into noun, 379.  
**dream** fol. by *so*, 743.  
**dress** with or without refl. pron., 847, 1347.  
**dresser** of com. gend., 347.  
**drilling** mod. by an obj. gen., 61.  
**drilling** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**drive away** equiv. to *to be driven away*, 856.  
**droll** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**dropsy** prec. by indef. art., 632.  
**drowned** den. single indiv., 401.  
**dry** tot. conv. into noun, 381.  
**duchess** an anglicized foreign fem., 342;  
 with def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
**duck** as unchanged plur., 252.  
**ducks** as plur. tant., 149.  
**duck**(s) egg equiv. to *o*, 1230, 1352.  
**duds** as plur. tant., 178, 180.  
**due** prec. by pos. pron., 826.  
**Duke** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
**Duma** construed as sing., 287.  
**dumps** as plur. tant., 153.  
**duration** mod. by gen., 63.  
**during** before name of period, 545, 605;  
 before phrase den. measure of time, 910.  
**dusk** disp. with art., 546 *f*.  
**duties** as plur. tant., 199.  
**dwarf** used attrib., 13;  
 plur. of 117.  
**dwarfer** as compar. of noun, 26.  
**dying** part. conv. into noun, 405.  
**each** in *each* + noun in sent. den. gradual increase of some qual., 503;  
 as var. of distrib. indef. art., 530;  
 as var. of (*the*) *one and the other*, 562, 1165.  
 fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur. noun, 800 *f*;  
 fol. by pos. pron., 805;  
 in *all and each*, 1029;  
 in *each and all*, 1030;  
 as distrib. num., 1066;  
 used conj., 1066;  
 prec. by *whose*, 1066;  
 used abs., 1067;  
 in back-position, 1067;  
 used subst., 1067, 1280;  
 con. with *other* in recipr. comb., 1067 *f*;  
 div. from *other* by prep. 1068;  
 div. from *other* by other elem. of sent., 1068 *f*;  
 con. with *the one*, 1068;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 1069;  
 con. with another *each* or *either* in recipr. comb., 1070;  
 comp. with *either* and *both*, 1072 *f*.  
 in phrases den. regular recurrence of phenomenon, 1080;  
 fol. by ord. num., 1080;  
 comp. with *every*, 1088 *f*;

- in *each and every*, 1091;  
 comp. with *several(ly)*, 1188 *f*;  
 fol. by *several*, 1189, 1252;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1280,  
 1298 *f*.
- each one** ref. to by plur. pron., 310 *ff*;  
 var. with subst. *each*, 1067, 1280.
- each other** as recipr. pron., 1067 *ff*;  
 in gen., 1068, 1176;  
 understood, 1071.  
 comp. with *one another*, 1168;
- eachwhere** as var. of *everywhere*, 1071.
- eagle** instead of *eagle's*, 107.
- ear** disp. with art., 670.
- Earl** with or without def. art. before  
 prop. name, 653.
- earlier** as var. of *older* or *elder*, 458;  
 as var. of *first*, 463;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.
- earliest** as var. of *oldest*, 461;  
 in *at (the) earliest*, 499, 679;  
 in *from earliest times (or youth)*,  
 679 *f*.
- early dawn** disp. with def. art., 547.
- earn** fol. by *for* + refl. pron., 857.
- earnings** as plur. tant., 158.
- earth** in gen., 51;  
 ref. to by fem. or neut. pron., 333;  
 prec. by def. art., 554;  
 with or without def. art., 670 *f*;  
 in *on earth* emphas. *any or no*, 1037,  
 1128;  
 id. in emotional quest., 1223.
- earthen** used attrib., 6, 7.
- earthly** (prec. by indef. art.) equiv.  
 to *any*, 1041;  
 in emotional quest., 1223..
- earthworks** as plur. tant., 232, 702.
- earthy** in *of the earth*, *earthy*, 1341.
- ease** in *at (one's) ease*, 812.
- easily** mod. superl. or comp., 509.
- eastern** tot. conv. into noun, 381, 473;  
 as pos. degree, 472 *f*.
- easternmost** as superl., 472 *f*.
- East India Company**, comp. with  
*East Indian Company*, 357 *f*.
- eave** as new-formed sing., 140, 1335.
- eaves** a supposed plur., 137.
- ebony** used attrib., 15.
- economics** as plur. tant., 161.
- edge** mod. by gen., 57.
- editress**, 341.
- ecclesiastic** tot. conv. into noun, 370.
- ecliptic** prec. by def. art., 554.
- ecstasy** prec. by indef. art., 616.
- edge** in *to keep (or set) on edge*, 671.
- ee** shortened from *ye*, 708.
- ee(n)** vulg. for *eyes*, 121.
- effect** in *of none effect*, 1152.
- effects** as plur. tant., 199.
- effeminate** tot. conv. into noun, 370.
- effigy** mod. by obj. gen., 62;  
 fol. by *of*, 81.
- effluvia** as plur. tant., 171 *f*, 300.
- Ego** as philosophical term, 726, 1345.
- eight** den. a crew of eight, 1242.
- eighteenth century** used pred., 23.
- either** constr. as plur., 307;  
 fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur. noun,  
 800 *f*;  
 as recipr. pron., 1070;  
 con. with *both*, *each*, *either* or *the*  
*other* in recipr. comb., 1070;  
 as distrib. num., 1066, 1071 *ff*;  
 in gen., 1072;  
 in two shades of mean., 1072;  
 comp. with *each* and *both*, 1072 *f*;  
 used with ref. to more than two, 1074;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 1074;  
 var. with *(the) one* and *the other*,  
 1165;  
 comp. with *one or other*, 1169;  
 fol. by num. *one*, 1254, 1298.
- elastic** tot. conv. into noun, 370.
- elbow(s)** in *at elbow(s)*, 671.
- elder** tot. conv. into noun, 377 *f*, 1337;  
 as comp. of *old*, 454 *ff*, 1339.
- elder-born** den. single indiv., 401.
- eldest** as superl. of *old*, 454 *ff*, 1339.
- eldest-born** den. single indiv., 401;  
 comp. with *oldest surviving*, 455.
- elect** den. single indiv., 401, 403.
- electorate** constr. as plur., 287.
- electric** tot. conv. into noun, 370.
- elements** as plur. tant., 199.
- elephant** as unchanged plur., 252;  
 ref. to by masc. or neut. pron., 330.
- eleven** equiv. to *cricket-team*, 1242.



- elevens in *by the elevens*, 1245.  
 eleventh in *at the eleventh hour*, 1261.  
 'em mutilated form of *hem* (= *them*), 723.  
 embarrassment prec. by indef. art., 616.  
 elk as unchanged plur., 251.  
 else in of *all* + noun *else*, 512;  
   in word-groups taking mark of gen., 944, 1216, 1273;  
   in *every man else*, 1301;  
   as part. of subst. word-group cont. *something* or *anything*, 1317.  
 embers as plur. tant., 135.  
 embroil fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
 emergency used attrib., 19;  
   with or without indef. art., 616.  
 Emir with def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
 Emperor with or without def. art. before prop. name, 653, 1343.  
 employed den. single indiv., 401.  
 emotional adjectives, 354;  
   occas. def. art. to be disp. with before prop. names, 573 *ff.*  
 Emperors before more than one prop. name, 147.  
 Empire in gen., 50.  
 Empress with or without def. art. before prop. name, 653.  
 empty tot. conv. into noun, 368, 385, 1259.  
 en as Old Eng. fem. suf., 343;  
 'en a mutilated form of *hine*, 723.  
 enchantress, 341.  
 enclitic questions, 772, 774 *f.*  
 encyclical tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
 end mod. by gen., 57;  
   in *on (an) end*, 526;  
   in *to stand on end*, 671;  
   in *at (or to) an end* or *to the end*, 698;  
   fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795;  
   in *in the end*, 1012.  
 ends in *to make (the or both) ends meet*, 671, 1063.  
 enemy used attrib., 1342 *f.*;  
   used pred., 27, 642;  
   in clas. gen., 91;  
   as col. noun of second kind, 248;  
   constr. as sing. or plur., 287;  
   ref. to by *he*, etc., 287;  
   with or without indef. art., 642.  
 engage drop. refl. pron., 845.  
 engaged with or without recipr. pron., 1071.  
 English used pred., 29;  
   part. conv. into noun, 365 *f.*  
 enjoy fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
 enlist with or without refl. pron., 847 *f.*  
 enmity prec. by indef. art., 616.  
 enough mod. pred. noun, 26, 1075;  
   as indef. num., 1074 *ff.*, 1351;  
   placed before or after its head-word, 1074 *f.*, 1076;  
   fol. by part. *of*, 1075;  
   in *to have enough of* (= *to be tired of*) 1075;  
   in *to be enough of* + name of pers., 1075;  
   in *enough ado* (= *enough to do*), 1075;  
   in *enough of* + (pro)noun, 1075;  
   in the mean. of *quite capable of*, '1076 *f.*;  
   approx. to *rather*, 1076;  
   approx. to *but (or only) too*, 1076 *f.*  
   in *sure enough*, 1077;  
   in *little enough*, 1077.  
 enow as var. of *enough*, 1077;  
 enrol(l) fol. by refl. pron., 843.  
 entirely fol. by pron. *so*, 753.  
 envied den. single indiv., 401.  
 environments as plur. tant., 199.  
 epileptic tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
 Epiphany not. disp. with art., 548;  
   as significant prop. name, 565.  
 epithets of the Supreme Being part. conv. into nouns, 399;  
   id. of sovereigns, 399;  
   id. of seas, machines, ships, etc., 400.  
 equal tot. conv. into noun, 378, 705.  
 er suf. to form comp., 427 *f.*  
 ere as pos. of *erst*, 471.  
 errata as plur. tant., 171, 300.  
 escape prec. by indef. art., 608.  
 Esquimo var. of, 132.

*equivalents of adjectives* den. qual.  
in gen. way, 410 *ff.*  
*equivalents of absolute superlatives*,  
510 *f.*, 521.  
*e're* in *e're a(n)* (= *any (at all)*), 689,  
1041.  
*e're* as vulgarism after demonstr.  
pron., 924 *f.*  
*erst* as superl. of *ere*, 471.  
*ess* suf. to form fem., 340.  
*essentials* as plur. tant., 161.  
*est* suf. to form superl., 427 *f.*  
*establish* fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
*establishment* constr. as sing., 287.  
*Estates* as plur. tant., 199 *f.*  
*esteem* prec. by indef. art., 616.  
(*e*)*stre* an Old Eng. fem. ending, 343.  
*ethics* as plur. tant., 161.  
*Eton* used pred., 24;  
*euphony* affecting the form of compa-  
rison, 474 *ff.*  
*Europe* in col. sense constr. as sing.,  
287.  
*eve(n)* (*noun*) disp. with art., 545 *f.*  
*even* (*adv.*) as var. of emph. pron., 266.  
*evening* in clas. gen., 92;  
used attrib., 111;  
disp. with art., 545 *f.*  
*event* in *at every event, in any event*,  
1046 *f.*  
*events* partaking of funct. of indef.  
pron., 659;  
in *at all events*, 1046 *f.*  
*ever* before compar. of adj. or adv.,  
503;  
in sent. with indef. art. suppr.,  
688 *f.*;  
in *ever a(n)* (= *any (at all)*), 689,  
1041, 1253;  
con. with *hardly* or *scarcely*, 1050;  
form. comp. with interrog. words,  
1214 *ff.*;  
giving emotional colouring to quest.,  
1223;  
div. from its head-word, 1223.  
*every* in *every + noun* in sent. den.  
gradual increase of some qual.,  
503, 1080;  
as var. of distrib. indef. art., 530;

prec. by pos. pron., 804, 1078;  
before *such*, 939;  
in *all and every*, 1029;  
comp. with *any*, 1044 *ff.*;  
con. with *any*, 1047 *f.*;  
as distrib. num., 1066, 1078 *ff.*;  
a corruption of *ever*, 1078;  
prec. by gen., 1078;  
fol. by num. *one*, 1078;  
fol. by def. art. + superl. 1078 *f.*,  
1137;  
in phrases den. regular recurrence  
of a phenomenon, 1079 *f.*;  
comp. with *all*, 1081 *ff.*;  
before uncountables, 1083;  
comp. with *each*, 1088 *ff.*;  
in *each and every*, 1091;  
fol. by *several*, 1189, 1252;  
fol. by num. *one*, 1252;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1280 *f.*,  
1299;  
disp. with prop-word *one*, 1299.  
*every bit* equiv. to *every whit*, 1091.  
*everybody* constr. as plur., 310 *ff.*,  
1337;  
antec. of *who*, 981;  
comp. with *all*, 1085 *f.*;  
equiv. to *every one*, 1091, 1301 *f.*;  
in gen., 1272;  
conv. into pure noun, 1303.  
*every-day* used attrib., 20;  
*every one* ref. to by plur. pron., 310 *ff.*  
fol. by *of* + plur. pos. pron. + plur.  
noun, 800;  
antec. of *who*, 981;  
in *every one and all*, 1030;  
equiv. to *everybody*, 1091, 1275,  
1280 *f.*, 1301 *f.*  
*every how* unusual comb., 1091.  
*every man Jack* equiv. to *everybody*  
or *every one*, 1307.  
*every mother's son* equiv. to *everybody*  
or *every one*, 1307.  
*every now and then* var. with *every*  
*now and again* and *every once in a*  
*while*, 1092.  
*everything* ref. to by plur., 311;  
fol. by adnom. cl., 412;  
fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 826;

- antec. of *that* or *which*, 981;  
 comp. with *all* 1011, 1086 *ff*;  
 in *everything but* as comp. with *all but*, 1016;  
 as comp. of prop-word *thing*, 1308 *ff*;  
 in the mean. of *of the first importance*, 1308;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1308 *f*;  
 conv. into noun, 1315 *f*;  
 conv. into pred. adj., 1317.  
**every thing** con. with plur. pred., 313.  
**every way** in two shades of mean., 1092;  
 var. *with in every way*, 1092.  
**everywhen** unusual, 1092.  
**everywhence** rare, 1092.  
**everywhere**, 1092.  
**every which way** an Americanism, 1092.  
**every whither** infrequent, 1092.  
**evidence** in col. sense, 245.  
**evil** tot. conv. into noun, 386;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275.  
**exaggeration** prec. by indef. art., 616.  
**example** with or without indef. art., 616;  
 with def. or indef. art., 695.  
**Excalibur** ref. to by masc. pron., 338.  
**except** fol. by nom. or obj., 711 *f*.  
**exception** in *to be the exception*, 698.  
**exchange** disp. with art., 540.  
**excitement** with or without indef. art., 616.  
**exclusive** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**execution** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**exequies** as plur. tant., 180.  
**Ex-governor** without def. art. before prop. name, 1343.  
**exhaust** fol. by refl. pron., 843.  
**exotic** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**expect** fol. by *it* or pron. *so*, 747.  
**expectant** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**expectation** disp. with art., 671.  
**expenditure** in col. sense, 245.  
**expense** with or without indef. art., 616.  
**expenses** as plur. tant., 200 *f*.  
**explain** drop. it, 740.  
**exports** as plur. tant., 201.  
**expulsion** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**exquisite** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**extent** prec. by indef. art., 616.  
**externals** as plur. tant., 161.  
**extraordinaries** id., 161.  
**extravagant** tot. conv. into noun, 370;  
 part. conv. into noun, 409.  
**extreme** part. conv. into noun, 382, 408, 415;  
 equiv. to superl., 427 *f*.  
**extremest** as cumulative plur., 491.  
**eye** plur. forms of, 120 *f*;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 792.  
**eye-glasses** as plur. tant., 148 *f*, 205.  
**(eye-)lashes** id., 151.  
**eyne** archaic plur. of *eye*, 120 *f*.  
**fable** in col. sense, 248.  
**face** in *of a face*, 525;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794, 796;  
 in *black in the face*, 810.  
**facetiae**, as plur. tant., 172.  
**facility** with or without indef. art., 616.  
**fact** in col. sense, 248.  
**faculty** prec. by (in)def. art., 616, 696.  
**faint** as substit. for *little*, 432, 436.  
**faintest** as substit. for *least*, 432, 436;  
 prec. by def. art. equiv. to *any*, 1040.  
**fair** indic. sex, 351;  
 in the sense of *fairness*, 386;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 390 *f*;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**faith** with or without pos. pron., 812.  
**faithless** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**fall** prec. by indef. art., 617;  
 in *to fall in love* implying recipr. notion, 1071.  
**fallen** den. single individ., 401.  
**familiar** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**family** constr. as sing. or a plur. 287;  
**fanatic** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**fancy** used attrib., 15;  
 prec. by indef. art., 617.  
**far** how comp., 438 *ff*;  
 mod. compar. or superl., 508, 1105;  
 mod. *other*, 1181;  
 fol. by compar. + *a one*, 1292.  
**far and away** as var. of *far away*, 508.  
**far(-)away** as var. of *far*, 438 *f*, 508.

- far-distant** as var. of *far*, 438 *f*.  
**fare** in imper. fol. by *thee*, *ye* or *you*,  
**far-off** as var. of *far*, 438 *f*.  
**farewell** used attrib., 19;  
     with or without indef. art., 617.  
**farrow** prec. by num., 281.  
**farther** comp. with *further*, 438 *ff*;  
     var. with *other*, 439, 1178;  
     as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
**farthest** in *farthest ends of the world*,  
     77;  
     as compar. of *far*, 438 *ff*;  
     in *at (the) farthest*, 499, 679.  
**fasces** as plur. tant., 172.  
**fashion** in *after a fashion*, 527;  
     with or without def. art., 671, 1344;  
     with def. or indef. art., 695.  
**fashionable** tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
**fat** tot. conv. into noun, 379;  
     expr. gen. concrete idea, 410.  
**Fate** disp. with gen. art., 598.  
**Fates** as plur. tant., 201.  
**father** in clas. gen., 91;  
     fol. by prop. name, 648;  
     disp. with def. art. or pos. pron.,  
     549, 815.  
**father's son** (or *daughter*) equiv. to  
     *brother* (or *sister*), 48.  
**fathom** unaltered for plur., 264.  
**favour** in *in* (or *out of*) *favour*, 671;  
     fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 796.  
**favourite** fol. by *with*, 82.  
**fear** (*verb*) fol. by pron. *so*, 743;  
     fol. by *it*, 746;  
     fol. by redundant *me*, 831.  
**fear** (*noun*) fol. by *of* + pers. pron.,  
     787.  
**fearful** in obj. or subj. mean., 363.  
**feast** with or without refl. pron., 848.  
**feather** in *of a* (or *one*) *feather*, 525 *f*.  
**featherpoke** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**featherweight** used attrib. 15.  
**feathery** equiv. to material adj.  
**features** as plur. tant., 201.  
**feel** (*noun*) in *at feel of*, 534.  
**feel** (*verb*) approx. to cop., 854.  
**feet** in com. case in colloc. of measure,  
     67;  
     in adnom. word-groups, 271.  
**feint** used attrib., 15;  
     in *to make a feint of* + ger., 647.  
**fela** Old Eng. repres. of *many*, 436.  
**fellow** also fem., 346;  
     prec. by indef. art. equiv. to indef.  
     pron., 325, 524. 1210 *f*;  
     as prop-word, 1307.  
**fellows** equiv. to indef. pron., 657,  
     1209.  
**female** ref. to by neut. pron., 330;  
     before nouns of com. gen., 349.  
**feminine** used to indic. sex, 351.  
**ferret** instead of *ferret's*, 107.  
**fever** with or without gen. def. art.,  
     600;  
     prec. by indef. art., 632.  
**few** after *last*, *first* and *next*, 443,  
     448, 451, 452, 462, 464, 1093;  
     prec. by indef. art., 529, 1092, 1094 *ff*;  
     before *such*, 939;  
     after rel. *what*, 962;  
     after *every*, 1079, 1093;  
     prec. by *that* or *those*, 1093;  
     used conjointly 1093;  
     prec. by *some*, 1093, 1097;  
     prec. by *too*, 1093;  
     used abs., 1093;  
     fol. by *short of*, 1093;  
     used substantively 1093 *f*;  
     in *the few* in spec. mean., 1094,  
     1107;  
     in *in few* (= *in few words*, 1094;  
     used pred., 1094;  
     in *few and far between*, 1094;  
     comp. with *a few*, 1096;  
     in *no few*, 1097, 1350;  
     comp. with *some*, 1193.  
**fewer** pref. to *less*, 304;  
     used abs., 1093;  
     used pred., 1094;  
     in *many fewer* (= *much fewer*),  
     1107, 1350.  
**fewest** in *at fewest*, 499, 679;  
     disp. with art., 561.  
**fiddle** ref. to by fem. pron., 338.  
**field and road** disp. with art., 682.  
**fiend** in *the foul fiend* in emotional  
     quest., 1223.  
**fifth** in *fifth wheel*, 1261.



- figure** (*noun*) ref. to by neut. or masc. pron., 328;  
in *to a figure*, 526.
- figure** (*verb*) fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857.
- fill** drop. refl. pron., 844.
- filly** used to den. sex., 350.
- finances** as plur. tant., 201 *f*.
- finch** ref. to by masc. pron., 330.
- find** fol. by (pro)noun + pron. *so*, 751.
- finer** disp. with prop-word *one*, 1287.
- find out** drop. *it*, 735.
- fine** in *of the finest fine*, 511.
- finger** in gen., 54 *f*;  
instead of *finger's*, 104;  
in *finger and thumb*, 683.
- finish** in *to a (or the) finish, to be in at the finish*, 698.
- fire and sword** disp. with art., 683.
- fireman** var. meanings of, 22.
- fireworks** as plur. tant., 232.
- firm** constr. as sing or plur., 287, 1334.
- first** part. conv. into noun, 405, 414, 415, 420 *f*, 1338;  
as superl. of *fore*, 461 *f*, 1339;  
prec. by def. art. as correl. of *the latter*, 464;  
in *at (the) first*, 499 *f*, 679;  
disp. with art., 561;  
as demonstr. equiv. 916;  
prec. by def. art. as correl. of *the other*, 1165;  
in var. loc., 1256;  
conv. into pure noun, 1259;  
equiv. to *former*, 1260;  
mod. *cousin*, 1260;  
in *(the) first thing (or opportunity)* adv. in funct., 1260;  
approx. to *any*, 1260 *f*;  
as adv., 1261;  
in *on first thoughts*, 1261;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1286.
- first-born** den. single indiv., 401, 403.
- first-fruits** as plur. tant., 204, 299 *f*.
- firstlings** id., 176.
- firstly** var. with *first*, 1261.
- fish** as unchanged plur., 254, 257, 282;  
in *to a fish*, 526.
- fish's** as clas. gen., 90.
- fisher** used attrib., 5, 16.
- fit** in cert. loc., 234.
- five** as pure noun, 1244, 1245.
- fives** as plur. tant., 154.
- fix** prec. by indef. art., 608.
- flank** in *to take in flank*, 671.
- Flanders** used attrib., 4.
- flat** tot. conv. into noun, 381.
- flatter** fol. by refl. pron. + *so*, 751.
- flaxen** used attrib., 8 *f*;  
used pred., 360.
- fleet** constr. as sing. or plur., 288.
- flight** as individualizer, 274;  
disp. with art., 671 *f*.
- flippant** tot. conv. into noun, 371.
- flock** constr. as sing., 288.
- flood and field** disp. with art., 683.
- floodgates** as plur. tant., 202.
- floralia** id., 172.
- flounder** not an unchanged plur., 255.
- flower** unaltered for plur., 264.
- fly** (*carriage*) plur. *flys* or *flies*, 115.
- fly** (*insect*) ref. to by masc. or fem. pron., 331.
- foe** constr. as sing or plur., 288;  
with or without indef. art., 642.
- folk(s)** prec. by num., 281;  
in var. applic., 295, 1336;  
equiv. to indef. pron., 657, 1209;  
as prop-word, 1307.
- follow** drop. its obj., 740.
- fool** used pred., 23, 25, 26, 27, 641;  
in clas gen., 91;  
equiv. to abstr. noun, 410.
- foolish** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.
- foot** used instead of *foot's* 105;  
with mutation plur. 119 *f*;  
unaltered for plur., 263 *f*;  
in comp., 267;  
in adnom. comp., 267;  
in the sense of *infantry* prec. by num., 282.
- footing** prec. by indef. art., 617.
- for** in the sense of (*as*) *compared with*, 48 *f*, 808, 1235;  
before name of measure of time, 66, 1333.
- before** adj. conv. into nouns, 387, 417 *ff*;  
in *for the* + superl., 495;

- after *the* + compar., 505;  
 as var. of conj. *as* fol. by noun  
   with or without indef. art., 646;  
 in *for a fact*, 646;  
 in *for my* (or *our*) (*own*) *part*, *for*  
   *myself* (or *ourselves*), 817;  
 fol. by pers. pron., the comb. equiv.  
   to pred. pos. pron., 828;  
 superfluous before emph. refl. pron.,  
   871 *f*;  
 before emph. refl. pron., 872;  
 before phrases den. measure of  
   time, 910;  
 in *for all that* (or *this*), 915, 1031;  
 before *such*, 936 *f*;  
 after *what*, 948;  
 before *what* in adv. cl. of restriction,  
   989;  
 in *for all the world*, 1031;  
 in *for a little*, 1102.  
**forbid** drop. thing- or person-obj. or  
   both, 740 *f*.  
**force** (*noun*) constr. as sing. or plur., 288.  
**force** (*verb*) drop. *it*, 741;  
   fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**forceps** mistaken for a plur., 137.  
**fore** base of *former* and *foremost*,  
   428, 461;  
   base of *further* and *furthest*, 438;  
   used as adv. or adj., 461 *f*;  
   in *to the fore*, 461;  
   oppos. of *aft*, 461;  
   oppos. of *back* or *hind*, 461, 464.  
**foreign** form. comp. with partic., 358 *f*.  
**foremost** as superl. of *fore*, 428, 461 *ff*;  
   fol. by prop-word *one*, 1286;  
   part. conv. into noun, 1338.  
**forewoman** as fem. of *foreman*, 1337.  
**forfeits** as plur. tant., 154.  
**forget** drop. *it*, 735;  
   with or without *it*, 736;  
   fol. by refl. pron., 839;  
   fol. by emph. refl. pron., 871.  
**forgive** drop. *it*, 741.  
**forlorn** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**form** (*up*) with or without refl. pron.,  
   848.  
**forme-fader** old form for *fore-father*,  
   428.  
**former** part. conv. into noun, 405,  
   420 *f*;  
   formed from superl. base, 428;  
   as compar. of *fore*, 461 *ff*, 1339 *f*;  
   as correl. of *latter*, 442, 444, 462 *f*;  
   var. with *first*, 464, 1260;  
   in *the former*, equiv. to *he*, 889;  
   as demonstr. equiv., 916.  
   disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**formerly** as deriv. from *former*, 461.  
**forsaken** den. single indiv., 401.  
**Fort** before prop. name disp. with  
   art., 586.  
**forth** not the base of *further* and  
   *furthest*, 438;  
   in *from this day forth*, 911.  
**fortnight** = *fourteen night*, 305.  
**Fortune** disp. with gen. art., 598.  
**fortune's** as plur. tant., 202.  
**forswear** fol. by refl. pron., 842;  
   in *to be sworn*, 843.  
**forward** in *from this day forward*, 911.  
**four** in *four-in-hand*, 1238.  
   in *four-horsed carriage*, 1238.  
   den. a party of four pers., 1242.  
   in *on all four(s)*, 1245.  
   in *all fours*, 1245;  
   in *four double*, 1267.  
**fowl** prec. by def. art. den. class, 243;  
   as unchanged plur., 252 *f*, 282.  
**fowling-piece** ref. to by fem. pron., 338.  
**fox** as unchanged plur., 252;  
   ref. to by masc. pron., 330.  
**fractions** used adnom., 269;  
   constr. as sing or plur., 299;  
   how expr., 1258 *f*;  
   used adv., 1259.  
**Fräulein** with def. art. art. before  
   prop. name, 1343.  
**freedom** ref. to by fem. pron., 336.  
**Frenchman** used pred., 29;  
   prec. by def. art. den. the French  
   nation, 243.  
**frenzy** with or without indef. art., 617.  
**friend** used pred., 27, 642;  
   in certain loc., 234 *f*, 280;  
   with or without indef. art., 642;  
   fol. by prop. name, 648;  
   disp. with pos. pron., 815.

- friendly** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**friendship** with or without indef. art., 617.  
**from** as subst. for gen., 42, 83 *f*;  
 in var. expr., 680 *f*, 1171;  
 in *from this day* (*forth* or *forward*), 911;  
 after (*an*) *other*, 1181, 1183.  
**front** in *in (the) front of*, 681, 1344;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 796.  
**fruit(s)** as plur. tant., 202 *ff*;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 295.  
**fry** constr. as sing. or plur., 295 *f*, 1336.  
**full** in *at (or to) the full*, 408, 679;  
 in *the full of the season*, 413;  
 in *at (or in) full*, 417, 679;  
 in *at its full*, 497.  
**full-length** equiv. to *full-length picture*, 1283.  
**fume** prec. by indef. art., 617.  
**fumes** as plur. tant., 180 *f*.  
**functions** id., 204.  
**fundamental(s)** id., 161 *f*;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
**funds** as plur. tant., 204.  
**funk** prec. by indef. art., 617.  
**funeral** instead of *funeral's*, 107.  
**fungus** two plur., 127.  
**fur** vulg. for *far*, 438.  
**furries** as plur. tant., 181, 204.  
**furniture** constr. as sing. or plur., 296.  
**further** comp. of *far*, but derived from *fore*, 438;  
 comp. with *farther*, 438;  
 var. with *other*, 439, 1178;  
 used subst. in the sense of *more*, 439, 441;  
 as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
 var. with *more*, 1118 *f*;  
 in *no further* + adj., 1147.  
**furthermore** as cumulative compar., 428;  
 as compar. of *far*, 438 *f*;  
**furthermost** formed from compar., 428.  
**further than** in the mean. of *beyond*, 440.  
**furthest** the compar. of *far*, but derived from *fore*, 438;  
 in *at (the) furthest*, 499, 679.  
**future** tot. or part. conv. into noun, 382, 416 *f*;  
 in *in future*, 416, 679.  
**gaiety** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794.  
**gains** as plur. tant., 204.  
**gallant** used to indic. sex, 351;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
**galligaskins** as plur. tant., 149 *f*.  
**gallows** as plur. tant., 176, 181, 300;  
 in comp., 267.  
**galore** partaking of the funct. of indef. num., 660, 1343.  
**gamblers** used pred., 27.  
**game** used attrib., 15;  
 used pred., 25;  
 prec. by *much*, etc. or *little*, etc., 282;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 296.  
**game** used attrib., 15.  
**gardens** as plur. tant. 204 *f*, 299 *f*.  
**gateway** instead of *gateway's*, 103.  
**gather** fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857.  
**gather together** fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**gaur** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**gawky** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**gay** id., 384.  
**general** in subst., comp., 142;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 385;  
 in *in general*, 417 *f*, 679.  
**generals** before more than one prop. name, 147.  
**generality** constr. as plur., 288.  
**generalization** of a class of pers., 387;  
 may be attended by some limitation, 388;  
 symbolized by def. art., 519 *f*, 587 *ff*.  
**generation** constr. as sing. or plur., 288.  
**genitive**, 30 *ff*, 1333 *f*;  
 either individualizing or clas., 96;  
 comp. with com. case, 94, 101 *ff*, 108, 269, 1333;  
 before adj. part. conv. into nouns, 388;  
 as antec. of rel. pron., 965;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1283.  
**genius** two plur., 125, 127.

- gentle** tot. conv. into noun, 383, 421.  
**gentleman** used attrib., 13, 17;  
 in clas. gen., 91;  
 used to indic. sex, 349 f;  
 in pregn. mean., 521;  
 in a *gentleman* partaking of the funct.  
 of indef. pron., 1210 f;  
 disp. with indef. or def. art., 1211.  
 without def. art. before prop. name,  
 1343.  
**gentry** prec. by num., 281;  
 constr. as plur., 288, 296;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591.  
**genuine** equiv. to *genuine article*, 368.  
**geographical names** with or without  
 art., 584 ff.  
**German** in *of the Germans German*,  
 521, 1341.  
**gerunds** used attrib., 21;  
 mod. by gen., 59 f;  
 in concr. sense as plur. tant., 157 ff;  
 den. separate instances of repeated  
 phenomena in plur., 240, 242.  
**Gessler** in clas. gen., 94.  
**get** with or without refl. pron., 854 f;  
 in *to get lost*, 856.  
**gewgaws** as plur. tant., 176, 181.  
**ghost** ref. to by neut. or masc. pron., 328.  
**giant** used attrib., 5, 13, 16;  
 in clas. gen., 91, 104;  
 instead of *giant's*, 105.  
**giantesss**, 341.  
**gib-cat** instead of *he-cat*, 351.  
**gift** used attrib., 15;  
 prec. by indef. art., 695.  
**gifted** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**giraffe** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**girl** in clas. gen., 90;  
 used to indic. sex, 349.  
**given** in the funct. of indef. pron.,  
 1205, 1207.  
**give up** drop. *it*, 741;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**Gladstone** used attrib., 6, 17.  
**glance** in *at (or in) a (or one) glance*,  
 525 f.  
**glanders** as plur. tant., 153, 299.  
**glass** used pred., 23.  
**glasses** as plur. tant., 148, 205.  
**globe** in gen., 52.  
**God** used pred., 23.  
**gold** used attrib., 10;  
 used pred., 23.  
**golden** used attrib., 8, 9;  
 used pred., 360.  
**golden yellow**, 11.  
**goldfish** ref. to by neut. pron., 330.  
**Goldsmith** in *this Goldsmith of Gold-*  
*smith*, 1342.  
**good-for-nothing** used attrib., 21.  
**goodish** in *a goodish few*, 1095.  
**goods** as plur. tant., 165, 167 f, 300;  
 in adnom. comp., 267 f.  
**good** in *good form (fun or strategy)*  
 used pred., 24;  
 before num. den. approx., 305;  
 tot. or part. conv. into noun, 366 ff,  
 380, 384, 386 f, 424, 679;  
 in *a good deal*, 509;  
 in *for good*, 367, 679, 1014;  
 in *all the good in life*, 1020;  
 in *a good few*, 1095;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1277;  
 in *good men and true*, 1284 f.  
**goose** instead of *goose's* 107;  
 with mutation plur., 119 f;  
 with reg. plur., 120.  
**gorge** with or without refl. pron., 848.  
**gout** with or without gen. art., 600.  
**Government** used attrib., 18;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 288;  
 constr. first as sing., then as plur., 298;  
 disp. with art., 553.  
**governor general** plur. of, 142.  
**grace** disp. with art., 531, 672.  
**graces** as plur. tant., 205.  
**gradual beginning** of initial vowels  
 affecting form of certain words, 514 f.  
**Græme** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**grandame** fol. by prop. name, 648.  
**Grand Duchess** with def. art. before  
 prop. name, 653.  
**Grand Duke** id., 653.  
**grandfather** used attrib., 13.  
**grass-hopper** ref. to by masc. pron.,  
 330 f.  
**gratitude** with or without indef. art.,  
 617.



- great** as emotional adj., 354;  
 as var. of *much*, 436;  
 in *a great deal*, 509;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**greater** as var. of *more*, 437;  
 in *the greater part*, 493.  
**greatest** in *the greatest part*, 493.  
**greaves** as plur. tant., 150.  
**greens** id., 165, 168.  
**grief** prec. by indef. art., 617.  
**grieve** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.  
**gripes** as plur. tant., 153.  
**grips** in *to be at grips (with)*, 235.  
**gross** (*noun*) unaltered for plur., 258, 260.  
**gross** (*adj.*) part. conv. into noun, 408.  
**ground** in *to hold (or maintain) one's ground*, 835.  
**grounds** as plur. tant., 154, 205.  
**group** *gen.*, 33 ff.  
**group** constr. as sing., 288.  
**grouse** as unchanged plur., 253.  
**grown-up** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**grudge** fol. by refl. pron., 856.  
**guanaca** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**guard** (*col. noun*) constr. as sing. or plur., 289.  
**guard** (*name of pers.*) disp. with def. art., 551.  
**guard** (*abstr. noun*) prec. by indef. art., 617;  
 disp. with art., 672;  
 with or without pos. pron., 812.  
**guardian** instead of *guardian's*, 105.  
**Guards** as plur. tant., 205.  
**Guardsmen** sing. corresp. to the plur. tant. *Guards*, 205.  
**guess** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 618.  
**guess** (*verb*) fol. by pron. *as much*, 779.  
**Guildhall** prec. by def. art., 579.  
**gull** as unchanged plur., 253.  
**gums** as plur. tant., 151.  
**guns** in cert. loc., 235;  
 understood after num., 1244.  
**guts** as plur. tant., 151.  
**gymnastic** in comp., 268.  
**gymnastics** as plur. tant., 162.  
**h** silent or aspirated, 515 ff, 706;  
 its character determining the form of prec. indef. art., 515 ff;  
 thrown off in stressless pos. 706;  
 lost in neut. pron., 706.  
**habit** fol. by *with*, 82, 824;  
 with def. or indef. art., 695.  
**had better** with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 761.  
**haddock** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**Hades** disp. with art., 566.  
**had rather** with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 761.  
**Hainault** with or without art., 569.  
**hair** in gen. 69;  
 in cert. loc., 235 f.  
**hake** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**halcyon** used attrib., 14.  
**half** in cert. loc., 236;  
 disp. with def. art., 663 ff;  
 losing prep. *of*, 663 ff;  
 in *by half*, 665;  
 mod. gen., 701;  
 before pos. pron., 803;  
 in *to cut in(to) half* and sim. expr., 1239;  
 in fractions, 1258 f;  
 used adv., 1260;  
 in *half as much again*, 1265;  
 in *half a one*, 1292.  
**half-a-dozen** in *six of one and half-a-dozen of the other*, 563.  
 understood as num., 1229.  
**half-a-score** understood as num., 1229.  
**half-dozen** id., 1229.  
**half-dozen** as colloquial ord. num., 1255.  
**half-score** understood as num., 1229.  
**halibut** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**hall** disp. with def. art., 540;  
 in comp. prop. names with or without def. art., 579, 581.  
**hallows** as plur. tant., 178.  
**halt** part. conv. into noun, 406;  
**halt** (*abstr. noun*) with or without indef. art., 618.  
**hammer and tongs** disp. with art., 682.  
**hand** in gen., 54 f, 69;

- disp. with def. art. or pos. pron., 672, 812;  
 in *hand and foot*, 682.
- hand('s)-breath** as the name of a measure, 69.
- hand('s)-touch** as the name of a measure, 69.
- hands** in var. loc., 812, 1021.
- hang-dog** used attrib., 13.
- hangings** as plur. tant., 158.
- harbour** disp. with def. art., 541;  
 prec. by prop name disp. with def. art., 585.
- hards** as plur. tant., 156, 299.
- hare** as unchanged plur., 582;  
 ref. to by masc., fem. or neut. pron., 331.
- hark** in imper. fol. by *thee*, 864.
- harm** in *harm's way*, 54 *f*;  
 with or without indef. art., 618.
- hatred** with or without indef. art., 618;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 787.
- haul** in *at a haul*, 525.
- Havana** with or without def. art., 570.
- have** in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;  
 in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 *ff*;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial etc., 771 *ff*;  
 in *I* (or *he*, etc.) *will (have) none of it* (or *them*, etc.), 1156 *f*.
- haven** prec. by prop. name disp. with art., 585.
- have-not** tot. conv. into noun, 384.
- Haymarket** not disp. with art., 580.
- hazards** in *at all hazards*, 1045.
- hazel** used attrib., 15;  
 used pred., 23.
- he** used to indic. sex, 350, 352;  
 as noun, 351; 724;  
 in *He-Bible*, 352;  
 instead of *him*, 721 *f*, 941, 1345;  
 as determ. pron., 726 *ff*, 987;  
 comp. with *it*, 731 *ff*;  
 with indef. mean., 877 *f*, 1173, 1213;  
 ambiguous, 888 *f*;  
 as correl. of *the other* or *another*, 1173.
- head** unaltered for plur., 122, 264;  
 as individualizer, 274;  
 disp. with def. art., 666;  
 in *head and shoulder*, 682,  
 in *over head and ears*, 683;
- head** (*geogr. name*) prec. by prop. name disp. with def. art., 585.
- headmost** as superl. of noun, 2.
- headquarters** as plur. tant., 219 *f*, 299 *f*;  
 used aduom., 268;  
 disp. with def. art., 541.
- head-waiter** disp. with def. art., 551.
- heaps** as plur. tant., 205.
- hear** drop. *it*, 735, 741;  
 fol. by pron. *so*, 743;  
 prec. by pron. *so*, 745;  
 fol. by *it*, 746;  
 drop. pron. *so* or *it*, 749;  
 fol. by pron. *so much*, 779;  
 fol. by redundant *me*, 831;  
 in imper. fol. by *thee*, 864.
- hearing** prec. by indef. art., 609.
- heart** in gen., 54;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 792;  
 in var loc., 812;  
 equiv. to *anybody*, 1041, 1345.
- heart and soul** disp. with art., 682.
- heartsease** var. with other spellings, 95.
- heat** prec. by indef. art., 618.
- heathen** used pred., 28;  
 prec. by def. art. den. class. of pers., 243 *f*.
- heaven** with and without art., 566 *f*;  
 in *Heaven and earth*, 693.
- Heaven** ref. to by neut. pron., 329;  
 disp. with art., 566 *f*.
- heavens** as plur. tant., 205 *f*;  
 prec. by art., 567.
- heels** in var. loc., 813.
- Heer** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 653.
- height** in *at* + pos. pron. (or *the*) *height*, 497.
- heir** used pred., 27;  
 also fem., 352.
- heir-apparent** plural of, 142.
- heir-at-law** id., 143.

- Hell** disp. with art., 566.  
**help** fol. by refl. pron., 839;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron., 871;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1311.  
**helpless** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.  
**hem** instead of *them*, 723.  
**hemp(en)** used attrib., 6, 7.  
**hen** used attrib., 17;  
 ref. to by neut. pron., 331;  
 used to den. sex, 350.  
*hendiadys*, 315, 508, 1171, 1249, 1323.  
**her** (*pos. pron.*) as gen. suffix, 38, 1333.  
**Her Ladyship** var. with *My Lady*, 780.  
**her** (*pers. pron.*) instead of *she*, 720 f;  
 used as noun, 725;  
 used as determ. pron., 727, 941.  
**herd** constr. as sing. or plur., 289;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591.  
**here** as vulgarism after demonstr. pron., 924 f.  
**here is** before plur. subj., 307 f;  
 in laudatory phrases, 915;  
 in sent. with rel. understood, 999 f.  
**here was** in sent. with rel. understood, 999 f.  
**hern** vulg. for *hers*, 785.  
**herring** not. an unchanged plur., 255.  
**herself** in Anglo-Irish equiv. to *the mistress of the house*, 867.  
**Here was** before plur. subj., 307 f.  
**hide** with or without refl. pron., 848;  
 fol. by *from* + refl. pron., 857.  
**hie** in imper. fol. by *thee*, 864.  
**high** in *on high*, 679.  
**High Church** used pred., 24.  
**higher** as var. of *more*, 437.  
**high(er)most** instead of *highest*, 1338,  
**highest** part. conv. into noun, 414,  
 415, 420;  
 in *highest northern*, 473;  
 prec. by def. art. den. the Supreme Being, 479;  
 in *at the highest*, 500;  
 in *at highest tension*, 679;  
 in pos. pron. + *highest possible*, 1286.  
**High Street** with or without art., 577 f.  
**him** instead of *he*, 720;  
 used as noun, 725 f;  
 used as determ. pron., 726 ff, 941;  
 instead of *he whom*, 729;  
 in indef. mean., 1173;  
 as correl. of *the other* or *another*, 1173.  
**Himalayas** as plur. tant., 174.  
**himself** instead of *oneself*, 830;  
 in Anglo-Irish equiv. to *the master of the house*, 867.  
**hind** as the oppos. of *fore*, 461;  
 how comp., 464 f.  
**hinder** as the compar. of *hind*, 464 f;  
 never var. with superl., 492.  
**hind(er)most** as superl. of *hind*, 464 f.  
**hine** old. accus. of *he*, 723.  
**hip and thigh** disp. with art., 682.  
**his** as gen. suf., 38;  
 as pos. pron., 783 ff;  
 instead of *its*, 785;  
 in determ. funct., 807, 965, 1213;  
 with indef. mean., 965, 1173, 1213.  
 as correl. of *this other's*, 1173.  
**His Lordship** var. with *My Lord*, 780.  
**hish** vulgar for *his*, 785.  
**history** disp. with gen. art., 598;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 792.  
**hither** as oppos. of *farther* (or *further*)  
 and *other*, 439, 441, 1178;  
 as demonstr. equiv., 916.  
**hold** approx. to copula, 854.  
**holiday** with or without indef. art., 618.  
**holidays** as plur. tant., 200.  
**holy** in *the Holy of Holies*, 380;  
 in *Holy Church* (*Kirk*, *Week*, *Writ*), 578 f;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275.  
**home** used attrib., 20;  
 disp. with gen. art., 605.  
**homeward-bound** tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**Honduras** with or without art., 569.  
**honours** as plur. tant., 206 f.  
**hoof** two plur., 117.  
**hook** used attrib., 15.  
**hooks** in *off the hooks*, 236.  
**hope** (*noun*) with or without def. or indef. art., 695 f, 703.  
**hope** (*verb*) fol. by pron. *so*, 743;  
 fol. by *that*, 746;

- fol. by incompl. cl., 748;  
dropping pron. *so*, 749.
- hopeful** in obj. or subj. mean., 363.
- hops** as plur. tant., 155.
- horror** prec. by indef. art., 618.
- horrors** as plur. tant., 153, 207.
- horse** as unchanged plur., 256;  
in the sense of *cavalry* prec. by  
num., 282;  
disp. with art., 672;  
in *horse and foot*, 682;  
understood after num., 1238.
- horseflesh(-meat)** instead of *horse's-  
flesh(-meat)*, 107.
- horsepower** unaltered for plur., 262.
- horse's master** comp. with *Master of  
the Horse*, 77.
- hos(en)** as irregul. plur., 120 *ff*.
- hospital** disp. with art., 531;  
in comp. prop. names with or without  
art., 582.
- host(ess)** in *mine host(ess)*, 783.
- hostage** used attrib., 16.
- (h)ostler** disp. with art., 551.
- hot** in *hot and hot*, 1341.
- hotel** in comp. prop. names retaining  
art., 579, 581.
- Hotspur** prec. by art., 570.
- hottest** part. conv. into noun, 414.
- hounds** in *to ride to hounds*, 672.
- hour** in clas. gen., 93;  
in *hour by hour* in sent. den. gradual  
increase of some qual., 503;  
understood after num., 1237 *f*.
- hours** as plur. tant., 207;  
in *at (or until) all hours*, 1045 *f*.
- house** in *to keep (the or one's) house*,  
672, 813.
- House** constr. first as sing. then as  
plur., 298;  
in *this (that or the other) House*, 894.
- household** constr. as sing. or plur., 289.
- House of Commons** used attrib., 20;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 289.
- House of Lords** constr. as plur., 289.
- how** var. with *what*, 950;  
fol. by adj. + *a one*, 1292.
- however** in quest., 1222;  
fol. by adj. + *a one*, 1292.
- howsoever** in conc. cl., 1219.
- howsom(d)ever** vulg. for *however*,  
1215.
- huff** prec. by indef. art., 618.
- hulks** as plur. tant., 207.
- human** tot. conv. into noun, 371.
- humanity** constr. as sing., 289;  
disp. with gen. art., 592.
- humankind** disp. with gen. art., 592.
- husband** understood after ord. num.,  
1257.
- human** emphas. neg. notion of *no*, 1128.
- humble** formerly pronounced with  
silent *h*, 516.
- humour** prec. by indef. art., 618.
- hundred** unaltered for plur., 258, 260,  
1225;  
prec. by indef. art. or another num.,  
1225, 1351;  
in dates, 1228;  
in *a hundred and one* den. indef.  
large number, 1234;  
used as pure noun, 1241, 1244.
- hunter** in clas. gen., 92.
- huntress**, 341.
- hurry** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 619.
- hurry** (*verb*) with or without refl.  
pron., 848.
- husks** as plur. tant., 157.
- hustings** as plur. tant., 207, 300;  
in comp., 267.
- Huxley** used attrib., 19.
- Hyades** as plur. tant., 175.
- hyphen** in comp. nouns, 22.
- hysterics** as plur. tant., 162.
- I** replaced by *me*, 715 *ff*;  
instead of *me*, 722, 1345;  
in *between you and I*, 721 *f*, 1345;  
used as noun, 724 *f*.
- idea** prec. by indef. art., 696;  
fol. by *with*, 824.
- identical** in the mean. of *same*, 931.
- identifying noun-pre icates** comp.  
with descriptive, 730 *ff*.
- ides** as plur. tant., 173.
- idiot** used attrib., 13.
- if** fol. by *not* constituting with it  
incompl. cl., 771;



- fol. by *so*, 771, 778;  
 prec. by inter. *what*, 951.  
*ill* (*adj.*) in the sense of *out of health*  
 used attrib., 362;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 386 *f*;  
 how comp., 430.  
*ilk* in *of that* (*the, his* etc.) *ilk*, 930.  
*illiterate* tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
*ill-will* prec. by indef. art., 619.  
*image* (*noun*) fol. by *of* + pers. pron.,  
 823.  
*image* (*verb*) fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857.  
*imaginative* tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
*imagine* fol. by pron. *so*, 743.  
*imbecile* tot. conv. into noun, 370.  
*immortal* id., 370.  
*imp* used pred., 23.  
*importance* prec. by indef. art., 609.  
*imports* as plur. tant., 207 *f*.  
*impression* prec. by indef. art., 696.  
*improve* fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
*in* (*prep.*) fol. by noun indic. sub-  
 stance, 12;  
 before subst. gen., 36;  
 as subst. for gen., 84;  
 before cert. adj. part. conv. into noun,  
 417 *ff*;  
 in *in little*, 418.  
 in phrases den. period, 441 *f*, 910;  
 in cert. expr. in which it is fol. by  
 indef. art. or num. *one*, 525 *f*;  
 in distrib. expr., 529 *f*;  
 before name of period, 545, 605;  
 before cert. nouns with or without  
 indef. art., 685;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron., 872;  
 in *in (a) few*, 1096 *f*;  
 in *in a little*, 1102;  
 in distrib. expr., 1232 *f*, 1243;  
 in *in* + pos. pron. + card. num.  
 conv. into pure noun, 1242.  
*in* (*adv.*) how comp., 465 *f*;  
 used attrib., 465;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 465.  
*incapable* tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
*inch* in adnom. comp., 267;  
 in *every inch of* + pers. pron., 813.  
 understood after num., 1236.  
*incident* in col. sense, 248.  
*incidental* tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
*inclination* prec. by indef. art., 619.  
*inclusive superlative*, 512, 1028.  
*inclusive meaning*, 512, 1028, 1181.  
*incomings* as plur. tant., 158.  
*incompetent* tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
*inconstant* id., 371.  
*increase* mod. by num. of multiplic.,  
 1268.  
*incurable* tot. conv. into noun, 371.  
*indefinite* comp. with generalized,  
 519, 595, 692.  
*indefinite art.* disp. with by pred.  
 nouns, 25;  
 before plur. nouns, 300, 305 *f*, 1337;  
 before num. + plur. noun, 304 *f*;  
 used to expr. approx. estimate, 305,  
 529;  
 before adj. + name of colour, 380;  
 var. with def. art., 523 *f*, 529;  
 the descendant of Old Eng. *an*,  
 524 *f*;  
 equival. to the num. *one*, 525 *ff*;  
 equival. to *some* or *a certain*, 527 *f*,  
 1173;  
 before prop. name of person prec.  
 by title, 528;  
 in distrib. sense, 529;  
 before prop. names of persons used  
 as war-cries, 564;  
 mod. subst. *all*, 1018;  
 before or after *much* mod. compar.,  
 1114 *f*;  
 before *not* + adj. + noun, 1139;  
 div. noun from *no* + comp., 1140;  
 fol. by num. *one*, 1250, 1253;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275.  
*independent adjectives*, 359.  
*indentures* as plur. tant., 208.  
*indescribles* id., 161.  
*index* plur. of, 125, 128.  
*Indies* as plur. tant., 175.  
*indifferent* tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
*indignation* with or without indef.  
 art., 619.  
*individual* comp. with *each*, 1066.  
*individualizers*, 273 *f*.  
*individualizing genitive*, 40 *ff*;  
*individualizing adjectives*, 354;

- individualizing adjuncts*, 518 *f*.  
**indulge** with or without refl. pron., 849.  
**inevitable** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**infant** used attrib., 1, 5, 6, 13;  
     instead of *infant's*, 105;  
     ref. to by pron. of dif. gend., 326 *f*;  
     antec. of var. rel. pron., 974.  
**Infanta** with def. art. before prop. name, 654.  
**infantry** prec. by num., 282.  
**inferior** equiv. to compar., 427.  
**Infidel** used pred., 28.  
**Infinite** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.  
**influence** with or without indef. art., 619.  
**inform** fol. by pron. *so*, 743;  
     prec. by pron. *so*, 745.  
**information** in col. sense, 245.  
**in front of** fol. by refl. pron., 859.  
**infuriate** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**inheritress(-trix)**, 341, 344.  
**injured** den. single indiv., 401.  
**injustice** prec. by indef. art., 619.  
**inly** as derivative from *in*, 465.  
**inmost** as superl. of *in*, 465 *f*.  
**inn** prec. by prop. name taking def. art., 579.  
**inner** as compar. of *in*, 465;  
     never var. with superl., 492.  
**innerest** as archaic superlat., 428.  
**innerly** as derivative from *inner*, 464.  
**innermost** formed from compar., 428, 465 *f*.  
**innings** how constr., 157 *f*, 299 *f*.  
**innocent** tot. conv. into noun, 372;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277;  
     disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**inquire** fol. by *of* + refl. pron., 857.  
**inseparable** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**inseparables** as plur. tant., 162.  
**insight** with or without indef. art., 619.  
**insignia** as plur. tant., 171, 173, 300.  
**insolent** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**insolvent** id., 372.  
**instant** in *upon the instant*, 521;  
     in *this instant*, 912.  
**instead** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 797.  
**instructress**, 341.  
**intellectual(s)** as plur. tant., 162;  
     tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**intelligence** in col. sense, 245.  
**intend** fol. by *it*, 763.  
**intended** tot. conv. into noun, 403.  
**interest** (*noun*) with or without indef. art., 619 *f*.  
**interest** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**intermittent** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**intestines** as plur. tant., 151.  
**intimate** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**into** before subst. gen., 36.  
**intoxicate** fol. by refl. pron., 841.  
**intransitiveness** comp. with reflexiveness and passiveness, 855 *f*.  
**introduce** implying recipr. not., 1071.  
**invective** in col. sense, 248.  
**inversion** in corrob. sent., 768;  
     in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 *ff*;  
     in sent. expr. affirmation, 774.  
**invisibles** as plur. tant., 162.  
**ior** suf. of foreign comp., 427, 1339.  
**Irish** in *Irish of the Irish*, 1341.  
**iron** used attrib., 10;  
     prec. by *of*, 10;  
     used pred., 25.  
**irons** as plur. tant., 150, 208.  
**irreconcilable(s)** as plur. tant., 162;  
     tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**irrepressible** tot. conv. into noun, 372.  
**irrepressibly** fol. by pron. *so*, 753.  
**Islam** disp. with gen. art., 592.  
**island** prec. by prop. name disp. with art., 586.  
**it** (*pers. pron.*) repres. subst. cl. con. with plur. nom. part. of pred., 279;  
     id. governing sing. pred., 320 *f*;  
     ref. to nouns of dif. gend., 325;  
     ref. to children, 326 *f*;  
     instead of pron. of the 2nd pers., 326;  
     ref. to grown-up pers., 328, 702, 903;  
     ref. to creatures of the imagination, 328;  
     when stressed, 706 *f*;  
     curtailed into *'t*, 707;  
     as determ. pron., 730;  
     comp. with sex-indic. pron., 730 *ff*;  
     suppr. when repres. subord. quest., 735 *ff*;

- id. when repr. subord. stat., 736 *ff*;  
 after *to do*, 795 *ff*;  
 after *to intend*, *to like*, *to will*, *to wish*, 763;  
 equiv. to *do so* after *to*, 764;  
 prec. by part. *of*, 804, 823;  
 as var. of *this* or *that*, 898;  
 in *just it*, 916;  
 as anticip. subj., 986.
- it** (*indef. pron.*), 1097 *f*.  
**it** (*pos. pron.*), used in Early Mod. Eng., 785 *f*.  
**item** as individualizer, 274.  
**it is** as introductory phrase, 320 *f*, 709, 715, 726, 732, 986, 1000;  
 in sent. with rel. understood, 100;  
 fol. by noun prec. by *no*, 1130.  
**it's** contr. from *it is*, 707;  
 Early Mod. Eng. form of pron. *its*, 785.  
**its** a late formation, 785;  
 as abs. pos. pron., 824;  
 as indef. pron., 1097 *f*.  
**itself** in Anglo-Irish equiv. to *even*, 867.
- jack** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**jack-ass** instead of *male ass*, 351.  
**jackdaw**, 351.  
**jaeger** in clas. gen., 94.  
**jail** disp. with art., 541.  
**jaws** as plur. tant., 208.  
**jenny-ass** instead of *female ass*, 351.  
**jenny-wren**, 351.  
**jerks** as plur. tant., 153.  
**jew** used attrib., 16;  
 also fem., 343, 353.  
**jeweller** in clas. gen., 92.  
**jewess**, 353.  
**jinks** as plur. tant., 208.  
**jinnee** as var. of *genie*, 25.  
**Job** in clas. gen., 94.  
**joint** not used pred., 361.  
**journey** in gen., 54 *f*;  
 prec. by indef. art., 620.  
**journeyings** as plur. tant., 158.  
**j(o)usts** id., 177, 181, 300.  
**judge** in clas. gen., 92.  
**jumps** as plur. tant., 153.  
**junior** tot. conv. into noun, 378;  
 equiv. to compar., 42b;  
 understood as pos. degree, 491.
- jury** constr. as plur. or sing., 283, 289.  
**just** how comp., 480 *f*, 1340;  
 in *just so* (or *it*), 916;  
 mod. *the same*, 928;  
 comp. with *of all things* (or *men*, etc.), 1028.
- juvenile** tot. conv. into noun, 372.
- keep** with or without refl. pron., 848 *f*;  
 approx. to cop., 854;  
 in *to keep oneself to oneself*, 871, 1347.
- Kent** equiv. to *Kent team*, 294.
- kettle** ref. to by fem. pron., 338.
- key** in *in key for*, 672.
- kickshaws** corrupted from *quelque chose*, 139 *f*.
- killed** part. conv. into noun, 405 *f*.
- kin** constr. as plur., 296.
- kind** (*noun*) fol. by *of* + plur. noun constr. as plur., 307;  
 prec. by plur. demonstr., 309;  
 in *of the kind*, 522;  
 in *after* (or *of*) *a kind*, 527, 686;  
 fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 685;  
 after *what*, 947 *f*;  
 in *anything* (*nothing* or *something*) *of the kind*, 1319.
- kind** (*adj.*) fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- kindred** used attrib., 19.
- kine** as archaic plur., 120 *f*.
- King** before prop. name equiv. to *Royal*, 147;  
 id. with or without def. art., 654.
- King's English** comp. with its analytical equiv., 77.
- King's evidence** not capable of being replaced by its analytical equiv., 47.
- kingfisher** ref. to by masc. pron., 331.
- King's Majesty** comp. with its analytical equiv., 47.
- King William** in clas. gen., 94.
- kinsman** used attrib., 16.
- knack** prec. by indef. art., 620, 606.
- knave** used pred., 23;  
 in clas. gen., 91.
- knee-smalls**(-shorts) as plur. tant., 150.

- knight-banneret** plur. of, 144.  
**knight-errant** id., 142.  
**knight-hospitaller** id., 144.  
**knight-templar** id., 145.  
**knock-down** used attrib., 20.  
**knocking** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**know** drop. *it*, 735;  
     with or without *it* (or *that*), 736 *f*;  
     in cert. loc., 736;  
     fol. by prom. *so*, 738;  
     fol. by curtailed cl., 738 *f*;  
     fol. by pron. *as much* (or *so much*), 778.  
**knowledge** in col. sense, 245;  
     prec. by indef. art., 528, 620.  
**labour** ref. to by fem. pron., 336.  
**lady** as gen., 40;  
     in clas. gen., 92;  
     etymology of, 345;  
     used to indic. sex, 349;  
     with or without def. art. before prop. name, 654.  
**Lady-day** comp. with *Lord's day*, 40.  
**lady's-maid** plur. of, 143.  
**laity** prec. by gen. art., 591.  
**Lake** before prop. name disp. with art., 586.  
**land** used attrib., 1333.  
**Landgrave** with def. art. before prop. name, 654.  
**Land's End** with or without art., 580.  
**lares** as plur. tant., 173.  
**large** in *at* (or *in*) *large*, 418, 679;  
     as var. of *much*, 436.  
**largely** equiv. to *a considerable portion*, 1194.  
**larvæ** as plur. tant., 173.  
**last** part. conv. into noun, 405, 414, 415 *f*, 420 *f*;  
     as superl. of *late*, 443, 448 *ff*, 1339;  
     var. with *latter*, 443, 448, 450;  
     in *at* (*the*) *last*, 500 *f*, 679;  
     occas. def. art. to be disp. with, 555 *f*;  
     in phrases den. epoch immediately prec. moment of the past, 449, 556;  
     prec. by *this* or *these*, 893;  
     prec. by *that* or *those*, 893, 897;  
     in *for the last ten* (etc.) *days*, 910;  
     as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.  
**last-named** den. single indiv., 401;  
     used attrib. as var. of *latter*, 442, 451.  
**late** how comp., 441 *ff*;  
     comp. with Dutch *laats te*, 441, 443, 1338;  
     in *of late*, 442, 679.  
**later** as compar. of *late*, 441 *f*, 444, 1338 *f*;  
     in *no later* or *not (any) later*, 1143;  
     disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**latest** as superl. of *late*, 441 *ff*, 447;  
     in *at* (*the*) *latest*, 501, 679.  
**latter** part. conv. into noun, 366, 405, 420 *f*;  
     as compar. of *late* 442, 444, 1339;  
     as correl. of *former*, 442, 444, 462 *f*;  
     as correl. of *first*, 464;  
     var. with *last* 443, 448, 450;  
     prec. by *the* instead of *he*, 889 *f*;  
     prec. by *this* or *these*, 893;  
     prec. by *that* or *those* 893, 897;  
     as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
     var. with *second*, 1260;  
     disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**latterly** as deriv. from *latter*, 442, 446 *f*.  
**lauds** as plur. fant., 181.  
**laugh** prec. by indef. art., 608.  
**laurels** as plur. tant., 208.  
**law** ref. to by masc. or neut. pron., 336 *f*;  
     with or without gen. art., 602 *f*, 1342.  
**lay** comp. with Dutch *leek*, 644.  
**lay down** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.  
**lay out** fol. by refl. pron., 839.  
**lead** used attrib., 6, 701.  
**leaden** used attrib., 6;  
     used pred., 360.  
**leading-strings** as plur. tant., 148, 227.  
**leads** id., 209.  
**leaf** disp. with art., 666, 672.  
**lean** tot. conv. into noun, 379.  
**leash** unaltered for plur. 258.  
**least** (*adj.*) as superl. of *little*, 432.  
**least** (*num.*) before plur., 302 *f*;  
     part. conv. into noun, 414;  
     form. superl. in falling line, 427;  
     in (*in*) *the least*, 495, 1014, 1106;  
     in *at* (*the*) *least*, 501 *f*, 679, 1106;



- disp. with art., 560 *f*;  
 in the sense of *any however small*, 560;  
 in *to say the least of it*, 560;  
 prec. by def. art., the comb. equiv. to *any*, 1040;  
 used conj., absol., subst. or pred., 1105 *f*;  
 in *least said soonest mended*, 1106;  
 in *to say the least*, 1106;  
 emphas. by *of all*, 1106;  
 mod. *more*, 1106.
- leastest** a vulgarism for *least*, 491.
- leather(n)** used attrib., 6, 7.
- leathers** as plur. tant., 209.
- leave** with or without indef. art., 620;  
 with or without pos. pron., 813.
- leavings** as plur. tant., 159.
- leavy** equiv. to material adj., 12.
- lees** as plur. tant., 155, 157, 299.
- left** tot. conv. into noun, 381.
- left-over** id., 385.
- leggings** as plur. tant., 150.
- legion** partaking of the funct. of indef. num., 660, 1213, 1343.
- legitimate** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- lemures** as plur. tant., 173.
- length** mod. by gen., 63;  
 in cert. loc., 237, 672 *f*.
- lenitive** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- Lent** disp. with art., 547.
- less** (*adj.*) as compar. of *little*, 432 *ff*.
- less** (*num.*) ref. to plur., 302 *ff*, 1337, 1350;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*, 1104;  
 form. compar. in a falling line, 427;  
 as compar. of *little*, 432 *ff*;  
 in *less and less* (+ adj. or adv.), 503, 1105;  
 fol. by *so*, 753;  
 used conj., abs., subst. or pred., 1104;  
 in *in less than no time*, 1104;  
 equiv. to *minus*, 1104;  
 in *less than* (= *short of*), 1104;  
 in *not* (or *none*) *the less* (= *natheless*, *nevertheless*), 1105;  
 in *not* (or *no*) *less than*, 1105;  
 equiv. to *less frequently*, 1105;  
 in *less than* used attrib., 1105;  
 mod. by adv. of degree, 1105;  
 in *much less* var. with *much more*, 1122, 1350.  
 in *more or less*, 1122 *f*.
- lesser** as compar. of *little*, 432 *ff*, 491;  
 never var. with superl., 492;  
 in *Lesser Asia*, 434, 572;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1289.
- lesson** disp. with the art., 541.
- let** fol. by an ungrammatical nom., 710.
- let's** contr. from *let us*, 708.
- letter** in *in (the) letter*, 673, 1344.
- letters** name of a game, 154;  
 as plur. tant., 209.
- letters-patents** plur. used by *Shak.*, 142.
- level** in *on a level*, 526.
- liege** also fem., 343.
- lieutenant(s)** as first part of comp. noun, 141;  
 before more than one prop. name, 147.
- life** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 792 *f*.
- liabilities** as plur. tant., 209.
- liberal** tot. conv. into noun, 365.
- liberty** ref. to by fem. pron., 336.
- lie down** fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.
- light-foot** used attrib., 4.
- lights** as plur. tant., 209 *f*.
- life** used attrib., 19;  
 in gen., 54 *f*, 93;  
 instead of *life's*, 104;  
 in var. loc. with or without art. or pos. pron., 606 *f*, 813.
- life-and-death** used attrib., 20.
- light** (*adj.*) in *to make light of*, 425.
- light** (*noun*) with or without gen. art., 601.
- lights** as plur. tant., 151.
- like** (*noun*) as plur. tant., 177, 181.
- like** (*adj.*) tot. or part. conv. into noun, 378 *f*, 1181;  
 fol. by obj. 714;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 792, 794;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron., 872;  
 fol. by demonstr. pron., 905;  
 in *like master*, *like man*, 935;  
 as determ. equiv., 941 *f*;  
 before antec. of *that* or *as*, 964;

- mod. by *much*, 1115;  
 in *the like* con. with *other*, 1181;  
 mod. by *anything*, 1310;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1311 *f*;  
 mod. by *something*, 1314.
- like** (*verb*), drop. *it*, 741;  
 with or without *to do so* (or *it*)  
   or *to be so*, 761 *f*;  
 fol. by *that*, 761;  
 fol. by *it*, 763.
- liker, likest**, 478, 1340.
- liking** comp. with *likes*, 182;  
 prec. by indef. art., 609.
- Lindenness** prec. by def. art., 568.
- lineaments** as plur. tant., 182.
- lines** id., 210.
- links** id., 210.
- lion** instead of *lion's*, 107;  
 as unchanged plur., 252;  
 ref. to by masc. pron., 331.
- lioness** adopted from Old French, 342.
- liquid** tot. conv. into noun., 379.
- lists** as plur. tant., 210 *f*.
- litotes**, 1137.
- little** (*adj.*) unusual as pred. adj., 361;  
 in *in little*, 418, 679;  
 how comp., 432 *ff*;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275.
- littler, littlest** usually replaced by  
*smaller, smallest*, 432 *f*.
- little** (*num.*) before plur. 302 *f*;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*, 1098 *f*;  
 fol. by *adj.*, 424;  
 in *to make little of*, 425, 1100;  
 as emotional *adj.* causing def. art.  
   to be dropped before prop. names,  
   575;  
 after rel. *what*, 962;  
 antec. of *that*, 981 *f*;  
 mod. subst. *all*, 1017;  
 in *little enough*, 1077, 1099;  
 used conj., abs., subst. or pred., 1098;  
 form. a unit with its head-word, 1098;  
 in back-position, 1099;  
 mod. by *adv.* or *adnom.* words,  
   1099 *f*;  
 in *to think little of*, 1100;  
 in *by little and little* or *little by*  
   *little*, 1100;
- in *in little*, 1100;  
 as pure noun, 1100;  
 as *adv.*, 1100 *f*;  
 mod. *to know, to think, to care* or  
   syn. of these, 1101;  
 comp. with *some*, 1193.
- live** not used pred., 361.
- living** (*partic.*) part. conv. into noun,  
 405;  
 equiv. to *any*, 1041;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- living** (*noun*) in *for a living*, 698.
- lizard** in clas. gen., 90.
- Lizard** prec. by art., 568.
- lo(a)th** mod. by *nothing*, 1311.
- Loch** before prop. name disp. with  
 art., 586.
- lock, stock and barrel** disp. with art.,  
 682.
- lock and key** id., 683.
- lodgings** as plur. tant., 159;  
 prec. by pos. pron. 826;  
**loins** as plur. tant., 152.
- lone** not used pred., 361;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277;  
**lonely** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277;  
**lonesome** in *on one's lonesome*, 420.
- long** tot. conv. into noun, 385 *f*.
- long and short** and its var., 412, 1338.
- long distance** used attrib., 20.
- longer** in *the longer* in sent. denoting  
 a gradual increase of some quality,  
 506;  
 in *no longer* or *not (any) longer*,  
 1143.
- longest** in *at longest*, 502, 679.
- long-lost** den. single indiv., 402.
- look** (*noun*) fol. by *of* + pers. pron.,  
 793, 795;
- look** (*verb*) fol. by *upon* + refl. pron.,  
 859.  
 in *not much to look at*, 1112.
- looks** as plur. tant., 211.
- loose** prec. by def. art., 408;  
 with or without indef. art., 620.
- lord** in comp. placed in plur. or kept  
 in sing., 144 *f*;  
 etymology of, 345;  
 used to indic. sex, 349;

- with or without def. art., before prop. name, 654.
- Lord** as significant prop. name, 565; disp. with def. art., 566.
- Lord Keeper** disp. with def. art., 551.
- Lord Mayor's Day** id., 548.
- Lord's Day** comp. with *Lady-Day*, 40; comp. with *Day of the Lord*, 77.
- Lord Treasurer** disp. with art., 551.
- Lords in the House of Lords**, 637.
- lorgnettes** as plur. tant., 1335.
- lose** fol. by refl. pron., 839.
- losings** as plur. tant., 159.
- loss** mod. by obj. gen., 61; with or without indef. art., 620.
- lost** den. single indiv., 402; in *to get lost* (= *to lose oneself*), 856; fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- lot** as individualizer, 274.
- lots** as plur. tant., 211; in *to cast* (or *draw*) *lots*, 237.
- Lough** before prop. name disp. with art., 586.
- Louis XVI** used attrib., 17.
- louse** with mutation plur., 119.
- love** ref. to by masc. pron., 336; den. a man as well as a woman, 347 *f*; disp. with the gen. art. when den. personified abstraction, 598; fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 787; in *in love* implying recipr. not., 1071.
- loved** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- lover** as noun of com. gen., 347 *f*.
- lower** disp. with prop-word *one*, 1289.
- lowest** formed from comparat., 428; as var. of *lowest*, 429.
- lowest** in *at the lowest*, 502; in *the lowest stream* (= *the bottom of the stream*), 511.
- low-born** tot. conv. into noun, 403.
- Low Countries** as plur. tant., 175.
- lowest** part. conv. into noun, 416; fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.
- lunch(eon)** disp. with art., 543.
- lying-in** plur. of, 143.
- m** originally a suf. to form superl., 428.
- Macaulay** used attrib., 17.
- mackerel** as unchanged plur., 255.
- Madam(e)** with French plur., 132; disp. with art., 549.
- Maharajah** with def. art. before prop. name, 654.
- mahogany** used attrib., 16.
- maid** used attrib., 17; used to indic. sex, 349.
- maiden** used attrib., 13, 16, 19; instead of *maiden's*, 105.
- maimed** part. conv. into noun, 406.
- main** id., 408.
- major** equiv. to compar., 427; in *the major part* (or *portion*), 493.
- majority** constr. as sing. or plur., 289.
- make** (verb) fol. by nouns with indef. art., 647; fol. by (pro)noun + pron. *so*, 751; with or without refl. pron., 854 *f*; in *to make bold*, 855; in *to make a good husband*, etc., 855; fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857; fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862 *f*; in *to make little* (or *least*) *of*, 1100, 1113; in *to make much* (or *most*) *of*, 1113.
- male** before nouns of com. gen., 349.
- man** used attrib., 17; used pred., 25; in clas. gen., 91 *f*; plur. of, 119 *f*; changed into *men* in plur. of comp., 144; as prop-word after indef. art., 325, 528, 729, 941, 1163, 1210 *ff*, 1306; den. sex, 394 *f*; as prop-word after def. art., 404, 729, 1306; id. after partic., 404; equival. to adj. den. quality in gen. way, 410; in *to a man*, 526; in *as one man*, 527; disp. with art. when used in gen. way, 588 *f*, 1211, 1342. with or without def. art. before prop. name, 657; in *to be one's own man*, 818;

- as prop-word after *other*, 1177, 1305;  
 in *a man* partaking of the funct. of  
 indef. pron., 1210 ff;  
 equiv. to *somebody*, 1211.  
 as prop-word after *any, each, every,*  
*no, one* or *some*, 1305 f;  
 var. with *one* or *body*, 1305;  
 as prop-word after adj., 1306;  
 id. after demonstr. or interrog. pron.,  
 1306.
- manage** dropping *it*, 741.
- manager** also fem., 355.
- manageress**, 341.
- mandatory** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- mane** not col. noun, 266.
- manes** as plur. tant., 173.
- manhood** constr. as sing., 289;  
 disp. with gen. art., 592.
- maniac** instead of *maniac's*, 105.
- manifest** with or without refl. pron.,  
 844.
- manig** the Old Eng. representative of  
*many*, 436.
- mankind** comp. with *menkind*, 145;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 289 f;  
 disp. with gen. art., 592;  
 partaking of the funct. of indef.  
 pron., 1209.
- man-milliner**, 347.
- manner** in *in a manner*, 527;  
 fol. by *of* + noun with or without  
 indef. art., 685 f;  
 after *what*, 947 f.
- manners** used pred., 23;  
 as plur. tant., 211.
- man-of-war** in gen., 56.
- Mansion House** prec. by art., 579.
- many** as nom. part. of the pred. in  
 front-pos. con. with sing. subj., 279,  
 1108 f;  
 how comp., 436 ff;  
 prec. by indef. art., 529;  
 fol. by pos. pron., 805;  
 before *such*, 939, 1297;  
 fol. by indef. art., 1066, 1109 f;  
 in *the many* in spec. mean., 1094, 1107;  
 used conj., absol. or subst., 1106 f;  
 in *so many*, 1106, 1107 f;  
 fol. by superl., 1107, 1137;  
 after its head-word, 1107;  
 in *many fewer* var. with *much fewer*,  
 1107;  
 in *too many* var. with *too much*, 1108;  
 in *one too many*, 1108, 1240;  
 used pred., 1108;  
 in *many (and many) is the time*, 1109;  
 used distr. when fol. by indef. art.,  
 1109;  
 prec. by indef. art., 1110;  
 in *none too many*, 1158;  
 comp. with *some*, 1193;  
 in *many times*, 1266.
- many a** (*as distrib. num.*), 1066, 1109;  
 in *many and many a* + noun, 1109;  
 in *many a one*, 310 f, 1109, 1278,  
 1292 f;  
 in *many another*, 1109;  
 in *many such a one*, 1109;  
 in *this many a day*, 1109;  
 in *many a time and oft* and its  
 variants, 1109, 1350;  
 prec. by *how*, 1350.
- many-headed** as epithet of *the vulgar*,  
 400.
- many times** mod. compar., 509.
- marbles** as plur. tant., 211, 299.
- marchioness** an anglicized foreign.  
 fem., 342.
- mark** fol. by *for* + refl. pron., 857.
- market** disp. with art., 541 f, 605.
- marquee** from a supposed plur., 138.
- Marquess** with or without def. art.  
 before prop. name, 654 f.
- marriage** used attrib., 18.
- masculine** used to den. sex, 351.
- mass** (*as col. noun*) constr. as sing.  
 or plur., 290;  
 prec. by gen. art., 593.
- mass** (*divine service*) disp. with def. art.,  
 542.
- mass-words**, 1083.
- mast** instead of *mast's*, 103.
- master** (*noun*) used pred., 27, 641;  
 instead of *master's*, 105;  
 repeated before each of a series of  
 prop. names, 147;  
 as title of courtesy with or without  
 def. art., 550;



- in the sense of *proficient* with or without indef. art., 27, 641;  
before prop. name, 650.
- master** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 838.
- mastery** prec. by indef. art., 620.
- material** *adj.* comp. with material nouns, 6 ff, 701;  
not used pred., 360.
- material nouns** in plural, 240.
- mathematics** as plur. tant., 162.
- matins** id., 177, 182, 299.
- matter** in *no matter*, 1130;  
in *a matter* partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 1212 f;  
in *a matter of* + num. + noun, 1212;  
in *such a matter* (= *about that quantity or number*), 1212;  
as prop-word, 1320.
- matter** (*verb*) mod. by *what*, 954.
- matter of fact** used attrib., 15;  
used pred., 24, 26;  
den. class of pers. in gen. way, 389.
- matters** as plur. tant., 212;  
equiv. to indef. pron., 658, 1210.
- maturity** disp. with art., 593.
- Mauritius** with or without def. art., 569.
- may** with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 760 ff;  
with or without *do* or *be*, 762 f;  
in corrob. sent., 764 ff;  
in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 ff;  
in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial, etc. 771 ff;  
in sent. or cl. with *any*, 1043 f.
- me** instead of *I*, 715 f;  
in exclamations, 716;  
used as noun, 724 ff, 1345;  
prec. or fol. by adj., 724 f;  
vulgar for *my*, 784.
- mean** (*adj.*) part. conv. into noun, 408.
- mean** (*verb*) not fol. by pron. *so*, 747.
- means** as plur. tant., 212 f, 300;  
in *by all* (*manner of*) *means*, 1031.
- measles** as plur. tant., 153, 299 f;  
with or without gen. art., 600.
- measure** in *in a* (or *some*) *measure*, 527 f, 621;  
in *beyond by* (or *to*) *measure*, 673.
- mediatrix**, 344.
- medicine** in col. sense, 246.
- meet** with or without recipr. pron., 1071.
- members** partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 658 f.
- memoirs** as plur. tant., 213.
- memoranda** id., 213, 300.
- memory** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 796.
- men** equiv. to indef. pron., 657 f, 1209, 1212;  
as prop-word, 1320.
- menkind** comp. with *mankind*, 145.
- merchant** used attrib., 16.
- mercenary** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- merchant** prec. by def. art. and fol. by prop. name, 649.
- mercies** in *the tender mercies*, 237.
- Mercy** disp. with gen. art., 598.
- mercy** prec. by indef. art., 621;  
in *have mercy (up)on me*, 705;  
in *a mercy's name* in emotional quest., 1223.
- merit** in *to make a merit of* + ger., 647;  
fol. by *with*, 824.
- merits** as plur. tant., 213 f.
- Mesdames** as plur. of *Madam(e)* and *Mrs.*, 132, 1343.
- meself** vulg. for *myself*, 630.
- mess** disp. with def. art., 543 ff.
- Messrs.** short for *Messieurs*, 131 f;  
with or without def. art., 650.
- metaphor** in col. sense, 248.
- metaphysics** as plur. tant., 162.
- metre** occas. use of attrib. noun instead of adj., 3 f;  
affect. choice between *less and lesser*, 433;  
id. between *last and latest*, 442 f;  
occas. use of *few* after *last, first or next*, 443;  
affect. choice between termin. and periphr. comp., 477;  
affect. constr. of sent. den. gradual increase of qual., 504;  
occas. drop. of adv. *the* before compar., 506;  
affect. use of def. art., 532, 534, 554, 575, 595, 599, 601, 602, 606, 678, 694.

- id. of indef. art., 532, 613;  
 id. of *of* + pers. pron. as comp. with pos. pron., 791 ff;  
 id. of refl. pron. as against pers. pron., 861;  
 id. of *whose* as against *of which*, 967;  
 affect. the place of *all*, 1024;  
 div. *but* from *a little*, 1103;  
 affect. use of *more of* as against *more*, 1119;  
 id. of *no* as against *not a(n)* or *not any*, 1129;  
 causing adv. *the* to be dropped in *not the less*, 1159;  
 causing def. art. to be dropped before *other*, 1168, 1177;  
 affect. repetition of adnom. mod., 1321.
- meum** and **tuum** equiv. to *mine and thine*, 826.
- mews** as plur. tant., 214, 300.
- mice** as mutation plur., 119.
- micel** the Old Eng. repres. of *much*, 436.
- mid** how comp., 471;  
 mostly in comp., 471.
- middest** uncom. superl., 471 f.
- middle** as pos. degree, 472;  
 in comp., 472.
- Middle Ages** as plur. tant., 233;  
 in comp., 269.
- middle-class** used predic., 24.
- middlemost** as unusual superl., 472.
- midmost** as superl. of *mid*, 471;  
 in var. funct., 472.
- midnight** disp. with def. art., 546 f.
- midst** as superl. of *mid*, 471;  
 as aphetic form of *amidst*, 471;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 796.
- midsummer** used attrib., 110.
- mile** unaltered for plur., 264.
- militant** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- milksoy** in *a milksoy of a* + noun, 5.
- million** unaltered for plur., 258, 260 f;  
 constr. as sing., 290;  
 understood partly as num. partly as col. noun, 1226 f;  
 used as pure noun, 1241 f;
- in *millions (up)on millions*, 1242;  
 in *the million* (= *the bulk of the population*), 1242.
- millionairess** as sportive formation, 343.
- min** in Old an Mid. Eng., 782.
- mind** (noun) in gen., 54 f;  
 in *of a (or one) mind*, 525 f;  
 prec. by indef. art., 621;  
 disp. with pos. pron., 813.
- mind** (verb) with or without *it* (or *that*), 741;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862.
- mine** as conj. pos. pron., 782 f;  
 id. after names of pers., 784;  
 in *mine and thine*, 826.
- ministers** partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 658.
- ministry** constr. as sing. or plur., 290.
- minor** equiv. to compar., 427.
- minstrel** used attrib., 16;  
 instead of *minstrel's*, 106.
- minus** equiv. to *less*, 1104.
- minute** in *this minute*, 912.
- minutiæ** as plur. tant., 173.
- minutes** id., 168.
- misbehave** with or without refl. pron., 849.
- mischief** with or without indef. art., 621.
- miserable** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- Misfortune** disp. with gen. art., 598.
- misgiving** prec. by indef. art., 609.
- Miss** form. word-group with prop. name kept in the sing., 146.  
 disp. with def. art., 550;  
 fol. by prop. name, 650.
- Misses** with or without def. art., 650.
- missionary** instead of *missionary's* 106.
- mistaken** in *to be mistaken*, 843.
- mistress** used predic., 27, 641;  
 an anglicized foreign fem., 342;  
 as title of courtesy with or without def. art., 550;  
 in the sense of *proficient* with or without indef. art., 27 f, 641.
- misunderstand** with or without *it*, 738.
- mob** constr. as sing. or plur., 290;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591 f.

- mock** used attrib., 15;  
with or without indef. art., 621.
- mockery** used attrib., 15;  
prec. by indef. art., 622.
- mode** in *in* (or *out of*) *mode*, 673.
- model** in periphr. comp., 2.
- moderate** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- moderns** as plur. tant., 165, 168.
- modifiers before gen.** belong either  
to gen. or to entire word-group, 96 f.
- mo(e)** var. of *more*, 1117.
- molasses** as plur. tant., 157.
- Moluccas** id., 175.
- moment** in gen., 93;  
in *at* (or *for*) *the moment*, 522;  
in *at some moment*, 1191.
- moment's** equiv. to *momentary*, 89.
- monitress**, 341.
- monomania** fol. by *with*, 824.
- monster** used attrib., 14.
- Mont** before prop. name disp. with  
def. art., 586.
- month** in adnom. word-groups, 271.
- mood** prec. by indef. art., 622.
- moon** in gen., 51 f;  
instead of *moon's*, 104;  
ref. to by fem. or neut. pron., 333.
- moonlight** prec. by indef. art., 622.
- moose** as unchanged plur., 251.
- morals** as plur. tant., 214.
- more** mod. noun, 2, 26;  
after name of measure disp. with  
inflection for gen., 68;  
in *more than one* as subj. constr.  
as sing., 309.  
fol. by part. *of*, 422 f, 1119;  
form. periphr. compar., 427;  
as compar. of *much* or *many*, 436 ff;  
as adj. 437;  
in *more and more* + adj. or adv., 503;  
mod. pron. *so*, 752, 1120;  
in *any(thing) more*, 1054;  
disp. with *any*, 1054, 1121;  
in *more than* used attrib., 1105, 1121;  
mod. *least*, 1106;  
used conj., absol., subst. or pred., 1117;  
in *the more the merrier*, 1117;  
equiv. to adj. or adv. *further*, 1118;  
in *more of this*, 1119;  
in *all this and more*, 1120, 1350;  
in the mean. of *what is more*, 1120,  
1350;  
in *more by token* (= *still more*,  
*the more so*), 1120;  
conv. into pure noun, 1120;  
as adv. 1120 ff;  
in the mean. of *rather*, 1120 f;  
in temporal mean., 1121;  
in *no more* or *not (any) more*, 1121,  
1123, 1144 f;  
div. from its head-word, 1121;  
in *more than* (= *except*), 1121 f;  
in *much more* (= *especially*), 1121;  
in *much more* var. with *much less*,  
1121;  
in *more and more*, 1121;  
in *more or less*, 1121, 1315;  
in *one more* comp. with *another*  
or *one other*, 1179;  
in *as much more*, 1264.
- Morea** prec. by def. art., 568.
- morn** disp. with art., 545 f.
- morning** in clas. gen., 92;  
used attrib., 111;  
disp. with art., 545 f;  
in *the other morning*, 1180.
- mortal** tot. conv. into noun, 373;  
expr. gen. concr. idea, 410;  
disp. with art., 690, 1041;  
mod. noun disp. with art., 690, 692,  
1041;  
equiv. to *any* or *anybody*, 1041.
- mortality** disp. with gen. art., 593.
- Moslem** plur. of, 702.
- most** mod. noun, 2, 427, 1124;  
forming periphr. superl., 427, 1124;  
as superl. of *much* or *many*, 436 ff;  
as adj., 437, 1123;  
in *for the most part*, 437 f, 559;  
in *the Most High*, 479;  
in *at (the) most*, 502, 679;  
mod. adj. or adv., 510, 1124;  
disp. with def. art., 557 ff;  
in *to make the most of*, 559;  
in the sense of *most part*, 560;  
fol. by *so*, 752;  
fol. by pos. pron., 805;  
before *such*, 939;

- used conj., absol., or subst., 1123;  
 den. pers. or things, 1123;  
 fol. by part *of*, 1123;  
 in *it is the most she does*, 1123;  
 as adv., 1124;  
 in the mean. of *most frequently*, 1124;  
 in the sense of *mostly* or *for the most part*, 1124;  
 in the sense of *almost*, 1124, 1350.  
 in *most like* (= *in every way*), 1351.
- most** as ending of superl., 428.
- mother** in clas. gen., 91.
- mother's son** (or **daughter**) prec. by pos. pron., 48;  
 in *every mother's son* (= *everybody*), 1307.
- Mount** before prop. name disp. with or retaining def. art., 586 *f*;  
 disp. with before prop. name, 586.
- mountain** used attrib., 20;  
 prec. by prop. name disp. with def. art., 586.
- mourning** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- mouse** with mutation plur., 119;  
 ref. to by masc. pron., 331;
- mouth** in var. loc., 810, 813.
- movables** as plur. tant., 162.
- move** with or without refl. pron., 844.
- Mr.** short for *Mister*, 131 *f*;  
 fol. by prop. name, 650;  
 fol. by names of functionaries, 650.
- Mrs.** short for *Mistress*, 132;  
 fol. by plur. prop. name, 146;  
 fol. by prop. name, 650.
- much** before plur. 302 *f*;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*, 1111 *ff*, 1116;  
 fol. by adj., 424;  
 how comp., 436 *ff*;  
 in semi-adjectival mean., 436, 1111;  
 before compar. or superl., 507, 1114 *f*;  
 fol. by pron. *so*, 752;  
 in *as* (or *so*) *much* as pron. equiv., 778, 1114;  
 in *so much* as var. of *this* (or *thus*) *much*, 780, 913, 1114;  
 in *this* (*that* or *thus*) *much*, 913, 1114;  
 mod. *the same*, 929, 1115;  
 in *as much* (= *the same*), 931;  
 mod. by *what*, 955;
- antec. of *that*, 981;  
 in the sense of *any appreciable* 1040, 1113;  
 in *much fewer* var. with *many fewer* 1107;  
 used conj. absol., subst. or pred., 1111;  
 in *it is not too much to say*, 1111;  
 form. unit with its head-word, 1111;  
 in *much ado* (= *much to do*), 1111;  
 in front-pos. with ironical import, 1112, 1116;  
 in *too much*, 1113, 1115;  
 in *to make much of*, 1113;  
 in var. archaic idioms, 1113;  
 in *as much as to say*, 1113;  
 in *it is as much as*, 1113, 1123;  
 in *as much again*, 1113, 1264;  
 used as pure noun, 1114;  
 used as adv. 1114 *f*;  
 in the mean. of *nearly* or *approximately*, 1115;  
 mod. *such*, 1115;  
 fol. by conj. *as*, 1115;  
 mod. by *very* or *pretty*, 1115 *f*;  
 in *much of a muchness*, 1116;  
 equiv. to *a long time* or *repeatedly*, 1116;  
 in (*not*) *so much as once*, 1116;  
 in *not so much... as*, 1116;  
 in *so much* mod. adv. *the*, 1116;  
 equiv. to *at all*, 1116, 1350;  
 in conj. expr., 1116;  
 in *much more* in the mean. of *especially*, 1122;  
 in *much more* var. with *much less*, 1122;  
 comp. with *some*, 1193;  
 in *twice as much*, 1264;  
 in *as much more*, 1264;  
 fol. by compar. + *a one*, 1292;  
 in *not much of a one*, 1292;  
 in *anything much*, 1310;  
 in *nothing much*, 1312, 1315.
- mulberry** used attrib., 16.
- multiply** mod. by num. of multiplic., 1268.
- multitude** constr. as sing. or plur., 290;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591;  
 partaking of funct. of indef. num., 660, 1213.



- murder** mod. by obj. gen., 61.  
**museum** in comp. prop. names retaining def. art., 581.  
**Muslim** plur. of, 702.  
**must** with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 760 ff;  
 in corrob. sent., 764 ff;  
 in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 ff;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial etc., 771 ff.  
**mute** tot. conv. into noun, 383.  
**mutually** as recipr. equiv., 1070.  
**My Lady(ies)** also used in 3rd pers., 780.  
**My Lord(s)** id., 780;  
 in *good* (or *gentle* etc.) *my lord(s)*, 804 f.  
**myself** instead of *me*, 713, 867;  
 used as noun, 837.  
  
*'n* mutilated form of *hine*, 723;  
 id. of *him*, 723;  
 id. of *mine*, 784.  
**name** fol. by *of* + noun without indef. art., 636.  
**names** in *to call names*, 237.  
**names of acts, bills, etc.** consisting of plur. adnom. noun + noun, 267.  
**names of animals** in gen., 49 f;  
 as unchanged plur., 250 ff, 282;  
 of dif. gend., 325, 329 ff;  
 equiv. to adj. den. qual. in gen. way, 410;  
 antec. of var. rel. pron., 974.  
**names of buildings** with or without def. art., 579, 581 ff.  
**names of colours** tot. conv. into nouns, 379 f;  
 prec. by indef. art. + adj. or by adv., 380, 1291.  
**names of countries** in gen., 50;  
 used adnom., 268;  
 ref. to by fem. or neut. pron. 334 f;  
 antec. of var. rel. pron., 974 f.  
**names of creeds, sects or parties** tot. conv. into nouns, 377.  
**names of days** with or without def. art., 548, 606.  
  
**names of diseases** with or without gen. def. art., 600 f.  
**names of divisions of the day** with or without def. art., 545 ff, 605.  
**names of epochs** in gen., 53.  
**names of festivals** with or without def. art., 548, 606.  
**names of firms** constr. as sing. or plur., 100, 297, 701.  
**names of fishes** that take the mark of plur., 255.  
**names of hotels** with or without def. art., 579, 581;  
 with prop. name and com. noun transposed, 583.  
**names of instruments** ref. to by fem. pron., 338.  
**names of languages** tot. or part. conv. into nouns, 376 f.  
**names of localities** with or without def. art., 538 ff, 604 f.  
**names of meals** with or without def. art., 543 f, 605.  
**names of measures** constr. as sing. when prec. by num., 300 f.  
**names of measures of time** in adnom. word-groups, 94, 108, 269 f.  
**names of months** with or without def. art., 548, 606.  
**names of mountains** ref. to by masc. or fem. pron., 336.  
**names of museums** prec. by def. art., 581.  
**names of nationalities** tot. conv. into nouns, 376, 398;  
 part. conv. into nouns, 396 ff.  
**names of periodicals** that are adj. tot. conv. into nouns, 379.  
**names of persons** equiv. to adj. den. qual. in gen. sense, 410.  
**names of points of the compass** part. conv. into nouns, 419.  
**names of professions** disp. with def. art. or pos. pron., 550.  
**names of promontories** disp. with def. art., 587.  
**names of relationship** disp. with def. art. or pos. pron., 549, 648 f, 1343;  
 fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron. 821 f.

- names of rivers** ref. to by masc. or fem. pron., 336 *f*;  
disp. with def. art., 585.
- names of sciences** ref. to by fem. pron., 337.
- names of seasons** with or without art., 547, 605 *f*.
- names of ships** ref. to by fem. or neut. pron., 335;  
in gen., 701;  
prec. by def. art., 587.
- names of states** see *names of countries*.
- names of streets** with or without def. art., 577 *f*, 580, 583 *f*.
- names of substances** that are adj. tot. conv. into nouns, 379.
- names of theatres** with or without def. art., 579, 581.
- names of things** in gen. of pos. or orig., 50;  
in obj. gen., 62.
- names of towns** in col. sense constr. as sing., 294;  
ref. to by fem. pron., 337;  
disp. with def. art. when comp., 580.
- names of trees** in col. sense, 246;  
ref. to by masc. pron., 336.
- nanny-goat** instead of *she-goat*, 351.
- natheless** equiv. to *nevertheless*, 1105.
- nation** constr. as sing., 290;  
constr. first as sing., then as plur., 298;  
in *of a nation*, 525.
- national** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- native** used attrib., 19;  
in gen. 54, 56.
- natural** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- nature** in gen. 52;  
ref. to by fem. or neut. pron., 337;  
disp. with gen. art. when den. personified abstraction, 598.
- naught** superseded by *nothing*, 1124 *f*;  
var. with *nought*, 1124 *f*;  
in *to come to naught* or *to set at naught*, 1125;  
fol. by part. *of*;  
in obsol. or archaic applications, 1125;  
as pure noun, 1126;  
as adj. 1126;  
as adv. 1126;  
in *a thing of naught*, 1213,  
**near** how compared, 451 *ff*;  
implying recipr. not., 1071;  
mod. by *nothing*, 1311 *f*;  
mod. by *something*, 1314.
- nearest** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.
- neath** aphetic form of *aneath*, 466.
- necessaries** as plur. tant., 162.
- necessary** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- neck** in *neck and crop*, 682.  
in *neck and neck*, 1171.
- need** (*noun*) with or without indef. art., 622.
- need** (*verb*) with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 760 *ff*;  
mod. by *what*, 954 *f*.
- needle** in gen., 54, 56.
- negative** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- neighbour** used attrib., 4;  
fol. by prop. name, 815.
- neighbourhood** constr. as sing., 290.
- neither** (*pron.*) constr. as plur., 307;  
con. with *the other*, 1069;  
decl. for gen., 1126;  
used conj., absol. or subst., 1126;  
ref. to more than two, 1126;  
fol. by part. *of*;  
fol. by num. *one*, 1254, 1298.
- neither** (*conj.*) in corrob. sent., 767.
- Nelson's life** comp. with *the life of Nelson*, 77.
- nephew** fol. or prec. by prop. name, 648.
- nerves** as plur. tant., 214.
- nether** compar. of (*be*)*neath*, 466 *f*;  
never var. with superl., 492.
- nethermore** as var. of *nether*, 467.
- nethermost** as superl. of (*be*)*neath*, 428, 466 *f*.
- neutral** tot. conv. into noun, 373.
- never** in sent. with indef. art. suppr., 688 *f*, 1345;  
in *never* (= *ne'er*) *a(n)* = *not any* (*at all*), 689, 1253, 1292;  
con. with *almost*, 1050;  
mod. adv. *the*, 1159;

- in *never* (= *n'eer*) *a one*, 1253, 1292;  
in *never once*, 1266.
- nevertheless**, 506, 1105.
- news** as plur. tant., 166, 168, 299.
- newt** arisen from *an ewt* (= *eft*), 514.
- next** disp. with prop-word *thing*, 415;  
as superl. of *near*, 451 ff;  
in *next oldest*, 455;  
occas. def. art. to be disp. with,  
555 f, 1342;  
in *next door*, 556 f;  
in *next field*, 557;  
in *for the next ten* (etc.) *days*, 910;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.
- nicely** (*adj.*) used only pred., 362.
- nickname** arisen from *an eke-name*,  
514.
- nigh** as var. of *near*, 451.
- night** used attrib., 20, 111;  
disp. with def. art., 545 f, 605, 673.
- nightfall** disp. with def. art., 546 f.
- nightingale** ref. to by fem. pron., 331.
- nine** equiv. to *nine muses*, 1242;  
in *dressed* (or *tittivated*) *up to the  
nines*, 1245.
- nine days' wonder**, 94.
- nine-pins**, as plur. tant., 154.
- no** comp. with *not a(n)*, 525, 1129,  
1131, 1132, 1134 f, 1138 f, 1141;  
before *such* 939, 1138;  
comp. with *not any*, 1044, 1129, 1136,  
1141 f, 1148;  
con. with *almost*, 1049 f;  
in *no few* (= *not a few*), 1097;  
in *no little* (= *not a little*), 1103;  
in *in* (*less than*) *no time*, 1104;  
in *no more* as against *not* (*any*)  
*more*, 1121, 1136, 1144 f, 1147 f;  
as adnom. word, 1127 ff, 1138;  
repres. Old Eng. *nān* or *nā*, 1127;  
corresp. to neg. indef. art. or neg.  
*some*, 1127, 1141;  
a mere negativer, 1127 f, 1141 f;  
misplaced, 1128 f;  
in comb. equiv. to a modified *nobody*,  
1129;  
in *no doubt*, 1130;  
in *no matter*, 1130;  
in pregn. mean., 1131 ff, 1141 f;  
comp. with *not*, 1132, 1138 f, 1141 f,  
as adv., 1136 ff;  
in *no other*, 1136, 1138, 1157 f, 1184;  
in *no fewer*, 1136, 1147;  
in *no less*, 1136, 1147;  
fol. by superl., 1136 f;  
mod. pos. of attrib. adj., 1136 f;  
in *no otherwise*, 1138;  
before card. or ordin. num., 1138;  
mod. attrib. compar., 1139 f;  
fol. by periphr. compar., 1140;  
before attrib. comp., whether or no  
fol. by indef. art., 1140 f;  
mod. pred. comp., 1141 f;  
mod. adv. comp., 1142 ff;  
in *no later*, 1143;  
in *no longer*, 1143;  
in *no sooner*, 1146;  
in *no further*, 1147;  
form. a kind of comp. with cert.  
nouns, 1149 f;  
in parasynthetic comp., 1149;  
fol. by num. *one*, 1251, 1254.  
in *no other one* + noun, 1252;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1281;  
fol. by prop-word *thing*, 1309 f.
- nobility** prec. by gen. art., 591.
- noble** tot. conv. into noun, 383, 421.
- nobody** ref. to by plur. pron., 310 f;  
var. with comb. with *no* + noun,  
1129;  
var. with *no one*, 1150; 1301 f;  
var. with *none*, 1155;  
in pregn. mean., 1302 f;  
conv. into pure nouns, 1303.
- no end** as indef. num., 1150.
- nohow** rare, 1150.
- noise** prec. by indef. art., 622.
- no more** in corrob. sent., 767.
- Nonconformist** used pred., 23.
- nondescript** tot. conv. into noun, 384.
- none** how constr., 313 f, 1154;  
before adv. *the* + compar., 506, 1158 ff;  
fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur.  
noun, 801;  
fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron., 821;  
fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825;  
before *such*, 939, 1347;  
con. with (*the*) *other*, 1070

- in *none the less* (= *not the less*), 1105, 1159 *f*;  
 as abs. form of *no*, 1152;  
 repres. Old Eng. *nān*, 1152;  
 used conj., 1152 *f*;  
 fol. by *other*, 1152, 1157, 1184;  
 as indef. num. or pron., 1153;  
 used abs., 1153;  
 equiv. to *not any*, *not* + num. *one* or *not* + pron. *one*, 1153;  
 in back-pos., 1153;  
 div. from its head-word, 1154;  
 var. with *not one*, 1154;  
 emphas. by *not one*, 1154;  
 used subst., 1155;  
 var. with *nobody* or *no one*, 1155;  
 var. with *nothing*, 1155 *f*;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1156 *f*;  
 in *that is none of your* (or *his*, etc.) *business*, 1156;  
 in *I* (or *he*, etc.) *will* (have) *none of it* (or *them*, etc.), 1156 *f*;  
 in ellipt. sent. equiv. to *I'll have* (= *I'll endure*), 1157;  
 in *none of* + pers. pron. used for emphas., 1158;  
 as adv., 1158;  
 mod. *so*, 1158;  
 mod. *too*, 1158 *f*.  
 in *none any* + noun, 1351.  
**Non-Ego** as philos. term, 725.  
**nones** as plur. tant., 172.  
**non-party** used attrib., 18.  
**noon** disp. with def. art., 546 *f*.  
**no one** ref. to by plur. pron., 310 *f*;  
 var. with *nobody* 1150, 1281, 1301 *f*;  
 var. with *none*, 1154.  
**nor** in contr. sent. with pred. in sing. or plur., 318;  
 in corrob. sent., 767.  
**normal** equiv. to *normal conditions*, 368.  
**northern** tot. conv. into noun, 473.  
**northernmost** as superl., 473.  
**Norway** used attrib., 17.  
**nose** in *to pay through the nose*, 810.  
**not** before adv. *the* + compar. 506;  
 in *not a(n)* as comp. with *no*, 525, 1129, 1131, 1132, 1134 *f*, 1138 *f*;  
 as incompl. cl., 748;  
 prec. by adv. of mood, 767 *f*;  
 in con. with *so* in sent. expr. dissimilarity of circumst., 769;  
 after *if* constituting with it an incompl. cl., 771;  
 in *not a few* (= *no few*), 1095, 1097;  
 in *not a little* (= *no little*), 1103;  
 in *not the less* (= *none the less*), 1105, 1159 *f*;  
 in *not any* as comp. with *no*, 1044, 1129, 1136, 1141, 1142, 1143 *f*, 1147 *ff*;  
 var. with *no*, 1132, 1138 *f*, 1141 *f*, 1142 *ff*;  
 in pregn. mean., 1132, 1136, 1138;  
 as pure negativer, 1133 *f*;  
 in *not a(n)* in pregn. mean., 1134 *f*, 1138 *f*;  
 in *not a(n)* + noun expr. a mod. *nothing*, 1135;  
 before (indef. art. +) pos. + noun, 1138 *f*;  
 before (indef. art. +) comp. + noun, 1141;  
 before pred. compar., 1141 *f*;  
 before adv. compar., 1142 *ff*;  
 before *later*, 1143;  
 before *longer*, 1143;  
 before *more*, 1143 *f*;  
 before periphr. compar., 1145;  
 before *sooner*, 1164;  
 before *less*, 1146, 1147;  
 before *fewer*, 1146, 1147;  
 as component part. of var. comp., 1150;  
 in *not one* as var. of *none*, 1154 *f*;  
 in *not once*, 1266.  
**notable** tot. conv. into noun, 373.  
**nothing** fol. by cl. with art. suppr., 690;  
 fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825  
 antec. of *that* or *which*, 981 *f*;  
 in *all to nothing*, 1017;  
 con. with *almost*, 1049;  
 var. with *not a* + noun, 1135  
 in *nothing more* (= *no more*), 1149;  
 var. with *none*, 1155 *f*;  
 as comp. of prop-word *thing*, 1308 *ff*



- in *to think nothing of*, 1308;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1308 *f*;  
 as adv., 1310 *ff*;  
 mod. *to ail, to avail, to care, to concern, to differ, to discomfort or to help*, 1311;  
 mod. *daunted or lo(a)th*, 1311;  
 mod. *like or near*, 1311 *f*;  
 mod. *much*, 1312, 1315;  
 mod. *so* or adv. *the*, 1312;  
 in *nothing less than* in two opposite mean., 1315;  
 conv. into noun, 1315 *f*;  
 in *to dance on nothing*, 1316;  
 in *nothing of the kind*, 1319.  
**notice** (*verb*) drop. *it*, 741.  
**notion** prec. by indef. art., 696.  
**Nottinghamshire** used pred., 23.  
**nought** fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825 *f*;  
 var. of *naught*, 1124 *ff*;  
 den. the *o* in arithmetic, 1124.  
**nouns** assuming the character of indef. pron., 595.  
**nouns of action** mod. by gen., 60.  
**nouns in er or or** mostly fem. as well as masc., 347.  
**nouns of common gender**, 325 *f*.  
 novelist of com. gen., 348.  
**novelty** instead of (*the*) *novel*, 410, 412.  
**noway** equiv. to *not at all* or *by no means*, 1150;  
 var. with *in no way(s)*, 1150.  
**noways** var. of *no way*.  
**nowhat** rare, 1150.  
**nowhen** rare, 1150.  
**nowhence** rare, 1150.  
**nowhere** as noun, 1151;  
 in *to be nowhere*, 1151.  
**no whit** mostly replaced by *not a whit, not one whit* or *not a bit*, 1151.  
**nowhither** mostly replaced by *nowhere*, 1151.  
**nowise** equiv. to *in no way* or *not at all*, 1151 *f*;  
 var. with *in no wise*, 1151 *f*.  
**number** in pred. nouns, 27.  
**number** partaking of funct. of indef. num., 660, 1213;  
 in *times out of number*, 1266.  
**nnnumbers** as plur. tant., 214 *f*.  
**numerals** (*cardinal*) fol. by name of measure, the comb. used adnominally, 93 *f*;  
 fol. by pos. pron., 805;  
 instead of ord. num., 1246 *f*.  
**numerals of repetition** mod. card. num. governing sing. or plur. pred., 301;  
 in phrases den. regular recurrence of phenomenon, 1079;  
 in the sense of *the* + ord. num. + *time*, 1264;  
 emphas. by *over*, 1265;  
 mod. by adn. mod., 1265;  
 comp. with num. of multiplication, 1268.  
**numerals of multiplication**, before comp., 507;  
 before *as* + pos. degree, 507;  
 comp. with num. of repetition, 1268, 1271;  
 with or without part. *of*, 1268 *ff*;  
 with their head-word understood, 1268;  
 used as pure adv., 1268 *f*.  
**numerous** in funct. of indef. num., 1205, 1208.  
**nuptials** as plur. tant., 160, 162.  
**nurse** disp. with art., 551;  
 with or without def. art. and fol. by prop. name, 649.  
**nuts** in *to be nuts on*, 237;  
 in *to be nuts to*, 702.  
**nutcrackers** as plur. tant., 197.  
**nymph** den. young woman, 339.  
**oak** in col. sense, 246.  
**oa(ken)** used attrib., 6, 7, 11.  
**oat(en)** used attrib., 6, 7.  
**oath** with or without indef. art., 622.  
**oats** as plur. tant., 155, 157.  
**obedient** equiv. to *obedient servant*, 405.  
**object** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794;  
 in *every object* (= *everything*), 1320.  
**objection** with or without indef. art., 622.

- obsequies** as plur. tant., 182.  
**obsequious** its head-word understood, 405.  
**obstructive** tot. conv. into noun, 373.  
**occasion** with or without indef. art., 622;  
 with or without def. art., 673.  
 in *on one occasion*, 1171.  
**occult** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.  
**odd** as indef. num., 1160.  
**odds** as plur. tant., 166, 168 *f*, 299.  
**O'Donnell** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**of** + noun equiv. to material adj., 12;  
 as substitute for gen. of pos. or orig., 43 *ff*;  
 id. for subj. gen., 59;  
 id. for obj. gen., 60 *ff*;  
 id. for gen. of measure, 64 *ff*;  
 id. for gen. of apposition, 70;  
 id. for clas. gen., 95;  
 in part. sense fol. by adj. 422 *f*;  
 id. fol. by abstr. nouns, 423;  
 in *of* + *the* + superl., 511;  
 in *of* + superl. + pos. degree, 511;  
 in *of* + plur. noun used for emph., 521;  
 in cert. expr. in which it is fol. by indef. art. or num. *one*, 525 *f*;  
 in specializing funct. fol. by plur. without def. art., 637;  
 after *kind*, *manner*, *sort* or *type* before noun with or without indef. art., 685 *f*;  
 before cert. nouns with or without indef. art. in descriptions of circumst. of persons or things, 686 *f*;  
 in prep. phrases mod. determ. pron., 728;  
 id. mod. *we* or noun, 729;  
 in part. sense suppr. between indef. num. + pos. pron. + plur. noun, 805;  
 id. fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron., 820 *ff*;  
 id. fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 804, 823;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron., 872 *f*;  
 in part. sense prec. by interrog. *what*, 951;  
 understood together with condensed *what*, 1003;  
**off** as pos. of *after(most)*, 467 *f*.  
**offensive** part. conv. into noun, 408.  
**offer** with or without refl. pron., 844 *f*.  
**office** disp. with def. art., 542;  
 fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 636.  
**officers and men** disp. with def. art., 683.  
**offices** as plur. tant., 215.  
**offspring** in var. applic., 266 *f*, 702.  
**of it** instead of *its*, 785 *f*.  
**oft** in *many a time* and *oft* or *oft and many a time*, 1109, 1350.  
**oil** used attrib., 6.  
**oils** as plur. tant., 215.  
**oilskins** id., 215.  
**old** understood after a word-group containing *years*, 94;  
 in *of old*, 418, 679;  
 how comp., 454 *ff*;  
 in *old times* (or *days*), 538;  
 as emotional adj. occasioning def. art. to be disp. with, 575.  
**olden** in *olden times* (or *days*), 538.  
**older** as compar. of *old*, 454 *ff*.  
**oldest** as superl. of *old*, 454 *ff*;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.  
**old maid** (or *world*) used attrib., 16, 15.  
**oldster**, 343.  
**old-wives** in clas. gen., 91, 97.  
**Omnipotence** disp. with gen. art., 598.  
**Omniscience** id., 599.  
**on** in cert. expr. in which it is fol. by indef. art. with the value of num. *one*, 526.  
**once** mod. by gen., 49, 1265;  
 as adv. gen., 135, 1261;  
 in *for this once*, 912, 1262, 1265;  
 in *for once*, 912, 1267;  
 in *that once*, 913;  
 in *once (and) for all*, 1030 *f*, 1266 *f*;  
 in *for once and all*, 1030;  
 in *all at once*, 1033, 1267;  
 equiv. to *at one time*, 1172, 1262;  
 in *once bitten twice shy*, 1263;  
 in *once or twice*, 1265;  
 prec. by adn. mod., 1265;  
 in *the once*, 1265;  
 in var. shades of mean., 1266

- in *once again*, 1266;  
 in *once and again*, 1266;  
 in (*for*) *once in a way*, 1266;  
 in *at once*, 1267.
- one** (*num.*) fol. by part. *of* + plur.  
 noun causing the pred. of the fol.  
 adnom. clause to be wrongly placed  
 in sing., 308 *f*;  
 ref. to by plur. pron., 310 *f*;  
 fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur.  
 noun, 800;  
 in *one and the same*, 926, 1248, 1347;  
 in *all to one*, 1017;  
 in *one and all*, 1030;  
 in *all one*, 1033;  
 after *any*, 1051;  
 fol. by part. *of* var. with *any*, 1052;  
 in *one too many*, 1108, 1240;  
 after *some*, 1191;  
 in *to owe a person one*, 1240;  
 in *to go* (or *to know*) *one better*, 1240;  
 in *that's one to me* (or *you*, etc.), 1240;  
 in *to be at one*, 1240 *f*;  
 in *in(to) one*, 1241;  
 in *a thousand to one*, 1241;  
 in *the year one*, 1247;  
 in *Number one*, 1247;  
 tinged with the funct. of the pron.  
*one*, 1172 *f*, 1247 *f*, 1352;  
 in *to make one*, 1248;  
 understood before *of*, 1248;  
 fol. by superl., 1248;  
 expr. sameness, 1248;  
 expr. emph. one-ness, 1248 *ff*;  
 after superl., 1248 *f*;  
 before or after *only*, 1249;  
 in *one and only*, 1249;  
 after def. art., 1249 *f*, 1318;  
 after indef. art., 1250;  
 after gen. or pos. pron., 1250;  
 after demonstr. pron., 1250;  
 after *any*, 1250 *f*, 1253 *f*;  
 after *no*, 1251 *f*, 1254;  
 after *no other*, 1252;  
 after *some*, 1252, 1254;  
 after *every*, 1252 *f*;  
 after (*n*)*either*, 1254.
- one** (*Dutch men*) ref. to by dif. pron.,  
 323 *f*, 1173;  
 ref. to indef. *a man* or plur. noun  
 with indef. meaning, 324;  
 as veiled *I*, *we* or *you*, 876, 1162 *f*;  
 comp. with indef. *they* or *people*,  
 1161, 1209.
- one** (*determ.*) ref. to by *he* etc. or *she*  
 etc., 324, 877, 1173;  
 comp. with determ. *those*, 1163;  
 var. with *a man* (or *a person*, etc.),  
 1163, 1211;  
 as quotation-word, 1164;  
 replaced by *he* or *him*, 1173;  
 disp with, 1357.
- one** (= *somebody*) now archaic, 1164.
- one... another** with art. disp. with  
 before *one*, 564;  
 as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
 understood, 1171;  
*one* in gen., 1164;  
 ref. to two, 1166;  
*another* var. with *any other*, 1166;  
 in *one and another* (= *more than*  
*one*), 1166;  
 in *one thing* (sort or kind) and  
*another* (= *various things* (sorts  
 or kinds), 1167;  
 in *one way and another* (= *taken*  
*together*), 1167;  
 in *one... or another* (= *some...  
 or another*), 1167;  
 in *one... or another* + noun, 1167;  
 in *one with another*, 1167;  
 var. with *he* (or *him*)... *he* (or *him*),  
 1173;  
 in *for one thing... for another...  
 for a third*, 1247;  
 with *one* fol. by superl., 1249.
- one another** as recipr. pron. 1069,  
 1167 *ff*;  
 in gen., 1168, 1176;  
 comp. with *each other*, 1168;  
 understood, 1071;  
 with *another* repl. by *the other*, 1168;  
 prec. by prep., 1168;  
 with *another* repl. *the other*, 1182.
- one... one** art. disp. with before both  
 the first and the second *one*, 564;  
 in *between one and one*, 1170;  
 with *he* var. with second *one*, 1170.

- one** ... **other** with art. disp. with before *one*, 564;  
 in *one* ... *or other*, 1072, 1169;  
 var. with *some*, 1169 *f*, 1195;  
 var. with *either*, 1169 *f*;  
 in *one or other* + noun, 1191.
- (the) one** ... **the other** with art. mostly disp. with before *one*, 562, 1164;  
 equiv. to *the former* ... *the latter* or *the latter* ... *the former*, 562 *f*; 1164, 1351;  
 in *(the) one and the other* equiv. to *each*, *both* or *either*, 562, 1072, 1165;  
 in *one way and the other* (= *to and fro*), 562, 1165;  
 in *six of one and half-a-dozen of the other*, 563, 1165;  
 with *the one* in recipr. rel. to *the other*, 563, 1165, 1168, 1181, 1351;  
 in *on the one hand* ... *on the other*, 563;  
 in *in the one case* ... *in the other*, 563;  
 as demonstr. equiv., 916;  
 in *(the) one or the other* var. with *either*, 1072, 1165 *f*;  
 with *(the) one* var. with *the first*, 1165;  
 var. with *he* (or *him*) ... *the other*, 1173.
- one** (= *a certain* or *some*) var. with indef. art., 528;  
 in *one of these (odd) days*, 912, 1195;  
 before such words as *day*, *morning*, etc., 1171;  
 in *one day* (= *some day* or *time*), 1172, 1262;  
 tinged with the function of the num. *one*, 1172 *f*, 1247 *f*;  
 before prop. names, 1173;  
 fol. by *some*, 1193.
- one** (*substit. for a noun, not a prop-word*) repres. pred. noun, 750, 938;  
 as var. of *such*, 937 *f*;  
 with determ. force, 941, 1174;  
 without determ. force, 1174;  
 suppr. before *of*, 1175.
- one** (*prop-word of the first kind*) after adj. 389 *f*, 392, 1275;  
 in *such-a-one*, 942, 1275, 1279 *f*;  
 in *many a one*, 1109, 1278;  
 after def. art., 1275, 1278;  
 after indef. art., 1275, 1278;  
 after sing. demonstr., 1275, 1279;  
 after *any*, 1275, 1280;  
 after *each*, 1275, 1280;  
 after *every*, 1275, 1280 *f*;  
 after *no*, 1275, 1281;  
 after *other*, 1275, 1281;  
 after *some*, 1275, 1281;  
 after comp. adj., 1275;  
 after comb. of two adj., 1275.
- one** (*prop-word of the second kind*)  
 after adj., 364;  
 in gen., 1272;  
 removing ambiguity, 1274;  
 with forward and backward ref., 1282;  
 after adnom. nouns, 1282 *f*;  
 after adj., 1282 *ff*;  
 after def. art., 1282, 1291 *f*;  
 after indef. art., 1282, 1292 *f*;  
 after pos. pron., 1282, 1293;  
 after demonstr. pron., 1282, 1293 *f*;  
 after *same*, 1282, 1295 *f*;  
 after *such*, 1282, 1296 *f*;  
 after interrog. *which*, 1282, 1297;  
 after interrog. *what*, 1282, 1298;  
 after *each*, 1282, 1298 *f*;  
 after *every*, 1282, 1299;  
 after *other*, 1282, 1299 *f*;  
 after card. num., 1282, 1300;  
 after ord. num., 1282, 1300;  
 suppr. together with def. art., 1291 *f*;  
 after cert. adv., 1300;  
 after phrases, 1301.
- oner** as quasi-agent noun, 1246.
- one's** a recent formation, 1174.
- oneself** (or **one's self**) recent formations, 830, 1161, 1174;  
 as subject, 870.
- onety-oneth** as indef. ord. num., 1255.
- only** in *only (a) few*, 1096;  
 in *only little*, 1102;  
 prec. or fol. by *one*, 1249;  
 in *one and only*, 1249;  
 in *the only thing* + adj., 1319.
- open** tot. conv. into noun, 381.



- opinion** prec. by indef. art., 696.  
**opportunity** with or without indef. art., 623;  
 with def. or indef. art., 696.  
**opposition** constr. as sing. or plur., 290;  
 in *in opposition*, 673.  
**oppressed** den. single indiv., 402.  
**optics** as plur. tant., 162.  
**option** prec. by indef. art., 623.  
**or** in contr. sent. with pred. in sing. or plur., 319;  
 in *or other*, 1072, 1169, 1184, 1190 *f*;  
 in *or the other*, 1072, 1165 *f*, 1184, 1190;  
 in *or another*, 1167, 1184, 1190;  
 in *some day* (or *month*, etc.) or *two*, 1197;  
 in *a + noun + or two* (or *three*), 1197, 1233;  
 in *or so* expr. approx., 1197, 1233 *f*;  
 in comb. with num. den. approx., 1233, 1260, 1265;  
 before explanatory or corrective noun, 1322.  
**ordained** den. single indiv., 402.  
**order** in *of a high order*, by (*an*) *Order in Council*, 623;  
 in *in (out of or to) order*, 673.  
**orders** as plur. tant., 215 *f*.  
**ordinal numerals** in adnom. fractions, 269;  
 prec. by *every*, 1079;  
 replaced by card. num., 1246 *f*;  
 used conj., absol. or subst., 1256;  
 with head-word suppr. 1256 *f*;  
 as pure nouns, 1257 *ff*;  
 as denominator of fractions, 1258 *f*;  
 in comb. den. approx., 1260;  
 in comb. den. degrees of affinity, 1260;  
 as base of adv. in *ly*, 1261.  
**ordinary** tot. conv. into noun, 373;  
 in *out of the ordinary*, 408;  
 in *in ordinary*, 418.  
**orient** tot. conv. into noun, 373.  
**oriental id.**, 373.  
**original id.**, 373 *f*,  
 fol. by *of + pers. pron.*, 794.  
**orphan** used attrib., 16.  
**ostrich** instead of *ostrich's*, 107.  
**other** a kind of superl., 428, 1181 *f*;  
 as var. of *farther* (or *further*), 438 *f*, 1178;  
 as correl. of *latter*, 442, 1180;  
 in *of (above or beyond) all others*, or *of all other + plur. noun*, 512, 1028;  
 in the inclusive mean., 512, 1028, 1181;  
 taking precedence of pos. pron. or gen., 804, 1182;  
 prec. by def. art. con. with indef. *this* or *these*, 922, 924;  
 before *such*, 939 *f*, 1183;  
 after *such*, 940 *f*, 1183;  
 mod. by *all*, 1033;  
 disp. with after *any*, 1049;  
 con. with *each* in recipr. comb., 1067 *ff*, 1181;  
 prec. by def. art., 1068 *f*, 1279, 1281;  
 prec. by def. art. in recipr. rel. to *each (n)either* or (*the*) *one*, 1069 *f*, 1170, 1168, 1181;  
 disp. with indef. art., 1169, 1182, 1190;  
 as recipr. pron., 1070;  
 prec. by *every*, 1079, 1180;  
 prec. by *no*, 1138, 1157 *f*;  
 prec. by *none*, 1152 *f*, 1157 *f*;  
 declined for plur., 1175 *f*;  
 declined for gen., 1176 *f*;  
 in var. shades of mean., 1177 *ff*;  
 used conj., absol. or subst., 1175, 1177;  
 prec. by dif. modifiers, 1177 *ff*;  
 oppos. of *hither*, 1178;  
 prec. by *one* the comb. comp. with *another* or *one more*, 1179;  
 as correl. of *some*, 1180;  
 with the correl. *some* understood, 1180;  
 in *other some* as correl. of *some*, 1180, 1183;  
 in *the other day* (or *morning*, etc.) 1180;  
 fol. by *than*, *from* or *to*, 1180 *f*, 1183;  
 disp. with def. art., 1181;  
 mod. by *far*, *still* or *yet*, 1181;

- con. with *the like*, 1181;  
 in *among(st) others* (or *other* + *plur. noun*), 1181;  
 taking precedence of other modifiers, 1182 *f*;  
 in *the two others*, etc. var. with *the other two*, etc., 1182, 1351;  
 used in inclusive instead of exclusive function, 1183;  
 used pred., 1183 *f*;  
 in *other than* (= *except* or *beyond*), 1183, 1185;  
 expr. the comprehensive alternative of a prec. adj., 1184;  
 in the sense of *another (person)*, 1184;  
 in *any* (or *some*) *other* (= *anybody* (or *somebody*) *else*), 1184;  
 in the sense of *another thing*, 1184;  
 in *or other*, 1184, 1185, 1190;  
 in the sense of *anything else*, 1184 *f*;  
 in *all* (*any*, *no* or *what*) *other* (= *all, anything, nothing* or *what*) *else*, 1185;  
 as adv., 1185;  
 in comp., 1185 *ff*;  
 in *some other where*, 1186;  
 in *or the other*, 1190;  
 in *at others* as correl. of *sometimes*, 1200;  
 in *any one other* + noun, 1252;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1281, 1299 *f*;  
 prec. by demonstr. 1300.  
**otherways** equiv. to *in another way*, 1185 *f*;  
 in *otherways than* (= *unless*), 1185.  
**otherwhere** mod. by *any*, 1055;  
 equiv. to *in* (or *to*) *another place*, 1186;  
 equiv. to *some other where*, 1186.  
**otherwise** prec. by *no* 1138;  
 as adv., 1186;  
 in the mean. of *in another way* or *in other ways*, 1186;  
 prec. by *any*, 1186;  
 in the mean. of *alias*, 1186;  
 in the mean. of *for the rest*, 1186 *f*;  
 in the mean. of *further*, 1187;  
 in the mean. of *the reverse*, 1187;  
 as conj. adv., 1187;  
 used pred., 1187;  
 used attrib., 1187.  
**otter** as unchanged plur., 252.  
**ought** (*verb*) with or without *to do so* (or *it*) or *to be so*, 760 *ff*;  
 with or without *to do* or *to be*, 762 *f*.  
**ought** (*indef. pron.*) as secondary form of *aught*, 1060 *f*, 1187 *f*;  
 as corruption of *nought*, 1188.  
**our** with *indef. mean.*, 875 *ff*;  
 ref. to pers. spoken to, 882;  
 in the lang. of narrative, 883;  
 with emotional colouring, 883.  
**ourself** instead of *myself*, 881;  
 with *indef. mean.*, 882.  
**ourselves** instead of *myself*, 881.  
**ourn** vulg. for *ours*, 785.  
**out** how comp., 468 *ff*;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 468.  
**outer** as compar. of *out*, 468 *f*;  
 never var. with superl., 492;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1289.  
**out(er)most** as superl. of *out*, 468 *f*.  
**outgoings** as plur. tant., 158.  
**outline** in *in broad outline*, 666.  
**out of** fol. by emph. refl. pron., 873;  
 between two dif. card. num., 1232 *f*.  
**out-of-work** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**outskirts** as plur. tant., 182.  
**ove** the supposed base of *over*, 470.  
**over** before subst. gen., 36;  
 as compar., 470;  
 in refl. verb. comp., 842;  
 in *all over*, 1033;  
 emph. num. of repet., 1265;  
 prec. by *something*, 1314.  
**overalls** as plur. tant., 150.  
**overeat** fol. by refl. pron., 842.  
**overmost** as superl. of (*ab*)*ove*, 470.  
**oversleep** with or without refl. pron., 842.  
**overwalk** fol. by refl. pron., 842.  
**overwork** with or with refl. pron., 842.  
**own** (*adj.*) after gen., 88;  
 as adj. part. conv. into noun, 425 *f*;  
 in *to hold one's own*, *on one's own* and *to come into one's own*, 426, 1338;

- used absol., 426;  
 prec. by *mine* or *thine*, 782 *f*;  
 precluding the use of *of* + pers. pron.  
   instead of pos. pron., 786, 795;  
 after conj. pos. pron., 803, 815 *ff*;  
 doing duty for refl. pron., 815 *f*;  
 in var. loc., 817 *f*;  
 in conjunction with *proper*, 818 *f*;  
 mod. *self*, 833;  
 as var. of *self*, 835;  
 used after *his* to preclude ambiguity,  
   890;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1290.
- own** (*verb*) not. fol. by pron. *so*, 747 *f*;  
 fol. by pron. *as much*, 779.
- owner** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793.
- pace** prec. by indef. art., 623.
- pack** as individualizer, 274.
- page** in *to a page*, 528.
- Pagan** prec. by def. art. den. class, 243.
- Paganism** disp. with gen. art., 593.
- pain** with or without indef. art., 1343.
- pains** as plur. tant., 216 *ff*, 299;  
   in *Here is for your pains*, 1195.
- pair** as individualizer, 137, 148 *ff*, 275;  
 unaltered for plur., 257 *ff*;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 290;  
 constr. first as sing., then as plur.,  
   298;  
 in *the pair of* + pers. pron., 1064;  
 in *carriage-and-pair*, 1238.
- palm** in a col. sense, 246.
- panic** with or without indef. art., 623 *f*.
- pantaloon**s as plur. tant., 150.
- pantheress** an alien formation, 342.
- Papacy** prec. by gen. art., 593.
- par** in *on a par*, 526.
- Paradise** without and with def. art.,  
 566, 567.
- paraphernalia** as plur. tant., 171, 173,  
 300.
- parcel(s)** in comp., 269;  
 as individualizer, 275.
- pardon** prec. by indef. art., 624;  
 in *to beg pardon* in a var. of constr.,  
 701, 808.
- parent** used attrib., 16.
- parings** as plur. tant., 159.
- Parisian** comp. with attrib. *Paris*, 357.
- park** as individualizer, 275.
- Parliament** constr. as sing., 291;  
 disp. with def. art., 553 *f*.
- parrot** ref. to by fem. or masc. pron.,  
 329, 331.
- part** used attrib., 19;  
 constr. as sing. or plur., 291;  
 with or without indef. art., 624,  
 660 *ff*;  
 partaking of funct. of indef. num.,  
 660 *ff*, 1213;  
 equiv. to *some* or *some part*, 661,  
 1196;  
 in *to take part (with)* or *to take the  
 part of*, 673 *f*;  
 in *for my (or our) part*, 817, 867;  
 in *on my part*, 824;  
 understood after denominator of  
 fractions, 1258.
- participial adj.** in var. applic., 358 *f*;  
 den. casualties, 405 *f*.
- participles** den. single indiv., 400.
- particular** tot. conv. into noun, 374;  
 in *in particular*, 418, 679;  
 comp. with *of all things* (or *men*,  
 etc.), 1028;  
 emph. the notion expres. by *of all  
 others*, 1028.
- particularly** id., 1028.
- parties** partaking of the funct. of  
 indef. pron., 659.
- parts** as plur. tant., 218;  
 understood after num., 1239.
- partisan** used pred., 23, 25;  
 instead of *partisan's*.
- partner** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794.
- party** constr. as sing. or plur., 291;  
 constr., first as sing. then as plur.,  
 298;  
 ref. to by fem. pron., 338;  
 with or without indef. art., 642;  
 in *a party* partaking of the funct.  
 of indef. pron., 1210 *f*.
- pass** prec. by prop. name retaining  
 the art., 584.
- passenger birds** var. of, 5.
- passion** prec. by indef. art., 624;

- fol. by *with*, 824.
- past** tot. or part. conv. into noun, 383, 416;  
as var. of *last*, 443, 449;  
in phrases den. a period, 910.
- past participle** den. single indiv., 400.
- pathetics** as plur. tant., 163.
- patience** in *to lose (one's) patience*, 813.
- patroness**, 341.
- pattern** in periph. compar., 2;  
used attrib., 15;  
in *to set the pattern*, 699.
- pause** prec. by indef. art., 624.
- pea** two plur., 133, 136;  
formed from a supposed plural, 138.
- peace** with or without gen. art., 603 *f*, 1342.
- peachick** instead of *peachicken*, 139.
- peacock** in clas. gen., 90.
- peafowl** a modern form., 350.
- peahen**, 350.
- peasant** instead of *peasant's* 106;  
also fem., 346.
- peasantry** constr. as plur., 291;  
prec. by gen. art., 591.
- peculiar** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- pedant** also fem., 346.
- peep of day** disp. with def. art., 546 *f*.
- pelican** ref. to by fem. pron., 331.
- Peloponnesus** (or *Peloponnese*) with or without art., 570.
- pen and ink** used attrib., 20.
- penates** as plur. tant., 173.
- pence** comp. with *pennies*, 136;  
understood after num., 1235 *f*.
- pendulum** used attrib., 15.
- penetralia** as plur. tant., 173.
- peninsula** prec. by prop. name retaining art., 584.
- penny** two plur., 133, 136;  
in adnom. word-groups, 271 *f*.
- people** constr. as plur., 250;  
in twofold col. sense, 281;  
prec. by num., 281;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 291, 295 *f*;  
constr. first as sing. then as plur., 298;  
prec. by gen. art., 591;  
equiv. to indef. pron., 658, 1209, 1212;  
as prop-word, 1177, 1307, 1320.
- per** as distr. prep., 530.
- per cent** prec. by num. constr. as sing. or plur., 294;  
prec. by num. after which head-word is understood, 1239.
- perch** as unchanged plur., 255.
- perfidious** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- period** in *at one period*, 1172;  
in *at some period*, 1191.
- periphrastic comparison**, 427;  
comp. with terminational comp., 474 *ff*.
- perjure** fol. by refl. pron., 842.
- permit** with or without *it*, 741 *f*.
- perquisites** as plur. tant., 177, 182.
- person** in *this sort (or kind) of person*, 309 *f*;  
in *a person* partaking of the funct. of indef. pron. 325, 1163, 1210 *f*;  
as var. of *self*, 835;  
disp. with indef. art., 1211;  
as prop-word, 1307.
- personal pronouns** of the 3rd pers. used as determ. pron., 726 *ff*, 941;  
instead of refl. pron., 831.
- personification**, 50, 332 *f*, 598.
- persons** partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 657 *ff*, 1209.
- perspiration** prec. by indef. art., 624.
- persuade** fol. by refl. pron., 843.
- persuasive** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- pertinent(s)** as plur. tant., 163;  
tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- pet** fol. by *with*, 824.
- Peter's pence**, 143.
- phantom** ref. to by neut. or masc. pron., 328.
- philip-sparrow**, 351.
- philosophy** disp. with gen. art., 592.
- phonetics** as plur. tant., 163.
- physics** id., 163.
- pickle** in *to have a rod in pickle*, 673.
- pictorial postcard** as var. of *picture postcard*, 3.
- picture** (*noun*) used attrib., 3,  
mod. by obj. gen., 62.
- picture** (*verb*) fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 857 *f*.



- piece** as individualizer, 275;  
     in *of a piece with*, 525 *f.*  
**pig** as unchanged plur. 251;  
     ref. to by masc. pron., 331.  
**pike** disp. with def. art., 674.  
**pilchard** not an unchanged plur., 255.  
**pilgrimage** prec. by indef. art., 620.  
**pillar-box** ref. to by masc. pron., 338.  
**pin** instead of *pin's*, 104.  
**pincers** prec. by indef. art., 300, 1335.  
**pinch** prec. by indef. art., 625.  
**pinchbeck** used attrib., 10.  
**pine** in col. sense, 246.  
**pioneer** used attrib., 18.  
**pique** fol. by refl. pron., 842.  
**pity** with or without indef. art., 625;  
     in *Have (or take) pity (upon) me*, 705.  
**place** in *in (or out of) place*, 813.  
**places** in *in all places*, 1045.  
**plague** in imprecations with def. art.,  
     566;  
     prec. by indef. art. in emotional  
         quest., 566, 1223;  
     with or without gen. def. art., 600.  
**plain** prec. by prop. name disp. with  
     art., 586.  
**plan** in *to lay down (or form) a plan +*  
     *of + ger. or to + inf.*, 647, 696.  
**plaster-of-Paris** used pred., 24.  
**plaudits** as plur. tant., 182.  
**play** fol. by *the + adj. part. conv.*  
     into noun, 398.  
**please** with or without *to do so (or*  
     *it)*, or be *so*, 761 *f.*  
**pleasure** with or without indef. art., 625.  
**Pleiades** as plur. tant., 175.  
**plenty** partaking of the funct. of indef.  
     num., 531, 662, 1213.  
**pleonastic genitive**, 77 *ff.*  
**plover** as unchanged plur., 253.  
**plume** fol. by refl. pron., 842.  
**plural** pref. to sing. when the ref.  
     is to each of a group of persons  
     separately, 272;  
     used when the def. art. is not repeated  
         before each of a succession of  
         attributive adj., 273.  
**plural nouns** sing. in mean. constr.  
     as sing., 299 *ff.*  
**plural pronouns** used in ref. to comp.  
     or word-groups containing an in-  
     defin. pron. or num. or to two  
     (pro)nouns of different gender con-  
     nected by *or*, 310 *f.*  
**poet** also fem., 353.  
**poetess**, 341.  
**point** in *to make a point + to + inf.*  
     or *+ of + ger.*, 647 *f.*  
**points** as plur. tant., 219.  
**Polack** prec. by def. art. den. the  
     whole notion, 243.  
**polemics** as plur. tant., 163.  
**police** prec. by num., 282;  
     constr. as plur., 296.  
**policeman** disp. with def. art., 551.  
**politic** tot. conv. into noun, 374.  
**political** id., 374.  
**politicians** partaking of the funct. of  
     indef. pron., 659.  
**politics** as plur. tant., 163.  
**poor** as emotional adj., 354, 575, 724;  
     part. conv. into noun, 366, 391, 394 *f.*;  
     before pers. pron. used as nouns, 724.  
**poorest** in *at the poorest*, 502.  
**poorly** (*adj.*) used only predic., 362.  
**Pope** in clas. gen., 94;  
     with or without def. art. before  
         prop. name, 655.  
**populace** constr. as plur., 291.  
**population** id., 291.  
**port** disp. with def. art., 542;  
     before prop. name disp. with def.  
         art., 586.  
**port(e)ress**, 341.  
**portion** disp. with indef. art., 1343.  
**portmanteau** two plur., 131.  
**portrait** mod. by obj. gen., 62;  
     fol. by *of*, 81.  
**Portugal** used attrib., 4.  
**Portuguese** as new-formed sing., 123,  
     140.  
**position** fol. by *of + noun* without  
     indef. art., 636;  
     with def. or indef. art., 696.  
**possessed** den. single indiv., 402.  
**possession** in *to get (obtain or take)*  
     *possession of*, 674.  
**possessive case**, 41.

- possessive pronouns** (*conjoint*) as gen.  
formative, 39;  
as antec. of rel. pron., 320, 807, 965;  
before adj. part. conv. into noun, 388;  
before partic. den. single indiv., 400;  
before superl., 496 *ff*;  
expr. an obj. rel., 786 *ff*;  
replaced by *of* + pers. pron., 786 *ff*,  
791 *ff*, 804;  
expr. obscure or unusual rel., 790 *f*;  
between adj. and noun, 803 *f*;  
fol. by *every* + noun, 804;  
prec. by *other*, 804 *f*;  
prec. by (indef.) num., 805;  
prec. by dem. pron., 805 *f*;  
comp. with def. art., 808 *ff*, 1346.  
mod. subst. *all*, 1017;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1293.
- possessive pronouns** (*absolute*) after  
vaguely partitive *of*, 806, 820 *ff*;  
as subj. of nom. pred., 819.
- possessor** of com. gen., 348.
- post** in *by* (*first*) *post*, 674.
- postposition of the subject** causing  
ungram. constr., 307 *f*.
- posterior** equiv. to compar., 427.
- posteriors** as plur. tant., 169.
- posterity** constr. as sing. or plur., 291 *f*;  
disp. with gen. art., 593.
- postwoman**, 347.
- postulata** as plur. tant., 173.
- pot** ref. to by masc. pron., 336.
- poultice** originally plur., 143.
- poultry** prec. by *much* or *a few*, 282;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 296 *f*.
- pound** unaltered for plur., 263 *f*;  
in adnom. word-groups, 271;  
understood after num., 1235 *f*.
- pouts** as plur. tant., 153.
- powerful** tot. conv. into noun, 384.
- pox** originally plur., 140;  
disp. with def. art. in imprecations,  
565 *f*;  
prec. by indef. art. in emotional  
quest., 566, 1223.
- practice** in *to make a practice of* +  
ger., 648;  
in *in* (*into*, *out of* or *to*) *practice*,  
674.
- pragmatic** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- pray** fol. by *so*, 743.
- prayers** as plur. tant., 218.
- precincts** id., 177, 182.
- precious** as voc., 392;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- precise** equiv. to *same*, 931.
- predicate** in adnom. clause depending  
on antecedent, 319 *ff*;  
depending on titles consisting of  
pos. pron. + abstract noun placed  
in the third person, 321 *f*.
- predicative adj.**, 360 *f*.
- predicative gen.**, 100 *f*.
- predicative nouns** disp. with art., 25,  
637 *ff*;  
ref. to by *so*, 25;  
mod. by adv., 25, 641;  
ref. to by *that* or *which*, 28;  
fol. by prep. obj., 28;  
con. with subj. of dif. numb., 278;  
in the plur. den. qual., 279 *f*.
- preferential trade** used attrib., 20.
- preferment** mod. by obj. gen., 62.
- preliminary** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- premier** equiv. to superl., 427 *f*.
- premises** as plur. tant., 218 *f*.
- prepare** with or without refl. pron., 849.
- preposition** shifted to the end of the  
sent., 994 *ff*;  
understood together with rel., 1003.
- prepositional expressions**, 681 *f*, 795 *ff*.
- prescribe** fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 858.
- present** (*adj.*) tot. or part. conv. into  
noun, 416;  
in *at present*, 679;  
in *the present writer* (or *speaker*), 881;  
in *the present week* (*month* or *year*),  
895;  
in *these present times*, 895;  
as demonstr. equiv., 916.
- present** (*verb*) with or without refl.  
pron., 845.
- present participle** used attrib., 21.
- presents** as plur. tant., 219.
- press** with or without def. art., 674,  
1344.
- pretence** with or without indef. art.,  
697, 1345.

- pretext** in *to make (it) a pretext* for + ger., 648.
- pretty** as voc., 392;  
mod. adv. *much*, 1115 *f*;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- pretty-pretty** tot. conv. into noun, 385.
- prevent** drop. thing-object, 742.
- prey** in *to be (or become) a prey* and *to fall the prey*, 698, 1345.
- pride** (*noun*) with or without indef. art., 625.
- pride** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 842.
- priesthood** constr. as sing. or plur., 292;  
prec. by gen. art., 591.
- prima donna** plur. of, 702.
- Princess** before prop. name with or without def. art., 655.
- principle** fol. by *with*, 82, 824.
- prison** disp. with art., 542, 605.
- prisoner** used predic., 27, 643;  
with or without indef. art., 643.
- private** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- probabilities** in *the probabilities are*, 237.
- probation** in *(up)on probation*, 678.
- proceedings** as plur. tant., 219.
- proceeds** id., 182.
- procession** constr. as sing., 292.
- produce** in col. sense, 246.
- profession** constr. as sing. or plur., 292;  
fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 636.
- proficient** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- profit** prec. by indef. art., 625.
- progress** in col. sense, 246.
- progressive** tot. conv. into noun, 374.
- pro-infinitive** *to*, 763 *f*.
- promise** with or without indef. art., 694, 697.
- proof** in col. sense, 248;  
in *to give proof of*, 674;  
in *to put to the proof*, 678.
- propaganda** as plur. tant., 171, 173, 300.
- proper** after pos. pron., 818 *f*;  
in conjunction with *own*, 818 *f*;  
mod. *self*, 833.
- proper name** in gen., 45 *ff*;  
used to indic. sex, 351.
- propensity** prec. by indef. art., 625, 697.
- prophethess**, 341.
- proportion** constr. as plur., 292.
- propose** with or without *to* + refl. pron., 858.
- prosecution** constr. as plur., 292.
- prosecutrix**, 344 *f*.
- prospects** as plur. tant., 219.
- protectress**, 342.
- protest** prec. by indef. art., 625 *f*.
- Protestant** used pred., 28.
- Protestantism** disp. with gen. art., 592.
- prove** approx. to cop., 854.
- proverbs** in *the Book of Proverbs*, 637.
- Providence** ref. to by neut., masc. or fem., pron., 529, 703;  
disp. with gen. art., 599.
- provision** in col. sense, 248.
- provisions** as plur. tant., 219.
- public** constr. as sing. or plur., 292;  
constr. first as sing. then as plur., 298;  
prec. by gen. art., 591;  
in *the public* partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 1209.
- pudding** ref. to by masc. pron., 338.
- pull together** fol. by refl. pron., 840.
- Pullmann** used attrib., 17.
- pumps** as plur. tant., 150.
- punishment** mod. by obj. gen., 62.
- Punjaub** prec. by def. art., 569.
- Puritan** in *a Puritan of the Puritans*, 1342.
- purlieus**, 131.
- purpose** (*noun*) in *for the purpose*, 522.
- purpose** (*verb*) fol. by *so*, 762.
- quackerles** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794.
- quadruple** (*verb*) equiv. to *to multiply* fourfold, 1269.
- quadruple** as adv., 1270.
- quadruply** the ordinary adv. form, 1270.
- Quakeress**, 342.
- qualify** with or without refl. pron., 849.
- quality** fol. by *of* + noun without indef. art., 636.
- quality** expr. by nouns in common case, 1, 5 *ff*;

- expr. by gen., 40, 89 *ff*;  
 expr. by adj. 354.  
**quarrel** prec. by indef. art., 626.  
**quarrelsome** in obj. and subj. mean., 363.  
**quarry** as unchanged plur., 252.  
**quarter** in adv. comp., 269;  
 var. with *fourth*, 1258.  
**quarter(s)** as plur. tant., 219 *f*;  
 in adnom. comp., 267 *f*.  
**quarter-day** disp. with def. art., 548.  
**quarter-of-an-hour** plur. of, 143;  
 disp. with indef. art., 665, 1343.  
**quartette** indic. party of four pers., 1243.  
**quatre** equiv. to *four*, 1229.  
**Queen** in *Queen's evidence* and *the Queen's grace*, 47;  
 with or without def. art. before prop. name, 655.  
**question (noun)** in *the question of questions*, 521;  
 prec. by indef. art., 626;  
 with or without def. art., 674;  
 in *beyond (a) question*, 691;  
 with def. or indef. art., 697.  
**question (verb)** drop. *it*, 749.  
**quick** expr. gen. concrete idea, 410.  
**quinsy** prec. by indef. art., 632.  
**quite** in *quite a few*, 1097.  
**rabbit** instead of *rabbit's*, 107.  
**rabble** constr. as plur., 292;  
 prec. by gen. art., 591.  
**race** constr. as sing. or plur., 292.  
**Radical** used pred., 28.  
**rage** prec. by indef. art., 626.  
**random** in *at random*, 679.  
**range** as individualizer, 275.  
**range (geogr. name)** prec. by prop. name retaining art., 584.  
**rank** followed by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 636;  
 in *to take rank*, 666.  
**rank and file** prec. by num., 282;  
 constr. as plur., 292.  
**ranks** as plur. tant., 220.  
**ransom** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793.  
**rapids** as plur. tant., 166, 169.  
**rapture** with or without indef. art., 626.  
**raptures** as plur. tant., 177, 182.  
**rascaldom** constr. as sing., 292.  
**rate** in *at any rate* or *at all rates*, 1046.  
**rath(e)** as base of *rather*, 473,  
**rather** as compar., 473 *f*;  
 with or without *so*, 753;  
 var. with *more*, 1120 *f*;  
 var. with *somewhat*, 1201.  
**ratherest** as obsol. superl., 473 *f*.  
**rathest** as unusual superl., 473.  
**rational** as plur. tant., 150.  
**raven** used attrib., 16.  
**raw** tot. conv. into noun, 385;  
 expr. gen. concr. idea, 410.  
**reach** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 796 *f*.  
**reactionary** tot. conv. into noun, 374.  
**reader** of com. gen., 348.  
**real(s)** understood after num., 1236.  
**rear** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 797.  
**rearmost** as superl. of noun, 2.  
**reason** ref. to by neut. pron., 337;  
 with or without indef. art., 626.  
**recall** fol. by *for* + refl. pron., 857.  
**recent** as var. of *late*, 441, 443.  
**reciprocal pronouns**, 1067 *ff*, 1167 *ff*;  
 understood, 1071.  
**recitals** as plur. tant., 220.  
**recollect** drop. *it*, 735;  
 with or without *it* (or *that*), 737 *f*;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 840.  
**reconcile** in *to be reconciled*, 843.  
**records** as plur. tant., 220.  
**recover** with or without refl. pron., 849 *f*.  
**Red** used as noun, 28, 384.  
**Red-man's** as clas. gen., 90.  
**redundant object**, 831, 860, 863.  
**reef** prec. by prop. name retaining def. art., 584.  
**reflective pron.** after *as* or *than*, 713.  
**reform** with or without refl. pron., 850.  
**refrain** id., 850.  
**refresh** in *to be refreshed*, 843.  
**refuge** in *to seek* (or *take*) *refuge*, 1344.  
**refuse** with or without *it*, 742.  
**regalia** as plur. tant., 173, 300.  
**regard** prec. by indef. art., 626.  
**regards** as plur. tant., 220.



- regent** also fem., 353.  
**Regent's Park** without or with def. art., 580.  
**regiment** constr. as sing. or plur., 292; understood after ord. num., 1257.  
**regimentals** as plur. tant., 163.  
**regular** tot. conv. into noun, 374, 385.  
**rehabilitation** mod. by obj. gen., 62.  
**rehearsal** disp. with def. art., 592.  
**Reichstag** constr. as sing., 293.  
**rein** in *to draw* (or *give*) *rein*, 674 *f*.  
**reins** as plur. tant., 150; in var. loc., 675.  
**rejected** den. single indiv., 402.  
**relation** expr. by nouns in com. case, 1, 17 *ff*;  
 implying qual., 20, 357;  
 expr. by gen., 89, 92 *ff*;  
 expr. by adj., 354 *f*, 361.  
**relative adjectives**, 359, 361;  
 preferring periphr. comp., 477 *f*.  
**relics** as plur. tant., 221.  
**religious** tot. conv. into noun, 374.  
**reluctance** prec. by indef. pron., 626.  
**remains** as plur. tant., 177, 183.  
**remark** in col. sense, 248 *f*.  
**remember** in *Remember me!* 705;  
 drop. *it*, 735;  
 with or without *it* (or *that*), 737 *f*;  
 fol. by curtailed cl., 739;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 840;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862 *f*.  
**remembrance** ref. to by fem. pron., 337.  
**remnant** constr. as sing. or plur., 293.  
**remove** with or without refl. pron., 850.  
**remote** as var. of *far*, 438.  
**remotest** as var. of *least*, 432, 436.  
**repent** fol. by refl. pron., 860;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863.  
**report** fol. by refl. pron., 840.  
**reprisals** as plur. tant., 163.  
**repugnance** with or without indef. art., 626.  
**reputation** prec. by indef. art., 697.  
**requisite** tot. conv. into noun, 374.  
**rescue** prec. by indef. art., 626;  
 in *at rescue* and *to the rescue*, 675.  
**resemblance** prec. by indef. art., 626.  
**reserve** with or without *to* + refl. pron., 858.  
**residence** in *to take up* (one's) *residence*, 814.  
**resistance** prec. by indef. art., 627.  
**resolution** prec. by indef. art., 697.  
**resources** as plur. tant., 221.  
**respect** with or without indef. art., 627.  
**respectables** as plur. tant., 164.  
**respects** id., 221.  
**responsions** id., 183.  
**rest** (*noun*) constr. as plur., 293; in the inclusive mean., 512, 1028, 1181.  
**rest** (= *repose*) in var. loc., 675.  
**rest** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 860;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862;  
 in imper. fol. by *ye* or *thee*, 864.  
**restrain** fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**restrictive adjectives**, 354.  
**restrictive adjuncts** whether or no occasioning the use of the def. art. before prop. names, 571 *ff*;  
 before cert. col. nouns used in gen. way, 593.  
**restrictive adnominal clauses**, 726, 976.  
**retire** drop. refl. pron., 845.  
**returns** as plur. tant., 221.  
**revel(s)** in comp., 268.  
**revenge** (*noun*) with or without indef. art., 627.  
**revenge** (*verb*) in *to be revenged*, 843.  
**revenue** in col. sense, 246.  
**reverence** prec. by indef. art., 627.  
**Reverend** tot. conv. into noun, 374.  
**revolutionary** id., 374.  
**Revs.** before more than one prop. name, 147.  
**rheumatism** with or without gen. art., 600 *f*;  
 prec. by indef. art. art., 632.  
**rhinoceros** two plur., 129;  
 as unchanged plur., 252.  
**rhino-cow**, 350.  
**rhythm** occas. use of attrib. noun instead of adj., 3 *f*;

- affect. choice between *gen.* and *of* constr., 76;  
 id. between *less* and *lesser*, 433;  
 id. between *last* and *latest*, 422 *f*;  
 occas. use of *few* after *last*, *next* or *first*, 443;  
 affect. choice between termin. and periphr. comp., 477;  
 id. constr. of sent. den. gradual increase of some qual., 504;  
 occas. drop. of adv. *the* before comp., 506;  
 id. use of def. art. before material or abstr. nouns, 599;  
 affect. use of indef. art. in sent. with *ever* or *never*, 688 *f*;  
 id. pos. of *so*, 745, 757;  
 id. pos. of conj. *mine*, 784;  
 id. use of *of* + pers. pron. as comp. with pos. pron., 791;  
 id. use of refl. pron. as against pers. pron., 861;  
 id. use of *whose* as against *of which*, 967;  
 id. use of *more of* as against *more*, 1119;  
 id. use of *no* as against *not (a)* or *not any*, 1129.  
**rich** part. conv. into noun, 391, 395 *f*.  
**riches** mistaken for a plur., 137 *f*.  
**riddle** from supposed plur., 138.  
**right (adj.)** tot. conv. into noun, 381, 385;  
 part. conv. into noun, 408;  
 equiv. to *the right*, 411;  
 with or without art., 606;  
 with def. or indef. art., 697.  
**right (verb)** fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**right-about** part. conv. into noun, 408.  
**right and wrong** id., 412.  
**rights** as plur. tant., 221 *f*.  
**rigid** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**risk** with or without def. or indef. art., 627, 675.  
**rival** used attrib., 14.  
**river** prec. or fol. by prop. name, 584;  
 disp. with after prop. name, 584 *f*;  
 fol. by appositional *of*, 585.  
**roach** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**road** in comp. proper names with or without art., 583 *f*.  
**roads** as plur. tant., 177, 183.  
**roast** in the sense of *roast beef*, 365.  
**robbery** mod. by obj. gen., 62.  
**robin** ref. to by masc. pron., 331;  
 in *robin redbreast*, 351.  
**rock** prec. by prop. name retaining art., 584.  
**roe** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**rogue** used pred., 26.  
**Roman** used pred., 29;  
 prec. by def. art., den. the nation, 243.  
**Roman Catholic** used pred., 28.  
**Romanism** disp. with gen., art., 593.  
**romantic** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**Roosevelt** used attrib., 18.  
**root and branch** disp. with art., 682.  
**rope** in gen., 54, 56.  
**rose** used attrib., 18, 267.  
**rough(s)** as plur. tant., 166, 169;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 381;  
 part. conv. into noun, 408 *f*.  
**round (adj.)** tot. conv. into noun, 381;  
 in *all round*, 1033 *f*.  
**round (noun)** as individualizer, 275 1336.  
**rounds** in *to go the rounds (of)*, 237.  
**royal** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**Royalty** constr. as sing., 293;  
 dis. with gen. art., 593.  
**ruck** partaking of the funct. of indef. num. 662.  
**rudiments** as plur. tant., 222.  
**ruin** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793.  
**ruins** as plur. tant., 222, 300.  
**rule** in *to make (if) a rule* + inf., 648;  
 with def. or indef. art., 699.  
**ruled** den. single indiv., 402.  
**Rumour** disp. with gen. art., 599.  
**run** prec. by indef. art., 627.  
**runaway** tot. conv. into noun, 382.  
**Russia** used attrib., 17.  
 's as mutilated form of *his*, 784.  
**Sabbath** prec. by gen. art., 606.  
**sables** as plur. tant., 222.  
**sacrifice** in *to fall a sacrifice to*, 698.

- saddle** in var. loc., 675.  
**sage** tot. conv. into noun, 383.  
**said** not throwing out the art., 564, 576.  
**sail** unaltered for plur., 264 *f*;  
     disp. with art., 675.  
**sailor** instead of *sailor's*, 106.  
**Saint** before names of pers., 46, 650.  
**sake** mod. by gen., 30 *f*, 57 *f*;  
     in *for your own sake*, 705.  
**salmon** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**salt** tot. conv. into noun, 365, 379.  
**sambur** as unchanged plur., 252.  
**same** in *one and the same*, 926, 1248;  
     in *all the same*, 928, 1034;  
     mod. by dem. pron., 928;  
     in *any, the same*, 928, 1051;  
     with or without def. art. equiv. to  
         pers. pron. of the 3rd pers., 928 *f*;  
     antec. of *that, who* or *which*, 982 *f*;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1295 *f*.  
**sample(s)** in comp., 269.  
**sands** as plur. tant., 222 *f*.  
**satisfy** in *to be satisfied*, 843.  
**savage** tot. conv. into noun, 383.  
**savages** as plur. tant., 169.  
**save** fol. by nom. or obj., 711 *f*;  
     fol. by refl. pron., 856.  
**saved** den. single indiv., 402, 406.  
**savings** as plur. tant., 159.  
**say** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 608;  
     prec. by pos. pron., 826.  
**say** (*verb*) fol. by pron. *so*, 743, 746;  
     fol. by *it* (or *that*), 746;  
     fol. by incompl. cl., 748;  
     drop. pron. *so*, 749;  
     fol. by pron. *as much* or *so much*, 779;  
     in *though I say it (who should not)*,  
         866;  
     in *that is to say*, 915;  
     in *to say the least*, 1106;  
     in *least said soonest mended*, 1106;  
     in *as much as to say*, 1113.  
**scale** prec. by indef. art., 627, 697.  
**scales** as plur. tant., 223, 300.  
**scarf** plur. of. 117.  
**school** constr. as sing., 293;  
     disp. with def. art., 542 *f*, 605;  
     in comp. prop. names with or  
         without def. art., 582.  
**schoolboy** used attrib., 14, 19.  
**school-house** comp. with *school house*,  
     22.  
**scissors** as plur. tant., 148, 150, 299 *f*;  
     in comp., 269.  
     ref. to by sing. pron., 1335.  
**score** unaltered for plur., 258 *f*;  
     understood as num., 1229 *f*;  
     prec. by *some* and (or) fol. by *or*  
         *so*, 1233 *f*.  
**scoundrel** used attrib., 4;  
     instead of *scoundrel's*, 106;  
     equiv. to an abstr. noun, 410.  
**Scripture** without or with def. art., 567 *f*.  
**Scriptures** not disp. with def. art.,  
     567 *f*.  
**sculptress**, 342.  
**se** Mid Eng. repres. of *so* in comp.  
     with interrog. words, 1214.  
**sea** in *the high seas*, 237 *f*;  
     ref. to by fem. pron., 337;  
     prec. by def. art., 554;  
     prec. by prop. name disp. with def.  
         art., 586;  
     with or without def. art., 676;  
     in *sea and land*, 683.  
**season** in *in due season*, 537.  
**seamster(-stress)**, 343.  
**second** in *second oldest*, 455.  
     in var. loc., 1256;  
     conv. into pure noun, 1250;  
     equiv. to *latter*, 1260;  
     mod. *cousin*, 1260;  
     in (*up*)on *second thought(s)*, 1261;  
     as adv., 1261.  
**second-hand** used attrib., 20.  
**seconds-hand** instead of *second-hand*,  
     269.  
**secondly** var. with *second*, 1261.  
**see** drop. *it*, 742;  
     in con. with *little, less, much, more,*  
         *anything*, 1099, 1105, 1112, 1119,  
         1309.  
**seeds** as plur. tant., 223.  
**seeress**, 342.  
**self** as adj., 831, 835, 930;  
     as noun prec. by var. mod., 832 *f*,  
         1346;  
     in gen., 824;

- in *self and partner(s)*, etc., 834;  
 in comp., 835.  
**selfsame** as var. of *same*, 835 *f*, 930.  
**sell** as intrans. verb, 856.  
**sempster(-stress)**, 343 *f*.  
**senate** constr. as sing. or plur., 293.  
**senior** tot. conv. into noun, 378.  
     equiv. to compar., 427, 1338.  
**se'nnight** = *seven night*, 305.  
**Señor** without def. art. before prop. name, 655.  
**sensation** prec. by indef. art., 627.  
**sense** in *in a (or one) sense*, 527 *f*.  
**sentence** disp. with def. art., 676.  
**separate** with or without refl. pron., 851.  
**separative** as comp. with *collective*, 1066.  
**seraph** plur. forms of, 129 *f*.  
**series** unaltered for plural, 124.  
**serpent's** as a clas. gen., 90.  
**service** disp. with def. art., 543.  
**serpent** instead of *serpent's*, 107.  
**sessions** as plur. tant., 223.  
**set (noun)** as individualizer, 274;  
     constr. as sing., 293.  
**set (verb)** with or without refl. pron., 851;  
     fol. by refl. pron. as indirect obj., 856.  
**settle** with or without refl. pron., 851 *f*.  
**seven** in *at six(es) and seven(s)*, 1245.  
**seventy-four** as pure noun, 1244.  
**several** before *such*, 940;  
     as distrib. adj., 1066, 1188 *f*;  
     as col. num., 1188;  
     in the mean. of *different* or *separate*, 1189.  
**severally** as distrib. adv., 1189.  
**sex** used attrib., 3.  
**sex** left unexpressed in pred. nouns, 27.  
**shackles** as plur. tant., 150.  
**shakes** as plur. tant., 152, 223;  
     in *no great shakes*, 238.  
**shall** with or without *do so (or it)* or *be so*, 760 *ff*;  
     in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;  
     in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 *ff*;  
     in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial, etc., 771 *ff*.  
**sham (noun)** used attrib., 15.  
**sham (verb)** fol. by noun without art., 646.  
**shambles** as plur. tant., 223 *f*, 300, 1336.  
**shame** with or without indef. art., 627 *f*.  
**shape** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793, 795.  
**share** prec. by indef. art., 628.  
**shares** in cert. loc. 238.  
**shark** not an unchanged plur., 255.  
**sharp** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1276.  
**shave** with or without refl. pron., 852.  
**shay** a new-formed sing. from *chaise*, 140.  
**she** used to indic. sex, 350, 352, 725;  
     used as noun, 351, 724 *f*;  
     in *She-Bible*, 352;  
     instead of *her*, 721 *f*;  
     used as determ. pron., 727, 941;  
     comp. with *it*, 730 *ff*.  
**shears** prec. by indef. art., 300, 1335.  
**sheep** in clas. gen., 90;  
     plur. of 122 *f*;  
     ref. to by fem. pron., 331.  
**sheep's** equiv. to *sheepish*, 89.  
**sheet** used attrib., 15.  
**Sheik** with def. art. before prop. name, 656.  
**shell** in col. sense, 248 *f*.  
**shelter** with or without refl. pron., 852.  
**shepherd** instead of *shepherd's*, 106.  
**shift** with or without indef. art., 628.  
**shilling(s)** understood after num., 1235.  
**shipping** constr. as plur., 293.  
**shivers** as plur. tant., 153.  
**shoon** as archaic plur., 113, 120 *f*.  
**shoot** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**shop** in *to shut up (the) shop*, 676, 1344.  
**shore** disp. with def. art., 676.  
**shores** as plur. tant., 224.  
**short** in *for short*, 387;  
     in *the long and short* and its var., 412;  
     in *at short*, 418;  
     in *in short*, 419, 679, 1094;  
     in *short of*, 1093, 1104;  
     in *short and far between*, 1094;  
     in *to fall short*, 1104.



- shorts** as plur. tant., 150;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**shot(s)** in dif. mean., 249.  
**should** with or without *do so* (or *it*)  
 or *be so*, 760 ff;  
 in corrob. sent., 764 ff;  
 in sent. expr. identity of circumst.,  
 768 ff;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affir-  
 mation or denial etc., 771 ff.  
**shoulder** in *the (a) cold shoulder*,  
 699, 810;  
 in *shoulder to shoulder*, 1171.  
**shoulders** in *to rub shoulders with*, 814.  
**show (noun)** as individualizer, 276;  
 prec. by indef. art., 628;  
 in *to make a show of* + ger., 648.  
**show (verb)** drop. *it*, 735, 742;  
 with or without refl. pron., 852 f.  
**shrouds** as plur. tant., 224.  
**shut** as intrans. verb, 856.  
**sice** equiv. to *six*, 1229.  
**side** fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron., 823;  
 in *side by side*, 1171.  
**sides** in *to take sides*, 238.  
**sight** with or without indef. art., 628;  
 in var. loc., 676 f, 1344;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793, 797.  
**signify** fol. by pron. *as much*, 779;  
 mod. by *what*, 954.  
**signor(a)** with or without def. art.  
 before prop. name, 656.  
**silence** with or without indef. art., 628;  
 with or without def. art., 677.  
**silken** used attrib., 9.  
**silks** as plur. tant., 224.  
**silky** equiv. to *silken*, 12.  
**silly** tot. conv. into noun, 384.  
**silver** used attrib., 10;  
 used adv., 12.  
**silvern** used attrib. 10;  
 used pred., 360.  
**simile** in col. sense, 248.  
**simple** tot. conv. into noun, 383, 421.  
**sin** prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**since** in phrases den. a period, 910.  
**singer** of common gender, 348.  
**single** equiv. to *one by one*, 1232.  
**singly** equiv. to *one by one*, 1232.  
**singular** of pred. ungram. used in  
 vulg. lang., 309;  
 of nouns used instead of plur. in  
 enumerations, 693.  
**singular nouns** prec. by def. art. den.  
 the whole of a class, nation, sect.,  
 etc., 243 f;  
 instead of plur. for oratorical effect,  
 249 f, 273;  
 in comp. or adnom. word-groups,  
 267 ff.  
**Sir** before prop. name, 650.  
**sire** in mean. of *father*, 339.  
**sisters** after prop. name, 147.  
**sister's son** (or *daughter*) equiv. to  
*nephew* (or *niece*), 48.  
**sit** fol. by reflect. pron., 860, 1347;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 862;  
 in imper. fol. by *thou* or *thee*, 864.  
**sit down** fol. by refl. pron., 860, 862.  
**sitting** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**situation** in *in a situation*, 697.  
**six** in *six of one and half-a-dozen of*  
*the other*, 563;  
 in *at six(es) and seven(s)*, 1245.  
**six-foot** equiv. to *person of six feet*,  
 1283.  
**size (noun)** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794.  
**size (num.)** equiv. to *six*, 1229.  
**skill** with or without indef. art., 629.  
**skirts** as plur. tant., 182.  
**skittles** as plur. tant., 154.  
**sky** in cert. loc., 238.  
**Skye** used attrib., 17.  
**slain** den. single indiv., 402, 405 f.  
**slattern** also masc., 1337.  
**slave** in clas. gen., 91;  
 of com. gend., 348.  
**slight** as substit. for *little*, 432, 435 f.  
**slightest** as substit. for *least*, 432, 435 f;  
 emphas. *any*, 1037;  
 prec. by def. art. equiv. to *any*, 1040.  
**slip** in *a slip of a* + noun, 5.  
**slower** disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**sly** in *by* (or *on*) *the sly*, 409.  
**small** in *in small*, 419;  
 as a substit. for *little*  
**smallest** prec. by def. art. equiv. to  
*any*, 1040.

**small-pox** prec. by gen. art., 601.  
**small**s as plur. tant., 130.  
**snacks** in *to go snacks*, 238.  
**snip** in *a snip of a* + noun, 5;  
     in *to go snips*, 238.  
**snipe** as unchanged plur., 253.  
**so** repres. pred. nouns, 25, 749 ff;  
     id. subord. quest., 738;  
     id. subord. stat., 742 ff;  
     in front-pos., 744, 751, 755 f, 762,  
     764 ff, 768 ff;  
     in *so saying*, 745, 915;  
     after rel. pron. 745;  
     in mid-pos., 745, 752;  
     var. with *it* (*this* or *that*), 745 f, 756,  
     759 f;  
     repres. pred. adj. or noun, 749 ff, 777;  
     after *to do*, 756 ff, 777;  
     before inf., ger. or part. of *to do*,  
     757 f;  
     introducing corrob. sent., 764 ff;  
     conjunctive in gram. function, 764 ff,  
     768 ff;  
     after adv., 766, 770 f, 776;  
     in back-pos., 766 f;  
     introducing sent. expr. identity of  
     circumst., 768 ff;  
     after *if*, 770 f, 778;  
     in sent. expr. affirmation, 773;  
     in sent. expr. disbelief or astonish-  
     ment, 776;  
     in emph. stat., 776;  
     comp. with adv. *this* or *that*, 905;  
     in *just so*, 916;  
     mod. *few*, 932;  
     mod. adj. 940;  
     in *so and so* with indef. mean.,  
     943, 1107, 1255;  
     in *so many* with indef. mean., 1106,  
     1107 f, 1213;  
     in *so much* with indef. mean., 1107,  
     1112;  
     mod. by *none*, 1158;  
     in *or so* (= *thereabout(s)*), 1197,  
     1233 f;  
     form. comp. with interrog. words,  
     1214 ff;  
     fol. by adj. + *a one*, 1292;  
     mod. by *nothing*, 1312.

**society** prec. by *much* or *little* etc., 282;  
     constr. as sing., 293;  
     constr. first as sing., then as plur.,  
     298;  
     disp. with gen. art., 593.  
**soever** form. comp. with interrog.  
     words, 1214 ff;  
     div. from its head-word, 1219;  
     attached to interrog. word-group,  
     1219;  
     mod. *all* or *any*, 1219 f.  
**soldiery** constr. as plur., 297.  
**sole** not an unchanged plur., 255.  
**solicitor** prec. by def. art. and fol.  
     by prop. name, 649.  
**solitary** tot. conv. into noun, 375;  
     fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.  
**some** in Early Mod. Eng. equiv. to  
     indef. art., 525;  
     in *some certain*, 523;  
     equiv. to (*some*) *part*, 661, 1195;  
     fol. by *of* + pos. pron. + plur.  
     noun, 800 f;  
     in *some of these days*, 912, 1195;  
     as var. of determ. *those*, 921;  
     before *such*, 940, 1297;  
     in *all and some*, 1030;  
     in *some few*, 1093, 1097, 1193, 1265;  
     in *some little*, 1097, 1103, 1193;  
     in *some... or another* (= *one...  
     or another*), 1167;  
     var. with *one... or other*, 1169;  
     in *some day* (or *time*) var. with  
     *one day*, 1171, 1191;  
     as correl. of *other(s)* 1180;  
     in *some... some* 1180;  
     as correl. of *other(s)* understood,  
     1180;  
     in *other some* as correl. of *some*, 1180;  
     fol. by *or other*, *or the other* or  
     *or another*, 1184, 1185, 1190, 1192;  
     in *some other where*, 1186;  
     as indef. pron., 1189 ff, 1203, 1213;  
     as indef. num., 1189, 1193 ff, 1203;  
     as indef. adv. 1189 ff, 1197 ff, 1203,  
     1233 f;  
     at once a pron. and a num., 1189;  
     in *some one or other* + noun (or  
     *of* + noun), 1191;

- fol. by num. *one*, 1191, 1252, 1254, 1352;  
equiv. to *a certain*, 1192;  
prec. by pron. *one*, 1193;  
comp. with *much* or *many* and (*a*)  
    *little* or (*a*) *few*, 1193;  
fol. by *brief* + noun, 1193;  
in pregn. mean., 1193 *f*;  
fol. by *considerable* + noun, 1194;  
understood before part. *of*, 1194;  
id. before adnom. cl., 1194;  
used conj., absol. or subst., 1195 *ff*;  
var. with *something*, 1195 *f*;  
in the mean. of *some persons*, 1196 *f*;  
in the mean. of *somebody*, 1197;  
in the mean. of *something*, 1197;  
comp. with *any*, 1203 *ff*;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1275, 1281.
- somebody** antec. of *who*, 981;  
    with *some* in the mean. of *a certain*,  
        1192;  
    in pregn. mean., 1194, 1302 *f*;  
    var. with *some one*, 1199, 1301 *f*;  
    conv. into pure noun, 1303;  
    as quasi-proper name, 1303.
- somdever** form. comp. with interrog.  
    words, 1215.
- somedeal** used subst. or adv., 1199.
- somehow** fol. by *or other*, *or the other*  
    or *or another*, 1185, 1190;  
    in two mean., 1199.
- some one** var. with *somebody*, 1199,  
    1301 *f*;  
    in gen., 1272;  
    in pregn. mean., 1303;  
    conv. into pure noun, 1304.
- something** fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*;  
    fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825;  
    as var. of determ. *that*, 920;  
    prec. by indef. art., 920, 1192, 1316 *f*;  
    prec. by *a certain*, 920, 1193;  
    antec. of *that* or *which*, 981 *f*;  
    fol. by *or another*, 1184;  
    prec. by determ. *that*, 1192, 1317;  
    in pregn. mean., 1094;  
    understood before part. *of*, 1194;  
    id. before inf., 1194 *f*;  
    id. in *Here is for your pains*, 1195;  
    var. with *some*, 1195 *f*;  
    as comp. of prop-word *thing*, 1308 *ff*;  
    prec. by *or*, 1308;  
    fol. by part. *of*, 1309;  
    den. pers., 1309;  
    as adv., 1310, 1312 *ff*;  
    equiv. to *somewhat*, 1312;  
    mod. adv. *the*, 1313;  
    mod. *too*, 1313;  
    mod. *like* or *near*, 1314;  
    before *over* or *under*, 1314;  
    conv. into noun, 1315 *ff*;  
    in *something else* (or *beyond*) as  
        subst. word-group, 1317;  
    in *Something* (or *Other*) after title,  
        1317;  
    in *something of the kind*, 1319.
- something-ean** as indef. adj., 1317.
- somethingth** as part. of indef. ord.  
    num., 1255.
- sometime** archaic for *at some time*,  
    1192;  
    partly adj. partly adv., 1199 *f*;  
    equiv. to *sometimes*, 1200.
- sometimes** adv. gen., 1200;  
    equiv. to *sometime* (= *at some time*),  
        1200;  
    in correl. with another *sometimes*  
        or *at others*, 1200.
- somever** form. comp. with interrog.  
    words, 1215.
- someway** equiv. to *in some way*, 1200.
- someways** vulg. for *someway*, 1200.
- somewhat** as var. of determ. *that*, 920 *f*;  
    as var. of adv. *some*, 1198 *f*;  
    used as pron. or adv., 1200 *ff*;  
    fol. by part. *of*, 1201;  
    equiv. to *rather*, 1201 *f*;  
    equiv. to adv. *something*, 1312.
- somewhen** equiv. to *at some time* or  
    *other*, 1202.
- somewhere** fol. by *or other* or *or the*  
    *other*, 1190;  
    with *some* in the mean. of *a certain*,  
        1192;  
    equiv. to *at* (*in* or *to*) *some place*,  
        1202;  
    used with ref. to time or other  
        notions, 1202;  
    conv. into noun, 1202;  
    prec. by *or*, 1308.

- somewheres** vulg. var. of *somewhere*, 1190, 1202;  
fol. by *or another*, 1190.
- somewhile** equiv. to *former* or *sometimes*, 1202.
- somewhiles** vulg. for *somewhile*.
- somewhither** equiv. to *to some place*, 1203.
- somewhit** equiv. to *somewhat*, 1203.
- somewise** prec. by *in*, 1203.
- sommat** vulg. for *somewhat*, 1202.
- somuch** equiv. to pers. pron., 778 ff, 1114;  
var. with *this* (or *that*) *much*, 780, 913, 1114;  
in *(not) so much as once*, 1116;  
in *not so much . . . as*, 1116.
- songster(-stress)**, 344.
- sonne** as gen., 40.
- sooner** in *no sooner* or *not sooner*, 1146.
- sore point** fol. by *with*, 82.
- sort** fol. by *of* + plur. noun constr. as plur., 307;  
prec. by plur. demonstr., 309;  
in *after* (or *of*) *a sort*, 527 f, 686;  
fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 685 f;  
in *that sort of thing*, 309 f, 914.  
after *what*, 947 f.
- sorts** in *out of sorts*, 238;  
in *of sorts*, 686, 1344.
- soul** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 793;  
as prop-word, 1307.
- soul and body** var. with *body and soul*, 683.
- sound** in *at sound of*, 543.
- sound** (*geogr. name*) prec. by prop. name disp. with art., 586.
- sound common sense** used pred., 24.
- sour** tot. conv. into noun, 386.
- southern** tot. conv. into noun, 473.
- space** mod. by gen., 63.
- Spaniard** prec. by def. art. den. the whole nation, 243;  
also fem., 346.
- spare** with or without refl. pron., 857, 1347.
- speak** implying recipr. not., 1071;
- speaker** of com. gen., 347;  
in *the present speaker*, 881.
- spear** in gen., 54, 56.
- special** in *in special* 679.
- specialization** vague and consequent drop. of the def. art. or some other specializing adjunct, 531, 533, 535, 536, 538, 606 ff.
- specializing adjuncts** mod. adj. part. conv. into noun, 388;  
understood 389;  
whether or no occas. use of def. art., 518 f;
- species** unaltered for plur., 124.
- specific** tot. conv. into noun, 375.
- spectacles** as plur. tant., 150, 224.
- spectatrix(-ess)**, 345.
- spell** as individualizer, 276.
- spendthrift** instead of *spendthrifts*, 106.
- spider** ref. to by fem. or masc. pron., 331.
- spinster(-stress)**, 343 f.
- spirit** ref. to by neut. or masc. pron., 328;  
prec. by indef. art., 629;  
with or without def. art., 677.
- spirit(s)** as plur. tant., 224 f;  
in comp., 268.
- spite** prec. by indef. art., 629;  
fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 797.
- spoils** as plur. tant., 225.
- sport** in *to spoil sport*, 677.
- sprat** not an unchanged plur., 255.
- spread** with or without refl. pron., 845.
- spring** used attrib., 110;  
disp. with art., 547 f, 605 f.
- spur** in var. loc., 677 f.
- Squire** without def. art. before prop. name, 656.
- stable** in *in stable*, 678.
- stables** as plur. tant., 225, 300.
- staff** two plur., 116 f;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 293.
- stag** as unchanged plur., 252;  
ref. to by masc. pron., 331.
- staggers** as plur. tant., 153.
- stairs** id., 225 f, 300;  
in adnom. comp., 268 f.
- stake** in *at (the) stake*, 678.
- stalwart** tot. conv. into noun, 384.



- stamen** two plur., 125 *f*, 129.  
**stand** unaltered for plur., 264 *f*;  
     as individualizer, 276;  
     prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**standing** mod. by gen., 63.  
**standstill** prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**star** in *to thank one's stars*, 238.  
**starch** used pred., 26.  
**starts** in cert. loc., 239.  
**State** in the gen., 50;  
     instead of *State's*, 107.  
**State's evidence**, 47.  
**States** as plur. tant., 226, 1336.  
**statesman** also fem. 346.  
**statistics** as plur., tant., 164.  
**statue** mod. by obj. gen., 62;  
     fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 797.  
**stay** in imper. fol. by *thou* or *thee*, 864.  
**stays** as plur. tant., 150, 226.  
**stead** in *in* + pos. pron. + *stead*, 797.  
**stem and stern** disp. with def. art., 683.  
**steps** as plur. tant., 226.  
**ster** Old Eng. suf. to form fem., 343.  
**Stewart** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**stickleback** ref. to by masc. pron., 332.  
**still** mod. compar., 504, 509 *f*;  
     mod. *other*, 1181.  
**stimulant** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**stir** with or without indef. art., 629.  
**stock** constr. as sing. or plur., 297.  
**stock-dove** ref. to by masc. pron., 332.  
**stocks** as plur. tant., 227.  
**stone** in col. sense, 249;  
     den. weight unaltered for plur.,  
     262 *f*;  
     in *to leave no stone unturned*, 1131.  
**stone(s)-throw** (or-cast), 69, 63.  
**store** partaking of the funct. of indef.  
     num., 663, 1213.  
**stores** as plur. tant., 227, 300.  
**stout** tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**straits** as plur. tant., 166, 170;  
     prec. by prop. name disp. with def.  
     art., 586.  
**stranger** used attrib., 4, 16;  
     used pred., 27.  
**strangest** part. conv. into noun, 414.  
**straw** equiv. to *straw hat*, 1282 *f*.  
**straws** in *to split straws*, 239.  
**street** in comp. prop. names with or  
     without art., 577 *f*, 583;  
     disp. with def. art., 678.  
**stretch** in *at* (*on* or *upon*) *a stretch*  
     or *on* (or *upon*) *the stretch*, 525 *f*.  
**strings** as plur. tant., 148, 227.  
**strip** in *a strip of a* + noun, 5.  
**stripling** used attrib., 14;  
     also fem., 346.  
**stroke** as individualizer, 276;  
     in *at a* (or *one*) *stroke*, 525 *f*.  
**Stuart** used attrib., 17.  
**student**, id. 19.  
**studies** as plur. tant., 227 *f*.  
**study** disp. with def. art., 543.  
**stupid** tot. conv. into noun, 383, 385.  
**stye** plur. of, 115.  
**subject** (*noun*) in col. sense, 249.  
**subject** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 838.  
**submit** with or without refl. pron., 853.  
**substantive clause** standing after *he*,  
     *they*, etc., 728, 732.  
**substantive genitive** den. firm constr.  
     either as plur. or sing., 100, 1334.  
**substantive use** of gen., 36, 97, 99 *ff*;  
     of adj. and adnom. words generally,  
     366 *ff*.  
**Suburban** preferred to adnom. *suburb*, 3.  
**success** prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**successor** of com. gen., 348.  
**such** before plur. noun, 306;  
     before abstr. nouns with or without  
     indef. art., 633 *f*;  
     before names of substances without  
     indef. art., 634 *f*;  
     in *until such time as* (= *until*), 931;  
     var. with determ. *those*, 933;  
     var. with dem. pron., 933 *f*;  
     var. with *they* or *them*, 934;  
     in depreciative mean., 934;  
     equiv. to *so great*, 935;  
     equiv. to *so much*, 935;  
     in the mean. of *the like* or *such-*  
     *like*, 935;  
     in the mean. of (*of*) *the aforesaid*  
     (*kind*), 935;  
     in *such master*, *such servant*, 935;  
     prec. by *as* or *for*, 936 *f*;  
     after its head-word, 937;

- as var. of *one*, 937 *f*;  
 prec. by gen. of meas., 938;  
 prec. by interrog. *what*, 938;  
 prec. by *all, another, any, every, (a) few, many, most, no, none, other(s), several or some*, 939 *f*, 1296, 1297, 1319;  
 prec. by indef. pron. or num. and fol. by indef. art., 940;  
 fol. by *another* or *other(s)*, 940;  
 with indef. mean., 942, 1213;  
 in *such and (or or) such*, 942, 1107, 1348;  
 in *such a(n) one*, 942, 1275, 1279 *f*, 1292, 1296, 1348;  
 in *many such a(n) one*, 1109;  
 in *another such one*, 1296;  
 in *one such*, 1296 *f*.  
**sudden** part. conv. into noun, 409.  
**sufficient** as indef. num., 1205, 1208.  
**sufficiently** disp. with *so*, 753.  
**suffragist candidate** plur. of, 145.  
**suit** as individualizer, 276.  
**sulks** as plur. tant., 153.  
**sullens** id., 153.  
**Sultan** with or without def. art. before prop. name, 656.  
**sum(d)ever** form. comp. with interrog. words, 1215.  
**summat** vulg. for *somewhat*, 1202.  
**summer** in clas. gen., 93;  
 var. with *summer's*, 109 *f*;  
 disp. with def. art., 547, 605 *f*.  
**summons** not a plur., 138.  
**sumpter** used attrib., 5, 16.  
**sun** in gen., 52;  
 ref. to by masc. or neut. pron., 333;  
 prec. by def. art., 554.  
**Sunday** in clas. gen., 93;  
 var. with *Sunday's*, 110 *f*.  
**sundown** disp. with def. art., 546 *f*.  
**sundry** in *all and sundry*, 1030, 1208;  
 in funct. of indef. num., 1208;  
 conv. into noun, 1209.  
**sunrise** disp. with def. art., 546.  
**sunset** id., 546 *f*.  
**superior** equiv. to compar., 427.  
**superlatives** part. conv. into nouns, 413 *ff*, 419, 496 *ff*;  
 prec. by (*at* +) pos. pron. (or def. art.), 496 *ff*;  
 prec. by *of* + def. art., 511, 1286;  
 disp. with def. art., 561, 679 *f*;  
 with or without prop-word *one*, 1286 *f*.  
**supper** disp. with def. art., 544 *f*, 605.  
**supplies** as plur. tant., 228.  
**suppose** fol. by incomplete cl., 748.  
**supreme** equiv. to superl., 427.  
**sure** in *sure enough*, 1077.  
**surface** fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794 *f*.  
**surplus** used attrib., 15.  
**surprise** used attrib., 19.  
**surrender** with or without refl. pron., 853.  
**surroundings** as plur. tant., 159.  
**suspect** (*adj.*) tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**suspect** (*verb*) fol. by pron. *so*, 743.  
**suspicion** prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**swā** Old Eng. repres. of *so*, 1214 *f*.  
**swain** den. a young man, 339.  
**swear** not fol. by pron. *so*, 748.  
**sweepings** as plur. tant., 159.  
**sweepstakes** id., 177, 183.  
**sweet** tot. or part. conv. into noun, 386, 392, 424;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.  
**sweets** as plur. tant., 166, 170.  
**swellest** as superl. of a noun, 3.  
**swine** unaltered for plur., 122 *f*;  
 prec. by num., 282;  
 den. pers., 702.  
**Swiss** unaltered for the plur., 123.  
**Switzer** as var. of *Swiss*, 124.  
**sword** in gen., 54, 56;  
**sympathy** prec. by indef. art., 529.  
**syndic** prec. by def. art. and fol. by prop. name, 649.  
**table** in *to turn the tables*, 239;  
 constr. as plur., 293.  
**tablets** as plur. tant., 228.  
**tactics** id., 164.  
**t'** shortened form of def. art., 513 *f*;  
**'t** id. of pronoun *it*, 707.  
**table** disp. with def. art., 543 *f*.  
**tailor-made** tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**take** fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 858;

- fol. by *upon* + refl. pron., 859;  
 fol. by *upon* + pers. pron., 859;  
 fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863.  
**take credit** fol. by *to* + refl. pron., 858.  
**take off** fol. by refl. pron., 840.  
**Talbot** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**tale** in *by tale*, 678.  
**tale or history** disp. with art., 684.  
**talent** prec. by indef. art., 629.  
**tales** in cert. loc., 239.  
**talk** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**tantrums** as plur. tant., 153.  
**taper** used attrib., 4.  
**tariff** used attrib., 18.  
**Tarquin** prec. by def. art., 570.  
**Tartarus** disp. with def. art., 566.  
**tea** id., 544 *f*.  
**teacher** of com. gend., 349.  
**teal** as unchanged plur., 253.  
**teamster**, 344.  
**teens** in *in (or out of) one's teens, to enter one's teens*, etc., 1244.  
**teeth** as mutation-plur., 119;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 794;  
 in var. loc., 810.  
**tell** dropping *it*, 735;  
 fol. by pron. *so*, 736, 743 *f*;  
 prec. by pron. *so*, 745;  
 fol. by *it (that or this)*, 746 *f*;  
 drop. pron. *so* or *it*, 749;  
 fol. by pron. *as much* or *so much*, 779;  
 in *tell me true*, 866;  
 in *I('ll) tell you what*, 956.  
**temperance reformer** as parasynthetic formation, 21.  
**Tenequiv.** to *Ten Commandments*, 1242;  
**ten** as pure noun, 1244.  
**ter** (*suf.*) modification of *ther*, 467.  
**teraph(im)** as alien plur., 139 *f*.  
**term** disp. with def. art., 547.  
**termagant** in *a termagant of a* + noun, 5.  
**terminational comparison**, 427;  
 comp. with periph. comp., 474 *ff*.  
**terms** as plur. tant., 228 *f*;  
 in *on* + adj. + *terms* with or without *with* + recipr. pron., 1071.  
**terrors** as plur. tant., 229.  
**terrier** used attrib., 16.  
**Texel** prec. by def. art., 569.  
**th** whether voiced or unvoiced in cert. plur., 112, 710 *f*.  
**th'** shortened form of def. art., 513;  
 id. of *thou*, 708.  
**Thackeray** used attrib., 18;  
 used pred., 24.  
**than** fol. by noun disp. with indef. art., 690;  
 fol. by nom. or obj., 712 *ff*;  
 fol. by demonstr. pron., 905;  
 after *other*, 1180 *f*;  
 after *otherwise*, 1187 *f*.  
**thankfulness** with or without indef. art., 629.  
**thanks** as plur. tant., 177, 183, 300, 1336.  
**that** (*demonstr.*) before num. + name of measure, 301 *f*;  
 used in gathering up, 316;  
 repres. subord. stat., 736;  
 id. subord. quest., 738;  
 id. pred. adj. or noun, 749 *f*;  
 after *to do*, 760;  
 after *to like*, 761;  
 in corrob. sent., 767;  
 in front-pos., 767, 774;  
 in sent. expr. affirmation, 774;  
 fol. by *latter* or *last*, 893, 897;  
 with forward reference, 897, 1347.  
 as var. of *it*, 898;  
 in var. loc., 899;  
 fol. by *it* ref. to the same thing, 900 *f*;  
 used of pers. to expr. contempt, 903;  
 prec. by *Who is* or *It is* and fol. by subst. cl. or part., 903 *f*;  
 after prep., 904;  
 equiv. to *the dictum*, 904;  
 after *as (like or than)*, 905;  
 used adverbially, 905 *f*, 925, 1347;  
 in *that once*, 913, 1265;  
 in *that much*, 913 1347;  
 with indef. mean., 921 *ff*, 1213, 1279, 1295;  
 as antic. subj., 987;  
 as recapit. subj. or obj., 989;  
 in *all that*, 1033;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1279, 1293 *ff*.  
**that** (*determ.*) fol. by appositional *of*, 98 *f*;

- with intensive mean. approx. to *such*, 919;  
 supplying the place of indef. *certain*, 919, 992;  
 suppr. in careless lang., 921;  
 antec. of *which* or *that*, 983 *f*;  
 with rel. pron., understood, 992;  
 of uncertain gram. funct., 992;  
 equiv. to *he who*, 992;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1294 *f*.  
**that** (*rel.*) ref. to pred. noun, 28, 647, 964;  
 used pred., 28, 647, 964;  
 introducing subst. cl., 728, 732;  
 equiv. to prep. + *which*, 961;  
 var. with *as* 964;  
 assuming break-stress, 984;  
 with prep. at end of sent., 995.  
**that** (*condensed rel.*) in sent. with antic. *he* or *they*, 728, 991;  
 in sent. with antic. *it*, 320 *f*, 732, 990 *ff*;  
 prec. by demonstr. *that* (or *this*), 990 *f*;  
 after *who* (or *what*) *is* (or *was*)?, 990 *f*;  
 replaced by *what* after *that is*, 991, 1349.  
**the** of obscure gram. funct. before predic. superl., 493 *f*, 495 *f*, 522;  
 id. before adv. superl., 494 *f*, 495 *f*, 522;  
 id. in *at the* + superl., 497 *ff*.  
**the** (*adv.*) before compar. of adj. or adv., 504 *ff*, 522;  
 mod. by *what*, 955;  
 mod. by *all*, 1034;  
 mod. by *only*, 1034;  
 mod. by *any*, 1054, 1060;  
 in *not* (or *none*) *the less*, 1105;  
 mod. by *none*, 1158 *f*;  
 mod. by *never*, 1159;  
 mod. by *nothing*, 1312.  
**theatre** in comp. prop. names with or without def. art., 579, 581 *f*.  
**theatricals** as plur. tant., 164.  
**thee** in dialects, 717;  
 used as noun, 725 *f*;  
 var. with *thou* after imper., 863 *f*.  
**their** as gen. suf., 38;  
 in determ. funct., 807, 965, 1213;  
 with indef. mean., 807, 965, 1213.  
**Their Ladyships** var. with *My Ladies*, 780.  
**Their Lordships** var. with *My Lords*, 780.  
**theirn** vulg. for *theirs*, 785.  
**their's** as var. of *theirs*, 784.  
**them** instead of *they*, 721, 729;  
 as determ. pron., 726, 729 *f*, 941;  
 instead of *they whom*, 729;  
 replaced by *those*, 729;  
 with indef. mean., 875;  
 as demonstr. equiv., 901;  
**themselves** instead of *oneself*, 830.  
**ther** compar. suf., 428, 438.  
**thereabout(s)** emphas. indefiniteness, 1197.  
**there** vulg. after demonstr. pron. 924 *f*.  
**there are** fol. by determ. *those*, 920;  
 fol. by subst. cl., 921, 1194.  
**there is** before plur. subj., 307 *f*;  
 instead of *that is*, 916;  
 fol. by determ. *that*, 920;  
 in sent. with rel. understood, 999 *f*.  
 fol. by noun prec. by *no*, 1130;  
 fol. by *no* + ger., 1130.  
**thereof** var. of *its*, 785 *f*.  
**there was** before plur. subj., 307 *f*;  
 fol. by determ. *that*, 920;  
 in sent. with rel. understood, 999.  
**there were** before determ. *those*, 920.  
**these** con. with plur. nom. part of the pred., 280;  
 in adjuncts of time den. period, 443, 449, 909 *ff*;  
 fol. by *latter* or *last*, 445, 893;  
 used as determ., 730, 917;  
 in *these present times*, 895;  
 used in gathering up, 898;  
 with indef. mean., 924, 1213;  
 in *for these two times*, 1262;  
 fol. by prop-word *ones*, 1295.  
**thews** as plur. tant., 152.  
**they** instead of *them*, 721 *f*;  
 as determ. pron., 728 *ff*, 971;  
 replaced by *those*, 729 *f*;  
 comp. with *it*, 730 *ff*;  
 with indef. mean., 875 *f*, 1213;



- vulgar for *these* or *those*, 925;  
as antic. subj., 986 *f*.
- thick** in *the thick of at own* (or *crowd*, etc.), 413.
- thickest** in *the thickest of the fight*, 414.
- thickness** prec. by indef. art., 630.
- thine** as conj. pos. pron., 782 *f*.
- thing** in *this sort* (or *kind*) of *thing*, 309 *f*, 914;  
as prop-word after adj., 412, 1318;  
in pregn. mean., 520;  
as prop-word after def. art., 780, 1318;  
in *the thing* equiv. to *it* or *that*, 780;  
as prop-word after indef. art., 941, 1212, 1318;  
in *a thing* partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 941, 1212 *f*;  
in *a thing of naught* (or *beauty*, etc.), 1213;  
as prop-word after *any*, *every*, *no* and *some*, 1307 *ff*;  
after adj. indic. pers., 1318 *f*;  
as prop-word after demonstr. pron., 1319;  
id. after *such*, 1319;  
id. after num. *one*, 1319.
- things** as plur. tant., 229;  
equiv. to indef. pron., 531, 657 *f*, 1210, 1212;  
in *before* (or *above*) *all things*, 1021;  
in *to put things together* (= *to make inferences from data*), 1241;  
as prop-word, 1320;  
in *all things* (= *everything*), 1320.
- things personified** their names used in gen., 50 *ff*;  
ref. to by sex-indicating pronouns, 322 *ff*;  
ref. to by rel. pron. *who*, 966 *ff*.
- think** in *Think of me!*, 705;  
fol. or prec. by pron. *so*, 744, 745;  
fol. by *it*, 747;  
fol. by incomplete cl., 748;  
dropping pron. *so*, 749, 751, 1345;  
fol. by (pro)noun + pron. *so*, 751;  
fol. by pron. *as much*, 779;  
in *to think little* (or *nothing*) of, 1100, 1308;  
in *to think twice*, 1263.
- think fit** prec. by pron. *so*, 762.
- third** in var. loc., 1256.
- thirst** with or without indef. art., 630.
- thirty-two** as pure noun, 1244.
- this** before num. + name of measure, 301 *f*;  
used in gathering up 316, 898;  
before *latter*, 445, 893;  
before *last*, 448, 893;  
after *to do*, 760;  
in *this much*, 780, 913, 1347;  
in *this twentieth century*, 895;  
as var. of *it*, 898;  
in cert. loc., 899;  
fol. by *it* or *he* ref. to the same thing or person, 901;  
in conjunct. word-group, 902;  
prec. by *Who* is and fol. by pres. partic., 904;  
equiv. to *this house* (*letter* or *blow*, etc.), 904.  
after prep., 904.  
equiv. to *the dictum*, 904.  
after *as* (*like* or *than*), 905;  
used adv., 905 *f*, 1347;  
in adjuncts den. period., 909 *f*;  
in *this many a time*, 909 *f*, 1109;  
in adjuncts den. epoch, 911 *f*;  
in (*for*) *this once*, 912, 1262, 1265;  
in determ. funct., 917;  
with indef. mean., 921 *ff*, 1213, 1279, 1295;  
in *for this one time*, 1262;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1279, 1293 *ff*.
- thoroughbred** tot. conv. into noun, 382.
- those** (*demonstr.*) con. with plur. nom. part of the pred., 280;  
mod. *number*, 283;  
fol. by *latter* or *last*, 893, 897;  
in *one of those days*, 913;  
with indef. mean., 924, 1213;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1295.
- those** (*determ.*) fol. by *of* + noun, 98 *f*, 918;  
fol. by adj., 390;  
fol. by partic., 404;  
fol. by rel. cl., 1164;  
fol. by prep. phrase, 728 *f*;  
substit. for *they*, 729 *f*;

- suppr. in careless lang., 921, 1194, 1351;  
 antec. of *who*, 983 *f*;  
 comp. with determ. *one*, 1163;  
 instead of *the ones*, 1291.  
**thou** suppr., 708;  
 used as noun, 725 *f*;  
 var. with *thee* after imper., 863 *f*;  
 comp. with *you*, 884 *ff*.  
**though** prec. by interrog. *what*, 951 *f*.  
**thought** in *at thought of*, 534;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 787;  
 in (*up*)*on second* (or *first*) *thought(s)*, 1261.  
**thousand** unaltered for plur., 258, 260, 1225;  
 prec. by indef. art., 1225 *f*;  
 in *a thousand thousand* (= *a million*), 1227, 1352;  
 in dates, 1228;  
 in *a thousand and one* den. indef. large number, 1234;  
 in *in their* (or *his*) *thousands*, 1242;  
 in *thousands* (*up*)*on thousands*, 1242.  
**three** as pure noun, 1244.  
**threefold** equiv. to *three*, 1271.  
**three week** prec. by indef. art., 305.  
**three-year-old** tot. conv. into noun, 382.  
**thrice** as adv. gen., 135, 1261;  
 comp. with *three times*, 1262 *f*;  
 in *thrice-told*, 1262;  
 comp. with Latin *ter*, 1262;  
 in *twice* or *thrice*, 1263, 1265.  
**thrills** as plur. tant., 153, 229.  
**throes** id., 177, 183 *f*.  
**throng** constr. as a plur., 293.  
**thus** in *thus saying*, 745, 915.  
**thus much** var. with *so much*, 780;  
 var. with *this* (or *that*) *much*, 913.  
**tib-cat**, 351,  
**tidings** as plur. tant., 177, 184, 299.  
**tiffin** disp. with def. art., 543.  
**tights** as plur. tant., 150.  
**tigress** adopted from Old French, 342 *f*.  
**time** mod. by gen., 63;  
 ref. to by masc. pron., 336;  
 in *at* (or *for*) *the time*, 522;  
 in *at a* (or *one*) *time*, 525, 1235;  
 in *at the one time*, 527;  
 in *time was* (etc.), 532 *f*, 1172;  
 in *in due* (course of) *time*, 537 *f*;  
 in *the old(en) time(s)*, 538;  
 disp. with gen. art. when den. personified abstraction, 599;  
 prec. by adj. mostly with indef. art., 632 *f*;  
 in *time and tide*, 693;  
 in *before* (or *behind*) *one's time*, 814;  
 in *for all time*, 1020;  
 in *all the time* (= *however*), 1021;  
 in *many a time and oft* and var., 1109, 1350;  
 in *some time*, 1172, 1191;  
 in *at one time* (= *some time ago* or *before*), 1172;  
 in *at some time*, 1172;  
 in *the time has* (or *had*) *been*, 1172;  
 in *there was a time*, 1172;  
 in *at some time* (or *other*), 1191 *f*;  
 in *for this one time*, 1262.  
**times** as plur. tant., 229;  
 in *in ancient times*, 538;  
 partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 659;  
 in *at all times*, 1021, 1045 *f*;  
 used in form. num. of repet., 1261;  
 in *for these two times*, 1262;  
 in *some few times*, 1265;  
 in *many times*, 1266;  
 in *times out of number*, 1266.  
**tine(s)** understood after num., 1238.  
**tiptoe** in *on (the) tiptoe*, 678.  
*'tis* short for *it is*, 707.  
**tithe** in fractions, 1258.  
**title** fol. by *of* + noun without the indef. art., 636.  
**titles consisting of pos. pron. + abst. noun** regularly placed in gen., 47;  
 how constr., 321 *f*.  
**titles of courtesy** in lang. of servants disp. with art., 549 *f*.  
**to** before subst. gen., 36;  
 as substit. for gen. 42, 83 *ff*, 637 *ff*;  
 in the sense of *as compared with*, 48 *f*, 808, 1235;  
 in expr. in which it is fol. by indef. art. with value of num. *one*, 526;  
 in distrib. expr., 529;

- in var. expr., 680 *f*;  
 with inf. suppr., 763 *f*;  
 fol. by *it* (= *do so*), 764;  
 fol. by refl. or pers. pron., 859 *f*;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron., 873 *f*, 1347;  
 in *to this day*, 911 *f*;  
 after (*an*)*other*, 1181, 1183.  
**to come** in phrases den. period, 910.  
**to-day** in gen., 53 *f*;  
 var. with *this day*, 911.  
**to-do** (*noun*) in *a sad to-do*, 1111.  
**together** as symbol of the plur. after  
*you*, 718;  
 as recipr. equiv., 1071.  
**togs** as plur. tant., 178.  
**toils** id., 177, 184.  
**Tom** in *Tom, Dick and Harry* and  
 sim. comb., 1030.  
**tom-cat** as var. of *he-cat*, 351.  
**to-morrow** in gen., 53 *f*.  
**tomtit**, 351.  
**tone** (*indef. pron.*) in *the tone* repres.  
*that one*, 514.  
**tone** (*noun*) fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 795.  
**to-night** comp. with *this night*, 911,  
 1347.  
**tons** in adn. word-groups, 271.  
**ton's burden** as name of measure, 64.  
**tongue** in gen., 54, 56;  
 in *to give* (or *throw*) *tongue*, 666.  
**tonguester**, 344.  
**too** (*also*) in sent. expr. identity of  
 circumst., 769;  
 comp. with *and that*, 914.  
**too** (*intens. adv.*) mod. by *all*, 1034;  
 mod. by *any*, 1055;  
 mod. by *much*, 1115;  
 mod. by *none*, 1158 *f*;  
 mod. by num. of repet., 1264;  
 fol. by adj. + *a one*, 1292.  
**tooth** as mutation plur., 119;  
 in comp., 267;  
 in *tooth and nail*, 682;  
 in *long in the tooth*, 800.  
**top** in *at top*, 678;  
 fol. by *of* + pers. pron., 797.  
**topmost** as superl. of noun, 2;  
 in *the topmost mountain* (= *the top*  
*of the mountain*), 511.  
**tortoise** ref. to by neut. pron., 332.  
**Tory** used pred., 28.  
 in *Toriest of the Tory*, 1341.  
**t'other** archaic for *the other*, 514.  
**touch** in *a touch* (= *something*), 1196.  
**town** in gen., 54, 56, 92;  
 in col. sense constr. as sing., 293;  
 disp. with def. art., 543;  
 in col. sense prec. by gen. art., 591;  
 in *town and country*, 693;  
 in *the town* partaking of the funct.  
 of indef. pron., 1209.  
**trace** originally a plur., 141.  
**trade** prec. by indef. art., 630;  
 fol. by *of* + noun with or without  
 indef. art., 637;  
 id. with def. art., 637.  
**tradesmen** used attrib., 16.  
**trade-union** var. of, 108.  
**trade-unionist**, 21.  
**train** prec. by indef. art., 630.  
**traitor** used pred., 27;  
 also fem., 343.  
**traitress**, 342.  
**trammels** as plur. tant., 150 *f*.  
**transferred epithets**, 356, 362 *f*.  
**transitive** passing into intransitive  
 through drop. of refl. pron., 855.  
**translator** also fem., 353.  
**transports** as plur. tant., 230.  
**transposition** of prep., 994 *ff*.  
**trappings** as plur. tant., 159.  
**traps** id., 178, 184.  
**travels** id., 230.  
**treble** as foreign num. of multiplic.,  
 1267;  
 equiv. to *three*, 1271.  
**trebly** the ordinary adv. form, 1270.  
**treen** obs. plural of *tree*, 120 *f*.  
**trey** equiv. to *three*, 1229.  
**trial** disp. with def. art., 543;  
 with or without indef. art., 630;  
 in var. loc., 678.  
**tribe** constr. as plur., 293.  
**tribute** with or without indef. art., 666.  
**trick** in *to have a trick*, 527 *f*.  
**trickster**, 344.  
**triple** as foreign num. of multiplic.,  
 1267;

- as pure adj., 1270 *f*.  
**triple** (*verb*) equiv. to *to multiply threefold*, 1269.  
**triply** the ordinary adv. form, 1270.  
**trix** fem. suffix var. with *tress*, 344.  
**troops** as plur. tant., 230.  
**trot** prec. by indef. art., 630.  
**trousers** as plur. tant., 148, 151, 300, 1335;  
 in comp., 269.  
**trout** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**truce** originally plur., 141.  
**true** in *tell me true*, 866.  
**trumpery** used attrib., 15.  
**trunk-hose**, 122 *f*.  
**trunks** as plur. tant., 230.  
**trust** fol. by *so*, 744.  
**truth** in var. loc. with or without def. art., 607.  
**try** drop. *it*, 736;  
 with or without *it* (or *that*), 738.  
**turbot** as unchanged plur., 255.  
**Turk** prec. by def. art. den. nation, 243.  
**Turkey** used attrib., 17;  
 comp. with *Turkish*, 358.  
**turkey** ref. to by masc. pron., 332.  
**turn** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 630;  
 in *turn and turn about*, 1081;  
 in *in turn*, 1081.  
**turn** (*verb*) with plur. subj. con. with sing. nom. part of pred., 280;  
 fol. by noun with or without indef. art., 647 *f*;  
 drop. refl. pron., 844;  
 with or without refl. pron., 853, 855;  
 in imper. fol. by *thou* or *thee*, 864.  
**Turner** in clas. gen., 95.  
**turns** in *to take turns in* (or *at*) + ger., 239, 1081;  
 in *to wait turns*, 239, 1081;  
 in *by* (or *in*) *turns*, 239, 1081.  
**turtle** as unchanged plur., 256.  
**tutoress**, 342.  
**twā** Old Eng. repres. of *two*, 1229.  
**twain** archaic for *two*, 1229, 1242.  
*'t was* short for *it was*, 707.  
**tway** archaic for *two*, 1229.  
**tweezers** prec. by indef. art., 300.  
**twegen** Old Eng. repres. of *two*, 1229.  
**twelvemonth** now a comp., 305.  
*'t were* short for *it were*, 707.  
**twice** as adv. gen., 135, 1263;  
 in *twice or thrice* (or *three times*), 1263, 1265;  
 in *to think twice*, 1263;  
 in *once bitten twice shy*, 1263;  
 equiv. to *the second time*, 1264;  
 in *twice as much*, 1264;  
 in *once or twice*, 1265.  
**twilight** disp. with art., 546 *f*.  
**twin** used attrib., 16.  
**two** after pos. pron., 800;  
 comp. with *both*, 1061;  
 in *both of the two*, 1066;  
 in *to put two and two together*, 1241;  
 in the mean. of *couple*, 1242;  
 in *like two twos*, 1245.  
**two and two** fol. by sing. or plur. pred., 316.  
**twofold** comp. with *double*, 1271;  
 equiv. to *two*, 1247.  
**ty-numerals** as pure nouns, 1243 *f*.  
**type** fol. by *of* + noun with or without indef. art., 685 *f*.  
**Tyrol** with or without def. art., 569 *f*.  
**ugly** tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
**ultimate** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
*'um* mutilated form of *hem* (= *them*), 723.  
*'un(s)* vulg. for prop-word *one(s)*, 1274, 1295.  
**unchanged plur.**, 250 *ff*, 282.  
**uncountables**, 1083.  
**undefiled** denot. single indiv., 402.  
**under** as pos. degree, 472;  
 prec. by *something*, 1314.  
**undermost** as superl. of *under*, 428, 472.  
**understand** drop. *it*, 736;  
 with or without *it*, 738;  
 fol. by *so*, 744;  
**undesirable** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**undesirables** as plur. tant., 164.  
**unfortunate** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**United States** used attrib., 17, 269;  
 as plur. tant., 175, 299 *f*;  
**university** used attrib., 19;  
 in gen., 51;



- ref. to by fem. or neut. pron., 334;  
in comp. prop. names with or without  
def. art., 582.
- unemployed** den. indef. numb. of  
indiv., 403.
- universe** prec. by def. art., 554.
- unknown** den. single indiv., 402 *f*.
- unlike** fol. by obj., 714 *f*.
- unlucky** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1277.
- unseizable** tot. conv. into noun, 375.
- unusual** id., 375,
- unworthy** in *He is unworthy of you*,  
705.
- up** how comp., 470;  
tot. conv. into noun, 470.
- upper** compar. of *up*, 471 *f*;  
tot. conv. into noun, 470;  
never var. with superl., 492;  
disp. with prop-word *one*, 1289.
- upmost** var. of *uppermost*, 470 *f*.
- uppermost** formed from comparat.,  
428, 470 *f*.
- upright** tot. conv. into noun, 382.
- uproar** prec. by indef. art., 630.
- Urals** as plur. tant., 175.
- us** instead of *me*, 720 *f*;  
in indef. mean., 876.
- use** with or without indef. art., 630.
- used** with or without pro-infinitive *to*,  
763.
- usual** part. conv. into noun, 409.
- utter** as compar. of *out*, 468 *f*, 1340;  
never var. with superl., 492.
- utterest** as archaic superl., 428.
- ut(ter)most** part. conv. into noun, 414 *f*,  
420;  
as superlat. of *out*, 428, 468 *ff*.
- vagabond** instead of *vagabond's*, 106.
- vails** (*or vales*), as plur. tant., 178, 184.
- valley** prec. by prop. name retaining  
art. 584.
- value** (*noun*) mod. by gen., 63;  
prec. by indef. art., 630.
- value** (*verb*) fol. by refl. pron., 842.
- vanquished** den. single indiv., 402.
- vapours** as plur. tant., 153.
- vaults** id., 230, 300.
- vegetable** tot. conv. into noun, 375.
- velvet** used attrib., 10.
- vengeance** with or without indef. art.,  
631.
- venture** prec. by indef. art., 631.
- vermin** as single-unit noun, 295;  
constr. as sing. or plur., 297;  
constr. first as sing., then as plur., 298.
- verse** in col. sense, 249.
- very** with or without pron. *so*, 753;  
mod. *self*, 833;  
as var. of refl. pron., 866;  
mod. or equiv. to *same*, 929, 930;  
in the mean. of *exact*, 930 *f*;  
in *a very few*, 1095;  
in *very many*, 1110;  
in *very much*, 1112;  
mod. adv. *much*, 1115;  
fol. by prop-word *one*, 1296.
- vespers** as plur. tant., 177, 184, 299 *f*.
- vessel** in gen., 54, 56.
- vest** fol. by refl. pron., 843.
- vestments** as plur. tant., 177, 184.
- viands** id., 184.
- vicereine** fem. of *viceroy*, 345.
- victim** used pred., 27;  
fol. by *to*, 87.
- victor** used attrib., 4.
- victim** in *to fall a victim to, to become  
the victim of*, 698.
- actuals** as plur. tant., 160, 164, 299.
- view** in *at one view*, 526;  
in var. loc., 678;  
with def. or indef. art., 697.
- village** instead of *village's*, 107.
- vinegar** used attrib., 15.
- virgin** used attrib., 14;  
used pred., 23;  
in clas. gen., 90.
- virtue** ref. to by neut. pron., 337.
- viscera** as plur. tant., 152.
- visitant** tot. conv. into noun, 375.
- visitor** also fem., 549.
- visitress**, 342.
- vitals** as plur. tant., 164.
- vixen** fem. form of *vox* (= *fox*), 343.
- vocalist** of com. gend., 347, 352.
- vocative** repres. by adj. part. conv.  
into noun, 392 *f*.
- volley** as individualizer, 276.

- volume** in cert. loc., 239;  
 in adnom. comp., 267.  
**voluntary** tot. conv. into noun, 375.  
**voluptary** id., 375.  
**votarist(-y)**, also fem., 343.  
**vote** in col. sense, 249, 267;  
 understood after num., 1239.  
**voters** partaking of the funct. of indef.  
 pron., 659.  
**vulgar** tot. conv. into noun, 376.
- wage(s)** as plur. tant., 177, 184 *f*, 299;  
 in comp., 268.  
**waitress**, 342.  
**wanton** tot. conv. into noun, 382.  
**wares** as plur. tant., 178, 185.  
**warm** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**warrant** fol. by redundant *me*, 831.  
**warrior** used attrib., 16.  
**wars** as plur. tant., 230.  
**was** instead of *were*, 718.  
**wash** with or without refl. pron., 853.  
**water** in gen., 54, 56;  
 in cert. loc., 239 *f*, 678 *f*.  
**water-plant** admitting of var. inter-  
 pretations, 22.  
**waterworks** in *to turn on the water-*  
*works*, 232.  
**waxen** used attrib., 9, 10.  
**waxy** equiv. to *waxen*, 12.  
**way** in *to have a way*, 527 *f*;  
 in *to give (or make) way*, 666;  
 with def. or indef. art., 697;  
 in *to be fond of (or to have a liking*  
*for) one's own way*, 818;  
 as var. of *self*, 835;  
 in *in any way*, 1014;  
 in *all the way*, 1021;  
 in *one way and another (= taken*  
*together)*, 1167;  
 in *(for) once in a way*, 1266.  
**ways** as plur. tant., 231;  
 in *all ways*, 1021.  
**we** instead of *us*, 721 *f*;  
 used as noun, 724;  
 fol. by prep. phrase, 729;  
 with indef. mean., 875 *ff*, 1213;  
 ref. to pers. spoken to, 882.  
**weary** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1278.
- weathers** in (*in*) *all weathers (= in*  
*any weather)*, 1045 *f*.  
**weeds** as plur. tant., 178, 185, 231.  
**week** in gen., 54, 56.  
**weight** mod. by gen., 63, 1333;  
 in comp. unaltered for plur., 262.  
**welcome** with or without indef. art., 631.  
**welkin** originally plur., 141.  
**well** (*adj.*) rarely used attrib., 362;  
 tot. conv. into noun, 382;  
 how comp., 430.  
**well** (*adv.*) how comp., 430;  
 in *well nigh*, 451.  
**Wellington** used attrib., 17.  
**Welsh** used pred., 29.  
**western** tot. conv. into noun, 382.  
**wet** id., 382.  
**wetting** prec. by indef. art., 609.  
**whale** in clas. gen., 90.  
**wharf** plur. of, 117.  
**what** (*interrog.*) as nom. part. of the  
 pred. con. with plur. subj., 279;  
 in front-position mistaken for subj.  
 and causing pred. to be wrongly  
 placed in sing., 308, 954, 1348;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 422, 951;  
 fol. by *adj.*, 424;  
 in *What next!*, 453;  
 fol. by *of* + subst. pos. pron., 825 *f*;  
 before *such*, 938;  
 as part. of parasynthetic comp., 946;  
 var. with *how* in sent. with *to call*,  
 950;  
 in *what is his (etc.) name?*, 951;  
 fol. by var. prep., 951;  
 fol. by *if* or *though*, 951 *f*;  
 in *what then?*, 952;  
 in *what not?*, 952;  
 used adv. 954, 1348;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1208.  
 with quantitative mean., 1348.  
**what** (*exclam. pron.*) before plur. noun,  
 306;  
 before abstr. noun with or without  
 indef. art., 633 *f*, 953;  
 before names of substances without  
 indef. art., 634 *f*;  
 in the mean. of *how great, how*  
*much or how many*, 953;

- fol. by plur. noun, 953;  
 in *what a many*, 953 *f*;  
 in *what a one*, 1292.
- what** (*condensed rel.*) as subj. con.  
 with plur. nom. part. of the pred.  
 or pred. adn. adj., 279, 1336;  
 introd. cl. with pred. adj., 412;  
 used subst. 412, 962;  
 used adnom., 962;  
 equiv. to *any*, 962;  
 fol. by *little* or *few*, 962;  
 used absol., 963;  
 in the conjunctive *what time*, 963;  
 used pred., 965;  
 practically equiv. to *who*, 988;  
 comp. with *that which*, 988 *f*;  
 deprec. in import, 989;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 989;  
 in conj. word-groups, 989 *f*;  
 replacing *that* after introductory *that*  
*is*, 991, 1349;  
 equiv. to *any* or *anything (that)*, 1040.
- what** (*rel., not condensed*) used in cl.  
 commenting upon entire sent. or  
 cl. or some word(-group), 971 *f*, 1348;  
 ref. to (pro)noun, 973, 1348.
- What-do-you-call-him** (*-it* or *-them*)  
 as indef. designation 943, 950.
- whatever** as condensed rel. introd.  
 cl. with pred. adj., 412;  
 equiv. to *any* or *anything that*, 1040,  
 1217;  
 equiv. to *all*, 1082;  
 cond. or conc. in import, 1217;  
 as interrog., condensed rel. or indef.  
 pron., 1221 *f*;  
 in pregn. mean., 1222;  
 emphas. neg., 1223 *f*;  
 emphas. *any*, 1223;  
 emphas. *all*, 1224;  
 fol. by part. *of*, 1223;  
 fol. bv adj., 1223.
- What is (or was)** in sent. with rel.  
 understood, 1000 *f*.
- What's its name** as indef. designation,  
 951.
- whatso** used subst. or conj., 1218.
- whatsoever** fol. by part. *of*, 422 *f*, 1220;  
 emphas. *any*, 1036, 1220;  
 equiv. to *any* or *anything that*, 1040,  
 1217;  
 equiv. to *all*, 1082;  
 cond. or conc. in import, 1217 *f*;  
 as condensed rel. or indef. pron., 1219;  
 emphas. neg., 1220;  
 emphas. *all*, 1220;  
 instead of *whosoever*, 1221.
- whatsom(d)ever** vulg. for *whatever*,  
 1215.
- wheat(en)** used attrib., 6, 7.
- wheat-harvest** disp. with def. art., 548.
- whencesoever** in conc. cl., 1219.
- whenever** ambiguous, 1217;  
 in temp. cl., 1222 *f*.
- whenso** in conc. cl., 1218.
- whensoever** in conc. cl., 1219.
- whereby** (*interrog.*) equiv. to *by what*,  
 945.
- whereby** (*rel.*) equiv. to *by which*, 959.
- wherefore** (*interrog.*) equiv. to *for*  
*what*, 945.
- whereof** (*rel.*) equiv. to *of which*, 959.
- wherever** in adv. cl. of place, 1222.
- where is (or was)** before plur. subj.,  
 307 *f*.
- whereso** in conc. cl., 1218.
- wheresoever** in conc. cl., 1219.
- whether** as interrog. pron., 944, 945,  
 949 *f*.
- which** (*interrog.*) comp. with *who* or  
*what*, 948 *f*;  
 in *you could not tell t'other from*  
*which*, 1169;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 1297.
- which** (*rel.*) ref. to pred. noun, 28, 963;  
 prec. by def. art., 958;  
 used adnom., 958, 961 *f*;  
 fol. by pos. pron., 959, 970, 1348;  
 used pred., 963;  
 var. with *as*, 963 *f*; 976;  
 ref. to persons, 968 *f*, 1348;  
 by way of copul. co-ord. conj., 969 *f*;  
 ref. to entire sent. or cl., 970, 1348;  
 prec. by prep., 970;  
 var. with *what*, 971 *f*.  
 in *which his (= whose)*, 1348.
- which** (*condensed rel.*) in sent. with  
 anticip. *it*, 990;

- replacing condensed *who*, 993;  
of uncertain gram. funct., 993, 1349.
- whichever** in interrog. sent. or in subst.  
or conc. cl., 1221 *f*.
- Whig** in *a Whig of the Whigs*, 1342.
- while** with or without pos. pron., 814.
- whinchat** as unchanged plur., 253.
- whiskers** as plur. tant., 152.
- whit** in *no whit, not a whit* or *not one whit*, 1151, 1159.
- White House** disp. with def. art., 577, 1342.
- whites** as plur. tant., 166, 170.
- whithersoever** in conc. cl., 1219.
- who** (*interrog. pron.*) ref. to by plur.  
pron., 310 *f*;  
fol. by *else*, 944;  
in idiomatic sent. with *should*, 947;  
fol. by *but*, 947;  
antec. of rel. *that*, 983.
- who** (*rel. pron.*) introducing adn. cl.,  
966 *ff*, 976 *ff*.
- who** (*condensed rel.*) in sent. with  
anticip. *it*, 320 *f*, 726, 732, 986;  
in sent. with anticip. *he* or *they*, 728;  
comp. with *he who* or *a man who*,  
987;  
def. or indef. in mean., 987;  
in *as who should say*, 987 *f*.
- whoever** declined for case, 1216;  
in rel. cl. cond. or conc. in import,  
1217;  
as interrog., condensed rel. or indef.  
pron., 1221.
- who is** in sent. with rel. understood,  
1000 *f*.
- whole** constr. as plur., 294;  
in *the whole thing* (= *all*), 1011;  
in *the whole difference* (= *all the difference, in the world*), 1020;  
comp. with *all*, 1024 *ff*;  
before plur., 1025;  
before prop. name, 1025;  
in *the whole of*, 1025 *f*;  
before num., 1243.
- whom** equiv. to *anybody whom*, 1040.
- whose** (*interrog.*) comp. with its analy-  
tical equiv. *of whom*, 946;  
as antec. of rel. pron., 965.
- whose** (*rel.*) also the gen. of *what* or  
*which*, 957;  
used abs., 959, 1348;  
comp. with its analytical equiv. *of whom*, 960;  
ref. to inanimate things, 967;  
not in front-pos., 1006;  
fol. by *each*, 1066;  
fol. by *every*, 1078.
- whoso** in rel. cl. cond. or conc. in  
import, 1217 *f*;  
as condensed rel. or indef. pron., 1218.
- whosoever** decl. for case 1216;  
in rel. cl. cond. or conc. in import,  
1217 *f*;  
as condensed rel. or indef. pron.,  
1218 *f*.
- whyever** in quest., 1222.
- wickedness** used instead of *the wicked*, 412.
- widest** in *at (the) widest*, 502, 679.
- widow** used attrib., 5, 161, 1337;  
in clas. gen., 91;  
with or without def. art. before  
prop. name, 657.
- widower** formed from *widow*, 345, 1337.
- wife** fol. by conj. pos. pron., 784;  
fol. by *of* + abs. pos. pron., 822.  
prec. by def. art., 1341.
- wilds** as plur. tant., 170.
- wild beast** (*cat, or -goose*) used  
attrib., 20, 107.
- will** (*noun*) prec. by indef. art., 631.
- will** (*verb*) with or without *do so* (or  
*it*) or *be so*, 760 *ff*;  
fol. by *so*, 762;  
fol. by *it*, 762;  
in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;  
in sent. expr. identity of circumst.,  
768 *ff*;  
in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation  
or denial etc., 771 *ff*.
- wind** in certain loc., 240;  
prec. by indef. art., 631.
- window** disp. with def. art., 679.
- wing** in *to take (to) wing*, 814.
- winnings** as plur. tant., 159.
- winter** in clas. gen., 93;  
var. with *winter's*, 109 *f*;



- disp. with def. art., 547 *f*, 605 *f*.  
 wireless tot. conv. into noun, 385.  
 wiser in *who is the wiser* and its variations, 506.  
 wish (*noun*) with def. or indef. art., 697.  
 wish (*verb*) with or without *to do so* (or *it*) or *to be so*, 761 *f*;  
 fol. by *it*, 763.  
 with equiv. to *and*, 317;  
 fol. by noun with or without art., 687 *f*;  
 fol. by pos. pron., 809;  
 fol. by refl. pron., 860 *f*;  
 in *with all that* (or *this*), 915.  
 withdraw with or without refl. pron., 853 *f*.  
 withers as plur. tant., 152.  
 within fol. by refl. pers. pron., 863;  
 fol. by emph. refl. pron. pron., 874, 1347;  
 fol. by *each other*, 1068.  
 without fol. by noun with or without indef. art., 690 *f*.  
 witness with or without indef. art., 631, 643.  
 wits as plur. tant., 231 *f*.  
 woman used attrib., 17;  
 in clas. gen., 91 *f*;  
 in *woman suffrage* and its var., 108 *f*;  
 changed into *women* in plur. of subst. comp., 144;  
 as comp. of *man*, 345;  
 used to indic. sex;  
 equiv. to adj. den. qual. in gen. way, 410;  
 in *to a woman*, 526;  
 disp. with def. art. when used in gen. way, 588 *f*, 1211;  
 with def. art. before prop. name, 657.  
 womenfolk as col. noun, 145.  
 womankind as col. noun, 145;  
 disp. with gen. art., 593.  
 wonder in *in the name of wonder* in emotional quest., 1223.  
 wood used attrib., 6, 8.  
 wooden used attrib., 6, 8, 10;  
 used pred., 360.  
 woodcock as unchanged plur., 253.  
 wool(len) used attrib., 6, 8, 701.  
 word in *in a* (or *one*) word, 525 *f*;  
 in *to carry* (leave, send or write) word, 666;  
 with or without pos. pron., 814 *f*.  
 word-groups used attrib., 20 *f*;  
 den. class of pers. in gen. way, 389.  
 work (*noun*) in gen., 54, 56;  
 in *at* (or *to*) work, 679.  
 work up (*verb*) with or without refl. pron., 854.  
 workings as plur. tant., 159.  
 works id., 232, 300.  
 world in gen., 52;  
 in *the world's end* comp. with *the end of the world*, 77;  
 as col. noun constr. as sing. or plur., 294;  
 prec. by def. art., 554;  
 as col. noun prec. by gen. def. art., 591;  
 in *in the world* partaking of the funct. of indef. pron., 1209;  
 in *in (all) the world* in emotional quest., 1223.  
 worry with or without refl. pron., 854, 1347.  
 worse part. conv. into noun, 409, 424;  
 as compar. of *bad*, *badly*, *ill*, *illy*, *evil* or *evilly*, 430;  
 in the sense of *less*, 430;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
 worser archaic or vulg. compar., 430, 491.  
 worst part. conv. into noun, 410, 415, 420;  
 as superlat. of *bad*, *badly*, *ill*, *illy*, *evil* and *evilly*, 430;  
 in *at (the) worst*, 502 *f*, 679.  
 worth (*noun*) mod. by gen., 63, 66;  
 in comp. unaltered for plur., 262;  
 worth (*adj.*) in *worth (the) having*, *living*, etc., 607;  
 in *for all he was worth*, 1015;  
 worthy tot. conv. into noun, 382;  
 in *He is worthy of you*, 705.  
 would with or without *do so* (or *it*) or *be so*, 760 *ff*;  
 fol. by pron. so, 762;  
 in corrob. sent., 764 *ff*;

- in sent. expr. identity of circumst., 768 *ff*;  
 in sent. or cl. expr. mere affirmation or denial etc., 771 *ff*.  
**wounded** part. conv. into noun, 405 *f*.  
**wrap up** with or without refl. pron., 854.  
**wren** refer. to by masc. pron., 332.  
**write** fol. by *so*, 744.  
**writer** of com. gend., 349;  
 in *the present writer*, 881.  
**wrong** tot. conv. into noun, 385, 790;  
 part. conv. into noun, 409;  
 equiv. to *the wrong*, 411;  
 with or without indef. art., 631 *f*;  
 prec. by pos. pron., 790.  
**y** changed into *i*, 115, 428 *f*.  
**y'** shortened from *ye*, 708, 720.  
**ye** weakened into *ee*, 708, 720;  
 comp. with *you*, 717 *ff*;  
 in cert. phrases, 719.  
**year** in gen., 54, 56, 93;  
 unaltered for plur., 120, 264;  
 in adnom. word-groups, 270 *f*;  
 disp. with def. art., 679;  
 understood after num., 1236 *f*.  
**yeoman** in clas. gen., 93 *f*;  
 instead of *yeoman's*, 106.  
**yesterday** in gen., 53 *f*.  
**yet** mod. compar., 504, 506, 509 *f*;  
 comp. with *more*, 1119;  
 mod. *other*, 1181;  
**yo** dialect form of *you*, 720.  
**yoke** unaltered for plur., 258 *f*.  
**yonder (yon or yond)** as demonstr. equiv., 916 *f*.  
**you** replaced by *thee* in dialects, 717;  
 comp. with *ye*, 717 *ff*;  
 fol. by plur. noun to indicate numb., 718;  
 fol. by *was* or *were* to indic. numb., 718;  
 used as noun, 724 *f*, 1345;  
 with indef. mean., 875 *ff*, 1213;  
 ref. to speak. 876 *f*;  
 with emotional colouring, 877.  
**young** part. conv. into noun, 395 *f*;  
 fol. by prop-word *one*, 395 *f*, 1274, 1278.  
**younger** tot. conv. into noun, 378;  
 disp. with prop-word *one*, 1288.  
**younger-born** den. single indiv., 402.  
**youngest** fol. by prop-word *one*, 1287.  
**youngest-born** den. single indiv., 402.  
**youngster** said of the young of animals, 703.  
**your** with indef. mean., 875 *ff*;  
 ref. to speak., 377;  
 with emotional colouring, 877;  
**yourn** vulg. for *yours*, 785.  
**youth** as unchanged plur., 256 *f*;  
 also fem., 346.  
**youth (collective noun)** constr. as sing. or plur., 294;  
 disp. with gen. art., 593.  
**youth (abstr. noun)** with or without pos. pron., 815.  
**zebra** as unchanged plur., 251.  
**zest** with or without indef. art., 632.











